

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

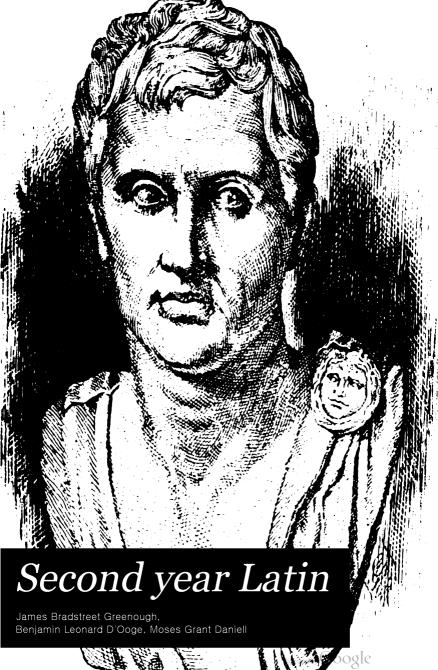
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

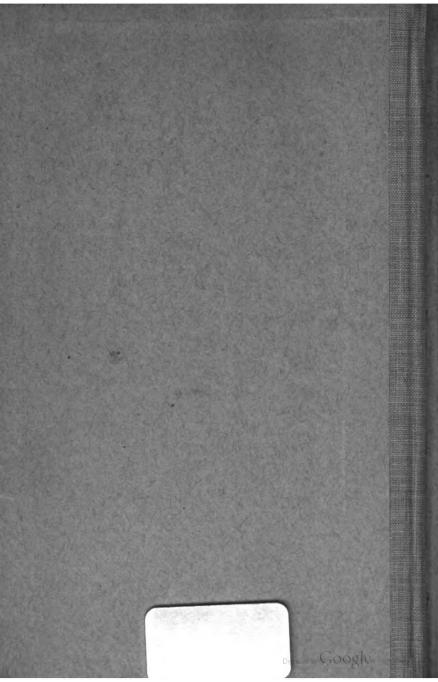
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

#### **About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/





Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LELIOX TILDEN FOUNDATIONS



THE GODDESS ROMA.

75 3 Boardingst

# SECOND YEAR LATIN

Part I

MISCELLANEOUS SELECTIONS OF EASY LATIN

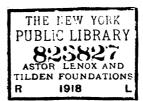
PART II
SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

JAMES B. GREENOUGH

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE AND M. GRANT DANIELL

GINN & COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON



54

COPYRIGHT, 1899
By GINN & COMPANY

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED



The Athenseum Press
GINN & COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

# PREFACE.

This book is intended to follow any First Latin Book. It is adapted to the wants of those pupils who have some little knowledge of inflexions and of the easiest constructions, and embraces some ninety pages of easy Latin, followed by selections from Cæsar's Gallic War (about equivalent in amount to the first four books), making along with the beginner's book a sufficient course in Latin for two years. It is hoped that thus a somewhat freer and wider course may be found for young students than the unvaried reading of Cæsar's Commentaries, and a more interesting one as well. About ten pages of easy poetry have been included in the selections, with a hope of giving a slight hint at the poetic literature of the Romans. This may be read in course or may be left until near the close of the second year. Much of the material of Part I is modern Latin, prepared for such uses by modern scholars. Due credit is given to these in the proper place.

Among the shorter selections are extracts from Pliny the Younger, Cicero, Valerius Maximus, and other ancient writers. To these are added three stories from Erasmus, who may almost be regarded for our purpose as a classic author, but who from his position between ancient and modern life fails nowadays to receive the attention he deserves.

In the pages devoted to biography and mythology the "Story of Ulysses" from Ritchie's *Fabula Faciles* has been included. This, though modern Latin, has been given a peculiar aroma by a clever imitation of Cæsar's style, so that it is a most valuable

preliminary to the study of that writer. Two lives are given from the famous modern classic *Viri Roma*, those of Caius Marius and Julius Cæsar, reading peculiarly appropriate as introductory to the Commentaries. These are followed by the "Life of Hannibal," from Nepos.

It seemed wise to give a varied course of reading from Cæsar rather than the first four books. Parts of these books are unusually difficult, and parts are lacking in interest. By making selections from the seven books, both of these obstacles to successful work have in large measure been overcome. All the features that have proved so attractive and helpful in the New Cæsar have been retained in this volume.

In the explanatory notes on Part I we have varied from the conventional methods in a direction suggested by experience. The attempt has been made to follow the methods of personal viva voce instruction, and to take the point of view of the pupil rather than that of the instructor, so as to teach him to read the Latin as if he wanted to read it, rather than to make it a vehicle for learning other things not then felt to be necessary. We have therefore constantly endeavored to answer the question what the words or constructions meant rather than why they were so. It is hoped that the book will be found a practical and practicable one in actual use. The views of the editors in regard to reading have been repeated in so many forms that we deem it unnecessary to give them anew. The directions in our Casar are reprinted in this book.

A considerable number of oral exercises for turning English into Latin in the form of question and answer, and some exercises for oral and written translation, all founded on the miscellaneous matter, have been inserted, so that the writing and speaking of Latin may go on along with the efforts to read.

AUGUST, 1899.

J. B. G. B. L. D. M. G. D.



# CONTENTS.

|    |   | PAGE |
|----|---|------|
| Lı | ST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS                                    | ix   |
|    | PART I.   | •    |
| ſ. | Stories, Fables, and Letters:                                   |      |
|    | I. A Letter. Meurer   | I    |
|    | 2. Cock-fighting. Meurer  | 2    |
|    | 3. Gladiators. Meurer   | 2    |
|    | 4. The Horse and the Ass. Perthes                               | 3    |
|    | 5. The Wonderful Deliverance of Simonides. Perthes .            | 3    |
|    | 6. The Roman Dinner. Meurer                                     | 4    |
|    | 7. Augustus and the Veteran. Meurer                             | 5    |
|    | 8. The Wolf and the Dog. Old Fable                              | 5    |
|    | g. The Lion and the Mouse. Old Fable                            | 6    |
|    | 10. The Dancing Horses. Perthes                                 | 6    |
|    | II. Augustus and the Raven. Perthes                             | 7    |
|    | 12. The Wolf and the Lamb. Perthes                              | 8    |
|    | 13. The Wolf and the Lamb. Phadrus                              | 8    |
|    | 14. The Rivalry of Two Painters. Perthes                        | 9    |
|    | 15. The Fox and the Monkey. Perthes                             | 9    |
|    | 16. The River-God and the Golden Axe. Perthes                   | 10   |
|    | 17. The Husbandman and his Sons. Old Fable                      | 11   |
|    | 18. Demosthenes and the Judges. Perthes                         | 11   |
|    | 19. The Death of Pompey. Casar                                  | I 2  |
|    | 20. Niobe and her Children. Ochler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel.  | 14   |
|    | 21. Croesus, King of Lydia. Oehler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel   | 15   |
|    | 22. An Epitome of Roman History. Perthes                        | 17   |
|    | 23. The Omen of the Puppy. Cicero (adapted)                     | 18   |
|    | 24. Scipio Æmilianus. Valerius Maximus                          | 18   |
|    | 25. The Battle of Thermopylæ. Oehler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel | 19   |
|    | 26. A Roman Maiden. Pliny the Younger                           | 20   |

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 27. Æmilius Paulus and his Sons. Valerius Maximus             | 21   |
| 28. Androclus and the Lion. Ochler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel | . 23 |
| 29. Two Letters of Cicero to his Wife. Cicero                 | 24   |
| 30. A Roman Ultimatum. Valerius Maximus                       | . 25 |
| 31. The Haunted House. Pliny the Younger                      | 26   |
| 32. An Eclipse Foretold. Livy                                 | . 27 |
| 33. Anthony and the Usurer. Erasmus                           | 28   |
| 34. A Practical Joke. Erasmus                                 | . 29 |
| 35. The Priest, the Vender, and the Impostor. Erasmus .       | 31   |
| II. BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY:                                  |      |
| 1. Cyrus, King of Persia. Ochler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel   | . 33 |
| 2. The Story of Ulysses. Ritchie                              | 40   |
| 3. Life of Caius Marius. "Viri Romae"                         | . 55 |
| 4. Life of Caius Julius Cæsar. "Viri Romae"                   | 63   |
| 5. Life of Hannibal. Nepos                                    | • 75 |
| III. POETICAL SELECTIONS:                                     |      |
| 1. The Stag. Phadrus  | 86   |
| 2. Friends and Fortune Fly Together. Ovid                     | . 86 |
| 3. Epitaph of a Roman Matron. "Corpus Inscriptionum Latina    | _    |
| rum"  | 87   |
| 4. Dæmones's Dream. Plautus                                   | . 87 |
| 5. The Death of the Pet Sparrow. Catullus                     | 88   |
| 6. How to Train Children. Terence                             | . 88 |
| 7. The City Mouse and the Country Mouse. Horace               | 89   |
| 8. The Enchantress Circe. Virgil                              | . 90 |
| 9. The Golden Age. Tibullus                                   | 90   |
| 10. The Shortness of Life. Horace                             | . 91 |
| 11. The Joys of Country Life. Horace                          | 92   |
| 12. Live while you Live. Horace                               | . 92 |
| PART II.  |      |
| Introduction:   |      |
| I. Life of Cæsar  | . 97 |
| II. Roman Military Affairs                                    | 113  |
| III. Gaul and the Gauls                                       | 129  |

|      |        |           |        |       | (      | Cont          | eni   | s.   |     |     |   |   |   |   |   | vii  |
|------|--------|-----------|--------|-------|--------|---------------|-------|------|-----|-----|---|---|---|---|---|------|
|      |        |           |        |       |        |               |       |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   | PAGE |
|      | IV.    | The Br    | itons  |       |        |               |       |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   | 136  |
|      | V.     | The G     | ermai  | ıs .  |        |               |       |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   | 137  |
|      | VI.    | The Ca    | ımpai  | igns  | in G   | aul           |       |      |     |     |   | • |   |   |   | 1 38 |
|      | VII.   | Directi   | ons f  | or R  | eadir  | ng .          |       | •    |     | •   | • |   | ٠ | • | ٠ | 139  |
| Seli | ECT 10 | NS FROM   | ( CÆ   | SAR   | 's Ga  | LLIC          | w     | AR   | :   |     |   |   |   |   |   |      |
|      | Gene   | ral Desc  | riptio | n of  | Gau    | l, I. 1       |       |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   | 143  |
|      | The l  | Belgian ( | Confe  | dera  | ьсу, І | I             |       |      |     |     |   |   | • |   | • | 144  |
|      | The (  | Campaig   | n aga  | inst  | the '  | Vene          | ti, I | II.  | 7-  | -16 |   |   |   |   |   | 174  |
|      | The l  | First Inv | asion  | of    | Germ   | any,          | IV.   | . 1- | -19 | ٠.  |   |   |   |   | • | 183  |
|      | The S  | Second 1  | nvasi  | ion ( | of Ge  | rmar          | y, 1  | VI.  | 9-  | -29 |   |   |   |   |   | 196  |
|      | The 1  | First Inv | asion  | of    | Britai | n, IV         | 7. 20 | 0-3  | 36  | •   |   |   |   | • |   | 209  |
|      | The S  | Second 1  | nvas   | ion ( | of Br  | itain,        | V.    | I –  | 23  |     |   |   |   |   |   | 221  |
|      | Gene   | ral Upri: | sing o | of G  | aul, V | /II. 1        | -19   | ;    |     | •   |   |   |   |   |   | 238  |
|      | The S  | Siege of  | Avar   | icun  | ı, VI  | I. 16         | -30   |      |     |     |   | • |   |   |   | 248  |
|      | The S  | Siege of  | Alesi  | a, V  | II. 6  | 8 <b>-9</b> 0 |       | •    |     | •   | • |   | • | • | • | 260  |
| Not  | ES .   | •         |        |       |        |               |       |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   | 279  |
| Gro  | UPS (  | F RELA    | TED    | Wo    | RDS    |               |       |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   | 459  |
| Lat  | IN C   | DMPOSIT   | ION    |       |        | •             |       |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   | 469  |
| Voc  | ABITT  | ADV       |        |       |        |               |       |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |      |

NOTE: The modern authors mentioned in the foregoing list are Meurer (Lateinisches Lesebuch, für Sexta), Perthes (Lateinisches Lesebuch, für Sexta, also für Quinta), Oehler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel (Übungsbuch für den grammatischen Unterricht im Lateinischen, für Sexta), and Ritchie (Fabulat Faciles).

# LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

#### ABBREVIATIONS.

Babelon. — Description historique et chronologique des Monnaies de la Répub-

Baumeister. - Denkmäler des klassischen

Bertrand and Perrot. - Revue archéolo-

Cohen. - Description générale des Mon-

Fleury. - Antiquités et Monuments du

Froehner. - La Colonne trajane d'après

département de l'Aisne, etc. 1877-8.

le surmoulage exécuté à Rome en 1861-

7. Tibiae. Rich's Dictionary

naies de la République romaine, etc.

lique romaine. 1885.

Altertums. 1885-8.

1857.

gique, 3° Série, Tome X.

and Romans, described from Antique

Silver Coins of the Ancients. (Br.

de quelques Médailles muettes, émises

Head. - A Guide to the Principal Gold and

Jeuffrain. - Essai d'Interprétation de Types

von Kampen. - XV ad Caesaris de Bell.

Lindenschmidt. - Tracht und Bewaffnung

Oekler. - Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern

Gall. Commentarios Tabulae. 1879.

des Römischen Heeres während der

par les Celtes-Gaulois. 1846.

Kaiserzeit, etc. 1882.

Monuments. 1875.

Mus.) 1881.

| de Bell. Gall. 1890.  Rheinhard. — C. Iulii Caesaris Commentarii de Bell. Gall. 1896.  Schreiber. — Atlas of Classical Antiquities.  Visconti. — Iconographie romaine. 1817-24. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| PAGE<br>ess Roma. Bust in the Louvre,<br>r Griechischer und Römischer   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| · · · · · · · Frontispiece.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| xii   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3. Photograph I   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| astor and Pollux. Head 4  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Personification of the River Tiber (showing also Romulus and Remus with the wolf). In the Louvre, Paris. Brunn, Denkmäler Griechischer und Römischer Sculptur. . . .

ix

10

| FIG. |   | PAG  |
|------|---|------|
| 9.   | Pompey. Ancient statue. Visconti                        | 1    |
| 10.  | Niobe. Bust from the statue of Niobe and her children   | I.   |
| 11.  | Crossus on the funeral pile. Baumeister                 | 16   |
| I 2. | Coin of Æmilius. Obverse: veiled head of woman with     |      |
|      | diadem. Reverse: captives (prob. Perses and his sons)   |      |
|      | opposite a figure erecting a trophy. TER, i.e. having   |      |
|      | thrice enjoyed a triumph. Cohen                         | 18   |
| 13.  | A Roman maiden. Ancient statue. Photograph              | 20   |
| 14.  | A triumphal chariot. From photograph of the walls of    |      |
|      | the capitol at Rome                                     | 22   |
| 15.  | Peristyle of a Pompeian house. Photograph               | 26   |
| 16.  | A record of Cyrus the Great. British Museum. Photograph | 34   |
| 17.  | Tomb of Cyrus the Great                                 | 39   |
| 18.  | Head of a Cyclops. From a gem in the British Museum.    |      |
|      | Copied from Butcher and Lang's Odyssey                  | 42   |
| 19.  | Ulysses under the ram. Winckelmann, Monumenti Antichi   | 46   |
| 20.  | Opening the wind bag. Winckelmann, Monumenti Antichi    | 49   |
| 21.  | Ulysses at the house of Circe. Baumeister               | 52   |
| 22.  | Map of Italia Superior                                  | A -6 |
| 23.  | Map of Italia Inferior \ between 55 an                  | u 5  |
| 24.  | Gaius Marius. From a coin. Visconti                     | 55   |
| 25.  | Soldiers with packs. "Marius's Mules." Froehner         | 58   |
| 26.  | L. Cornelius Sulla. Bust in the Vatican at Rome. Uncer- |      |
|      | tain. Bernoulli, Römische Ikonographie                  | 60   |
| 27.  | Coin of Sulla. Obverse: head of Diana Tifatina.         |      |
|      | FAVSTVS (name of Sulla's son). Reverse: L. Sulla        |      |
|      | seated; Bocchus, king of Mauretania, delivers to him    |      |
|      | Jugurtha as a captive; FELIX (surname assumed by        |      |
|      | Sulla). Visconti  | 60   |
| 28.  | Coins of Marius. (1) Cimbric trophies of Marius. (2)    |      |
|      | Marius triumphing over Jugurtha. C·MARI·C[ai]           |      |
|      | ·F[ilius]   | 61   |
| 29.  | Soldiers making camp. Froehner                          | 62   |
| 30.  | Map of Rome   | 62   |
| 31.  | Cæsar. Bust in the Louvre, Paris                        | 64   |
| 32.  | A civic crown. From a coin. Cohen                       | 65   |
| 33.  | Two coins of Cæsar. (1) Obverse: head of Venus. Re-     |      |
|      | verse: Æneas with Anchises and the palladium. CAE-      |      |
|      | SAR. (2) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy        |      |
|      | and cantives CAESAR Head                                | 67   |

|      | List of Maps and Illustrations.  | хi   |
|------|--|------|
| FIG. |  | PAGE |
| 34.  | Coins of Pompey and his son. (1) Obverse: head of Sextus Pompey. Reverse: heads of Sextus Pompey and         |      |
|      | Pompey the Great. (2) Allegorical head of Africa. Cohen  | 68   |
| 35.  | Mark Antony. Ancient statue. Visconti  | 71   |
| 36.  | Hannibal. Ancient bust in Naples Museum. Photograph  | 74   |
| 37.  | Coin of the Fabian family. Obverse: ROMA Q. MAX.  Laurelled head of Apollo, lyre in front. Reverse: horn     | .,   |
|      | of plenty filled with fruits; thunderbolts; the whole in a   |      |
|      | wreath of grain ears and poppy. Cohen  | 77   |
| 38.  | Scipio Africanus. Ancient statue. Photograph   | 79   |
| 39-  | Coin of Antiochus the Great. Obverse: head of Antiochus with diadem. Reverse: Apollo seated on the omphalos, |      |
|      | a bow in his left hand, an arrow in his right. Head  | 81   |
| 40.  | Cæsar. Bust in the British Museum  | 96   |
| 41.  | Map of Gaul  | 128  |
| 42.  | Campaign map of B.C. 57  | 142  |
| 43.  | Writing materials: atramentarium (for black and red ink);  |      |
|      | papyrus letter sealed and addressed (M LVCRETIO  |      |
|      | FLAM[ini] MARTIS DECVRIONI POMPEI[s]); dip-  |      |
|      | tycha (folding tablet), stilus, and erasing knife. Wall  |      |
|      | painting. Overbeck's Pompeii   | 144  |
| 44.  | Gaul with trumpet. Restoration from carvings on the Arc  |      |
|      | de Twismakke at Orango Cuseset   |      |

|     | with diadem. Reverse: Apollo seated on the omphalos,      |      |
|-----|---|------|
|     | a bow in his left hand, an arrow in his right. Head       | 81   |
| 40. | Cæsar. Bust in the British Museum                         | 96   |
| 41. | Map of Gaul   | 128  |
| 42. | Campaign map of B.C. 57                                   | 142  |
| 43. | Writing materials: atramentarium (for black and red ink); |      |
|     | papyrus letter sealed and addressed (M LVCRETIO           |      |
|     | FLAM[ini] MARTIS DECVRIONI POMPEI[s]); dip-               |      |
|     | tycha (folding tablet), stilus, and erasing knife. Wall   |      |
|     | painting. Overbeck's Pompeii                              | 144  |
| 44. | Gaul with trumpet. Restoration from carvings on the Arc   |      |
|     | de Triomphe at Orange. Grasset                            | 145  |
| 45. | Coin of Diviciacus, king of the Suessiones. Fleury        | 147  |
| 46. | Slinger (funditor), Dict. des Antiquités                  | 149  |
| 47. | Berry au Bac. Photograph                                  | 151  |
| 48. | Battle on the Aisne. Ochler                               | 152  |
| 49. | Vinea or Testudo. Ochler                                  | 155  |
| 50. | Hautmont. Photograph                                      | I 57 |
| 51. | Defeat of the Nervii. Oehler                              | 159  |
| 52. | Lituus  | 161  |
| 53- | Tuba  | 161  |
| 54. | Cornu   | 161  |
| 55. | Centurio. Grave relief. Lindenschmidt                     | 165  |
| 56. | Aquilifer. Grave relief. Lindenschmidt                    | 165  |
| 57• | Citadel of Namur. Photograph                              | 168  |
| 58. | Siege of the stronghold of the Aduatuci                   | 169  |
| 59. | Siege works. von Göler, Caesars Gallischer Krieg          | 170  |
| 60. | Cæsar. Bust in the Naples Museum                          | 173  |
| 61. | Galley. From the Præneste relief. Baumeister              | 175  |

| FIG.        |   | PAG |
|-------------|---|-----|
| 62.         | •                   |     |
|             | map   | 17  |
| 63.         | Roman battle ship. Wall painting at Pompeii. Oehler .     | 17  |
| 64.         | Trading vessel. Ancient relief. Baumeister                | 18  |
| 65.         | Soldiers  | 18  |
| 66.         | Pack-wagons and carts. Col. of M. Aurelius. Ochler        | 18  |
| 67          | Scenery on the Meuse. Photograph                          | 18. |
| 68.         | Campaign map of B.C. 55, 54, 53                           | 184 |
| 69.         | Coins of Cæsar. (1) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse:      |     |
|             | trophy of Gallic arms. CAESAR. (2) Obverse: veiled        |     |
|             | head of <i>Pietas</i> . CAESAR CO[n]S[ul]TER. Reverse:    |     |
|             | lituus, praefericulum, and axe. A[ulus] HIRTIUS           |     |
|             | PR[aefectus]. Head  | 186 |
| 70.         | Bridge  | 195 |
| 71.         | Gallic coin. Jeuffrain                                    | 200 |
| 72.         | Gallic coins. LVCOTI (Paris?); human eye in profile, sup- |     |
|             | posed to symbolize the sun. Fleury                        | 202 |
| 73⋅         | Map of the campaigns in Britain                           | 208 |
| 74.         | The Cliffs of Dover. "Shakespeare's Cliff." Photograph.   |     |
| 75.         | Catapulta. Modern restoration                             | 213 |
| 76.         | Anchor and tackle. Arc de Triomphe at Orange. Schreiber   | 216 |
| <b>7</b> 7· | Soldiers foraging. Froehner                               | 218 |
| 78.         | British coins. (1) Obverse: ear of grain, CAMV[lodunum].  |     |
|             | Reverse: prancing horse, CVNO[belinus] (the Cymbeline     |     |
|             | of Shakespeare). (2) Obverse: unexplained devices.        |     |
|             | Reverse: horse, TASCOVIANUS. Head                         |     |
| 79.         | Testudo. Frochner   | 227 |
| 80.         | Soldiers building camp, with guards. Froehner             |     |
| 81.         | Signa Militaria   | 233 |
| 82.         | Roman transports. Froehner                                | 236 |
| 83.         | Cavalryman charging. Gravestone in Mainz. Ochler          | 237 |
| 84.         | Cavalryman with vexillum. Col. of M. Aurelius. Ochler .   | 237 |
| 85.         | Helmets. Schreiber  | 238 |
| 86.         | Campaign map of B.C. 52                                   | 238 |
| 87.         | Coin of Brutus and Albinus. Obverse: head of Mars.        |     |
|             | Reverse: ALBINVS BRVTI F[ilius]. Two Gallic               |     |
|             | trumpets crossed, oval and round shields. Head            | 243 |
| 88.         | Siege of Avaricum. von Kampen                             |     |
| 89.         | View of siege works. von Kampen                           |     |
| go.         | Plan of siege works. von Kampen                           |     |

|                | List of Maps and Illustrations.                            | <b>x</b> iii |
|----------------|--|--------------|
| FIG.           |  | PAGE         |
| 91.            | Gallic wall. Model in the Museum of St. Germain, slightly  |              |
| <b>J</b>       | restored from existing remains at Murcens. Ochler          | 254          |
| 92.            | Scorpio. Modern restoration                                | 256          |
| 93.            | Chain mail. Fragment found at Mainz. Ochler                | 259          |
| 93.            |  | 260          |
| 95.            | Ballista. Modern restoration                               | 261          |
| 95.<br>96.     | Siege of Alesia. Ochler                                    | 263          |
| 90.<br>97.     | View of Cæsar's line of works before Alesia. Model in the  | 203          |
| 9/.            | Museum of St. Germain. Ochler                              | 267          |
| 98.            | Statue of Vercingetorix. Erected at Alesia by order of     | 207          |
| 90.            | Napoleon III. Designed by Bartholdi. Photograph            | 269          |
| 99.            | Light-armed soldier. Gravestone. Lindenschmidt             | 273          |
| 100.           | Archer. Gravestone. Lindenschmidt                          | 273          |
| 101.           | Youth reading  | 279          |
| 102.           | Flute-player. Rich's Dictionary                            | 285          |
| 103.           | Olla fictilis. Rich's Dictionary                           | 308          |
| 104.           | The Tullianum. Rich's Dictionary                           | -            |
| 105.           | Signifer. Gravestone. Lindenschmidt                        | 323          |
| 106.           | Amphora. Baumeister  | 330          |
| 107.           | The legionary. Slightly altered from Bartholdi's model in  | 337          |
| .07.           | the Museum of St. Germain                                  | 250          |
| 108.           | Coin of Cæsar. Obverse: head of Augustus. IMP [erator]     | 350          |
|                | CAESAR·DIVI·F·[ilius] III(trium)·VIR·ITER[um]R[ei]         |              |
|                | P[ublicae] C[onstituendae]. Reverse: Julius Cæsar stand-   |              |
|                | ing in a temple. DIVO IVL[io]. Star and altar. CO[n]-      |              |
|                | S[ul] ITER[um] ET TER DESIG[natus]. Cohen                  | 251          |
| 109.           | Gallic coin. Fleury  |              |
| 110.           | Gallic remains. Grasset                                    | 354<br>358   |
| 110.           |  |              |
| 112.           | General view of siege operations. Rheinhard                | 371          |
|                | Vexillum   | 377          |
| 113.<br>114.   | Scutum. Rheinhard  | 380          |
| 114.<br>115.   | Scutum. Rheinhard  |              |
| 115.<br>116.   | Wall and ditch. Oehler                                     | 381          |
|                | Shirbuilder Cross relief (Passana) Schuiden                | 391          |
| 117.<br>118.   | Shipbuilder. Grave relief (Ravenna). Schreiber             |              |
|                | Roman javelins. Oehler                                     | 399          |
| I 19.<br>I 20. |  |              |
| 120.<br>121.   | Aquila   | 422          |
| 121.           | fighting, armed with spear and shield, in a Gallic chariot |              |
|                | agating, armed with spear and snield, in a Gaille charlor  |              |

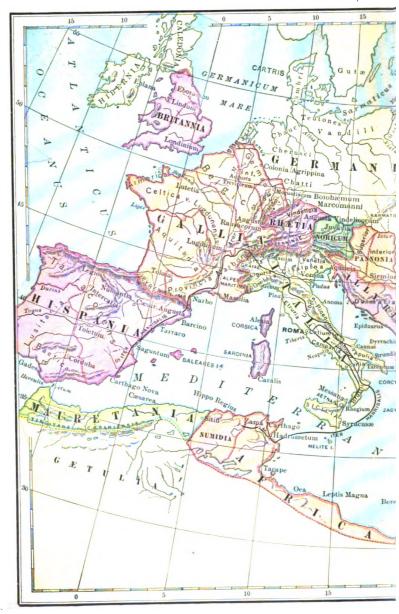
# List of Maps and Illustrations.

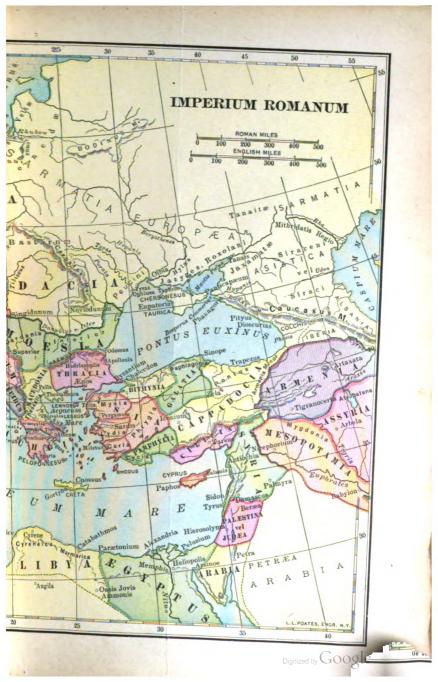
xiv

| FIG. |  | PAGI |
|------|--|------|
| 122. | Gallic coin. Reverse: warrior armed with spear and shield, and holding a Gallic trumpet (carnyx), standing in a two-wheeled chariot, drawn by two galloping horses. L[ucius] |      |
|      | LIC[inius] CN[aeus] DOM[itius]. Bertrand & Perrot .  | 425  |
| 123. | Caliga. Oehler   | 426  |
| 124. | Oppugnatio. Modern design  | 438  |
|      | Hollow square. Col. of M. Aurelius. Froehner   | _    |
| 126. | Pluteus. Modern restoration  | 447  |
|      | Pluteus. Modern restoration  |      |
| •    | Lilium. Oehler   |      |
|      | Stimulus. Oehler   |      |

THE NEW YORK
PHRISCURE ARY

ASTOR, LE. OX TILDEN FOUNDATIONS





THE DLW YOLK PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LE. ON TILD\_N FOUNDS NONE

# PART I.

# I. STORIES, FABLES, AND LETTERS.

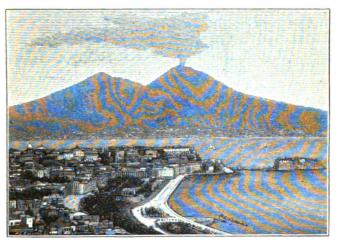


FIG. 3. - VIEW OF NAPLES AND VESUVIUS.

#### r. A Letter.

Sī tū valēs, bene est; ego quoque valeō. Hanc epistulam ad tē laetus scrībō. Medicī cōnsiliō cum parentibus in Ītaliā hiemāvī. Dum apud vōs nivēs omnia implent, nōs hīc nivem rārō vidēmus, āēr est lēnissimus, rīdet, ut est apud poētās, caelum. Saepe in lītore ambulō vel in 5 hortīs amplīs errō, nam grāmina arborēsque iam virent. Hinc videō Vesuvium montem, hinc tōtam ferē urbem, hinc pulchrās īnsulās in marī sitās. Linguam hodiernam Ītalōrum ē conloquiīs facile discō, linguae Latīnae cotīdiē operam dō. Sed iam fīnem faciam epistulae; mox cōram 10 omnia tibi nārrābō. Vīve valēque, mī amīce.

### 2. Cock-fighting.

Athēniēnsēs pūblica gallorum certāmina quondam īnstituērunt. Causa autem haec fuit. Bello Persico Themistoclēs cum exercitū iter in hostīs faciēbat, cum duos gallos vīdit in viā dīmicantīs. / Tum mīlitēs ad spectāculum convocāvit et hanc orātionem habuit : "Hī gallī non pro patriā dīmicant, non pro deīs, non pro gloriā, non pro libertāte, non pro liberīs; / dē nūllā rē dīmicant nisi dē victoriā." Hāc orātione animos mīlitum excitāvit, nec hostēs eorum impetum sustinēre poterant. Quā dē causā Athēniēnsēs to Themistoclis consilio certāmina gallorum īnstituērunt.

#### 3. Gladiators.

Romāni ē spectāculīs gladiātoriis māgnam voluptātem capiēbant. Quā in rē cernēbātur non tam bellicosum populi Romāni ingenium quam prāva volgi indolēs. Prīmo



Fig. 4. — GLADIATORS.

7 pūgnae gladiātōriae inter mortuōrum exsequiās ēdēbantur, 15 posteā ei qui magistrātum petēbant spectāculis hūiusmodī 2 plēbis suffrāgia quaerēbant. Hōc consilio māgnās gladiā-

Cf. 1 consilio, p. 1, l. 2. — 2 spectāculum, l. 4.

7 torum familiās alēbam Jūlius Caesar trecenta vigintī paria simul in harēnam mieit. Barbarī captīvī et servī gregī adscrī- bēbantur gladiātorum, multī etiam aliī ultro nomina profitē- bantur. Varia erant eorum arma; alius scūtum gladiumque, i alius clipeum sīcamque, rēte et tridentem alius habēbat 5 Non nūllī divitiās hoc tam atrocī quaestū consecūtī sunt, permultī miserē periērunt. Caesarem spectāculīs praesitudentem salūtābant gladiātorēs hīs verbīs: "Avē, Caesar, moritūrī tē salūtant."

# 4. The Horse and the Ass.

Agitābat quīdam equum et asinum onustōs sarcinī. Asinus onere pressus rogāvit equum ut aliquā oneris parte sē levāret. Sed ille precēs comitis repudiāvit. Paulō post asinus languōre consūmptus in viā conruit et efflāvit animam. Agitātor igitur omnibus quās asinus portāverat sarcinīs atque insuper pelle eī dētrāctā equum onerāvit. Tum 15 ille dēplōrāns fortūnam suam, "Quam stultē," inquit, "contempsī comitis precēs nam sī illī obtemperāvissem, parvulum habērem onus, nunc gravissimum portō coāctus."

Old Fable.

### 5. The Wonderful Deliverance of Simonides.

Simonides, egregius Graecorum poeta, cenabat aliquando 1 20 Cranone in Thessalia apud 8 Scopam, fortunatum hominem et nobilem, qui paulo 8 ante in pugilum certamine 4 magnam victoriam reportaverat. Cantavit poeta summo convivarum gaudio praeclarum carmen in laudem victoris et pio animo etiam Castorem et Pollucem, inlustris Graecorum heroes et 25 certaminum patronos, ut auctores illius victoriae celebravit. Invidia commotus carmen improbavit Scopas et sordide

Cf. <sup>1</sup> quondam, p. 2, l. 1. -2 apud, 1, 3. -8 paulō, l. 12. -4 certāmina, 2, 1.

poētae acclāmāvit "Dīmidium tibi dōnābō praemī prōmissī, reliquum ab hērōibus tuīs, quōs aequē laudāvistī, postulābis." Cēlāvit īram poēta. Paulō post Simōnidī nūntiat servus: "Duo iuvenēs ad iānuam stantēs māgnopere tē ēvocant." Obtemperāvit poēta nūntiō, sed ante





Fig. 5. - A Coin of Bruttium.

iānuam invēnit nēminem. Iam vērō horribilī post tergum fragōre conturbātur. Retrō versat oculōs, nihil spectat nisi ingentem et trīstissimam ruīnam; obrutus est tyrannus cum convīvīs² omnibus, mīrificē servātus est pius poēta.

#### 6. The Roman Dinner.

Quam diū Rōmāni prīscōs mōrēs retinēbant, omnēs domesticī in ātriō ūnā cēnābant. Sed postquam Rōmānī dīvitēs factī sunt, mōs erat dominō cum hospitibus in trīclīniō cēnāre. Trīclīnium rē vērā lectus erat in quō trēs convīvae accumbere poterant, nam Rōmānī ad mēnsam accumto bere solēbant. Tria erant trīclīnia, quae novem omnīnō convīvīs spatium dabant. In trīs partīs Rōmānī cēnam dividēbant. Prīma pars gustus vocābātur, cēna altera, tertia mēnsae secundae. Rōmānīs erat in prōverbiō, "Abōvō ūsque ad māla." Cēnam ministrābant strūctor, scissor, aliī servī. Nōn sōlum pauperēs sed etiam dīvitēs ēlegantēsque Rōmānī cibum digitīs capiēbant.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> obtemperāvissem, p. 3, l. 17. — <sup>2</sup> convīvārum, 3, 23. — <sup>8</sup> cēnābat, 3, 20. — <sup>4</sup> convīvīs, l. 9.

5

Stories, Fables, and Letters.

7. Augustus and the Veteran.

Imperator Augustus saepe per urbem pedibus ibat summaque <sup>1</sup> comitate adeuntis excipiebat. Convenit eum forte miles veteranus qui, quod in ius vocatus erat, auxilium ab Imperatore petivit.<sup>2</sup> Statim Augustus unum e comitibus<sup>3</sup>





Fig. 6. - Coin of Augustus.

ēlēgit patronum, deumque mīlitem comitārī iussit. Tum veterānus exclāmāvit: "At non ego bello Actiaco vicārium quaesīvī, sed ipse pro tē pūgnāvī," simulque dētēxitcicātrīcēs. Ērubuit Augustus et ipse patronus pauperis veterānī factus est.

# 8. The Wolf and the Dog.

Lupus canem vidēns bene sagīnātum, "Quanta est," 10 inquit," "fēlīcitās tua! Tū, ut vidēris, lautē vīvis, at ego famē ēnecor." Tum canis, "Licet," inquit "mēcum in urbem veniās et eādem fēlīcitāte fruāris." Lupus condicionem accēpit. Dum ūnā eunt, animadvērtit lupus in collo canis attrītos pilos. "Quid hoc est?" inquit. "Num 15 iugum sustinēs? cervīx enim tua tota est glabra." "Nihil est," canis respondit, "sed interdiū mē adligant, ut noctū sim vigilantior; atque haec sunt vestīgia collāris quod cer-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> summõ, p. 3, l.  $23.-^2$  petēbant, 2, 15. $-^3$  comitis, 3, 12. $-^4$  patrönõs, 3, 26. $-^5$  quaerēbant, 2, 16. $-^6$  pauperēs, 4, 20. $-^7$  inquit, 3, 16. $-^8$  ūnā, 4, 11.

 $\mathsf{Digitized} \, \mathsf{by} \, Google$ 

vici circumdarī solet.<sup>1</sup>" Tum lupus, "Valē,<sup>2</sup>" inquit, "amīce! pihil moror fēlīcitātem servitūte ēmptam.") Old Fable.

9. The Jion and the Mouse.

Circum leonem dormientem mūsculī petulantēs cursābant. E quibus cum ūnus per cāsum dormientis caput offendisset, 5 ē somno excitātus sest leo eumque comprehendit. Iam dēvorātūrus erat bēstiolam, miserābiliter tamen orantī benīgnē vītam condonāvit. Paulo spot cum per silvās non satis cautē praedam vestīgāret, in vēnātoris laqueos incidit leo. Frūstrā studēns sē līberāre furibundus rugiēbat. Procul eum audīvit mūsculus celeriterque adventāvit. Iam cum inrētītum eum spectāvisset, cui ipse vītam lībertātemque dēbēret, grāto animo ad laqueos adrēpsit eosque conrosit. Ita leo omnī periculo est līberātus praeclārumque misericordiae suae praemium reportāvit.

# 10. The Dancing Horses.

15 In Ītaliā prope sinum Tarentīnum inter aliās Graecās urbīs sita 10 erat Sybaris, cūius incolae dīvitiīs 11 et lūxuriā ferē 12



FIG. 7. - TIBIAE.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> solēbant, p. 4, l. 15. — <sup>2</sup> valē, 1, 11. — <sup>8</sup> excitāvit, 2, 8. — <sup>4</sup> paulò, 4, 3. — <sup>5</sup> spectat, 4, 7. — <sup>6</sup> animō, 3, 24. — <sup>7</sup> praeclārum, 3, 24. — <sup>8</sup> praemī, 4, 1. — <sup>9</sup> reportāverat, 3, 23. — <sup>10</sup> sitās, 1, 8. — <sup>11</sup> dīvitiās, 3, 6. — <sup>12</sup> ferē, 1, 7.

superābant Corinthios. Artem bellicam contemnēbant,¹ contrā summo cum studio omnibus lūdicrīs vacābant. Lepidē igitur² etiam equos ita instituerant ut inter epulās ad tībiārum numerum saltārent. Sciēbant id Crotoniātae finitimī. Itaque cum aliquando³ bellum gererent cum illīs, in aciem 5 non tubās et tubicinēs sed tībiās et tībicinēs sēcum dūxērunt. Proelī initio⁴ quam diū ēminus pūgnābātur, silēbant illī; ubi vēro ad ferrum et manūs rēs est adducta, subito cantāvērunt⁵ numeros ad saltandum aptos. Vix autem hos audīverant equī Sybarītārum, cum, tamquam mediīs in conviviīs essent, saltāre coepērunt et dominīs strāgem concitāvērunt trīstissimam.²

#### 11. Augustus and the Raven.

Post Actiacam victōriam, quā Caesar Octāviānus Augustus, superātō Antōniō annō ante Chrīstum nātum trīcēsimō prīmō, tōtīus imperī Rōmānī prīncipātum occupāvit, occurrit 15 triumphantī illi quīdam inter grātulantīs corvum tenēns, quem instituerat ut diceret: "Avē," Caesar, victor, imperātor." Mīrātus Caesar officiōsam avem vīgintī mīlibus sēstertiūm ēmit. Paulō post salūtātus similiter ā psittacō etiam hunc emī iussit. Eādem arte in pīcā animadversā hanc 20 quoque ēmit. Hīs exemplīs commōtus pauper quīdam sūtor corvum sibi comparāvit, ut ad eandem vocem eum institueret. Fatīgātus autem labōre saepe avī nōn respondentī dicēbat: "Oleum et operam perdidī." Sīc enim apud Rōmānōs exclāmābant eī quī frūstrā operam cōnsūmpserant. Tandem 25 aliquandō corvus suum illud, "Avē, Caesar, victor, imperātor" didicerat. Iam properat sūtor ad Augustum ut avem vēn-

Cf. ¹ contempsī, p. 3, l. 16. —² igitur, 3, 14. — 8 aliquandō, 3, 20. — 4 quam diū, 4, 10. — 5 cantāvit, 3, 23. — 6 dominō, 4, 12. — 7 trīstissimam, 4, 8. — 8 superābant, l. 1. — 9 quīdam, 3, 10. —  $^{10}$  īnstituerant, l. 3. —  $^{11}$  avē, 3, 8. —  $^{12}$  ēmptam, 6, 2. —  $^{18}$  animadvertit, 5, 14. — 14 frūstrā, 6, 9. —  $^{16}$  discō, 1, 9.

deret. At ille audītā voce, "Iam satis,1" inquit, "domī habeo tālium salūtātorum." Tum corvus trīstem dominī suī voltum animadvertēns crocitat: "Oleum et operam perdidī." Quae rēs rīsum excussit Augusto tantamque praebuit 5 laetitiam ut statim tantī emeret avem quantī etiam tum ēmerat nūllam.

#### 12. The Wolf and the Lamb.

Lupus <sup>2</sup> et āgnus sitientēs ad eundem rīvum vēnerant. Superior lupus, longē īnferior āgnus stābat. Tunc improbus latrō iūrgī causam quaerēns, "Cūr," inquit, "bibentī mihi turbulentam reddidistī aquam?" Āgnus timēns, "Quō modō possum?" inquit; "ā tē enim aqua ad mē dēcurrit." Ille vēritāte reī repulsus: "Hūius annī initiō mihi maledīxistī." "Tum," inquit āgnus, "equidem nātus <sup>4</sup> nōndum eram." "Hercle etiam," respondet lupus, "pater tuus contumēliōsē quondam 15 dīxit dē aviā meā." Atque ita āgnum dīlaniat. Old Fable.

## 13. The Wolf and the Lamb.

Ad rívum eúndem lúpus et ágnus véneránt
Sití compúlsi: súperiór stābát lupús
Longéque inférior ágnus. Túm fauce ímprobá
Latrō íncitátus iúrgií causam íntulít.

"Cūr," ínquit, "túrbuléntam fécistí mihí
Aquám bibénti?" Lánigér contrá timéns:
"Qui póssum, quaésō, fácere quód quererís, lupé?
Ā té dēcúrrit ád meós haustús liquór."
Repúlsus ílle véritátis víribús,

"Ante hós sex ménsīs mále," ait, "díxistí mihí."
Respóndit ágnus: "Équidem nátus nón erám."

Atque ita conréptum lácerat iniūstá necé.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> satis, p. 6, l. 7. — <sup>2</sup> lupus, 5, 10. — <sup>8</sup> quaerēbant, 2, 16. — <sup>4</sup> pā-tum, 7, 14.

"Pater, hércle, túus ibi," inquit, "máledixít mihí,"

Haec própter íllös scrípta est hómines fábulá
Qui fíctis caúsis ínnocéntis ópprimúnt.

Phaedrus.

## 14. The Rivalry of Two Painters.

Initiō quartī ante Christum saeculī duo fuērunt nobilēs pictorēs, alter Zeuxis, alter Parrhasius appellātus. Hī quondam certāmen¹ īnstituērunt dē arte. Zeuxis ūvās pinxerat atque adeo exaequāverat nātūrae vēritātem ut avēs ad pictūram advolārent. Tum Parrhasius tabulam proposuit in quā linteum pinxerat. Quod cum Zeuxis vidēret, vērum esse putāvit linteum, quo pictūra occultārētur. Itaque nihil agente Parrhasio flāgitāvit ut remoto tandem linteo ostenderet pictūram. Io Rīdēns² respondit ille, ipse movēret linteum. Tum Zeuxis cognito errore palmam dedit Parrhasio, quoniam ipse avīs, ille artificem fefellisset.

## 15. The Fox and the Monkey.

In conventû quōdam bēstiārum tam bellē saltāverat sīmia ut cūnctīs prope suffrāgiīs rēx creārētur. Quod cum stultīssimum sesse cōgnōvisset volpēs, callidē sīmiam ā cēterīs animālibus sēvocāvit et hīs verbīs tentāvit, "Rēgnum," inquit, "quoniam tibi obtigit, nōn cēlābō tē quod scīre māgnoper tuā interest." "Quidnam habēs?" interrogat sīmia. "Māgnus thēsaurus," respondet illa, "in sēcrētō 20 quōdam silvae locō abditus, ā patre dē vītā dēcēdente mihi est indicātus, quī iūre rēgnī ad tē iam vidētur pertinēre." "Laudō," inquit sīmia, "officiōsam tuam abstinentiam; cūrā igitur ut clam perveniāmus ad illum locum." Itaque, cum reliqua animālia discessissent, clandestīnīs sēmitīs volpēs 25 recentem rēgem abdūcēbat, et cum diū tōtam silvam peragrāvissent, tandem dēnsa mōnstrāns virgulta, "Hīc," inquit,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> certāmina, p. 2, l. 1. -2 rīdet, 1, 4. -8 saltārent, 7, 4. -4 sufīrāgia, 2, 16. -5 stultē, 3, 16. -6 cēlāvit, 4, 3. -7 māgnopere, 4, 4. -8 officiōsam, 7, 18.

"dīcēbat pater absconditum esse thēsaurum." Iam cupidē illūc penetrābat sīmia, sed subitō¹ in ² vēnātōris laqueōs incidit. Frūstrā cum implōrāvisset amīcī auxilium, sērō sēnsit cōnsilium et temperantiam rēgī magis opus esse quam 5 artem saltandī. Volpēs autem, convocātīs bēstiīs omnibus, trepidantem in laqueīs ostendēns ³ sīmiam, "Habētis iam," inquit, "saltantem vestrum rēgem."

#### 16. The River-God and the Golden Axe.

Resarciēbat pauper quīdam faber nāvem in fluviō ad ancoram dēligātam. Inter opus excidit eī secūris et in aquam to dēmersa est. Tum ille in nāvī sedēns cum flētū et lūctū iactūram dēplōrābat. Quās miserābilīs vocēs cum audīret



Fig. 8. - Personification of the River Tiber.

deus fluvī, ēmersit et quid reī esset interrogāvit.<sup>5</sup> "Ēheu," respondit faber, "secūris mea incautō mihi excidit in profundum neque habeō quō emam alteram." Immersit sē deus et paulō post revertit dextrā gerēns secūrim, non eam tamen quam āmiserat faber, sed auream, et num haec esset ea quam

Cf. <sup>1</sup> subito, p. 7, l. 8. — <sup>2</sup> vēnātōris laqueōs incidit, 6, 8. — <sup>8</sup> ostenderet, 9, 10. — <sup>4</sup> dēplōrāns, 3, 16. — <sup>6</sup> interrogat, 9, 19. — <sup>6</sup> opposite, cautē, 6, 8. — <sup>7</sup> emeret, 8, 5.

āmīsisset interrogāvit. Negāvit vir probus.1 Iterum igitur sē immersit deus reportāvitque aliam eamque argenteam. Sed cum në hanc quidem suam esse faber dixisset, postrēmō eam ipsam secūrim quae dēciderat exhibuit deus, quam laetus ille agnovit. Hac probitate delectatus deus 5 omnīs illās eī secūrīs donāvit. Posteā, cum haec multīs nārrāvisset faber, alius quidam, ut simili locuplētārētur fortūnā, ipse securim suam in fluvium suā sponte dēmīsit et iūxtā eum adsīdēns māgnā voce ēdidit lamenta. Adpāruit deus et querēlārum causā audītā auream ostendit secūrim, 10 interrogans eane esset cuius iacturam deploraret. Ille vero laetus, "Sānē," inquit, "haec est mea." At deus īrātus, "Apage," inquit, "homo avare et mendax, tu neque hanc habēbis neque tuam." Haec ubi dixit, cum secūrī immersus est in undās. Old Fable.

### 17. The Husbandman and his Sons.

Agricola senex cum mortem sibi adpropinquāre sentīret,<sup>4</sup> filiōs convocāvit, quōs, ut fierī solet,<sup>5</sup> interdum discordāre sciēbat, et fascem virgulārum adferrī iubet. Quibus adlātīs fīliōs hortābātur ut hunc fascem frangerent. Quod cum facere non possent, distribuit singulās virgās, eīs- 20 que celeriter frāctīs, docuit illos quam fīrma rēs esset concordia quamque imbēcillis discordia.

Old Fable.

# 18. Demosthenes and the Judges.

Dēmosthenēs, clārus 6 ille ōrātor, cum aliquandō in causā capitālī quendam dēfenderet atque iūdicēs vidēret parum attentōs, "Paulisper," inquit, "aurīs mihi praebēte 7 rem 25 nārrātūrō novam atque audītū iucundam." Ad quae verba cum illī iam aurīs adrēxissent, "Adulēscēns," inquit, "quī-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> opp. improbus, p. 8, l. 8. -2 reportāverat, 3, 23. -3 ēdēbantur, 2, 14. -4 sēnsit, 10, 4. -5 solēbant, 4, 15. -6 synonym, nobilēs, 9, 3. -7 inquit, 3, 16. -8 praebuit, 8, 4.

Digitized by Google

dam asinum¹ condūxerat, quō Athēnīs Megaram veherētur. Mediā ferē³ viā cum aestus merīdiānus ingravēsceret neque arborēs³ aut tēcta umbram praebērent, asinum ille sustinuit et dēpositīs clītellīs ita in eīs cōnsēdit ut animālis umbrā 5 obtegerētur. Id vērō agāsō vetābat, asinum clāmāns locātum esse, nōn umbram asinī. Alter ē contrāriō contendēbat, quoniam umbra sēparārī nōn posset ab asinō, necessāriō eam ūnā⁴ cum asinō esse locātam. Atque ea rixa adeō inter eōs exārsit ut etiam pūgnīs certārent. Tandem in iūs⁵ ambulant.⁶" Hāctenus ēnārrātā historiolā, ubi iūdicēs dīligenter vīdit auscultantīs, repente Dēmosthenēs ē suggestū dēscendit. Tum revocātus ā iūdicībus rogātusque⁻ ut reliquam fābulam pergeret ēnārrāre, "Quid!" inquit, "dē asinī umbrā libet audīre, causam hominis dē vītā perīclītantis nōn audiētis?"

## 19. The Death of Pompey.

Pompēius, dēpositō adeundae Syriae consilio et aeris māgno pondere ad mīlitārem usum in nāvīs impositō duobusque mīlibus hominum armātīs, Pēlūsium pervēnit. Ibi cāsū 10 rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer aetāte, māgnīs copiis cum sorore Cleopātrā bellum gerēns, quam paucīs ante mēnsibus per suos propinquos atque amīcos rēgno expulerat; castraque Cleopātrae non longo spatio ab ēius castrīs distābant. Ad eum Pompēius mīsit, ut pro hospitio atque amīcitīa patris Alexandrīā reciperētur atque illūus opibus in calamitāte tegerētur. Sed quī ab eo missī erant, confecto lēgāti-25 onis officio, līberius cum mīlitībus rēgis conloquī coepērunt eosque hortārī ut suum officium Pompēio praestārent, nēve ēius fortunam dēspicerent. Hīs tunc cognitīs rēbus, amīcī rēgis, quī propter aetātem ēius in procurātione erant rēgnī,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> asinum, p. 3, l. 10. — <sup>2</sup> ferē, 1, 7. — <sup>8</sup> arborēs, 1, 6. — <sup>4</sup> ūnā, 4, 11. — <sup>5</sup> iūs, 5, 3. — <sup>6</sup> ambulō,  $I_1$ , 5. — <sup>7</sup> rogāvit, 3, 11. — <sup>8</sup> adeuntīs, 5, 2. — <sup>9</sup> perveniāmus, 9, 24. — <sup>10</sup> cāsum, 6, 4.



FIG. 9. - GNABUS POMPBIUS MAGNUS.

sīve timōre adductī nē Pompēius Alexandriam Aegyptumque occupāret,¹ sīve dēspectā ēius fortūnā, eīs quī erant ab eō missī palam līberāliter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venīre iussērunt; ipsī, clam² cōnsiliō initō, Achillan, praefectum 5 rēgium, singulārī hominem audāciā, et L. Septimium, tribūnum mīlitum, ad interficiendum Pompēium mīsērunt. Ab hīs līberāliter ipse appellātus nāviculam parvulam³ cōnscendit cum paucīs⁴ suis, et ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō interficitur.

CAESAR: Bell. Civ. iii, 103.

#### 20. Niobe and her Children.

Niobē Tantalī, Phrygiae rēgis, filia et Amphīonis, rēgis

Thēbānōrum, uxor erat. Erat autem fēmina et pulcherrima
et superbissima, non solum propter genus et formam mari-



FIG. 10. - NIOBR.

tique potentiam sed etiam propter mägnum liberörum numerum. Septem enim filii erant septemque filiae. Superbia autem ei tristitiae acerbissimae causa liberisque causa per-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> occupāvit, p. 7, l. 15. — <sup>2</sup> opp. palam. — <sup>8</sup> parvulum, 3, 17. — <sup>4</sup> opp. multīs. — <sup>6</sup> liberīs, 2, 7.

10

niciei fuit. Nam cum olim 1 Thebanorum sacerdotes et feminae Lătonae, mâtri Apollinis et Dianae, sacra pararent, Niobe eās vituperāvit. "Cūr," inquit, "mātrī duōrum līberōrum immolātis? Mihi līberī sunt quattuordecim, etiam ego sum genere divino. Cur non mihi immolatis?" Ea verba Latonae 5 îram <sup>2</sup> excităvērunt, liberosque ea oravit <sup>8</sup> ut contumeliam vindicārent. Itaque Apollo et Diāna in arcem Thēbārum volāvērunt4 et omnis quattuordecim Niobae liberos sagittis suis necāvērunt. Māter autem misera in saxum mūtāta est, et etiam nunc dolor ei lacrimās perpetuās movet.

## 21. Crœsus, King of Lydia.

- 1. Croesus, rex Lydorum, et regiarum opum 5 heres fuerat et ipse māgnam potentiam et māgnās dīvitiās 6 sibi parāverat. Itaque fāma dīvitiārum ēius non solum Asiam sed etiam Europam compleverat multique venerunt regem visum. Inter eos fuit Solon Atheniensis, qui civibus suis auctor 7 novarum 15 lēgum fuerat et inter septem sapientis numerābātur. Croesus interrogāvit 8 num ipse omnium hominum fēlīcissimus esset. Hoc Solon negāvit. "Nēmo enim," inquit, "ante mortem beātus est." Hōc responsum rēgī tum displicuit; sed post breve tempus sēnsit<sup>9</sup> quam vērum esset. Illis enim 20 temporibus Cyrus Persarum et Mēdorum rēgnum obtinēbat, et gentës propinquae 10 victoriis ëius terrebantur. Ut hunc impediret et coerceret, Croesus bellum contra eum paravit. Eodem tempore oraculum Delphicum per legatos de exitu belli interrogāvit. Respondit deus: "Croesus trānsitū flūminis 25 quod interest inter Persās et Lydos māgnum rēgnum dēlēbit."
- 2. Croesus, cum hoc responsum comperisset, victoriam certam spērābat et copiis 11 suis Cyri regnum intravit. Is autem

Cf. 1 quondam, p. 9, 1. 4. -2 iram, 4, 3. -3 oranti, 6, 6. -4 advolārent, 9, 7.— 5 opibus, 12, 23.—6 dīvitiās, 3, 6.—7 auctorēs, 3, 26. - s interrogat, 9, 19. - sēnsit, 10, 4. - 10 propinquōs, 12, 20. -11 copiis, 12, 18.

aderat et cum Croesō dīmicāvit.¹ Sed ita pūgnātum est ut neque hīc neque ille victor esset. Sed cum alterō proeliō ad urbem Croesī pūgnārētur, Cÿrus victōriam ā Lydīs reportāvit.² Tum Croesus captīvus ā Cyrō damnātus est ut cremārētur. 5 Cum māgna cōpia līgnōrum adportāta esset et Croesus vinctus mortem exspectāret, māgnā vōce clāmāvit: "Ō Solōn, Solōn, Solōn!" Cyrus autem, cum hōc audīvisset,



FIG. 11. - CROSUS ON THE FUNERAL PILE.

scīre<sup>8</sup> dēsīderāvit quid illīs verbīs sīgnificāret. Tum Croesus nārrāvit quid Solon Athēniēnsis dē fortūnā hūmānā docuisset.<sup>4</sup> 10 Hīs verbīs Cyrus ita commotus <sup>5</sup> et perturbātus est ut Croesum līberāret et rogāret <sup>6</sup> ut suus amīcus esset. Itaque Croesus in societāte rēgis mānsit et eī saepe consiliīs suīs profuit. Cyrus autem ante mortem filium monuit ut hanc Croesī senis <sup>7</sup> amīcitiam conservāret.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> dimicantis, p. 2, l. 4. — <sup>2</sup> reportāverat, 3, 23. — <sup>8</sup> sciēbant, 7, 4. — <sup>4</sup> docuit, 11, 21. — <sup>5</sup> commōtus, 3, 27. — <sup>6</sup> rogāvit, 3, 11. — <sup>7</sup> senex, 11, 16.



## 22. An Epitome of Roman History.

Prīmus urbis Romae annus fuit ante Christum nātum septingentēsimus quinquāgēsimus tertius. Regēbant civitātem initio rēgēs per annos ferē ducentos quinquāgintā, quam aetātem quasi înfantiam nominēs populi Romāni. Anno quingentesimo nono, postquam detrusus est ex regno 5 Tarquinius Superbus, creātī sunt duo annuī consules, ut, sī ūnus malus esset, alter eum habēns potestātem similem coerceret. Quem morem 1 observaverunt Romani quinque fere saecula. Hoc tantum temporis spatium<sup>2</sup> sī dīvīseris in duās partīs aeguālis, habēbis iam populi Romāni adulēscen- 10 tiam et aetātem mediam, quārum utraque annōrum numerō exaequat înfantiam. Neque enim erraverunt viri docti, qui tamquam<sup>8</sup> per lūdicrum ad calculōs revocantēs Rōmānōrum memoriam tria statuērunt ducentorum quinquāgintā ferē 4 annorum spatia. Nam redāctās habuerunt Romānī sub 15 potestātem suam Ītaliae gentis ante Christum nātum mediō saeculo tertio, et ubi anno ducentesimo sexagesimo quarto bellum indixērunt Poenis, propagare coepērunt imperi terminos supra mare quod vocamus medium. Iure igitur eo temporis momento statuimus novae aetātis initium. Finītum 20 autem est prīmum illud bellum Pūnicum annō ducentēsimō quadrāgēsimo prīmo. Bello Pūnico secundo bellāvērunt Romani cum Hannibale ab anno ducentesimo duodevicesimō ūsque ad ēius saeculī ultimum; bellō Pūnicō tertiō finito deleverunt Carthaginem aemulam anno centesimo 25 quadragesimo sexto, quo anno etiam Corinthus diruta est. E proximo saeculo memoriae mandatum est necatum C. Iūlium Caesarem anno quadrāgēsimo quarto, institūtum 7 dominātum ab Octāviāno Augusto anno trīcēsimo prīmo.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> mōrēs, p. 4, l. 10. - <sup>2</sup> spatium, 4, 16. - <sup>8</sup> tamquam, 7, 10. - <sup>4</sup> ferē, 1, 7. - <sup>5</sup> iūs, 5, 3. - <sup>6</sup> dēlēbit, 15, 26. - <sup>7</sup> īnstituērunt, 2, 1.

## 23. The Omen of the Puppy.

L. Aemilius Paulus ēius quī ad Cannās cecidit filius erat. Cōnsul sortītus est Macedoniam prōvinciam, in quā Persēs, Philippī fīlius, paternī in Rōmānōs odī hērēs,¹ bellum renovāverat. Cum adversus Persēn profectūrus esset et domum 5 suam ad vesperum redīret, filiolam suam Tertiam, quae tunc erat admodum parva, ōsculāns animadvertit ² trīsticulam.



FIG. 12. - COIN OF ABMILIUS.

"Quid est," inquit, "mea Tertia? Quid trīstis es?" "Mī pater," inquit illa, "Persa periit.3" Erat autem mortuus catellus eō nōmine. Tum ille artius puellam complexus, "Accito piō," inquit, "mea fīlia, ōmen." Ita ex fortuītō dictō quasi spem certam clārissimī triumphī animō praesūmpsit. Ingressus deinde Macedoniam rēctā ad hostem perrēxit.5

# 24. Scipio Aemilianus.

Scīpiō Aemiliānus, cum in Hispāniā sub Lūcullō duce mīlitāret atque Intercatia, praevalidum oppidum, circumse-15 dērētur, prīmus moenia ēius cōnscendit 6; neque erat in eō exercitū quisquam, aut nōbilitāte aut animī indole 7 aut futūrīs āctīs, cūius magis salūtī parcī et cōnsulī dēbēret. 8 Sed tunc clārissimus 9 quisque iuvenum prō amplificandā et tuendā patriā plūrimum labōris āc perīculī 10 sustinēbat, dēforme sibi

Cf. <sup>1</sup> hērēs, p. 15, l. 11. — <sup>2</sup> animadvertit, 5, 14. — <sup>8</sup> periērunt, 3, 7. — <sup>4</sup> mortuōrum, 2, 14. — <sup>6</sup> pergeret, 12, 13. — <sup>6</sup> cōnscendit, 14, 7. — <sup>7</sup> indolēs, 2, 13. — <sup>8</sup> dēbēret, 6, 12. — <sup>9</sup> clārus, 11, 23. — <sup>10</sup> perīculō, 6, 13.

existimāns quos dignitāte praestāret 1 ab his virtūte superārī. Ideoque Aemiliānus hanc mīlitiam, aliīs propter difficultātem vītantībus, sibi depoposcit.

Valerius Maximus.

## 25. The Battle of Thermopylae.

- 1. Cum Graeci angustiās Thessaliae non defendissent, Thermopylās, portam Graeciae, occupāre constituērunt. Ita- 5 que octo milia militum ab eis ad illum locum missa sunt. copiis<sup>2</sup> regem Lacedaemoniorum praefecerunt, cui nomen erat Leonidas. Is enim tanto patriae amore flagrabat ut cum Persis pūgnāre cuperet, etiam sī ā suīs magistrātibus non concessum esset. Itaque trecentos Lacedaemonios qui 10 idem cogitabant contra Persas eduxit et cum ceteris copiis Graecorum in Thermopylis Persarum adventum exspectavit. Xerxes autem, cum comperisset <sup>8</sup> quantis copiis angustiae defenderentur, initio 4 rīsit 5; tum, quod Graecorum fortem animum non perspexerat, legātum 6 ad eos misit ut arma ponerent. 15 Sed is nihil perfecit. Notum' est quid illi a milite Lacedaemonio responsum sit, cum dixisset: "Sagittae 8 nostrae vobis lūcem diēī tegent." "Itaque," ille inquit, "in umbrā dīmicābimus.10"
- 2. Quattuor diēs Xerxēs cum multīs suīs mīlibus hominum 20 exspectāvit; quintō diē, cum Leōnidās cōpiās nōn abdūxisset, proelium commīsit. Sed māgnus numerus Persārum aut volnerātus aut interfectus ā Graecīs cecidit 11; reliquī fugērunt. Tum decem mīlia ēlēctōrum mīlitum, quibus nōmen Immortālēs erat, ā rēge in angustiās coniecta sunt. Sed etiam hī 25 cessērunt. Cum rēx iam dē victōriā dēspērāret, prōditor inventus est. Ephiāltēs enim, quī Persārum pecūniā corruptus erat, Persīs mōnstrāvit 12 quā viā trānsitum efficerent

Cf. <sup>1</sup> praestārent, p. 12, l. 26. — <sup>2</sup> cōpiīs, 12, 18. — <sup>8</sup> comperisset, 15, 27. — <sup>4</sup> initiō, 17, 3. — <sup>5</sup> rīdet, 1, 4. — <sup>6</sup> lēgātōs, 15, 24. — <sup>7</sup> syn. sciēbat, 11, 18. — <sup>8</sup> sagittīs, 15, 8. — <sup>9</sup> umbram, 12, 3. — <sup>10</sup> dīmicāvit, 16, 1. — <sup>11</sup> cecidit, 18, 1. — <sup>12</sup> mōnstrāns, 9, 27.

et ab alterō latere impetum in Graecōs facerent. Cum Leōnidās hūius reī nūntium accēpisset, māgnam partem exercitūs remīsit. Ipse cum exiguis cōpiīs mānsit.<sup>2</sup> Accēperat enim hōc ōrāculum: "Aut dēlēbitur s Sparta aut rēx 5 interficiētur." Trecentī igitur illī Lacedaemoniī et septingentī Thespiēnsēs Persārum impetum sustinuērunt; animīs ferōcissimīs contrā eōs cucurrērunt et, cum diū pūgnāvissent multōsque hostīs interfēcissent, omnēs cecidērunt.

#### 26. A Roman Maiden.

Trīstissimus haec tibi scrībō, Fundānī nostrī filiā minōre dēfūnctā, quā puellā nihil umquam fēstīvius, amābilius, nec modo longiōre vītā sed prope immortālitāte dīgnius vīdī.



FIG. 13. - A ROMAN MAIDEN.

Nondum annos quattuordecim impleverat,6 et iam illī anīlis prūdentia, mātronālis gravitās erat, et tamen suāvitās puel-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> impetum, p. 2, l. 9. — <sup>2</sup> mānsit, 16, 12. — <sup>8</sup> dēlēbit, 15, 26. — <sup>4</sup> igitur, 3, 14. — <sup>5</sup> trīstissimam, 4, 8. — <sup>6</sup> implent, 1, 3.

lāris cum virgināli verēcundiā. Ut illa patris cervīcibus 1 inhaerēbat! Ut nos amicos paternos et amanter et modestē complectébatur! Ut nûtrices, ut paedagogos, ut praeceptores pro suo quemque officio 2 diligebat! Quam studiose, quam intellegenter lectitabat! Ut parce custoditeque ludebat! 5 Quā illa temperantiā, quā patientiā, quā etiam constantiā novissimam valētūdinem tulit! Medicīs 8 obsequēbātur, sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur, ipsamque sē dēstitūtam corporis vīribus vigore animī sustinēbat. Dūrāvit hīc illī ūsque 4 ad extrēmum nec aut spatio valētūdinis aut metū mortis înfrāc- 10 tus est, quo plūrīs graviorēsque nobis causās relinqueret et desideri et doloris. 5 \overline{O} triste plane acerbumque f funus! \overline{O} morte ipsā mortis tempus indīgnius! Iam dēstināta erat ēgregiō iuvenī, iam ēlēctus nūptiārum diēs, iam nos vocātī. Ouod gaudium 8 quo maerore mūtātum 9 est! Non possum 15 exprimere verbīs quantum animō volnus accēperim, cum audivi Fundānum ipsum praecipientem, quod in vestīs, margarita, gemmās fuerat ērogātūrus, hōc in tūs et unguenta et odörēs impenderētur. PLINY : Epist. v. 16.

## 27. Aemilius Paulus and his Sons.

Aemilius Paulus, nunc fēlicissimī <sup>10</sup> nunc miserrimī patris <sup>20</sup> clārissima <sup>11</sup> repraesentātiō, ex quattuor filiis formae īnsīgnis, ēgregiae indolis, <sup>13</sup> duōs iūre adoptiōnis in Cornēliam Fabiamque gentem trānslātōs sibi ipsī dēnegāvit; duōs eī fortūna abstulit. Quōrum alter triumphum patris fūnere <sup>13</sup> suō quartum ante diem praecessit, alter in triumphālī currū cōn- <sup>25</sup> spectus post diem tertium exspīrāvit. Itaque quī ad dōnandōs ūsque līberōs <sup>14</sup> abundāverat in orbitāte subitō dēstitūtus est. Quem cāsum quō rōbore animī sustinuerit, ōrātiōne quam

Cf. I cervīx, p. 5, l. 16. — 2 officium, 12, 26. — 8 medicī, 1, 2. — 4 ūsque, 17, 24. — 6 dolor, 15, 10. — 6 acerbissimae, 14, 14. — 7 ēgregius, 3, 20. — 8 gaudiō, 3, 24. — 9 mūtāta est, 15, 9. —  $^{10}$  fēlīcissimus, 15, 17. —  $^{11}$  clārus, 11, 23. —  $^{12}$  indole, 18, 16. —  $^{18}$  fūnus, l. 12. —  $^{14}$  līberīs, 2, 7.

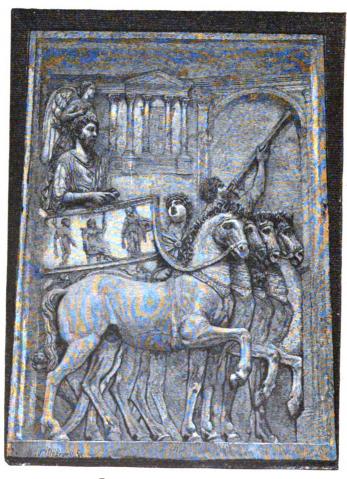


Fig. 14 - A TRIUMPHAL CHARIOT.

dē rēbus ā sē gestis apud populum habuit hanc adiciendo clausulam nūllī ambiguum relīquit: "Cum in māximō prōventū fēlīcitātis¹ nostrae, Quirītēs, timērem nē quid malī fortūna mōlīrētur, Iovem optimum māximum Iūnōnemque rēgīnam et Minervam precātus sum ut, sī quid adversī 5 populō Rōmānō imminēret, tōtum in meam domum converterētur. Quāpropter bene habet; adnuendō enim vōtīs meīs id ēgērunt ut vōs potius meō cāsū² doleātis quam ego vestrō ingemīscerem."

### 28. Androclus and the Lion.

### The Gentle Lion.

1. Imperator Romanus olim spectaculum splendidum para- 10 vit ut populum delectaret.8 Constituerat 4 autem ut in eo hominēs cum bēstiis feris pūgnārent. Itaque imperāvit ut omnēs servi qui capitis damnāti 5 essent eo die cum leonibus, tigridibus, aliīsque bēstiis saevīs dīmicārent.6 Bēstiae autem famē incitātae erant. Unus ex illīs servis miserīs Androclus 15 erat. Cum dies lūdorum venisset, ille cum reliquis sociis in circum adductus est et bēstiae multae in eos ēmissae sunt. Androclum autem leő ingéns 8 ex reliquis élégerat 9 et contra eum cucurrit.10 Ille timore commotus erat, cum adversarium suum conspiceret, et mortem exspectavit. Subito 11 autem leo 20 passum retinuit, et Androclus, cui animus crēverat, bēstiam, quae se ad pedes eius proiciebat, magna laetitia 12 excepit. Omnēs qui aderant mirāti 18 sunt. Imperātor autem, qui ipse rem mīrābilem viderat. Androclum ad sē vocāvit et eum interrogāvit quā rē grātiam leonis meritus esset. 25

Cf. <sup>1</sup> fēlīcitās, p. 5, l. 11. — <sup>2</sup> cāsum, 6, 4. — <sup>3</sup> dēlectātus, 11, 5. — <sup>4</sup> cōnstituērunt, 19, 5. — <sup>5</sup> damnātus est, 16, 4. — <sup>6</sup> dīmicāvit, 16, 1. — <sup>7</sup> famē, 5, 12. — <sup>8</sup> ingentem, 4, 8. — <sup>9</sup> ēlēgit, 5, 5. — <sup>10</sup> cucurrērunt, 20, 7. — <sup>11</sup> subitō, 7, 8. — <sup>12</sup> laetitiam, 8, 5. — <sup>18</sup> mīrātus, 7, 18.

#### The Cause Explained.

2. Tum Androclus ita nārrāvit: "Cum aliquandō in officiīs¹ meis peccāvissem, fugī ut poenam dominī sevērī ēvitārem. In fugā pervēnī ad spēluncam, in quam ingressus sum ut mē occultārem.² Quantō autem terrōre captus 5 sum, cum eam etiam leō intrāret! Iam dē vītā dēspērābam. Nam effugiendī facultātem nōn vidēbam.

"Sed leō mē nōn adgressus est, sed trīstī clāmōre dolōrēs \* māgnōs indicāvit. Ego autem in pede ēius spīnam māgnam cōnspiciēbam, quam extrāxī. Ex illō tempore leō grātus in societāte meā mānsit. Habēbam eum in locō amīcī et servī. Cotīdiē ex spēluncā, in quā ūnā habitābāmus, profectus est ut vēnandō nōbīs cibum parāret. Et semper praedam adportāvit.

"Sed post breve tempus taedium hūius vītae mē cēpit et 15 ex illīs locīs discēdere 7 cōnstituī. Cum leō, amīcus fidēlis, abesset ut vēnārētur, spēluncam relīquī. Post trīs diēs in itinere ā mīlitibus captus sum et in hanc urbem, in quā dominus meus erat, missus sum. Ille cūrāvit ut capitis damnārer. Iam in vītae periculō versābar, sed ex illō mē 20 leō grātus, quī mē cōgnōvit, ēripuit."

Imperator, qui hac re mirabili motus erat, Androclo non solum libertatem sed etiam leonem donavit.

## 29. Two Letters of Cicero to his Wife.

#### 1. Tullius Terentiae Suae S.

S. V. B. E. E. V. Valētūdinem tuam velim cūrēs dīligentissimē. Nam mihi et scrīptum et nūntiātum est tē in febrim subitō incidisse. Quod celeriter mē fēcistī dē Caesaris

Cf. <sup>1</sup> officio, p. 21, l. 4. - <sup>2</sup> occultaretur, 9, 9. - <sup>3</sup> dolor, 15, 10. - <sup>4</sup> mānsit, 16, 12. - <sup>5</sup> cibum, 4, 21. - <sup>6</sup> praedam, 6, 8. - <sup>7</sup> discessissent, 9, 25. - <sup>8</sup> donāvit, 11, 6. - <sup>9</sup> valēs, 1, 1. - <sup>10</sup> incidit, 6, 8.

litteris certiorem, fēcistī mihi grātum. Item posthāc, sī quid opus 1 erit, sī quid acciderit novī, faciēs ut sciam. Cūrā ut valeās. Valē. D. iiii. Nonās Iūniās.

#### 2. Tullius S. D. Terentiae Suae.

In Tusculānum nos ventūros putāmus aut Nonis aut postrīdiē. Ibi ut sint omnia parāta. Plūrēs enim fortasse 5 nobiscum erunt, et ut arbitror diūtius ibi commorābimur. Lābrum sī in balneo non est, ut sit; item cētera quae sunt ad vīctum et valētūdinem necessāria. Valē. Kal. Octobr. dē Venusino.

### 30. A Roman Ultimatum.

Gāius Popīlius ā senātū lēgātus 4 ad Antiochum missus, ut 10 bello se quo Ptolemaeum lacessebat abstineret, cum ad eum vēnisset atque is prompto animo et amīcissimo voltū dexteram ei porrëxisset, invicem illi suam porrigere noluit, sed tabellās senātūs consultum continentis trādidit. Quās ut lēgit Antiochus, dīxit sē cum amicīs conlocūtūrum.6 Indī- 15 gnātus Popilius quod aliquam moram interposuisset, virgā 7 solum quo insistebat denotavit et, "Prius," inquit, "quam hoc circulo excedas, da responsum quod senatui referam." Non legatum locutum, sed ipsam curiam ante oculos positam 8 crēderēs; continuō enim rēx adfirmāvit fore nē amplius 20 de se Ptolemaeus quereretur, ac tum demum Popilius manum ēius tamquam socī adprehendit. Quam efficāx est animī sermonisque abscisa gravitas! Eodem momento 9 Syriae rēgnum 10 terruit, 11 Aegypti tēxit.12 VALERIUS MAXIMUS.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> opus, p. 10, l. 4. — <sup>2</sup> moror, 6, 2. — <sup>8</sup> valētūdinem, 24, 23. — <sup>4</sup> lēgātōs, 15, 24. — <sup>6</sup> voltum, 8, 3. — <sup>6</sup> conloquī, 12, 25. — <sup>7</sup> virgās, 11, 20. — <sup>8</sup> pōnerent, 19, 15. — <sup>9</sup> mōmentō, 17, 20. — <sup>10</sup> rēgnum, 9, 17. — <sup>11</sup> terrēbantur, 15, 22. — <sup>12</sup> tegent, 19, 18.

### 31. The Haunted House.

Erat Athēnīs spatiosa et capāx domus, sed īnfāmis et pestilēns. Per silentium noctis sonus ferrī et, sī attenderēs ācrius, strepitus vinculorum longius prīmo, deinde ē proximo reddēbātur. Mox dadpārēbat īdolon, senex māciē et squālore confectus, promissā barbā, horrentī capillo; crūribus com-

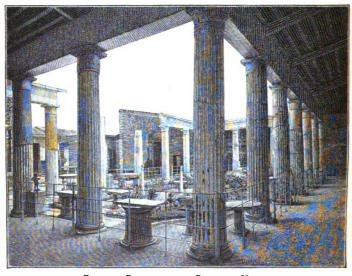


FIG. 15. - PERISTYLE OF A POMPEIAN HOUSE.

pedēs, manibus catēnās gerēbat <sup>6</sup> quatiēbatque. Inde inhabitantibus trīstēs dīraeque noctēs per metum vigilābantur; vigiliam morbus et crēscente formīdine mors sequēbātur. Nam interdiū <sup>7</sup> quoque, quamquam abscesserat imāgō, memoria imāginis oculīs inerrābat, longiorque causīs timōris timor erat. Dēserta inde et damnāta <sup>8</sup> sōlitūdine domus tōtaque

Cf. <sup>1</sup> ferrum, p. 7, l. 8.—<sup>2</sup> prīmō, 2, 13.—<sup>8</sup> reddidistī, 8, 10.—
<sup>4</sup> mox, 1, 10.—<sup>5</sup> cōnfectō, 12, 24.—<sup>6</sup> gerēns, 10, 15.—<sup>7</sup> interdiū, 5, 17.
—<sup>8</sup> damnātus est, 16, 4.

5

illi monstro relicta; proscrībēbātur tamen seu quis emere¹ seu quis condūcere² ignārus tantī malī vellet. Venit Athēnās philosophus Athēnodorus, legit titulum, audītoque pretio, quia suspecta vilitās, percontātus, omnia docētur³āc nihilo minus, immo tanto magis, condūcit.

Ubi coepit advesperāscere, iubet sternī sibi prīmā domūs parte, poscit pugillāris, stilum, lūmen; suōs omnīs in interiora dimittit, ipse ad scribendum animum, oculos, manum intendit, ne vacua mens audīta simulācra et inānis sibi metūs fingeret. Initio, quale ubique, silentium noctis, dein concuti 10 ferrum, vincula movērī; ille non tollere oculos, non remittere stilum, sed offirmare animum auribusque praetendere; tum crêbrescere fragor.4 adventare.8 et iam ut in limine, iam ut intrā līmen audīrī; respicit, videt āgnoscitque 6 nārrātam sibi effigiem. Stābat innuēbatque digito 7 similis vocantī. contra ut paulum exspectaret manu significat rursusque ceris et stilo incumbit; illa scribentis capiti catenis insonabat. Respicit rūrsus idem quod prius innuentem, nec morātus 8 tollit lümen et sequitur. Ībat illa lento gradu quasi gravis vinculis. Postquam deflexit in aream domūs, repente 20 dīlapsa dēserit comitem; dēsertus herbās et folia concerpta sīgnum loco ponit. Postero die adit magistrātūs, monet ut illum locum effodi iubeant. Inveniuntur ossa inserta catenis et implicita, quae corpus aevo terraque putrefactum nūda et exēsa reliquerat vinculis; conlēcta pūblicē sepeliuntur. 25 Domus posteā rīte conditīs mānibus caruit.

PLINY: Epist. vii, 27.

# 32 An Eclipse Foretold.

Castris permūnītis, C. Sulpicius Gallus, tribūnus militum secundae legionis, qui praetor superiore anno fuerat, consulis

Cf. <sup>1</sup> ēmerat, p. 8, l. 5.—<sup>2</sup> condūxerat, 12, I.—<sup>8</sup> docuit, II, 2I.—
<sup>4</sup> fragōre, 4, 7.—<sup>5</sup> adventāvit, 6, 10.—<sup>6</sup> āgnōvit, II, 5.—<sup>7</sup> digitīs, 4, 21.—<sup>8</sup> moror, 6, 2.—<sup>9</sup> repente, 12, II.

permissū ad contionem militibus vocātīs, pronuntiāvit nocte proximā, nē quis id pro portento acciperet, ab horā secundā üsque 1 ad quartam horam noctis lünam defectüram esse. Id, quia naturali ordine statis temporibus fiat,2 et sciri ante et Itaque quem ad modum, quia certi solis 5 praedici posse. lūnaeque et ortūs et occāsūs sint, nunc plēno orbe, nunc senëscentem exiguo 8 cornū fulgëre lūnam non mīrārentur,4 ita në obscūrārī quidem, cum condātur umbrā terrae, trahere in prodigium debere.5 Nocte quam pridie nonas Septembris 10 însecuta est dies, edită hora cum luna defecisset, Romanis militibus Galli sapientia prope divina vidēri; Macedonas ut trīste prodigium, occāsum regnī perniciemque 6 gentis portendēns, movit, nec aliter vātēs. Clāmor ululātusque in castrīs Macedonum fuit, donec lūna in suam lūcem ēmer-15 sit.7 LIVY, 44, 37.

## 33. Anthony and the Usurer.

Antōnius sacrificus invītārat ūnum atque alterum bellum homunculum forte obviōs in viā. Cum redīsset 8 domum, repperit culīnam frīgidam, nec erat nummus in loculīs, — quod illī nēquāquam erat īnsolēns. Hīc opus 9 erat celerī 20 cōnsiliō. Subdūxit sē tacītus, et ingressus 10 culīnam faenerātōris quīcum illī erat familiāritās, quod frequenter ageret cum illō, dīgressā famulā subdūxit ūnam ex ōllīs aēneīs ūnā 11 cum carnībus iam coctīs, āc veste 12 tēctam 13 dēferēbat domum; dat coquae; iubet prōtinus effundī carnīs et iūs in aliam 25 ōllam fictilem, simulque faenerātōris ōllam dēfricārī dōnec 14 nitēret. Eō factō mittit puerum ad faenerātōrem quī dēpositō pīgnore drachmās duās ā faenerātōre sūmat mūtuō, sed accipiat chīrographum quod testārētur tālem 15 ōllam missam

Cf. <sup>1</sup> ūsque, p. 17, l. 24. — <sup>2</sup> fierī, 11, 17. — <sup>8</sup> exiguīs, 20, 3. — <sup>4</sup> mīrātī sunt, 23, 23. — <sup>6</sup> dēbēret, 6, 12. — <sup>6</sup> perniciēī, 14, 14. — <sup>7</sup> ēmersit, 10, 12. — <sup>8</sup> redīret, 18, 5. — <sup>9</sup> opus, 10, 4. — <sup>10</sup> ingressus, 18, 11. — <sup>11</sup> ūnā, 4, 11. — <sup>12</sup> vestīs, 21, 17. — <sup>18</sup> tegerētur, 12, 24. — <sup>14</sup> dōnec, l. 14. — <sup>15</sup> tālium, 8, 2.

ad ipsum. Faenerātor non āgnoscēns 1 ollam, utpote defrictam āc nitentem, recipit pīgnus, dat chīrographum, et numerat 2 pecūniam; eā pecūniā puer emit 8 vīnum. Ita prospectum est convivio.

Tandem cum adparārētur prandium faenerātōrī, dēsīde- 5 rāta 4 est ölla. Hīc iūrgium 5 adversus coquam. Ea, cum gravaretur, constanter adfirmavit neminem eo die fuisse in culīnā praeter Antonium. Improbum 6 vidēbātur hoc suspicārī sacrificō. Tandem itum est ad illum; explorātum an apud illum esset ölla; në musca quidem ölla reperta. Quid 10 multis? Sēriō flāgitāta est ab illō ōlla, quod sōlus ingressus esset culinam quo tempore desiderata est. Ille fassus est sumpsisse commodato ollam quandam, sed quam remisisset illī unde sumpserat. Id cum illī pernegārent et incaluisset contentio, Antonius adhibitis aliquot testibus, "Vidēte," 15 inquit, "quam periculosum est cum horum temporum hominibus agere sine chirographo! Intenderetur 8 mihi propemodum āctio fūrtī, ni manum habērem faenerātoris." Et protulit syngrapham. Intellectus est dolus; fabula magno cum rīsū per totam regionem dissipāta est ollam oppīgne- 20 rātam ipsī cūius erat. Hūius modī dolīs libentius favent hominēs, sī commissī sunt in personās odiosās, praesertim eos qui solent 10 aliis imponere.

ERASMUS: Convivium Fabulosum.

## 34. A Practical Joke.

Quidam nomine Maccus cum vēnisset in cīvitātem quae dīcitur Leydis, āc vellet, novus hospes, 11 innotēscere ioco 25 quopiam (nam is erat hominī mos) ingressus 12 est officīnam calceārī; salūtat. Ille cupiens extrudere mercīs suās rogat

Cf. <sup>1</sup> āguōscit, p. 27, l. 14. — <sup>2</sup> numerābātur, 15, 16. — <sup>3</sup> emam, 10, 14. — <sup>4</sup> dēsīderāvit, 16, 8. — <sup>5</sup> iūrgī, 8, 9. — <sup>6</sup> improbus, 8, 8. — <sup>7</sup> flāgitāvit, 9, 10. — <sup>8</sup> intendit, 27, 9. — <sup>9</sup> rīsum, 8, 4. — <sup>10</sup> solēbant, 4, 15. — <sup>11</sup> hospitibus, 4, 12. — <sup>12</sup> ingressus, 18, 11.

numquid vellet. Macco coniciente 1 oculos in ocreas ibi pēnsilīs, rogat sūtor num vellet ocreās. Adnuente 2 Maccō quaerit aptās 8 tībiīs illīus; inventās alacriter protulit, et ut solent, inducit illi. Ubi iam Maccus esset ēleganter ocreā-5 tus, "Quam belle,4" inquit, "congrueret his ocreis par calceorum duplicatis soleis!" Rogatus an et calceos vellet, adnuit. Reperti s sunt et additi pedibus. Maccus laudābat ocreās, laudābat calceōs. Calceārius tacitē 6 gaudēns succinēbat illī laudantī, spērāns 7 pretium aequius posteāquam 10 emptori tantopere placeret merx. Et iam erat non nulla contrācta familiāritās. Hic Maccus, "Dic mihi," inquit, "bonā fidē, numquamne ūsū vēnit tibi ut quem sic ocreis et calceis ad cursum armāssēs, quem ad modum nunc armāstī mē, abierit non numerāto pretio?" "Numquam," 15 ait ille. "Atquī sī forte,9" inquit, "veniat ūsū, quid tū tum faceres?" "Consequerer,10" inquit calcearius, "fugientem." Tum Maccus: "Sērione ista dīcis an ioco?" "Plānē sērio," inquit alter, "loquor; et sēriō facerem." "Experiar," ait Maccus. "En pro calceis praecurro, tu cursu sequere." 20 Simulque cum dicto 11 coniecit se in pedes.

Calceārius ē vestīgiō 12 consecūtus est, quantum poterat clāmitāns: "Tenēte fūrem! Tenēte fūrem!" Ad hanc vocem cum civēs undique prosiluissent ex aedibus, hoc commento cohibuit illos Maccus nē quis manum iniceret. Rīdēns āc 25 voltū 18 placido, "Nē quis," inquit, "remorētur cursum nostrum; certāmen est dē cūpā cerevisiae." Itaque iam omnēs praebēre 14 sēsē certāminis spectātorēs. Suspicābantur autem calceārium dolo 16 clāmorem eum fingere, 16 ut hāc occāsione anteverteret. Tandem calceārius cursū victus, sūdāns et

Cf. <sup>1</sup> coniecta sunt, p. 19, l. 25. — <sup>2</sup> adnuendō, 23, 7. — <sup>8</sup> aptōs, 7, 9. — <sup>4</sup> bellē, 9, 14. — <sup>6</sup> repperit, 28, 18. — <sup>6</sup> tacitus, 28, 20. — <sup>7</sup> spērābat, 15, 28. — <sup>8</sup> numerat, 29, 2. — <sup>9</sup> forte, 28, 17. — <sup>10</sup> cōnsecūtī sunt, 3, 6. — <sup>11</sup> dictō, 18, 10. — <sup>12</sup> vestīgia, 5, 18. — <sup>18</sup> voltū, 25, 12. — <sup>14</sup> praebuit, 8, 4. — <sup>16</sup> dolus, 29, 19. — <sup>16</sup> fingeret, 27, 10.

anhēlus domum rediit. Maccus tulit brabēum. Posteā āctio fūrtī intentāta est, sed magis perīclītātus est āctor quam reus. Nam Maccus gravābat illum āctione calumniae, et intendēbat lēgem Rhemiam, quae dictat ut qui crīmen intenderit quod probāre non possit poenam ferat quam lātūrus serat reus, sī convictus fuisset. Negābat sē contrectāsse rem aliēnam invīto domino, sed ultro dēferente, nec ūllam pretī mentionem intercessisse. Sē provocāsse calceārium ad certāmen cursūs; illum accēpisse condicionem, nec habēre quod querātur, cum esset cursū superātus. Quae ro āctio non multum aberat ab umbrā asinī.

ERASMUS: Convivium Fabulosum.

### 35. The Priest, the Vender, and the Impostor.

Sacrificus<sup>7</sup> quīdam recēperat mediocrem summam pecūniae, sed argenteae. Id impostor quīdam animadverterat.<sup>8</sup> Adiit sacrificum, quī gestābat in zōnā crumēnam nummīs turgidam; salūtat cīvīliter; nārrat sibi datum negōtium ā suīs ut vīcī 15 suī parochō mercārētur novum pallium sacrum, quae summa vestis est sacerdōtī rem dīvīnam peragentī. Rogat hāc in rē commodāret sibi tantillum operae 11 ut sēcum īret ad eōs quī vēndunt hūius modī pallia, quō vidēlicet ex modō corporis ipsīus sūmeret māius aut minus; nam sibi vidērī statūram 20 ipsīus cum parochī māgnitūdine vehementer congruere. Hōc officium, cum leve vidērētur, facile pollicitus est sacrificus. Adeunt aedīs 14 cūiusdam. Prōlātum 15 est pallium, sacrificus induit, vēnditor adfīrmat mīrē congruere.

Impostor, cum nunc ā fronte nunc ā tergo 16 contemplātus 25 esset sacrificum, satis probāvit pallium; sed causātus est ā

Cf. <sup>1</sup> fürtī, p. 29, l. 18. — <sup>2</sup> perīclitantis, 12, 14. — <sup>8</sup> intenderētur, 29, 17. — <sup>4</sup> ultrō, 3, 3. — <sup>5</sup> quererētur, 25, 21. — <sup>5</sup> asinum, 12, 3. — <sup>7</sup> sacrificus, 28, 16. — <sup>8</sup> animadvertit, 5, 14. — <sup>9</sup> nummus, 28, 18. — <sup>10</sup> sacerdōtēs, 15, 1. — <sup>11</sup> operam, 1, 10. — <sup>12</sup> sūmat, 28, 27. — <sup>18</sup> congrueret, 30, 5. — <sup>14</sup> aedibus, 30, 23. — <sup>16</sup> prōtulit, 29, 19. — <sup>16</sup> tergum, 4, 6.

fronte brevius quam pār esset. Ibi vēnditor, nē non procēderet contrāctus, negat id esse pallī vitium, sed crumēnam turgidam efficere ut eā parte offenderet brevitās. Quid multa? Sacrificus dēponit crumēnam; dēnuo contemplantur. Ibi impostor āverso sacrifico crumēnam adripit āc sēmet in pedēs conicit. Sacerdos cursū insequitur, ut erat palliātus, et sacrificum vēnditor. Sacrificus clāmat, "Tenēte fūrem ?" vēnditor clāmat, "Tenēte sacrificum!" impostor clāmat, "Cohibēte sacrificum furentem!" et crēditum est cum vidērent illum sīc ornātum in pūblico currere. Itaque dum alter alterī in morā est, impostor effugit.

ERASMUS: Convivium Fabulosum.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> breve, p. 15, l. 20. — <sup>2</sup> dēpositō, 28, 26. — <sup>8</sup> coniēcit, 30, 20. — fūrem, 30, 22. — <sup>6</sup> cohibuit, 30, 24.

### II. BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY.

## CYRUS, KING OF PERSIA.

[Modern. See Table of Contents.]

#### His Parentage.

1. Rēx inlūstrissimus Persārum Cyrus fuit. Multae historiae mīrābilēs dē pueritiā ēius nārrantur. Astvagēs, rēx Mēdorum, avus ēius fuit. Nam illīs temporibus Persae imperio Medorum parebant. Ille habuit filiam, cui nomen Mandana erat. Dē hāc filiā hōc ōrāculum 1 accēperat: "Sī 5 filia tua nepõtem pepererit, ille rex in tuo loco erit." Itaque mātrimonium ēius cum homine Mēdo prohibuit. Sed, cum nihil timēret sī cum ūnō ex Persīs coniūncta esset, Cambysī Persae nobili, qui Mandanam amābat, eam in mātrimonium ducere concessit.2 Sed cum Cambysi et Mandanae filius 10 nātus esset, Astyagī timor renovātus est et, ut hoc timore līberārētur, consilium crūdēle cepit Cyrum, illum nepotem suum, interficere. Harpagō igitur, Mēdō fidēlissimō, mandāvit aut puerum abdūceret et necāret. Is autem, cum sorte puerī eī misericordia movērētur, pāstorī rēgio idem quod 15 rēx mandāverat imperāvit. Hūius autem puer ēiusdem aetātis 5 ante breve tempus mortuus erat. Itaque cum ipse puerum pulchrum admirārētur et uxor rogāret ut eum servāret, non illum sed bēstiam feram necāvit, et partīs ex eā Harpagō monstravit dut ex eis mortem pueri ille cognosceret. 20

Cf. <sup>1</sup> ōrāculum, p. 15, l. 24. — <sup>2</sup> concessum esset, 19, 10. — <sup>8</sup> mandātum est, necātum, 17, 27. — <sup>4</sup> misericordiae, 6, 13. — <sup>5</sup> aetātem, 17, 4. — <sup>6</sup> mōnstrāns, 9, 27.

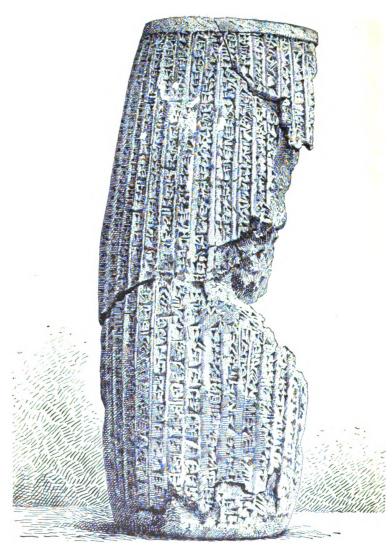


Fig. 16. - A RECORD OF CYRUS THE GREAT.

### His Early Years.

2. Ab illo igitur 1 pāstore Cyrus ēducātus est. Brevī tempore et robore 2 et animo forti ceteros pueros superavit et in lūdis 8 eōrum rēx erat. Sed ōlim fīlius Mēdī nōbilis, quī Astyagī cārissimus erat, cum illīs lūdīs interesset neque rēgī creātō oboedīret, sēnsit quam sevērus dominus ille filius 5 pāstoris esset. Puer nobilis īrā incēnsus illum cum multīs lacrimis 4 apud patrem suum accusavit. Astyages, cum de illa re audīvisset, imperavit ut pastor cum filio adduceretur. Admirātus est formam puerī et, cum faciem Mandanae fīliae similem vidisset, interrogando denique cognovit quis esset 10 puer et cur tum non interfectus esset. Iam timor novus ei excitătus esset, nisi sacerdotes eum his verbis consolati essent: "Non est, o rex potentissime, causa cur solliciteris. Nam fuit ille rex inter pueros ludentis 6; itaque e tuo regno tē non ēiciet." Itaque Astvagēs Cyrum apud sē retinuit et 15 in locō fili ēducāvit. Quod autem Harpagus imperiis non pāruerat,7 crūdēlissimā poenā eum persecūtus est. Ad cēnam 8 enim eum invîtāvit et eī fīlium ēius in cēnā adposuit. Post cēnam eī dixit quō cibō dēlectātus 9 esset. Ex illō tempore Harpagus Astyagī infēstissimus 10 erat. Sed odium suum 20 occultăvit 11 et tempus idoneum exspectăvit ut illam crudelitātem rēgis ulciscerētur.

## Plan to make him King.

3. Cum Astyagēs senex 19 esset dūrus et crūdēlis, Cyrus autem adulēscēns et Mēdīs et Persīs grātissimus, Harpagus brevī tempore effēcit ut etiam Mēdī novum rēgem dēsīderā- 25 rent. 18 Cyrum autem dē lībertāte Persārum admonuit et saepe

Cf. <sup>1</sup> igitur, p. 3, l. 14. — <sup>2</sup> rōbore, 21, 28. — <sup>8</sup> lūdōrum, 23, 16. — <sup>6</sup> lacrimās, 15, 10. — <sup>6</sup> sacerdōtī, 31, 17. — <sup>6</sup> lūdēbat, 21, 5. — <sup>7</sup> pārēbant, 33, 4. — <sup>8</sup> cēnam, 4, 16. — <sup>9</sup> dēlectāret, 23, 11. — <sup>10</sup> opp. amīcissimus. — <sup>11</sup> occultārem, 24, 4. — <sup>12</sup> senex, 11, 16. — <sup>18</sup> dēsīderāvit, 16, 8.

adhortātus est ut avum ē rēgnō ēiceret idque ipse occupāret. Consilio Harpagi Cyrus pāruit1 et ita ēgit. Omnīs nobilis Persas convocavit et eis epistulam monstravit.2 "Hāc epistulā," inquit, "avus meus võbīs imperat ut mihi 5 in omnibus rēbus oboediātis.8" Cum haec verba locūtus esset, eis labores molestissimos mandavit.4 Sed post finitos labores cum omnes exhausti essent et sortem suam miserarentur, Cyrus in sequentem diem eos ad cenam opulentissimam et ad lūdos laetos invītāvit. Tum eos interrogāvit 10 num in loco laborum gravissimorum primi diei gaudia 5 secundī diēī sibi ēligerent.6 Respondērunt omnēs: "Illis gaudiīs semper dēlectēmur." Tum ille, "Hōc," inquit, "habēbitis, sī consilia mea secūtī eritis et imperio Medorum vos liberāveritis. Adgredimini7 igitur, Persae, Astyagem et 15 profitēminī libertātem vestram." Māgnō clāmōre Persae Cyri verba probaverunt et cum Astyage bellum pro libertate gerere constituerunt.

### He Conquers Astyages.

4. Astyagēs cum dē tumultū Persārum comperisset,8 Cyrum ad sē vocāvit. Is autem respondit: "Breviōre tempore apud tē erō quam ipse optāveris." Māgnā igitur celeritāte Astyagēs omnīs Mēdōs armāvit, eīsque eundem Harpagum praefēcit quem olim odio acerbissimo io incenderat. Is autem per nūntium ii Cyrum hortātus est nē Mēdorum copiās timēret, cum ipse omnīs rēs ad illīus victoriam necessāriās providisset. Itaque cum proelium committerētur,12 non nūllī Mēdorum pūgnāvērunt, multī autem aut fūgērunt aut Harpagum secūtī sunt, quī cum Cyro sē coniūnxit. Astyagēs, cum hoc comperisset, ipse cum fidēlissimīs Mēdīs quī ex

Cf. <sup>1</sup> pāruerat, p. 35, l. 17. — <sup>2</sup> mōnstrāvit, 33, 20. — <sup>8</sup> oboedīret, 35, 5. — <sup>4</sup> mandāvit, 33, 13. — <sup>5</sup> gaudium, 21, 15. — <sup>6</sup> ēlēgerat, 23, 18. — <sup>7</sup> adgressus est, 24, 7. — <sup>8</sup> comperisset, 15, 27. — <sup>9</sup> praefēcērunt, 19, 7. — <sup>10</sup> acerbissimae, 14, 14. — <sup>11</sup> nūntium, 20, 2. — <sup>12</sup> commīsit, 19, 22.

clāde supererant cum Cyrō congressus est. Sed fugātus et captus est. Cyrus autem Astyagem captīvum in māgnō honōre habuit et, cum mortuus esset, māgnō dolōre commōtus est. Cum rēgnum Persārum et Mēdōrum adeptus esset, omnīs gentīs propinquās¹ imperiō suō adiungere cōnā-5 tus est. Itaque bellum gessit cum Croesō, Lydōrum rēge, quem vīcit et cēpit. Tum nōn nūllās urbīs Asiae in ōrā tnaris Aegaeī sitās² ipse expūgnāvit; cēterās urbīs cēpit Harpagus, quem prō meritīs partī exercitūs praefēcerat. Cyrus enim contrā gentīs profectus erat quae sine sēdībus to certīs vagābantur et rēgnum Persārum populābantur. Cum eārum iniūriās ultus³ esset, bellum cum Babylōnīis anno ante Chrīstum nātum quīngentēsimō undēquadrāgēsimō incēpit.

## The Capture of Babylon.

5. Erat autem Babylon urbs opulentissima 4 et potentissima ad Euphrätem flümen sita. Ante mūros Cyrus Babylonios 15 prīmo impetū fugāvit.6 Sed cum urbem obsidēre incēpisset, propter copiam 6 ciborum quam incolae providerant et propter ingentīs, mūros ea rēs māgnās habuit difficultātēs. dolum adhibuit. Fossam enim ab eo loco ubi flumen ad urbem accēdēbat hōrīs nocturnīs, nē Babylōnii sentīrent, ad 20 eam partem duxit ubi flumen ex urbe veniebat. Ita effecit 8 ut, cum fossa complēta esset, aqua in flūmine ipso deesset et loco vacuo militibus via in urbem pararetur. Ita milites in urbem nocte ingressi et mūrōrum portārumque potiti sunt. Tanta autem urbs erat ut, cum iam partes mūrīs propinguae 25 ā Cyrī mīlitibus expūgnātae essent, eī quī in mediā urbe habitābant dē illā rē nūntium nondum accepissent. Cum hūius tantae urbis potītus esset, Cyrus etiam provinciās rēgnī Babylönici brevī 10 tempore expūgnāvit. Iūdaeos autem,

Cf. 1 propinquös, p. 12, l. 20. — 2 sitās, 1, 8. — 8 ulcīscerētur, 35, 22. — 4 opulentissimam, 36, 8. — 5 fugātus, l. 1. — 6 cōpia, 16, 5. — 7 ingentem, 4, 8. — 8 efficerent, 19, 28. — 9 complēverat, 15, 14. — 10 breve, 15, 20.

qui ā rēgibus Babyloniorum capti et ex patriā abducti erant, in patriam remisit eisque concessit 1 ut templum restituerent.

### War with the Barbarians.

6. Sed iterum tumultibus <sup>2</sup> eārundem gentium dē quibus nārrāvimus Cyrus in illās partīs rēgnī vocātus est. Inter illos 5 barbaros Massagetae et robore 8 corporum et animo bellicoso clārī erant. Eōrum rēgīna Tomyris erat, fēmina prūdentissima et fortissima. Hanc Cyrus in matrimonium ducere constituit ut Persas iniuriis Massagetarum liberaret. illa, quae Cyri consilia perspiciebat,4 eius matrimonium repu-10 diavit. Ad pügnandum autem in suam terram eum invitavit et hortāta est nē trānsitum Araxis flūminis verērētur. flumen enim Persas a Massagetis divisit. Cyrus, cum ipse nesciret quid faceret, Croesum, captivum Lydorum regem, interrogāvit quid suādēret. Tum ille monuit ut faceret id 15 quod Tomyris postulāsset, 6 et cum exercitū in terram Massagetārum ingrederētur. "Tum autem," inquit, "recēde ut speciem timoris et fugae praebeas 6; sed in castris cenam opulentam et māgnam copiam vini cum paucis custodibus relinque." Hōc consilium Cyro placuit. Cum ita fecisset, 20 tertia pars Massagetārum ad castra Persārum relicta properāvit, custodēs interfēcit, cibis dēlectāta est, vinum omne hausit, dēnique somnō vīnōque oppressa dormīvit.8 Persae aderant, magnam partem barbarorum interfecerunt, non nullos ceperunt, in eis filium reginae.

### Death of Cyrus.

7. Tum hunc nūntium Tomyris ad Cyrum misit: "Moneō tē, rēx crūdēlissime, ut mihi filium remittās et exercitum abdūcās. Nisi id fēceris, calamitātem meam ulcīscar et

Cf. <sup>1</sup> concessum esset, p. 19, l. 10.—<sup>2</sup> tumultū, 36, 18.—<sup>8</sup> rōbore, 21, 28.—<sup>4</sup> perspēxerat, 19, 15.—<sup>5</sup> postulābis, 4, 3.—<sup>6</sup> praebuit, 8, 4.—<sup>7</sup> cibum, 24, 12.—<sup>8</sup> dormientem, 6, 3.—<sup>9</sup> ultus esset, 37, 12.

cruōre tē īnsatiābilem satiābō." Haec verba Cȳrus contempsit¹; neque illi filium remīsit neque exercitum abdūxit. Rogāvit autem fīlius rēgīnae ut vinculis molestīs² līberārētur. Cum id eī praebitum esset, gladium adripuit et ipse sē interfēcit. Tomyris autem, cum omnīs cōpiās conlēgisset, cum 5 Cȳrō proelium commīsit.³ Haec pūgna acerbissima et crūdēlissima fuit, nam Persae prō vitā et reditū, barbarī prō patriā et lībertāte dīmicābant. Māgna pars Persārum occidit; etiam Cȳrus necātus⁴ est. Tum Tomyris corpus Cȳrī quaesīvit⁵ et cum repperisset, caput ā corpore dīvīsit. Hōc in cruōrem coniēcit, cum dīceret: "Iam tē, homō īnsatiābilis, quod tibi pollicita⁵ sum cruōre satiābō." Ita mortuus est Cȳrus et rēgnum Cambȳsī fīliō relīquit.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> contempsī, p. 3, l.  $16. - ^2$  molestissimōs, 36, 6.  $- ^3$  committerētur, 36, 25.  $- ^4$  necāret, 33, 14.  $- ^5$  quaerēbant, 2, 16.  $- ^6$  pollicitus est. 31, 22.

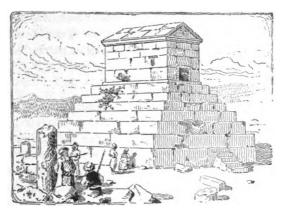


FIG. 17. - TOMB OF CYRUS THE GREAT.

## THE STORY OF ULYSSES.

[Ritchie: Fabulae Faciles.]

#### Homeward Bound.

1. Urbem Trōiam ā Graecīs decem annōs obsessam¹ esse satis cōnstat; dē hōc enim bellō Homērus, māximus poētārum Graecōrum, Īliadem, opus² nōtissimum, scrīpsit. Trōiā tandem per insidiās captā, Graecī longō bellō fessī domum 5 redīre mātūrāvērunt. Omnibus igitur ad profectionem parātīs nāvīs dēdūxērunt, et tempestātem idōneam³ nactī māgnō cum gaudiō solvērunt. Erat inter prīmōs Graecōrum Ulixēs quidam, vir summae virtūtis āc prūdentiae, quem dīcunt nōn nūllī dolum⁴ istum excōgitāsse per quem Trōiam captam 10 esse cōnstat. Hīc rēgnum īnsulae Ithacae obtinuerat et, paulō antequam cum reliquīs Graecīs ad bellum profectus est, puellam formōsissiniam, nōmine Pēnelopēn, in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Nunc igitur, cum iam decem annōs quasi in exsiliō cōnsūmpsisset, māgnā cupīdine patriae et uxōris videndae ārdēbat.

#### The Lotus Eaters.

2. Postquam tamen pauca mīlia passuum ā lītore Trōiae prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut nūlla nāvium cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae aliās in partīs disicerentur. Nāvis autem quā ipse Ulixēs vehēbātur vi tempestātis ad merīdiem dēlāta decimō diē ad lītus Libyae adpulsa est. Ancorīs iactīs Ulixēs constituit non nūllos ē sociīs in terram exponere, quī aquam ad nāvem referrent et quālis esset nātūra ēius regionis cognoscerent. Hī igitur ē

Cf. <sup>1</sup> obsidēre, p. 37, l. 16. — <sup>2</sup> opus, 10, 9. — <sup>8</sup> idōneum, 35, 21. — <sup>4</sup> dolum, 37, 19. — <sup>6</sup> cursum, 30, 13. — <sup>6</sup> veherētur, 12, 1. — <sup>7</sup> lītore, 1, 5.

nāvi ēgressi imperāta facere parābant. Dum tamen fontem quaerunt, quibusdam ex incolīs¹ obviam factī ab eīs hospitiō acceptī sunt. Accidit autem ut vīctus² eōrum hominum ē mīrō quōdam frūctū, quem lōtum appellābant, paene omnīnō s cōnstāret. Quem cum Graecī gustāssent, patriae et sociōrum 5 statim oblītī sē cōnfīrmāvērunt semper in eā terrā mānsūrōs,4 ut dulcī illō cibō s in aeternum vescerentur.

#### The Lotus Eaters (continued).

3. At Ulixēs, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum exspectāsset, veritus nē socii sui in periculō versārentur, nōn nūllōs ē reliquis mīsit, ut quae causa esset morae cōgnōscerent. Hī to igitur in terram expositī ad vīcum quī nōn longē āfuit sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent, sociōs suōs quasi vīnō ēbriōs repperērunt. Tum ubi causam veniendī docuērunt, eīs persuādēre cōnābantur ut sēcum ad nāvem redīrent. Illī tamen resistere āc manū sē dēfendere coepērunt, saepe 15 clāmitantēs sē numquam ex eō locō abitūrōs. Quae cum ita essent, nūntiī 11 rē īnfectā ad Ulixem rediērunt. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Ulixēs ipse cum omnibus quī in nāvī relictī sunt ad locum vēnit; et sociōs suōs frūstrā 12 hortātus ut sponte suā redīrent, manibus eōrum post terga vinctīs, 18 invītōs ad nāvem 20 reportāvit. Tum ancorīs sublātīs 14 quam celerrimē ē portū solvit 16

#### The One-eyed Giant.

4. Postrīdiē 16 ēius diēi postquam totam noctem rēmīs contenderant, ad terram ignotam nāvem adpulērunt. 17 Tum, quod nātūram ēius regionis ignorābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duo- 25

Cf. 1 incolae, p. 37, l. 17. — 2 vīctum, 25, 8. — 8 emnīnō, 4, 15. — 4 mānsit, 24, 10. — 6 cibīs, 38, 21. — 6 vesperum, 18, 5. — 7 verērētur, 38, 11. — 8 cōgnōscerent, 40, 23. — 9 repperisset, 39, 10. — 10 docuit, 11, 21. — 11 nūntium, 20, 2. — 12 frūstrā, 6, 9. — 18 vinctus, 16, 6. — 14 tollere, 27, 11. — 15 solvērunt, 40, 7. — 16 postrīdiē, 25, 5. — 17 adpulsa est, 40, 21.

decim ē sociīs in terram ēgressus locum explorāre constituit. Paulum ā lītore progressī ad antrum ingēns pervēnērunt, quod habitārī sēnsērunt; ēius enim introitum arte et manibus mūnītum 1 esse animadvertērunt. Mox, 2 etsī intellegēbant sē 5 non sine perīculo id factūros, antrum intrāvērunt; quod cum fēcissent, māgnam copiam lactis invēnērunt in vāsīs ingenti-



FIG. 18. - HEAD OF A CYCLOPS.

bus conditam.<sup>8</sup> Dum tamen mīrantur quis eam sēdem incoleret, sonitum terribilem audīvērunt, et oculīs ad portam versīs mōnstrum horribile vīdērunt, humānā quidem speciē <sup>4</sup> et figūrā, sed ingentī māgnitūdine corporis. Cum autem animadvertissent gigantem ūnum tantum oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmam iam accēperant.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> permūnītīs, p. 27, l. 27.—<sup>2</sup> mox, 1, 10.—<sup>8</sup> conditīs, 27, 26.—
<sup>4</sup> speciem, 38, 17.

### The Giant's Supper.

5. Cyclopes autem pāstorēs¹ erant quidam, qui insulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim Volcānus, praeses fabrorum² et ignis repertor, cūius servī Cyclopes erant, officinam³ suam habēbat.

Graeci igitur, simul ac monstrum viderunt, terrore paene 5 exanimati in interiorem partem speluncae 4 refügerunt et se ibi cēlāre 6 conābantur. Polyphēmus autem, ita enim gigās appellātus est, pecora sua in spēluncam ēgit; tum cum saxō 6 ingenti portam obstrūxisset, ignem in medio antro accendit. Hoc facto, oculo omnia perlustrabat et, cum sensisset homi- 10 nēs in interiore parte antrī cēlārī, māgnā voce exclāmāvit: "Qui estis homines? Mercatores an latrones?" Ulixes respondit se neque mercatores esse neque praedandi causă venisse; sed e Troia redeuntis vi tempestatum a recto cursu depulsos esse; oravit etiam ut sibi sine iniuria abīre 15 liceret. Tum Polyphemus quaesivit ubi esset navis qua vecti essent; Ulixēs autem, cum bene intellegeret sibi māximē praecavendum esse, respondit nāvem suam in rūpis coniectam 10 et omnino perfractam esse. Polyphēmus autem nūllo dato responso duo e sociis manu conripuit, et membris eorum 20 dīvolsīs carnem dēvorāre 11 coepit.

## No Way of Escape.

6. Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere 12 possent, sed omnī spē salūtis dēpositā 18 mortem praesentem exspectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribili cēnā dēpulsa 14 25 est, humī prōstrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum vidisset

Cf. <sup>1</sup> pāstōrī, p. 33, l. 15.—<sup>2</sup> faber, 10, 8.—<sup>8</sup> officīnam, 29, 26.—<sup>4</sup> spēluncam, 24, 3.—<sup>6</sup> cēlāvit, 4, 3.—<sup>6</sup> saxum, 15, 9.—<sup>7</sup> latrō, 8, 9.—<sup>8</sup> ōrantī, 6, 6.—<sup>9</sup> vehēbātur, 40, 19.—<sup>10</sup> coniecta sunt, 19, 25.—<sup>11</sup> dēvorātūrus erat, 6, 5.—<sup>12</sup> ēdēbantur, 2, 14.—<sup>13</sup> dēpositō, 28, 26.—<sup>14</sup> dēpulsōs esse, l. 15.

Ulixēs, tantam occāsionem rei bene gerendae non omittendam arbitrātus, in eo erat ut pectus monstrī gladio trānsfigeret. Cum tamen nihil temerē agendum existimāret, constituit explorāre, antequam hoc faceret, quā ratione ex antro ēvādere possent. At cum saxum animadvertisset quo introitus obstrūctus erat, nihil sibi profutūrum interlēxit sī Polyphēmum interfēcisset. Tanta enim erat ēius saxī māgnitūdo ut nē ā decem quidem hominibus āmovēri posset. Quae cum ita essent, Ulixēs hoc dēstitit conātū et ad socios rediit; quī, cum intellēxissent quō in loco rēs essent, nūllā spē salūtis oblātā dē fortūnis suīs dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen nē animos dēmitterent vehementer hortātus est; dēmonstrāvit sē iam anteā ē multīs et māgnīs perīculīs ēvāsisse, neque dubium esse quīn in tanto discrīmine diī auxilium adtīs lātūrī essent.

# A Plan for Vengeance.

7. Ortā lūce Polyphēmus iam ē somnō excitātus idem quod hesternō diē fēcit; conreptīs 8 enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs, carnem 9 eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum āmōvisset, ipse cum pecore 10 suō ex antrō prōgressus est. Quod 20 cum vidērent Graecī, māgnam in spem vēnērunt sē post paulum ēvāsūrōs. Mox tamen ab hāc spē repulsī sunt; nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt, saxum in locum restituit. Reliquī omnī spē salūtis dēpositā 11 lāmentīs lacrimīsque sē dēdidērunt; Ulixēs vērō, quī, ut suprā dē-25 mōnstrāvimus, vir māgnī fuit cōnsilī, etsī bene intellegēbat rem in discrīmine esse, nōndum 12 omnīnō dēspērābat. Tandem postquam diū tōtō animō cōgitāvit, hōc cēpit cōnsilium. Ē līgnīs 13 quae in antrō reposita sunt pālum māgnum dēlēgit,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> arbitror, p. 25, l. 6. — <sup>2</sup> gladium, 39, 4. — <sup>8</sup> exīstimāns, 19, 1. — <sup>4</sup> prōfuit, 16, 12. — <sup>6</sup> nē . . . quidem, 28, 8. — <sup>6</sup> dēmīsit, 11, 8. — <sup>7</sup> adferrī, 11, 18. — <sup>8</sup> conripuit, 43, 20. — <sup>9</sup> carnibus, 28, 23. — <sup>10</sup> pecora, 43, 8. — <sup>11</sup> dēpositā, 43, 24. — <sup>12</sup> nōndum, 37, 27. — <sup>18</sup> līgnōrum, 16, 5.

quem summă cum diligentiă praeacūtum fēcit; tum postquam sociis quid fieri vellet ostendit, reditum¹ Polyphēmī exspectābat.

## A Glass too Much.

8. Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad antrum rediit et eodem modo quo antea cenavit.2 Tum Ulixes utrem vini prompsit, 5 quem forte, ut in tālibus rēbus accidere consuevit, sēcum adtulerat, et, postquam māgnam crātēram vinō replēvit, gigantem ad bibendum 3 provocavit. Polyphēmus, qui numquam anteā vīnum gustāverat, totam crātēram statim hausit; quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem 6 percēpit ut iterum et 10 tertium crātēram replērī iusserit. Tum, cum quaesīvisset quō nōmine Ulixes appellaretur, ille respondit se Neminem appellārī. Quod cum audivisset, Polyphēmus ita locūtus est : " Hanc tibi grātiam pro tanto beneficio referam; tē ultimum 6 omnium devorabo." His dictis cibo vinoque gravatus recu- 15 buit et post breve tempus somno oppressus est. Tum Ulixes sociis convocatis, "Habemus," inquit, "quam petiimus facultatem7; proinde ne tantam occasionem rei bene gerendae omittāmus."

### Nobody.

9. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum pālum ignī 20 calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmī dum dormit flagrante līgnō trānsfōdit; quō factō omnēs in dīversās spēluncae partīs sē abdidērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre, quod necesse fuit, ē somnō excitātus, clāmōrem terribilem sustulit, et dum per spēluncam errat Ulixī manum inicere cōnābātur; cum tamen 25 iam omnīnō caecus esset, nūllō modō hōc efficere potuit. Intereā reliquī Cyclōpes clāmōre audītō undique ad spēlun-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> reditū, p. 39, l. 7. — <sup>2</sup> cēnābat, 3, 20. — <sup>8</sup> bibentī, 8, 9. — <sup>4</sup> gustāssent, 41, 5. — <sup>6</sup> voluptātem, 2, 11. — <sup>6</sup> ultimum, 17, 24. — <sup>7</sup> facultātem, 24, 6. — <sup>8</sup> flagrābat, 19, 8. — <sup>9</sup> tollere, 27, 11.

10 arbitrātī.

cam convēnérunt, et ad introitum <sup>1</sup> adstantēs quid Polyphēmus ageret quaesīvērunt, et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter volnerātum esse et māgnō dolōre adficī. Cum tamen cēterī quaesīvissent quis 5 eī vim intulisset, respondit ille Nēminem id fēcisse. Quibus audītīs ūnus ē Cyclōpibus, "At sī nēmō," inquit, "tē volnerāvit, haud dubium est quīn cōnsiliō deōrum, quibus resistere nec possumus nec volumus, hōc suppliciō adficiāris." Hīs dictīs abiērunt Cyclōpes eum in īnsāniam incidisse <sup>3</sup>

## The Flight.

10. At Polyphēmus, ubi sociōs suōs abiisse sēnsit,<sup>8</sup> furōre atque āmentiā impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit;



FIG. 19. - ULYSSES UNDER THE RAM.

tandem cum portam invēnisset, saxum quō obstrūcta erat āmōvit, ut pecus ad agrōs exīret. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit tet, ut quaeque ovis ad locum vēnerat, tergum ēius manibus

Cf. <sup>1</sup> introitum, p 42, l. 3. — <sup>2</sup> incidit, 6, 8. — <sup>8</sup> sēnsit, 10, 4. — <sup>4</sup> pecora, 43, 8.

tractābat, nē virī inter ovīs¹ exīre possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixēs, hōc iniit cōnsilium; bene enim intellēxit omnem spem salūtis in dolō magis quam in virtūte pōnī. Prīmum trīs quās vīdit pinguissimās ex ovibus dēlēgit; quās cum inter sē vīminibus cōnexuisset, ūnum sociōrum ventribus 5 eārum ita subiēcit ut omnīnō latēret; deinde ovīs hominem sēcum ferentīs ad portam ēgit.² Id accidit³ quod fore suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim, postquam manūs tergīs eārum imposuit, ovīs praeterīre passus est. Ulixēs, ubi rem ita fēlīciter ēvēnisse vīdit, omnīs suōs sociōs ex ōrdine eōdem ¹o modō ēmīsit; quō factō ipse ultimus⁴ ēvāsit.

# Out of Danger.

11. His rebus ita confectis. Ulixes cum sociis maxime veritus 6 në Polyphëmus fraudem sentiret, quam celerrimë ad litus 7 contendit. Quō cum vēnissent, ab eis qui nāvi praesidio\_ relicti erant māgnā cum laetitiā acceptī sunt. Hī enim, 15 cum animis anxiis iam trīs dies reditum eorum in horās exspectavissent, eos in periculum grave incidisse, id quod erat, suspicātī, ipsī auxiliandī causā ēgredī parābant. Tum Ulixes, non satis tūtum esse arbitrātus s sī in eo loco maneret. quam celerrimē proficīscī constituit. Iussit igitur omnīs 20 nāvem conscendere et ancoris sublātis 10 paulum ā litore in altum provectus est. Tum māgnā voce exclāmāvit: "Tū, Polyphēme, qui iūra hospiti spernis, iūstam et dēbitam poenam immānitātis tuae solvistī." Hāc voce audītā Polyphēmus îră vehementer commôtus ad mare se contulit 11 et, ubi 25 intellēxit nāvem paulum ā lītore remotam esse, saxum ingēns manū conreptum 19 in eam partem coniēcit unde vocem venīre sēnsit. Graecī autem, etsī minimum āfuit quin submergerentur, nüllő acceptő damnő cursum tenuérunt.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> ovēs, p. 44, l. 22. — <sup>2</sup> ēgit, 43, 8. — <sup>8</sup> accidit, 41, 3. — <sup>4</sup> ultimum, 17, 24. — <sup>5</sup> cōnfectō, 12, 24. — <sup>6</sup> verērētur, 38, 11. — <sup>7</sup> lītore, 1, 5. — <sup>8</sup> reditū, 39, 7. — <sup>9</sup> arbitror, 25, 6. — <sup>10</sup> sustulit, 45, 24. — <sup>11</sup> contulērunt, 41, 12. — <sup>12</sup> conripuit, 43, 20.

5

# The Country of the Winds.

12. Pauca mīlia passuum ab eō locō prōgressus Ulixēs ad īnsulam quandam, nōmine Aeoliam, nāvem adpulit.¹ Haec patria erat Ventōrum.

"Híc västő rēx Aéolus ántrō Lúctantís ventós tempéstätésque sonőrās Ímperió premit ác vinclís et cárcere frénat."

Ibi rēx ipse Graecōs hospitiō accēpit atque eis persuāsit ut ad recuperandās virīs paucōs diēs in eā regione commorārentur. Septimo diē, cum sociī ē laboribus sē recēpissent, Ulixēs, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātione exclūderētur, sibi sine morā proficīscendum statuit. Tum Aeolus, quī bene sciēbat eum māximē cupidum esse patriae videndae, Ulixī iam profectūro māgnum dedit saccum ē corio confectum, in quō ventōs omnīs praeter ūnum inclūserat. Zephyrum tantum praetermīserat, quod illum ventum ad Ithacam nāvigando idoneum sesse sciēbat. Ulixēs hoc donum libenter accēpit et grātīs pro tanto beneficio relātīs saccum ad mālum ligāvit. Tum omnibus ad profectionem parātīs merīdiāno ferē tempore ē portū solvit.

### The Winds Let Loose.

20 13. Novem diēs ventō secundissimō cursum tenuērunt, iamque in conspectum patriae suae vēnerant, cum Ulixēs lassitūdine confectus, ipse enim manū suā gubernābat, ad quiētem capiendam recubuit. At socii, qui iamdūdum mirābantur quid in illo sacco inclūsum esset, cum vidērent ducem somnō oppressum esse, tantam occāsionem no non omittendam arbitrātī sunt; crēdēbant enim aurum et argentum ibi cēlāri.

Cf. ¹ adpulsa est, p. 40, l. 21. — ² hospitiö, 12, 22. — ³ morātus, 27, 18. — ⁴ statuērunt, 17, 14. — ⁵ idōneum, 35, 21. — ⁶ libentius, 29, 21. — ² profectiōnem, 40, 5. — ³ solvērunt, 40, 7. — ⁰ recubuit, 45, 15. — ¹⁰ occāsiōnem, 44, 1. — ¹¹ cēlāre, 43, 7.

Itaque spē lucrī adductī saccum sine morā solvērunt; quō factō ventī,

"Velut ágmine fáctō, Quá data pórta, ruúnt et térrās túrbine pérflant."

Extemplo tanta tempestās subito coorta est ut illī cursum 5 tenēre non possent, sed in eandem partem unde erant profectī referrentur.¹ Ulixēs ē somno excitātus, quo in loco rēs



FIG. 20. - OPENING THE WIND BAG.

esset statim intellēxit. Saccum solūtum, Ithacam post tergum relictam, vīdit. Tum vēro māximē indīgnātione exārsit sociosque obiurgābat, quod cupiditāte pecūniae adductī spem patriae videndae proiecissent.

Cf. 1 referam, p. 25, l. 18. —2 exārsit, 12, 9.

## Drawing Lots.

14 Brevī intermissō spatiō Graecī īnsulae cuidam adpropinquāvērunt, quam Circē, filia Sōlis, incolēbat. Ibi cum nāvem adpulisset,¹ Ulixēs in terram frūmentandī causā ēgrediendum esse statuit; cōgnōverat enim frūmentum quod in nāvī habērent iam dēficere. Sociīs igitur ad sē convocātīs, quō in locō rēs esset et quid fierī vellet ostendit.² Cum tamen omnēs in memoriā tenērent quam crūdēlī morte occubuissent eī quī nūper in patriam Cyclōpum ēgressī essent, nēmō repertus³ est quī hōc negōtium suscipere vellet. Quae cum ita essent, rēs ad contrōversiam dēducta est. Tandem⁴ Ulixēs cōnsēnsū omnium sociōs in duās partīs dīvīsit, quārum alterī Eurylochus, vir summae virtūtis, alterī ipse praeesset. Tum hī duo inter sē sortītī ⁵ sunt, uter in terram ēgrederētur. Hōc factō, Eurylochō sorte ⁶ ēvēnit ut cum duōbus et vīgintī sociīs rem susciperet.

### The House of the Enchantress.

15. Hīs rēbus ita constitūtīs, ei qui sorte ductī erant in interiorem partem insulae profectī sunt. Tantus tamen timor animos eorum occupāverat ut nihil dubitārent quin mortī obviam irent. Vix quidem poterant ei qui in nāvī relictī erant lacrimās tenēre; crēdēbant enim sē socios suos numquam iterum visūros. Illī autem aliquantum itineris progressī ad villam quandam pervēnērunt summā māgnificentiā aedificātam; cūius ad ostium cum adiissent, carmen dulcissimum audivērunt. Tanta autem fuit ēius vocis dulcēdo ut nūllo modo retinērī possent quin iānuam pulsārent. Hoc facto ipsa Circē forās exiit et summā cum benīgnitāte omnīs in

Cf. <sup>1</sup> adpulit, p. 48, l. 2.—<sup>2</sup> ostenderet, 9, 10.—<sup>8</sup> repperit, 28, 18.

— <sup>4</sup> tandem, 44, 26.—<sup>5</sup> sortītus est, 18, 2.—<sup>6</sup> sorte, 33, 14.—<sup>7</sup> occupāvit, 7, 15.—<sup>8</sup> obviam, 41, 2.—<sup>9</sup> carmen, 3, 24.—<sup>10</sup> iānuam, 4, 6.

hospitium invītāvit. Eurylochus īnsidiās ¹ comparārī suspicātus forīs exspectāre constituit, at reliquī reī novitāte adductī intrāvērunt. Convīvium ² māgnificum invēnērunt omnibus rēbus īnstrūctum, et iūssū dominae libentissimē accubuērunt.

At Circē vīnum quod servī adposuērunt medicāmento quōdam miscuerat; quod cum illī bibissent, gravī sopore subito oppressī sunt.

# Men Changed to Pigs.

16. Tum Circe, quae artis magicae summam scientiam habēbat, baculō aureō quod gerēbat4 capita eōrum tetigit; quō factō omnēs in porcōs subitō conversī sunt. Intereā 10 Eurylochus īgnārus quid in aedibus agerētur, ad ostium sedēbat; postquam tamen ad sõlis occāsum anxio animo et sollicito exspectaverat, solus ad navem regredi constituit. Eo cum vēnisset, anxietāte āc timore ita perturbātus fuit ut quae vīdisset vix lūcidē nārrāre posset. At Ulixēs satis intellēxit 15 socios suos in perículo versari,8 et, gladio conrepto,9 Eurylocho imperāvit ut sine morā viam ad istam domum monstrāret. Ille tamen multīs cum lacrimīs Ulixem complexus 10 obsecrāre coepit në in tantum periculum së committeret: 'Si quid gravius ei accidisset, omnium salūtem in summo discrimine 11 20 futūram.' Ulixēs autem respondit sē nēminem invītum sēcum adductūrum; ei licēre,12 si māllet, in nāvī manēre; sē ipsum sine üllö auxiliö rem susceptürum. Hôc cum māgnā voce dixisset, e navi desiluit et nullo sequente solus in viam sē dedit. 25

## The Counter Charm.

17. Aliquantum <sup>18</sup> itineris progressus ad villam māgnificam pervēnit, quam cum oculis perlüstrāsset, <sup>14</sup> statim intrāre sta-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> īnsidiās, p. 40, l. 4. — <sup>2</sup> convīviis, 7, 10. — <sup>3</sup> accumbere, 4, 14. — <sup>4</sup> gerēns, 10, 15. — <sup>5</sup> aedibus, 30, 23. — <sup>6</sup> ōstium, 50, 23. — <sup>7</sup> occāsus, 28, 6. — <sup>8</sup> versābar, 24, 19. — <sup>9</sup> conreptum, 47, 27. — <sup>10</sup> complexus, 18, 9. — <sup>11</sup> discrīmine, 44, 14. — <sup>12</sup> licet, 5, 12. — <sup>13</sup> aliquartum, 50, 21. — <sup>14</sup> perlüstrābat, 43, 10.

15

tuit; intellēxit enim hanc esse eandem dē quā Eurylochus mentionem fēcisset. At cum in eo esset ut līmen 1 trānsīret, subito obviam ei stetit adulēscēns formā pulcherrimā aureum baculum 2 manū gerēns. Hīc Ulixem iam domum intrantem 5 manū conripuit et, "Quō ruis?" inquit. "Nonne scis hanc esse Circēs domum? Hīc inclūsī sunt amīcī tuī, ex hūmānā



FIG. 21. - ULYSSES AT THE HOUSE OF CIRCE.

speciē <sup>8</sup> in porcos conversī. Num vīs ipse in eandem calamitātem venīre?" Ulixēs simul āc vocem audīvit, deum Mercurium āgnovit<sup>4</sup>; nūllīs tamen precibus <sup>5</sup> ab īnstitūto consilio dēterrērī potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sēnsisset, herbam quandam eī dedit, quam contrā carmina <sup>6</sup> māximē valēre dīcēbat. "Hanc cape," inquit, "et ubi Circē tē baculo tetigerit," tū stricto gladio impetum in eam vidē ut faciās." Hīs dictīs Mercurius

" Mórtālís vīsús medið sermóne relfquit, Ét procul ín tenuem éx oculís ēvánuit aúram."

Cf. <sup>1</sup> līmine, p. 27, l. 13. — <sup>2</sup> baculō, 51, 9. — <sup>8</sup> speciem, 38, 17. — <sup>4</sup> āgnōscit, 27, 14. — <sup>5</sup> precēs, 3, 12. — <sup>6</sup> carmen, 50, 23. — <sup>7</sup> tetigit, 51, 9.

### The Enchantress Foiled.

18. Brevī intermissō spatiō, Ulixēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātus ōstium pulsāvit et foribus patefactīs ab ipsā Circe benigne exceptus est. Omnia eodem modo atque anteā facta sunt. Cēnam 1 māgnificē īnstrūctam 2 vīdit et accumbere iūssus est. Mox, ubi famēs 8 cibō dēpulsa est, 5 Circe poculum aureum vino repletum 4 Ulixi dedit. Ille, etsi suspicātus est venēnum sibi parātum esse, poculum exhausit. Quō factō Circē, postquam caput ēius baculō tetigit, ea verba locūta est quibus socios eius antea in porcos converterat. Rēs tamen omnīno aliter ēvēnit atque illa spērāverat. Tanta 10 enim vis 6 erat ēius herbae quam dederat Mercurius ut neque venēnum neque verba quidquam efficere possent. autem, sīcut iusserat Mercurius, gladiō stricto impetum in eam fēcit et mortem minitābātur. Tum Circē, cum sēnsisset artem suam nihil valēre, multīs cum lacrimīs eum obsecrāre 15 coepit në vitam adimeret.

### Pigs Changed to Men.

19. Ulixēs autem, ubi sēnsit eam timōre perterritam esse, postulāvit <sup>8</sup> ut sociōs sine morā in hūmānam speciem redūceret, certior enim factus erat ā deō Mercuriō eōs in porcŏs conversōs esse; nisi id factum esset, ostendit sē dēbitās <sup>20</sup> poenās sūmptūrum. <sup>9</sup> At Circē hīs rēbus graviter commōta ad pedēs ēius sē prōiēcit <sup>10</sup> et multīs cum lacrimīs iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmāvit sē quae ille imperāsset omnia factūram. Tum porcōs in atrium <sup>11</sup> immittī iussit. Illī datō sīgnō inruērunt et, cum ducem suum āgnōvissent, <sup>12</sup> māgnō dolōre adfectī sunt, <sup>25</sup> quod nūllō modō potuērunt eum dē rēbus suīs certiōrem

Cf. <sup>1</sup> cēnam, p. 35, l. 17. — <sup>2</sup> īnstrūctum, 51, 4. — <sup>8</sup> famē, 23, 15. — <sup>4</sup> replēvit, 45, 7. — <sup>5</sup> omnīnō, 41, 4. — <sup>6</sup> vim, 46, 5. — <sup>7</sup> strictō, 52, 13. — <sup>8</sup> postulāsset, 38, 15. — <sup>9</sup> sūmat, 28, 27. — <sup>10</sup> prōiēcissent, 49, 11. — <sup>11</sup> ātriō, 4, 11. — <sup>12</sup> āgnōscit, 27, 14.

facere. Circē tamen unguentō 1 quōdam corpora eōrum unxit; quō factō omnēs post breve tempus in speciem hūmānam redditī 2 sunt. Māgnō cum gaudiō Ulixēs amīcōs āgnōvit et nūntium ad lītus mīsit, quī reliquīs Graecīs sociōs receptōs 5 esse dīceret. Illī autem hīs rēbus cōgnitīs statim ad domum Circaeam sē contulērunt 3; quō cum vēnissent, omnēs ūniversī laetitiae 4 sē dēdidērunt.

### Afloat Again.

20. Postrīdiē ējus diēj Ulixēs in animo habēbat ex însulā quam celerrimē discēdere. Circē tamen, cum haec cognō-10 visset, ex odiō ad amōrem conversa omnibus precibus 6 eum \*ōrāre et obtestārī coepit ut paucos dies apud se morārētur; et hoc tandem impetrato tanta beneficia in eum contulit ut facile ei persuasum sit ut diutius 6 maneret. Postquam tamen tõtum annum apud Circen consumpserat, Ulixes magno de-15 sīderio 7 patriae suae videndae motus est. Sociis igitur 8 ad sē convocātīs, quid in animō habēret ostendit. Ubi tamen ad lītus dēscendit, nāvem suam tempestātibus ita adflīctam invēnit ut ad nāvigandum paene inūtilis esset. Hāc rē cōgnitā, omnia quae ad nāvis reficiendās ūsui sunt comparārī 20 iussit; quā in rē tantam dīligentiam omnēs praebēbant ut ante tertium diem opus 10 confecerint. At Circe, ubi vidit omnia ad profectionem parata esse, rem aegre ferebat et Ulixem vehementer obsecrābat 11 ut eo consilio desisteret. Ille tamen, në anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, ma-25 tūrandum sibi existimāvit, et tempestātem idoneam 12 nactus nāvem solvit. Multa quidem perīcula Ulixī subeunda 18 erant antequam in patriam suam perveniret; quae tamen in hoc loco longum est perscribere.

Cf. 1 unguenta, p. 21, l. 18. — 2 reddēbātur, 26, 4. — 8 contulērunt, 41, 12. — 4 laetitiam, 8, 5. — 5 precibus, 52, 9. — 6 diūtius, 25, 6. — 7 dēsīderī, 21, 12. — 8 igitur, 50, 5. — 9 praebuit, 8, 4. —  $^{10}$  opus, 40, 3. —  $^{11}$  obsecrāre, 53, 15. —  $^{12}$  idōneum, 35, 21. —  $^{18}$  subeunda, 53, 1.

# LIFE OF CAIUS MARIUS. (B.c. 157-86.)

[LHOMOND: VIRI ROMAE.]

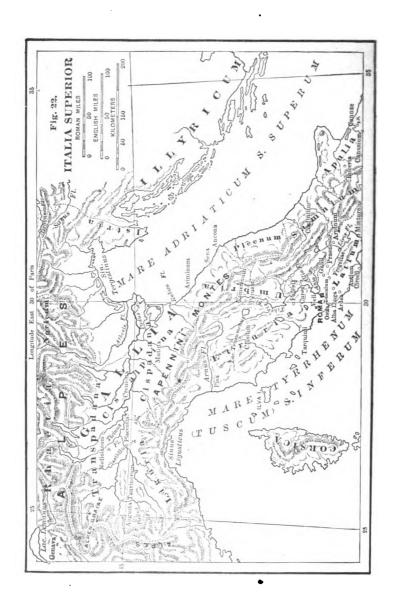


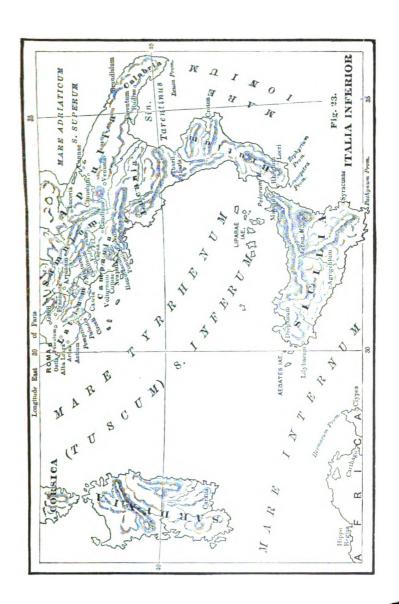
FIG. 24. - GAIUS MARIUS.

### With Scipio in Spain.

1. C. Marius, humilī locō nātus,¹ mīlitiae tīrōcinium in Hispāniā duce Scīpiōne posuit. Erat imprimīs Scīpiōnī cārus ob singulārem virtūtem et impigram ad perīcula et labōrēs alacritātem. Scīpiō, cum inspicere voluisset quem ad modum ab ūnōquōque equī cūrārentur, Marī equum validum et bene cūrātum invēnit; quam dīligentiam imperātor plūrimum laudāvit.² Cum aliquandō inter cēnam Scīpiōnem quīdam interrogāsset, sī quid illī accidisset, quemnam rēs pūblica aequē māgnum habitūra esset imperātōrem, Scīpiō percussō lēniter Marī umerō "Fortasse hunc," inquit. Quō to dictō excitātus Marius dīgnōs rēbus quās posteā gessit spīritūs concēpit.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> nātum, p. 17, l. 1. -2 laudō, 9, 23. -8 aliquandō, 3, 20. -4 fortasse. 25, 5. -5 dīgnius, 20, 11.





# Conquers Jugurtha.

2. O. Metellum in Numidiam contrā Iugurtham missum, cūius lēgātus 1 erat, cum ab eo Romam missus esset, apud populum Romanum criminatus est bellum ducere: 'Sī sē consulem fecissent, brevi tempore aut vivum aut mortuum 5 Iugurtham sē in potestātem populi Romāni redāctūrum.27 Itaque creatus est consul et in Metelli locum suffectus. Bellum ab illö pröspere coeptum confecit.8 Iugurtha ad Gaetūlos perfugerat eorumque rēgem Bocchum adversus Romanos concitaverat. Marius Gaetulos et Bocchum ad-10 gressus fūdit; castellum in excelsā rīpā positum, ubi rēgii thēsaurī 4 erant, non sine multo labore expugnāvit. Bocchus bello defessus legatos ad Marium misit pacem orantis.6 Sulla quaestor ā Mariō ad rēgem remissus Bocchō persuāsit ut Iugurtham Romanis traderet. Iugurtha igitur vinctus 7 ad 15 Marium deductus est; quem Marius triumphans ante currum ēgit 8 et in carcerem caenosum inclūsit. Quo cum Iugurtha dētractā 9 veste ingrederētur, ōs rīdentis in modum dīdūxisse et stupēns similisque dēsipienti exclāmāsse fertur: "Pro! quam frigidum est vestrum balneum 10!" Paucis diebus post 20 in carcere necătus 11 est.

### Defeats the Teutones.

3. Marius post bellum Numidicum iterum <sup>12</sup> consul creatus bellumque ei contra Cimbros et Teutones decretum est. Hi novi hostes, ab extremis Germaniae finibus profugi, novas sedes quaerebant, exclusique Gallia et Hispania cum in 25 Italiam remigrarent, a Romanis ut aliquid sibi terrae darent petierunt. Repulsi, quod nequiverant precibus, armis petere

Cf. <sup>1</sup> lēgātōs, p. 15, l. 24. — <sup>2</sup> redāctās, 17, 15. — <sup>3</sup> cōnfectō, 12, 24. — <sup>4</sup> thēsaurus, 9, 20. — <sup>5</sup> expūgnāvit, 37, 8. — <sup>6</sup> ōrantī, 6, 6. — <sup>7</sup> vinctus, 16, 6. — <sup>8</sup> ēgit, 47, 7. — <sup>9</sup> dētrāctā, 3, 15. — <sup>10</sup> balneō, 25, 7. — <sup>11</sup> necāret, 33, 14. — <sup>12</sup> iterum, 38, 3. — <sup>18</sup> petēbant, 2, 15.

constituunt. Trēs ducēs Romānī impetūs barbarorum non sustinuērunt.¹ Omnēs fugātī,² exūtī castrīs. Āctum erat dē imperio Romāno, nisi Marius fuisset. Hīc primo Teutonēs sub ipsīs Alpium rādīcībus adsecūtus proelio oppressit.² Vallem fluviumque medium hostēs tenēbant; Romānīs aquārum nūlla copia.⁴ Aucta necessitāte virtūs causa victoriae fuit. Nam flāgitante ³ aquam exercitū Marius, "Viri," inquit, "estis, ēn illīc aquam habētis." Itaque tanto ārdore pūgnātum est eaque caedēs hostium fuit ut Romānī victorēs dē cruento flūmine non plūs aquae biberent quam sanguinis io barbarorum. Caesa trāduntur hostium ducenta mīlia, capta nonāgintā. Rēx ipse Teutobochus, in proximo saltū comprehēnsus, insīgne spectāculum triumphī fuit; quippe vir procēritātis eximiae super tropaea ipsa ēminēbat.

# Goes against the Cimbri.

4. Dēlētis <sup>9</sup> Teutonibus C. Marius in Cimbrös sē convertit. <sup>15</sup> Quī cum ex aliā parte Ītaliam ingressī Athesim flūmen non ponte nec nāvibus, sed iniectīs arborum <sup>10</sup> truncīs velut aggere, trāiēcissent, occurrit <sup>11</sup> eīs C. Marius. Cimbrī lēgātōs ad consulem mīsērunt agrōs urbīsque sibi et frātrībus postulantīs; Teutonum enim clādem <sup>12</sup> īgnorābant. Quaerente Mario <sup>20</sup> quōs illī frātrēs dīcerent, cum Teutonēs nomināssent, <sup>15</sup> rīdēns Marius, "Omittite," inquit, "frātrēs; tenent hī acceptam ā nobīs tertam aeternumque tenēbunt." Tum lēgātī, sē lūdibrio habērī sentientēs, ultionem Mario minātī <sup>14</sup> sunt simul atque Teutones advēnissent. "Atquī adsunt," inquit Marius, <sup>25</sup> "nec sānē civīle foret vos frātrībus vestrīs non salūtātīs discēdere." Tum vinctos <sup>16</sup> addūcī iussit Teutonum ducēs, quī in proelio captī erant.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> sustinuit, p. 12, l. 3. — <sup>2</sup> fugātus, 37, 1. — <sup>8</sup> oppressī sunt, 51, 7. — <sup>4</sup> cōpia, 16, 5. — <sup>6</sup> flāgitāta est, 29, 11. — <sup>6</sup> trādidit, 25, 14. — <sup>7</sup> comprehendit, 6, 5. — <sup>8</sup> īnsīgnis, 21, 21. — <sup>9</sup> dēlēvērunt, 17, 25. — <sup>10</sup> arborēs, 1, 6. — <sup>11</sup> occurrit, 7, 15. — <sup>12</sup> clāde, 37, 1. — <sup>13</sup> nōminēs, 17, 4. — <sup>14</sup> minitābātur, 53, 14. — <sup>15</sup> vinctus, 56, 14.

# The Cimbri Destroyed. Bravery of their Women.

5. His rēbus audītis Cimbri ēgrediuntur castrīs et cum paucīs 1 suōrum ad vāllum Rōmānum adequitāns Boiorix,

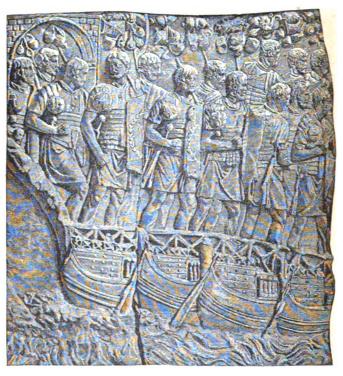


FIG. 25. - SOLDIERS WITH PACKS. "MARIUS'S MULES."

Cimbrorum dux, Marium ad pūgnam provocat et diem pūgnae ā Romānorum imperātore petit. Proximum dedit 5 consul. Marius cum aciem 2 ita înstituisset ut pulvis in oculos et ora hostium ferretur, incredibili strāge prostrāta 3 est

Cf. 1 pauca, p. 40, l. 16. — 2 aciem, 7, 5. — 8 prostratus, 43, 26.

illa Cimbrorum multitūdo; caesa 1 trāduntur centum octogintā hominum mīlia. Nec minor cum uxoribus pūgna quam cum viris fuit, cum obiectis undique plaustris desuper, quasi ē turribus, lanceis contisque pūgnārent. Victae tamen cum missā ad Marium lēgātione libertātem non im- s peträssent, suffocatis elisisque infantibus suis aut mutuis conciderunt volneribus aut vinculo 8 e crinibus suis facto ab arboribus pependērunt. Canēs 4 quoque dēfendēre Cimbrīs caesis eōrum domōs. Marius prō duōbus triumphis, qui offerebantur, uno contentus fuit. Primores civitatis, qui ei 10 aliquamdiū ut novō hominī ad tantōs honōrēs ēvēctō invīderant, conservatam ab eo rem publicam fatebantur. In ipsa acie Marius duas Camertium cohortis, mīrā virtūte vim Cimbrorum sustinentis, contra legem civitate donaverat. Quod quidem factum et vērē et ēgregiē posteā excūsāvit, 15 dīcēns inter armorum strepitum 5 verba sē iūris cīvīlis exaudire non potuisse.

### Civil War. Marius Takes Flight.

6. Illā tempestāte prīmum Rōmae bellum civile commōtum est. Causam bellō dedit Gāius Marius. Cum enim Sulla cōnsul contrā Mithradātem, rēgem Pontī, missus fuisset, 20 Sulpicius, tribūnus plēbis, lēgem ad populum tulit, ut Sullae imperium abrogārētur, C. Mariō bellum dēcernerētur Mithradāticum. Quā rē Sulla commōtus cum exercitū ad urbem vēnit, eam armīs occupāvit, Sulpicium interfēcit, Marium fugāvit. Marius hostīs persequentīs fugiēns aliquamdiū in 25 palūde dēlituit. Sed paulō post repertus extrāctusque, ut erat, nūdō corpore caenōque oblitus, iniectō in collum lōrō, Minturnās raptus et in custōdiam coniectus est. Missus est ad eum occīdendum servus pūblicus, nātiōne Cimber, quem

Cf. <sup>1</sup> caesa, p. 57, l. 11. -2 impetrātō, 54, 12. -3 vinculōrum, 26, 3. -4 canem, 5, 10. -6 strepitus, 26, 3. -6 fugātus, 37, 1. -7 repertus, 50, 8. -8 collō, 5, 15.

Marius voltūs auctōritāte dēterruit.¹ Cum enim hominem ad sē strictō² gladiō venientem vīdisset, "Tūne, homō," inquit, "C. Marium audēbis occīdere?" Quō audītō atto-





Fig. 26. - L. Cornelius Sulla.

FIG. 27. - COIN OF SULLA.

nitus ille āc tremēns abiectō ferrō s fūgit, Marium sē nōn 5 posse occīdere clāmitāns. Marius deinde ab eīs quī prius eum occīdere voluerant ē carcere ēmissus est.

### Marius "Sitting on the Ruins of Carthage."

7. Acceptā nāviculā in Āfricam trāiēcit et in agrum Carthāginiēnsem pervēnit. Ibi cum in locīs solitāriīs sedēret, vēnit ad eum līctor Sextilī praetoris, quī tum Āfricam obtinēto bat. Ab hōc, quem numquam laesisset, Marius hūmānitātis tamen aliquod officium exspectābat; at līctor dēcēdere eum provinciā iussit, nisi in sē animadvertī vellet; torvēque intuentem et vocem nūllam ēmittentem Marium rogāvit tandem ecquid renūntiārī praetorī vellet. Cui Marius: "Abī," inquit, "nūntiā vidisse tē Gāium Marium in Carthāginis ruīnīs sedentem." Duobus clārissimīs exemplīs dē incon-

Cf.  $^1$  dēterrērī, p. 52, l. 10. —  $^2$  strictō, 52, 13. —  $^8$  ferrī, 26, 2. —  $^4$  officium, 12, 26. —  $^5$  dēcēdente, 9, 21. —  $^6$  tandem, 44, 26.

stantiā rērum hūmānārum et urbis māximae excidium et virī dasum ante oculos poneret.

Returns and Slaughters Enemies. At length Falls Sick and Dies.

8. Profecto ad ellum Mitheratum Sullā, Marius revo. cātus ā Cinnā <u>Italiam edili</u>, ellerātus māgis ca amitāte quam domitus. Cam exercitū Romam ingressus can caedibus et rapinis vāstāvit; omnis adversae factionis nobilis variīs suppliciorum generibus adfēcit; quinque dies conti-



FIG. 28. - COINS OF MARIUS.

nuōs totidemque noctīs illa scelerum omnium dūrāvit ilcentia. Hōc tempore admīranda sānē populī Rōmānī abstinentia 10 fuit. Cum enim Marius occīsōrum domōs multitūdinī dīripiendās obiēcisset, invenīrī potuit nēmō qui cīvilī lūctū praedam peteret; quae quidem tam misericors continentia plēbis tacita quaedam crūdēlium victōrum vituperātiō fuit. Tandem Marius seniō et labōribus cōnfectus in morbum incidit et 15 ingentī omnium laetitiā vitam finīvit. Cūius virī sī exāminentur cum virtūtibus vitia, haud facile sit dictū utrum bellō melior an pāce perniciōsior fuerit; namque quam rem pūblicam armātus servāvit eam prīmō togātus omnī genere fraudis, postrēmō armīs hostīliter ēvertit.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> caedēs, p. 57, l. 9.—<sup>2</sup> suppliciō, 46, 8.—<sup>8</sup> dūrāvit, 21, 9.—
<sup>4</sup> lūctū, 10, 10.—<sup>5</sup> tacitus, 28, 20.—<sup>6</sup> cōnfectus, 48, 22.—<sup>7</sup> vitium, 32, 2.

### Personal Characteristics of Marius.

9. Erat Marius dūrior¹ ad hūmānitātis studia et ing rum artium contemptor. Cum aedem Honōris de mai hostium vōvisset, sprētā² peregrīnōrum marmorum nōbi artificumque³ Graecōrum arte, eam volgārī lapide per 5 cem Rōmānum cūrāvit⁴ aedificandam. Et Graecās lit dēspiciēbat, quod doctōribus suīs parum⁵ ad virtūtem pissent. At īdem fortis, validus,⁴ adversus dolōrem cōnfītus. Cum eī varicēs in crūre secārentur, vetuit⁵ sē adlitācrem tamen fuisse dolōris morsum ipse ostendit; 10 medicō alterum crūs postulantī nōluit praebēre,⁵ quod mrem esse remedī quam morbī dolōrem iūdicāret.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> dūrus, p. 35, l. 23. — <sup>2</sup> spernis, 47, 23. — <sup>3</sup> artificem, 9, 13 <sup>4</sup> cūrāvit, 24, 18. — <sup>5</sup> parum, 11, 24. — <sup>6</sup> validum, 55, 5. — <sup>7</sup> vetāt 12, 5. — <sup>8</sup> praebēre, 30, 27.



FIG. 29. - SOLDIERS MAKING CAMP.

# THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LET OX TILDEN FOULD, THEMS

# THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBEARY

A JOP, IL, OY Silbin icur Midlic

# LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR. (B.C. 100-44.)

[LHOMOND: VIRI ROMAE.]

### Early Life.

1. C. Iūlius Caesar, nobilissimā Iūliorum genitus familiā, annum agens sextum et decimum patrem āmīsit. Cornēliam, Cinnae filiam, dūxit uxorem; cūius pater cum esset Sullae inimīcissimus, is Caesarem voluit compellere ut eam repudiāret<sup>1</sup>; neque id potuit efficere. Quā rē Caesar bonis spoliā- 5 tus cum etiam ad necem quaererētur, mūtātā veste 2 nocte urbe ēlapsus est et, quamquam tunc quartānae morbo 3 laborābat, prope per singulās noctis latebrās commūtāre cōgēbātur4; et comprehēnsus ā Sullae lībertō, nē ad Sullam perducerētur vix datā pecuniā ēvāsit.<sup>5</sup> Postrēmo per pro- 10 pinquos et adfinis suos veniam impetravit.<sup>6</sup> Satis constat Sullam, cum deprecantibus amīcissimis et ornātissimis virīs aliquamdiū dēnegāsset 7 atque illī pertināciter contenderent, expūgnātum tandem proclāmāsse 'vincerent, dummodo scirent eum quem incolumem tantopere 8 cuperent aliquandō 15 optimātium partibus, quās sēcum simul dēfendissent, exitiō futurum: nam Caesari multos Marios inesse.'

## Captured by Pirates.

2. Stīpendia prīma in Asiā fēcit. In expūgnātione Mitylēnārum coronā cīvicā donātus est. Mortuo Sullā Rhodum sēcēdere statuit, ut per otium Apollonio Moloni, tunc clārissimo dīcendī magistro, operam<sup>9</sup> daret. Hūc dum trāicit,

Cf. 1 repudiāvit, p. 3, l. 12. — 2 vestīs, 21, 17. — 8 morbum, 61, 15. — 4 coāctus, 3, 18. — 6 ēvādere, 44, 5. — 6 impetrātō, 54, 12. — 7 dēnegāvit, 21, 23. — 8 tantopere, 30, 10. — 9 operam, 1, 10.

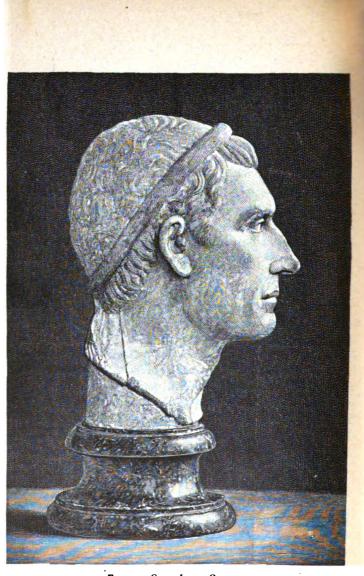


FIG. 31. - GAIUS IULIUS CARSAR.

ā praedonibus captus est mānsitque apud eos prope quadrāgintā dies. Per omne autem illud spatium ita se gessit ut pīrātīs pariter terrorī venerātionīque esset. Comites interim servosque ad expediendās pecūniās quibus redimeretur dimīsit. Vīgintī talenta pīrātae postulāverant; ille quīnquāgintā 5



Fig. 32. - A Civic Crown.

datūrum sē spopondit. Quibus numerātīs cum expositus esset in lītore, cōnfestim Milētum, quae urbs proximē aberat, properāvit <sup>8</sup> ibique contrāctā classe invectus in eum locum in quō ipsī praedōnēs erant, partem classis fugāvit, <sup>4</sup> partem mersit, aliquot nāvīs cēpit pīrātāsque in potestātem redāctōs <sup>5</sup> 10 eō suppliciō quod illīs saepe minātus inter iocum <sup>6</sup> erat adfēcit crucīque suffīxit.

#### Cæsar as Quæstor in Spain.

3. Quaestōrī ulterior Hispānia obvēnit. Quō profectus cum Alpīs trānsīret et ad cōnspectum pauperis cūiusdam vīcī comitēs per iocum inter sē disputārent num illīc etiam 15 esset ambitiōnī locus, sēriō dīxit Caesar mālle sē ibi prīmum esse quam Rōmae secundum. Dominātiōnis avidus ā prīmā

Cf. <sup>1</sup> comitis, p. 3, l. 12. — <sup>2</sup> postulāsset, 38, 15. — <sup>8</sup> properāvit, 38, 20. — <sup>4</sup> fugāvit, 59, 25. — <sup>5</sup> redāctās, 17, 15. — <sup>6</sup> iocō, 29, 25. — <sup>7</sup> vīcum, 41, 11.

aetāte 1 rēgnum concupiscēbat semperque in ore habēbat hos Euripidis, Graeci poētae, versūs:

"Nam sí violándum est iús, rēgnándī grátiā Violándum est, áliīs rébus pietātem colās."

5 Cumque Gādēs, quod est Hispāniae oppidum, vēnisset, animadversā <sup>2</sup> apud Herculis templum māgnī Alexandrī imāgine ingemuit et quasi pertaesus īgnāviam suam, quod nihildum ā sē memorābile <sup>3</sup> āctum esset in eā aetāte quā iam Alexander orbem terrārum subēgisset, missionem continuo efflāgitāvit ad captandās quam prīmum māiorum rērum occāsionēs <sup>4</sup> in urbe.

### Cæsar as Ædile and as Consul.

4. Aedīlis praeter Comitium āc Forum etiam Capitolium ornāvit porticibus. Vēnātionēs autem lūdosque et cum conlēgā M. Bibulo et sēparātim ēdidit ; quo factum est ut commūnium quoque impēnsārum solus grātiam caperet. Hīs autem rēbus patrimonium effūdit tantumque conflāvit aes alienum ut ipse diceret sibi opus esse mīliens sēstertium ut habēret nihil.

Consul deinde cum M. Bibulo creatus societatem cum Gnaeo Pompēio et Mārco Crasso iūnxit Caesar, ne quid ageretur in re pūblica quod displicuisset ūllī ex tribus. Deinde lēgem tulit ut ager Campānus plēbī dīvideretur. Cui lēgī cum senātus repūgnāret, rem ad populum dētulit. Bibulus conlēga in Forum vēnit ut lēgī obsisteret, sed tanta in eum commota est sēditio ut in caput ēius cophinus stercore plēnus effunderetur fascēsque frangerentur atque adeo ipse armīs Foro expelleretur. Quā rē cum Bibulus per reliquum annī tempus domo abditus cūriā abstinēret, ūnus

Cf. <sup>1</sup> aetātis, p. 33, l. 17. — <sup>2</sup> animadverterat, 31, 13. — <sup>8</sup> ēgērunt, 23, 8. — <sup>4</sup> occāsiōnem, 48, 25. — <sup>5</sup> lūdōrum, 23, 16. — <sup>6</sup> ēdere, 43, 23. — <sup>7</sup> grātiam, 45, 14. — <sup>8</sup> effundī, 28, 24. — <sup>9</sup> tulit, 59, 21. — <sup>10</sup> fascem, 11, 18. — <sup>11</sup> frangerent, 11, 19. — <sup>12</sup> cūriam, 25, 19.

5

ex eō tempore Caesar omnia in rē pūblicā ad arbitrium administrābat, ut nōn nūllī urbānōrum, sī quid testandī grātiā sīgnārent, per iocum nōn, ut mōs¹ erat, "Cōnsulibus Caesare et Bibulō" āctum scrīberent, sed "Iūliō et Caesare," ūnum cōnsulem nōmine et cōgnōmine prō duōbus appellantēs.

# Cæsar in Gaul, Germany, and Britain.

5. Fūnctus cōnsulātū Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accēpit. Gessit autem novem annīs quibus in imperiō fuit haec ferē<sup>2</sup>: Galliam in prōvinciae formam redēgit<sup>8</sup>; Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, prīmus Rōmānōrum ponte fabricātō ad-



FIG. 33. - COINS OF CAESAR.

gressus māximīs adfēcit clādibus. Adgressus est Britannōs, 10 ignōtōs anteā, superātīsque pecūniās et obsidēs imperāvit. Hīc cum multa Rōmānōrum mīlitum īnsīgnia nārrantur, tum illud ēgregium ipsīus Caesaris, quod, nūtante in fugam exercitū, raptō fugientis ē manū scūtō, in prīmam volitāns aciem proelium restituit. Īdem aliō proeliō legionis aquiliserum, ineundae fugae causā iam conversum, faucibus comprehēnsum in contrāriam partem dētrāxit dextramque ad hostem tendēns, "Quōrsum tū," inquit, "abīs? Illīc sunt cum quibus dīmicāmus." Quā adhortātione omnium legionum trepidātionem corrēxit, vincīque parātās vincere docuit. 20

Cf. <sup>1</sup> mōrēs, p. 4, l. 10. — <sup>2</sup> ferē, 1, 7. — <sup>8</sup> redāctōs, 65, 10. — <sup>4</sup> clāde, 37, 1. — <sup>5</sup> ēgregiō, 21, 14. — <sup>6</sup> scūtum, 3, 4. — <sup>7</sup> initō, 14, 4. — <sup>8</sup> dīmicāvit, 16, 1.

# Cæsar Crosses the Rubicon and Drives Pompey from Italy.

6. Interfecto interea apud Parthos Crasso et defuncta Iūliā, Caesaris filiā, quae, nūpta Pompēiō, generī socerīque concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulātio ērūpit. Iam prīdem Pompēiō suspectae Caesaris opēs 1 et Caesarī Pompēiāna 5 dignitās gravis, nec hic ferēbat parem, nec ille superiorem. Itaque cum Caesar in Gallia detineretur, et, ne imperfecto bello discederet, postulasset ut sibi liceret quamvis absenti alterum consulatum petere, a senatu suadentibus Pompeio ēiusque amīcīs negātum ei est. Hanc iniūriam acceptam 10 vindicātūrus in Italiam rediit et, bellandum ratus, cum exercitū Rubiconem flūmen, qui provinciae eius finis erat, trans-Hoc ad flumen paulum constitisse fertur ac reputans quantum molirētur, conversus ad proximos, "Etiam nunc," inquit, "regredī possumus; quod sī ponticulum trānsierimus, 15 omnia armīs agenda erunt." Postrēmō autem "Iacta ālea estō!" exclāmāns exercitum trāicī iussit plūrimīsque urbibus occupătis Brundisium contendit, quo Pompēius consulesque confügerant.

# Crosses over to Epirus in Pursuit of Pompey.

7. Qui cum inde in Epirum trāiēcissent, Caesar eos secū-20 tus ā Brundisio Dyrrhachium inter oppositās classis gra-



FIG. 34. - COINS OF POMPRY AND HIS SON.

vissimā hieme trānsmīsit; copiisque quās subsequī iusserat diūtius cessantibus, cum ad eas arcessendās frūstrā mīsisset,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> opibus, p. 12, l. 23. — <sup>2</sup> licēre, 51, 22. — <sup>8</sup> vindicārent, 15, 6. — <sup>4</sup> fertur, 56, 18. — <sup>5</sup> classe, 65, 8.

Tris audāciae facinus ēdidit.¹ Morae enim impatiēns castrīs noctū ēgreditur, clam nāviculam cōnscendit,² obvolūtō capite nē āgnōscerētur² et, quamquam mare saevā tempestāte intumēscēbat, in altum tamen protinus dīrigī nāvigium iubet et gubernātore trepidante, "Quid timēs?" inquit, "Caesarem vehis!" Neque prius gubernātorem cēdere adversae tempestātī passus⁴ est quam paene obrutus⁵ esset fluctibus.

# Defeats Pompey at Pharsalia, Pharnaces in Pontus, and Scipio in Africa.

8. Deinde Caesar in Epīrum profectus Pompēium Phaisālicō proeliō fūdit, et fugientem persecūtus, ut occīsum cōgnōvit, Ptolemaeō rēgī, Pompēī interfectōrī, ā quō sibi quoque 10
īnsidiās tendī vidēret, bellum intulit; quò victō in Pontum
trānsiit Pharnacemque, Mithradātis fīlium, rebellantem et
multiplicī successū praeferōcem intrā quīntum ab adventū
diem, quattuor, quibus in cōnspectum vēnit, hōrīs ūnā proflīgāvit aciē more fulminis quod ūnō eōdemque momentō vēnit, 15
percussit, abscessit. Nec vāna dē sē praedicātiō est Caesaris, ante victum hostem esse quam vīsum. Ponticō posteā
triumphō trium verbōrum praetulit titulum 10: "Vēnī, vīdī,
vīcī." Deinde Scīpiōnem et Iubam, Numidiae rēgem, reliquiās Pompēiānārum partium in Āfricā refoventīs, dēvīcit. 20

# Conquers the Son of Pompey in Spain.

9. Victorem Āfricānī bellī Gāium Caesarem gravius excēpit Hispāniēnse, quod Cn. Pompēius, Māgnī filius, adulēscēns fortissimus, ingēns āc terribile conflāverat, undique ad eum auxiliīs paternī nominis māgnitūdinem sequentium ex toto orbe confluentibus. Sua Caesarem in Hispāniam comitāta fortūna est; sed nūllum umquam atrocius perīculosius-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> ēdidit, p. 66, l. 14. — <sup>2</sup> conscendit, 14, 7. — <sup>8</sup> āgnoscit, 27, 14. — <sup>4</sup> passus est, 47, 9. — <sup>6</sup> obrutus est, 4, 8. — <sup>6</sup> fūdit, 56, 10. — <sup>7</sup> īnsidiās, 51, 1. — <sup>8</sup> aciem, 7, 5. — <sup>9</sup> percussō, 55, 10. — <sup>10</sup> titulum, 27, 3. — <sup>11</sup> confāvit, 66, 16. — <sup>12</sup> orbem, 66, 9. — <sup>18</sup> comitārī, 5, 5.

que ab eō initum <sup>1</sup> proelium, adeō ut, plūs quam dubiō Mārte, dēscenderet equō cōnsistēnsque ante recēdentem suōrum aciem, increpāns Fortūnam, quod sē in eum servāsset exitum, dēnūntiāret mīlitibus vestīgiō <sup>3</sup> sē nōn recessūrum; prosinde vidērent quem et quō locō imperātōrem dēsertūrī essent. Verēcundiā <sup>3</sup> magis quam virtūte aciēs restitūta est. Cn. Pompēius victus et interēmptus est. Caesar, omnium victor, regressus in urbem omnibus quī contrā sē arma tulerant ignōvit, et quīnquiēns triumphāvit.

### Cæsar as a Statesman and Reformer.

10. Bellis civilibus confectis 4 conversus iam ad ordinandum rei püblicae statum, fāstōs corrēxit 5 annumque ad cursum sõlis accommodāvit, ut trecentõrum sexāgintā quinque diērum esset et intercalārio mēnse sublāto 6 ūnus diēs quarto quoque anno intercalaretur. Iūs laboriosissimē āc sevēris-15 simē dīxit. Repetundārum convictos etiam ordine senātorio movit. Peregrinarum 7 mercium 8 portoria instituit; legem praecipuē sūmptuāriam exercuit. Dē ornandā instruendāque urbe, item de tuendo ampliandoque imperio plura ac māiora in dies destinābat; imprīmīs 10 ius cīvile ad certum 20 modum redigere atque ex immēnsā lēgum copia optima quaeque et necessaria in paucissimos conferre libros; bibliothecas Graecās et Latinās quās māximās posset pūblicāre; siccāre Pomptinās palūdēs; viam mūnire ā Marī Superō per Apennīnī dorsum ad Tiberim ūsque; Dācōs, quī sē in Pontum effūd-25 erant, 11 coërcere 12; mox Parthis bellum înferre per Armeniam.

# Is Made Perpetual Dictator.

11. Haec et alia agentem et meditantem mors praevēnit. Dictātor enim in perpetuum creātus agere însolentius coepit;

Cf.  $^1$  initō, p. 14, l. 4.  $^2$  vestīgia, 5, 18.  $^8$  verēcundiā, 21, 1.  $^4$  cōnfectō, 12, 24.  $^6$  corrēxit, 67, 20.  $^6$  sustulit, 45, 24.  $^7$  peregrinōrum, 62, 3.  $^8$  mercīs, 29, 27.  $^9$  tuendā, 18, 18.  $^{10}$  imprīmīs, 55, 2.  $^{11}$  effundī, 28, 24.  $^{12}$  coercēret, 17, 8.

senātum ad sē venientem sedēns 1 excēpit et quendam ut adsurgeret monentem īrātō voltū respēxit. Cum Antōnius, Caesaris in omnibus bellīs comes 2 et tunc consulātūs conlēga, capitī ēius in sellā aureā sedentis pro rostrīs diadēma, insīgne



FIG. 35. - MARCUS ANTONIUS.

rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō est repulsum ut nōn offēnsus vidērētur. Quā rē coniūrātum in eum est ā sexāgintā amplius virīs, Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus, dēcrētumque eum Īdibus Mārtiis in senātū cōnfodere.

### His Assessination.

12. Plūrima indicia futūri perīculī obtulerant diī immortālēs. Uxor Calpurnia, territa nocturno vīsū, ut Īdibus Martiīs domī subsisteret orābat, et Spūrinna haruspex praedīxerat ut proximos dies trīgintā quasi fātālīs caveret, quorum ultimus erat Īdūs Mārtiae. Hōc igitur die Caesar Spūrinnae,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> sedēret, p. 60, l. 8. -2 comitēs, 65, 3. -8 oblātā, 44, 11. -4 praedīcī, 28, 5. -8 ulterior, 65, 13.

Digitized by Google

"Ecquid¹ scīs," inquit, "Īdūs Mārtiās iam vēnisse?" et is, 
"Ecquid scīs illās nondum praeterīsse²?" Atque cum Caesar eo diē in senātum vēnisset, adsidentem coniūrātī speciē 
offici³ circumstetērunt īlicoque ūnus, quasi aliquid rogātūrus, 
5 propius accessit renuentīque ab utroque⁴ umero togam adprehendit. Deinde clāmantem "Ista quidem vīs⁵ est," Casca, 
ūnus ē coniūrātīs, adversum volnerat paulum īnfrā iugulum. 
Caesar Cascae bracchium adreptum graphio trāiēcit conātusque⁶ prosilīre alio volnere tardātus est. Dein ut animadvertit undique sē strictīs¹ pugionibus petī, togā caput obvolvit³ 
et ita tribus et vīgintī plāgīs confossus est. Cum Mārcum 
Brūtum, quem filī loco habēbat, in sē inruentem⁰ vīdisset, 
dīxisse fertur: "Tū quoque, mī fīlī!"

### His Views of Death. Fate of his Murderers.

13. Illud inter omnīs ferē constitit, 10 tālem ei mortem 15 paene ex sententiā obtigisse. 11 Nam et quondam cum apud Xenophontem lēgisset Cyrum ultimā valētūdine 12 mandāsse quaedam dē fūnere suo, aspernātus tam lentum 13 mortis genus, subitam sibi celeremque optāverat, et prīdiē quam occīderētur in sermone nāto super cēnam quisnam esset finis vītae com-20 modissimus, repentīnum inopinātumque praetulerat. Percussorum autem neque triennio quisquam amplius supervīxit neque suā morte dēfūnctus 14 est. Damnāti omnēs alius alio cāsū periērunt, 15 pars naufragio, pars proelio; non nūllī sēmet eodem illo pugione quo Caesarem violāverant interēmērunt. 16

#### Treatment of his Enemies.

25 14. Quō rārior in rēgibus et principibus virīs moderātiō, hōc laudanda magis est. C. Iūlius Caesar victoriā cīvīlī

Cf. <sup>1</sup> ecquid, p. 60, l. 14. — <sup>2</sup> praeterīre, 47, 9. — <sup>8</sup> officiō, 12, 25. — <sup>4</sup> utraque, 17, 11. — <sup>5</sup> vim, 46, 5. — <sup>6</sup> cōnātus est, 37, 5. — <sup>7</sup> strictō, 52, 13. — <sup>8</sup> obvolūtō, 69, 2. — <sup>9</sup> inruērunt, 53, 24. — <sup>10</sup> cōnstat, 40, 2. — <sup>11</sup> obtigit, 9, 18. — <sup>12</sup> valētūdinem, 21, 7. — <sup>13</sup> lentō, 27, 19. — <sup>14</sup> dēfūnctā, 68, 1. — <sup>16</sup> periit, 18, 8. — <sup>16</sup> interēmptus est, 70, 7.

clēmentissimē ūsus est; cum enim scrīnia dēprehendisset epistulārum ad Pompēium missārum ab eīs quī vidēbantur aut in dīversīs aut in neutrīs fuisse partibus, legere 1 noluit, sed combussit, nē forte in multos gravius consulendī locum darent. Cicero hanc laudem eximiam 2 Caesarī tribuit, quod 5 nihil oblīvīscī 8 solēret nisi iniūriās. Simultātīs omnīs occāsione oblātā libēns dēposuit. Ultro 4 āc prior scrīpsit C. Calvo post fāmosa ēius adversum sē epigrammata. Valerium Catullum, cūius versiculīs fāmam suam lacerātam non īgnorābat, adhibuit cēnae. 6 C. Memmī suffrāgātor in petitione 10 consulātūs fuit, etsī asperrimās fuisse ēius in sē orātionēs sciēbat.

# Personal Appearance and Habits.

15. Fuisse trāditur excelsā 6 statūrā, ōre 7 paulō plēniōre, nigrīs vegetīsque oculīs, capite calvō; quam calvitī dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe obtrectātōrum iocīs obnoxia erat, aegrē 15 ferēbat. Ideō ex omnibus dēcrētīs sibi ā senātū populōque honōribus nōn alium aut recēpit aut ūsūrpāvit libentius 8 quam iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae. Vīnī parcissimum eum fuisse nē inimīcī quidem negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex omnibus Caesarem ad ēvertendam 9 rem pūblicam 20 sōbrium accessisse. Armōrum et equitandī perītissimus, labōris ultrā fidem patiens; in agmine nōn numquam equō, saepius pedibus anteībat, capite dētēctō, 10 seu sōl, seu imber erat. Longissimās viās incrēdibilī celeritāte cōnficiēbat, ut persaepe nūntiōs 11 dē sē praevenīret 12; neque eum morā- 25 bantur flūmina, quae vel nandō vel innīxus inflātīs ūtribus 18 trāiciēbat.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> legit, p. 27, l. 3. — <sup>2</sup> eximiae, 57, 14. — <sup>8</sup> oblītī, 41, 6. — <sup>4</sup> ultrō, 31, 7. — <sup>5</sup> cēnam, 4, 16. — <sup>6</sup> excelsā, 56, 10. — <sup>7</sup> ōre, 66, 1. — <sup>8</sup> libentius, 29, 21. — <sup>9</sup> ēvertit, 61, 20. — <sup>10</sup> dētēxit, 5, 7. — <sup>11</sup> nūntium, 20, 2. — <sup>12</sup> praevēnit, 70, 26. — <sup>18</sup> ūtrem, 45, 5.

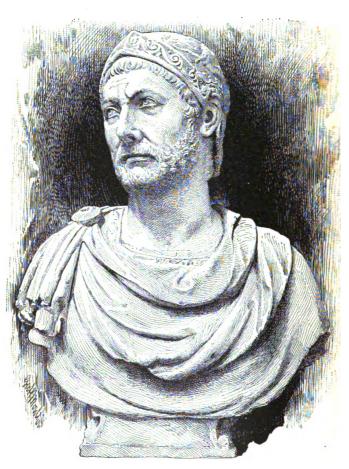


Fig. 36. - Hannibal.

# LIFE OF HANNIBAL. (B.C. 247-183.)

[NEPOS: LIVES.]

### His Extraordinary Military Ability.

1. Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Carthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnīs gentīs virtūte superārit,¹ nōn est infitiandum Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs² imperātōrēs prūdentiā quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitūdine cūnctās³ nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēnscumque cum eō congressus⁴ est in Ītaliā, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domī cīvium suōrum invidiā⁵ dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō dēvīcit ⁵ ūnīus virtūtem.

# Hatred of the Romans Inspired by his Father.

Hīc autem velut hērēditāte relictum odium <sup>7</sup> paternum 10 ergā Rōmānōs sīc cōnservāvit ut prius animam <sup>8</sup> quam id dēposuerit, quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre <sup>9</sup> cum Rōmānīs.

2. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit 10 Rōmānīs, omnium eis temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit bellandī ut ūsque ā rubrō marī arma cōnātus 11 sit inferre Ītaliae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē ēius voluntāte explōrārent darentque operam 12 cōnsiliis clandestīnīs 13 ut 20

Cf. <sup>1</sup> superābant, p. 7, l. 1.—<sup>2</sup> cēterīs, 19, 11.—<sup>8</sup> cūnctīs, 9, 15.—<sup>4</sup> congressus est, 37, 1.—<sup>5</sup> invidiā, 3, 27.—<sup>6</sup> dēvīcit, 69, 20.—<sup>7</sup> odī, 18, 3.—<sup>8</sup> animam, 3, 13.—<sup>9</sup> bellāvērunt, 17, 22.—<sup>10</sup> reddēbātur, 26, 4.—<sup>11</sup> cōnātus, 72, 8.—<sup>12</sup> operam, 63, 21.—<sup>13</sup> clandestīnīs, 9, 25.

Hannibalem in suspīcionem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptum alia atque anteā sentire, neque id frūstrā fēcissent, idque Hannibal comperisset 1 sēque ab interioribus consiliis segregari vidisset, tempore dato adiit ad regem 5 eique cum multa de fide sua et odio in Romanos commemorāsset, hôc adiūnxit: "Pater meus," inquit," "Hamilcar, puerulo me utpote non amplius novem annos nato, in Hispaniam imperator proficiscens Carthagine, Iovi optimo maximo hostiās immolāvit. Quae dīvīna rēs dum conficiebatur, quae-10 sivit à me vellemne secum in castra proficisci. libenter 4 accepissem atque ab eo petere coepissem ne dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem quam postulo dederis.' Simul<sup>8</sup> mē ad āram addūxit apud quam sacrificare instituerat, eamque ceteris remotis tenentem iurare 15 iūssit numquam mē in amīcitiā cum Romānis fore. iūs iūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem 6 ita conservāvī ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat quin reliquō tempore eadem mente sim futurus. Qua re si quid amice de Romanis cogitabis, non imprudenter feceris si me celaris<sup>8</sup>; cum quidem 20 bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis sī non mē in eo principem posueris."

## Service in Spain. Takes Saguntum. Then Leads his Army into Italy.

3. Hāc igitur <sup>9</sup> quā dīximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est; cūius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō, <sup>10</sup> equitātuī omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō exercitus summam imperī ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem dēlātum pūblicē comprobātum est. Sīc Hannibal, minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus <sup>11</sup> imperātor factus, proximō trienniō omnīs gentīs Hispāniae bellō subēgit, <sup>18</sup> Saguntum,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> comperisset, p. 36, l. 18.—<sup>2</sup> inquit, 3, 16.—<sup>8</sup> utpote, 29, 1.—<sup>4</sup> libentius, 73, 17.—<sup>5</sup> simul, 28, 25.—<sup>6</sup> aetātem, 17, 4.—<sup>7</sup> dēbēre, 28, 9.—<sup>8</sup> cēlāre, 43, 7.—<sup>9</sup> igitur, 35, 1.—<sup>10</sup> suffectus, 56, 6.—<sup>11</sup> nātō, 1. 7.—<sup>12</sup> subēgisset, 66, 9.

foederātam cīvitātem, vī expūgnāvit, trīs exercitūs māximōs comparāvit.¹ Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Ītaliam sēcum dūxit. Saltum ² Pyrēnaeum trānsiit. Quācumque iter fēcit cum omnibus incolīs ³ cōnflīxit; nēminem nisi victum 5 dīmīsit.⁴ Ad Alpīs posteāquam vēnit, quae Ītaliam ab Galliā sēiungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāium trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē saltus Grāius appellātur), Alpīcōs cōnantīs prohibēre trānsitū concīdit, loca patefēcit,⁵ itinera mūniit, ⁵ effēcit ut eā elephantus ro ōrnātus īre posset quā anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Ītaliamque pervēnit.

#### Defeats the Romans in Three Battles.

4. Conflixerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēlio Scipione consule eumque pepulerat. Cum hoc eodem Clastidi apud Padum decernit sauciumque inde ac fugătum dimittit. Ter- 15 tio idem Scipio cum conlega Tiberio Longo apud Trebiam

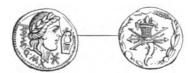


FIG. 37. - COIN OF THE FABIAN FAMILY.

adversus eum vēnit. Cum eīs manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōflīgāvit.<sup>8</sup> Inde per Ligurēs Apennīnum trānsiit petēns Etrūriam. Hōc itinere adeō gravī morbō <sup>9</sup> adficitur oculōrum ut posteā numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valē- <sup>20</sup> tūdine <sup>10</sup> cum etiamtum premerētur lectīcāque ferrētur, C.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> comparāvit, p. 7, l. 22. — <sup>2</sup> saltū, 57, 12. — <sup>3</sup> incolae, 6, 16. — <sup>4</sup> dīmittit, 27, 8. — <sup>5</sup> patefactīs, 53, 2. — <sup>6</sup> mūnīre, 70, 23. — <sup>7</sup> fugātus, 37, 1. — <sup>8</sup> proflīgāvit, 69, 14. — <sup>9</sup> morbus, 26, 8. — <sup>10</sup> valētūdinem, 24, 23.

Fläminium consulem apud Trasumēnum cum exercitū Insidis¹ circumventum occīdit, neque multo post C. Centēnium praetorem cum dēlēctā manū saltūs² occupantem. Hinc in Apūliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam³ eī vēnērunt duo consulēs, C. 5 Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs ūno proelio fugāvit, Paulum consulem occīdit et aliquot praetereā consulārēs, in eīs Cn. Servīlium Geminum, quī superiore anno fuerat consul.

## Approaches Rome. Outgenerals Q. Fabius Maximus. Wins Many Battles.

5. Hāc pūgnā pūgnātā Romam profectus est nūllo resi-10 stente. In propinquis urbi montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi dies castra habuisset et Capuam reverteretur, Q. Fabius Māximus, dictātor Romānus, in agro Falerno ei sē obiēcit. Hīc clausus locorum angustiīs a noctū sine ūllo detrimento exercitus se expedivit Fabioque, callidissimo 15 imperatori, dedit verba. Namque obducta nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuvencorum deligata incendit eiusque generis multitūdinem māgnam dispālātam immīsit. Quō repentīnō8 obiectő visű tantum terrőrem iniécit exercitui Rőmanőrum ut ēgredī extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus.9 Hanc post rem gestam 20 non ita multīs diebus M. Minucium Rūfum, magistrum equitum parī āc dictātorem imperio, dolo 10 productum in proelium fugāvit. Tiberium Sempronium Gracchum, iterum consulem, in Lūcānīs absēns in īnsidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quinquiēs consulem, apud Venusiam parī modo 25 interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quā rē hōc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit quantus ille fuerit: 11 quam diū in Italiā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannensem pugnam in campo castra posuit.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> īnsidiās, p. 51, l. 1.—<sup>2</sup> saltum, 77, 4.—<sup>8</sup> obviam, 41, 2.—
<sup>4</sup> angustiās, 19, 4.—<sup>5</sup> callidē, 9, 16.—<sup>6</sup> dēligātam, 10, 9.—<sup>7</sup> incendit, 75, 17.—<sup>8</sup> repentīnum, 72, 20.—<sup>9</sup> audēbis, 60, 3.—<sup>10</sup> dolus, 29, 19.—
<sup>11</sup> quam dūū, 4, 10.

## Recalled to Africa, he is Defeated at Zama by P. Scipio.

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēnsum revocātus¹bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, filium ēius Scīpiōnis quem ipse prīmō a pud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hōc exhaustīs iam patriae facultātibus² cupīvit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior posteā 5

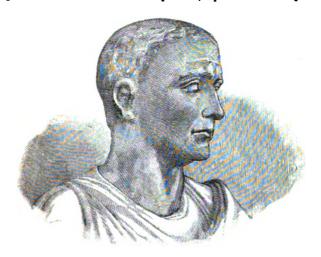


Fig. 38. - Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus.

congrederētur. In conloquium convēnit; condicionēs non convēnērunt. Post id factum paucīs diēbus apud Zamam cum eodem conflixit; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) bīduo et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter mīlia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī 10 simul cum eo ex aciē excesserant, insidiātī sunt eī; quos non solum effūgit, sed etiam ipsos oppressit. Hadrūmētī

Cf. 1 revocantes, p. 17, l. 13.—2 facultātem, 24, 6.—8 congressus est, 37, 1.—4 conflixit, 77, 5.—5 oppressī sunt, 51, 7.

reliquos e fuga conlegit; novis delectibus paucis diebus multos contraxit.

# Peace between Rome and Carthage. Hannibal Flees to Antiochus in Syria.

7. Cum in adparando acerrime esset occupatus, Carthaginienses bellum cum Romanis composuerunt. 5 sēcius exercituī posteā praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gessit, itemque Māgō frāter ēius ūsque ad P. Sulpicium C. Aurēlium consules. His enim magistratibus legati Carthaginienses Rômam vēnērunt, qui senātui populoque Rômāno grātiās agerent, quod cum eis pacem fecissent, ob eamque rem 10 corona l' aurea eos donarent simulque peterent ut obsides 2 eorum Fregellis essent captivique redderentur. senātūs consulto responsum est: 'mūnus eorum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidés quo loco rogarent futuros; captivos non remissuros, quod Hannibalem, cuius opera sus-15 ceptum 8 bellum foret,4 inimīcissimum nominī Romano, etiam nunc cum imperio apud exercitum haberent itemque fratrem ēius Māgonem.' Hoc responso Carthaginienses cognitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rex factus est, postquam imperator fuerat anno 20 secundo et vicesimo; ut enim Romae consules, sic Carthagine quotannis annui bini reges creabantur. magistrātū parī dīligentiā sē Hannibal praebuit 6 āc fuerat in bello. Namque effecit ex novis vectigalibus non solum ut esset pecunia quae Romanis ex foedere penderetur, sed 25 etiam superesset 7 quae in aerāriō reponerētur. Claudio L. Fūrio consulibus, Romā lēgātī Carthaginem vēnērunt. Hos Hannibal ratus 8 sui exposcendi grātiā missos, priusquam eis senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in

Cf. <sup>1</sup> corōnā, p. 63, l. 19.—<sup>2</sup> obsidēs, 67, 11.—<sup>8</sup> suscipere, 50, 9.—
<sup>4</sup> foret, 57, 26.—<sup>5</sup> imperī, 76, 25.—<sup>6</sup> praebēre, 30, 27.—<sup>7</sup> supererant, 37, 1.—<sup>8</sup> ratus, 68, 10.

Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hāc rē palam factā Poenī nāvīs duās quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent consequi, mīsērunt; bona ēius pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disiēcērunt, ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

#### Aids Antiochus against the Romans.

8. At Hannibal annō tertiō postquam domō profūgerat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōnsulibus, cum quinque nāvibus Āfricam accessit³ in fīnibus Cyrēnaeōrum, sī forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad bellum Antiochī spē fīdūciāque indūcerentur, cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficīsce-





FIG. 39. - COIN OF ANTIOCHUS THE GREAT.

rētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem excivit. Id ubi Poenī rescī- 10 vērunt, Māgōnem eādem quā frātrem absentem adfēcērunt poenā. Illī dēspērātīs rēbus cum solvissent fravis āc vēla ventīs dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prodita est; namque aliī naufragio, aliī ā servulīs ipsīus interfectum eum scrīptum 15 relīquērunt. Antiochus autem, sī tam in gerendo bello consiliīs ēius pārēre voluisset quam in suscipiendo înstituerat, propius Tiberī quam Thermopylīs dē summā imperi dīmicāsset. Quem etsī multa stultē conārī vidēbat, tamen nūllā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucīs nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iūssus 20

Cf. <sup>1</sup> consequerer, p. 30, l. 16.—<sup>2</sup> disicerentur, 40, 18.—<sup>8</sup> accēdēbat, 37, 20.—<sup>4</sup> solvērunt, 40, 7.—<sup>5</sup> pārēbant, 33, 4.—<sup>6</sup> summam, 76, 25.—<sup>7</sup> praefuit, 80, 5.

erat in Asiam dücere, eisque adversus Rhodiörum classem in Pamphyliö marī cönflixit.<sup>1</sup> Quō cum multitūdine adversariörum suī superarentur, ipse quō cornū rem gessit fuit superior.

## Proceeds to Crete. Eludes the Avarice of the Cretans.

9. Antiochō fugātō, verēns³ nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset³ sī suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētam ad Gortyniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē conferret⁴ consīderāret. Vīdit autem vir omnium callidissimus in māgnō sē fore perīculō, nisi quid provīdisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; māgnam enim sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exīsse fāmam. Itaque capit tāle⁵ consilium. Amphorās complūrīs complet plumbō, summās operit auro et argento. Hās praesentibus prīncipibus dēponit in templo Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illorum fideī crēdere. His in errorem inductīs, statuās aēneās⁶ quās sēcum portābat omnī suā pecūniā complet eāsque in propatulo domī abicit. Gortynii templum māgnā cūrā custodiunt, non tam ā cēterīs quam ab Hannibale, nē ille inscientibus eīs tolleret sēcumque dūceret.

## Goes to Prusias, King of Bithynia.

10. Sic conservatis suis rebus Poenus, inlusis Cretensibus omnibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervenit. Apud quem eodem animo fuit ergā Italiam, neque aliud quicquam ēgit' quam regem armāvit et exercuit adversus Romānos. Quem cum videret domesticis opibus minus esse robustum, conciliābat ceteros regēs, adiungēbat bellicosās 8 nātionēs. Dissi-25 debat ab eo Pergamēnus rex Eumenes, Romānis amīcissimus, bellumque inter eos gerebātur et marī et terrā; quo magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī. Sed utrobīque Eumenes

Cf. <sup>1</sup> conflixit, p. 77, l. 5. - <sup>2</sup> verērētur, 38, 11. - <sup>8</sup> accidit, 47, 7. - <sup>4</sup> contulērunt, 54, 6. - <sup>5</sup> tālium, 8, 2. - <sup>6</sup> aēneīs, 28, 22. - <sup>7</sup> ēgērunt, 23, 8. - <sup>8</sup> bellicosum, 2, 12. - <sup>9</sup> oppressit, 79, 12.

olūs valēbat¹ propter Rōmānōrum societātem; quem sī remōvisset, faciliōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur.² Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucīs diēbus erant dēcrētūrī.³ Superābātur nāvium multitūdine; dolō erat pūgnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Imperāvit 5 quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentīs vivās conligī eāsque in vāsa⁴ fictilia⁵ cōnicī. Hārum cum effēcisset māgnam multitūdinem, diē ipsō quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium classiāriōs convocat eisque praecipit omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēterīs tantum satis habeant sē 10 dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpentium multitūdine cōnsecūtūrūs. Rēx autem in quā nāvī veherētur tu scīrent sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, māgnō eīs pollicētur 7 praemiō fore.

## Assists Prusias in his War with Eumenes, King of Pergamus.

11. Tālī s cohortātione mīlitum factā classis ab utrīsque 15 in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē constitūtā, priusquam sīgnum pūgnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suīs quo loco Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceo mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvīs adversāriorum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēns sē rēgem professus test quaerere, 20 statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmo dubitābat quīn aliquid dē pāce esset scrīptum. Tabellārius, ducis nāvī dēclarātā suīs, eodem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā epistulā nihil in eā repperit s nisi quae ad inrīdendum eum pertinērent. Cūius etsī causam mīrābā-25 tur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere non dubitāvit. Horum in concursū Bīthyniī Hannibalis praecepto ūniversī nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quōrum vim

Cf. <sup>1</sup> valēre, p. 53, l. 15.—<sup>2</sup> arbitror, 25, 6.—<sup>8</sup> dēcernit, 77, 15.—<sup>4</sup> vāsīs, 42, 6.—<sup>5</sup> fictilem, 28, 25.—<sup>6</sup> vehēbātur, 40, 19.—<sup>7</sup> pollicita sum, 39, 12.—<sup>8</sup> tāle, 82, 11.—<sup>9</sup> palam, 81, 1.—<sup>10</sup> ostendīt, 50, 6.—
<sup>11</sup> profitēminī, 36, 15.—<sup>12</sup> repertus est, 50, 8.—<sup>18</sup> dubitāret, 76, 11.

rēx cum sustinēre non posset, fugā salūtem petit; quam consecūtus non esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximo lītore erant conlocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversārios premerent ācrius, repente in 5 eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentionem fēcimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae iacta initio rīsum pūgnantibus concitārunt neque quā rē id fieret poterat intellegī. Postquam autem nāvīs suās opplētās conspēxērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterritī, cum quid potissimum vītārent non vidērent, so puppīs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt. Sīc Hannibal consilio arma Pergamēnorum superāvit, neque tum solum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus copiīs parī prūdentiā pepulit adversārios.

#### The Romans Demand Hannibal from Prusias. He Takes Poison and Dies.

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū 6 ut lēgātī

15 Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīntium Flāminīnum cōnsulārem cēnārent,7 atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex eīs ūnus dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit.8 Patrēs cōnscrīptī, quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine īnsidiīs futūrōs existimārent,9 lēgātōs 20 in Bithyniam mīsērunt, in eīs Flāminīnum, quī ab rēge peterent nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. 10 Hīs Prūsiās negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent quod adversus iūs hospitī 11 esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent 12; locum ubi esset facile inven-25 tūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat in castellō quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, 13 idque sīc aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedificī exitūs habēret, scīlicet verēns nē ūsū 14

Cf. <sup>1</sup> lītore, p. 40, l. 16.—<sup>2</sup> repente, 27, 20.—<sup>8</sup> rīsū, 29, 20.—<sup>4</sup> vītantibus, 19, 3.—<sup>5</sup> referrent, 40, 22.—<sup>6</sup> cāsum, 6, 4.—<sup>7</sup> cēnāvit, 45, 5.—<sup>8</sup> dētulit, 66, 23.—<sup>9</sup> exīstimāret, 44, 3.—<sup>10</sup> dēderētur, 82, 5.—<sup>11</sup> hospitiō, 48, 7.—<sup>12</sup> comprehēnsus, 57, 12.—<sup>18</sup> mūnus, 80, 12.—<sup>14</sup> ūsū, 30, 12.

venīret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent āc multitūdine domum ēius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā ¹ prōspiciens Hannibalī dīxit plūrīs praeter cōnsuētūdinem armātōs adpārēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnīs forīs ² aedificī circumīret āc properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur.³ Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiāsset omnīsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vitam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō ⁴ dīmitteret, memor prīstinārum virtūtum venēnum,⁵ quod semper sēcum habēre 10 cōnsuērat,⁵ sūmpsit.

## The Date of his Death. His Writings.

13. Sīc vir fortissimus, multīs variīsque perfūnctus labōribus, annō adquiēvit septuāgēsimō. Quibus cōnsulibus interierit nōn convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudiō Mārcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōnsulibus mortuum in annālī suō scrīptum relīquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. Cornēliō Cethēgō M. Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque hīc tantus vir tantīsque bellīs dīstrictus nōn nihil temporis tribuit litterīs. Namque aliquot ēius librī sunt, Graecō sermōne cōnfectī, in eīs ad Rhodiōs dē co Cn. Manlī Volsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestīs. Hūius bellī gesta multī memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex hīs duo, quī cum eō in castrīs fuērunt simulque vīxērunt quam diū fortūna passa est, Sīlēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> iānuam, p. 50, l. 25. — <sup>2</sup> foribus, 53, 2. — <sup>8</sup> obsidēre, 37, 16. — <sup>4</sup> arbitrium, 67, 1. — <sup>5</sup> venēnum, 53, 12. — <sup>6</sup> cōnsuēvit, 45, 6. — <sup>7</sup> aliquot, 78, 6. — <sup>8</sup> prōdita est, 81, 14. — <sup>9</sup> passus est, 69, 7.

## III. POETICAL SELECTIONS.

## r. The Stag.

Ad fóntem cérvus, cúm bibísset, réstitít, et in liquóre vidit éffigiém suám. Ibi dúm rāmósa mírāns laúdat córnuá, crūrúmque nímiam ténuitätem vítuperát, vēnántum súbitō vócibús contérritús, per cámpum fúgere coépit, ét cursú levi canés ēlúsit. Sílva tum éxcēpít ferúm, in quá reténtis ímpedítus córnibús, lacerárī coépit mórsibús saevis canúm. Tunc móriēns vócem hanc édidísse dícitúr:

5

10

15

20

'O me infelicem! qui nunc démum intéllego, ūtília míhi quam fúerint quaé despéxeram, et quaé laudáram quantum lúctūs habuerínt.'

PHAEDRUS.

# 2. Friends and Fortune Fly Together.

Dónec erís fēlíx, multós numerábis amícōs:
 Témpora sí fuerínt núbila, sólus erís.
 Ádspicis, út veniánt ad cándida técta colúmbae,
 Áccipiát nüllás sórdida túrris avís?
 Hórrea fórmīcaé tendúnt ad inánia númquam.
 Núllus ad ámissás íbit amícus opés.
 Útque comés radiós per sólis eúntibus úmbra est,
 Cúm latet híc pressús núbibus, ílla fugít,
 Móbile síc sequitúr fortúnae lúmina vólgus:
 Quaé simul ínductá núbe tegúntur, abít.

OVID: Trist., I, ix, 5-14.

## 3. Epitaph of a Roman Matron.

Hospés, quod dícō paúlum est, ádstā āc pérlegé. Hīc ést sepúlcrum hau púlchrum púlchrae féminaé: nōmén paréntēs nóminárunt Claúdiám; suúm marítum córde dílēxít suó: nātôs duós creávit: hórunc álterúm in térrā línquit, álium súb terrá locát. Sermóne lépidō tum aútem incéssū cómmodó domúm servávit, lánam fécit. Díxi, abí.

Corpus Inscriptionum Latinarum.

#### 4. Daemones's Dream.

Miris modis di lúdos fáciunt hóminibus. nē dórmiéntīs quídem sinúnt quiésceré. 10 Velút ego hāc nócte quaé procéssit próxumá mīrum átque inscitum sómniávi sómniúm. Ad hirúndinfnum nídum vísast símiá ascénsiónem ut fáceret ádmolfriér: neque eas ērípere quibat índe. Póstibí 15 vidétur ád mē símia ádgredíriér. rogáre scálas út darem útendás sibí. Ego ad hốc exémplum símiaé respóndeó, nātās ex Phílomēla átque ex Prógnē esse hirúndinés. Ago cum illā, néquid nóceat meis populáribús. 20 Atque illa nímio iám fiert feróciór, vidétur últrő míhi malúm minitáriér. In iús vocát mēd. Íbi ego néscio quố modô īrātus vídeor médiam adrīpere sīmiam; conclúdo in víncla béstiám neguíssumám. 25 Nunc quam ád rem dícam hoc áttinére sómniúm. numquam hódie quívi ad cóniectúram eváderé.

PLAUTUS: Rudens, III, i, 1-20.



10

15

## 5. The Death of the Pet Sparrow.

Lúgēte, ó Venerés Cupidinésque, Ét quantúmst hominúm venústiórum. Pásser mórtuus ést meaé puéllae, Pásser, déliciaé meaé puéllae, Quém plūs ílla ocults suts amábat: Nám mellftus erát suámque nórat Ípsa tám bene quám puélla mátrem, Néc sēsē á gremio ílliús movébat. Séd circúmsiliéns mode húc mode íllüc Ád sölám dominam úsque pípiábat. Quí nunc ít per itér tenébricósum Íllūc únde negánt redíre quémquam. At vobis male sít, malaé tenébrae Orci, quae ómnia bélla dévorátis: Tám bellúm mihi pásserem ábstulístis. O factúm male! ió misélle pásser! Túa núnc operá meaé puellaé Fléndō túrgidulí rubént océlli.

CATULLUS: 3.

# 6. How to Train Children.

Et érrat lóngē mea quidém senténtiá,

Qui impérium crédat grávius ésse aut stábiliús,
Vi quód fit, quam illud quód amicítiā adiúngitúr.
Mea síc est rátiō et síc animum indūcó meúm:
Maló coáctus qui suum ófficiúm facít,
Dum id réscitum iri crédit, tántispér pavét:
Si spérat fóre clam, rúrsum ad ingeniúm redít.
Ille quém benefíciō adiúngās éx animó facít,
Studet pår reférre, praésēns ábsēnsque idem erít.
Hōc pátriumst, pótius cónsuēfácere filiúm
Suā spónte réctē fácere quam áliēnó metú:

Hōc páter āc dóminus ínterést: hōc quí nequít, Fateatur néscire imperare liberis.

TERENCE: Adelphi, 1, 65-77.

# 7. The City Mouse and the Country Mouse.

**Ólim** 

rústicus úrbānúm mūrém mūs paúpere fértur áccepísse cavó, veterém vetus hóspes amícum, 5 ásper et áttentús quaesítis, út tamen ártum sólveret hóspitifs animúm. Quid múlta? neque ílle séposití cicerís nec lóngae invídit avénae, áridum et őre feréns acinúm semésague lárdi frůsta dedít, cupiéns variá fastídia cénā 10 víncere tángentís male síngula dénte supérbō; cúm pater ípse domús paleá porréctus in hórnā ésset adór loliúmque, dapís melióra relínquens. Tándem urbānus ad húnc: "Quid tế iuvat," ínquit, "amíce, praéruptí nemorís patiéntem vívere dórsō? 15 Vis tu hominés urbémque feris praeponere sílvis? Cárpe viám, mihi créde, comés, terréstria quándō mórtālís animás vivúnt sortíta, neque úlla est aút māgnō aút parvố lētí fuga: quố, bone, círcā, dúm licet, ín rebús iūcúndis víve beátus, 20 víve memór quam sís aeví brevis." Haéc ubi dícta ágrestém pepulére, domó levis éxsilit; índe ámbō própositúm peragúnt iter, úrbis avéntēs moénia nócturní subrépere. Iámque tenébat nóx mediúm caelí spatiúm, cum pónit utérque 25 ín locupléte domó vestígia, rúbro ubi cócco tíncta supér lectós candéret véstis ebúrnōs, múltaque dé māgná superéssent fércula cēnā, quaé procul éxstructis ineránt hestérna canístris. Érgō, ubi púrpureá porréctum in véste locávit 30

10

15

20

25

ágrestém, velutí succinctus cúrsitat hóspes cóntinuátque dapés, nec nón vernfliter ípsis fúngitur ófficifs, praelámbēns ómne quod ádfert. Ílle cubáns gaudét mūtátā sórte bonísque rébus agít laetúm convívam, cúm subitō íngēns válvārúm strepitús lectís excússit utrúmque. Cúrrere pér tōtúm pavidí concláve, magísque éxanimés trepidáre, simúl domus álta Molóssīs pérsonuít canibús. Tum rústicus "Haúd mihi vítā ést opus hác," ait, "ét valeás; mē sílva cavúsque tútus ab ínsidís tenuí sōlábitur érvō."

HORACE: Sat., II, vi, 79-117.

#### 8. The Enchantress Circe.

Próxima Círcaeaé rādúntur lítora térrae, díves ináccessós ubi Sólis fília lúcōs ádsiduó resonát cantú tectísque supérbīs úrit odórātám noctúrna in lúmina cédrum, árgūtó tenuís percúrrēns péctine télās. Hínc exaúdīrí gemitús iraéque leónum víncla recúsantum ét sērā sub nócte rudéntum, saétigeríque sués atque ín praesaépibus úrsī saévire ác formaé māgnórum ululāre lupórum, quós hominum éx facié dea saéva poténtibus hérbīs índuerát Circē ín voltús āc térga ferārum.

VIRGIL: Aen., VII, 10-20.

# 9. The Golden Age.

Quám bene Sáturnó vivébant rége priús quam Téllūs ín longås ést patefácta viás! Nóndum caéruleás pinús contémpserat úndās Éffūsúm ventís praébuerátque sinúm; Néc vagus ígnötís repeténs compéndia térris

Présserat éxterná návita mérce ratém. Illo nón validús subiít iuga témpore taúrus, Nón domitó frenős őre momórdit equus: Nón domus úlla foris habuít, non fixus in ágris, Qui regerét certis finibus árva, lapís. Ipsae mélla dabánt quercús, ultróque ferébant Óbyja sécürfs úbera láctis ovés. Nón aciés, non fra fuít, non bélla, nec énsem Immití saevús důxerat árte fabér. Núnc Iove súb dominó caedés et vólnera sémper, 10 Núnc mare, núnc lētí mílle repénte viaé.

TIBULLUS: I, iii, 35-50.

#### 10. The Shortness of Life.

Eheú fugácēs, Póstume, Póstumé, lābúntur ánnī, néc pietás morám rūgis et instanti senéctae ádferet índomitaéque mórtī;

15

non sí trecénis quótquot eunt diés, amíce, plácēs ínlacrimábilém Plūtona taurīs, qui ter amplum Géryonén Tityónque tristi

20

compéscit úndā, scílicet ómnibús, quicúmque térrae múnere véscimúr, ēnāvigándā, síve régēs síve inopés erimús colóni.

Früstrá cruénto Márte carébimús frāctfsque raúci flúctibus Hádriaé, frūstrå per aútumnós nocéntem córporibús metuémus Aústrum.

25



15

20

Viséndus åter flúmine lánguidó Cöcytos érrans ét Danai genús infåme dámnatúsque lóngi Sísyphus Aéolidés labóris.

5 Linquénda téllūs ét domus ét placéns uxór, neque hárum quás colis árborúm tē praéter ínvīsás cupréssös úlla brevém dominúm sequétur.

Absúmet hérēs Caécuba dígniór serváta céntum clávibus ét meró tinguét pavímentúm supérbō, póntificúm potióre cénis.

HORACE: Od., II, xiv.

# 11. The Joys of Country Life.

Beátus ílle quí procúl negótifs, ut prísca géns mortáliúm, patérna rúra bóbus éxercét suís, solútus ómnī faénoré, neque éxcitátur clássicó mīlés trucí, neque hórret frātúm maré, forúmque vítat ét supérba cíviúm poténtiórum líminá.

HORACE: Epod., ii, 1-8.

# 12. Live while you Live.

Aequám meméntő rébus in árduís serváre méntem, nón secus ín bonís ab insolénti témperátam laétitiá, moritúre Délli, seu maéstus ómnī témpore víxerís, seu tē ín remótō grāmine pér diés fēstós reclínātúm beāris interiore notā Falérnī.

Quō pínus íngēns álbaque pópulús umbram hóspitálem cónsociáre amánt rāmís? Quid óbliquó labórat lýmpha fugáx trepidáre rívō? 5`

Hūc vína et únguenta ét nimiúm brevís flōrés amoénae férre iubé rosaé, dum rés et aétās ét sorðrum fila triúm patiúntur átra.

10

Cēdés coémptis sáltibus ét domó villáque flávus quám Tiberís lavít, cēdés, et éxstrüctís in áltum dívitiís potiétur hérēs.

15

Dīvésne príscō nátus ab Ínachó nil ínterést an paúper et ínfimá dē génte súb dīvó moréris, víctima níl miserántis Órcī.

20

Omnés eódem cógimur, ómniúm versátur úrnā sérius óciús sors éxitúra et nós in aéternum éxsilium ímpositúra cúmbae.

HORACE: Od., II, iii.

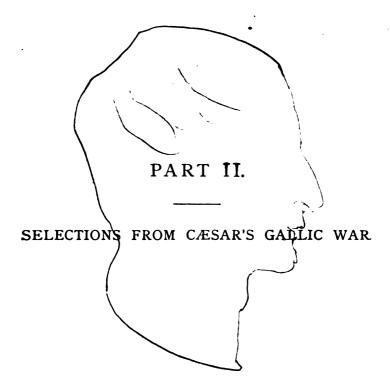




FIG. 40. - GAIUS IULIUS CARSAR.

## INTRODUCTION.

T.

## THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR.

"Julius Cæsar, whose remembrance yet Lives in men's eyes, and will to ears and tongues Be theme and hearing ever." — Shakespeare.

"The greatest name in history." - Merivale.

# I. THE POLITICAL CONDITION OF ITALY IN THE FIRST CENTURY B.C.

THE Roman state was in form and name a commonwealth or republic. While Rome was a small agricultural community and her citizens a body of patriotic, sturdy, and independent freeholders, the task of government was easy and the constitution well adapted to its purpose. The wars that followed for the establishment and extension of her power at first fostered unity and soundness of national life. But in course of time Rome became an imperial state and took upon herself the guardianship of every country in the world. Wealth flowed into her coffers from every quarter of the earth, her citizens became corrupt, and the rule of the people became the rule of a rich landed aristocracy, whose principal ambition was to perpetuate its mischievous power. The organ of this aristocracy was the senate, a body of six or seven hundred men, who became members of it nominally by virtue of holding certain high offices, and who remained senators for life. In theory, therefore, the senate was elective, and rested on the popular will; but the members really became such on account of noble blood, wealth, or political, social, or other influence. Moreover, the great offices of the state came to be bought and sold openly and without shame, and opposing factions contended not with ballots alone, but with iron and steel, so that the election place was frequently stained with the blood of the slain. It became increasingly difficult for one not possessing and willing to use such means to be elected to any office.

Opposed to the landed aristocracy was a class of wealthy capitalists known as equites, the "Equestrian Order." Many of these were as rich as the senators, but their wealth — most of it gained by usury, state contracts, slave-dealing, and tax-gathering — consisted of money instead of land. They took no active interest in politics excepting so far as they could influence legislation to their advantage by lobbying and bribing.

There was no industrious middle class among the free citizens of Rome. Manufacture on a large scale, as a means of wealth, was absolutely unknown; while all mechanical industries were carried on by slaves. The poorer class of citizens, the *plebs*, were wholly influenced in their votes by their wealthy patrons or by scheming demagogues. The freedmen were the only class who could become rich by industry.

The rural portions of Italy were for the most part held in large plantations (latifundia), owned by nobles and cultivated by slaves, or, more frequently, occupied by great droves of cattle. This plantation system had crowded out the free peasant proprietors in almost all parts of the peninsula. After throwing up their farms, which foreign competition had made unprofitable, they flocked to Rome to swell the idle mob that lived on what their votes would bring. There still remained, especially in Northern Italy, a considerable body of small land owners; and the municipal towns (municipia), about four hundred in number, whose territories comprised, politically speaking, the whole area of Italy, were still the home of a fairly prosperous middle class. These had all received Roman citizenship after the social war (B.C. 90) and might, by their substantial character and intelligence, have served as a strong opposition to the corrupt aristocracy at Rome; but they lacked organization and leadership, and when they went to Rome to vote, they were wholly powerless against the turbulent political clubs of the metropolis, whose violence was a regular feature of all public proceedings. Yet in this class alone was the old Roman virtue to be found, and in it lay whatever hope there was to redeem the state.

Another menace to the government was in the constitution of the armies. After a man had been consul, he was given charge of a province and was put in command of several legions. While abroad he was not amenable to the government at home, and when he returned he used his old soldiers to further his political schemes, and rewarded them at the expense of the opposing faction, often by wholesale spoliation and murder.

Partisans of the nobility were known as Optimates; those opposed to them as Populares. Before Cæsar, the most conspicuous leader of the former had been Sulla, of the latter, Marius, Cæsar's uncle by marriage. These two men by their thirst for power and mutual hatred filled all Italy with bloodshed and terror for years. Under the established régime there was no continuity in government, but a perpetual see-saw between rivals. Rome was kept in a constant electioneering excitement accompanied by the worst forms of demoralization. All the vast interests of the Roman world were sacrificed to the luxury and ambition of a governing class wholly incompetent for its task; and the only resource against anarchy appears to have been that some one man, by craft or by force, should get all the reins of power into his single hand. That man was destined to be Julius Cæsar.

#### II. CÆSAR'S EARLIER CAREER.

"Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village, Than be second in Rome."—Longfellow.

Caius Julius Cæsar (Gaius Iulius Caesar) was born July 12th, B.C. 100, or, according to some authorities, two years earlier. Assuming the later date, he was six years younger than Pompey, his great rival, and Cicero, the distinguished orator. His ancestry was of the noblest, and was supposed to reach back on his mother's side to Ancus Marcius, the Roman king, and on the father's to Æneas, the founder of the Roman nation and reputed to be the son of a goddess.

The time of his birth was during the great ascendancy of the *Populares* under Marius, his uncle; and his childhood was passed amid the horrors of the proscriptions that marked Marius's dictatorship. Though Cæsar was connected by blood with the oldest and



proudest houses of Rome, he early showed his predilection for the party of the people; and the sturdy Marius, with all his defects, doubtless exercised a marked influence over the life and destinies of his young nephew. Cæsar lost his father early in life, so that most of the responsibility for his education and bringing up rested upon his mother, Aurelia. She was a typical matron of the old school, managing her house with simplicity and frugality, and holding to the traditions and virtues of the ancient Romans. Tacitus, the Roman historian, couples her name with that of Cornelia, the famous mother of the Gracchi. Cæsar owed much of his future greatness to her influence, and his love and reverence for her are highly honorable to both.

In the year 86, when Cæsar was still a boy, he was appointed a priest of Jupiter. This office was a perfunctory one and had little real religious significance. In 83 he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, an act which identified him thus early with the Populares; for Cinna was a very prominent leader of that party. It was soon after this that Sulla, the leader of the Optimates, returned from Asia Minor with a victorious army, prepared to take a terrible revenge for the proscription of Marius. Cæsar soon fell under his displeasure because of his relationship to Marius. He was ordered to divorce his young wife because she was Cinna's daughter. this crisis Cæsar showed a prominent trait of his character, a trait which led him during all his life to brave every danger rather than allow himself to be controlled. Though but a youth, he refused to obey Sulla's command. A price was set on his head and he was obliged to flee for his life. Often he was in great peril, and once he was taken, and escaped only by bribing his captor. His friends interceded for him, pleading his youth, and finally obtained his pardon, Sulla saying, "Take him, since you will have it so; but I would have you know that the youth for whom you are so earnest, will one day overthrow the aristocracy. I see in him many Mariuses."

Cæsar thinking it safer to leave Italy for a time went to Asia Minor, where he gained some military experience and distinguished himself for valor by saving a comrade's life. Sulla died in 78 and Cæsar returned to his family and resumed his studies. He was a diligent and thorough student and doubtless followed the usual course

of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory. To be a good speaker was essential to political success, and Cæsar was especially anxious to excel in that direction. He gave some public exhibitions of his skill and won much applause; but anxious to perfect himself still farther he went to Rhodes in 76, to study under Apollonius Molon, the most famous teacher of oratory and rhetoric of the day. On this journey, when near Miletus, he was captured by pirates and held for a heavy ransom. He spent some time among them while waiting for the money, and joined in their sports and games with the greatest freedom, at the same time assuring them that he would hang them all as soon as he was free. They seem to have regarded him with mingled awe and admiration. The ransom was paid. was released, went at once to Miletus, where he hastily collected a few ships and made a descent on the pirates before they dreamt of danger. He recovered the ransom money and punished the pirates as he had threatened.

On his return to Rome, he began his political career (B.C. 68) by serving as quæstor, an office connected with the public treasury and the first step toward the consulship. This was followed in 65 by the ædileship. The taking of this office, which was one of the chief magistracies, though it involved only the care of the public buildings and the oversight of the great festivals and games, was considered a direct bid for a future consulship, and a man's claims upon that higher office were determined in large measure by the lavishness and splendor of his ædileship. Cæsar was poor, but with characteristic boldness he played for the highest political stakes and did not hesitate to incur enormous debts, in fact so enormous that those who had not the most perfect confidence in his capacity and his powers believed him irretrievably ruined. His ædileship surpassed all before it in magnificence; but he left it — as he remarked with grim humor — worth more than a million dollars less than nothing.

After his ædileship he identified himself more and more with the popular faction, and even dared to restore some of the statues and trophies of Marius, which had been banished from sight seventeen years before by the order of Sulla. The people began to hope for a successful revival of the Marian party and to look to Cæsar as its leader.

In B.C. 63 he was elected pontifex maximus against the strong opposition of the Optimates. This office was one of great political power and dignity, though not formally a civil office. Cæsar held it for the rest of his life. In 62 he was elected prætor, an office of a judicial character, and this was followed by a year of command in Spain as proprætor. Before leaving for Spain, his creditors became insistent and threatened to detain him unless he paid them. Cæsar then obtained a large loan from the richest man in Rome, Crassus, who was ambitious for office and doubtless hoped to make good use in turn of Cæsar's brilliant abilities to further his own ends.

In Spain Cæsar gained valuable military experience and made his administration so profitable to himself, as was usual with provincial governors, that, though he left Rome owing millions of sesterces, he returned in the year 60 with enough money to pay all his debts. design was to run for the consulship, the highest office in the gift of the people. To secure his election he effected a union of interests between himself and Crassus and Pompey. These were the two most powerful men in Rome, - Crassus because of his wealth, Pompey because of his fame as a general and his popularity with the army. The latter was, in fact, really the first man in the state. He had but recently returned from Asia Minor laden with the spoils of the Mithridatic war, and might easily have seized the dictatorship had he so chosen; but he disbanded his army and preferred to appear as a private citizen, but with almost autocratic power. He had quarreled with Crassus, but Cæsar reconciled them, and the three formed a sort of offensive and defensive alliance known as the first triumvirate, - what we should call a political deal. This was for Cæsar, who was at that time quite their inferior in fame and influence, a master stroke of craft and diplomacy.

In 59 Cæsar was elected consul almost without opposition. He well understood the critical condition of affairs and saw clearly the dangers that threatened the state, and instituted valuable reforms looking to its regeneration and salvation. The army and the moneyed classes represented by Pompey and Crassus were with him, and he could do almost as he pleased. His first act was the passage of an agrarian law, by which thousands of acres were to be distributed to the poor. This was not a mere act of bribery, but an attempt to

restore the peasant freeholders, who had been dispossessed by the rich. Then he passed the excellent body of laws known as the Leges Juliae, which mark an epoch in Roman jurisprudence, and which were devised in the interests of individual rights, purity of justice, morality, and good government. All that one man could do in a single year to save his country from anarchy, Cæsar did.

Cæsar was now forty-three years of age. With the exception of the time spent in Spain, his life had been employed in petty miserable contests with Roman factions. He longed for a new and larger field where he might have freedom to perform deeds worthy of his surpassing abilities and unbounded ambition. This opportunity came to him when, as proconsul, he was entrusted with the protection of the northern frontier against the Gauls, and was assigned the provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum. It was a most hazardous post and doubtless many of the Optimates thought that they were well rid of him.

## III. CÆSAR IN GAUL.

"What security men derive from a resolute spirit." - Casar.

By the 'deal' of the triumvirate, Cæsar was to have the government of Gaul for five years, while Crassus and Pompey were to remain in the city to look after the interests of the coalition. The bond was farther strengthened by the marriage of Pompey with Julia, Cæsar's young and beautiful daughter.

Cæsar, as we have seen, was over forty when he went to Gaul. He was more of a civilian than a soldier and was far more at home in the Forum than in the camp. Alexander, Hannibal, and Napoleon were trained in war from childhood. The qualities that are most potent in war—hope, confidence, audacity, and pugnacity—are qualities that belong to youth. So Cæsar is an anomaly in military history. In spite of his years and his comparative inexperience, he leaped at once to the highest place, and is counted to-day among the three or four greatest generals in history, if not the greatest of them all. He never lost a set battle and he showed infinite versatility in adapting means to ends, always doing the right thing at the

right time. He never admits the possibility of defeat and overcomes the most stupendous difficulties with such ease that he rarely speaks of them. His promptness of decision and rapidity of execution were such that the enemy were constantly overwhelmed with awe and were led to regard him as a supernatural being. 'Forced marches,' 'continuous marching day and night,' 'as quickly as possible' are phrases that recur again and again in his narrative. Only a natural ruler of men could get things done with such swiftness. He carried out his plans with the greatest audacity and, at the same time, without recklessness. No one could be more minute and thorough in preparations than he. No one left less chance for luck, good or bad, to enter into the result. In all that was done, his was the masterful and presiding genius, and the legions rarely accomplished much in his absence. His relations with his soldiers were most cordial. They idolized him and he respected and admired them and constantly labored for their safety and comfort. He allows them to share in the glory of his victories and in his story lingers with delight over their heroic exploits. He shared all their dangers and privations, he excelled personally in deeds of arms, and he allowed himself no luxury but a favorite horse. It is not strange that when trouble came upon their master, his soldiers were true to him, and even volunteered to serve without pay. Only three of his officers, two of them Gauls, went over to the enemy, while thousands came to him from the other side.

After two successful campaigns in Gaul, in the spring of B.C. 56, Cæsar met his two confederates at Luca, in Etruria, to arrange their future schemes. The conference was held with great display, almost like a royal court. More than two hundred senators were present, and one hundred and twenty lictors were in attendance, attached to the several magistrates. At this conference it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus should hold the consulship the following year, and, after their term of office, should receive by popular vote a similar command to that held by Cæsar, — namely, that Pompey should command in Spain and Crassus in Syria for five years each; also that when Cæsar's five years were up, he should receive in the same way a second term of five years. His ten years' administration would then close at the end of B.C. 49; after which time

—an interval of ten years having elapsed—he would be eligible again as consul.

The programme was duly carried out. Crassus departed (B.C. 54) to his province, where he was defeated the next year by the Parthians in the battle of Carrhæ, and shortly after entrapped and killed. Pompey put his province into the hands of one of his subordinates, and remained in the neighborhood of Rome, unwilling to remove from the seat of his personal influence.

Cæsar served eight campaigns in Gaul, an account of which is contained in the eight books of his Commentaries. Seven of these he wrote himself. The eighth was written by his friend and staff-officer, Hirtius. During these years he stormed more than 800 towns and subdued 300 tribes, engaged with more than 3,000,000 men, swept over a million human beings from the earth, and took a million more prisoners to be sold into slavery. "He was the first to lead an army into interior Gaul, the first to cross the Rhine into Germany, the first to bring a navy into the Western Ocean or to sail into the Atlantic with an army to make war." He left a magnificent country for the Romans to appropriate and retain until their increasing corruption left it in turn an easy prey to the Germans. He inspired such terror of the Roman arms that the tide of barbarian invasion was stayed for centuries.

## IV. CÆSAR'S LATER CAREER.

Meanwhile events had been moving on at Rome. With Crassus dead, Cæsar and Pompey were left in the enjoyment of almost absolute authority. They had been friends from youth, but none the less rivals, and the death of Julia (B.C. 54) sundered the last ties that bound them together. In 52 Pompey had been made sole consul and found himself at the head of a party which, under cover of the constitution, was determined to destroy Cæsar that it might retain the power which his reforms threatened to place in worthier hands.

Cæsar's proconsulship of Gaul would expire at the end of B.C. 49. He wished to run for a second consulship in B.C. 48. The senate

<sup>&</sup>quot;The foremost man of all this world." - Shakespeare,

<sup>&</sup>quot;Cæsar could bear no superior, Pompey no equal." — Lucan.

resolved to prevent this, and commanded him to resign his office and disband his army several months before the expiration of his term. If they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they knew they could crush him. Cæsar knew this too, and refused to obey the decree unless Pompey should also disband his Pompey would have been willing to agree to this fair proposition, but his friends would not permit him, and were bent on destroying Cæsar. Naturally the charge of false play was made on both sides, and the strife continued until Cæsar was finally declared a public enemy. He therefore crossed the Rubicon, a small stream which formed the boundary of his province and the limit of his authority, and began to march towards Rome. but a single legion with him and continued his efforts to come to an understanding with the Optimates, having hopes of a compromise. He made a speech to his soldiers, explaining the situation, and was assured of their enthusiastic support. Labienus alone deserted him, corrupted, it is said, by Roman gold.

Cæsar's march through Italy was like a triumphal procession; the cities opened their gates to him and he was everywhere hailed with enthusiasm. Among the Optimates there was nothing but consternation and fear. They had pinned their faith to Pompey, who had boasted that he had but to stamp his foot on the ground and legions would spring from the earth ready to obey him. He had vastly overrated himself (as was his wont), and had no conception of Cæsar's power and genius. Cicero well sums up the situation in a letter to his friend Atticus: "The consuls are helpless. There has been no levy. With Cæsar pressing forward and our general doing nothing, the men will not come to be enrolled. Pompey is prostrate, without courage, without purpose, without force, without energy." Pompey had been looked upon by his partisans as almost divine. He had been peculiarly fortunate throughout his career and had made a great military reputation by assuming the laurels that others had won. Mommsen says of him: "He was radically a commonplace man, formed by nature to make a good corporal, but forced by circumstances to be a general." Now that he was confronted by a really serious difficulty and by a really able man, he was paralyzed.

Pompey with his forces and accompanied by the senators fled in

a panic to Brundisium and sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. Cæsar meanwhile continued his victorious advance, and in sixty days was master of Italy. Then he went to Spain, and before autumn closed had met and defeated all opposition there. Returning to Rome he made preparations to follow Pompey. Many prominent Optimates had fallen into his hands, but he let them all go free, to their own great amazement and to Cæsar's eternal praise. In a letter he says: "I will conquer after a new fashion and fortify myself in the possession of the power I acquire by generosity and mercy."

Cæsar followed Pompey across the sea from Brundisium, transporting his army in two divisions. He encountered considerable difficulty on account of storms and the lack of ships. After much skirmishing, anxiety, and suffering (on Cæsar's part), owing to scarcity of food and supplies, he fought a battle at Pharsalia in Thessaly on Aug. 9, B.C. 48. Before the battle Pompey's officers felt so sure of victory that a rich banquet was spread awaiting their return from the field. In numbers and equipment Pompey was much superior, and with him was all the wealth and respectability of Rome. He had 45,000 infantry and 5000 cavalry against Cæsar's 22,000 and 1000, respectively; but he was overwhelmingly defeated and the battle ended in a terrible panic and great slaughter, in which 15,000 men lost their lives. As Cæsar viewed the slain he said sadly: "They would have it so. After all that I had done for my country, I, Gaius Cæsar, should have been condemned as a criminal if I had not appealed to my army."

Pompey field for his life and took ship to Egypt and was there murdered by the king, who hoped thus to win Cæsar's favor. When Cæsar arrived there, however, a few days later, and Pompey's head was presented to him, he is said to have turned away from the sight with horror and grief. He now overcame all remaining opposition in several short and brilliant campaigns. The first of these was in Asia Minor, where he conquered so easily that he reported it to the senate in the words that have since become famous: "Veni, vidi, vici." By the battle of Thapsus in Africa (B.C. 46) and that of Munda in Spain (B.C. 45), the Pompeian party was finally crushed.

Cæsar now returned to Rome, where he was made imperator — possessing the entire imperium, or military dominion of Rome, not

of a single colony or province merely - and perpetual dictator (dictator perpetuo), which offices clothed him with all the political authority of the state. By the powers thus conferred he laid the foundations of the Imperial constitution, which was afterwards (B.C. 30) set in operation by his grand-nephew and adopted son, Octavianus, later known as Augustus. This scheme of government eventually became (as was possibly foreseen from the start) an hereditary monarchy, under the name and form of a republic. ing the short period of Cæsar's rule he continued the good work of his first consulship and carried a series of measures of wise and practical statesmanship, such as the reform of the calendar, the regulation of the administrative system, and the policy of checks upon the abuses of the money power. He also planned extensive military expeditions against Parthia, Scythia, and Germany, and large public works and improvements, such as draining the Pomptine marshes and cutting through the isthmus of Corinth. With characteristic energy he accomplished much in a very short time.

But the possession of this exalted authority involved the utter overthrow of the constitution and necessarily excited alarm and jealousy among patriots and demagogues alike. Rumors were abroad that Cæsar was seeking to be king, a name detested at Rome since the foundation of the republic. His rivals were jealous, and not a few friends were disappointed at not having received as large favors as they thought they deserved. Many of his former enemies were bitter against him, because he had been magnanimous enough to forgive them. These feelings culminated in a conspiracy against his life. The leaders were Cassius, a violent and fearless man driven mad by jealousy and baffled ambition; and Marcus Brutus, who had no better friend than Cæsar, but who fancied that he must emulate his ancestor, Brutus the first consul, who expelled the Tarquins. Cæsar received many warnings of what was going on, but disregarded them all with his usual indifference to danger. The deed was consummated in the senate-house on the Ides of March, B.C. 44. great dictator was struck down by false friends and fell, pierced with wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue. This dastardly act received the condemnation it deserved, and few have dared to defend it on the ground of patriotism. Those concerned in it all

died violent deaths soon after. Both Brutus and Cassius committed suicide, the latter stabbing himself with the very dagger which he had used against Cæsar.<sup>1</sup>

#### V. Person and Character of Cæsar.

"Death makes no conquest of this conqueror For now he lives in fame, though not in life."— Shakespeare.

Suetonius describes Cæsar when a youth as tall, slight, and handsome, with dark piercing eyes, a sallow complexion, large nose, lips full, features refined and intellectual, neck sinewy and thick. He adds further that he was neat to effeminacy about his dress and appearance. Fond of athletics, he excelled in all manly sports, especially in riding. In danger he knew no fear and often performed acts of great personal daring. His health was vigorous until his later years, and he could endure an apparently unlimited amount of labor and hardship. Added years gave him a majestic and commanding presence without detracting from the grace and courtesy of his bearing. We judge him to have been a man of singular charm and of unusual personal magnetism.

Thanks to the peculiar skill possessed by the ancients in the art of portraiture, we have good reason to believe that we may see the great dictator as he was, from existing statues and busts. Two of the most noted of these are the busts in the British Museum (Fig. 40) and that in the Louvre (Fig. 31). The one in the Naples Museum (Fig. 60) is judged by competent critics to be conventional and not modelled after the living man. Those first mentioned are thought to be true to life. The one in the British Museum shows us Cæsar the statesman, the man of peace; the one in the Louvre, Cæsar the man of action, the martial hero.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>&</sup>quot;Great Julius, whom all the world admires." - Milton.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> For a vivid imaginative account of the conspiracy, see Shakespeare's "Julius Casar."

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> On the portraits of Cæsar, see an illustrated article by Mr. John S. Ropes in Scribner's Magazine for February, 1887, and S. Baring-Gould's "Tragedy of the Cæsars," Vol. I.

What Alexander was to the Greeks, and Hannibal to the Carthaginians, that and much more was Cæsar to the Romans. The two former excelled all men of their times in war only; but Cæsar had such extraordinary abilities in widely different directions that many regard him as the most remarkable man that history records. In whatever he did, he always did the best possible. He had the greatest diversity of gifts: as a student of language, he composed a treatise on grammar while crossing the Alps; as an orator, Quintilian says he would have rivalled Cicero had he devoted his time to this art; as a general, he has had no superior and hardly a peer; and, above all, he was the greatest politician and statesman of his time. To his statecraft all his other acts are subordinate, and by this they should be interpreted.

Cæsar was too great a man to be without enemies. He has been accused of being a traitor to his country, who by a deep-laid scheme overthrew its constitution. He was undoubtedly ambitious for power, and he used it in making such changes in the constitution as were sorely needed to keep it from going to pieces; but how far the acts by which he accomplished this desirable end were the result of a plan to further his personal ambition, and how far they were compelled by the stress of circumstances, we cannot judge. We do know, however, that he professed an earnest desire for peace, until he was driven into war by the hatred and perversity of his opponents.

He has also been accused of immorality, cruelty, and irreligion. It would be vain to maintain that Cæsar was a model of virtue in an age that was notoriously and openly wicked and profligate. We know that Cæsar was a man of perfect self-control, and that he was remarkable for extreme abstemiousness in eating and drinking. As for the rest, he was probably no worse than the average.

Doubtless he was cruel, judged by modern standards. He butchered without mercy thousands of defenceless men, women, and children. But we must remember that Cæsar was a Roman, of a people naturally cruel and careless of bloodshed, and, again, that he was dealing with Gauls and Germans, whom the Romans despised, and for whom he had not, nor could have, any feelings of sympathy or kindness. The doctrine of human brotherhood is something he never heard of. But, on the other hand, contrast with this his constant care

and anxiety for the welfare of his soldiers, his patience and forbearance with their mistakes, such as no modern commander has exhibited in his memoirs, and, above all, recall his mercy to his opponents in the Civil War, whom he freely pardoned and restored to honor and favor. Contrast Cæsar's dictatorship with the horrors of Marius and Sulla, and we cannot wonder that his clemency became famous.

That Cæsar was a skeptic is no doubt true. The age was skeptical and the learned classes no longer believed in the gods of their fore-fathers. What Cæsar's real beliefs were, or if he had any, we do not know. He often speaks of fortune as ruling in the affairs of men, and probably had some vague and dimly defined belief in a supreme power.

#### VI. CÆSAR'S LITERARY WORK.

As a man of letters Cæsar is hardly less eminent. His vast and massive intellect could hold in its grasp a great variety of subjects. He wrote on many different themes, such as philosophy, language, astronomy, and divination. Of all his books only his Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars have come down to us in complete form. They stand as the best military history that was ever written. Their ulterior purpose was to justify him in the eyes of the world for the course he took in opposing the senate and the government. He does this rarely by argument, but by such a tactful and masterful collocation of facts that the unthinking reader feels himself persuaded that Cæsar could hardly have done otherwise.

The style of these memoirs is remarkable for directness, terseness, and simplicity. Cicero, one of the greatest masters of style, says of them, "I pronounce them indeed to be very commendable, for they are simple, straight-forward, agreeable, with all rhetorical ornament stripped from them as one strips off a garment." While the language is lucid, it is packed full of meaning, and even a good Latinist needs to read slowly and with deliberation that the full thought of each sentence may be gathered. Sometimes a whole sentence is crammed into an adjective or a participle. To translate into good English requires, therefore, frequent amplification.

Like all great men, Cæsar rarely speaks of himself. In his works he refers to himself in the third person and with such modesty and impartiality that you would never suspect him to be the writer. He betrays his identity by three slips of the pen where he uses the first person. He never struts or poses for effect, not even when he is narrating sublime deeds of heroism.

Cæsar wrote his Commentaries in the midst of intense activity. They were jotted down as he journeyed and fought; mere notes, as it were, for future amplification. Hirtius says, "While others know how faultlessly they are written, I know with what ease and rapidity he dashed them off."

For us the Gallic War has a peculiar interest because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of their present political and social peculiarities.

## VII. IMPORTANT EVENTS IN CÆSAR'S LIFE.

B.C. 100 Born, July 12th.

" 83 Marries Cornelia, the Daughter of Cinna.

" 80-78 Serves with the Army in Asia.

" 76-75 Studies Oratory at Rhodes.

" 68 Quæstor.

" 65 Ædile.

" 63 Pontifex Maximus.

" 62 Prætor.

" 61 Proprætor in Spain.

60 Forms the First Triumvirate.

" 59 Consul.

" 58-49 Proconsul in Gaul.

' 56 Meeting of the Triumvirate at Luca.

50 The Trouble with Pompey begins.

49 Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begun.

" 48 The Battle of Pharsalia.

46 The Battle of Thapsus. Declared Dictator for ten years.

" 45 The Battle of Munda. Appointed Imperator for life.

" 44 The Conspiracy. Assassinated in the Senate House on the Ides of March.

#### II.

## ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS.

#### I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.

I. The Legions.

4. The Engineers and Artisans.

2. The Cavalry.

5. The Artillery.

3. The Auxiliaries.

6. The Baggage Train.

7. The Officers and their Staff.

#### II. THE STANDARDS.

III. THE MUSIC.

#### IV. THE LEGIONARY.

a. Enlistment.
b. Clothing.

d. Weapons.

g. Work. h. Pay.

c. Armor.

f. Food.

i. Discipline.

V. THE CAMP.

VI. THE MARCH.

VII. THE BATTLE.

VIII. THE SIEGE.

IX. THE FLEET.

## I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.

# 1. The Legions.

The Roman legion corresponded to a modern Division, but was more an organic whole, since it was the smallest unit that had separate line officers. What its normal strength was in Cæsar's time we have no means of knowing; but a probable estimate puts it at 5000 men. The actual effective strength in the field, however, was usually much less, falling to 3000 men, as at the battle of Pharsalia (on Cæsar's own authority). This variation in number was due to the many absences from duty which always occur in a military organization, and to the losses incurred by the individual legions in previous campaigns. Losses in old legions were not usually made good by new recruits, but the latter were formed into new legions; hence the older the legion, the smaller usually its enrollment. The average effective strength of the legion in the Gallic War was probably near 3600 men.

The subdivisions of the legions were as follows:

1 legion = 10 cohorts of about 360 men each.

1 cohort = 3 maniples of 120 men each.

1 maniple = 2 centuries of 60 men each.

There were, therefore, 10 cohorts, 30 maniples, and 60 centuries in each legion. These divisions did not, however, like our companies, have special "commissioned officers," but were commanded by centurions who came from the ranks. The legions constituted the main body of the army and did most of the fighting, but there were other arms employed for various purposes (see below). The legions were designated by numbers, given in the order of their enlistment.

# 2. The Cavalry.

The cavalry (equitatus), originally of Roman citizens, was in Cæsar's time composed almost exclusively of recruits from subject or allied states. In Cæsar's army it was composed of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. There was no fixed ratio between the number of legionaries and cavalry. In the campaign against the Helvetians, Cæsar had 4000 equites, in the battle of Pharsalia, 1000; but the number of legions was the same in both.

The cavalry was divided into regiments (alae) of about 330 horsemen each; these were subdivided into 10 squadrons (turmae) of 33 horsemen each; and these again into 3 squads (decuriae) of 11 each. See Figs. 83, 84.

## 3. The Auxiliaries.

The auxiliaries (auxilia peditum) were infantry forces from allied and subject states. Cæsar nowhere gives the number of his auxilia, and it was doubtless as various as that of his cavalry. They were the light-armed soldiers (milites levis armaturae), the archers (sagittarii), and the slingers (funditores). See Figs. 45, 65, 99, 100. The best slingers came from the Balearic Islands, the best archers from Crete and Numidia. The light-armed soldiers wore no heavy armor and carried a light round shield (parma). The archers had neither corselet, helmet, nor shield. The latter they could not carry on account of their bows.

Cæsar placed little reliance on his auxilia for actual fighting, but used them for the most part to make a show of force and frighten the enemy (Bk. i. 51), and to assist in building fortifications. In engagements the bowmen and slingers were usually stationed on the wings (alae), and from this were called alarii.

## 4. The Engineers and Artisans.

The engineers and artisans (fabri) sometimes formed a separate corps under the command of a chief engineer (praefectus fabrum), and sometimes they were called from the ranks of the legions when their services were needed. Cæsar had a chief engineer, but no special body of men (cf. Bk. v. 11). They were employed in building bridges, ships, winter quarters, and in repairing weapons and equipments.

# 5. The Artillery.

Engines of war were not often used on the battlefield, where modern artillery forms such an important branch of the service, but mainly in the defence and assault of fortified cities or camps. They had a limited use also in the fleet (Bk. iv. 25).

We have no exact account of the construction of these engines. Cæsar almost always calls them tormenta (cf. torquere, to twist), a name which clearly points to the elasticity of twisted rope, sinew, or hair, for the source of their energy. They were of three kinds: catapultae, ballistae, and scorpiones (see Figs. 75, 92, 94). The catabultae shot great arrows in a horizontal direction, like a cannon; the ballistae hurled great stones or heavy blocks of wood through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells. The range of these weapons was from 1500 to 2000 ft. A scorpio was a small catapult having a range of about 350 ft. It was an accurate and deadly weapon. Cæsar tells of one at the siege of Avaricum that marked and killed man after man in the same spot (Bk. vii. 25). The tormenta were usually served and kept in repair by the fabri, but as Cæsar had no such corps, they were probably in his army served by legionaries.

# 6. The Baggage Train.

The baggage of the army, except the packs corresponding to knapsacks which the soldiers themselves carried (sarcinae), was borne by horses and mules (iumenta), and in wagons. The latter, however, were used mainly by the traders (mercatores) and sutlers (lixae) that followed the legion. The baggage of each legion was by no means inconsiderable. It consisted of tents, blankets, tools, the tormenta, provisions, etc., and required no less than 500 packanimals to a legion. The inconvenience and delay occasioned by the care of so much baggage caused the Romans to call it impedimenta (incumbrances), and a legion marching with its baggage was called legio impedita; when without, legio expedita. Along with the baggage train went a multitude of drivers, grooms, officers' servants, and other menials, all of whom are included in the general term calones. Most or all of these were slaves. See Figs. 25, 66.

## 7. The Officers and their Staff.

The superior officers were: (1) the commander-in-chief (imperator or dux belli). He possessed the imperium or supreme military authority by virtue of his office, but by etiquette first received the name imperator from his soldiers after his first victory. In Cæsar's case it was bestowed after his victory over the Helvetii.

- (2) The legati. These were men of senatorial rank (i.e. who had once held a curule magistracy). They were appointed by the senate or the people on the nomination of the proconsul. The senate also determined the number that a general should have; Cæsar had ten. They often acted as ambassadors and made treaties, but their chief duties were military. Their powers were in no way independent, but derived from the general, who might put them in command of one or more legions or confer upon them the imperium in his absence (legatus pro praetore). In his battle with Ariovistus Cæsar placed a legatus at the head of each of his legions (Bk. i. 53), thus giving them an independent command, a practice which he afterwards continued to the great advantage of the service.
- (3) The quaestores were officers elected by the people annually to administer the financial affairs of the provinces, one for each imperator.

They had charge of the military chest, and saw to the pay, clothing, shelter, and general equipment of the legions serving in their respective provinces. On occasion they exercised the military authority of a legatus (Bk. i. 53); they were the ancient equivalent of a modern quartermaster. Besides these general officers, there were attached to each legion six tribuni militum, who were probably originally in command of the legion. They were divided into three pairs, each pair taking command in its turn. In Cæsar's time they were no longer trained soldiers, but chiefly young men of equestrian rank, who went into the army for a year or two to get some military experience and thus begin their-public career (cf. Bk. i. 39), so that ordinarily the legion had no proper commanding officers. Cæsar was not slow to see that these political and social favorites were not the men to lead his legions into battle, and he therefore introduced the lasting reform of transferring this duty to the legati, as mentioned above (cf. Bk. ii. 20; v. 1, 25, 47). Thereafter the duties of the tribunes became mainly administrative and judicial; they cared for the levying, the discharge, and the equipment of the troops, and for the army supplies, under the orders of the quaestor; and they presided at courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. times they led the legions on the march and received subordinate military commands (cf. Bk. vii. 47, 52).

Surrounding the superior officers there was always a large number of young men, forming a kind of staff, who acted as orderlies and body-guards. The only officers "of the line" were the tribunes, and, as appears above, their command was limited.

The real leaders of the men were the inferior ("non-commissioned") officers, the centurions. Corresponding to sergeants and corporals, these were always plebeians, often of the lowest birth, who were promoted from the ranks entirely on account of their fighting qualities, and could never rise higher. There were two centurions in each maniple, making six for each cohort and sixty for the legion. The six centurions of the first cohort outranked the others and were called *centuriones primorum ordinum*, and were the only ones that ordinarily sat with the superior officers in the council of war. The first cohort always contained the flower of the legion, and the men in the first century of this cohort excelled all the others. Their leader,

the first centurion of the whole cohort (primus or primi-pilus) and so of the whole legion, must needs be a man of great personal prowess and skill, an actual fighter, one to whom all could look as to a model soldier. Such was, for example, Publius Sextius Baculus, who repeatedly deserved the praise of his general (cf. Bk. ii. 25; iii. 5; vi. 38), and Titus Balventius (vir fortis et magnae virtutis, Bk. v. 35). As a badge of his office the centurion carried a short staff (vitis), but he was armed much like the other soldiers (see Fig. 56).

The chief distinction in dress between the officers and men was the red tunica militaris worn by the legates and tribunes, and the purple cloak (paludamentum) worn by the general (Bk. vii. 88). The officers wore also coats-of-mail of gilded bronze (see Fig. 93).

Between the centurions and common soldiers in rank were the speculatores, evocati, beneficiarii, aquiliferi or signiferi, and bucinatores, tubicines, or cornicines. The speculatores or scouts obtained news of the enemy and carried despatches. The evocati were veterans who had completed their term of service, but remained in the army at the request of their commander. The beneficiarii were soldiers that had received some gift or privilege for meritorious service. The signiferi or aquiliferi were the standard bearers: soldiers selected for their courage and fidelity. The bucinatores and tubicines were the musicians. All of these had rights and exemptions not enjoyed by the common soldiers. See Figs. 54, 105.

## II. THE STANDARDS.

The term signa is applied in a general sense to all the standards of the army. That of the legion was an eagle (aquila), usually of silver or bronze, about the size of a dove, on a wooden staff. It was sometimes carried by the chief centurion (primipilus) of the legion. Sometimes it had below it a little red or white banner (vexillum), inscribed with the number or name of the legion. See Figs. 84, 113, 120.

In a narrower sense, signum was used for the standard of the cohort or the maniple. Each cohort had its own signum (Bk. ii. 21), and in earlier times each maniple, but probably not in Cæsar's day.

The cavalry and light-armed troops and all separate detachments carried only the *vexillum* (Bk. vi. 36). The general's flag at head-quarters was also called *vexillum*. It was a large white banner with an inscription in red, giving the name of the general and that of his army. A large red *vexillum* displayed at headquarters was the signal for battle (Bk. ii. 20). See Fig. 113.

## III. THE MUSIC.

The difficulty of carrying the voice through the din of battle early led the Romans to use the penetrating tones of brass instruments for giving orders. The four instruments used by them were the bugle (bucina), the trumpet (tuba), the cavalry trumpet (lituus), and the horn (cornu). See Figs. 51, 52, 53.

The bucina, whose shape and appearance are uncertain, sounded the changes of the night-watch and the reveille in the morning. The tuba, a straight trumpet of brass more than three feet long, with a bell-shaped mouth, gave the signal for attack or retreat, the signal being taken up and repeated by the cornu. The latter was a circular-shaped instrument which the performer often placed about his neck. The tuba had a deep tone; the cornu a sharper one. The general's call to an assembly (contio) was the classicum, sounded by all the instruments at once.

## IV. THE LEGIONARY.

a. Enlistment. — The legion was composed of Romans only. Citizens were liable to conscription between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. The recruit must be of sound health and of suitable height. The Romans, as a rule, were rather undersized. Cæsar expressly mentions the small stature of his troops as compared with that of the Germans (Bk. i. 39; ii. 30); but the Romans had learned the lesson of civilization, — that victories are gained not by huge bones and big bodies, but by trained skill and scientific tactics. Man for man, the Germans were doubtless more than a match for the Romans; but against the organized and disciplined legion — the most effective machine for battle that the world had yet seen — they were almost

powerless. The term of service was twenty years, and after this the veteran was discharged with enough to provide for his old age. Often he reënlisted for farther service (evocatus).

- b. Clothing. All the legionaries were clothed alike. Next the skin was a nearly or quite sleeveless woollen shirt (tunica), reaching nearly to the knees; over this a leathern coat strengthened by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders (lorica). In cold or wet weather the soldier wore about him a wide woollen mantle (sagum), which was fastened by a clasp (fibula) on the right shoulder, leaving the right arm free. At night the sagum served as a blanket. About his waist was a leather belt (cingulum militiae), bound with metal and with strips of metal hanging from the front as a protection to the lower part of the body. His feet were covered with strong half-boots (caligae). This might be called his undress uniform. See Figs. 65, 107, 123, etc.
- c. Armor. The defensive armor consisted of a coat-of-mail (lorica, described above), a helmet, and a shield. The helmet (galea or cassis), of iron or of leather strengthened with brass, was open in front and adorned with a white crest, which was one of the insignia put on at the beginning of a battle (Bk. ii. 21). See Fig. 87, etc. The shield (scutum) was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide; it was made of wood slightly curved, and covered with linen and heavy leather. About the rim it was bound with metal, and also in the centre. There was a single handle on the inside and opposite it on the outside a boss or knob (umbo) of metal, to divert missiles and to strengthen the whole. A common device on the outside was a winged thunderbolt. See Figs. 114, 115, etc.
- d. Weapons. The weapons of offence were the sword and spear. The sword (gladius Hispanus) was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was used more for thrusting than for striking, and was not usually hung from the body-belt, but from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip (balteus). See Figs. 65, 119, etc.

The spear (pilum) of Cæsar's soldiers was between six and seven feet long. The shaft was of wood and about four feet long. Into this was fitted the slender iron shank that ended in a barbed head. From monuments and from remains that have been found in various places, the weight is estimated at about three pounds and the

hurling distance about 100 feet. Each legionary had one of these weapons. See Figs. 15, 107.

- e. Baggage (Packs). Besides his arms and armor, the legionary carried tools for digging, cooking utensils (vasa), food for at least two weeks (cibaria), his cloak or blanket (sagum), and usually one or two stakes (valli) for the rampart of the camp. The weight of the whole was about sixty pounds. For convenience in carrying, the vasa, cibaria, and other small articles were tied in a compact bundle to the end of a forked stick and carried over the shoulder. During a halt this rested on the ground and the soldier could lean on it for support. Upon a sudden call to battle he could quickly lay it down and be ready (expeditus) for the fray. The forked sticks were named Marius's mules (muli Mariani), after the great Marius (see p. 55) who introduced their use. The collective personal baggage of the legionary was called his sarcina (see Figs. 25, 65).
- f. Food. The food provided for the legionary was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley. This he must grind for himself. The ration of food for one day was about two pounds. Every fifteen days he received two modii, about two pecks. This monotonous diet was varied occasionally by meat and such food as he could find by foraging; and there was always the chance of bartering his rations for the greater variety carried by the traders (mercatores), who followed the army in large numbers and did a thriving business with the soldiers.
- g. Work. It has been truthfully said that Cæsar conquered Gaul as much with the spade and shovel as with the sword and spear. The legionary was above all a skilful digger, and besides the actual fighting, no small part of his labor was the almost daily task of fortifying the camp (castra munire). At least three hours were needed for this work. After this there were the watches to keep, the arms to burnish, and all the other busy routine of camp life.
- h. Pay. Cæsar paid his legionaries 12½ cents a day or about \$45 a year. This was nearly the same amount that a day laborer could earn at Rome. The soldier was better off than the laborer merely by his shelter and by the certainty of employment. A deduction from the pay was made for food and equipments furnished by the state. Food, however, was very cheap, and a soldier in active

service could always expect a considerable increase in his income from booty and from the gifts of his general.

i. Discipline. — The martial spirit of the soldiers and their attention to duty were maintained and increased by appropriate rewards and punishments. Among the latter the most usual were withholding of wages, degradation in rank, corporal punishment, dismissal from the service, and, in cases of flagrant offences, death. A minor offence committed by a company of soldiers was punished by putting them on barley rations and giving them extra work on the fortifications. Among rewards may be mentioned public praise in the presence of the army, promotion in rank, increase in wages, or the presentation of a crown of leaves or grasses, which corresponded to the bestowal of a modern military decoration.

## V. THE CAMP.

The success of Roman arms in hostile and barbarous countries was largely due to the custom of guarding against surprise by making fortified camps. The summer camp (castra aestiva) and the winter camp (castra hiberna) seem to have been alike in all essential features. In the latter, however, more provision was made for the comfort and convenience of the men. Instead of tents, huts of timber and earth, thatched with straw or covered with hides, were provided for them. The camp was regularly in the form of a square, often with rounded corners, but the lay of the land necessitated many variations from the regular plan (see Fig. 111). Of all the camps of Cæsar that have been discovered, but one, that on the Aisne (Bk. ii. 5), approaches a square form. The site was chosen with great care. and was always on high ground and near wood and water. An ideal spot was the slope of a hill with some kind of natural defence on the sides and rear, and with sufficient ground in front for the array of the legions. Such a position would give the Romans an opportunity for their favorite onslaught e superiore loco (cf. Bk. ii. 8; Bk. v. 50).

A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select the site for the camp and stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the four gates (see Fig. 111): the *porta praetoria*, facing the enemy; the *porta decumana*, in the rear; the porta principalis dextra, on the right side; the porta principalis sinistra, on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street, the via principalis. The forward half of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear half to the officers and their attendants. All about the inside of the fortifications ran a broad space, at least one hundred feet wide, left vacant for baggage, evolutions of troops, and to protect the tents within from missiles that the enemy might hurl over the walls. Near the middle of the camp was an open square (praetorium), in which stood the general's tent (tabernaculum ducis). Before this was the altar on which he sacrificed, and on the left was a sodded mound of earth (tribunal or suggestus; cf. Bk. vi. 3), from which he pronounced judgment and addressed the assembled soldiers. The full details of the interior arrangement of Cæsar's camp are not known; but every officer, every cohort, every maniple, every man had his appointed place.

No night passed that the army was not housed in such a camp, fortified by wall and ditch. As soon as the soldiers arrive at the spot marked out for them, laying aside helmet, shield, and spear, they begin to dig the ditch (fossa), the earth from which is used in constructing the wall (vallum). If time permits, the sides of the embankment are covered with sods to hold the earth, or with bundles of brush (fascines). The ditch was usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep, the wall six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top to afford good standing room for a soldier in action. An ordinary camp for a night's sojourn could be fortified in about three hours. If the camp was intended for more than one night (castra stativa), the fortifications were made stronger. The earth was made firmer by imbedding in it several lines of fascines parallel to the length, and on its top was set a breastwork of stakes (valli or sudes; cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72). This breastwork was about four feet high (see Fig. 116). Often wooden towers were erected on the walls (cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72), connected by galleries (pontes). The wall was made easy of access on the inner side by steps of brush. Sometimes small redoubts (castella) were built at a distance from the main camp. These were made on the same general plan.

After the camp had been fortified and the leathern tents (tentoria, pelles) put up in their assigned places, guards were set at the gates, and the regular routine of camp life began.

## VI. THE MARCH.

When the trumpet gave the signal (signum profectionis) to break up camp (castra movere), the soldiers struck their tents and packed their baggage (vasa conligere); at the second signal the baggage (impedimenta) was put on the pack-animals and in the wagons; at the third signal the army (agmen) began its march. The start was made usually at sunrise, but it might be made earlier on special occasion. The ordinary day's march lasted about seven hours, and covered about 15 miles; a forced march (magnum iter) about 25. Cæsar made many such, his men travelling immense distances with incredible swiftness.

When marching in the enemy's country, the main body of troops (agmen) protected itself by a vanguard (agmen primum) of cavalry, light-armed infantry, and scouts (exploratores), and by a rear guard (agmen novissimum). Sometimes individual spies (speculatores) were sent far in advance to reconnoitre the country and the movements of the enemy's forces.

The order of march of the main body depended on the nearness of the enemy. When no enemy was near, each legion marched in a single column and was followed by its baggage train (see Bk. ii. 17). In the neighborhood of the enemy, a single column of troops in fighting trim (expediti), i.e. without packs (sarcinae), followed directly after the vanguard; then came the baggage of the whole army, while the remaining forces acted as a rear guard (cf. Bk. ii. 19). Sometimes, for additional security against flank attacks, columns of infantry marched on each side of the baggage train, forming a hollow square (agmen quadratum; see Fig. 125). If, when marching in this order, the army was compelled to halt and defend itself, the soldiers, by facing about, presented to the foe a complete circle (orbis) of armed men. When the foe was near and the ground level and open, the march was sometimes made in three parallel columns, which, by a simple evolution, could be quickly changed to the triple battle line (acies triplex), the regular formation for an engagement

Streams were crossed either by fords or bridges. Romans could cross deeper fords than we, for they had no powder to keep dry

(cf. Bk. v. 18). Sometimes a line of cavalry was sent across the stream to break the force of the current (cf. Bk. vii. 56). Bridges were usually very simple affairs of logs covered with earth and brush, or of boats, but Cæsar's masterpiece of military engineering was his roadway forty feet wide with which he twice spanned the Rhine (Bk. iv. 17; Bk. vi. 9; see Fig. 70).

## VII. THE BATTLE.

As has been said (V), the camp was so chosen that the ground in front of it would be suitable for battle. The usual order of battle was triplex acies. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other, varying in formation according to the depth of the line. As to the distance between the lines we have no definite information; nor even as to whether spaces were left between the cohorts. There were probably spaces between the different legions and doubtless between the centre (media acies), where the legionaries stood, and the wings (cornua), composed of auxiliaries and cavalry. Cæsar's lines were probably eight men deep. That would give each legion, estimated at 3600 men, a front of 180 legionaries, 45 for each cohort. When standing in open order for fighting, giving to each man the space necessary for the free use of his weapons, the front of each legion covered probably about 1000 feet, supposing the cohorts to stand close together; all this, however, is very uncertain.

When an attacking enemy had reached the right distance, the bugle sounded the charge, and the legions rushed forward, sword in sheath, and the front ranks with spears uplifted ready to hurl. When within range, the spears were thrown in a shower, the swords drawn, and a fierce charge made upon the mass of the foe, more or less disordered by the volley of spears. Along the front of the cohort rages a series of combats. The rear ranks press forward, throw their spears over the heads of their comrades, and take their places as the latter are wounded or weary. When the first line of cohorts has done its best, it makes room for the second line, re-forms, and gets breath for a new onset. Thus the battle goes on with the two

lines in almost constant motion. The enemy are given no rest and are worn out by the repeated charges of the cohorts. The third line, however, is held in reserve, and is brought into action only in case the other two prove insufficient.

The cavalry in the rear, or on the wings, stand ready when the enemy break and flee to ride down the fugitives and cut them to pieces.

There were times when troops had to be arranged in special formations. The most important of these were the cuneus, or wedge, the testudo, or tortoise, and the orbis, or circle. The first was an attack in column instead of in line, and was of use in cutting through and dividing an opposing battle line. The second, in which the shields overlapped above like shingles on a roof, was used especially in approaching and storming walls, or whenever the enemy were to be driven from a higher position (cf. Bk. ii. 6; see Fig. 79). The last formation was like a modern hollow square with officers in the centre—except that from the character of ancient fighting it was rather circular than rectangular. It was necessary when the attack came from all sides at once (see Bk. iv. 37).

## VIII. THE SIEGE.

The Romans excelled in the art of taking walled cities, and this skill gave them an immense advantage in their warfare with semi-barbarous and ignorant peoples. There were three methods of doing this: first, by an immediate attack (oppugnatio repentina); second, by an active siege, brought to a close by an assault (expugnatio); third, by investment and blockade (obsidio).

If there seemed to be a chance of success, a city was stormed at once with no formal preparation (ex itinere). Its defenders were driven from the walls by a shower of missiles (Bk. iii. 25); the moat was filled with brush and earth; the assaulters with shields locked in a testudo attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

If this method proved unsuccessful or impossible, a regular siege was begun. The work of a regular siege centred about the mound or agger, and to its construction everything else was subordinated.

It was begun at a distance from the wall, very nearly out of reach of the missiles of the enemy. It was then gradually extended in the direction of the point to be attacked, and was at the same time gradually increased in height until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. At Avaricum the mound was 80 feet high (Bk. vii. 23-28). Its width was possibly 40 or 50 feet. It was made of earth and timber, and had connected galleries running through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover (see Fig. 112). The men engaged in constructing the agger had to be protected from the enemy. Those who were building worked behind lines of plutei (see Figs. 126, 127), large standing shields, which were moved forward from time to time as the agger progressed. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of sheds called vineae (see Figs. 48, 112), extending the length of the agger. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers and by engines of war (tormenta) standing behind lines of plutei or upon movable towers (turres). The latter stood on the agger or on either side of it, and advanced with it, and as they advanced increased in height story by story. As the workmen get nearer the wall the plutei will no longer protect them. Then they find refuge under strong sheds of wood called testudines or musculi, placed at the ends of lines of vineae.

When the mound has reached the wall, a breach is made through it for the final assault (expugnatio). Sometimes this was accomplished by undermining the wall, or it was pulled down from the top with huge iron hooks (falces murales). But the most common and most effective means was the battering ram (aries), a huge swinging beam from 60 to 100 feet long with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram's head. This under a testudo, or in the lowest story of a tower, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. When the final assault was made, soldiers rushed in from every quarter, over the mound, through the breach, and from the movable towers, from whose highest stories draw-bridges stretched to the walls.

Against these forms of assault the inhabitants used such means of resistance as they could. The most effective were masses of stone, thrown from the wall upon the works, and fire. To guard against

the latter, the besiegers had to cover all exposed woodwork with green hides. Battering rams and mural hooks were caught in slings and held fast, or drawn into the city, and mines were met by countermines. See Figs. 89, 90, 124.

When the location of the place was such that it could not be taken by such a siege as that described above, it was invested on every side (obsidio) and the inhabitants starved into submission. Among sieges of this kind were those of Gergovia (Bk. vii. 44-53) and Alesia (Bk. vii. 72-80), of which the last was one of the most remarkable of ancient times; see Fig. 96.

## IX. THE FLEET.

Cæsar mentions two principal classes of ships: naves longae, or war galleys, and naves onerariae, or freight and transport vessels. As compared with the former, the latter were shorter, broader, and deeper; hence could carry greater burdens and were more seaworthy. They depended mainly on their sails, but often had rowers in addition. The naves actuariae of Bk. v. 1 were a special class of transport vessel, with both sails and oars. Cæsar used them to carry troops, horses, and munitions of war to Britain. See Figs. 61, 63, 64.

The war galley was long, low, and narrow; armed at the prow with a sharp beam (rostrum) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy's ships; and propelled by one or two sails and a large force of rowers. The seamen (nautae) attended to the steering and the managing of the sails, and were freemen. The rowers (remiges) were usually slaves. Galleys in Cæsar's time mostly had three banks of oars. The steering apparatus was two broad-bladed oars near the stern, one on each side. The speed of these vessels was remarkable, almost equalling that of a modern steamship.

The fighting men were the legionaries embarked for the purpose. In fact, there was no distinct naval service, as with us. A fleet was simply an army afloat, and was commanded by military officers. Before going into action tormenta were placed on the deck, and also a turris; the mast was taken down and the sails and tackle housed. See Fig. 76.

#### III.

## GAUL AND THE GAULS.

## 1. THE GALLIC PROVINCE.

THE district upon whose government Cæsar entered in the spring of B.C. 58 consisted primarily of the two Gallic provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine. Cisalpine Gaul was the northern portion of Italy, which several centuries earlier had been occupied by invaders from Gaul proper, and was not yet reckoned politically as a part of Italy; it was a wealthy, populous, and orderly country, the proconsul's main dependence for troops and supplies, and his regular winter residence. Transalpine or Narbonnese Gaul received its name from its capital. the Roman colony Narbo. It contained some thriving cities and peaceful districts; but as a whole it had been but recently brought under the authority of Rome, and was still essentially a foreign country. It comprised the whole coast of the Mediterranean from the Pyrenees to the Alps, having for its northern boundary an irregular and uncertain line, which separated the territory of the conquered nations of Gaul from the states which were still free. To these two provinces was added also Illyricum, which was a source of strength, but did not receive much of his attention.

The authority of the governor over his province was that of a military commander, whose power was not limited by the laws which protected the citizens of Rome. A few privileged cities or nations, such as the old Greek city Massilia, were wholly exempted from his authority; but all other parts of the province, including Roman colonies like Narbo, were liable to tribute and under the jurisdiction of the governor, though the rights of Roman citizens were secured to them. A consular army consisted regularly of two legions; to these were added auxiliaries, both foot and horse, but the governor had power to levy new legions as he required them. Thus we find that Cæsar had six legions in his campaign against the Nervii.

The free territories adjoining a Roman province were in no respect under the authority of the governor; but they were regarded as a legitimate field for his ambition, if there was any excuse for war, and of such excuses there was usually no lack. The Roman policy was to enter into friendly relations with one of the parties or tribes in the free territory, load this with favors and privileges, and make use of it to overcome its rivals; in Gaul the Haedui, attached to Rome through some local rivalries, very well served this purpose.

Cæsar's province, at its western extremity, reached to Spain, a country which had belonged to the empire for more than a hundred and fifty years. To the north lay four great nationalities, with all of which he was ultimately brought in contact. These were the Gauls proper, the Belgians, the Germans, and the Britons.

Free Gaul (Libera Gallia) at that time consisted of all the unsubdued territory between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side, and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, thus comprising, in general, modern France and Belgium, with parts of Holland, Germany, and Switzerland. The central portion of this territory, fully a half of it in extent and population, was occupied by the Gauls proper, or, as they called themselves, Celts, no doubt originally the same word. Southwest of these were the Aquitani, a separate people of Iberian race, cognate to the Spanish; of these, the Basques of the present day are the representatives. To the northeast lived the Belgians, whose ethnic affinities are much disputed; all that can be considered certain is that they were largely mixed with Germans. The Belgians occupied more territory than is now known as Belgium, including a considerable part of Holland on the one hand, and the northern belt of France on the other.

## 2. THE GALLIC PEOPLE.

a. Origin and Early History. — The Gauls were a branch of the great nations of the Indo-European family that in prehistoric times occupied parts of Asia and the greater part of Europe. They were known to the ancients as Celts or Gauls, and this name was applied without discrimination to all the barbarous peoples of the unknown west of Europe. The term was rather geographical than racial. The Romans, though they had been brought into contact with the barbarians of the north by war and commerce for many centuries, made no distinction, before Cæsar's time, between German and Gaul.

The Phoenicians, those pioneer traders and intrepid sailors of antiquity, had had commercial dealings with the Gauls at a very remote period. Several centuries later, but still at an early date (about B.C. 600), the Greeks had made a settlement near the mouth of the Rhone, which afterwards grew into the prosperous city of Massilia (Marseilles), and opened up some trade routes into the interior. Both Phoenicians and Greeks found the most powerful part of the Celts already well established in western Europe, and showing evidence of previous possession for a period going back of any assignable date.

The Celts had been for centuries a migratory and always a warlike people. These characteristics led them into many countries where they made settlements of more or less importance. Besides those who occupied Gaul proper, there were Iberian Celts (Celtiberi) in Spain, British Celts, Belgic Celts, Italian Celts in northern Italy, Celts in the Alps (notably the Helvetii), Illyrian Celts, and Asiatic Celts, who had settled in Asia Minor and were known as Galatians. It was to them, after they were Christianized, that Paul wrote his well-known epistle.

What knowledge the Greeks and Romans had of this powerful nation of barbarians was extremely vague. They had long hung like a dark storm-cloud on the northern frontier of both countries, and at intervals poured forth in overwhelming and destructive numbers. Once they spread desolation and dismay through Greece, and all but succeeded in plundering the rich temple of Delphi. In B.C. 390 Rome was destroyed by these same barbarians, and in B.C. 102 it was only the military genius of C. Marius that spared Italy a similar visitation.

Long before the time of Cæsar, the Romans had succeeded in subduing the Gauls south of the Alps, making the prosperous and orderly province of Cisalpine Gaul, as related above. Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum were more recent additions to the empire, and were less thoroughly subdued and civilized. They had been finally conquered by Q. Fabius Allobrogicus. All to the north had as yet been unexplored and uninvaded by Roman arms. The Gauls, according to circumstances and location, showed at this time various degrees of civilization. Those to the south and west, being nearer to the refinement of the province, had made rapid strides, had built many

flourishing cities, enjoyed prosperous and on the whole peaceful community life, and practised the arts and commerce. But those farther removed in the east and north, and the Britons, were still in a semi-savage condition. Cæsar's expeditions among these are somewhat like similar military expeditions that nations are sending in our day to explore and subdue unknown Africa; and the trading posts established among them by the enterprising Greek merchants of Massilia, like the business ventures formerly sent among the Indians.

b. Character and Customs. — The Gauls are described as tall and of great physical strength, with a fair skin and blonde hair, which they often reddened by artificial means. Men of rank and of authority wore the hair and beard long. The more barbarous tribes gave themselves a terrible aspect by painting hideous devices on their halfnaked bodies. Their voices were rough and harsh, their words few, and their language obscure and figurative. Disparaging others, boastful of themselves, arrogant, fond of idleness, they were very quarrelsome and always ready to fight, to relieve the monotony of their existence, if for no other reason. They were, however, highspirited and brave to utter recklessness and contempt for death.

The Gallic women are described by an ancient writer as the most beautiful of all barbarian women and as thrifty housewives. He adds that, aided by his wife, who is much more formidable than he, the Gaul will hold his own in any conflict. The Roman invaders were often witnesses of the heroism of these veritable Amazons.

The Gauls lacked stability of character, and are often criticized by Cæsar for their fickleness; they were also very avaricious and given to superstitions. On the other hand, they were not vicious, but naturally of a simple and teachable disposition. They were very quick to learn and adopt whatever useful arts their neighbors brought to them. Their love of freedom was passionate; but their long years of wandering had not developed in them that feeling of national unity and that love of the soil that we include under the term patriotism.

The life of the less civilized tribes was rude in the extreme. Their houses were little more than huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. The dwelling was open to daylight by the door

alone, and had little or no furniture. Their beds were heaps of straw or furs. War was their principal occupation. They gave some attention to agriculture, raising the coarser grains, the better sort of fruits and vegetables being unknown to them. They also had large flocks and herds. They are but little bread, but large quantities of meat, which they are described as cutting with their swords and eating in a ravenous manner.

The Gauls knew something of the arts and sciences. They did some weaving, and those on the coast had skill in shipbuilding and in navigation, and the Aquitanians were skilful miners. Their attempts at art were mainly imitations of what other lands brought to them. For example, they made more or less successful attempts to imitate the artistic coins of the Greeks and Romans. Several illustrations of Gallic coins may be found in the text (see Figs. 45, 71, 72, 109, etc., etc.). Cæsar was the first to bring to the world authentic information about most of these matters, and the student is referred for farther interesting details to his narrative (see especially Bk. vi).

- c. Dress.—The details of Gallic dress are not fully known. Like most semi-civilized or savage people, they were very fond of bright colors and finery. They wore much jewelry—both men and women—of gold, if they could afford it, otherwise of bronze. Especially characteristic was the heavy collar of twisted gold (torquis), which was worn about the neck. The principal garments were a short, bright-colored tunic, either with or without sleeves, confined by a girdle of silver or gold, and trousers (bracae). Over the shoulders was worn a short cloak (sagum) often of fine material and of gorgeous color. The character of the costume depended upon the rank and wealth of the wearer. The feet were protected by shoes or by soles of wood strapped on with leathern thongs. See Fig. 44.
- d. Arms and Military Tactics. As has been said, a Gaul's chief business was war. He was always a soldier and, whether in youth or in old age, hastened to war with the same ardor. His principal weapon was a long two-edged sword, hanging from an iron or steel chain at the right side. It was adapted for striking and cutting, but not so much for thrusting, and was but poorly tempered. This in itself gave the Romans a great advantage through the superiority of their arms. The Gallic bronze sword came into use later,

and was a much better weapon. In Cæsar's time the iron sword probably still predominated. They had also various kinds of pikes, lances, and javelins, some made with peculiar waving and twisted blades to cause an uglier wound. Many weapons are mentioned with special names, but they are not capable of identification. Bows and slings, too, were used by them.

Ordinarily the Gaul wore no defensive armor. In fact, the common soldier went into battle with body almost bare. But the principal warriors wore chain mail (see Fig. 93), which is said to be a Gallic invention. At first this was made of iron. Later, better and lighter suits were made of bronze, and were sometimes adorned with silver and gold. The usual means for defence were the helmet and the shield. Shields were of various shapes and sizes and were adorned with figures of animals, etc., to suit the caprice or wealth of the owner, but the designs were of ancient origin. The helmets were surmounted with great horns, forms of birds or beasts, etc., designed to terrify the enemy (see Fig. 110). These also were, no doubt, survivals of earlier barbarism.

In battle they placed much reliance on their cavalry and in Northern Gaul and Britain on their war chariots. The infantry was arranged in great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx, with a line of shields before and on the sides, and sometimes with a roof of shields overhead, something like the testudo formation of the Romans. When they had drawn near, champions were accustomed to leave the ranks, and, brandishing their arms, challenge the foe to single combat. The first onset of the Gallic phalanx was terrific and often swept everything before it; but if that could be withstood, the advantage lay with the open and pliable order of the legion. In the latter every soldier was called into action, but in the former the great bulk of the Gallic warriors was practically imprisoned in the mass, and only those on the outside could use their arms.

e. Government. — The Gauls were not a single nation, but a group of nations or tribes, about sixty in number, united by a very slight bond of consanguinity and common religion. These tribes, which may be loosely compared to those of the North American Indians, though most of them were at a very much higher degree of civilization, varied greatly in extent and power, the smaller ones often main-

taining only a nominal independence under the protection of some larger one. They were for the most part ruled by a turbulent and oppressive aristocracy, sometimes with an elected chief magistrate. But sometimes an ambitious leader, like Orgetorix, succeeded in establishing for a time a kingly power. Thus the several states were torn by hostile parties, and were at the same time grouped into national factions, under the lead of the more powerful states. At the time of Cæsar, royalty had been almost abolished, and yearly magistrates (vergobrets) were elected instead. Every year representatives from the different states met in assembly, and questions of national policy were discussed. Owing to the violent and excitable natures of the Gauls, these assemblies often ended in tumultuous scenes of disorder.

At the commencement of war, a call to arms was sounded, to which old and young responded. The last man to appear was put to death with tortures in the presence of the assembled people.

f. Religion. — The Druids. — Cæsar says that the Gauls were devoted to religious matters. They were under the control of a class of priests known as Druids, who acted not only as priests, but also as arbiters and judges. By them was treasured the religious and philosophic lore of the Gauls, and to them the Gallic youth went for instruction, some of them remaining in training as long as twenty years. One of their most important doctrines was that of the transmigration of souls. Belief in immortality gave the Gauls a contempt for death which enabled them to face the greatest dangers without flinching.

The Druids gave their instructions and performed their bloody sacrifices in the depths of the forest. The oak and the mistletoe were sacred in their eyes. The mysterious rites of their worship are not well known, but many cruel and horrible practices are attributed to them by ancient writers, among them human sacrifices. Cæsar mentions these, but did not know of their actual occurrence from personal observation.

The principal religious observances of the Gauls were gradually abolished under Roman rule, but many of them were 'baptized' into Christianity and survive to-day in various modified forms as a part of the popular religion.

The strange monuments of stone found in many lands, called 'cromlechs' and 'menhirs,' popularly supposed to be Druidic monuments, are far older than the Druids and have nothing to do with their religion.

Cæsar gives the first authentic information about the Druids in his narrative (Bk. vi. 13-16).

## 3. Subsequent History of Gaul.

Cæsar left Gaul subdued and open to Roman occupation and greed. The country was rapidly colonized and civilized. Augustus divided it into four provinces and established the Roman authority on a firm basis. Only one great patriotic uprising occurred after Cæsar's time, though the Gauls took part in the contests later for the imperial throne. In course of time the very language of Gaul became Latin, and this became the parent of modern French. In the fifth century tribes of Germans began to make inroads on the Roman domain, and the Franks, under Clovis as king, firmly established themselves in the north. Their power spread; they subjugated the inhabitants, and gave their name to the country, which it bears to this day, - France, the lands of the Franks. There were many social and political changes after this time, but the same life flowed on from Roman Gaul to modern France. The French still display many of the characteristics of the ancient Gauls; they live in substantially the same limits; many of their mountains, cities, and streams still bear the old names.

## IV.

#### THE BRITONS.

WITH Cæsar begins the history of England. He found there a Celtic people, differing but little from those on the continent, save that they were more barbarous. What the condition or history of the British Isles was before Cæsar's invasion is wrapped in obscurity. A few Greek writers refer vaguely to them, and there was an equally vague knowledge of the smaller islands lying near. Even Cæsar

gained but little detailed and accurate knowledge of the country, and after him the Romans did not go there for nearly one hundred years. Subsequently it was subdued and brought under Roman dominion. England still shows many traces of the Roman occupation. Many of her cities were founded by the Romans and bear Roman names. After the Romans came the northern invaders, who drove out or destroyed most of the original Celtic population. Those that survived are represented to-day by the Irish, the Welsh, and the Highland Scotch, among whom a branch of the Celtic language is still spoken to a considerable extent.

v.

### THE GERMANS.

THE Germans first appear in history in the campaigns of the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 113-101), the latter of whom were undoubtedly of Germanic origin. The Romans obtained their first considerable knowledge of the country from Cæsar. The ancient limits assigned to it were less on the west and south, but indefinitely greater on the east and north, than the modern. In those directions it was terra incognita to the Romans, and always remained so. They never did more than subdue the border tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar had relatively little to do with the Germans, but made such investigations as he could, the results of which are succinctly given in his narrative (Bk. iv. 1-3; Bk. vi. 21-28). The next account, in greater detail, was given by Tacitus in his "Germania," who corroborates Cæsar in all important particulars.

The Germans were much less civilized than most of the Gauls. They were just at the end of the nomadic stage, and were settling down and beginning community life. Their last onward nomadic movement was that under Ariovistus, which it was Cæsar's fortune to arrest (Bk. i. 31-54). They were a more manly and vigorous race than the Gauls, warlike, independent, and virtuous. The country is described as a dismal land, covered for the most part with forests and swamps, producing little food, and subject to almost constant winter.

#### VI.

### THE CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL.

THE campaigns of Cæsar in Gaul lasted through eight seasons (B.C. 58-51), and are told in eight books,—the last written by Hirtius, an officer of Cæsar,—each book containing the operations of a single year. The following is a brief outline:

Book I. B.C. 58. Cæsar checks the attempt of the Helvetians to settle in Western Gaul, and, after a bloody defeat, forces the remnant to return to their own territory. He then engages with a powerful tribe of Germans, who had made a military settlement in Eastern Gaul, and drives them, with their chief, Ariovistus, back across the Rhine.

Book II. B.C. 57. A formidable confederacy of the northern populations of Gaul is suppressed, with the almost complete extermination of the bravest Belgian tribe, the *Nervii*, in a battle which seems to have been one of the most desperate of all that Cæsar ever fought. In this campaign the coast towns of the west and northwest (Brittany) also are reduced to submission.

Book III. B.C. 56. After a brief conflict with the mountaineers of the Alps, who attacked the Roman armies on their march, the chief operations are the conquest of the coast tribes of Brittany (*Veneti*, etc.), in a warfare of curious naval engineering in the shallow tidewater inlets and among the rocky shores. During the season, the tribes of the southwest (*Aquitani*), a mining population, allied to the Iberians or Basques, are reduced by one of Cæsar's officers.

Book IV. B.C. 55. An inroad of the Germans into Northern Gaul is repulsed, and Cæsar follows them by a bridge of timber hastily built across the Rhine. Returning, he crosses to Britain in the early autumn for a visit of exploration.

Book V. B.C. 54. The partial conquest of Britain (second invasion) is followed by various movements in Northern Gaul, in which the desperate condition of the Roman garrisons is relieved after serious losses by the prudent and brave conduct of Labienus and Quintus Cicero.

Book VI. B.C. 53. Cæsar makes a second brief expedition across the Rhine against the Germans. Some general disturbances are quelled, and Northern Gaul is reduced to peace.

Book VII. B.C. 52. Vercingetorix, a brave and high-spirited chief of Southern Gaul, effects a confederacy of the whole country, which is at length subdued. Vercingetorix surrenders himself to secure the quiet of the country, and is taken in chains to Rome, where he was afterwards put to death at Cæsar's triumph.

Book VIII. B.C. 51. Slight insurrections breaking out here and there are easily subdued; and by the capture of the last native stronghold, Uxellodunum, the subjugation of Gaul is made complete.

### VII.

### DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

- 1. Before beginning to read, the learner should be familiar with the forms of Inflection, the simpler rules of Agreement and Construction of Cases and Moods (A. & G., pp. 381 ff.; B., pp. 117 ff.; G., pp. 437 ff.; H. 558), and the Definitions contained in § 171–180; B. 160–165; G. 201–209; H. 345–361.
- 2. Notice at once the inflectional terminations, so that the number, case, tense, person, etc., which show the corresponding relations of the words and ideas to each other, may be present to your mind. If the form of the word gives several possibilities, hold them all in your mind, so far as may be, till something occurs in the progress of the sentence to settle the doubt.
- 3. Always try to take in the ideas in that order in which the Latin presents them. Read every word as if it were the last on a page and you had to turn over without being able to turn back. The mind soon becomes accustomed to the order of any language, as we see by the constant and almost unnoticed inversions of common speech and poetry. If, however, you are obliged to turn back, begin again at the beginning of the sentence and proceed as before. The greatest difficulty to a beginner is his inability to remember the first parts of a complex idea. This difficulty can often be lessened by jotting down, in a loose kind of English, the words as they come in the Latin. In this way it is often easy to see what a string of words must mean, though we should never say anything like it in English.
- 4. Don't try to translate formally until you have got a complete idea of some integral part of the sentence. It makes nonsense

to render words mechanically, without thinking the corresponding ideas.

5. From the outset, notice that the emphatic position of words plays a most important part in Latin writing, and try to feel the emphasis of position as you read. (See Grammar, ch. 6, p. 386, and compare B. ch. 7, p. 227; G. 671-687; H. 559-573.)

As an illustration of § 5 we append a translation of the first chapter of Book II with especial reference to the emphasis indicated by the order. As the translation is made expressly to bring out explicitly the force of order, it should not be taken as a model of desirable translation. Such a translation as is here given forces the emphasis on the attention more than is perhaps natural in English. The force is all present in the Latin, but in English it may often be left to be brought out by the context or by some kindred emphasis which the English substitutes. A short, easy passage from Book V is also given without comment for study and practice.

And BEING 1 thus in *Hither* 2 Gaul, as I have shown above, CESAR 3 had FREQUENT 4 rumors brought to him, 5 and DESPATCHES 6 also from LABIENUS 7 continued to inform him that ALL 8 the BELGE, 2 who constituted a third part 10 of [the whole of] Gaul, as I had [previously] stated, were conspiring [for an attack] against the Roman gov-

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmonstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmorēs adferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnīs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Romānum coniūrāre obsi-

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> The emphasis on being binds this part of the narrative with the situation left at the end of the last book, as if it were "Cæsar went to Hither Gaul, — and while he was engaged there."

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Opposed to Farther Gaul, where the troops were

<sup>3</sup> The main subject of discourse.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> The repetition of the stories is the significant fact, "he kept hearing," but at the same time the rumors are opposed to Labienus's despatches.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> An emphasis continued in Latin from *Casar*, the main person (see § 344. 2), but lost in English.

<sup>6, 7</sup> Opposed to the rumors.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup>, <sup>9</sup> Both words together the subject of discourse, but the adjective most prominent, "the entire body of the Belga."

<sup>26</sup> Opposed to the whole, as one might say, " a full third of the whole."

ernment 11 and exchanging hostages. That for THIS CONSPIR-ACY 12 the reasons were these, 18 namely: in the first place, because THEY WERE AFRAID 14 (i.e. in their own minds) that when Gaul was ALL 15 subdued, 16 our army would be brought against them 17; and in the second place, because some 18 of the Gauls 18 (i.e. from outside) were tampering 18 with them. These Gauls were PARTLY those who were disturbed that the ROMAN 19 army should pass the winter 20 and get a 20 footing in Gaul, just as 21 they had been unwilling that the GERMANS 22 should stay any longer 28 there, and PARTLY those who from [mere] fickleness 24 dēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte

<sup>21</sup> Here not the conspiracy itself, but the aim of it is the most important part of the idea.

<sup>13</sup> The main subject of discourse, "now this conspiracy, the reports said," etc.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>13</sup> The difference between "the reasons why were these" and "these were the reasons why" is obvious. Cæsar might say either.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>14</sup> A peculiar emphasis not directly carried out. Cicero would very likely have been more rhetorical and have opposed "fear" to "being tampered with." But Cæsar changes his point of view in the course of the sentence; and, as if he had said int in the first member, opposes to the motives of the Belgæ themselves, the Gauls by whom outside influence was brought to bear.

<sup>15, 16</sup> The completion of the business now in hand is first emphasized, then the business itself.

<sup>17</sup> Czsar brings out the whole force of the idea by opposing "them" to "Gaul," which has not before been emphatic, but which is now made so by being contrasted with the Belgians (cf. Chiasmus, § 344. 1).

<sup>18</sup> See note 14.

<sup>29</sup> Opposed to the "Germans."

<sup>20</sup> Opposed to "stay any longer."

 $<sup>^{21}\,\</sup>mathrm{The}$  English emphasis here represents the position of the two clauses, relative and antecedent.

<sup>28</sup> Opposed to the "Romans."

<sup>25</sup> See note 20.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>26</sup> Notice that the view of the first party is a rational idea seriously thought out, to which implied state of mind the *inconstancy* of the second party is opposed.

and unsteadiness <sup>24</sup> were [always] eager for new <sup>25</sup> forms of government; [they were stimulated] by SOME also besides, who, inasmuch as in Gaul <sup>26</sup> regal power was regularly usurped by the more powerful <sup>27</sup> and by those who had means to employ soldiers, <sup>28</sup> could not SO EASILY <sup>39</sup> succeed in such usurpations <sup>30</sup> under our imperial control.<sup>31</sup>

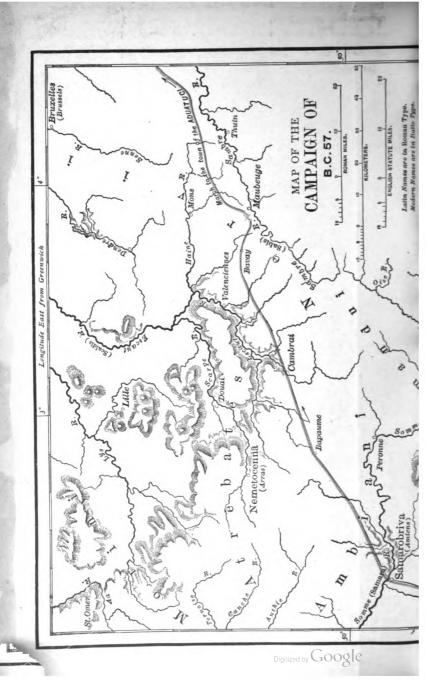
animī novīs imperiīs studēbant,
— ab non nūllīs etiam, quod in
Galliā ā potentioribus atque eīs
quī ad condūcendos hominēs
facultātīs habēbant volgo rēgna
occupābantur, quī minus facile
eam rem imperio nostro consequī poterant.

- <sup>35</sup> A natural consequence of their character. For no good reason they got tired of the established order and wanted a change.
- 26 Opposed to other countries in which the government was more stable.
  - 27, 28 The two means of attaining regal power.
  - 39 And consequently wanted to rebel.
- <sup>30</sup> The Latin often compresses into an indefinite, and to us unemphatic, word (as rembere) a whole important idea. In such cases the true emphasis appears in English only when a suitable descriptive word is substituted for the vague one according to our way of saying things.
  - <sup>81</sup> This control, of course, tended towards establishing order.

V. 23. AFTER TAKING HOSTAGES he led his army back to the sea [where he] found the ships repaired. HAVING LAUNCHED THEM, inasmuch as he had a great number of captives, and some of the ships had been lost in the storm, he proceeded to transport his army in two voyages. And [fortunately] it so HAPPENED that out of so many ships in so many voyages not a single one was lost that carried soldiers either that year or the year before, while of THE SHIPS which were sent back to him empty from the continent after discharging the soldiers of the first voyage, as well as of the seventy others that Labienus had built later, very few reached their destination. Almost all the rest were driven back.

Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvīs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvorum māgnum numerum habēbat, et non nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit uti ex tanto navium numero, tot navigationibus, neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis quae milites portaret desideraretur; at ex eis quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, [et] prioris commeatūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labienus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae fere omnes reicerentur.

all gauls durded into three parts one of which the belgions a record the acquitamions the third this whis are called in their language letts in our tanguage your Read foremmy themselves manguery costomes to lear Blegarrone rue separate the quels funtle Cucyuntarua He marrand the Serve from the Belgians of all these the mist franciare the Soly in because of the province (abusemnt) ( from about ) and merchants sencirete to them court oftenand and cost thing, which fortun to weaken their shirt they are to the Germans who have acress the Phine with whom they wage was constantly also forthe reason in Kelvitano, surpass the remaining Jaul. cutate germans when either they problet them then territories orther themselves were time in her lembry me part of themwhich it has been Prival the Games hold takese teamning from the over Phone is Commided by the Garnie R. by the ocean by the Countains of the addyrus reaches even on the hear of the sea veni and Helvation, the new thing in Clinests the with He Polgrans part of the R. Phine booktowned the morther and Rymenes onto and that part of the occumulationext to Spur looks between the setting ser anolle mith when lasser was in letter and as include showing serve frequent numer. were living to the huminimum he was informed by the setter of Subsenio that all the Belgin when well ad southwaren sell hart of grand my against the from the se and we can any my Place present all gant handy in a frest because the general art all gant hands in a frest bur and grand drede it against them seamed graces etterner stone by by some games - Parties that who had been minkling that The harmer show remaining and were congress as the army of the horner. freshed in good a fait in the distance of forman hukleness of mind we tard to Google - of government



Cyreveral also because the government

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
TUBLIC LIBRARY

5 Penfratur

# THE GALLIC WAR.

#### BOOK I.-CHAP. I.

## GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

#### The Nations of Gaul.

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partis tres; quarum unam incolunt la Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit.

#### Their Characters Compared.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs² saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent³ important; proximīque sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Puā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē⁴ cotīdiānīs proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

#### The Territories of Each.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, ini- 15 tium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō continētur Garumnā flūmine,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> incolēbat, p. 50, l. 2. — <sup>2</sup> mereātörēs, 43, 12. — <sup>8</sup> pertinēre, 9, 22. — <sup>4</sup> ferē, 67, 7. — <sup>5</sup> partīs, l. 1. — <sup>6</sup> obtinēbat, 15, 21. — <sup>7</sup> initiō, 17, 3.

5

Oceano, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeos montis et eam partem Oceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentrionēs.

#### BOOK II.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY, B.C. 57.

All the Belgian Tribes Conspire against the Romans. Reasons for this.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliā ita utī suprā dēmonstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmorēs adferēbantur, litteris-10 que item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnīs Belgās, quam tertiam

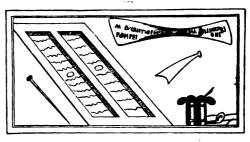


FIG. 43. - WRITING MATERIALS.

esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Romānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter se dare. Coniūrandi hās esse causās: prīmum quod verērentur omnī pācātā Galliā ad eos exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab non

Cf. <sup>1</sup> Inferior, p. 8, l. 18.—<sup>2</sup> pertinent, l. 3.—<sup>8</sup> occāsum, 28, 12.—
<sup>4</sup> certior factus erat, 53, 19.—<sup>5</sup> coniūrātum est, 71, 6.—<sup>6</sup> verērētur, 38, 11.

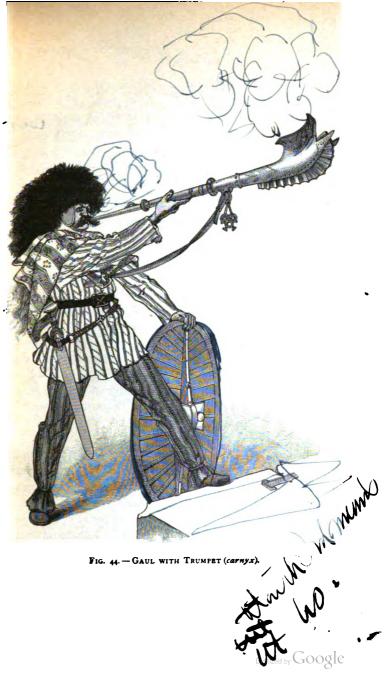


FIG. 44. - GAUL WITH TRUMPET (carnyx).

nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānos diūtius in Galliā versārī noluerant, ita populī Romānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mobilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperis stūdēbant, — ab non nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiorībus atque eis quī ad condūcendos hominēs facultātīs habēbant volgo rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant.

# Cæsar promptly Moves against them.

2. His nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus caesar duās legionēs
10 in citeriore Galliā novās conscripsit, et initā aestāte in interiorem Galliam qui dēdūceret Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit.

Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negotium senonibus reliquisque Gallīs qui finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant seque dē hīs rēbus certiorem faciant. Hī constanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt mānūs cogī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vēro dubitandum non existimāvit quin ad eos proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quindecim ad finīs Belgārum pervenit.

#### The Remi Submit and Promise Aid.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andocombogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre;

Cf. 1 sollicitēris, p. 35, l. 13. — 2 versābar, 24, 19. — 8 facultātem, 24, 6. — 4 consecutt sunt, 3, 6. — 5 commōtus, 3, 27. — 6 negōtium, 31. 15. — 7 celerī, 28, 19. — 8 coniūrātum est, 71, 6. — 9 cēterīs, 19, 11.

II. 4.] The Belgian Confederacy, B.C. 57.

reliquōs omnīs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,¹ sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē² Suessiōnēs quidem,² frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium³ ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs 5 habeant, dēterrēre⁴ potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.'

Origin and Strength of the Belgse as Told by the Remi.

4. Cum ab his quaereret quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis, Rhenumque antiquitus traductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse to Gallosque qui ea loca incolerent expulisse, solosque esse



FIG. 45.-Coin of Diviciacus, King of the Subssiones.

qui patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finīs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī uti eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent. Dē 15 numerō eōrum omaia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, proptereā quod propinquitātibus adfīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō 20

Cf. 1 incolēbat, p. 50, l. 2. — 2 nē . . . quidem, 28, 8. — 8 imperī, 17, 18. — 4 dēterrērī, 52, 10. — 5 quaesīvit, 39, 9. — 6 consēdit, 12, 4. — 7 sūmat, 28, 27. — 8 pollicētur, 83, 14.

Pass from ved meanogle

valēre; hos posse conficere armāta milia centum, pollicitos ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessionēs suos esse finiumos ; imis iaussimos teracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem 5 nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum,3 qui cum māgnae partis hārum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit4; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tõtius belli omnium voluntāte dēferri<sup>8</sup>; oppida habēre numerō x11, 10 pollicērī mīlia armāta quinquāgintā; totidem Nervios, qui māximē ferī inter ipsos habeantur longissimēque absint; quindecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānos decem mīlia, Morinos xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem mīlia; 15 Condrūsos, Eburônes, Caerosos, Paemānos, qui ūno nomine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad xL mīlia.

# Casar Marches to the Aisne, and Encar eyond it.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter 20 ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs 10 hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore confligendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās copiās Haedui in fīnīs Bellovacorum introdūxerint et eorum agros populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnīs Belgārum copiās in ūnum locum coāctās 12 ad sē venīre [vīdit] neque iam longē abesse ab eīs quos mīserat explorātoribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> postulāsset, p. 38, l. 15. — <sup>2</sup> fīnitimī, 146, 13. — <sup>8</sup> potentiōribus, 146, 5. — <sup>4</sup> obtinēbat, 15, 21. — <sup>5</sup> dētulit, 76, 25. — <sup>6</sup> ferīs, 23, 12. — <sup>7</sup> appellātus, 9, 4. — <sup>8</sup> māgnopere, 9, 19. — <sup>9</sup> interest, 9, 19. — <sup>10</sup> manūs, 146, 16. — <sup>11</sup> populābantur, 37, 11. — <sup>12</sup> cōgēbātur, 63, 9.

# Induct discourse berliges in in Subject in View The Belgian Confederacy, B.C. 57. 14

II. 6.1

flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrorum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddebat, et commeātus ab Rēmis reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculo ad 5 eum portāri possent efficiēbat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum XII vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum müniri jubet. 10

The Belgæ Attack Bibrax, a Town of the Remi, Eight Miles away.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmorum nomine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū8 Belgae



FIG. 46. - SLINGER (funditor).

oppugnare coepērunt. Aegrē eo die sustentatum est. Gallörum eadem atque Belgärum oppugnātio est haec. circumiecta multitudine hominum totis moenibus undique 15

Cf. 1 mātūrandum, p. 54, l. 24.—2 portāverat, 3, 14.—8 impetūs, 57, 1. — 4 moenia, 18, 15.

in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā [portās] succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat.¹ Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs āc tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās ² erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eis quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ³ ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius ⁴ sustinēre nōn posse.

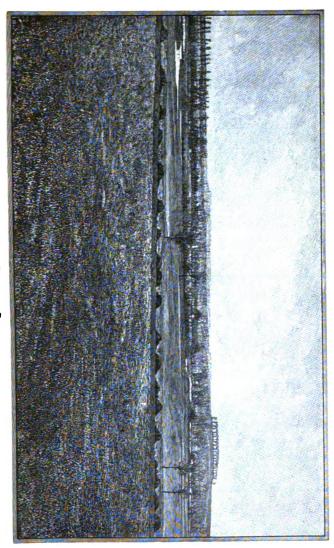
## Cæsar Sends Relief and the Belgæ Advance on his Camp.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī bab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium propūgnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit.
 15 Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcis aedificiīsque quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duobus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octo in lātitūdinem patēbant.

#### Cæsar Strengthens his Position.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit <sup>8</sup>; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent <sup>9</sup> perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn <sup>25</sup> esse înferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, <sup>10</sup> — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus, tantum ad-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> fiat, p. 28, l. 4. — <sup>2</sup> potestātem, 17, 7. — <sup>8</sup> nūntiī, 41, 17. — <sup>4</sup> diūtius, 146, 2. — <sup>5</sup> nūntiī, 41, 17. — <sup>6</sup> potītī sunt, 37, 24. — <sup>7</sup> vīcī, 65, 15. — <sup>8</sup> statuērunt, 17, 14. — <sup>9</sup> ausus sit, 78, 19. — <sup>10</sup> idōneum, 35, 21.



versus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta ¹ occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris ² dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter ³ fastīgātus paulātīm ad plānitiem redībat, — ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam 5 obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantīs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat ⁴ in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus ⁵ esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ⁶ ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

The Belgæ Try to Cross the Aisne to Attack him in the Rear.

9. Palūs erat non māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant;

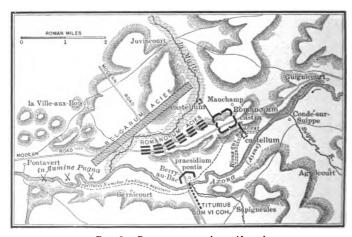


Fig. 48. - Battle on the Aisne (Axona).

Cf. <sup>1</sup> înstrüctum, p. 51, l. 4. — <sup>2</sup> latere, 20, 1. — <sup>8</sup> lēniter, 55, 10. — <sup>4</sup> cōnscrīpsit, 146, 10. — <sup>5</sup> opus, 28, 19. — <sup>6</sup> cōpiīs, 19, 7.

II. 10.]

nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impeditōs adgrederentur¹ parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus² ex eō locō 5 ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum³ est. Ibi vadīs repertīs⁴ partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat⁵ Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent⁶ pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, 10 agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur,² qui māgnō nōbis ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque⁵ nostrōs prohibērent.

# Cæsar Crosses, and Defeats them. They Decide to Disband.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūrio omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs 9 sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eos contendit. Ācriter in eo loco pūgnā- 15 Hostis impeditõs nostri in flümine adgressi māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquos audācissimē trānsīre conantīs multitūdine tēlorum reppulērunt, prīmosque, qui trānsierant, equitātū circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes ubi et de expugnando oppido et 20 dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse 10 intellēxērunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque 11 reverti, et, quorum in finis primum Romani exercitum 25 introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique 12 convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sen-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> adgressus est, p. 24, l. 7.—<sup>2</sup> prōtinus, 28, 24.—<sup>8</sup> dēmōnstrāvimus, 144, 8.—<sup>4</sup> reperiēbat, 147, 8.—<sup>5</sup> praeesset, 50, 12.—<sup>6</sup> expūgnāvit, 56, 11.—<sup>7</sup> populārī, 148, 25.—<sup>8</sup> commeātus, 149, 4.—<sup>9</sup> funditōrēs, 150, 11.—<sup>10</sup> fefellisset, 9, 13.—<sup>11</sup> quisque, 147, 18.—<sup>12</sup> undique, 149, 15.

tentiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Diviciacum atque Haeduos finibus Bellovacorum adpropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent non poterat.

## On their Retreat, they are Pursued with Great Slaughter.

5 11. Eā rē constitūtā secundā vigiliā māgno cum strepitū āc tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret,<sup>2</sup> fēcērunt ut consimilis fugae profectio 3 vidērētur. Hāc rē statim 4 Caesar per speculātorēs cognitā. 10 însidias veritus, quod qua de causa discederent nondum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit8; T. Labiēnum 15 lēgātum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hī novissimos adorti et multa milia passuum prosecuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, consisterent 10 fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent, priores, quod abesse 20 ā perīculo vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperio continērentur exaudītō clamore perturbātīs ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ūllo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt quantum fuit diei spatium; sub occasum solis sequi destiterunt seque 25 in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> morātī, p. <sup>1</sup> 50, l. <sup>1</sup> 5. — <sup>2</sup> properāvit, 38, 20. — <sup>8</sup> profectionem, 40, 5. — <sup>6</sup> statim, 41, 6. — <sup>5</sup> cognoscant, <sup>1</sup> 46, <sup>1</sup> 4. — <sup>6</sup> insidiās, <sup>5</sup> 1, <sup>1</sup> 1. — <sup>7</sup> discessissent, 9, <sup>2</sup> 5. — <sup>8</sup> praefēcērunt, <sup>1</sup> 9, <sup>7</sup> . — <sup>9</sup> prosecūtus, <sup>1</sup> 48, <sup>1</sup> 7. — <sup>10</sup> consistēns, <sup>7</sup> 70, <sup>2</sup> 2.

II. 13.]

## The Suessiones, Alarmed by Cæsar's Advance, Surrender.

12. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrore āc fugā reciperent, in finīs Suessionum, qui proximī la Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgno itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre conātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsoribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre non potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere quae-

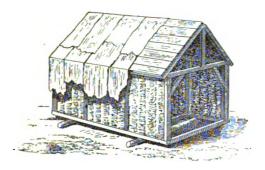


FIG. 49. - VINEA OR TESTUDO.

que ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere 10 iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur impetrant.

#### In Like Manner the Bellovaci Surrender.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis cīvitātis atque ipsius 15 Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armisque omnibus ex oppidō

Cf. 1 proximī, p. 146, l. 21.—2 oppūgnāre, 149, 13.—8 conantīs, 153, 18.—4 fossam, 37, 19.—5 constituit, 152, 6.—6 impetrāto, 54, 12.

trāditīs 1 in dēditionem Suessiones accipit exercitumque in Bellovacos dūcit. Quī cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnes 5 māiores nātū ex oppido ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coepērunt sese in ēius fidem 2 āc potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Romānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset 3 castraque ibi poneret, puerī mulieresque ex mūro passīs manibus suo 10 more pācem ab Romānis petiērunt.

## Diviciacus, Leader of the Hædui, Pleads for the Bellovaci.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs <sup>4</sup> Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat — facit verba: 'Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs <sup>6</sup> omnīs indīgnitātīs contumēliāsque <sup>6</sup> perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem <sup>7</sup> apud omnīs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre <sup>10</sup> cōnsuērint.'

# The Ambiani Surrender. Reports of the Nervii, who are Waiting to Give Battle beyond the Sambre.

25 15. Caesar honoris Diviciāci atque Haeduorum causā sēsē eos in fidem receptūrum et conservātūrum dixit, et quod erat

Cf. <sup>1</sup> trādidit, p. 25, l. 14. — <sup>2</sup> fidem, 146, 23. — <sup>8</sup> accessit, 81, 7. — <sup>4</sup> dīmittit, 27, 8. — <sup>5</sup> redāctās, 17, 15. — <sup>6</sup> contumēliam, 15, 6. — <sup>7</sup> auctōritātem, 147, 14. — <sup>8</sup> amplificandā, 18, 18. — <sup>9</sup> opibus, 12, 23. — <sup>10</sup> sustentātum, 149, 13.

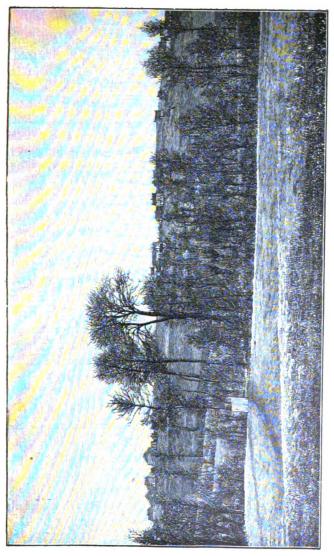


FIG. So. - HAUTMONT.

cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit.¹ Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in finīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdi-5 dērunt. Eōrum fīnīs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque ² Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque ³ rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse 10 hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre ⁴ atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre ⁵ sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condicionem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finīs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat
15 ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs non amplius mīlia
passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnīs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse 6 adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum
Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs finitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque 7
persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur 8);
20 exspectārī etiam ab eīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in
itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs
vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs 9
exercituī aditus nōn esset.

The Nervii, on Information Given by Deserters, Decide to Attack Cassar while Pitching Camp.

17. His rēbus cognitis exploratores centurionesque prae-25 mittit qui locum castris idoneum 10 deligant. 11 Cum ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem secuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis

Cf. <sup>1</sup> poscit, p. 27, l. 7. — <sup>2</sup> mõs, 67, 3. — <sup>8</sup> reliquīs, 146, 13. — <sup>4</sup> increpāns, 70, 3. — <sup>6</sup> confirmāvērunt, 41, 6. — <sup>6</sup> consēdisse, 147, 10. — <sup>7</sup> utrāque, 152, 2. — <sup>8</sup> experiar, 30, 18. — <sup>9</sup> palūs, 152, 13. — <sup>10</sup> idoneo, 150, 26. — <sup>11</sup> dēlēctā, 78, 3.

cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine i itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt; atque his demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negoti, cum prima legio in castra venisset reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri; qua

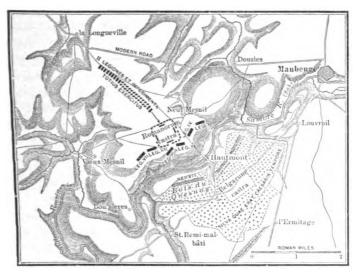


FIG. 51. - DEFEAT OF THE NERVIL

pulsā impedīmentīsque direptis futūrum ut reliquae contrā consistere non audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eorum consilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī reī student, sed roquicquid possunt pedestribus valent copiīs), quo facilius fīnitimorum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eos vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs, crēbrīs-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> consuctudinem, p. 85, l. 3.  $-^2$  absint, 148, 11.  $-^8$  antiquitus, 147, 9.  $-^4$  studens, 6, 9.  $-^5$  valere, 148, 1.  $-^6$  praedandī, 43, 13.

que in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant 1 ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmenta praebērent, 2 quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn 5 omittendum sibi consilium Nerviī existimāvērunt.

#### Nature of the Ground.

18. Loci nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

# The Nervii Make a Furious Assault and Throw the Romans into Confusion.

15 19. Caesar equitātū praemissõ subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat āc Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās totīus exercitūs impedīmenta conlocārat; 20 inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē conscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent āc rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentīs insequī

Cf. 1 efficiëbat, p. 149, l. 6. — 2 praebuit, 8, 4. — 3 adversus, 150, 27. — 4 subsequī, 154, 15. — 5 dētulit, 66, 23. — 6 proximī, 146, 21. — 7 praesidium, 149, 7. — 8 rūrsus, 27, 16.



audērent,¹ interim legionēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dīmēnso castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs quī in silvīs abditī ² latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendī proelī convēnerat,³ ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque constituerant ⁴ atque ipsī sēsē 5 confīrmāverant, subito omnibus copiīs provolāvērunt impetumque in nostros equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs āc proturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūno tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et iam in manibus nostrīs] hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte 10 adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

The Critical Situation. The Discipline of the Roman Army.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat insīgne cum ad arma concurrī b oportēret), sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, 15







FIG. 53. - TUBA.



FIG. 54. - CORNU.

qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et succes-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> audērent, p. 150, l. 24. — <sup>2</sup> abditus, 9, 21. — <sup>8</sup> convenit, 85, 14. — <sup>4</sup> constituit, 152, 6. — <sup>6</sup> concurrant, 83, 10. — <sup>6</sup> instruendam, 150, 25. — <sup>7</sup> cohortātus, 148, 17.

sus hostium impediēbat.¹ Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant 'subsidiō,²—scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī³ poterant; et 5 quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

# Cæsar Addresses the Tenth; the Rest are already Engaged.

21. Caesar, necessāriis rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandos mīlitēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legionem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs non longiore orātione cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animo hostiumque impetum quo tēlum adicī posset, proelī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut non modo ad īnsīgnia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prīma sīgna conspēxit ad haec constitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

# The Varying Fortunes of the Battle.

25 22. Înstructo exercitu magis ut loci nătura deiectusque collis et necessităs temporis quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulăbat, cum diversae legiones aliae alia in

Cf. <sup>1</sup> impedirent, p. 159, l. 13. — <sup>2</sup> subsidium, 150, 8. — <sup>8</sup> docet, 148 21. — <sup>4</sup> perturbātīs, 154, 21. — <sup>6</sup> parāta, 25, 5. — <sup>6</sup> cōnsistendī, 150, 4. — <sup>7</sup> dēiectūs, 152, 2. parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque 1 dēnsissimīs (ut ante dēmonstrāvimus) interiectīs 2 prospectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus 3 esset providērī neque ab ūno omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae 5 quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

Two Legions Force the Atrebates into the River; Two Pursue the Viromandui, but the Nervii Gain the Camp.

23. Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte acië constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine exanimātos volneribusque confectos Atrebates - nam his ea pars obvēnerat — celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen com- 10 pulērunt, et trānsīre conantis insecuti gladiis māgnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi rūrsus resistentīs hostīs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniecerunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, un- 15 decima et octāva, proffigātis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At tötis ferē castrīs ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātīs,6 cum in dextrō cornū7 legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima constitisset, omnēs Nerviī 20 confertissimo agmine duce Boduognato, qui summam 8 imperi tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

The Enemy Have the Advantage. The Treveri, Panic-stricken, Withdraw to their Homes.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae<sup>0</sup> 25 peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium

Cf. <sup>1</sup> saepēs, p. 160, l. 2. — <sup>2</sup> interiectīs, 160, 2. — <sup>8</sup> opus, 152, 10. — <sup>4</sup> cōnātus, 155, 4. — <sup>5</sup> inīquiōrem, 153, 22. — <sup>6</sup> nūdātus, 150, 2. — <sup>7</sup> cornū, 82, 3. — <sup>8</sup> summam, 148, 8. — <sup>9</sup> armātūrae, 153, 14.

impetū pulsos dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant; et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo iugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, prae-5 dandi 1 causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostīs in nostrīs castris versārī vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant.<sup>2</sup> Simul eõrum qui cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permotī equitēs Treveri, 10 quorum inter Gallos virtūtis opinio \* est singulāris, qui auxili causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium castra compleri, legiones premi 4 et paene circumventās tenērī, cālonēs, equitēs, funditorēs, Numidās dispersos dissipātosque in omnīs partīs fugere 15 vidissent, desperatis onostris rebus domum contenderunt; Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostis potitos, civitati renuntiaverunt.

# Csesar Enters the Fight in Person and Inspires his Soldiers.

25. Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum 20 conlatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, — quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis, signifero interfecto, signo mibus centurionibus occisis, signifero interfecto, signo mibus centurionibus occisis, in his primipilo P. Sextio Baculo, 25 fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque volneribus confecto, ut iam se sustinere non posset; reliquos esse tardiores et non nullos mada novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostis neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntis

Cf. <sup>1</sup> praedandī, p. 159, l. 12. — <sup>2</sup> mandāvit, 33, 13. — <sup>8</sup> opīniōnem, 150, 22. — <sup>4</sup> pressus, 3, 11. — <sup>6</sup> dēspērāret, 19, 26. — <sup>6</sup> cōnfertissimo, 163. 21. — <sup>7</sup> occīdērunt, 153, 17. — <sup>8</sup> sīgnum, 161, 17. — <sup>9</sup> ferē, 67, 7. — <sup>10</sup> cōnfectus, 48, 22. — <sup>11</sup> nōn nūllīs, 144, 14. — <sup>12</sup> vītārent, 84, 9.

intermittere, et ab utrōque latere înstăre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī ¹ posset, — scūtō ab novissimīs [ūnī] mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō ² vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus 5

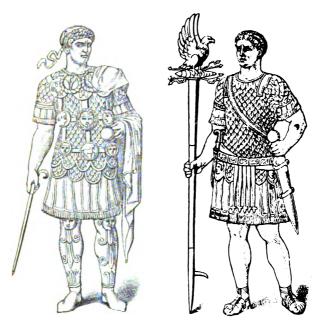


FIG. 55. - CENTURIO.

Fig. 56. - AQUILIFER.

mīlitēs sīgna înferre et manipulos laxāre iussit, quo facilius gladis ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē inlātā mīlitibus āc redintegrāto animo, cum pro sē quisque in conspectū imperātoris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Cf.  $^1$  submittātur, p. 150, l.  $8.-^2$  scūtīs, 162, 21. $-^3$  redintegrātō, 163, 14.

10

Meanwhile Labienus, having Taken the Enemy's Camp, Sends a Reinforcement to Cæsar.

26. Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae iūxtā constiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnos mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legionēs coniungerent et conversa sīgna in hostīs īnferrent. Quo facto, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere āc fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legionum duārum quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedīmentīs fuerant, proelio nūntiāto, cursū¹ incitāto in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus² et ex loco superiore quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur³ conspicātus, decimam legionem subsidio nostrīs mīsit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālonum fugā quo in loco rēs esset quantoque in periculo et castra et legionēs et imperātor versārētur cognovissent, nihil ad celetīs ritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

#### The Tide of Battle Turns.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī volneribus cōnfectī forēcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostīs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnant, quō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs

Cf. <sup>1</sup> cursū, p. 163, l. 8. — <sup>2</sup> potiundī, 150, 14. — <sup>8</sup> gerantur, 146, 14. — <sup>4</sup> confectos, 163, 9. — <sup>5</sup> occurrēbant, 164, 2. — <sup>6</sup> conicerent, 150, 4.

esse trānsīre lātissimum <sup>1</sup> flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum <sup>2</sup> locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

# The Nervii utterly Routed, and Most of them Slain.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente āc nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum 5 puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs³ coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum⁴ arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt⁵, et, in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentīs ad 10 trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit, suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē 15 suōsque prohibērent.7

# The Aduatuci Withdraw to a Stronghold. Their Origin.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque <sup>8</sup> dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt.<sup>9</sup> Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rupīs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter <sup>10</sup> acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum cc relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabīs in mūrō conlocā-25 bant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbris Teutonīsque prōgnātī, qui,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> lätissimös, p. 148, l. 3. — <sup>2</sup> inīquum, 163, 13. — <sup>8</sup> palūs, 152, 13. — <sup>4</sup> tūta, 149, 4. — <sup>5</sup> dēdidērunt, 158, 4. — <sup>6</sup> commemorāsset, 76, 5. — <sup>2</sup> prohibuerint, 147, 3. — <sup>8</sup> castellum, 153, 9. — <sup>9</sup> contulissent, 156, 3. — <sup>10</sup> lēniter, 152, 3.



Digitized by Google

cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis impedimentis quae secum agere ac portare non poterant citra flumen Rhenum depositis, custodiam ex suis ac praesi-

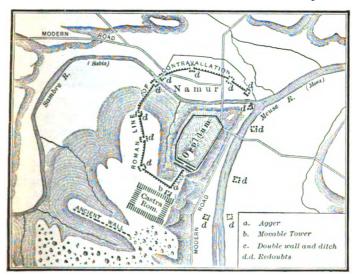


FIG. 58. - SIEGE OF THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ADVATUCE.

dium sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eorum obitum multos annos ā finītimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent aliās inlātum dēfenderent, consēnsū eorum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domicilio locum dēlēgerant.

# They Laugh at the Roman Siege Works and Scoff at the Romans for their Shortness of Stature.

30. Āc prīmō adventū ¹ exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ² ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū xv mīlium, 10 crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant.

Cf. 1 adventum, p. 158, l. 17. — 2 crēbrī, 144, 9.

Ubi vīneīs 1 āctīs aggere 2 exstrūctō turrim procul constituī vīdērunt, prīmum īnrīdēre 3 ex mūro atque increpitāre vocibus quod tanta māchinātio ab tanto spatio īnstituerētur: 'Qui-

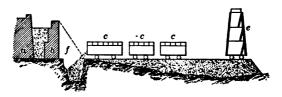


FIG. 59. - SIEGE WORKS.

a, b, Double wall.

e, Movable tower.

c, c, c, Vineæ. d, Agger. f, Ditch.

busnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae'— nam plērumque hominibus Gallīs prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est— 'tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē conlocāre cōnfīderent?'

## They Become Alarmed, and Offer to Surrender Conditionally.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre 6 moenibus 7 vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē 8 commōtī 9 lēgātōs ad 10 Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: 'Nōn exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātionēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere' 10 dīxērunt. 'Ūnum petere āc dēprecārī 11: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine, 12 quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse conservandos, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnīs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs āc suae

Cf. <sup>1</sup> vīneās, p. 155, l. 7. — <sup>2</sup> aggere, 155, 10. — <sup>8</sup> inrīdendum, 83, 25. — <sup>4</sup> vīribus, 21, 9. — <sup>5</sup> onere, 3, 11. — <sup>6</sup> adpropinquāre, 154, 3. — <sup>7</sup> moenibus, 149, 15. — <sup>8</sup> speciem, 38, 17. — <sup>9</sup> commōtus, 146, 9. — <sup>10</sup> permittere, 146, 24. — <sup>11</sup> dēprecantibus, 63, 12. — <sup>12</sup> mānsuētūdine, 156, 21.

virtūtī invidēre 1; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs non possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populo Romāno patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quos dominārī consuessent.'

#### They Accept Cæsar's Terms, but treacherously Retain Part of their Arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Sē magis consuētūdine 5 suā quam merito eorum civitātem conservātūrum, sī, priusquam murum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditionis nūllam esse condicionem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditīciis populī Romānī iniūriam inferrent.' Rē 10 nūntiātā ad suos, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armorum māgnā multitūdine dē mūro in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armorum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in op- 15 pido retentā, portīs patēfactīs eo diē pāce sunt ūsī.

# They Make a Saily from the Town, but are Repulsed. More than 50,000 Sold as Slaves.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitībus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut 20 dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, — partim cum eīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminībus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellībus indūxerant, — tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbā-25 tur, omnībus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Cf. 1 inviderant, p. 59, l. 11. — 2 priusquam, 155, 1. — 8 tamen, 41, 1. — 4 oppidānis, 150, 12. — 5 exiguitās, 162, 18.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, īgnibus sīgnificātione factā, ex proximīs castellīs eo concursum¹ est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquo loco, contrā eos quī ex vāllo³ turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit,³ cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs consisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Postrīdiē ēius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet ņēmō, atque intromissīs mīlitībus nostrīs, sectionem ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit.⁴ Ab 10 eīs quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

#### Crassus Subdues Many Coast Towns.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas. Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs 15 Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnīs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.<sup>5</sup>

# The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. A Thanksgiving for Cæsar's Victories is Decreed at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae

Cf. <sup>1</sup> concurrī, p. 161, l. 14. — <sup>2</sup> vāllō, 149, 9. — <sup>8</sup> dēbēret, 166, 27. — <sup>4</sup> vēndunt, 31, 19. — <sup>5</sup> redāctō, 167, 5. — <sup>6</sup> pācātā, 144, 13. — <sup>7</sup> imperāta, 146, 26. — <sup>8</sup> pollicitōs, 148, 1.

eīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hīberna dēductīs in Ītaliam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris dies quindecim supplicātio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

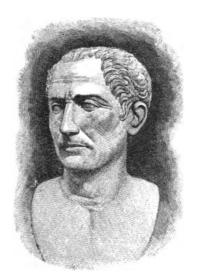


FIG. 60. - GAIUS IULIUS CARSAR

## BOOK III, 7-16.

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI. B.C. 56.

Operations in Northwestern Gaul on the Seacoast. Crassus Sends
Messengers to Collect Supplies.

7. Hīs rēbus gestis cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam existimāret [superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs], atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātionēs adīre et regionēs cognoscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Ēius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legione vī proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectos tribūnosque mīlitum complūrīs in finitimās civitātīs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quo in numero erat T. Terrasidius missus in Esuvios, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius com T. Silio in Venetos.

The Messengers are Seized by the Veneti, under whose Lead the Maritime
Tribes Demand a Return of their Hostages.

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctoritās omnis orae maritimae regionum eārum, quod et nāvīs habent Vers netī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre consuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēteros antecēdunt, et in māgno impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quos tenent ipsī, omnīs ferē quī eo marī ūtī consuērunt habent vectīgālīs. Ab hīs fit initium tetinendī Sīlī atque Velānī, quod per eos suos sē obsidēs quos Crasso dedissent recuperātūros existimābant. Horum auctoritāte finitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentīna con-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> coörta est, p. 40, l. 17. — <sup>2</sup> hiemāvī, 1, 3. — <sup>8</sup> ōrā, 37, 7. — <sup>4</sup> recuperandās, 48, 8.

silia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā lībertāte quam ā māiōribus accēperint permanēre 5 quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: 'Sī velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.'



FIG. 61. - GALLEY.

Cæsar Orders a Fleet to be Built on the Loire. The Veneti Prepare for War and Summon Allies.

9. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvīs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, remiges ex provinciā instituī, nautās gubernātoresque compararī iubet. His rebus

Cf. <sup>1</sup> sollicitärentur, p. 146, l. 1.—<sup>2</sup> gubernätöre, 69, 5.

CESAR B.G.

celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū [certiōrēs factī], simul quod quantum in sē facinus 1 admīsissent intellegēbant, lēgā-

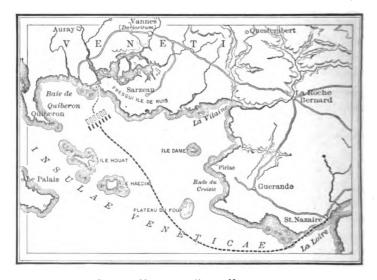


FIG. 62. - MAP OF THE VENETI NEIGHBORHOOD.

5 tös — quod nömen ad omnīs nātiönēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs,² prō māgnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et māximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc māiōre spē quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse io itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātionem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse confīdēbant; āc iam ut omnia contrā opīnionem

Cf. 1 facinus, p. 69, l. 1. -2 coniecta sunt, 19, 25.

acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem¹ habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; āc longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs 5 initīs cōnsilīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvis in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat,² quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adscīscunt; auxilia 10 ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.8

Casar's Reasons for Prosecuting the War. His Strategy "Divide and Conquer."

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātūm 15 coniūrātiō, imprīmīs⁴nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnīs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnīs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs 20 cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi āc lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Labienus Sent to the East, Crassus to the South, Sabinus to the North.

Brutus has Charge of the Fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, qui proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō 25 contineat; Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī dīcē-

Cf. 1 facultātem, p. 24, l. 6. — 2 constat, 40, 2. — 3 arcessendās, 68, 22. — 4 imprimīs, 55, 2.

bantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre conentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legionāriīs x11 et māgno numero equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātionibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur āc tantae 5 nātionēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legionibus tribus in Venellos, Coriosolitas Lexoviosque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam¹ cūret.² D. Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regionibus convenīre iusserat, 10 praeficit, et cum prīmum possit in Venetos proficīscī iubet. Ipse eo pedestribus copiīs contendit.

# Situation of the Strongholds of the Veneti.

12. Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidorum ut posita in extrēmis lingulis promuntūriisque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex alto sē aestus incitavisset (quod [bis] 15 accidit semper horārum XII spatio), neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflictārentur. utrāque rē oppidorum oppūgnātio impediebātur; āc si quando - māgnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūso marī aggere ac molibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequatis -20 desperare fortunis suis coeperant, magno numero navium adpulso, cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus isdem opportunitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae 25 nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, rāris āc prope nūllis portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Description of their Ships. Comparison with those of the Romans.

13. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum

Cf. 1 distinērī, p. 148, l. 22. — 2 cūrāvit, 62, 5. — 8 aestus, 12, 2.

nāvium, quō facilius vada āc dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum¹ērectae atque item puppēs ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam³perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae; pellēs³ prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter inopiam līnī atque ēius ūsūs

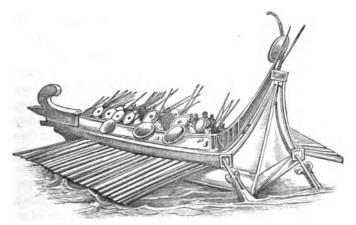


FIG. 63. - ROMAN BATTLE SHIP.

inscientiam sive eo (quod est magis vērīsimile) quod tantās tempestātis Oceanī tantosque impetūs ventorum sustinērī āc 10 tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs non satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssī ēius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmorum praestāret; reliqua pro locī nātūrā, pro vī tempestātum, illīs essent aptiora et accommodātiora. Neque enim eīs nostrae 15 rostro nocēre poterant—tanta in eīs erat fīrmitūdo—neque

Cf. 1 admodum, p. 18, 1.6. — 2 contumēliam, 15, 6. — 8 pellibus, 72, 10.

propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtīus 5 et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cōtīs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

# The Battle. How the Romans Overcame their Disadvantages.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit früsträ tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis oppidīs reprimī neque eis nocērī posse, statuit exspectan-10 dam classem.2 Quae ubi convēnit āc prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eorum parātissimae atque omni genere armorum ornatissimae profectae ex portu nostris adversae constiterunt; neque satis Brūto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centurionibusque, quibus sin-15 gulae nāvês erant attribūtae, constābat quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. Rostro enim nocēri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis tamen has altitūdo puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat ut neque ex înferiore loco satis commode tela adigi possent et missa 20 ā Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat māgno ūsui rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, — falcēs praeacūtae<sup>8</sup> īnsertae adfixaeque longuriis non absimili formā mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālos dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitāto praerumpēbantur. 25 Ouibus abscīsīs6 antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque consisteret, his ēreptis omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in conspectū 30 Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum

Cf. <sup>1</sup> sūmat, p. 28, l. 27.—<sup>2</sup> classī, 178, 8.—<sup>8</sup> praeacūtās, 167, 25.—<sup>4</sup> mālum, 48, 17.—<sup>6</sup> rēmīs, 41, 23.—<sup>6</sup> abscīsa, 25, 23.

paulō fortius factum latēre¹ posset; omnēs enim collēs āc loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

## They Defeat the Enemy and Capture their Ships.

15. Disiectis (ut dīximus) antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae āc ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvīs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur²auxilium, fugā salūtem petere



FIG. 64. - TRADING VESSEL.

contendērunt. Āc iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia āc tranquillitās exstitit 10 ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum māximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē IIII ūsque³ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

Cf. 1 latēbant, p. 161, l. 3. —2 reperiēbat, 83, 26. —3 ūsque, 17, 24.

The Veneti Surrender. Their Leaders are Put to Death, the Rest Sold as Slaves.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum¹ est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat in 5 ūnum locum coēgerant²; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum³ statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnserio vārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō⁴ reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Cf.  $^1$  confectis, p. 70, l. 10. — $^2$  cogebatur, 63, 9. — $^8$  vindicarent, 15, 6. — $^4$  necaret, 33, 14.



Fig. 65.

1. FUNDITOR. 2, 2. MILITES LEVIS ARMATURAE.

3, 3. LEGIONARII



FIG. 66. - PACK-WAGONS AND CARTS.

### BOOK IV, 1-19.

THE FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY. B.C. 55.
German Tribes, Pressed by the Suevi, Cross the Rhine.

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetes Germānī et item Tencterī māgnā [cum] multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēvīs complūrīs annōs exagitātī 5 bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

## Customs of the Suevi.

Suēvorum gēns est longē māxima et bellicosissima Germānorum omnium. Hī centum pāgos habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannīs¹ singula mīlia armātorum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domi mānsērunt, sē atque 10 illos alunt.² Hī rūrsus in vicem³ anno post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratio atque ūsus belli intermittitur. Sed prīvātī āc sēparātī agrī apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanēre ūno in loco colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmento, sed māximam 15 partem lacte⁴ atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātionibus⁵; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātione

Cf. 1 quotannis, p. 80, l. 21.—2 alebant, 3, 1.—8 vicem, 25, 13.—4 lactis, 42, 6.—5 vēnātiones, 66, 13.

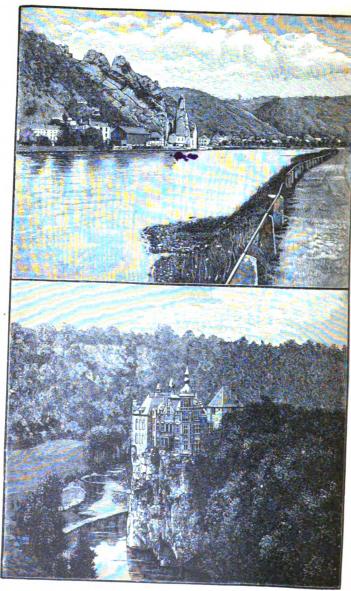
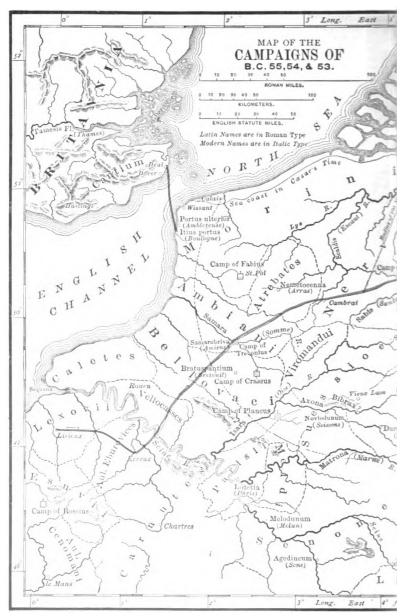
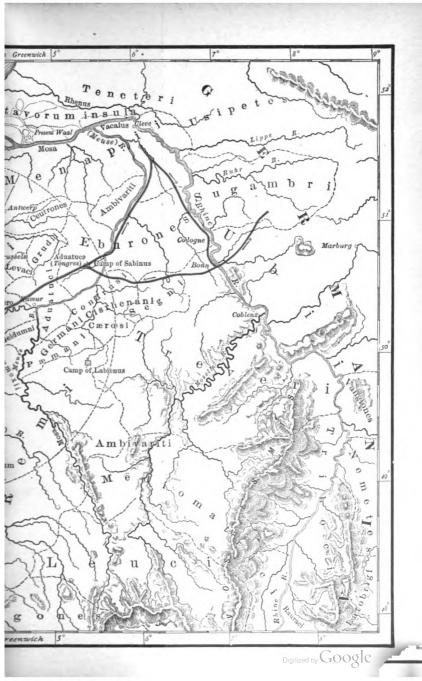


FIG. 67. - SCENERY ON THE MEUSE.

THE FLW YORK
THE CLIBFARY
ACTOR FROM
LOTA FOR ABOVE CHA





LIBLARY

HOP, IT OX

INTERNATIONS

et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō ¹ aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrīs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellīs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

#### Their Intercourse with Other Tribes.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus māximē Gallī 10 dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, [Germānī] importātīs nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēformia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātione summī ut sint labōris efficiunt.

## Their Cavalry Tactics.

Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus 15 proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestīgiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē 20 importārī nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

### The Ubii, Tributaries of the Suevi.

3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sīgnificārī māgnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre non posse. Itaque 25 ūnā ex parte ā Suēvīs circiter mīlia passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque florēns, ut est captus Germānō-

Cf. 1 officio, p. 177, l. 25.—2 vendidit, 183, 11.—8 desiluit, 51, 24.

rum; eī paulō, quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs¹ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem [quod] Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēvī 5 multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālīs³ sibi fēcērunt āc multō humiliōrēs īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.³

# The Usipetes and Tencteri, Expelled from Germany, Overcome the Menapii.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetes et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrīs annōs Suēvōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī da Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regionēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūmi-

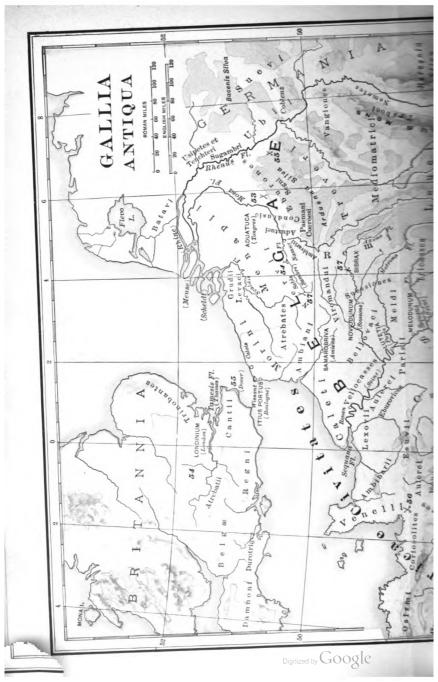


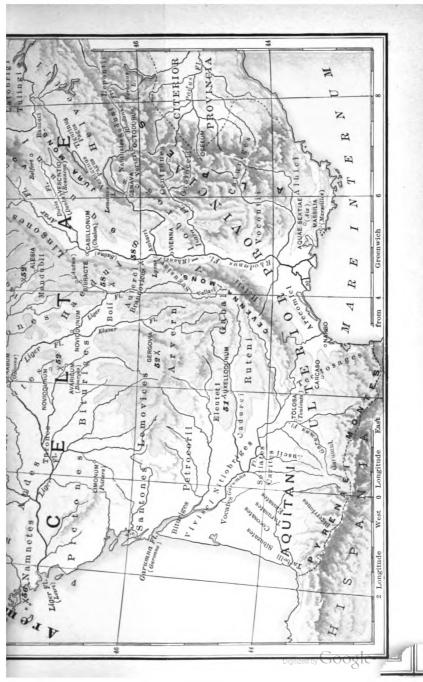
FIG. 60. - COINS OF CASAR.

nis agrōs aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitū15 dinis aditū perterritī ex eīs aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdīs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt set trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt, atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō īnsciōs inopīnantīsque menapiōs oppressērunt; quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs

Cf. <sup>1</sup> mercātōrēs, p. 43, l. 13.— <sup>2</sup> vectīgālīs, 174, 19.— <sup>8</sup> redāctōs, 65, 10.— <sup>4</sup> vagābantur, 37, 11.— <sup>5</sup> simulāns, 82, 13.— <sup>6</sup> inopīnātum, 72, 20.

THE NEW VOIK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LE. OX
TILDEN FOURDATIONS





THE NEW YORK
DUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LELOX
HELD N FOUNDATIONS

certiores facti sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum quae citra Rhenum erat certior fieret, flumen transierunt atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

# Csesar Distrusts the Gauls on Account of their Fickle Character. He

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et înfirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendis mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quisque 10 eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidīs volgus² circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint pronūntiāre³ cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītionibus permotī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestīgiō paenitēre 15 necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

### He Resolves to Make War on the Germans.

6. Quā consuētūdine cognitā Caesar, ne graviorī bello occurreret, mātūrius quam consuērat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta 20 cognovit: missās lēgātionēs ab non nūllis civitātibus ad Germānos invītātosque eos utī ab Rhēno discēderent, omnia quae [que] postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnis Eburonum et Condrūsorum, quī sunt Trēverorum clientēs, pervēnerant. 25 Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea quae cognoverat dissimulanda sibi existimāvit, eorumque animīs permulsīs et confīrmātīs equitātūque imperāto bellum cum Germānīs gerere constituit.

Cf. 1 remigrārent, p. 56, l. 25. — 2 volgī, 2, 13. — 8 pronuntiāvit, 28, 1.

## They Send him a Defiant Message.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctis, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: 'Germānōs neque 5 priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur,¹ quin armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō [haec] sit ā māiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dicere, vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velo lint, posse eīs ūtilīs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēvīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.'

#### He Orders them to Withdraw from Gaul.

15 8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum 3 est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: 'Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse quī suōs finīs tuērī nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine 20 iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēvōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.'

## They Delay.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixērunt et rē dēlībe 25 rātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmen-

Cf.  $^1$  lacessēbat, p. 25, l. 11. —  $^2$  dēprecantibus, 63, 12. —  $^8$  widēbantur, 162, 8.

tandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

## The Meuse and the Rhine Described.

10. Mosa pröfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batavōrum [in Ōceanum īnfluit] neque longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpīs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnīs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrīs dēfluit partis multīs ingentibusque insulīs effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vivere exīstimantur, — multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

### Cæsar Advances. More Parleying to Gain Time.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum xII milibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere ne longius progrederetur orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, petebant uti ad eos equites qui agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eosque pugna 20 prohiberet, sibique ut potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum si principes ac senatus sibi iure iurando fidem fecisset, ea condicione quae a Caesare ferretur se usuros ostendebant; ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut tridui mora interposita equites eorum qui abessent reverterentur; tamen sese non longius milibus passuum IIII aquationis causa processurum eo die dixit; huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos qui cum omni equitatu 30

Cf. 1 ingentis, p. 37, l. 18. -2 antecedunt, 174, 16. -8 ostendit, 54, 16.

antecesserant mittit qui nuntiarent ne hostis proelio lacesserent; et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

## The German Cavalry Treacherously Attack and Rout the Roman.

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs conspexē5 runt, quorum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius
DCCC equitēs habērent, quod ei qui frūmentandi causā
ierant trāns Mosam nondum redierant, nihil timentibus
nostrīs, quod lēgātī eorum paulo ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is dies indūtiis erat ab hīs petītus, impetū facto
10 celeriter nostros perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus,
consuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossīsque equīs
complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquos in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritos ēgērunt ut non prius fugā
dēsisterent quam in conspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

#### Gallant Conduct and Death of the Brothers Piso.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX; in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus²in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī inclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, 20 ipse equō volnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs volnerībus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit³atque interfectus est.

# Envoys Come to Cassar, Whom he Detains. Vigorous Action Demanded.

25 13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condicionēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eīs quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum Cf. 1 dēsiliunt, p. 185, l. 15.—2 avus, 33, 3.—2 obtulerant, 71, 9.

intulissent: exspecțăre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gallorum infirmitāte quantum iam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spati dandum 5 existimābat. His constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, 1 opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie eius diei mane eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani frequentēs, omnibus principibus māioribusque nātū adhibi- ro tīs,2 ad eum in castra vēnērunt: simul, ut dīcēbātur, pūrgandi sui causă, quod (contră atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent) proelium pridie commisissent; simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblātos gāvīsus illos retinērī iussit; ipse omnīs 15 copias castrīs ēdūxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

## Cæsar Surprises the German Camp.

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter viii mīlium itinere confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus 20 subito perterritī et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suorum, neque consilī habendī neque arma capiendī spatio dato perturbantur, copiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū sīgnificārētur, mīlitēs 25 nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quo loco quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carros impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdo puerorum mulierumque — nam cum omnibus suīs domo excesserant 30

Cf. 1 praetermiserat, p. 48, l. 15. — 2 adhibitis, 29, 15.—8 fefellisse, 153, 21. —4 praestare, 171, 2. —5 pristinarum, 85, 10. —6 paulisper, 11, 25.

Rhēnumque trānsierant — passim fugere coepit; ad quōs consectandos Caesar equitatum mīsit.

# The Germans are Defeated and Flee; Many are Slain or Perish in the River.

15. Germānī post tergum¹ clāmōre audītō cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē 5 ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, māgno numero interfecto, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt; atque ibi timore, lassitūdine,² vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs volnerātīs ex tantī 10 bellī timore, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallorum veritī, quorum agros vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem 15 concessit.

# Cæsar's Reasons for Crossing the Rhine and for Building a Bridge.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum: quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvi praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse, neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in fīnīs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: 'Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre; sī sē

Cf. 1 tergő, p. 31, l. 25. — 2 lassitūdine, 163, 8. — 3 impulsõs, 156, 14.

Digitized by Google

invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?' Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium 5 ferret, quod graviter ab Suēvīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō 10 proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās ¹ Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

### Description of the Bridge.

17. Caesar his de causis quas commemoravi Rhenum 15 trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Romānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut 20 aliter non traducendum exercitum existimabat. Rationem pontis hanc înstituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa<sup>2</sup> ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllo pedum duorum inter sē jungēbat. Haec cum māchinātionibus immissa in flumen defixerat fistucisque adegerat, 25 - non sublicae modo derecte ad perpendiculum, sed prone āc fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis procumberent. - eis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum jūncta intervāllo pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiore parte contrā vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec utraque 30 insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eorum

Cf. 1 ultimum, p. 17, l. 24. — 2 dimēnsē, 161, 2. — 8 trabibus, 179, 5.

tīgnorum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; 1 quibus disclūsis atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs, tanta erat operis fīrmitūdo atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quo māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, 5 hoc artius 2 inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur āc longuriīs crātibusque consternēbantur; āc nihīlo sēcius 8 sublicae et ad înferiorem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae pro ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et 10 aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatio, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsoribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.4

### Cæsar Enters Germany.

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī
15 omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō in fīnīs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet.
20 At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eīs quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnībus suīs excesserant suaque omnīa exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem āc silvās abdiderant.<sup>5</sup>

# He Learns that the Suevi are Preparing to Resist him, and after Eighteen Days Returns to Gaul.

25 19. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis, se in finis Ubiorum recepit; atque his auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suevis premerentur, haec ab eis cognovit: 'Suevos,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> distinendam, p. 178, l. 7.—<sup>2</sup> artius, 18, 9.—<sup>3</sup> sēcius, 80, 5.—
<sup>4</sup> nocēre, 179, 16.—<sup>5</sup> abdītī, 161, 3.

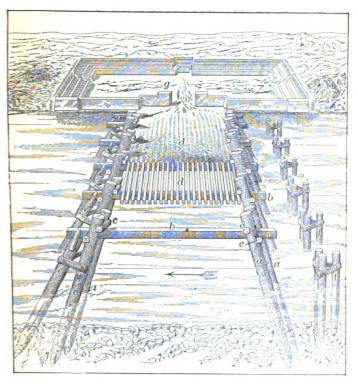


FIG. 70. - PONS A CABSARE IN RHENO FACTUS.

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia; bb, trabes bipedales; cc, fibulae;

dd, derecta materia longuriis cratibusque constrata;

ee, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae;

II, sublicae supra pontem immissae;

g, castellum ad caput pontis positum.

posteāquam per explorātorēs pontem fierī comperissent, more suo concilio habito nuntios in omnīs partīs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberos, uxorēs, suaque omnīa in silvīs dēponerent, atque omnēs qui arma ferre possent umm in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regionum eārum quās Suēvī obtinērent; hīc Romānorum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre constituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus confectis quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum constituerat, ut 10 Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulcīscerētur, ut Ubios obsidione liberāret, diebus omnino xviii trāns Rhēnum consūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem profectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

# BOOK VI, 9-29.

THE SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY. B.C. 53.

# Cæsar again Crosses the Rhine.

9. Caesar postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre constituit: quārum ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant; altera, nē ad eos Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs constitūtīs rēbus paulo suprā eum locum quo ante exercitum trādūxe-20 rat facere pontem instituit. Notā atque institūtā ratione, māgno mīlitum studio, paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Fīrmo in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidio relicto, nē quis ab hīs subito motus orerētur, reliquās copiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, qui ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditionem vēne-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> comperisset, p. 36, l. 18. — <sup>2</sup> dēpositō, 28, 26. — <sup>3</sup> ulcīscerētur, 35, 22. — <sup>4</sup> Recessum. — <sup>6</sup> sēditiō. — <sup>6</sup> coörerētur.

rant, pūrgandī¹suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam:² petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant;³ sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur. Cōg- 5 nitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēvīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem⁴ accipit; aditūs viāsque in Suēvōs perquīrit.⁵

# He Learns from the Ubii that the Suevi have Retreated to the Forest Bacenis.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiis certior Suēvos omnīs in ūnum locum copiās cogere, atque eis nātionibus 10 quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. His cognitis rebus rem frumentāriam providet, castrīs idoneum 6 locum deligit, Ubis imperat ut pecora deducant suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, - spērāns barbaros atque imperitos homines inopiā cibārio- 15 rum adductos ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbros 8 explorātorēs in Suēvos mittant quaeque apud eos gerantur cognoscant.9 Illi imperata faciunt et paucis diebus intermissis referunt: 10 'Suevos omnis. posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum vene- 20 rint. cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis quas coegissent, penitus ad extrēmos 11 finis sē recēpisse; 12 silvam esse ibi infinītā māgnitūdine, quae appellātur Bācenis; hanc longē introrsus 13 pertinere, et pro nativo muro obiectam Cheruscos ab Suevorum Suevosque ab Cheruscorum iniūriis incursioni- 25 busque prohibēre; ad ēius silvae initium Suēvos adventum 14 Romanorum exspectare constituisse.'

Cf. <sup>1</sup> excūsandī. — <sup>2</sup> violātam. — <sup>8</sup> persolvant. — <sup>4</sup> excūsātiōnem. — <sup>5</sup> explōrat. — <sup>6</sup> opp. inīquum. — <sup>7</sup> rērum frūmentāriārum. — <sup>8</sup> frequentēs. — <sup>9</sup> perquīrant. — <sup>10</sup> dēferunt. — <sup>11</sup> ultimōs. — <sup>12</sup> contulisse. — <sup>13</sup> penitus. — <sup>14</sup> opp. profectiōnem.

## Customs of the Gauls. The Two Parties among them.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus et quo differant hae nationes inter sese proponere.

In Galliā non solum in omnibus civitātibus atque in 5 omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factionēs sunt; eārumque factionum prīncipēs sunt qui summam auctoritātem i eorum iūdicio habēre existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum consiliorumque redeat. Idque ēius rei causā antiro quitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiorem auxili egēret; suos enim quisque opprimi et circumvenīri non patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suos habeat auctoritātem. Haec eadem ratio est in summā totius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partis.

# Influence of the Romans upon the Relations of the Parties in Gaul. They Favor the Haedui.

15 12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factionis prīncipēs erant Haedui, alterius Sēquanī. Hī, cum per sē minus valērent (quod summa auctoritās antiquitus erat in Haeduis māgnaeque eorum erant clientēlae), Germānos atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eosque ad sē māgnis iactūrīs pollicitātionibusque perdūxerant. Proeliis vēro complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nobilitāte Haeduorum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut māgnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum filios acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cogerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanos consilī initūros, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque totīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Dīviciācus

Cf.  $^1$  imperium. —  $^2$  sententiā. —  $^8$  revertātur. —  $^4$  carēret, w. abl. —  $^5$  factiones. —  $^5$  non. —  $^7$  adsciverant. —  $^8$  praemiis. —  $^9$  potestāte. —  $^{10}$  praestiterant.

auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus īnfectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus¹ clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod eī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam adgregāverant³ meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre 5 imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dīgnitāteque amplificātā,³ Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās⁴ nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē ro Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur;⁵ ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū ⁶ rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dīgnitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

Two Classes of Gallic Nobility, Druids and Knights. The Druids and their Power.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nobilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnīa 20 sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica āc prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs māgnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, māgnōque hī sunt 25 apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnībus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnībus contrō-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> antīquīs. — <sup>2</sup> concurrerant. — <sup>8</sup> auctā. — <sup>4</sup> opp. amīcitiās. — <sup>5</sup> dēfendēbant. — <sup>6</sup> condicione. — <sup>7</sup> dīgnitāte. — <sup>8</sup> invītātur. — <sup>9</sup> stīpendiorum. — <sup>10</sup> dēdunt. — <sup>11</sup> sē adgregat. — <sup>12</sup> dēcernunt. — <sup>18</sup> commissum.

versia est, idem dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque constituunt; sī qui aut privātus aut populus eorum dēcrēto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numero impiorum āc scelerātorum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eorum sermonemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgione incommodī accipiant, neque eis petentibus iūs redditur neque honos



FIG. 71. - GALLIC COIM.

· ūllus commūnicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc 10 mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dīgnitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō; hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur; et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficiscuntur.

# Their Privileges and Immunities. Their Education and Beliefs.

20 14. Druides ā bello abesse consuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquis pendunt; [militiae vacātionem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem]. Tantīs excitātī praemis et

Cf. <sup>1</sup> pāruit. — <sup>2</sup> prohibent. — <sup>3</sup> vītant. — <sup>4</sup> tribuitur. — <sup>5</sup> praestat. — <sup>6</sup> interdum. — <sup>7</sup> trāducta. — <sup>8</sup> opp. adesse. — <sup>9</sup> incitātī.

suā sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinguisque mittuntur. Mägnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annos non nulli vicēnos in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque 5 rationibus, Graecis litteris ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur; quod neque in volgus disciplinam efferri 8 velint neque eos qui discunt litteris confisos minus memoriae studēre, - quod ferē plērīsque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō āc memoriam 10 remittant. In primis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire 5 animās, sed ab aliis post mortem trānsīre ad alios; atque hoc māximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēcto.6 Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eorum motū, dē mundī āc terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum 15 immortālium vī āc potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

# The Knights are the Fighting Men.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque 20 eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, it aplūrimos circum sē ambactōs clientīsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

#### Human Sacrifices.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus 25 morbīs, quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, u aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> confidere. — <sup>2</sup> ceteris. — <sup>3</sup> divolgāri. — <sup>4</sup> fit. — <sup>5</sup> perire. — <sup>6</sup> omisso. — <sup>7</sup> opp. profectionem. — <sup>6</sup> bellum. — <sup>9</sup> defenderent. — <sup>10</sup> potentissimus. — <sup>11</sup> sunt.

administrīsque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, — quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque ēiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī 1





FIG. 72. - GALLIC COINS.

5 māgnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs icircumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eorum quī in fūrto aut lātrocinio aut aliā noxiā sint comprehēnsi grātiora dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ēius so generis copia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

# Gallic Deities. Consecration of the Spoils of War to Mars.

17. Deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt. Hūius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecū15 niae mercātūrāsque habēre vim māximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dimicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūc-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> ingentī. — <sup>2</sup> incēnsīs. — <sup>8</sup> scelere. — <sup>4</sup> opp. suppetit. — <sup>5</sup> plārimum valēre. — <sup>6</sup> sententiam. — <sup>7</sup> proelium committere.

tos cumulos 1 locis consecratis conspicari licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglecta quispiam religione aut capta apud se occultare 2 aut posita tollere 3 auderet; gravissimumque el rei 4 supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est.

# They Claim Descent from Pluto. Peculiar Treatment of Boys.

18. Gallī sē omnīs ab Dīte patre prognātos praedicant 5 idque ab druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis non numero dierum sed noctium fīniunt; dies nātālīs et mēnsium et annorum initia sīc observant ut noctem dies subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hoc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suos līberos, nisi cum 10 adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre non patiuntur; fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblico in conspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

## Dowries. Power of Husbands over Wives. Funeral Rites.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōti- 15 bus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctībus superiōrum to temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sīcut in liberōs vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum paterfamiliae inlustriōre locō 20 nātus dēcessit, tē eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem todum quaestiōnem habent, et sī compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs texcruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae 25 vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in īgnem īnferunt, te clientēs,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> tumulõs. — <sup>2</sup> cēlāre. — <sup>8</sup> efferre. — <sup>4</sup> factō. — <sup>5</sup> ortōs. — <sup>6</sup> trāditum. — <sup>7</sup> mōribus. — <sup>8</sup> opp. honestum. — <sup>9</sup> cōnficitur. — <sup>10</sup> priōrum. — <sup>11</sup> mortuus est. — <sup>12</sup> servōrum. — <sup>18</sup> cruciātīs. — <sup>14</sup> cāra. — <sup>15</sup> prōiciunt.

quos ab eis dilectos 1 esse constabat, iustis funebribus confectis una cremabantur.

## All Rumors from Outside to be Reported to the Magistrates.

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre sexīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis 5 quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmore aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quo alio commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerārios atque imperītos falsīs rūmoribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus consilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt o occultant, quae esse sex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitūdinī produnt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī non conceditur.

#### Customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc consuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent qui rēbus divīnīs praesint neque 15 sacrificiīs student. Deorum numero eos solos dūcunt quos cernunt et quorum apertē opibus iuvantur, Solem et Volcānum et Lūnam; reliquos nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vita omnis in vēnātionībus atque in studiīs rei mīlitāris consistit; ā parvīs laborī āc dūritiae student. Quī diūtissimē impuberēs permānsērunt māximam inter suos ferunt laudem; hoc alī statūram, alī vīrīs nervosque confīrmārī putant. Intra annum vēro vīcēsimum fēminae notitiam habuisse in turpissimīs habent rēbus: cūius rei nūlla est occultātio, quod et promiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur, oet pellibus aut parvīs rēnonum tegimentīs ūtuntur, māgnā corporis parte nūdā.

# No Agriculture or Private Ownership of Land.

22. Agrī cultūrae non student, māiorque pars eorum vīctūs in lacte, cāseo, carne consistit. Neque quisquam agrī mo

Cf. <sup>1</sup> amātōs. — <sup>2</sup> melius. — <sup>8</sup> gerere. — <sup>4</sup> reppererit. — <sup>5</sup> ūtilis. — <sup>6</sup> efferunt — <sup>7</sup> putant. — <sup>8</sup> opp. brevissimē. — <sup>9</sup> dūcunt. — <sup>10</sup> lavantur.

dum certum aut fīnīs habet propriōs;¹ sed magistrātūs āc prīncipēs ³ in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre ³ cōgunt. Ēius reī multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā ⁴ cōnsuētūdine 5 captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnīs parāre ⁵ studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ⁶ ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut ³ animī aequitāte 10 plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

Their Isolation. How Chiefs are Appointed; their Power. Freebooting no Disgrace. Rites of Hospitality Observed.

23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs finibus sõlitūdinēs 8 habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsõs agris finitimõs cēdere, neque quemquam 15 prope se audere consistere: simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentīnae incursionis timore sublāto. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs qui ei bello praesint, et vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deli-In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed 20 principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos ius dicunt controversiasque minuunt.10 Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam 11 quae extră finis cuiusque civitătis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae āc dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit 25 ' sē ducem fore, qui sequi velint profiteantur,' -- consurgunt ei qui et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitudine conlaudantur; qui ex his

Cf. <sup>1</sup> prīvātōs. — <sup>2</sup> quotannīs. — <sup>8</sup> dēmigrāre. — <sup>4</sup> perpetuā. — <sup>5</sup> adquīrere. — <sup>6</sup> dīligentius. — <sup>7</sup> aequō animō. — <sup>8</sup> loca dēserta. — <sup>9</sup> cōnaīdere. — <sup>10</sup> compōnunt. — <sup>11</sup> Ignōminiam.

secūtī non sunt in desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur omniumque hīs rerum posteā fides derogātur. Hospitem violāre fās non putant; qui quācumque de causā ad eos venerunt ab iniūriā prohibent sānctosque habent; hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

# Migration of Certain Gallic Tribes to Germany.

24. Āc fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum 10 Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt. Quae gēns 'ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc quidem 15 in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiāque Germānī permanent, eōdem vīctū et cultū corporis ūtuntur; Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsum largītur. Paulātim adsuēfactī superārī multīsque victī proeliīs, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virzo tūte comparant.

# The Hercynian Forest and its Fauna. The Reindeer (?).

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmonstrāta est, lātitūdo viiii diērum iter expedīto patet; non enim aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum novērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiorum et Nemetum et Rauracorum fīnībus, rēctā que flūminis Dānuvī regione pertinet ad fīnīs Dācorum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit isinistrorsus dīversīs ab flūmine regionibus multārumque gentium fīnīs propter māgnitūdi

Cf. <sup>1</sup> perfugārum. — <sup>2</sup> habentur. — <sup>8</sup> dētrahitur. — <sup>4</sup> adhūc. — <sup>6</sup> fimam. — <sup>6</sup> scientia. — <sup>7</sup> dōnat. — <sup>8</sup> opp. impedītō. — <sup>9</sup> longitūdinem. — <sup>10</sup> initium capit. — <sup>11</sup> convertit.

nem attingit. Neque quisquam est hūius Germāniae quī sē [aut audīsse] aut adīsse¹ ad initium² ēius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter Lx processerit, aut quo ex loco oriātur accēperit. Multaque in eā genera ferārum³ nāscī constat quae reliquīs in locīs visa non sint; ex quibus quae māximē 5 differant ab cēterīs et memoriae prodenda⁴ videantur haec sunt.

26. Est bos cervi figūrā, cūius ā mediā fronte inter aurīs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs quae nobis nota sunt cornibus. Ab ēius summo sicut palmae ro rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem forma māgnitūdoque cornuum.

## The Elk and its Habits.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium; sed māgnitūdine paulō antecēdunt 8 mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine 15 nōdīs articulisque habent; neque quiētis 9 causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō adflīctae 10 cāsū concidērunt, 11 ērigere sēsē āc sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus; ad eās sē adplicant 12 atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vestīgiīs cum est animadversum 18 20 ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt 14 aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfīrmās arborēs pondere adflīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

#### The Wild Ox.

28. Tertium est genus eorum qui uri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo înfră 16 elephantos; specie et colore

Cf. <sup>1</sup> adpropinquāsse. — <sup>2</sup> opp. fīnem. — <sup>8</sup> animālium. — <sup>4</sup> trādenda. — <sup>5</sup> formā. — <sup>6</sup> altius. — <sup>7</sup> opp. īmō. — <sup>8</sup> carent. — <sup>9</sup> somnī. — <sup>10</sup> prōstrātae. — <sup>11</sup> opp. prōcumbere. — <sup>12</sup> adiungunt. — <sup>18</sup> compertum. — <sup>14</sup> suffodiunt. — <sup>15</sup> opp. suprā.

et figūrā taurī. Māgna vis eōrum est et māgna vēlōcitās:
neque homini neque ferae quam cōnspēxērunt parcunt. Hōs
studiōsē¹ foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant
adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent; et qui
5 plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus
quae sint testimōniō, māgnam ferunt² laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī
possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum
ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē³ con10 quīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs⁴ epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

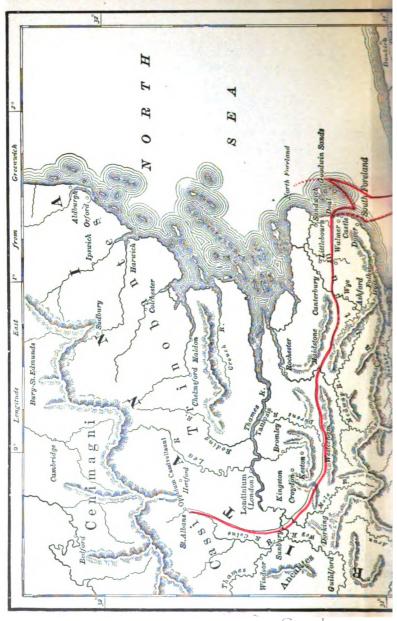
### Cæsar Returns to Gaul and Proceeds against Ambiorix.

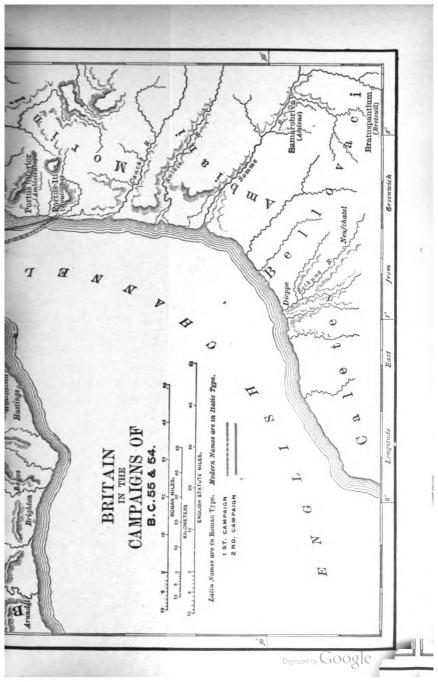
29. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit<sup>5</sup> Suēvos sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam 6 frūmentī veritus (quod, ut suprā dēmonstrāvimus, minimē omnēs Germāni 15 agrī cultūrae student), constituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnīno metum reditūs sui barbaris tolleret, atque ut eorum auxilia tardāret,8 reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum cc rescindit, atque in extremo ponte turrim tabulatorum IIII constituit 20 praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendī causā ponit māgnīsque eum locum mūnītionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque C. Volcātium Tullum adulēscentem praeficit; ipse, cum mātūrescere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus, per Arduennam silvam — quae est tõtius Galliae māxima 25 atque ab ripis Rhēni finibusque Trēverorum ad Nervios pertinet, milibusque amplius D in longitudinem patet - L. Minucium Basilum cum omnī equitātū praemittit, sī quid celeritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis proficere possit; monet ut ignis in castris fieri prohibeat, ne qua eius adventus 30 procul significatio fiat; sese confestim subsequi dicit.

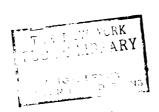
Cf. <sup>1</sup> dīligenter. — <sup>2</sup> pariunt. — <sup>8</sup> cupidē. — <sup>4</sup> māgnificentissimīs. — <sup>5</sup> cōgnōvit. — <sup>6</sup> opp. cōpiam. — <sup>7</sup> opp. māximē. — <sup>8</sup> morārētur.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIDEARY

ANTO LITE 1.







## BOOK IV. 20-36.

## THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN, B.C. 55.

#### Cæsar Determines to Invade Britain.

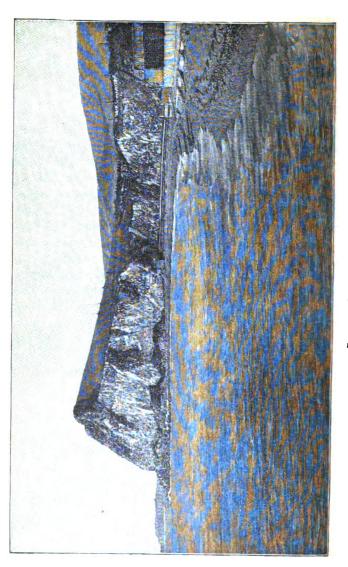
20. Exigua 1 parte aestātis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his locis (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit) maturae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit: quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, sī tempus [anni] ad bellum s gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabātur, sī modo īnsulam adisset, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognovisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque eis ipsis quicquam praeter 10 ōram maritimam atque eas regiones quae sunt contra Galliās notum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institūtis 4 ūterentur, neque qui essent ad māiorem 15 nāvium multitūdinem idonei 5 portūs reperire poterat.

# He Sends Volusenus on a Reconnoissance, then Commius.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explorātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in 20 Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvīs undique ex finitimīs regionibus, et quam superiore aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre. Interim consilio ēius cōgnitō

Cf. <sup>1</sup> parva. — <sup>2</sup> opp. tardae. — <sup>8</sup> data. — <sup>4</sup> möribus. — <sup>5</sup> commodī. — <sup>6</sup> imperat. — <sup>7</sup> opp. longissimus. — <sup>8</sup> trānsitus. — <sup>9</sup> intereā.





et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur¹ obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre.¹ Quibus audītīs liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eīs ūnā 5 Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātīs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem 10 sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs³ regiōnibus quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī āc sē barbarīs committere⁴ nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.⁵

## The Morini Submit. A Fleet is Prepared.

22. Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis consilio excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae consuētūdinis imperītī bellum populo Romāno fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūros pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātionēs Britanniae anteponendās iūdicābat, māgnum eis numerum 25 obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eos in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter lxxx onerāriīs coāctīs (contrāctīsque), quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legionēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestorī, lēgātis

Cf. 1 promittant, sibi suscipiant. — 2 pārēre. — 8 explorātīs. — 4 trādere. — 6 dēfert. — 6 intulissent. — 7 ēvēnisse. — 8 opp. ā fronte. — 9 tam parvārum. — 10 opp. dispersīs.

praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant xvIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum vIII ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēio Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.¹

# The Fleet Crosses the Channel, Finds Difficulty in Landing, and Comes to Anchor.

23. His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navigan-10 dum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriorem portum progredi et navis conscendere2 et se sequi iussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius sesset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās 15 hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locis superioribus in litus tēlum adigi 4 posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idoneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent ad horam nonam in ancoris 20 exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convccātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae rēs postulārent (ut quae celerem atque instābilem 6 motum haberent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab 25 eis administrarentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum,7 datō signō et sublātis ancorīs, circiter milia passuum vii ab eō locō progressus, apertō āc plānō lītore nāvīs constituit.

Cf. 1 imperavit with ut and subjv. — 2 opp. ēgredī. — 3 opp. mātūrius. — 4 conicī. — 6 opp. tardum. — 6 opp. fīrmum. — 7 opp. adversum.

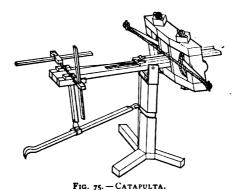


#### The Britons Resist the Landing of the Romans.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt,¹ reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī² nōn 5 poterant; mīlitibus autem, īgnōtīs locīs, impedītīs³ manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum; cum illī aut ex aridō⁴ aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs 10 locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī⁵ atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte āc studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant nītēbantur.

#### Caesar Manœuvres for an Advantage. Valor of a Roman Centurion.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvīs longās, quārum 15 et speciēs 6 erat barbaris inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum



Cf.  $^1$  solent. —  $^2$  consistere. —  $^3$  opp. expeditis. —  $^4$  terrā. —  $^5$  commoti. —  $^6$  adspectus.

expeditior, paulum removēri ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostis propelli āc submovēri iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium 5 figüră 1 et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum etiam pedem ret-Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris, qui x legionis aquilam ferebat obtestatus deos ut ea res legioni feliciter <sup>2</sup> eveniret, "Desilite," 10 inquit, "commīlitonēs," nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prodere; ego certé meum rei publicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." 4 Hoc cum voce māgnā 6 dīxisset, sē ex nāvī proiecit atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortāti inter se ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi 15 desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis [primis] navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus adpropinquaverunt.

# The Romans Effect a Landing, but, Having no Cavalry, Cannot Pursue the Fleeing Britons.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ordinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscum20 que sīgnīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vēro notīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquos singulārīs ex nāvī ēgredientīs conspēxerant, incitātīs equīs impeditos adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucos circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere aperto in ūniversos tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium item speculātoria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quos laborantīs conspēxerat hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul in ārido constitērunt, suīs omnibus consecūtīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt atque eos in fugam dedērunt; neque

Cf. <sup>1</sup> formā. — <sup>2</sup> fortūnātē. — <sup>3</sup> sociī. — <sup>4</sup> fēcerō. — <sup>5</sup> opp. exiguā. — <sup>6</sup> cūnctī. — <sup>7</sup> adgrediēbantur. — <sup>8</sup> oppressōs.

longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere 1 non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

#### Conference with British Envoys, Who Sue for Peace.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt; 5 obsidēs datūros quaeque imperāsset factūros esse pollicitī sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem suprā<sup>2</sup> dēmonstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illî ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eos orātoris modo Caesaris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula 10 coniecerant: tum proelio facto remiserunt; et in petenda pace eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignoscerētur4 petīvērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultro s in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere 15 imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquioribus 6 locis arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūros dixērunt. Intereā suos remigrāre in agros iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et se civitatisque suas Caesari commendare 8 coeperunt.

## The Cavalry Transports Driven Back by a Storm.

28. His rēbus pāce confirmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii dē quibus suprā dēmonstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiore portū lēni vento solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subito 25 coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae

Cf. <sup>1</sup> attingere. — <sup>2</sup> opp. īnfrā. — <sup>8</sup> lēgātī. — <sup>4</sup> condonāret, veniam daret. — <sup>5</sup> suā sponte. — <sup>6</sup> opp. propiöribus. — <sup>7</sup> redīre. — <sup>8</sup> dēdere. — <sup>9</sup> trānsportāverant. — <sup>10</sup> opp. in ancorīs exspectāvērunt or ad ancorās erant dēligātae.

eodem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad înferiorem partem însulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno suo

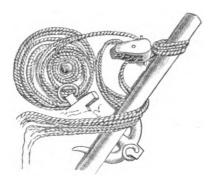


FIG. 76. - ANCHOR AND TACKLE.

cum periculo deicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum 5 provectae continentem petierunt.

#### The Fleet almost Wrecked by Storms and High Tides.

29. Fādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimos aestūs māximos in Oceano efficere consuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūno tempore et longās nāvis [quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat]. 10 quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat; et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflictābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancorīs reliquisque armāmentīs āmissīs — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna (id quod necesse erat accidere) totīus exercitūs perturbātio facta est. Neque

Cf. 1 opp. orientem sölem. — 2 lītus. — 8 plūrimīs.

enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent; et omnia deërant quae ad reficiendās i nāvīs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus constābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem? provisum non erat.

#### The Britons Seize the Opportunity and Plan to Renew Hostilities.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post 5 proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvīs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deësse intellegerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legionēs trānsportāverat, — optimum 10 factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātione factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et 15 suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

#### Cæsar Suspects their Design.

31. At Caesar, etsī nondum eorum consilia cognoverat,<sup>7</sup> tamen et ex ēventū <sup>8</sup> nāvium suārum et ex eo quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frū-20 mentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra conferēbat et quae gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī <sup>9</sup> comportārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summo studio ā mīlitibus administrārētur,<sup>10</sup> xII nāvibus āmissīs, 25 reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> opp. rescindendas. — <sup>2</sup> opp. aestātem. — <sup>3</sup> opp. suppetere. — <sup>4</sup> opp. māgnitūdine. — <sup>5</sup> putāvērunt. — <sup>6</sup> opp. palam. — <sup>7</sup> animadverterat. — <sup>8</sup> cāsū. — <sup>9</sup> opp. īnsulā. — <sup>10</sup> gererētur.

He Takes Measures to Thwart them. They Attack a Foraging Party.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur vii, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, — cum pars hominum in agrīs remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, — ei qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant Caesari nuntiaverunt pulverem maiorem quam consuetudo ferret in ea parte videri quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id quod



Fig. 77. - Soldiers Foraging.

erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsili, cohortīs quae in stationibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in stationem succēdere, reliquās armārī et confestim sessē subsequī iussit. Cum paulo longius ā castrīs processisset, suos ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et, confertā legione, ex omnibus partibus

Cf. 1 conspici. — 2 sine morā. — 8 urgēri. — 4 opp. lazātā.



tēla conicī animadvertit.¹ Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū² in silvās dēlituerant³; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī,⁴ paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

#### Mode of Fighting with War Chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedis pūgnae. Prīmō per omnis partīs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedis 10 dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant; āc tantum ūsū cotidiānō et 15 exercitātione efficiunt utī in dēclīvī āc praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī āc flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

## The Foragers Rescued. Large Numbers of Britons Assemble.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris novitāte pūgnae 20 tempore opportūnissimo Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs constitērunt, nostrī sē ex timore recēpērunt. Quo facto ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suo sē loco continuit et brevī tempore intermisso in castra legionēs redūxit. Dum 25 haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuos complūrīs dies

Cf. <sup>1</sup> conspēxit. — <sup>2</sup> opp. interdiū. — <sup>8</sup> sē occultāverant. — <sup>4</sup> adgressī. — <sup>5</sup> sonitū. — <sup>6</sup> urgeantur. — <sup>7</sup> celerrimē. — <sup>8</sup> opp. idoneum.

tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt,¹ et quanta praedae faciendae atque in 5 perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūs ² equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.³

## They Give Battle and are Defeated.

35. Caesar, etsī idem quod superioribus diebus acciderat 10 fore 4 vidēbat, — ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, 5 celeritāte periculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quos Commius Atrebās (dē quo ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, 6 legionēs in aciē pro castrīs constituit. Commisso proelio diūtius nostrorum militum impetum hostēs ferre non potuērunt āc terga vertērunt. Quos tanto spatio secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt. complūrīs ex eīs occīdērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

#### Cassar Returns to Gaul.

- 36. Eödem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem anter imperaverat duplicavit, eõsque in continentem adduci iussit quod, propinqua die aequinocti, înfirmis navibus hiem navigationem subiciendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem navis solvit quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex eis onerariae duae eosdem portus quos reliquae capere non potuerunt et paulo înfra delatae sunt.
  - Cf. <sup>1</sup> prönūntiāvērunt. <sup>2</sup> peditum. <sup>8</sup> adiērunt. <sup>4</sup> futūrum. <sup>5</sup> terga vertissent, sē fugae mandāvissent. <sup>6</sup> sustulerat. <sup>7</sup> opp suprā.









Fig. 78. - British Coins.

BOOK V. 1-23.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, B.C. 54.

Cæsar, Contemplating a Second Invasion of Britain, Orders a Suitable Pleet Built. Settles Disturbances in Illyricum.

L. Domitio Ap. Claudio consulibus, discedens ab hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere consuērat, lēgātīs imperat quos legionibus praefēcerat utī quam plūrimās possint hieme nāvīs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendas curent. Earum modum formamque 1 demonstrat. 5 Ad celeritātem onerandī subductionisque paulo facit humiliores quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus; atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātionēs aestuum minus māgnos ibi fluctūs fierī cognoverat; ad onera āc multitudinem iumentorum transportandam, paulo latiores 10 quam quibus in reliquis ūtimur maribus. Hās omnīs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās<sup>2</sup> nāvīs ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris perāctīs in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs fīnitimam<sup>8</sup> partem 15 provinciae incursionibus vāstārī audiebat. Eo cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus militēs imperat certumque in locum convenire ubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātos ad eum mittunt quī doceant4 nihil eārum rērum pūblico factum consilio,

Cf. 1 figuram. - 2 ornandas. - 3 opp. ultimam. - 4 ostendant.

sēsēque parātōs esse dēmonstrant omnibus rationibus dē iniūriīs satisfacere. Perceptā 1 orātione eorum Caesar obsidēs imperat eosque ad certam diem addūcī iubet: nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bello cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmonstrat. 5 Eis ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitros inter cīvitātīs dat qui lītem aestiment poenamque constituant.

# Returns to Gaul. Orders the New Fleet to Assemble at the Port Itius. Finds Trouble Brewing among the Treveri.

2. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitis omnibus hibernis, sin-10 gulārī mīlitum studio in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter DC ēius generis, cūius suprā dēmonstrāvimus, nāvis et longās xxvIII invēnit înstrūctās,8 neque multum abesse ab eō quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Conlaudatis militibus atque eis qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit atque 15 omnīs ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum<sup>8</sup> in Britanniam trāiectum esse cognoverat circiter mīlium passuum xxx [trānsmissum] ā continenti. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit; ipse cum legionibus expeditis IIII et equitibus DCCC in finis Trē-20 verõrum proficiscitur; quod hi neque ad concilia veniëbant neque imperio parebant, Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

# Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, Rival Chiefs of the Treveri, Appeal to Cæsar.

3. Haec civitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmonstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitāte duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et Cingetorīx; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legionumque ad-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> audītā, intellēctā. — <sup>2</sup> redit. — <sup>8</sup> aedificātās. — <sup>4</sup> docet. — <sup>5</sup> opportūnissimum. — <sup>6</sup> potest. — <sup>7</sup> attingit. — <sup>8</sup> dēcertābant.

ventū cognitum est, ad eum vēnit; sē suosque omnīs in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos

V. 4.]

confirmavit; quaeque in Treveris gererentur 1 ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere, eisque qui per aetātem in armīs esse non poterant in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti mägnitūdine per medios finis Trēverorum ā flumine Rhēno ad initium Rēmorum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed posteāquam non nūlli principēs ex ea civitate et auctoritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis 10 prīvātīs rēbus ab eo petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī consulere non possent; veritus ne ab omnibus desereretur Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: 'Sese idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venīre noluisse, quo facilius cīvitātem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitātis discessū 15 plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur; \* itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās civitātisque fortūnās ēius fidei permissūrum.

## He Settles the Dispute in Favor of Cingetorix.

4. Caesar etsi intellegebat qua de causa ea dicerentur 20 quaeque eum res ab înstitūto consilio deterreret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs consumere cogerētur omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātīs, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum cc obsidibus venīre iussit. Hīs adductis, in eis filio propinquisque ēius omnibus, quos nominātim ēvocāverat, 25 consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est uti in officio manēret; nihilō tamen sēcius prīncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis hos singillātim? Cingetorigi conciliāvit; quod cum meritő ēius ā sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgnī interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctoritātem inter suos quam plūrimum 30

Cf. <sup>1</sup> agerentur. — <sup>2</sup> arma ferre. — <sup>8</sup> dēficeret. — <sup>4</sup> percipiēbat. — <sup>5</sup> inceptő. — <sup>6</sup> minus. — <sup>7</sup> singulös.

valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspēxisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus [suam grātiam inter suōs minui]; et quī iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.<sup>2</sup>

#### Assembling of Troops at the Port Itius.

5. Hīs rēbus constitūtis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit lx nāvīs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre non potuisse atque eodem unde erant profectae revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās io invenit. Eodem equitātus totīus Galliae convenit, numero mīlia IIII, prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in sē fidem perspēxerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquos obsidum loco sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verēbātur.

### Dumnorix, the Hæduan, Again Appears.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Haeduus, dē quō ante ab nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Haeduī graviter ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur; partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī lo sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī ademptā,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> eximiam. — <sup>2</sup> conflagrāvit. — <sup>3</sup> repulsās. — <sup>4</sup> reperit. — <sup>5</sup> constituerat. — <sup>6</sup> tumultum, sēditionem. — <sup>7</sup> dēcrēverat. — <sup>8</sup> trādī. — <sup>9</sup> molestē. — <sup>10</sup> dētinērī.

V. 7.]

prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs, hortārīque coepit utī in continentī remanērent; metū territāre non sine causā fierī ut Gallia omnī nobilitāte spoliārētur; id esse consilium Caesaris ut, quos in conspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hos omnīs in Britanniam trāductos necāret; fidem 5 reliquīs interponere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī consilio administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

#### Flight, Capture, and Death of Dumnorix.

7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduae dīgnitātis 8 tribuēbat, coercendum 4 atque dēterrendum qui- 10 buscumque rebus posset Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius ēius āmentiam progredi<sup>8</sup> vidēbat, prospiciendum<sup>6</sup> nē quid sibi āc rei pūblicae nocēre7 posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātionem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in 15 his locis flare consuevit,8 9 dabat operam ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret; nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret. Tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere navis iubet. At omnium impeditis animīs Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduorum ā castrīs insci- 20 ente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectione 10 atque omnibus rebus postpositis, māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si 11 vim faciat neque pāreat,19 interfici iubet; nihil hunc sē absente pro sāno factūrum arbi- 25 trātus qui praesentis imperium 18 neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere āc sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans liberum se liberaeque esse

Cf. <sup>1</sup> prīvārētur. — <sup>2</sup> ūsu<sub>s</sub>. — <sup>8</sup> auctōritātis. — <sup>4</sup> reprimendum. — <sup>5</sup> prōcēdere. — <sup>6</sup> prōvidendum. — <sup>7</sup> iniūriās īnferre. — <sup>8</sup> solitus est. — <sup>9</sup> nītēbātur. — <sup>10</sup> discessione. — <sup>11</sup> resistat. — <sup>12</sup> dictō audiēns sit. — <sup>13</sup> auctōritātem, iūssum.

cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

# Cæsar Sets Sail for Britain. The Natives in Alarm Withdraw from the Coast.

8. His rebus gestis,1 Labieno in continente cum 111 5 legionibus et equitum mīlibus duobus relicto, ut portūs tuērētur et rei frūmentāriae providēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum v legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad <sup>2</sup> solis occasum navis 10 solvit; et leni Āfrico provectus mediā circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit; et longius delatus aestu <sup>8</sup>ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspēxit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātionem secūtus rēmis contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet qua optimum esse egressum 15 superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque nāvigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum navium cursum Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus adaeouārunt. nāvibus merīdiāno4 ferē tempore;4 neque in eo loco hostis 20 est visus, sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captivis cognovit,6 cum māgnae manūs6 eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius DCCC uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant 8 ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

## The Army Lands and Advances. The Natives Resist, but are Defeated.

9. Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostis contendit,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> confectis. — <sup>2</sup> occidentem solem. — <sup>8</sup> prīmā lūce. — <sup>4</sup> merīdis. — <sup>5</sup> repperit. — <sup>6</sup> copiae. — <sup>7</sup> permotae. — <sup>8</sup> excesserant. — <sup>9</sup> subsidis.

— eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus milia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiore 5 nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt.



FIG. 79. - TESTUDO.

Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī (ut vidēbantur) causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs<sup>4</sup> arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs<sup>5</sup> erant praeclūsī. 10 Ipsī ex silvīs rārī propūgnābant nostrosque intrā mūnītionēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legionis vii, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītionēs adiecto, locum cēpērunt

Cf. <sup>1</sup> lēniter acclīvī. — <sup>2</sup> profectus. — <sup>8</sup> impedīre. — <sup>4</sup> multīs. — <sup>5</sup> aditus, opp. exitus. — <sup>6</sup> introīre. — <sup>7</sup> exstrūctō.

eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs volneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientīs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod loci nātūram īgnōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus 1 relinquī volēbat.

# The Fleet Suffers from a Storm, is Hastily Repaired and Drawn up on Shore.

- 10. Postridiē ēius diēī māne tripartītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expedītionem mīsit, ut eos qui fugerant persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris progressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prospectu, equitēs ā Q. Ātrio ad Caesarem vēnērunt qui nuntiārent, superiore nocte māximā coortā tempestāte, prope to omnēs nāvīs adflictās atque in litus ēiectās esse; quod neque ancorae funēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātorēsque vim tempestātis patī possent. Itaque ex eo concursu nāvium māgnum esse incommodum acceptum.
- 11. His rēbus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque 15 revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvīs revertitur; eadem fere quae ex nuntiis [litteris] cognoverat coram perspicit, sīc ut āmissis 5 circiter xL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō6 vidērentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi iubet; 20 Labieno scribit 1 ut quam plūrimas possit eis legionibus quae sunt apud eum nāvīs īnstituat.8 Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae āc labōris, tamen commodissimum<sup>9</sup> esse statuit omnis navis subduci 10 et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies x consumit ne nocturnis quidem 25 temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem copiās quās ante praesidio navibus relinquit; ipse eodem unde redierat proficīscitur.11 Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum

Cf. <sup>1</sup> spatium.—<sup>2</sup> posterō diē.—<sup>8</sup> perferre.—<sup>4</sup> dētrīmentum.—<sup>5</sup> perditīs.—<sup>6</sup> labōre.—<sup>7</sup> litterās mittit ad.—<sup>6</sup> comparet.—<sup>9</sup> ūtilissimum.—<sup>10</sup> opp. dēdūcī.—<sup>11</sup> prōcēdit.

locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summa imperi bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter milia passuum



FIG. 80. - SOLDIERS BUILDING CAMP, WITH GUARDS.

LXXX. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti
Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

#### The Inhabitants of Britain and its Resources.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eis incolitur quos natos in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt; maritima pars ab eis qui praedae ac belli înferendi causa ex Belgio transierunt 10 (qui omnes fere eis nominibus civitatum appellantur quibus

Cf. 1 mandātā. — 2 perpetua. — 8 praeposuerant. — 4 gerendī.

ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infinīta multitūdō crēberrimaque¹ aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia,³ pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere [aut 5 nummō aereō] aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua³ est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et 10 gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant;⁴ haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frīgoribus.

#### Shape and Size of the Island.

13. Insula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, 15 quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves adpelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat.6 Hoc latus pertinet circiter milia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sõlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, īnsula dimidio minor (ut existimatur) quam Britannia, sed pari 20 spatio trānsmissūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur 8 Mona; complūrēs praetereā minores subjectae insulae existimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs 10 non nūllī scrīpsērunt dies continuos xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationi-25 bus 11 reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviorēs esse quam in continenti noctis vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdo lateris, ut fert 18 illorum opinio, 18 DCC milium. Tertium est contrā septentriones, cui parti nulla est obiecta 14 terra : sed ēius angulus lateris māximē ad Germā-

Cf.  $^1$  frequentissima.  $^2$  paria.  $^8$  parva.  $^4$  arbitrantur.  $^5$  förmä.  $^6$  vergit.  $^7$  träiectüs.  $^8$  nöminätur.  $^9$  propinquae.  $^{10}$  quīdam.  $^{11}$  quaestiöne.  $^{12}$  est.  $^{13}$  sententia.  $^{14}$  opposita.

V. 15.]

niam spectat. Hōc mīlium passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

#### Customs of the Britons.

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī qui Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum 5 ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō înficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō¹ atque omnī 10 parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnīs, et māximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberīs; sed quī sunt ex his nātī eōrum habentur² liberī quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

#### Battle with the Britons. Who are Driven Back.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere conflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiorēs fuerint atque eos in silvās collīsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī non nūllos ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illi intermisso 20 spatio, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītione castrorum, subito se ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eos facto quī erant in statione pro castrīs conlocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidio cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legionum duārum, cum eae 25 perexiguo intermisso locī spatio inter sē constitissent, novo genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per medios audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumīs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q.

Cf.  $^1$  longō.  $-^2$  existimantur.  $-^3$  contendërunt.  $-^4$  tempore.  $-^5$  repente.  $-^6$  minimō.  $-^7$  modō.  $-^8$  tūtōs.

Laberius Dūrus tribūnus mīlitum interficitur. Illī plūribus submissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

## Their Methods of Fighting.

16. Tötö höc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculīs omnium āc prō castrīs dimicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter 5 gravitātem armōrum, quod neque insequī cēdentīs 1 possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs 2 esse ad hūius generis hostem; equitēs autem māgnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent, et cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs 10 remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. [Equestris autem proelī ratiō et cēdentibus et insequentibus pār atque idem perīculum inferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnfertī 3 sed rārī māgnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur 4 stationēsque 5 dispositās habērent, 15 atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

### They are Again Defeated.

17. 6 Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs
equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē, cum
20 Caesar pābulandī causā III legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus
partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū
factō reppulērunt, neque finem sequendī fēcērunt quoad
25 subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent,
praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī conligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs

Cf. <sup>1</sup> sē recipientīs, terga vertentīs. — <sup>2</sup> idōneōs. — <sup>8</sup> dēnsī. — <sup>4</sup> dīmicārent. — <sup>5</sup> subsidia. — <sup>6</sup> postrīdiē ēius diēī. — <sup>7</sup> vexāre. — <sup>8</sup> merīdiānō tempore. — <sup>9</sup> discēderent.

V. 18.1

dēsiliendī facultātem 1 dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā protinus quae undique 2 convēnerant auxilia discessērunt; neque 3 post id tempus umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.



FIG. 81. - SIGNA MILITARIA.

#### Cæsar Crosses the Thames.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnīs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō om- 5 nīnō locō pedibus, 4 atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit 5 ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās; rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīsque mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs 10 ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim 6 legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent 7 āc sē fugae mandārent.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> potestātem. — <sup>2</sup> ex omnibus partibus. — <sup>8</sup> posteā. — <sup>4</sup> vadō. — <sup>5</sup> vīdit. — <sup>6</sup> continuō. — <sup>7</sup> relinquerent.

# Cassivellaunus Avoids a General Engagement, but Annoys Cæsar by Guerilla Tactics.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmonstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā 1 spē contentionis, dīmissīs amplioribus 2 copiīs, milibus circiter IIII essedāriorum relictīs itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītis āc silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque eīs regionibus quibus nos iter factūros cognoverat pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; 8 et cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī 4 vāstandīque causā sē in agros ēiēcerat, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedārios ex silvīs ēmittēbat; et māgno cum perīto culo nostrorum equitum cum eīs conflīgēbat 5 atque hoc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discēdī Caesar paterētur, 6 et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur quantum in labore atque itinere legionāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

#### The Tripobaptes Yield to Cæsar.

20. Interim 7 Trinobantes, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vēnerat, cūius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque 20 erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat, 8 — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs: petunt 9 ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in cīvitātem mittat quī praesit imperiumque 10 obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs xl 25 frūmentumque exercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter 11 fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> sublātā. — <sup>2</sup> māiōribus. — <sup>8</sup> agēbat. — <sup>4</sup> dēpopulandī. — <sup>6</sup> pūgnāvit. — <sup>6</sup> permitteret. — <sup>7</sup> intereā. — <sup>8</sup> effūgerat. — <sup>9</sup> rogant. — <sup>10</sup> rēgnum. — <sup>11</sup> cum celeritāte.

### Other Tribes also Yield. A British "Oppidum."

21. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniūriā prohibitīs, Cēnimāgnī, Segontiācī, Ancalites, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātionibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dedunt. Ab hīs cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus 5 hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impeditās 1 vāllo atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursionis 2 hostium vitandae causā convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit <sup>8</sup> ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc 10 duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre 4 contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrorum impetum non tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fugā sunt comprehēnsi<sup>5</sup> atque interfecti. 15

#### Cassivellaunus at Last Submits.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus 1111 rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat utī coāctīs omnībus cōpiis castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppūgnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumīs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectione cīvitātum, lēgātōs 25 per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum constituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnos Galliae motūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs

Cf. <sup>1</sup> dēnsās. — <sup>2</sup> inruptionis. — <sup>8</sup> invenit. — <sup>4</sup> adorīrī. — <sup>5</sup> captī. — <sup>6</sup> excursione. — <sup>7</sup> incommodīs. — <sup>8</sup> rebellione. — <sup>9</sup> subitos. — <sup>10</sup> prodūcī.

imperat, et quid in annos singulos vectīgālis populo Romāno Britannia penderet constituit. Interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellauno ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

#### Casar Returns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, nāvis 5 invenit refectās. His dēductis, quod et captivorum māgnum numerum habēbat et non nullae tempestāte dēperierant



FIG. 82. - ROMAN TRANSPORTS.

nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre Instituit. Āc sīc accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō,³ tot nāvigātiōnibus, neque hōc neque superiore annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis 10 quae mīlitēs portāret dēsīderārētur;⁴ at ex eīs quae inānēs

Cf. 1 opp. subductīs. — 2 aliquot. — 8 multitūdine. — 4 dēperīret.

ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, [et] prioris commeātūs expositis militibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numero Lx, perpaucae locum caperent 1; reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātione exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, 2 necessārio angustius mīlitēs conlocāvit, āc summā tranquillitāte 3 consecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit 4 omnīsque incolumīs nāvis perdūxit.

Cf. 1 pervenîrent ad. — 2 aderat. — 8 malaciā. — 4 capit.





FIG. 83. - CAVALRYMAN CHARGING.

FIG. 84. - CAVALRYMAN WITH Vexillum.



FIG. 85. - HELMETS (galeae).

### BOOK VII. 1-15.

### GENERAL UPRISING OF GAUL, B.C. 52.

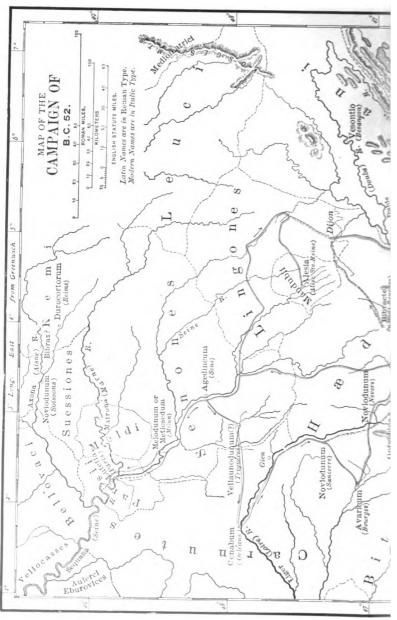
### General Movement among the Gauls for Independence.

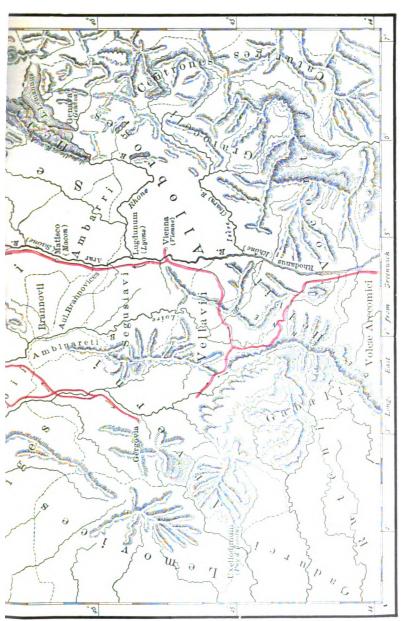
Quieta ¹ Galliā Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendos proficiscitur. Ibi cognoscit de P. Clodī caede; dē senātūsque consulto certior factus ut omnēs iūniorēs Italiae coniūrārent, dēlēctum totā provinciā 5 habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfingunt rūmoribus Galli (quod rēs poscere² vidēbātur) retinērī urbāno motū³ Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsionibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī⁴ occāsione quī iam ante sē populi 10 Romānī imperio subiectos dolērent 6 liberius atque audācius dē bello consilia inīre 6 incipiunt. Indictīs 7 inter sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus āc remotīs 6 locīs queruntur dē Acconis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsos recidere dēmonstrant; 9 miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; 15 omnībus pollicitātionibus āc praemiīs dēposcunt quī bellī

Cf. <sup>1</sup> pācātā. — <sup>2</sup> postulāre. — <sup>8</sup> tumultū. — <sup>4</sup> incitātī. — <sup>5</sup> molestē ferrent. — <sup>6</sup> capere. — <sup>7</sup> opp. interdictīs. — <sup>8</sup> dēsertīs. — <sup>9</sup> ostendunt.

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENG COLLEGE NO





THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENGTH

initium faciant et sui capitis <sup>1</sup> periculo Galliam in libertatem vindicent. In primīs rationem <sup>2</sup> esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eorum clandestīna consilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legionēs audeant absente imperatore ex hibernīs ēgredī, neque imperator sine praesidio ad legionēs pervenīre possit; postrēmo, <sup>3</sup> in aciē praestāre <sup>4</sup> interficī quam non veterem bellī gloriam libertātemque quam ā māioribus accēperint recuperāre.

## The Carnutes Begin the Revolt. Rapid Spread of the News.

- 2. His rēbus agitātīs <sup>6</sup> profitentur Carnutes sē nūllum perīculum commūnis, salūtis causā recūsāre, prīncipēsque <sup>6</sup> 10 ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō āc fidē sanciātur <sup>7</sup> petunt, conlātīs mīlitāribus sīgnīs (quō more eorum gravissima caerimonia continētur), nē facto initio bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum 15 conlaudātīs Carnutibus, dato iūre iūrando ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore ēius reī constitūto, ā concilio discēditur.
- 3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutes Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum sīgnō datō
  concurrunt, cīvīsque Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi 20
  cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem
  Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae iūssū Caesaris praeerat,
  interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad omnīs
  Galliae cīvitātīs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque
  inlustrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque sīgnificant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut
  tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent
  ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum
  audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter clx.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> vītae. — <sup>2</sup> cūram. — <sup>3</sup> dēnique. — <sup>4</sup> melius esse. — <sup>6</sup> dēlīberatīs. — <sup>6</sup> prīmōs. — <sup>7</sup> cōnfīrmētur. — <sup>8</sup> conveniunt. — <sup>9</sup> contingit. — <sup>10</sup> opp. eccidente.

Vercingetorix, Chief of the Arverni, Takes the Lead, and Induces Many
Tribes to Join him. Severity of his Rule.

4. Simili ratione ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae 1 adulēscēns, — cūius pater principātum tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam quod rēgnum adpetēbat<sup>2</sup> ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, — convocātīs suis 5 clientibus facile incendit.8 Cognito eius consilio ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitione, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortunam non existimābant; expellitur ex oppido Gergoviā; non dēstitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum egentium ac perditorum. Hac 10 coacta manu quoscumque adit ex civitate ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant; māgnīsque coāctis copiis adversārios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat électus, expellit ex civitate. Rex ab suis appellatur. Dimittit quoque versus legationes; obtes-15 tātur ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcos, Turonos, Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos, reliquosque omnis qui Oceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium. Qua oblata 8 potestate omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum 20 militum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet; armorum quantum quaeque civitas domi, quodque ante tempus efficiat, constituit; in primis equitatui studet. Summae diligentiae summam imperi sevēritātem addit; māgnitūdine supplici dubitantis cogit 10: nam māiore commisso delicto 11 igni 25 atque omnibus tormentis necat; leviore de causa auribus desectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documento 12 et magnitudine poenae perterreant aliōs

Cf. <sup>1</sup> potestātis. — <sup>2</sup> cupiēbat. — <sup>8</sup> incitāvit. — <sup>4</sup> ēicitur. — <sup>8</sup> inimīcēs. — <sup>6</sup> obsecrātur. — <sup>7</sup> adscīscit. — <sup>8</sup> trāditā. — <sup>9</sup> paret. — <sup>10</sup> perdūcit. — <sup>11</sup> facinore. — <sup>12</sup> exemplō.

VII. 6.]

He Goes among the Bituriges, Who Appeal to the Hædui for Help. Being Refused, They Join him.

5. His suppliciis celeriter coacto exercitu Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutēnos mittit; ipse in Biturigēs proficiscitur. Eius adventū Bituriges ad Haeduos (quorum erant in fidē) lēgātos mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre 1 5 possint. Haeduī dē consilio legātorum, quos Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flümen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Bituriges ab Haeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi morati neque flumen transire ausi, domum revertuntur,3 legatisque 10 nostrīs renūntiant8 sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id consili fuisse cognoverint ut, si flumen transissent, una ex parte ipsi, altera Arverni se circumsisterent.4 Id eane de causa quam legatis pronuntiarunt an perfidia adducti fēcerint, quod nihil nobis constat, non vidētur pro certo esse 15 ponendum. Bituriges eorum discessū statim sē cum Arvernis iungunt.

## Cæsar's Difficulty in Reaching his Army. He Proceeds to Narbo to Counteract the Plans of Lucterius.

6. Hīs rēbus in Ītaliam Caesarī nūntiātīs,<sup>5</sup> cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēī commodiōrem <sup>6</sup> in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus <sup>20</sup> est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte adficiēbātur,<sup>7</sup> quā ratione ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legionēs in provinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās <sup>6</sup> intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē <sup>25</sup> committī vidēbat.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> resistere, w. dat. — <sup>2</sup> sē recipiunt. — <sup>8</sup> referunt. — <sup>4</sup> circumvenīrent. — <sup>5</sup> perlātīs. — <sup>6</sup> meliōrem. — <sup>7</sup> permovēbātur. — <sup>8</sup> pūgnātūrās.



7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrigēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit, et māgnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus inruptionem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus consiliis antevertendum existimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentīs confirmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs provinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolosātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant fīnitima, constituit; partem copiāto rum ex provinciā, supplēmentumque quod ex Italiā addūxerat in Helvios, qui fīnīs Arvernorum contingunt, convenīre iubet.

# Cæsar Crosses the Cevennes Mountains through the Snow. Vercingetorix Goes to Protect the Arverni.

8. His rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucteriō et remotō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia perīculosum putābat, in Helvios proficiscitur. Etsī mons Cevenna, quī Arvernos ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimo tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat; tamen, discussā nive in altitūdinem pedum vi atque ita viīs patefactīs, summo mīlitum labore ad fīnīs Arvernorum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantībus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūro mūnītos exīstimābant, āc nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eo tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus terrorem inferant.

Celeriter haec fāma āc nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgem perfe-25 runtur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant 18 ut suīs fortūnīs consulat, neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur; praesertim cum videat 18 omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quorum ille precibus permotus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernos versus.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> adversus. — <sup>2</sup> incursionem. — <sup>8</sup> anteponendum. — <sup>4</sup> proxima. — <sup>5</sup> attingunt. — <sup>6</sup> gestis. — <sup>7</sup> repulso. — <sup>8</sup> dividit. — <sup>9</sup> apertis. — <sup>10</sup> ūni. — <sup>11</sup> viae. — <sup>12</sup> implorant. — <sup>13</sup> perspiciat.

Cæsar Leaves Brutus in Command and Seeks Reënforcements. Vercingetorix Moves towards Gorgobina, a Town of the Boli.

9. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīnione praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī¹ equitātūsque cogendī ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscentem hīs copiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnīs partīs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur²; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduo ā castrīs absit. Hīs constitūtīs rēbus, suīs inopīnantibus, quam māximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus² recentem equitātum, quem





FIG. 87. - COIN OF BRUTUS AND ALBINUS.

multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per fīnīs Haeduōrum in Lingo-10 nēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant; ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs inīrētur cōnsilī, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, priusque omnīs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē ēius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit, atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar conlocāverat Haeduīsque attribuerat, oppūgnāre īnstituit.

Casar, though Much Perplexed, Determines to Relieve the Boil.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium 20 capiendum adferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō

Cf. <sup>1</sup> auxiliōrum. — <sup>2</sup> vagentur. — <sup>3</sup> adeptus, inveniēns. — <sup>4</sup> caperētur. — <sup>5</sup> audītā. — <sup>6</sup> superātōs. — <sup>7</sup> adiūnxerat.

legionės contineret, ne stipendiariis Haeduorum expūgnātis cūncta Gallia deficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs in eo praesidium positum videret; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, ne ab rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectionibus laborāret. Praestāre visum est tamen omnīs difficultātīs perpeti quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suorum voluntātīs alienāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduos de supportando commeātū, praemittit ad Boios quī de suo adventū doceant, hortenturque ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum māgno animo sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī legionibus atque impedīmentīs totius exercitūs relictīs ad Boios proficiscitur.

### Cæsar Takes Two Towns near the Loire.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum, Vellaunodūnum, vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō expeditiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, oppūgnāre īnstituit, eōque 15 biduō circumvāllāvit; tertiō diē missīs ex oppidō lēgātīs dē dēditiōne, arma cōnferrī, iūmenta prōdūcī, sexcentōs obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōnficeret C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit; ipse ut quam prīmum iter cōnficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum proficīscitur; quī tum prīmum adlātō nūntiō dē 20 oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum irī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant.

Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs, diēi tempore exclūsus <sup>10</sup> in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt, quae25 que ad eam rem ūsuī <sup>11</sup> sint mīlitibus imperat; et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs, paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsīre coepērunt. Quā rē per explō-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> retinēret. — <sup>2</sup> tōta. — <sup>8</sup> optimum esse. — <sup>4</sup> perferre. — <sup>6</sup> animōs. — <sup>6</sup> virtūte. — <sup>7</sup> comportārī. — <sup>8</sup> perficeret. — <sup>9</sup> dēfendendī. — <sup>10</sup> prohibitus. — <sup>11</sup> ex ūsū.

rātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expeditās esse iusserat, portīs incēnsīs, intrōmittit atque oppidō potītur, perpaucīs ex hostium numerō dēsīderātīs quīn cūnctī caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitūdinī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum dīripit atque incendit, praedam mīlitibus dōnat; 5 exercitum Ligerim trādūcit atque in Biturīgum fīnīs pervenit.

# Noviodunum Surrenders, but the Inhabitants, Seeing Vercingetorix Approaching, Prepare for Defense.

12. Vercingetorix ubi de Caesaris adventū cognovit, oppūgnātione desistit atque obviam Caesari proficiscitur. oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppūgnāre înstituerat. Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent 10 ōrātum8 ut sibi ignōsceret suaeque vītae cōnsuleret.4 ut celeritate reliquas res conficeret qua pleraque erat consecutus, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari iubet. iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis qui arma iumentaque 15 conquirerent,6 equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem 'simul atque oppidānī conspexerunt atque in spem auxili venerunt, clamore sublato arma capere, portăs claudere, mūrum complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, cum ex significatione Gallorum novi 20 aliquid ab his inīrī consilī intellēxissent, gladiīs dēstrictīs portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnīs incolumīs 8 recēpērunt.

#### Cæsar Takes Noviodunum and Marches towards Avaricum.

13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet, proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs Germānōs equitēs circiter cccc submittit, quōs 10 ab initiō sēcum habēre īnsti-25 tuerat. Eōrum impetum Gallī sustinēre non potuērunt,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> exūstīs.—<sup>2</sup> impedierant.—<sup>8</sup> obsecrātum.—<sup>4</sup> parceret.—<sup>5</sup> cōn-fēcerat.—<sup>6</sup> quaererent.—<sup>7</sup> ut semel.—<sup>8</sup> tūtōs.—<sup>9</sup> auxiliō mittit.—
<sup>20</sup> prīmō.

atque in fugam coniecti 1 multis āmissīs sē ad agmen recēpērunt; quibus profilgātis 2 rūrsus 8 oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsos eos quorum operā plēbem concitātam existimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus

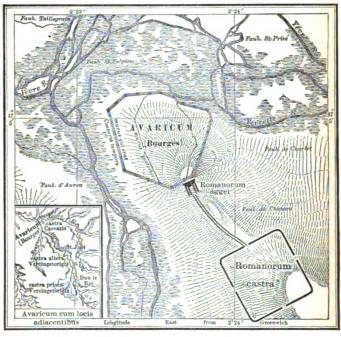


FIG. 88. - SIEGE OF AVARICUM.

5 rēbus confectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat māximum mūnītissimumque in finibus Biturīgum atque agrī fertilissimā regione, profectus est; quod eo oppido recepto 4 cīvitātem Biturīgum sē in potestātem redāctūrum confidēbat.

Cf. 1 conversī. — 2 dēpulsīs. — 8 iterum. — 4 opp. āmissō.

Vercingetoriz Advises the Gauls to Lay Waste their Country, and thus Keep the Romans from Supplies.

14. Vercingetorix tot continuis incommodis 1 Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suos ad concilium convo-Docet 'longë alia ratione esse bellum gerendum atque anteā gestum sit; omnibus modīs huic reī studendum ut pābulātione et commeātu Romāni prohibeantur: id esse 5 facile, quod equitatu ipsi abundent<sup>2</sup> et quod anni tempore subleventur; pābulum secārī non posse; necessārio8 dispersos hostis ex aedificiis petere; hos omnis cotidie ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā, salūtis causā reī familiāris commoda neglegenda; vīcos atque aedificia incendī oportēre 10 hoc spatio [ā Boiā] quoque versus, quo pābulandī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum copiam suppetere, quod quorum in finibus bellum gerātur eorum opibus subleventur<sup>5</sup>: Romānos aut inopiam<sup>6</sup> non lātūros aut māgnō cum periculō longius ā castris processūros; neque 15 interesse ipsosne interficiant an impedimentis exuant,7 quibus āmissis bellum gerī non possit. Praetereā, oppida incendi oportere quae non munitione et loci natura ab omni sint perīculo tūta; ne suīs sint ad detrectandam<sup>8</sup> mīlitiam receptācula, neu Romānīs proposita ad copiam commeātūs 20 praedamque tollendam. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbēre, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsos interficī; quae sit necesse accidere victis.

## They Burn Many Cities, but Spare Avaricum.

15. Omnium consensu hāc sententiā probātā uno die 25 amplius xx urbes Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem fit 10 in reliquis cīvitātibus. In omnibus partibus incendia con-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> cladibus. — <sup>2</sup> plūrimum possint. — <sup>8</sup> necessitāte adductōs. — <sup>4</sup> undique. — <sup>5</sup> iuventur. — <sup>6</sup> opp. cōpiam. — <sup>7</sup> dēspolient. — <sup>8</sup> vītandam. — <sup>9</sup> combūruntur. — <sup>10</sup> accidit.

spiciuntur; quae etsī māgnō cum dolore omnēs ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi solācī proponēbant, quod sē prope explorātā ¹ victoriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūros confidēbant. Dēlīberātur ² dē Avarico in commūnī concilio, incendī placeat an 5 dēfendī. Procumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturīges, nē pulcherrimam prope totius Galliae urbem, quae et praesidio et ornāmento sit civitātī, suīs manibus succendere cogantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūros dīcunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata, ūnum habeat et 10 perangustum ³ aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente prīmo Vercingetorīge, post concēdente, et precibus ipsorum et misericordiā volgī. Dēfēnsorēs oppido idonei dēliguntur.

### THE SIEGE OF AVARICUM, B.C. 52.

16. Vercingetorīx minōribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur, et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvīsque mūnītum, 15 ab Avaricō longē mīlia passuum xvī. Ibi per certōs explōrātorēs in singula diēi tempora quae ad Avaricum gererentur cōgnōscēbat, et quid fierī vellet imperābat. Omnīs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat, dispersosque, cum longius necessāriō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō adficiēbat; etsī, quantum ratione prōvidērī poterat, ab nostrīs occurrēbātur, ti incertīs temporibus dīversīsque titineribus īrētur.

## Difficulties of the Siege. The Romans are Resolute.

17. Castris ād eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā dīximus, 25 angustum habēbat, aggerem adparāre, vīneās agere, turrīs duās constituere coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Boios atque Haeduos adhortārī non dēstitit: quorum alterī, quod nūllo studio agēbant,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> confirmată. — <sup>2</sup> consultătur. — <sup>8</sup> angustissimum. — <sup>4</sup> speculăbătur. — <sup>5</sup> obsistēbātur. — <sup>6</sup> variīs. — <sup>7</sup> iacere. — <sup>8</sup> excitāre.

VII. 18.]

non multum adiuvābant; alterī non māgnīs facultātibus,1 quod civitas erat exigua et înfirma, celeriter quod habuerunt consumpserunt. Summa difficultate rei frumentariae adfectō exercitū, tenuitāte 8 Bōiōrum, indīligentiā Haeduōrum, incendiis aedificiorum, - ūsque eo ut complūris dies 5 frūmentō mīlitēs caruerint,4 et pecore ē longinquiōribus 5 vīcīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, - nūlla tamen vox est ab eis audita populi Romani maiestate 6 et superioribus victoriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulās legionēs appellāret,7 et, sī acerbius inopiam ferrent, 10 sē dīmissūrum oppūgnātionem diceret, ūniversī ab eo nē id faceret petēbant: 'Sic sē complūrīs annos illo imperante meruisse ut nüllam ignöminiam acciperent, numquam infecta9 rē discēderent; hoc sē ignominiae laturos loco, si inceptam oppūgnātionem reliquissent 10: praestare omnis perferre acer- 15 bitātis 11 quam non cīvibus Romānis qui Cēnabi perfidiā Gallorum interissent 18 parentarent.' Haec eadem centurionibus tribūnīsque mīlitum mandābant, 18 ut per eos ad Caesarem deferrentur.

### Cæsar Marches towards Vercingetorix.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs adpropinquāssent, ex captīvīs 20 Caesar cōgnōvit 14 Vercingetorīgem cōnsūmptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitātū expedītīsque quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōnsuēssent, īnsidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs mediā nocte 25 silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illī, celeriter per explōrātōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō, carrōs impedīmentaque sua in artiōrēs 15 silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās

Cf. <sup>1</sup> opibus. — <sup>2</sup> parva. — <sup>3</sup> exiguitāte. — <sup>4</sup> eguerint. — <sup>5</sup> opp. propiōribus. — <sup>6</sup> dīgnitāte. — <sup>7</sup> cohortārētur. — <sup>8</sup> relictūrum. — <sup>9</sup> opp. cōnfectā. — <sup>10</sup> dīmīsissent. — <sup>11</sup> dūritiās. — <sup>12</sup> periissent. — <sup>18</sup> trādēbant. — <sup>14</sup> comperit. — <sup>15</sup> dēnsiōrēs.

omnīs in locō ēditō¹ atque apertō înstrūxērunt. Qua rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās conferrī, arma expedīrī iussit.

### He Finds him too Strongly Intrenched to Warrant an Attack.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab īnfimō acclīvis. Hunc ex 5 omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedīta cingēbat, non lātior pedibus L. Hoc sē colle interruptīs² ponti-

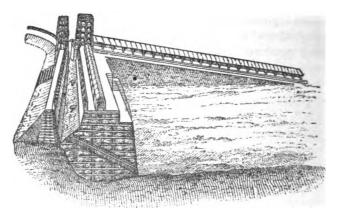


FIG. 89. - VIEW OF SIEGE WORKS.

bus Gallī fidūciā locī continēbant, generātimque distribūti [in cīvitātīs] omnia vada [āc saltūs] ēius palūdis obtinēbant, sīc animō parātī ut, sī eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantīs premerent ex locō superiore; ut, quī propinquitātem locī vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte ad dimicandum existimāret; quī iniquitātem condicionis perspiceret, inānī simulātione sēsē ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indīgnantīs mīlitēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et sīgnum proeli

Cf. 1 excelső. — 2 rescissís. — 8 impeditős. — 4 opp. aequitātem.

exposcentīs, dedocet quanto detrīmento detrī

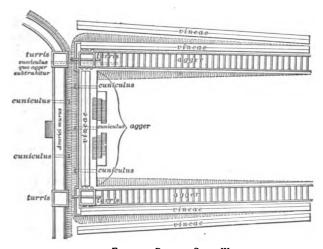


FIG. 90. - PLAN OF SIEGE WORKS.

## Suspicions against Vercingetorix, Who Makes a Successful Defense and Appeal to his Countrymen.

20. Vercingetorix cum ad suos redisset, proditionis insimulātus, — quod castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum omni equitātu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantās rocopiās reliquisset, quod eius discessu Romani tanta opportunitāte et celeritāte vēnissent; non haec omnia fortuito aut

Cf. <sup>1</sup> petentīs. — <sup>2</sup> damnō. — <sup>8</sup> glōriā. — <sup>4</sup> exīstimet. — <sup>5</sup> comparāre. — <sup>6</sup> accūsātus. — <sup>7</sup> imperātōre. — <sup>8</sup> occāsiōne. — <sup>9</sup> forte, cāsū.

sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessū quam ipsorum habere beneficio, — tālī modo accūsātus ad haec respondit: 'Ouod castra movisset, factum inopiā pābulī, etiam ipsīs hortantibus<sup>2</sup>; quod propius 5 Romānos accessisset, persuāsum locī opportūnitāte, qui sē ipse sine mūnītione defenderet; equitum vēro operam 3 neque in loco palūstrī desiderārī debuisse, et illīc fuisse ūtilem quō sint profectī. Summam imperī sē consulto nullī discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitūdinis studio ad dīmican-10 dum impelleretur; cui rei propter animi mollitiem 4 studere omnīs vidēret, quod diūtius laborem ferre non possent. Romani si casu<sup>8</sup> intervenerint, fortunae; si alicuius indicio vocātī, huic habendam grātiam, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex loco superiore cognoscere et virtutem despicere 6 potue-15 rint, qui dimicare non ausi turpiter se in castra receperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per proditionem nullum desiderare. quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorata: quin etiam ipsis remittere, si sibi magis honorem tribuere quam ab se salutem accipere vide-20 antur.' "Haec ut intellegatis," inquit, "a me sincere pronūntiārī, audīte Romānos mīlitēs." Producit servos, quos in pābulātione paucīs ante diebus exceperat,8 et fame vinculīsque excruciāverat. Hī, iam ante ēdoctī quae interrogātī pronuntiarent, milites se esse legionarios dicunt; fame et 25 inopiā adductōs clam ex castrīs exisse, sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre 10 possent; simili omnem exercitum inopia premi, nec iam viris sufficere 11 cuiusquam nec ferre operis laborem posse: itaque statuisse imperatorem, si nihil in oppügnätiöne oppidi pröfecissent, triduö exercitum dédücere. 30 "Haec," inquit, "ā mē," [Vercingetorīx] "beneficia habētis, quem proditionis insimulatis; cuius opera sine vestro san-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> grātiā. — <sup>2</sup> monentibus. — <sup>8</sup> officium. — <sup>4</sup> înfīrmitātem. — <sup>5</sup> fortuitō. — <sup>6</sup> contemnere. — <sup>7</sup> cupere. — <sup>8</sup> dēprehenderat. — <sup>9</sup> opp. palam. — <sup>10</sup> invenīre. — <sup>11</sup> satis esse.

guine tantum exercitum victorem famē consumptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex hāc fugā recipientem nē qua cīvitās suīs finibus recipiat, ā mē provisum 1 est."

21. Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs concrepat, — quod facere in eō cōnsuērunt cūius ōrātiōnem 5 adprobant: 'Summum esse Vercingetorīgem ducem, nec dē ēius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratione' bellum administrārī posse.' Statuunt ut x mīlia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlīs Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam' cēnsent; quod paene 10 in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

### The Gauls Make a Most Skilful Defense against the Roman Works.

22. Singulāri 5 mīlitum nostrorum virtūtī consilia cūiusque modī Gallorum occurrēbant,6 ut est summae genus sollertiae, atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quoque trā- 15 duntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falcis avertebant, quas, cum destinaverant,7 tormentis introrsus reducebant; et aggerem cuniculis subtrahēbant,8 eō scientius quod apud eos magnae sunt ferrariae, atque omne genus cuniculorum notum atque üsitatum est. Totum autem murum ex omni 20 parte turribus contabulaverant atque has coriis intexerant. Tum crēbris diurnis nocturnisque ēruptionibus aut aggeri ignem înferebant aut milites occupatos in opere adoriebantur 10; et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotidianus agger expresserat,11 commissis suarum turrium 25 mālis adaequābant; et apertos cuniculos praeūstā et praeacūtā māteriā et pice fervefactā et māximī ponderis saxīs morābantur moenibusque 19 adpropinquāre prohibēbant.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> cautum. — <sup>2</sup> arte. — <sup>8</sup> gerī. — <sup>4</sup> mandandam. — <sup>5</sup> eximiae. — <sup>6</sup> obsistēbant. — <sup>7</sup> adfixerant. — <sup>8</sup> subruēbant. — <sup>9</sup> iniciēbant. — <sup>10</sup> adgrediēbantur. — <sup>11</sup> ērexerat. — <sup>12</sup> mūrīs.

### Description of a Gallic Wall.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē formā sunt. Trabēs dīrēctae, perpetuae¹ in longitūdinem paribus intervāllis. distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur introrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur²; ea autem 5 quae dīximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs effarciuntur.³ Hīs conlocātīs et coagmentātīs ⁴ alius insuper ordō

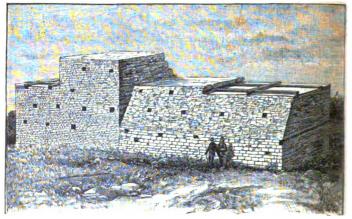


FIG. 91. - GALLIC WALL,

additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed, paribus intermissīs spatiis, singulae singulīs saxīs interiectīs artē contineantur. Sīc deinceps omne opus contexitur dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque opus dēforme nōn est, alternīs trabibus āc saxīs, quae rēctīs līneīs suōs ōrdinès servant, tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet opportūnitātem; quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete 15 māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedum quadrā-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> opp. intermissae. — <sup>2</sup> integuntur. — <sup>8</sup> complentur. — <sup>4</sup> confixis.

gēnum plērumque introrsus revincta neque perrumpi neque distrahi potest.

The Gauls Set Fire to the Roman Works and Make a Sortie.

24. His tot rēbus impedītā oppūgnātione mīlitēs, cum tōtō tempore frigore et adsiduis 8 imbribus tardarentur, tamen continenti labore omnia haec superaverunt, et diebus 5 xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs Lxxx exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus consuetudine excubaret militesque hortārētur nē quod omnīno tempus ab opere intermitterētur, - paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre ag- 10 gerem, quem cuniculo hostes succenderant 4; eodemque tempore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fiēbat. Alii facīs atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant; picem reliquāsque f rēs quibus ignis excitāri potest fundēbant; 15 ut, quo primum occurreretur aut cui rei ferretur auxilium, vix ratio iniri posset. Tamen, quod instituto 8 Caesaris duae semper legiones pro castris excubabant, pluresque partitis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut alii ēruptionibus resisterent, alii turris reducerent 9 aggerem- 20 que interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitūdō ad restinguendum concurreret.

#### Heroism of the Gauls.

25. Cum in omnibus locis, consumpta iam reliqua parte noctis, pugnarētur semperque hostibus spēs victoriae redintegrarētur, 10 — eo magis quod deustos pluteos turrium 25 vidēbant, nec facile adīre apertos ad auxiliandum 11 animadvertēbant, — semperque ipsī recentēs 12 dēfessis succēderent,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> ferē. — <sup>2</sup> perfringī. — <sup>3</sup> perpetuīs. — <sup>4</sup> incenderant. — <sup>6</sup> opp. comminus. — <sup>6</sup> cēterās. — <sup>7</sup> opp. restinguī. — <sup>8</sup> cōnsiliō, iūssū. — <sup>9</sup> removērent. — <sup>10</sup> renovārētur. — <sup>11</sup> auxilium ferendum. — <sup>12</sup> integrī.

omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestīgiō temporis positam arbitrārentur; accidit inspectantibus nōbīs quod dīgnum memoriā vīsum praetereundum nōn exīstimāvimus. Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī āc picis trāditās glēbās in īgnem ē regione turris proiciēbat; scorpione ab



F1G. 92. - SCORPIO.

latere dextro trāiectus a exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trānsgressus eodem illo mūnere fungēbātur; eādem ratione ictū scorpionis exanimāto altero successit tertius et tertio quartus; nec prius ille est ā propūgnātoribus vacuus relictus locus quam, restincto aggere atque omnī parte submotīs hostibus, finis est pūgnandi factus.

# The Gauls Prepare to Abandon the Town, but are Dissuaded by the Women.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod <sup>5</sup> rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortante et iubente Vercingetorīge. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn māgnā iactūrā <sup>6</sup> suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; proptereā quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorīgis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad insequen-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> omittendum. — <sup>2</sup> ex adversõ. — <sup>8</sup> trānafossus. — <sup>4</sup> officiō. — <sup>5</sup> nihil pröfēcerant. — <sup>6</sup> dētrīmentō.

dum tardābat.¹ Iamque hōc facere noctū adparābant, cum mātrēs familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrērunt flentēsque, prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum, omnibus precibus petiērunt³ nē sē et commūnīs līberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et vīrium īnfīrmitās impedīret. Ubi eōs in sententiā³ perstāre⁴ vīdērunt, quod plērumque in summō perīculō timor⁵ misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et sīgnificāre dē fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

### Storming of the Walls.

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā 6 turrī directīsque operibus quae facere īnstituerat, māgnō coörtō imbrī, nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum 7 cōnsilium tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versārī iussit, et quid fierī vellet 15 ostendit. Legiōnibusque [intrā vīneās] in occultō expedītīs, cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantīs labōribus frūctum victōriae perciperent, eīs quī prīmī mūrum adscendissent praemia prōposuit mīlitibusque sīgnum dedit. Illī subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrumque celeriter complēvērunt. 20

The Town is Taken, and Most of the Inhabitants are Butchered.

28. Hostēs rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribusque dēiectī, in forō āc locīs patentiōribus ocuneātim cōnstitērunt, hōc apimō out, sī quā ex parte obviam [contrā] venīrētur, aciē instrūctā dēpūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vīdērunt, soveritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectīs armīs ultimās oppidī partīs continentī impetū petīvērunt; parsque

Cf. <sup>1</sup> morābātur. — <sup>2</sup> obsecravērunt. — <sup>8</sup> cōnsiliō. — <sup>4</sup> permanere. — <sup>6</sup> opp. fortitūdō. — <sup>6</sup> opp. reductā. — <sup>7</sup> opp. omittendum. — <sup>8</sup> praemium. — <sup>9</sup> apertiōribus. — <sup>10</sup> cōnsiliō. — <sup>11</sup> dēscendere. — <sup>12</sup> opp. proximās.

ibi, cum angustō¹ exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā mīlitibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est interfecta; nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret. Sīc et Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis incitātī nōn aetāte cōnfectīs, nōn 5 mulieribus,² nōn īnfantībus pepercērunt.⁵ Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlium xL, vix DCCC, quī prīmō clāmōre audītō sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorīgem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum 10 concursū et misericordiā volgī sēditīō orerētur, [ut,] procul in viā dispositīs familiāribus ⁴ suīs prīncipibusque civitātum, disparandōs ⁵ dēdūcendōsque ad suōs cūrāvit, quae cuique cīvitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō ⁵ obvēnerat.

### Vercingetorix Appeals to the Gauls to Continue the War.

29. Postero die concilio convocato consolatus cohorta-15 tusque est: 'Në së admodum animo dëmitterent, nëve perturbarentur incommodo; non virtute neque in acie vicisse Romanos, sed artificio quodam et scientia oppugnationis, cūius rei fuerint ipsi imperiti; errāre, si qui in bello omnis secundos 8 rērum proventūs 9 exspectent; sibi numquam 20 placuisse Avaricum defendi, cuius rei testis ipsos haberet, sed factum imprūdentiā Biturīgum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquorum uti hoc incommodum acciperetur; id tamen se celeriter māiōribus commodīs sānātūrum. Nam, quae ab reliquis Gallis civitātēs dissentīrent;10 hās suā dīligentiā 25 adiuncturum atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum. cūius consensui ne orbis quidem terrarum possit obsistere; idque se prope iam effectum habere. Intereā aequum esse ab eis commūnis salūtis causā impetrāri 11 ut castra mūnīre instituerent, quō facilius repentinos 19 hostium impe-30 tūs sustinēre possent.'

Cf. <sup>1</sup> opp. lātō. — <sup>2</sup> fēminīs. — <sup>8</sup> opp. occīdērunt. — <sup>4</sup> amīcīs. — <sup>5</sup> distribuendōs. — <sup>6</sup> opp. fīne. — <sup>7</sup> contiōne. — <sup>8</sup> opp. adversōs. — <sup>9</sup> ēventūs. — <sup>10</sup> discēderent. — <sup>11</sup> obtinērī. — <sup>12</sup> imprōvīsōs.

### They are Inspired by his Appeal to Renewed Efforts.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et māximē quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat¹ tantō acceptō incommodō, neque sē in occultum² abdiderat et cōnspectum multitūdinis fūgerat³; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentīre existimābātur, quod rē integrā prīmō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque, ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae⁴ auctōritātem minuunt, sīc⁵ hūius ex contrāriō dīgnitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant ēius adfīrmātiōne dē reliquīs adiungendīs cīvitātibus; prīmumque eō tempore Gallī castra mūnīre io instituērunt, et sīc erant animō cōnfīrmātī, hominēs īnsuētī labōris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patienda⁶ exīstimārent.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> dēfuerat. — <sup>2</sup> opp. apertum. — <sup>8</sup> vītāverat. — <sup>4</sup> opp. secundae. — <sup>5</sup> ita. — <sup>6</sup> perferenda.

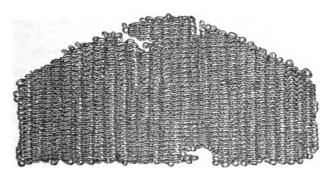


Fig. 93. - Chain Mail (lorica hamata).

### BOOK VII. 68-90.

THE SIEGE OF ALESIA, B.C. 52.

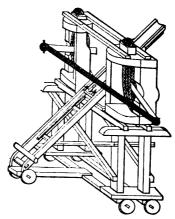


FIG. 94. - BALLISTA.

### Vercingetorix Retires to Alesia, which Casar Determines to Invest.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque¹ Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar 5 impedīmentis in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostīs quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter III mīlibus ex novissimō² agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit.³ Perspectō⁴ urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū (quā māximē parte 10 exercitūs cōnfīdēbant⁵) erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre⁵ īnstituit.

Cf. <sup>1</sup> continuō. — <sup>2</sup> opp. prīmō. — <sup>8</sup> posuit. — <sup>4</sup> explōrātō. — <sup>5</sup> opp. diffīdēbant. — <sup>6</sup> obsidēre.

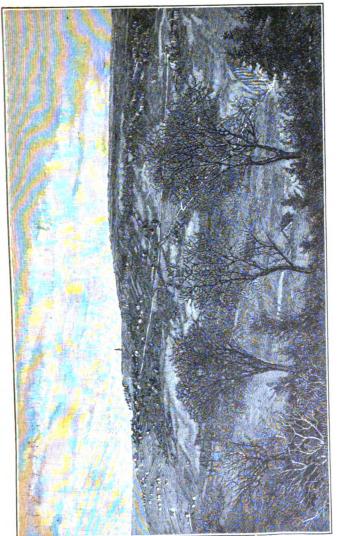


FIG. 95. — ALISE-SAINTE-REINE (Alesia).

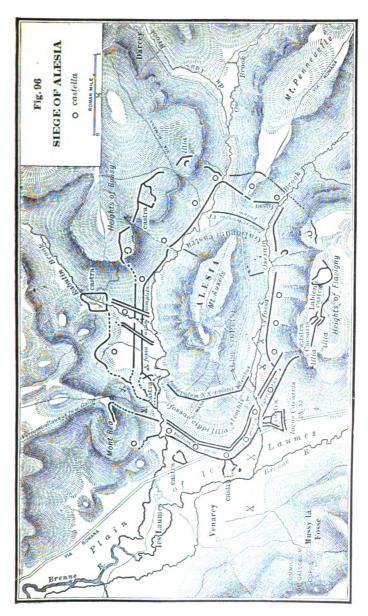
### Description of Alesia and its Defenses.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summo ¹admodum ēdito loco, ut nisi obsidione expūgnārī non posse vidērētur. Cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum III in longitū-5 dinem patēbat²; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiecto spatio, parī altitūdinis fastīgio oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūro, quae pars collis ad orientem solem spectābat, hunc omnem locum copiae Gallorum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam³ in altitūdinem vi pedum praedūxerant. Ēius mūnītionis quae ab Romānīs instituēbātur circuitus xi mīlia passuum tenēbat.⁴ Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita viii castellaque xxiii facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū³ stationēs ponēbantur, nē qua subito ēruptio³ fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitoribus ¹ āc fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

# A Cavalry Battle in the Plain. The Gauls Defeated with Great Slaughter.

70. Opere înstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs constituit, nē qua subito inruptio ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidio legionum addito nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī se ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustioribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītionēs sequuntur. Fit māgna caedēs; non nūllī relictīs equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere conantur. Paulum legionēs Caesar quās pro vāllo constituerat promovērī iubet. Non

Cf. <sup>1</sup> altissimō. — <sup>2</sup> pertinēbat. — <sup>8</sup> mūrum. — <sup>4</sup> patēbat. — <sup>6</sup> opp. noctū. — <sup>6</sup> excursiō, — <sup>7</sup> vigiliīs. — <sup>8</sup> incursiō. — <sup>9</sup> datī. — <sup>10</sup> opp. lātiōribus.



minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant Galli perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim¹ exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī,² nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

## Vercingetorix Sends Away his Cavalry and Calls for Help from Without.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiones ab Romanis perficiantur, consilium capit 8 omnem ab se equitatum noctu dimittere. Discedentibus mandat ut suam quisque eorum cīvitātem adeat omnīsque guī per aetātem arma ferre possint 10 ad bellum cogant,4 Sua in illos merita proponit, obtestāturque ut suae salūtis rationem habeant, neu sē optimē dē communi libertate meritum in cruciatum hostibus dedant. Ouod sī indīligentiorēs 6 fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmonstrat. Ratione initā frū-15 mentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre, posse parcendō. His datīs mandātīs, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentio equitātum dimittit; frumentum omne ad se referri iubet; capitis poenam eis qui non paruerint constituit; pecus, cuius magna 20 erat copia a Mandubiis compulsa, viritim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; copiās omnīs quās pro oppido conlocaverat8 in oppidum recipit. His rationibus auxilia Galliae exspectare et bellum administrare parat.

## Description of Cæsar's Works of Circumvallation.

72. Quibus rēbus cognitis ex perfugis et captivis Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit: fossam pedum viginti directis 10 lateribus duxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem

Cf. <sup>1</sup> prōtinus. — <sup>2</sup> opp. aperīrī. — <sup>8</sup> init. — <sup>4</sup> conquīrant. — <sup>5</sup> officia. — <sup>6</sup> neglegentiōrēs. — <sup>7</sup> sustinēre. — <sup>8</sup> constituerat. — <sup>9</sup> modīs. — <sup>10</sup> dīrēctē ad perpendiculum.

patēret quantum summa labra distārent. Reliquās omnīs mūnītionēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit: [id] hōc cōnsiliō (quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur), nē dē imprōvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītionēs multitūdō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs ¹operī dēstinātōs cōnicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiorem campestribus āc dēmissīs² locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā³ complēvit. Post eās aggerem āc vāllum xii pedum exstrūxit: huic to lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēnsum hostium tardārent⁴; et turrīs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs Lxxx inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eodem tempore et materiari et frumentari et tan- 15 tās mūnītiones fieri necesse, deminūtis nostris copiis, quae longius 5 ā castrīs progrediēbantur; āc non numquam opera nostra Galli temptāre 6 atque ēruptionem ex oppido plūribus portis summā vi facere conābantur. Quā rē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minore numero mīlitum 20 mūnītiones defendi possent. Itaque truncis arborum aut admodum firmis rāmis abscisis, atque horum dēlibrātis ac praeacūtis cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quinos pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab īnfimō revinctī,8 nē revelli possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant.9 Quīnī erant ōrdi- 25 nēs coniuncti inter sē atque implicāti; quo qui intraverant,10 sē ipsī acūtissimis vāllis induēbant.11 Hos cippos appellābant. Ante hos obliquis ordinibus in quincuncem dispositīs scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiore ad infimum 18 fastigio. Huc teretes stipites femi- 30 nis crassitudine ab summo praeacuti et praeusti demitteban-

Cf. <sup>1</sup> in opere occupătōs. — <sup>2</sup> humilibus. — <sup>8</sup> dēductā. — <sup>4</sup> impedirent. — <sup>5</sup> opp. propius. — <sup>6</sup> adorīrī. — <sup>7</sup> exūtīs. — <sup>8</sup> īnfīxī. — <sup>9</sup> exstābant. — <sup>10</sup> opp. exierant. — <sup>11</sup> trānsfodiēbantur. — <sup>12</sup> opp. summum.

tur, ita ut non amplius digitīs IIII ex terrā i ēminērent; simul confirmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī ab īnfimo solo pedēs terrā exculcābantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās vīminibus āc virgultīs integēbātur. 5 Hūius generis octonī ordinēs ductī ternos inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine floris lilium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs īnfīxīs totae in terram īnfodiēbantur, mediocribusque intermissīs spatīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur, quos stimulos nominābant.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs, regionēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās <sup>4</sup> pro locī nātūrā, xīv mīlia passuum complexus parīs <sup>5</sup> ēiusdem generis mūnītionēs, diversās ab hīs, contrā exteriorem hostem perfēcit, ut nē māgnā quidem multitūdine [sī ita accidat <sup>6</sup> ēius discessū], mūnītionum praesidia circum-15 fundī <sup>7</sup> possent; nē autem cum perīculo ex castrīs ēgredī cogātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnīs convectum <sup>8</sup> iubet.

## Levy of Troops from All Gaul for the Relief of Alesia.

75. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnīs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum; nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habere possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretis, Aulercīs, Brannovīcībus, [Blannosvīs,] mīlia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūnctīs Eleutetis, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellāviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonībus, Biturīgībus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutībus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovīcībus; octōna Pictonībus et Turonīs

Cf. <sup>1</sup> solō. — <sup>2</sup> opp. patefaciendās. — <sup>8</sup> dēmittēbantur. — <sup>4</sup> opp. inīquissimās. — <sup>5</sup> similīs. — <sup>6</sup> fiat. — <sup>7</sup> circumvenīrī. — <sup>8</sup> comportātum. — <sup>9</sup> continēre, regere.

a, vallum; b, cervi: c, fossa; d, fossa cum aqua; e, cippi; J, lilia; g. stimuli, h, pinnae; i, turres; k, lorica. FIG. 97. - VIEW OF CASAR'S LINE OF WORKS BRFORR ALESIA.

et Parīsiis et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrigibus; quīna mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomānīs; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Veliocassis; [Lexoviīs, et] Aulercīs Eburovīcibus III; Rauracīs et 5 Bōiīs bīna; x ūniversīs cīvitātibus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolites, Redones, Ambibariī, Caletes, Osismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulerunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent, neque cūiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs¹; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō ēius hospitiō duo mīlia mīsērunt.

## The Gauls under Commius Approach Alesia with High Hopes.

76. Hūius operā Commī, ut anteā dēmonstrāvimus, fidēlī atque ūtilī superioribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; 15 pro quibus meritis civitatem eius immunem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinos attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae consensio 8 fuit libertātis vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis 4 recuperandae ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoria moveretur, omnesque et 20 animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.8 Coāctīs equitum mīlibus viii et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inibātur, praefectī constituēbantur; Commio Atrebāti, Viridomāro et Eporēdorīgī Haeduis, Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrino Vercinge-25 torigis, summa imperi trāditur. His dēlēcti ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur quorum consilio bellum administraretur. nēs alacrēs et fiduciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficiscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam qui adspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī 30 proelio, cum ex oppido eruptione pugnaretur, foris tantae copiae equitatus peditatusque cernerentur.

Cf. 4 concessürös. — 2 opp. stīpendiāriam. — 8 opp. dissēnsiö. — 4 glöriae. — 5 īnsisterent. — 6 ducēs. — 7 conspicerentur.



FIG. 98. - STATUE OF VERCINGETORIX.

# A Council is Held in Alesia. Speech of Critognatus and his Desperate Proposal.

77. At ei qui Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, insciī¹ quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Āc variīs² dictīs senten-5 tiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent,³ ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda⁴ ōrātiō Critōgnātī vidētur propter ēius singulārem āc nefāriam crūdēlitātem.⁵

Hic summo in Arvernis ortus 6 loco et magnae habitus auctōritātis: "Nihil," inquit, "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum 10 qui turpissimam servitūtem deditionis nomine appellant, neque hos habendos civium loco neque ad concilium adhibendos censeo. Cum his mihi res est qui eruptionem probant; quorum in consilio omnium vestrum consensu pristinae residere virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, 15 non virtus, paulisper inopiam8 ferre9 non posse. Qui se ultro morti offerant facilius reperiuntur quam qui dolorem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probarem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vitae nostrae iactūram fieri vidērem; sed in consilio capi-20 endő omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus.10 Ouid, hominum mīlibus LXXX ūno loco interfectis, propinquis consanguineisque nostris animi " fore existimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cogentur? Nolite hos vestro auxilio exspoliare qui vestrae 25 salūtis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt; nec stultitiā āc temeritäte 12 vesträ, aut animi imbecillitäte, omnem Galliam prösternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem non venerunt, de eorum fide constantiaque 18 dubitatis?

Cf. <sup>1</sup> īgnōrantēs. — <sup>2</sup> dīversīs. — <sup>3</sup> superessent. — <sup>4</sup> praetermittenda. — <sup>5</sup> opp. clēmentiam. — <sup>6</sup> nātus. — <sup>7</sup> manēre. — <sup>8</sup> opp. copiam. — <sup>9</sup> tolerāre. — <sup>10</sup> convocāvimus. — <sup>11</sup> fortitūdinis. — <sup>13</sup> opp. prūdentiā. — <sup>15</sup> opp. imbēcillitāte.

5

Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulterioribus mūnītionibus animīne 1 causā cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illorum nūntiīs confirmārī non potestis omnī aditū praesepto, hīs ūtiminī testibus adpropinquāre eorum adventum; cūius reī timore exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur.

"Ouid ergō mei consili est? Facere quod nostri maiores nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutonumque fecerunt; qui in oppida compulsī āc similī inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus qui aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt, neque se hostibus tradiderunt.2 Cuius rei si exemplum non 10 habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā instituī et posteris prodi pulcherrimum iudicarem. Nam quid illi simile bello fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī, māgnāque inlātā calamitāte, finibus quidem nostris aliquando excesserunt atque alias terras petiërunt; iūra, lēgēs, agros, libertātem nobis reliquērunt. 15 Romani vēro quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidia adducti, quos fama nobilis potentisque bello cognoverunt, horum in agris civitatibusque considere atque his aeternam 8 iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condicione bella gesserunt. Quod si ea quae in longinquis natio- 20 nibus geruntur ignorātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in provinciam redacta, iure et légibus commutatis, securibus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte!"

## The Mandubii are Compelled to Leave the Town. Cæsar Declines to Receive them.

78. Sententiīs dictīs constituunt ut eī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bello oppido excēdant,6 atque omnia 25 prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant: illo tamen potius ūtendum consilio, sī rēs cogat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditionis aut pācis subeundam condicionem. Mandubiī, quī eos oppido recēperant,

Cf. <sup>1</sup> voluptātis. — <sup>2</sup> dēdidērunt. — <sup>8</sup> perpetuam. — <sup>4</sup> impēnere. — <sup>5</sup> imperiō Rōmānō. — <sup>6</sup> exeant. — <sup>7</sup> temptent. — <sup>8</sup> opp. omittendum.

cum liberīs atque uxōribus exire cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnītionēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs in vāllō custōdiīs recipī prohibēbat.

### Arrival of Commius with the Army of Relief. Joy of the Besieged.

79. Intereā Commius reliquique ducēs,¹ quibus summa imperī permissa³ erat, cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriore occupāto non longius mille passibus ā nostris mūnītionibus consīdunt. Postero die equitātū ex castrīs ēducto omnem eam plānitiem, quam in longitūdino nem mīlia passuum III patēre dēmonstrāvimus, complent; pedestrīsque copiās paulum ab eo loco abductās in locīs superioribus constituunt. Erat ex oppido Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliis vīsīs³; fit grātulātio inter eos atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itato que productīs copiīs ante oppidum consistunt, et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent, sēque ad ēruptionem atque omnīs cāsūs comparant.

# A Fierce Engagement Takes Place in the Valley. The Gauls are Defeated.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat <sup>5</sup> 20 et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus; atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pūgnae prōventum <sup>6</sup> exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs <sup>7</sup> sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī 25 suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvīsō volnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse

Cf. <sup>1</sup> praefectī. — <sup>2</sup> commissa. — <sup>8</sup> conspectīs. — <sup>4</sup> terrā. — <sup>5</sup> opp. dēserat. — <sup>6</sup> eventum. — <sup>7</sup> opp. dēnsos.

Gallī confiderent 1 et nostros multitudine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī quī mūnītionibus continēbantur et eī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmore et ululātū suorum animos confirmābant. Quod in conspectū omnium res gerebātur, neque rectē āc turpiter factum celārī 2 poterat; utrosque 5







Fig. 100. - Archer.

et laudis cupiditās et timor īgnōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt. Quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex īc reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentīs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī suī conligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī qui Alesiā prō-

Cf. 1 crēderent. — 2 occultārī.

cesserant, maestī 1 prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

#### The Gauls Make a Night Attack.

81. Uno die intermisso Galli atque hoc spatio magno crātium, scālārum, harpagonum numero effecto, mediā nocte 5 silentio ex castris egressi ad campestris munitiones accedunt. Subito clāmore sublāto, quā significātione qui in oppido obsidebantur de suo adventu cognoscere possent, crātis proicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostros de vallo proturbare,2 reliquaque quae ad oppugnationem pertinent 10 parant administrare. Eodem tempore clamore exaudito dat tubā sīgnum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superioribus diebus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītionēs accēdunt; fundis librīlibus, sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant, āc glandibus Gallos proterrent. 15 Prospectu tenebris adempto multa utrimque volnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antonius et C. Trebonius legātī, quibus hae partes ad defendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostros premi intellēxerant, his auxilio ex ulterioribus castellis deductos submittebant.

### They Retire Discomfited.

20 82. Dum longius ā mūnītione aberant Galli, plūs multitūdine tēlorum proficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopinantēs induēbant aut in scrobīs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllo āc turribus trāiectī pilīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique volneribus acceptīs, nūlla mūnītione perruptā, cum lūx adpeteret,4 veritī nē ab latere aperto ex superioribus castrīs ēruptione circumvenīrentur, sē ad suos recēpērunt. At interiorēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptionem praeparāta erant proferunt, priorēs fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morāti,

Cf. 1 trīstēs. — 2 propellere. — 8 opp. lūce. — 4 adīret.



prius suos discessisse cognoverunt quam munitionibus adpropinquarent. Ita re înfecta in oppidum reverterunt.

## The Army of Relief Makes Another Attempt.

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrimentō 1 repulsī Gallī quid agant consulunt. Locorum peritos adhibent; ex his superiorum castrorum situs munitionesque cognoscunt. Erat a septen- 5 trionibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitus 8 opere circumplecti non potuerant nostri; necessarioque paene iniquo loco et leniter declivi castra fecerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēginus et C. Canînius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legionibus obtinebant. Cognitis per exploratores regionibus 10 ducēs hostium Lx mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātum quae māximam virtūtis opinionem habēbant; quid quoque pacto agi placeat occulte inter se constituunt; adeundi tempus definiunt cum meridies esse videatur. His copiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, unum ex IIII ducibus, 15 propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope confecto sub lūcem itinere, post montem se occultavit militesque ex nocturno labore sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam meridiēs adpropinguāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmonstrāvimus contendit; 20 eodemque fempore equitatus ad campestris munitiones accedere et reliquae copiae pro castris sese ostendere coeperunt.

#### Vercingetorix Cooperates. Difficulties of the Romans.

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur: crātīs, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcīs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat profert. Pūgnātur ūnō 25 tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post

Cf. 1 caede. — 2 opp. imperītõs. — 8 circumvāllāre.

tergum pūgnantibus exstitit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte constāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentīs perturbant.

## Fighting Continues with Energy on Both Sides.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque ex parte gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnīto tiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium māgnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla cōniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs, te tea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec virēs suppetunt.

## Cæsar Personally Encourages his Troops.

86. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Labienum cum cohortibus vi subsidio laborantibus mittit. Imperat, sī sustinēre non possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptione pūgnet; id nisi neces20 sārio nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquos; cohortātur nē laborī succumbant; omnium superiorum dīmicātionum frūctum in eo diē atque horā docet consistere. Interiorēs, dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter māgnitūdinem mūnītionum, loca praerupta [ex] ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant conferunt. Multitūdine tēlorum ex turribus propūgnantīs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum āc lorīcam rescindunt.

## His Activity in Various Parts of the Field.

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse,

cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsīs hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortīs IIII ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostīs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam 5 neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs xL cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

## Utter Defeat of the Gauls with Great Slaughter.

88. Eius adventū ex colore vestītūs cognito, [quo însignī 10 in proeliis ūtī consuerat], turmisque equitum et cohortibus vīsis quās sē segui iusserat, ut dē locīs superioribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmore sublāto excipit rūrsus ex vāllo atque omnibus mūnītionibus clāmor. Nostrī omissīs pilis gladiīs rem 15 gerunt. Repente post tergum equitatus cernitur; cohortes aliae adpropinquant. Hostes terga vertunt; fugientibus equites occurrunt; fit magna caedes. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; sīgna mīlitāria LXXIIII ad 20 Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tanto numero se incolumes in castra recipiunt. Conspicati ex oppido caedem et fugam suorum, desperata salute, copias a munitionibus reducunt. Fit protinus hac re audīta ex castris Gallorum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs āc tōtīus diēi labore mīlitēs essent 25 dēfessī, omnēs hostium copiae delerī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen consequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātīs discēdunt.

### Vercingetorix Surrenders.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmā5 nīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitione prō castris considit; eō ducēs prodūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur; arma proiciuntur. Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātīs recuto perāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs totī exercituī capita singula praedae nomine distribuit.

## Cæsar's Distribution of his Forces for the Winter. A Twenty Days' Thanksgiving Decreed at Rome.

90. His rēbus confectis in Haeduos proficiscitur; civitātem recipit. Eo lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūros pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum obsidum.

15 Legionēs in hīberna mittit; captīvorum circiter xx mīlia Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legionībus et equitātū in Sēquanos proficiscī iubet; huic M. Sempronium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legionībus duābus in Rēmīs 20 conlocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretos, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnos, cum singulīs legionībus mittit. Q. Tullium Ciceronem et P. Sulpicium Cabillonī et Matiscone in Haeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentātīs riae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre constituit.

Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs Romae dierum vigintī supplicātio redditur.



FIG. 101. - YOUTH READING.

## NOTES.

N.B. References to the text are made by pages and lines. The Grammars cited are those of Allen & Greenough (§), Bennett (B.), Gildersleeve (G.), Harkness (H.), and Hale & Buck (H-B.). References in parentheses are to the old editions. Cf.(confer) = compare; sc. (scilicet) = supply; ff. = and following; subjv. = subjunctive; imv. = imperative.

#### I. STORIES, FABLES, AND LETTERS.

- No. 1. This letter, it will be noticed, has no introductory address corresponding to our 'Dear Sir' or the like.
- 1 1 si tu vales, etc.: in Cicero's time formal letters usually began with this expression, generally abbreviated to the initial letters S. V. B. E. E. V. See No. 29, p. 24.
- 1 2 laetus: the Latin has a tendency to use an adjective modifying the subject instead of an adverb modifying the verb. Of course if one does a thing 'gladly,' he is himself 'glad' in doing it. consilio: abl. of cause.
- 1 3 nives: the Latin often uses the plural of words not apparently having a plural, conceiving the thing as divided into parts or instances. So here each 'snow bank' is a separate nix.
- 1 4 nivem: here the sing is used because of the negative idea in raro. A denial of any one case is sufficient for all.—ut est apud: this

expression (used only of persons) is the stock way of speaking of a person's writings, like 'as Milton has it.'

- 1 5 caelum: subj. of ridet.
- 1 8 sitas, lying. Notice the changes of idiom which are necessary in turning Latin into English. This word, the participle of sino, put or leave, is the regular word for 'situated,' 'lying,' as on tombs, 'hic situs est,' here lies.—linguam, etc.: do not translate literally and say 'the modern language of the Italians,' but simply Italian, according to our mode of speech.
- 1 10 finem faciam: simply will end, making it natural English.—epistulae: dat., indir. object.
- 1 11 vive valeque: again a stereotyped expression, here of adieu, wishing long life and health Good-by and good luck to you.
- 2'1 No. 2. gallorum certamina, cockfights, the proper English expression, not 'contests of cocks,' as the Latin has it.
- 2 2 autem, now. This particle sets off one statement against another, what is called an adversative, ranging all the way from 'on the other hand' to 'furthermore,' or 'now,' where the opposition is very slight. bello Persico: the Romans treated wars and the like as epochs, and so used the constructions of time where we say 'in the war.'
  - 2 4 dimicantis: pres. partic. agreeing with gallos.
- 2 5 et hanc orationem habuit, and spoke as follows. Note again the difference in idiom.
- 2 8 nec: the Latin puts a negative and connective together wherever it is possible; so here, the Latin says 'nor' where we should say and...not.
- 2 9 qua, instead of hac, to connect more closely with the preceding sentence.
  - 2 10 consilio: cf. 1 2.
- 2 11 No. 3. e: we should say in. To the Romans the pleasure came 'out of' the shows.
- 2 12 qua: cf. 2 9 and note. tam, so much. The word really modifies cernebatur, while the verb is understood again with quam, as. The statement here (a modern one) is very far from the truth. The gladiators were more carefully protected by armor than the knights of the Middle Ages, were the idols of the people, and very often obtained their discharge and freedom.
- 2 13 ingenium, indoles: subjs. of cernebatur. primo: adv. opposed to postea.
- 2 14 exsequias: in fact the fights were originally an amelioration of human sacrifices to the spirits of slain warriors.
- 2 16 magistratum petebant, were candidates for office. For this idea peto was the technical word.—spectaculis: abl. of means.

- 2 16 hoc consilio, for this purpose; cf. 12, 2 10.
- 3 1 alebant: the regular word for kept; cf. the provincial expression, 'a horse's keep.' paria: a noun. Gladiators regularly fought in pairs.
  - 3 2 gregi: dat. after adscribebantur; cf. spectaculis, below, l. 7.
  - 3 3 nomina profitebantur: the regular expression for volunteered.
- 3 4 varia, etc.: the Romans especially delighted in cross matches of men armed with entirely different arms. The cut gives an ancient picture of a heavy armed warrior pitted against one armed only with net and trident.
- 3 9 morituri, the doomed, as we should say. In Latin almost any adjective or participle may become a noun, either from its original force, as 'the blacks' in English, or by the omission of a noun used with it, as hiberna (sc. castra), winter quarters.
- 3 10 No. 4. onustos: plur., because agreeing with both equum and asinum. In Latin a word belonging in agreement with two others may in form agree with one and be understood with the other, or be adapted so far as possible to both; cf. cernebatur, 2 12.
- 3 11 ut...levaret: a clause expressing a request, command, or any similar idea regularly has ut (neg. ne) with the subjv. mood. Our form is commonly the infin., 'ask one to do something,' rarely the more formal 'that one should,' or colloquially 'if one would'; § 563 (331); B. 295-6; G. 546; H. 565 (498. i); H-B. 530. 2.— parte: remember that the case of depriving, etc., is the abl. where we use 'of'; § 401 (243. a); B. 214; G. 390. 2; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.— se: referring, as usual, to the subject of the main proposition; not 'himself,' but him; § 300. a (196. a. 2); B. 244. i; G. 520, 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2.
- 3 14 omnibus sarcinis atque pelle: abl. of means. In this, the first distorted sentence in these stories, learn once for all how to go to work to read Latin easily. omnibus: this form may be either dat. or abl.; if the former, it would refer to persons; if the latter, it would ordinarily (with one great exception, the abl. abs.) refer to things. As there are no persons in question, it must almost certainly be abl. Furthermore, if it refers to things, it cannot be used as a noun, for only adjectives obviously neuter in form are used as neuter nouns. If it may be either masculine or feminine, it is regularly one of these. So we may assume that it does not refer to persons and that it is not a subst., but belongs to some noun to come after in the abl. The relations expressed by the abl. are with, from, in, or by, and, bearing this in mind, we may go on. The relative clause (from its position) obviously belongs to the same coming noun. Though we do not say 'all the, which, etc., things,' yet we can easily see how natural such an expression might be. We shall find later that it is extremely common in

Latin. The noun sarcinis completes the phrase, except as to the exact meaning of the abl., but we may already suspect that it is 'with' from the nature of the whole proceeding, and this suspicion is confirmed by oneravit. It might seem easier to follow the English order and jump at once to oneravit, as we usually want to do; but that process is an almost insuperable hindrance in learning to read Latin with ease, while the way suggested may be made a habit in a week, and then you are actually reading the language as the Romans read it and on the high road to your goal. See Directions for Reading, p. 139.

- 3 15 ei: depending on detracta, off from; cf. gregi, 3 2.
- 3 16 inquit: the regular word with a direct quotation and always standing, as here, after some few words of the quotation; cf. 'Yes, said he.'
- 3 17 obtemperavissem: this is the 'contrary to fact' construction, where a false supposition is purposely made, and the statement is made of what would happen (or would have happened) in that case. Our form is 'If I had yielded (as I did not), I should have,' etc. See § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.
- 3 18 gravissimum, a very heavy one. It is unnecessary in Latin to repeat a noun if there is anything to show its construction, as here the adjective; nor is any pronoun necessary to refer to it, as we do by 'one.'
- 3 21 No. 5. Cranone in Thessalia: notice that the name of the country takes a preposition, while the name of the town rejects it.—apud, at the house of; cf. apud, 1 3.
  - 3 22 pugilum certamine, boxing-match: see example of idiom above, 2 1.
  - 3 23 summo gaudio, to the great delight: abl. of manner.
- 3 24 in laudem: the Latin should mean 'into,' etc., but our idiom is in praise of, etc. pio animo, piously or with a feeling of piety. The word pius denotes a feeling of duty or reverence towards gods or men as fathers, protectors, patrons, or the like.
- 3 27 improbavit, did n't like. The word properly means 'disapproved,' but here, referring only to a secret judgment, it must be rendered differently.
  - 4 1 dimidium, only half; emphatic and contrasted with reliquum.
- 4 3 postulabis, you must claim. The future often has in many languages the force of a command; § 472 (278. a); G. 243; H. 560. 4. N. (487. 4); H-B. 572.
  - 4 5 nuntio: cf. construction of illi, 3 17.
  - 4 6 iam vero, but just then.
  - 4 10 No. 6. domestici, members of the family, including slaves.
- 4 11 atrio: a large rectangular room opening from the entrance hall. In early times it served as the common living room and kitchen. una: an adverb.

- 4 12 domino: we should say of the master. The dat. is often so used.
- 4 13 re vera, properly. The meaning of triclinium was extended so as to mean the room instead of the couch.
  - 4 17 altera: sc. pars.
- 4 18 Romanis, etc., there was a proverb among the Romans or the Romans had a proverb.
- 4 19 **0v0:** as a part of the gustus, or first course. mala: as a part of the dessert. cenam: when, as here, the object comes first, it is convenient both in reading and translating to change the voice, making the object subject and turning the subject into the agent: The dinner was served by, etc.
  - 5 1 No. 7. pedibus: we say on foot; in Latin abl. of means.
- 5 2 adeuntis, those that met him; the pres. partic. of adeo used substantively; cf. morituri, 3 9.—excipiebat, convenit: notice the difference of tense. The first refers to a custom, the second to a single event; the first is descriptive, the second narrative.
  - 5 3 in ius vocatus erat, had been summoned to court.
  - 5 5 patronum, advocate, the regular word. eum: subj. of comitari.
- 5 6 at, well! used, as often, to introduce an emphatic or indignant remonstrance.
- 5 11 No. 8. ut videris, as it seems, in English. The Latin says preferably 'as you seem,' i.e. to live.
- 5 12 licet... venias, you may come; lit. 'it is permitted that you should come.' The idiom is a common one in Latin; see § 565 (331.1); B. 295. 6; G. 553. 3. 4; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); H-B. 531. 2.
- 5 13 felicitate: abl. with fruaris; § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
- 5 15 num... sustines, you don't bear... do you? the form of question which expects the answer 'no.' Num regularly has this force.
- 5 18 vestigia, marks. cervici: dat. with circumdari; § 364 (225. d); B. 187. i. a; G. 348. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 376.
  - 6 2 nihil moror, I don't care for.
- 6 4 No. 9. e quibus, of them. The Latin often uses a relative merely as a connective instead of a demonstrative. Here e quibus cum unus = et cum unus ex his, but the former is preferred as making a closer connection with the preceding sentence; cf. 2 9 and note. offendisset: the subjv. here with cum is idiomatic and has no special force which needs expression in English.
- 6 6 tamen: this word is always opposed to some concession expressed or implied. Here it is, 'Though the lion was angry and was just going to eat the mouse, nevertheless he spared the little creature's life in answer to

his prayers.' Do not translate such expressions mechanically, but get the thought from the Latin and express it in good English. — oranti: i.e. 'to him begging.' Ordinarily no pronoun of reference (he, she, etc.) is necessary in Latin if there is any word present which shows the construction. Here the pronoun would be ei, but oranti shows the case without it.

- 6 7 non satis caute: the ways of expressing manner are various in all languages and very often do not correspond in particular cases. Here the Latin says 'not cautiously enough.' What should we say?
- 6 8 in venatoris, etc.: in reading this, notice that while the order is just the reverse of our most common way, yet it is very common in poetry and even in lively conversation, as 'Into the woods went he.'
- 6 9 rugiebat: observe again, as in 5 2, the imperfect of description here preceded and followed by narrative perfects.
- 6 10 cum spectavisset, having seen; for mood, cf. offendisset, l. 4. above.
- 6 12 deberet: the subjv. here is idiomatic and does not correspond to our English forms. It merely indicates that what is said was the thought of the mouse and not merely the fact. grato animo: abl. of manner.
  - 6 13 omni periculo: abl. of separation; cf. aliqua parte, 3 11.
- 6 14 reportavit: this means 'carried off,' as we say 'carried off the prize.' But as we should translate praemium by reward, with which we should not use 'carried off,' we must translate by some weaker word, like received or the like.
- 6 16 No. 10. sita erat: see note on sitas, 1 8.—divitiis et luxuria: these words tell in what respect the Sybarites excelled the Corinthians; § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.
- 7 1 bellicam, of war. The Latin is very fond of possessive and descriptive adjectives, for which we substitute phrases, as here.
- 7 2 vacabant, gave up their time to. The word properly means 'have leisure' or 'enjoy leisure.'
  - 7 3 ad numerum, to the music.
- 7 4 saltarent: the subjv. with ut here expresses the result of the preceding—the regular Latin construction. The modal idea disappears in English; § 537 and N.<sup>2</sup> (319 and R.); B. 284; G. 551, 552; H. 570 (500. ii. N.<sup>1</sup>); H-B. 521, 2 and a.—sciebant, etc., this was known to their neighbors of Crotona. The Latin form, 'the neighboring Crotonians knew this.' would be awkward in English. Always have these changes in mind in translating.
- 7 5 cum gererent, while carrying on. See notes on offendisset, 6 4. and spectavisset, 6 10, above. The construction of cum with the subjv. is one of the most difficult in the language, but the difficulty is lessened if

we remember that cum with the subjv. never strictly expresses time, though it is the common word for 'when.' It is descriptive and expresses circumstances or occasions and the like. These may be introduced by 'when' in

English, but oftener we use some other construction, as the pres. partic. or 'while.'

- 7 6 tubas . . . tibias: the first was of brass, and a warlike instrument; the second was of wood, and used for festival occasions.
- 7 7 quam . . . pugnabatur, as long as the fighting was at long range. The passive impersonal use of pugno, as here, 'it was fought,' is idiomatic and should never be literally translated.
- 7 8 illi: i.e. the musicians. res: the translation of this word always requires care. It may mean anything sug-



FIG. 102. - FLUTE PLAYER.

gested by the context and should be translated accordingly. Here we might say battle, conflict, engagement, or the like.

- 7 9 numeros, etc.: i.e. dance music, as opposed to the exciting martial strains of brass. saltandum: a gerund with ad, expressing purpose.
- 7 10 cum...coeperunt: a different use of cum from that in 1. 5. With the ind. it may always be translated when, and expresses time rather than description or circumstance. tamquam . . . essent, as if they were, i.e. 'they acted as (they would) if they were.' The conclusion in this construction is always omitted. See § 524. N. 2 and I (312. R. and N.); B. 307; G. 602; H. 584 (513. ii); H-B. 504. 3 and b.
  - 7 11 dominis: cf. note on domino, above, 4 12.
- 7 13 No. 11. Actiacam, of Actium. The Latin has a fondness for adjectives instead of prepositional phrases, and the former are often to be translated by the latter; cf. note on bellicam, 7 1. Actium is a promontory and city on the west coast of Acarnania, in northwestern Greece. It is especially famous for the great naval victory of Augustus, then known as Octavianus, over the combined forces of Antony and Cleopatra, B.C. 31.—quā: expresses means.
- 7 14 superato Antonio: this construction, called the ablative absolute, is one of the most common and characteristic of the Latin language. It is developed from the abl. expressing time or place and describes the circumstances under which the main action takes place. Here these circumstances are that 'Antony was conquered.' This had been an act of Augustus, and so we may say in English having conquered Antony, with a natural change

of voice. Many other instances will occur for which a different rendering is necessary.—anno, etc.: this form of date is of course modern, but agrees with Latin idiom. Translate in the year 31 before Christ. Notice, however, that the Latin words mean 'in the thirty-first year' and 'the birth of Christ,' forms of expression which we do not use for a simple date.—ante Christum natum; lit. 'before Christ born.'

7 15 principatum: this word, meaning properly 'headship,' 'primacy,' 'first place,' cannot be translated by such words, because in this case it implies more than these. We may say complete control, or supreme power (over). It often happens that a word in English which seems to correspond to a Latin one cannot be used for it, because words often imply ideas that they do not directly express.—occupavit, seized; it means 'occupy' only in the military sense of that word. Be careful about translating Latin words by the English words they resemble.

7 16 triumphanti: translate in his triumph, though it is really a partic. This word, agreeing with illi, refers to the technical triumph in which the victorious general entered the city, riding in a four-horse chariot at the head of his troops, with the spoils of war and everything to make a splendid pageant. See Fig. 14.—illi: notice that the dat is the regular case after many verbs compounded with prepositions, which seem to us transitive; cf. illi, 3 17.—quidam, a man. It is implied that his personality is known as in Biblical 'one,' 'a certain,' which we now rarely use in that sense.—gratulantis: observe that adjectives and participles are often used as nouns, especially in the plural; cf. adeuntis, 5 2.

7 17 ut diceret, to say; cf. note on ut levaret, 3 11.—imperator: this word is untranslatable and is best rendered by transferring the Latin word itself, as with 'consul' and the like.

7 18 miratus: translate by the pres. partic., which is the usual English way in such cases. This partic., being deponent, is of course active in meaning.—officiosam, polite and respectful. The termination -osus makes adjectives expressing 'full of.' officium often means 'a mark of respect' or 'respectful politeness'; hence the adjective properly means 'full of these,' i.e. 'inclined to show them.'—milibus: the price. We say 'bought for'; the Latin, 'bought by.' Hence the abl. is the regular case; see § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478 (422); H-B. 427. I.—sestertium: gen. plur., the regular construction with 'thousands.' Notice that we generally make the words agree—'twenty thousand men.' The sesterce was not a coin, but a unit of account, like a British pound sterling. It was worth about five cents of our money.

7 19 salutatus: cf. translation of miratus, above, but note that this verb is not deponent.

- 7 20 animadversa: cf. note above on Antonio superato, l. 14, and see § 420. N. (255. d. N.); B. 227. 2; G. 410; H. 489. I (431. 1. 2); H-B. 421.
- 7 22 ut...institueret: the regular construction for expressing a purpose where we usually say 'to' or 'in order to,' as 'to instruct.'
- 7 24 exclamabant: the imperf., as often, expressing a customary action; cf. excipiebat, 5 2.
- 7 26 suum illud, his lesson. The Latin often uses indefinite words determined by the context, where we should use descriptive ones.
  - 7 27 ut . . . venderet: cf. note on institueret, l. 22.
  - 8 1 audita voce: cf. note on arte... animadversa, l. 20.
- 8 4 res: perhaps 'remark'; see note on 7 8.—excussit, forced.—Augusto: dat. expressing, in the case of persons, the one 'from whom,' the regular Latin construction.
- 8 5 ut...emeret: this subjv. is idiomatic in Latin to express result; cf. ut...saltarent, 7 4, and note. In English no modal form is required—that he bought. Notice that the Latin form for result is the same as for purpose, but these ideas are differently expressed in English.—tanti, etc., for more than he had ever paid for one before. The genitives tanti and quanti regularly express indefinite price. The Latin says, 'for so much as he had bought none before.' But we must change the form in translating.
- 8 8 No. 12. superior, above, or up-stream. inferior, below, or down-stream.
  - 8 9 inquit: cf. note, 3 16.
- 8 12 rei, of the matter; cf. note, 7 8. initio: time when, expressed by the ablative.
- No. 13. This poetic version of the preceding fable is by Phaedrus, a writer of the Augustan age. We know but little of his life, but it appears that he was brought to Rome as a Greek slave and belonged to Augustus, who set him free. He translated the Greek fables of Æsop into Latin iambic verse. Each line consists of six iambic feet. The iambus consists of a short and a long syllable ( $\smile$   $\angle$ ), with the verse accent on the long syllable. Quantities and verse accent are marked in the text.
- 8 18 fauce: lit. 'gullet.' We may imitate improba fauce by greedy maw.
- 8 21 laniger: it is characteristic of poetry to call things by different names from the regular ones; here, woolly-back.—contra: sc. inquit, said in reply. The verb of saying is often omitted in reporting a conversation.
- 8 22 qui: here an adv., how. quod: sc. id. A pronominal antecedent is often omitted when its gender and case are made clear by the form of the relative.

- 8 23 haustus: lit. 'draughts,' but this would be forced in English, so we may say lips.
  - 8 25 ante hos, etc., six months ago, a regular idiom in Latin.
  - 8 26 equidem, why!
  - 8 27 inquit: cf. note, 3 16.
- 8 28 conreptum: sc. eum, lit. 'him seized,' but translate having seized him. The Latin has no perfect active participle, and often supplies its place with the passive. iniusta nece, by an unjust death.
  - 9 2 innocentis: cf. gratulantis, 7 16, and note.
- 9 5 instituerunt, arranged. Notice that this is the same word that we translated 'teach' in No. 11. It properly means 'set up.' But a person who is taught may be said to be set up or established as a learned person, and hence the word may be used in that sense, as well as in very many others. Cf. 'set up as a philosopher,' or 'as a cobbler.'
  - 9 7 advolarent: cf. saltarent, 7 4, and note.
- 9 8 quod cum, etc., when Zeuxis saw this. The Latin says, 'which when Z. saw,' using the relative where we use a demonstrative. Cf. qua, 2 9, and note. videret: cf. note, 7 5. verum: notice the emphasis on the first word, 'that it was real.'
- 9 9 occultaretur: this is in the idiomatic indirect discourse. Zeuxis would say 'verum est linteum quo pictura occultatur,' but stated indirectly, as in our clauses with 'that,' est becomes esse, and occultatur becomes subjv. The tense depends upon the past verb putavit, and is changed accordingly, as we also change the tense in English; § 580, 585 (336. 2; 336. B); B. 314, 317, 318; G. 650, 654; H. 642, 643, 543 ff. (523, 524, 491 ff.); H-B. 534. I and 2, 476.—agente: abl. abs., when Parrhasius did nothing. Cf. note on 7 14.
- 9 10 remoto, removing, etc.; cf. preceding note. The Latin is more exact than the English as to tenses.—tandem: finally, implying impatience at Parrhasius's waiting so long.—ostenderet: object-clause of purpose. Cf. ut . . . levaret, 3 11, and note.
- 9 11 moveret, that he might remove, etc. Parrhasius would say 'Tu ipse move.' This, in the indirect discourse, becomes subjv.; § 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. iii); H-B. 538. In this sentence and the one above we have the whole matter of the Latin indirect discourse, the great bugbear. Thus, verum esse linteum quo pictura occultaretur, 'that it was a real curtain by which the picture was concealed'; ipse moveret, 'that he should (or to) remove it himself.' If a pupil will commit this to memory, he will have it all in a nutshell.—cognito: we may say learning; cf. remoto above.
- 9 13 fefellisset: this is also indirect discourse, but less formal. Zeuxis might hand Parrhasius the prize, or concede to him the supremacy, and

- say, 'because I have deceived only birds, but you (have deceived) an artist.'
  This stated by another must take its verb in the subjv., as in the other
  case. These ten lines are a better lesson in grammar than pages of rules.
- 9 14 No. 15. quodam: almost like the English indefinite article. See note on 7 16.
- 9 15 crearetur: see note on 74 and 97.—quod cum: see note on 29 and 98.
- 9 17 regnum (subj. of obtigit), regal power, throne, or sceptre, as our word 'kingdom' is more concrete than regnum.
- 9 18 te, from you, though the word is acc.; celo takes two accusatives, here te and id understood, the antecedent of quod. On the omission of id, cf. note, 8 22.
- 9 19 tua interest, it is for your interest, an idiomatic construction with refert and interest. quidnam: an emphatic quid, what in the world?
  - 9 21 de vita decedente, when dying, or on his deathbed.
  - 9 22 qui: the antecedent is thesaurus.
- 9 23 laudo, I approve, or I thank you for. officiosam: see note on this word in 7 18.
- 9 24 perveniamus: verbs of effort usually take ut with the subjv. Cf ut . . . levaret, 3 11.
  - 9 25 semitis: abl. of the way by which.
  - 9 26 abducebat, kept leading, etc.
- 9 27 densa virgulta, a dense thicket, properly the shrubs of which the thicket is composed.
- 10 1 dicebat, used to say. Notice that these two imperfs. are descriptive, not merely narrative, like the perf. Cf. note, 5 2.
- 10 2 penetrabat: notice the descriptive imperf. again. He started and was on the way, but was stopped by the toils of the hunter.
- 10 3 cum imploravisset, having, etc. Cf. note on 7 5. sero, too late, an implication which the word almost always has.
  - 10 4 opus: pred. acc. after esse, as if an adj., necessary.
- 10 5 saltandi: gen. of the gerund. autem, but, a weak adversative. He has described the monkey's situation, and now turns to the fox on the other hand. Cf. note on 2 2.
- 10 6 habetis iam, etc., freely, there's your dancing king for you, and much good may he do you.
  - 10 8 No. 16. ad ancoram, etc., moored, or anchored.
  - 10 9 ei: see note on 3 15.
- 10 11 deplorabat, proceeded to, began to, etc. The imperf. here denotes the beginning of an action. quas... cum: cf. quod cum, 9 8, and note.

- 10 12 emersit, rose from the water. Compare the three compounds of mergo in this number. quid rei esset, what the matter was. This construction (called the partitive genitive), where quid rei stands instead of quae res, is a common idiom of the Latin, especially in colloquial language. The subjv. esset has no modal force to be represented in English, but notice the change in order between the direct and the indirect.
- 10 13 incauto mihi excidit, etc., I carelessly let fall my axe; lit. 'my axe fell from me incautious.' Notice the difference in the idioms.
- 10 14 neque, and ... not; see note, 28. quo emam, the wherewith al to buy; lit. 'that wherewith I may buy.' Technically a purpose-clause, hence the subjunctive.
- 10 15 paulo, a little while, abl. of degree of difference. dextra: sc. manu. securim: for form, see § 75. b (56. b); B. 38. 1; G. 57. 1; H. 102. 3 (62. iii); H-B. 88. 1.
- 10 16 num haec esset ea, whether this was the one, another indirect question. Cf. quid rei esset, above, and note.
- 11 1 amisisset: subjv. because in the indirect form. The direct form would be haecne est ea quam amisisti? 'is this the one which you have lost?' Note carefully the changes in mood and tense, and cf. notes on 9 9, 11, and 13. negavit, said no, or not, the regular meaning of nego.
  - 11 3 ne . . . quidem, not . . . either.
  - 11 4 ipsam, very.
  - 11 5 laetus: see note on 1 2.
- 11 7 ut locupletaretur: subjv. expressing purpose. fortuna: abl. of means.
  - 11 8 sua sponte, on purpose.
  - 11 9 eum : i.e. fluvium.
- 11 11 eane: the enclitic -ne asks a question, whether, etc. esset . . . deploraret: subjv., because of the indirect form. The direct form would be 'eane est cuius iacturam deploras?' Cf. note and text, 11 1.
- 11 16 No. 17. sibi: this pron., depending on adpropinquare, is not required in English; we should say his death.
- 11 18 quibus adlatis, upon these being brought. See note on superato Antonio, 7 14.
- 11 19 frangerent: see note on 3 11, and cf. ostenderet, 9 10, and perveniamus, 9 24. quod cum, and when . . . this. Cf. note on 9 8.
- 11 20 singulis singulas, one to each, lit. 'to single (persons) single rods,' the regular way of saying this in Latin.—eis, etc., by their being easily broken, another use of the abl. abs., here expressing circumstance as means.
- 11 21 quam, how. esset: notice that this is the fourth time this form has been used in a question (10 12, 10 16, 11 11). In each case the

question has not been directly asked, but reported indirectly, 'asked whether,' or the like. The subjv. in such cases is regular in Latin, but no different modal form is used in English; § 574 (334); B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 649, ii (529, ii); H-B. 537. b.

11 23 No. 18. Demosthenes: the greatest orator of the Greeks and of the ancient world. He lived in the 4th century B.C., and some of his most famous orations are still extant.—cum defenderet: here again the clause may be translated when he, etc., or when once defending, etc. Observe that generally cum with a past tense expresses circumstance or description, and the mood is subjunctive. English makes no such modal distinction.

11 25 rem, something. See note, 7 8.

11 26 narraturo, while I tell. This is a rare and unclassical use of the fut. partic., and is probably imitated from the Greek.—auditu, to hear, the latter supine, used only with adjectives.—ad quae, etc.: cf. quas...cum, 10 11, and note.

12 1 quo... veheretur, on which to ride, a purpose-clause. Cf. quo emam, 10 14.—Athenis, Megaram: abl. of the town from which and accord the town to which. Cf. note on Cranone, 3 21.

12 2 media . . . via, midway.

12 5 obtegeretur: result-clause. So, too, certarent, l. 9, below. Cf. note on saltarent, 7 4. — vetabat: cf. deplorabat, 10 11, and note.

12 7 posset: cf. note on fefellisset, 9 13.

12 9 in ius ambulant: cf. note on 5 3.

12 10 ubi... vidit: this construction differs from the one with cum (cf. note on 75) in denoting time and not circumstance or description. As soon as, or the like. The mood is therefore ind., just as in English.

12 19 reliquam, the rest of. Cf. media via, 12 2.

12 13 pergeret: object-clause of purpose after rogatus. Cf. note, 3 11. -libet (sc. vobis), are you glad to?

12 15 No. 19. Pompeius: Cnæus Pompey the Great, the famous rival of Cæsar, leader of the senatorial party, as Cæsar was of the popular party. Pompey was defeated by Cæsar in the Civil War.—deposito consilio, abandoning the design. See note on 7 14.—adeundae Syriae, of going to Syria. In this, the gerundive construction, originally a passive one, the voice must always be changed to fit the English idiom.—aeris, here money, as we should say 'gold' for money, the Romans using copper.

12 17 milibus: supply impositis from imposito.—armatis: agreeing with milibus, though we should take it with hominum: lit. 'two armed thousands of men.' This idiomatic use of the gen. after milia is regular; cf. the construction of sestertium, 7 18.

12 18 actate: abl. of specification.

- 12 19 Cleopatra: the famous queen of Egypt who killed herself rather than fall into the hands of Augustus.—paucis ante mensibus, a few months before, abl. of degree of difference. Cf. paulo, 10 15. In 8 25 there is a different idiom to express the same idea, ante hos sex menses.
- 12 23 Alexandria, into Alexandria. Cf. this with Athenis and Megaram, 12 1, and you observe that in the case of towns no preposition is needed, but the abl. is irregular, 'received into or within.'—reciperetur: depending on the request implied in misit, i.e. 'he sent (to ask).' See note on levaret, 3 11. Remember that this is the construction of a request and the like, whatever the meaning of the word on which it depends.
- 12 24 qui, those who, the antecedent being omitted, as with our indefinite 'whoever.' See also note on quod, 8 22.
- 12 28 in procuratione, in control, properly, engaged in the care of the kingdom as regents.
- 14 1 sive...sive, whether...or, often used for aut...aut, as in English 'either...or' is replaced by 'whether...or.'—ne occuparet: dependent on the expression of fearing, timore adducti, the regular construction. Notice that the connective ne after a verb of fearing is translated by that or lest, and not by that not, as in other cases.
- 14 2 despecta fortuna: notice that where there is a word in the sentence for the partic. to agree with, as in the preceding case (adducti), it agrees, but if there is none, a new noun is used in the abl. with the partic. ..e. the abl. abs., so called because it seems to have no connection with the entence, though it really is an abl. of time, place, or manner.
  - 14 3 palam: opposed to clam below.
- 14 6 ad interficiendum, etc.: see note on adeundae Syriae, 12 16. Here expressing purpose.
  - 14 8 cum paucis suis, with a few of his friends.
- 14 No. 20. ei, to her, the dat. of reference after causa. So also liberis.
- 15 1 feminae Latonae: there are two indications that these words do not go together, as the beginner might carelessly think possible; the Latin regularly puts a proper name before its appositive, Latonae feminae; and again, if the sentence is read in order the et will naturally connect the priests and the women, and then Latonae will be seen to have no other construction than the dative. Use your common sense in reading.
- 15 4 mihi...sunt, I have, the most common form to express simple possession. Note the emphasis on the word mihi, indicated by its position.
- 15 5 genere: a quality is regularly expressed by a noun and adj. (not a noun alone) in the abl., where we say of technically, the abl. of quality
  - 15 6 ea: the Latin uses a pron. of reference when the name of the

person or thing referred to would require a different case from what it had when used before. Here, for example, Latona when last used was in the gen. — vindicarent: cf. note, 3 11.

- 15 9 saxum: the story was connected with a stone which was supposed to exude water. It is like the story of the pillar of salt.
- 15 10 ei: dat. of reference. But we may translate the whole, causes her to shed, etc.
- 15 11 No. 21. fuerat: we may say was, because we are not so exact as to tenses, but the Latin, speaking of the time of the story, says, 'had been the heir' or 'had inherited' before the story begins. —et ipse, and himself also, as opposed to his inheritance received from another.
  - 15 12 sibi, for himself.
- 15 14 visum: supine, properly an acc. of the end of motion and used after verbs of motion to express purpose, to see.
  - 15 15 civibus: dat. of reference.
  - 15 16 septem sapientis: the famous seven sages of Greece.
- 15 18 esset: again the subjv. in an indirect question; see 10 12, 11 21.

   negavit, refused to admit, not denied; avoid stock translations of words and phrases. Find out the thought; then express it in the best English.
  - 15 19 displicuit, was displeasing to, hence followed by the dat.
- 15 20 sensit, found out. This word, referring to any kind of perception, is especially used of that which one finds out by actual experience.—esset: cf. 10 12, 10 16.
- 15 21 obtinebat (with regnum), was king, occupied the throne, or the like. Notice that obtineo does n't mean obtain, nor occupo, occupy; see note on 7 15.
  - 15 22 ut . . . impediret, to retard, regular purpose-clause.
- 15 23 bellum paravit, made preparations for war. Notice that bellum is more concrete in Latin than is 'war' in English, expressing all the paraphernalia of war, so that a Roman can parare bellum, while we 'prepare for war.'
- 15 24 Delphicum: the oracle of Apollo at Delphi in Greece was anciently supposed to be an unerring means of direct communication with the gods for advice and knowledge of the future. Its trustworthiness became proverbial.
- 15 26 quod interest inter, which flows between.—regnum, etc.: the responses of oracles were usually of this ambiguous character and were so framed by astute persons as to come true, whatever happened.
- 15 27 cum . . . comperisset, having learned, etc., as so often with cum and the pluperf. subjunctive.

- 15 28 copiis: words of military significance are used in the abl. of accompaniment without cum.—autem: for the force of this word, see notes, 2 2, 10 5.
  - 16 1 ita pugnatum est, the result of the battle was such; cf. 7 7.
  - 16 2 neque hic neque ille, neither Crasus nor his adversary; such English expressions as this have no exactly corresponding forms in Latin and hence must be substituted for the simpler Latin forms, and, conversely, must be excluded in writing Latin; hic refers to Croeso as the nearer on the page, ille to Cyrus, as farther off.—altero: not merely 'another,' but a second.—proelio: really abl. of manner, but translate by using it as the subject of pugnaretur.
    - 16 4 captivus, being taken captive, equivalent to a participle.
  - 16 5 cum, etc.: the idea can hardly be expressed in English otherwise than by when, but it is the 'when' of circumstance, not that of time; cf. 7 5 and note.
  - 16 7 cum...audivisset: here the expression will admit the perf. act. partic., which should therefore be used, as more natural in English. Cf. cum...comperisset, 15 27, and note.
    - 16 8 significaret: notice again the indirect question.
  - 16 9 docuisset: this is a case where the indirect question is trouble-some. As it stands, it means that Crossus in his story answered a question like 'What did Solon say?' the indirect form of which would be 'I will tell you what Solon said.' But if it were id quod Solon, etc., there would be no question in the Latin, but a relative clause with the indicative. The difficulty is that either would be good Latin, and in English there is no modal distinction made at all.
  - 16 10 ut Croesum . . . esset: notice that of these clauses, alike in Latin, the first two are result clauses and so have no distinguishing modal form in English, and that the third, a purpose-clause (used as object of rogaret), is to be translated by the regular English infin. of purpose. We have a similar purpose-clause below in l. 13, monuit ut, etc.
    - 16 12 ei: dat. after profuit.
    - 17 1 No. 22. ante, etc.: cf. note, 7 14.
  - 17 2 regebant, etc.: it is better here to change the voice, in order to preserve the emphasis which comes from the position of regebant, the city was ruled, etc.
  - 17 4 nomines: the subjv. of the second person, where we say 'one might,' etc., a common Latin usage.
  - 17 resset, should be, a future condition. The explanation of the tense will come later.—eum: this word can only be the object of coerceret, but it has this position because contrasted with alter.

- 17 8 coerceret, might, etc., another purpose-clause; cf. locupletaretur, 11 7.—quem morem, a custom which. This is the regular form in Latin when an antecedent is in apposition with something that goes before. Our form is different, as above.
- 17 9 saecula, for, etc.; the regular acc. of duration of time; § 423 (256); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. ii.—hoc tantum, this great; notice that in English we leave out the 'so,' which the Latin usually expresses, as here, by tantum.—diviseris: the subjv. is used, as in nomines, 1.4; but here there is a future condition. The form means 'should have,' etc., but we express the idea by the pres. ind. (a subjv. confounded with the indicative).
- 17 10 iam: used in reference to the earlier stage, 'the infancy'; now you will have, etc.
  - 17 11 quarum: sc. aetatum. numero: abl. of respect.
- 17 13 ad... revocantes, reckoning up; the calculi were counters (originally stories) by which the Romans did their figuring. The Chinese and Japanese still use a similar means, as do also the elementary grades in our own schools.
  - 17 14 statuerunt, made out; cf. note on instituerunt, 9 5.
- 17 15 redactas habuerunt: this form, the origin of the perf., etc., with 'have' in modern languages, is not exactly equivalent to that construction; it means 'held brought under,' etc., but as the perf., etc., often expresses the present state resulting from a preceding action, we may well say here had brought, etc. The partic. redactas agrees, of course, with the obj. gentis.
  - 17 17 saeculo and anno: abl. of time when. Cf. anno, 7 14.
  - 17 19 medium: i.e. the Mediterranean. iure, justly, abl. of manner.
- 17 24 bello . . . finito, at the end of, etc. Try in all cases to give the abl. abs. the shade of meaning required in English.
  - 17 25 aemulam, their rival.
- 17 26 quo anno, the same year that; cf. note on quem morem, 17 8.—e, in, though it properly means 'out of' (the year, or the events of that century).
- 17 27 necatum, institutum: sc. esse. These infinitive-clauses are the subjs. of mandatum est.
- 18 1 No. 23. eius, of the one, i.e. the father of the same name.—cecidit, fell. Cf. cecidit, struck down.—ad Cannas: though we say at here, yet the construction is not that of names of towns, which would be abl., Cannis, because the town as a spot is not meant, but its vicinity.
- 18 2 consul, in his consulship, or when he was consul. A word in apposition often expresses modifying ideas of this sort, inasmuch as the Latin has no pres. partic. of esse to connect two nouns.

- 18 3 paterni: agreeing with odi. Modifying phrases (as here, in Romanos) are often inserted between two words belonging together, in order to show the close connection. Here it is not merely 'his father's hatred,' but 'his father's hatred against the Romans,' forming a single complex idea.
- 18 4 profecturus esset, was on the point of setting out; mark the force of the first periphrastic conjugation. domum: in this construction (end of motion) domus admits a possessive, so we must say to his house, where otherwise we should say 'returned home.'
- 18 5 Tertiam: Roman girls were more commonly merely numbered secunda, tertia, quarta, etc., the first one having the gentile name (as Aemilia, Iulia).
- 18 6 tristiculam, that she was, etc., though the word is only a predacc. This shorthand form of expression is very common in Latin.
  - 18 7 tristis: how different in meaning from tristiculam above?
  - 18 8 Persa: the common Latin form for Perses.
- 18 9 artius, warmly; the comparative often differs from the positive only in suggesting, not a real comparison, but only a rather higher degree of the adj. or adv.—complexus, the tense may be disregarded in English. Cf. miratus, 7 18.—accipio, etc.: an omen was usually not valid unless accepted by the party concerned, for which this was the regular form.
- 18 10 omen: such chance sayings were regarded by the superstitious Romans as tending to bring about their own fulfilment. The idea still lurks under such expressions as 'Oh, don't speak of it!' when any calamity is mentioned.
- 18 12 Macedoniam: as some verbs compounded with in and some other prepositions acquire a meaning that requires a dat. (cf. gregi, 3 2), so others acquire a transitive meaning and can take an acc., as here. recta: abl. fem. of rectus, used as an adverb.
- 18 13 No. 24. Scipio: the conqueror of Hannibal. He was the son of Æmilius Paulus, above mentioned, and was adopted by one of the Scipios, so his full name was P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Æmilianus.
  - 18 14 militaret: see notes, 7 5, 16 5.
- 18 15 primus, etc., was the first to, etc., the regular way in Latin of expressing this idea.
- 18 16 quisquam: notice that this word is used only in connection with negative ideas, as 'not any one.'—nobilitate, etc.: abl. of cause or reason.
- 18 17 cuius magis saluti, etc., whose life ought to be spared and looked out for. The construction here, the impers. pass. of verbs which govern the dat., is a regular Latin one. In the active voice we might say eius saluti parce, spare his life, but only transitive verbs can be changed to the

personal passive, and if we want to express this in the passive form, his life is to be spared, we must say eius saluti parcendum est, or parci debet. By learning this difference of idiom once for all another great stumbling block may be removed.—deberet: this subjv., of the same class as the result-clauses, needs no special modal form in English.—sed: introducing, in opposition to what ought to have been done, the reason why it was not done. There is no sense in using 'buts,' 'fors,' and 'indeeds' mechanically. If the real connections are once noticed, these particles, of which there are so many in Latin, will become helps instead of hindrances.—tunc: notice the emphasis, at that time they vied with each other to see which could do the most, instead of saving themselves, as now.

- 18 18 clarissimus quisque . . . plurimum, the more distinguished a youth was, the more, etc. Another distinctive Latin idiom, expressing a kind of proportion. The persons or things are conceived as lined up in order, and each one (quisque), as he comes, is said to have the most of the quality among those who remain. pro amplificanda, etc.: gerundive construction; cf. adeundae Syriae, 12 15, and note.
- 18 20 deforme: the emphatic position and the gender of this word make it almost certain that it is the adj. belonging to an infin. or clause which is to come later. In English such a sentence would be perfectly clear, because the copula would be expressed with the adj., and the infinitive clause would be introduced by 'that,' as 'thinking it was unseemly when, etc., that.'
- 19 1 quos: the antecedent is his. This is the first case of the common precedence of the relative, like "whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you," to which the Latin form exactly corresponds. But this form has become obsolete in English except with the indef. rel. 'whoever,' etc. The best way is to read it in the obsolete English form, and translate it into the modern by those whom, etc. dignitate: another abl. of respect; so, too, virtute. praestaret, the dependent subjv. in indir. disc.; see note on occultaretur, 9 9. virtute: this word means properly 'manliness,' but as that was the chief Roman virtue it came to stand for all. Here it stands for prowess or heroism; beware of translating it 'virtue,' except where that word expresses the particular form of virtue indicated by the context.
- 19 2 ideoque, and it was for this reason that, a force given by the emphatic position. Aemilianus: translate Scipio, his regular English name. aliis... vitantibus, when others, etc.
- 19 4 No. 25. non defendissent, had failed to defend, a force often given by the simple verb with a negative; cf. 7 5 and note. Be sure that your translation is English, and not mongrel Latin.



- 19 5 occupare: here we may say occupy, as the word is used in a military sense, the only sense in which the two words correspond in the two languages; see note on occupavit, 7 15.
- 19 6 militum: for construction, see note on sestertium, 7 18.—his copiis: preserve the emphasis of position by changing the construction, these forces were under the command, or the like. This course is often necessary for a faithful rendering. For construction of the dat., see § 370. a (228. N.1); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429. I (386. I); cf. H-B. 376.
- 19 8 enim: introducing the explanation of the fact that the forces of all Greece were under the Spartan king; cf. note on sed, 18 17.
  - 19 9 cuperet: see note on saltarent, 7 4.
- 19 10 concessum esset, had not been, etc.; the modal form of this condition is apparently lost in English from the disappearance of our subjv.
- 19 11 idem cogitabant: do not translate literally, 'thought the same thing,' but had the same feelings or determination, or the like. Remember that you are expressing ideas in English, though you get them from the Latin.—contra Persas: connect with eduxit.
- 19 12 in Thermopylis: the preposition is used because not a town, but a pass is meant. Cf. ad Cannas, 18 1.
- 19 13 autem: notice what connection of ideas this word indicates here; do not translate it mechanically by 'but' or 'now' or 'moreover'; cf. 2 2, 10 5, and notes. quantis, how small. The Latin does not usually distinguish between small and great in such indefinite words. Of course if a thing is 'so great' it is equally 'so small,' according to the way you look at it. defenderentur: remember the indir. question; see note on esset, 11 21.
- 19 14 initio: abl. of time.—tum: opposed to initio.—quod: the reason is given as the writer's. If the reason had been given as that of Xerxes the subjv. would have been used. Cf. quoniam...fefellisset, 9 12, and note.
- 19 15 ponerent: notice that the clause after the idea of commanding is the same whatever the word is that expresses that idea. Here misit means sent with orders. If it were 'sent (to say) that he was there,' it would be se adesse, because then misit would be equivalent to a verb of saying.
- 19 16 quid ... responsum sit, what answer was given. The Latin puts the descriptive ideas preferably in a verb where we put them in a noun. Here the indir. question is used as the subj. of notum est.— illi: refers to Xerxes.
- 19 17 vobis, from you, but in Latin a dat. of reference. Cf. ei and liberis, 14 14.

- 19 18 itaque, in that way.
- 19 20 hominum: cf. militum, l. 6.
- 19 23 volneratus: strictly agreeing with numerus for form's sake, but we should conceive it as spoken of the Persians.
- 19 24 electorum militum, picked men, not 'chosen soldiers.' As soon as you have seen that this is what the Latin says, then abandon it for your own word.
- 19 25 etiam hi, even THESE. Etiam regularly throws emphasis on the following word.
- 19 27 pecunia, by money; cf. with a Graecis, l. 23. Observe that means is usually expressed without a preposition, while agency requires a or ab.
- 19 28 efficient: this, though an indir. question, is different from those before. The direct would be, not quavia... efficient, how are they effecting, but quavia efficient, how shall they effect. These have the same form in the indirect in Latin, but it appears from the context which is meant.
  - 20 3 acceperat: see note on accipio, 18 9.
- 20 4 aut...aut: notice that these words are mutually exclusive, so that the oracle might be interpreted that if the king (either of the Spartans or the Persians) was killed, the city need not be destroyed. Leonidas therefore satisfied the oracle by his own death.
- 20 10 No. 26. tristissimus, etc., I write this to you in a very sad state of mind, on account of the death of our friend Fundanus's younger daughter. This is a very good example of the great changes of idiom often necessary in translation. It will easily be seen that the English exactly reproduces the Latin, though in a very different form. The adj. agreeing with the omitted subject of scribo expresses the state of mind of the subject, a common Latin construction. The following abl. abs. expresses, as often in Latin, the cause of the preceding, though it properly only describes the circumstances; cf. note on superato Antonio, 7 14. qua puella, a girl than whom; see note on quem morem, 17 8. The abl. is due to the comparatives; § 406 (247); B. 217; G. 296; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416 and a. - nihil umquam: lit. 'nothing ever,' but our idiom is usually never any one, or no one ever. The Latin often uses nihil and the neuter of indefinite pronouns to refer to persons. Grammatically nihil is the obj. of vidi, and the comparative adjectives agree with it. - nec, and not, the negative going with modo and the conjunction connecting amabilius and dignius. See note on nec, 2 8.
  - 20 11 vita, immortalitate: abl. after dignius, the regular construction.
  - 20 12 illi . . . erat, she had or showed, illi being the dat. of possessor.

- 20 13 tamen, yet with it all. Cf. note, 6 6.
- 21 1 ut, how (exclamatory).
- 21 2 inhaerebat: this selection admirably illustrates the force of the imperf. tense in description. Note that the perfs., where they occur, mark the different steps of the narrative; cf. 5 2, 10 1, and notes. nos: = me, as often in Latin; cf. Eng. editorial 'we.'
- 21 3 paedagogos, attendants; the Romans at this time had the Greek custom of entrusting children to the care of a faithful old male slave, as a kind of chaperon.
- 21 4 pro suo quemque officio, each according to his station, i.e. their relation to her. The reflexive would naturally refer to the subject, but with quemque it refers to that word.
  - 21 6 illa, the child; cf. note, 16 2. constantia, heroism.
- 21 7 valetudinem, sickness, the most common meaning of the word—tulit: notice the narrative perf. among so many descriptive imperfs.; so also duravit; see general note above on 1. 2.
  - 21 8 ipsam se, even herself.
- 21 9 viribus: from vis, abl. of separation after destitutam. hic: i.e. vigor. illi, with her, according to English idiom, though expressed by the dat. of reference.
- 21 11 relinqueret: a result-clause connected by the relative quo, whereby, i.e. 'the death of one so lovely and heroic' had as a result 'that,' etc.
- 21 12 desideri, for bereavement, properly 'the sense of loss' or 'missing.'—plane, truly, surely.—acerbum: almost regular for the death of young persons.
- 21 13 morte, than the death, the regular abl. after comparatives (see qua puella, 20 10); cf. this with vita, 20 11, which depends on the idea of dignus, while here the abl. depends on the comparative idea, as in both cases is shown by the context.
  - 21 14 nuptiarum: Roman girls were married very young.
- 21 15 quod gaudium: placed first for emphasis; cf. note, 9 8. quo maerore: in our idiom, *into what grief.* In an exchange either the thing got or the thing given may be in the abl. as the price of a barter.
- 21 18 quod erogaturus fuerat, what he had intended to spend. Again a first periphrastic; cf. profecturus esset, 18 4.—hoc: antecedent of quod.—tus, etc.: these were for the funeral, to be burned on the funeral pile.—impenderetur: this is subjv. for the imv. of direct discourse. Cf. the construction of moveret, 9 11, and see note.
- 21 20 No. 27. Aemilius Paulus: the same one mentioned in No. 23.

- 21 21 formae insignis: note that qualities are described by either the gen. or the abl. Cf. genere, 15 5, and note.
- 21 22 duos: one was the Scipio spoken of in No. 24, the other Quintus Fabius Maximus.
- 21 23 sibi ipsi denegavit, he himself renounced, lit. 'denied to himself' by giving them in adoption.—ei: notice again the dat. of the person rendered from where we might have looked for the abl. Cf. Augusto, 8 4.
- 21 24 alter, one. Of course either of two may be 'the other,' according to the way you look at them. triumphum: i.e. after his victory over Perses; see No. 23. funere: abl. of means with praecessit. quartum ante diem, three days before, according to our reckoning. So below, post diem tertium = two days after.
  - 21 25 conspectus: partic. expressing concession, though seen.
- 21 26 qui, he who; cf. note on quos, 19 1.—ad donandos, etc., had so many children as to give them away. Cf. this gerundive construction with similar cases, 12 15, 14 6.
  - 21 27 in orbitate, etc., was suddenly left childless.
- 21 28 quem: connecting rel., as so often; cf. quod gaudium, etc., l. 15, above, and note.—sustinuerit: subjv. in an indir. question, which is a kind of object of reliquit.
- 23 1 rebus, etc., his exploits, the regular expression. apud, before, the regular expression in such a case. adiciendo: abl. of the gerund, of which clausulam is the direct object. Observe that the gerund has the construction of an active verbal noun, the gerundive of a passive verbal adjective.
  - 23 2 nulli ambiguum, no one in doubt, lit. 'doubtful to no one.'
- 23 3 ne quid mali, that... some misfortune. The partit. gen. with a neuter pronoun is regular in Latin for such ideas; cf. quid rei, 10 12.
- 23 4 fortuna: this idea of great fortune being the forerunner of ill was very prevalent among the ancients, and is often found lingering in modern times.—moliretur, was planning, in sense like the colloquial 'getting up.' For construction, cf. ne occuparet, 14 1.—Iovem, etc.: these were the three official Capitoline deities, the tutelary protectors of Rome. Their full titles belong to the solemnity of Roman ritualism. Such things could not be lightly referred to, but must be given in proper form.
- 23 6 immineret: what he would say would be imminet, a simple present condition, but this is changed to the subjv. on the principle of indir. disc.; cf. note on fefellisset, 9 13; technically the subjv. of the 'integral part'; \$ 593 (342); B. 324; G. 629; H. 652. I (529. ii. N.<sup>1</sup>. I); H-B. 539.—totum, wholly.
  - 23 7 adnuendo: gerund as abl. of means, followed by votis, indir. obj.
  - 23 8 id egerunt, they have provided.



- 23 9 vestro ingemiscerem, should bewail yours. vestro [casu] is abl. of cause, and ingemiscerem a much stronger word than doleatis. Technically the whole expression is an ut-clause of result in apposition with id.
  - 23 11 No. 28. eo: i.e. spectaculo.
- 23 12 homines, etc.: a common practice with the Romans, of which the Spanish bull fight is the only survival.
- 23 13 capitis, to death, a regular idiom, the so-called gen. of the penalty.—essent: this in the decree would be sunt, but it is changed by indir. disc.; cf. note on immineret, 1. 6.
- 23 16 ludorum: all such holiday shows of whatever kind were called ludi.
- 23 17 circum: the more common place for this was the arena, but the circus was sometimes used. *Arena* is a better word for it in English.
  - 23 21 cui, whose, as often; cf. domino, 4 12.
  - 23 25 meritus esset: indir. question.
  - 24 1 ita narravit, told his story thus.
  - 24 2 domini: we should say from.
- 24 5 etiam: see note, 19 25.—iam...desperabam, I now began to, etc. The imperf., especially with iam, often has this force. Cf. deplorabat, 10 11.
- 24 6 effugiendi: students often confuse the gerund and the gerundive. Bearing in mind that the latter is always an adj. in agreement with a noun, such a case as this must necessarily be a gerund. Cf. this with the gerundive in 12 15.
- 24 7 sed leo, the lion, however. clamore, cries, dolores, pain. Notice that the languages do not agree, even in their conceptions of number.
- 24 8 autem: here does little more than to mark the change of subject from leo to ego. See notes, 2 2, 10 5, 19 13.
  - 24 9 gratus: cf. note on lactus, 1 2.
  - 24 11 una: an adverb.
  - 24 12 venando: abl. of gerund, expressing means. Cf. adiciendo, 23 1.
  - 24 14 taedium, etc: change the voice of the verb, I was seized with, etc.
- 24 15 discedere: the infin. added to a verb to complete its meaning, as in English; hence called the complementary infinitive. Many verbs take either this or the ut-construction.
- 24 16 ut venaretur, to hunt: infin. in English; but remember that the Latin infin. does not express purpose.
  - 24 18 capitis: cf. 23 13.
  - No. 29. S.: for salutem, greeting; sc. dicit.
- 24 23 S. V., etc.: i.e. Si vales bene est, ego valeo. See 1 1 and note.

   velim cures, etc., I want you to take very good care of. velim is a less

emphatic and more polite form of speech than volo; as we say 'I should like,' instead of 'I wish,' and cures, etc., is an object-clause of purpose without ut (properly hortatory), a common construction after volo.

- 24 25 quod, in that.
- 25 2 novi: see note on mali, 23 3.—facies ut sciam, you will let me know; the result-clause ut sciam is a kind of obj. of facies.
- 25 3 D.: for data, i.e. handed to the messenger (as we might say 'posted'). Hence our word 'date.'—IIII Nonas, etc.: the Romans had a complicated system of dates, originally connected with the moon's phases. The date here is June 2d, three days before the Nones, which fell on the 5th in June.
  - No. 29. S. D.: i.e. Salutem Dicit.
- 25 4 Tusculanum, our Tusculan estate. The Romans often had villas in various parts of the country, like a modern English nobleman. nos: instead of the sing., like the royal and editorial 'we'; cf. nos, 21 2. venturos: with the fut. partic. esse is very often omitted, as here. Nonis: i.e. the 7th, on which day the Nones fell in October.
- 25 5 ut: sc. cura, often omitted in familiar style.— The same thing occurs in l. 7 (cura) ut sit.—plures, several, i.e. more than one.
  - 25 6 diutius, some time; see note on artius, 18 9.
- 25 8 valitudinem: this word means health, either good or bad. Here, of course, it means the former; but see 21 7.
  - 25 9 Kal.: the 1st; in full, Kalendis Octobribus.
  - 25 9 Venusino: another villa of Cicero's.
- 25 11 No. 30. bello: abl. of separation.—se: obj. of abstineret; many words which later became intransitive were in classical Latin transitive and required an object; cf. such words as 'abstain' and 'refrain,' coming from the later usage.—abstineret, a purpose-clause depending on missus, which here has the same force as in 19 15; see note.
- 25 11 quo...lacessebat: not part of what he was ordered to say. If it were, the subjv. would be used. The ind. shows it to be an explanatory phrase thrown in by the author; § 593. a (342. a); G. 628. R. a; H. 652. I (529. ii. N.<sup>1</sup>. 2); H-B. 550.
  - 25 12 prompto animo, with ready courtesy.
- 25 13 suam: i.e. dexteram, suggested, as often, by the opposition.
  - 25 14 ut, when or as, in this sense always with the indicative.
- 25 16 interposuisset: subjv., as implying a thought of Popilius; see note on fefellisset, 9 13.
- 25 17 prius: take with quam. quo, on which, depending on the force of the prep. in the verb. So also circulo, in the next line. In such

cases the preposition may be repeated before the noun with the effect of increasing the emphasis.

- 25 18 excedas: the subjv. may be neglected here, as it expresses no apparent modal relation in English. quod:..referam, for me to carry back, a purpose-clause with a rel. Note that it is the purpose idea that requires the subjv. mood, and not any particular introductory word.
  - 25 19 locutum: sc. esse.
- 25 20 crederes, one (or lit. 'you') would have thought, the regular way of expressing that idea. fore ne: a late usage for non fore ut, that it should n't happen, etc., i.e. that Ptolemy should have no further cause for complaint, which is perhaps the best translation.
  - 25 21 tum demum, then only, 'then and not till then.'
- 25 23 abscisa gravitas: as this implies freedom from effusiveness, it may be used as well with animi as with sermonis; we may say abrupt dignity of manner and speech, or divide the idea into two. momento, vigorous action, i.e. the influence exerted by his prompt and forceful demand.
- 25 24 Aegypti, that of Egypt; in such cases the Latin practically never uses a pronoun.
- 26 2 No. 31. sonus, strepitus, rattling, clanking; such words as these vary much in their translation, because they are very indefinite in their meaning.—si attenderes: the subjv. is here used on account of the second person referring to an indefinite subj. 'you' ('any one'). Neither the first person 'we' nor the third 'any one' would require it, nor would it be used of a definite person addressed.
- 26 4 reddebatur, were heard (plur. in English on account of the two subjs.). Notice that though reddere means 'give out' from the object, yet we can equally well translate by its effect on the person.
- 26 5 confectus, disfigured. This word means either to 'make up,' i.e. complete, make, or 'do up,' i.e. exhaust, destroy, as here.—cruribus, manibus: abl. of instrument, though we say on.
- 26 6 inhabitantibus: the agent of an action is often by a change of the point of view put in the dative.
- 26 7 noctes: this word can be made the subj. of the passive vigilabantur because that verb is transitive in Latin, spent in watching.
  - 26 9 memoria imaginis, the remembered vision.
- 26 10 oculis: dat. after in-errabat; cf. copiis, 19 7.—longiorque, etc.: i.e. the terror outlasted its cause.
- 26 11 solitudine: abl. of the penalty after damnata as a judicial word. More often the penalty is expressed by the gen., as in capitis damnati, 23 13.—tota, wholly; see note on lactus, 1 3.

27 1 proscribebatur: the regular word for advertise. An advertisement 'to let' from the walls in Pompeii is given below:

#### INSVLA ARRIANA

POLLIANA CN ALLEI NIGIDI MAI
LOCANTVR EX (K) IVLIIS PRIMIS TABERNAE
CVM PERGVLIS SVIS ET CENACVLA
EQVESTRIA ET DOMVS CONDVCTOR
CONVENITO PRIMVM CN ALLEI
NIGIDI MAI SER.

"The Arria Pollia block of Cn. Alleius Nigidius Maius to let from 1st of July next, shops with their show windows, first-class gentlemen's chambers and a dwelling. Apply to Primus, slave of Cn. Alleius Nigidius Maius."

- tamen: i.e. though it was abandoned, yet it was advertised to be sold to some stranger.
- 27 2 seu quis . . . vellet, in case any one should, etc. This is really a fut. condition thrown back into past time by being quoted from the advertisement.
- 27 4 suspecta, suspicious, i.e. he thought something was the matter to make it so cheap. omnia: the second acc. after doceo retained with the pass.; like 'I teach you Latin,' and 'you are taught Latin'; § 396. b. N. (239. c. R.); B. 178. 2; G. 339; H. 411. 1 (374. 1); H-B. 393. a. nihilo, tanto: abl. of degree of difference; cf. paulo. 10 15.
  - 27 6 sterni, a bed to be made; used impersonally.
  - 27 7 pugillaris: see Fig. 43.
  - 27 8 animum: obj. of intendit.
  - 27 9 audita simulacra, imaginary sounds.
- 27 10 ubique: i.e. (the same as) everywhere else. silentium: we may supply erat, but it is not necessary. concuti: in rapid narrative, a description is often expressed by the infin. alone, the so-called historical infin., though it is not narrative but descriptive. The infins. that follow are in the same construction.
- 27 12 offirmare, etc., he kept his mind fixed and placed it as a screen before his ears, i.e. he tried to make himself deaf to the noises by keeping his mind occupied.
  - 27 13 ut, as it were, just as if.
  - 27 15 vocanti: we may supply alicui, but see note on oranti, 6 6.
  - 27 16 exspectaret: obj. clause of a command. Cf. note on misit,

- 19 15.—ceris: the tablets for writing were made of wood coated with wax, and written on with a sharp point.
- 27 17 illa: the apparition. catenis, etc., rattled the chains against, lit. 'with the chains.'
- 27 18 respicit, looks round and sees. innuentem: supply eam, which is unnecessary in Latin; see note on vocanti, l. 15. idem quod: our 'as' is often equal to a rel. pron., and is sometimes represented by one in Latin, as here. moratus: for tense and translation, see note, 7 18.
- 27 20 aream: the houses of the ancients were regularly built around one or more open courts, one of which is meant here. The colonnade surrounding the court and the whole apartment was called the peristyle; see Fig. 15.
- 27 24 nuda et exesa: agreeing with quae; vinculis is abl. of cause or means, depending on exesa.
- 27 26 conditis: used like our word 'lay' of a ghost. The body being properly buried, the spirit was laid to rest and the house was free from it. mānibus: from mānes.
- 28 2 No. 32. hora: the Romans reckoned time, not as we do, by uniform mean time, but by 'hours,' which were the twelfth part of the time from sunrise to sunset or *vice versa*. The second hour would begin somewhere about seven o'clock, and the fourth about nine.
- 28 3 id quia, etc.: the Latin often continues the indir. disc. to a great length without any verb of saying. We rarely do this, but repeat the verb of saying. It often clears up obscurities to do this in translating; thus, He said that this, inasmuch as, etc., or better, treating the acc. subjs. as nominatives, This, he said, inasmuch as, etc., could be known beforehand and predicted.
- 28 4 naturali ordine, in the course of nature. Cf. bellicam, 7 1, and note.
  - 28 5 certi: pred. adj. after sint.
- 28 6 sint: as the indir. disc. still continues, the verbs in the subordinate clauses are of course in the subjv., and in the principal clauses in the infin. pleno orbe, exiguo cornu: modify fulgere, of which lunam is the subject.
- 28 7 mirarentur: Gallus's own word would be miramini, but now the reader is addressed instead of the soldiers, and hence the soldiers become 'they' in the third person. The tense naturally changes because the time is past to us, and the subjv. is idiomatic, the clause being subordinate and in ind. disc. Cf. notes on No. 14, p. 9. Observe that our method is not very different, except that we do not change the mood. Therefore just as, he said, they were not surprised, etc., so they ought not, etc.

- AB 8 obscurari: the Latin made much use of antithesis, setting one word off against another, whereby many words which otherwise would be repeated could be left out the second time, as in 'John went up the street, James [went] down [the street].' So here fulgere has lunam expressed, but when its antithesis obscurari occurs, this word is to be supplied. trahere in prodigium, to regard as a prodigy.
- 28 9 debere: its subj. is eos (i.e. milites), which is occasionally omitted. quam, etc.: it is well to change the voice in translating, the night which was followed by, or, still more freely, the night preceding the 4th of September. pridie, etc.: this phrase, being a date, is in apposition with dies, as if it were nom., i.e. 'the day before the Nones.'
- 28 11 videri: hist. infin., cf. 27 10 and note. Macedonas, etc.: change the voice in translating, the Macedonians were moved, etc. Strictly Macedonas is the obj. of movit, the subject being the general idea of the eclipse, represented in Eng. by 'it.'
  - 28 13 vates: i.e. portenderunt.
  - 28 14 suam, its regular or usual.
- No. 33. Erasmus, the contemporary of Luther, a great wit and the most accomplished man of letters in Europe since the decline of learning, left a considerable body of writings of various kinds much in the style of Lucian. His style is occasionally unclassical, but in the main is the purest of modern Latin. On account of some irregular freedoms of speech, these extracts may well be read with less attention to the syntax. Attention, however, is called to points that might mislead the learner. This story and the two following are taken from a piece entitled Convivium Fabulosum, 'a story-telling banquet.'
- 28 16 sacrificus: a late word for 'priest' in the modern Christian sense. invitārat: = invitaverat; § 181. a (128. a. 1); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. 1. unum atque alterum, one or two, the regular Latin expression. bellum homunculum: taken with unum atque alterum, jolly fellows.
- 28 17 obvios: plur., on account of unum, etc. Translate whom he met.
  - 28 18 frigidam, without a fire, i.e. with nothing cooking.
  - 28 19 illi: with him; cf. 21 9.
  - 28 20 consilio: abl. with opus.
- 28 21 quicum, with whom, qui being used for the abl.; § 150. b (104. c); B. 90. 2. a; G. 105. 3; H. 182. 1 (187. 1); H-B. 140. b.—ageret, did business. The subjv. is late and unclassical.
- 28 23 carnibus: from caro. veste tectam, concealed under his clothing. deferebat, started to carry, etc.

28 26 deposito pignore: i.e. the stolen kettle was to be left as a pledge. Notice that the abl. abs. expressing circumstance may be used of things future as well as past.



F1G. 103. OLLA FICTILIS.

- 28 28 accipiat: continues the construction of qui . . . sumat.
  - 29 3 prospectum est, arrangements were made.
- 29 8 hoc . . . sacrifico, to suspect a priest of this ; lit. 'this to a priest.'
- 29 9 itum est, they went: perf. pass. of eo used impersonally. - exploratum (sc. est), search was made; also impersonal.
- 29 10 ne musca, etc., not a sign of, etc. quid multis (sc. verbis opus), what need of many words? i.e. to be brief.
  - 29 12 quo tempore, at the time when.
  - 29 13 commodato, as a loan; dat. of service.
  - 29 14 unde, from whom, as often.
  - 29 21 ipsi cuius erat, to the very man that owned it.
  - 30 3 No. 34. aptas, inventas: agree with ocreas, understood.
- 30 8 succinebat illi laudanti, chimed in with his words of praise; cf. note on illa, 21 6.
  - 30 10 placeret: cf. fefellisset, 9 13.
- 30 12 usu venit tibi, happened to you (in your experience). The following ut-clause is a kind of subj. of venit.
- 30 15 veniat, faceres: this construction is irregular but is found in colloquial Latin. Both verbs ought to be in the same tense; but the English translation would be 'should' in both cases, so we may neglect the irregularity.
- 30 16 consequerer: translate as if consequar, for which it is used; so, too, facerem, l. 18.
  - 30 19 pro calceis, for, etc., in the sense of 'striving for a prize.'
- 30 25 ne quis remoretur: a negative command (prohibition) in which the subjv. is regularly used.
  - 30 27 praebere: hist. infin.; cf. concuti, 27 10, and note.
- 31 6 negabat, etc., said that (he had) not, etc., the usual meaning of nego.
  - 31 9 nec habere, etc., and that he has nothing to complain of.
  - 31 11 umbra asini: cf. No. 18, p. 11.
- 31 12 No. 35. summam: a noun; below, in l. 16, we have the same form as an adjective.
- 31 13 sed argenteae: i.e. it was not a large sum, but being of silver it seemed large.

- 31 18 commodaret: subjv. of purpose without ut; § 565. a. (331. f. R.); B. 295. 8; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); cf. H-B. 502. 3. a. ftn.<sup>2</sup>.
- 31 19 quo, in order that; often used for ut when there is a comparative in the clause.
  - 31 20 ipsius: i.e. the priest.
- 31 23 aedis: here in the sense of store or shop as at the time referred to the shops were in the houses.
  - 31 % causatus est, made an excuse that.
- 32 4 multa (we may supply verba): cf. multis, with the same meaning, 29 11.
  - 32 5 averso sacrifico: i.e. when his back was turned.

## II. BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY.

- 33 CYRUS, KING OF PERSIA: the founder of the Persian Empire, who reigned B.C. 559-529.
  - 33 4 imperio: dat. with parebant; cf. regi, 15 19.
- 33 8 coniuncta esset: the subjv. here is an integral part of the object of fear, the main idea of which is compressed into nihil. The modal idea appears in the natural translation, should be, etc. Cambysi: indir. obj. of concessit.
- 33 10 ducere: the infin. is often used instead of the ut-clause after verbs of permission.
- 33 12 liberaretur, free himself from; a not infrequent force of the pass. voice.
- 33 15 ei misericordia, his pity. The dat. of reference in connection with a verb often has the force of a gen. or possess. regio, of the king; cf. bellicam, 7 1.—idem . . . imperavit, gave the same orders. Notice that the Latin often puts descriptive ideas into verbs where we use expressive nouns.
- 33 17 actatis: gen. of quality. Quality is also expressed by the abl.; cf. genere divino, 15 5.—ante breve tempus, a short time before. Notice the difference of idiom.
  - 34 The Cylinder Inscription of Cyrus (extract).
- 13b. The blackheaded peoples whom he [Merodach] caused his [Cyrus's] hands to capture,
- 14. he [Cyrus] provided for in right and justice. Merodach, the great lord, the protector of his people, for (?) his deeds prospered him, joyfully looked upon his pure hand and heart,
- 15. commanded him to march against Babylon his [Merodach's] city, caused him to take the road to Tintir [Babylon], like a friend and ally advanced at his side.
- 16. His widespread troops, numberless as the waters of a river, marched at his side in battle array [lit. 'with weapons in place'].

- 17. Without fight and battle he caused him to enter the city Shuanna [Babylon]. His city Babylon he spared. In the city Shabsha he delivered into his hand Nabunaïd, the king who did not reverence him.
- 18. The citizens of Babylon, all of them, all the people of Shumer and of Akkad, the great men and the governors, bowed beneath him, kissed his foot, rejoiced in his rule, (and) their faces shone (with joy).
- 19. The lord who by his help made the dead to live, who spared all of them in ruin (?) and woe (?), greatly blesses him (and) makes his name powerful.
- 20. I am Cyrus, king of hosts, great king, mighty king, king of Tintir [Babylon], king of Shumer and Akkad, king of the four regions,
- 21. son of Cambyses, great king, king of the city Anshan, grandson of Cyrus, great king, king of Anshan, great-grandson of Shishpish, great king, king of Anshan,
- 22a. lasting seed of royalty, whose rule Bel and Nabu love, and desire his reign (?) for their heart's ease.
- 35 4 ludis: dat. with compound; § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.—cum illis ludis interesset: the cum obviously must connect the verb, otherwise the verb would have no connective. Hence ludis cannot depend upon cum, but must be in the dat. after interesset.—regi: cf. imperio, 33 4.
  - 35 10 interrogando: abl. of gerund expressing means.
- 35 12 excitatus esset: notice that here we suddenly come upon a subjv. in an independent clause. Of such there are only two classes. The more common of these is used for commands, etc., here impossible. The other class is used for the conclusion of a condition, which this must therefore be. Fut. conditions are expressed by the fut. tenses of the ind. or by the pres. and perf. subjv. So that this case must be one contrary to fact, i.e. where a thing would (or would not) have happened if something else had (or had not) happened. This sort of condition regularly takes the imperf. or pluperf. subjv. in both the principal and the subordinate clause.
- 35 13 solliciteris: this verb is really in an indir. deliberative question, like efficerent, 1928. The direct would be the same in Latin, 'Why should you be anxious?' The answer is, 'There is no reason.' When these are put together in the narrative the question becomes indirect.
  - 35 16 quod, because.
- 35 19 delectatus esset: the ordinary indir. question (not deliberative), simply 'had enjoyed.'
- 35 23 cum...esset: in this case the circumstances indicated by cum with the subjv. are treated as a cause, and the construction is called that of cum-causal, though in essence it is not different from the descriptive cum that we have had; cf. note, 7 5.
- 35 26 libertate: i.e. that which they had formerly enjoyed before they were conquered by the Medes.

- 36 6 post finitos labores, after the tasks were ended. This idiomatic use of the perf. partic. is very common in Latin, cf. ab urbe condita.
- 36 11 eligerent: a different sort of indir. question, where the direct would be eligatis, 'would you choose' (if you should have the chance) a conclusion depending on an implied fut. condition. The tense of this, however, is changed when it is reported, as here, indirectly after a verb of past time. Compare this with excitatus esset, 35 12, where the past tense belongs to the idea and is independent of the time of the context.
- 36 12 delectemur: here we have the same kind of conclusion of a fut. condition as in the preceding line in its proper and direct form.
- 36 13 habebitis, si... liberaveritis: a vivid fut. condition; cf. the same form, 33 5, and the conditions in ll. 12 and 13.
- 36 18 tumultu, uprising, the regular word in Latin for any disturbance that is not regular war, as a rebellion or the like.
- 36 20 optaveris: notice that the Latin likes to look forward to the time of completing an action; hence the fut. perf. is often used where we should use the fut. or even the present.
- 36 24 cum: here causal; cf. cum, 35 23, and see those in 25 and 28 below, where there is no cause expressed, but description or circumstance.
  - 37 6 Croeso: see No. 21.
  - 37 8 ipse: as distinguished from Harpagus in the next line.
- 37 12 earum iniurias: the genitive, like our 'of' and sometimes our possess., expresses two different relations. Either the genitive may be the thing acting (subjective) or it may be the thing acted on (objective). Thus 'Cæsar's wrongs' may be those inflicted upon Cæsar (objective) or by Cæsar (subjective). The context must usually be consulted to determine which is meant in any given case, as here. iniurias: this word, in accordance with its derivation (in-ius), always implies some injustice or wrong, not mere 'injury.'
- 37 14 erat, there was, as often when in this first position.—autem, now; cf. 2 2.
- 37 15 ante muros: notice that the first position in the sentence is the most emphatic. Hence any word or phrase that stands there is important for some reason or other. When there is no other emphasis the subject usually stands there (except for connecting words), that being, as the thing talked about, the most emphatic. When, as here, some other word or phrase comes first, that word is the most so, more commonly because opposed to something else coming later. We express this emphasis by a stress of voice, and if one can become accustomed to express it so in thought, the first word will often give a clue to the meaning of the whole sentence. Here ante muros, if emphasized, suggests an opposition to some other

place. This is found in the next sentence, introduced by the adversative sed, 'In the field, etc., . . . but in the siege it was otherwise.'

37 20 ne... sentirent, that they might not, etc., shown to be a purpose by the use of ne. If it were ut non it would be a result-clause and mean 'so that they did not,' etc.

37 23 loco: the abl. alone for the 'way by, in, or over which,' etc., often called the abl. of route; cf. semitis, 9 25, where the meaning is more obvious.

37 24 murorum, etc.: gen. with potiti sunt; § 410. a (249. a); B. 330; G. 407. d; H. 458. 3 (410. v. 3); H-B. 353.

37 29 Iudaeos, etc.: see 2 Chron. 36. 22-23.

38 2 restituerent: cf. ducere, 33 10.

38 8 Massagetarum: subjective gen.; see note, 37 12.

38 13 faceret: cf. efficerent, 19 28, and solliciteris, 35 13; in the direct it would be quid faciam?—Croesum: cf. No. 21.

38 14 suaderet: in the direct, quid suades?

38 15 postulasset: cf. fefellisset, 9 13.

38 20 relicta: adj. agreeing with castra.

38 27 nisi id feceris, etc.: a vivid fut. condition; § 516. I (307. I); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. a. Note again the use of the fut. perf. where we should use the fut. or even the pres.; cf. 33 5, 36 13, 36 30.

39 2 illi, to her, i.e. Tomyris.

39 8 dimicabant: notice how this imperf. of description is surrounded by perfs. of narration; cf. note, 21 2.

39 11 cum diceret, saying. — quod: its antecedent is the thought of the principal clause; trans. as.

THE STORY OF ULYSSES. - Ulysses, a celebrated Greek hero, took a prominent part in the long siege of Troy. After the fall of the city, he set out with his followers on his homeward voyage to Ithaca, an island of which he was king; but, being driven out of his course by northerly winds, he was compelled to touch at the country of the Lotus Eaters, who are supposed to have lived on the north coast of Libya (Africa). Some of his comrades were so delighted with the lotus fruit that they wished to remain in the country, but Ulysses compelled them to embark again, and continued his voyage. He next came to the island of Sicily and fell into the hands of the giant Polyphemus, one of the Cyclops. After several of his comrades had been killed by the monster, Ulysses made his escape by stratagem, and next reached the country of the Winds. Here he received the help of Æolus, king of the winds, and having set sail again arrived within sight of Ithaca; but owing to the folly of his companions the winds became suddenly adverse, and they were again driven back. They then touched at an island occupied by Circe, a powerful enchantress, who exercised her charms on the companions of Ulysses and turned them into swine. By the help of the god Mercury Ulysses himself not only escaped this fate, but forced Circe to restore her victims to human shape. After staying a year with Circe, Ulysses again set out and eventually reached his home.

- 40 1 annos: the regular acc. of 'time how long.'—obsessam esse: notice that constat, being an impers. verb, can take an acc. with its infin. as a kind of subject.
  - 40 5 redire: a complementary infin. with maturaverunt.
- 40 6 magno cum gaudio: note that manner is rarely expressed by a noun standing alone. Regularly we have cum, or an adjective, or sometimes both, as here, with the noun. Cf. grato animo, 6 12.
  - 40 7 erat: cf. 37 14.
- 40 8 quem, etc.: some care is necessary in translating such an expression, inasmuch as in English we do not use relatives in clauses already dependent, such as the indir. disc. construction. We must therefore use the direct disc., who, some say, etc.
- 40 10 constat: again with infinitive clause as subj., as in line 2. It is not a real subject, but takes the place of one.
- **40** 11 **antequam**: notice that this is a relative form, 'before...than,' and hence introduces a new clause, though we translate it simply *before*, which does not *necessarily* have a relative force.
- 40 15 videndae: notice that the gerundive, being a verbal adjective and originally passive, agrees with its noun and hence we naturally change its voice in translation. Observe also that when a word belongs in sense to two or more nouns it very often agrees only with the nearest, but, as here, is taken also with the other.
- **40** 16 postquam, after; notice that the relative part of this word is usually dropped in English, though its connective force remains. Cf. antequam, above. milia: cf. annos, l. 1.
- **40** 18 aliae alias, different. This is a very common Latin idiom where different predicates are distributed among different subjects, some to one, others to others, or simply different.
- 40 19 qua: the vehicle in Latin is usually treated as means, and has no preposition.
- 40 22 referrent: a purpose-clause, here introduced by a relative. Translate by the English infin. to, etc.
  - 41 1 facere: cf. redire, 40 5. tamen: see note, 6 6.
- 41 2 quaerunt, were seeking for. Dum is regularly followed by the pres., hence the real time must be determined by the context.—quibusdam: dat. after obviam facti (meeting).

- 41 3 accidit: here followed by an ut-clause as a kind of subject. Impers. verbs are followed by ut-clauses or by the infin. according to their meaning. Cf. the construction with constat, 40 2 and 10.
- **41** 5 patriae, sociorum: gen. with obliti; § 350. b (219. 1); B. 206. b; G. 376; H. 454 (406. ii); H-B. 350.
- 41 6 mansuros: sc. esse, which is almost regularly omitted in the fut. infinitive.
  - 41 7 cibo: cf. felicitate, 5 13, and note.
  - 41 8 at: used here, as usual, to mark the change of subject.
- 41 14 secum: a dependent clause that contains the words or thought of the main subj. may refer to that subj. by the use of se. Hence an apparent ambiguity of reference often arises, but the context usually at once determines it, as here. In this use se is called an indirect reflexive. Cf. se, 3 11, and note.
  - 41 16 cum ita essent: cf. cum esset, 35 23.
- 41 22 solvit: lit. 'let go,' referring to casting off the lines before sailing.
- 41 23 diei: this gen. depends on postridie, which, though regarded as an adverb, is really a noun with an adjective in the locative case and so takes a gen. like any other noun. It is like the obsolete on the morrow of that day.'
- 42 2 quod habitari: it happens that in this case the English admits the same construction as the Latin. It is well in such cases, in order to gain freedom in translation, to translate in both ways, which they found was inhabited (cf. 40 8) and which they found to be inhabited.
  - 42 5 quod cum: cf. quo cum, 41 12.
- 42 7 quis...incoleret: notice that an indir. question can depend upon any word that suggests a question, as here mirantur, were wondering (cf. quaerunt, 41 2).
- 42 9 quidem: the most common use of this word is to introduce an emphatic concession, to be sure, it is true. At any rate, it sets off the word that it follows against another which is to come after, as here sed ingenti, etc. Often it admits of no formal translation, but is best expressed by intonation of voice or emphasis in reading.—specie, etc.: abl. of quality or description. Cf. aetatis, 33 17, and note.
- 42 10 autem: opposing the certainty they now had in regard to the Cyclops to their first surprise at the monster. As quidem refers forward, so autem refers backward. The Romans could have hardly read their own language without these signboards all along the road.
- 43 5 simul ac viderunt: notice that these temporal connectives, ubi, postquam, simul ac, etc., which take the perf. ind., refer simply to

time, and do not express circumstances like cum with the subjv.; cf. 40 16, 41 13, and 18 14.

- 43 12 mercatores, etc.: persons who visited islands would naturally be either traders or pirates.
- 43 13 praedandi: the gerund being a passive used impersonally (cf. the gerundive) is treated as active and its passive origin disregarded, and it does not, like the gerundive, have a noun to agree with, just as pugnatum est, they fought, needs no subject in Latin.
- 43 14 causa: in this sense the word always follows a genitive depending on it; cf. 'for Heaven's sake.'
- 43 15 sibi: cf. secum, 41 14.—iniuria, harm, but with the idea of injustice; cf. 37 12.
- 43 16 vecti essent: subjv. as a part of his question; cf. fefellisset, 9 13, and postulasset, 38 15.
- 43 17 sibi praecavendum esse: an impers. sentence turned into indir. disc. As in 9 8 verum est linteum becomes verum esse linteum, so mihi praecavendum est, I must take care, becomes sibi praecavendum esse, though in this case there is no subject to become accusative. The personal construction should be used in English, that he must, etc.
  - 43 22 dum haec geruntur, while this was going on; cf. 41 2.
  - 43 23 occupavit: not 'occupied'; see Vocabulary.
  - 43 25 postquam: see simul ac, l. 5, and note.
- **43** 26 humi: see § 427. a (258. d); B. 232. 2; G. 411. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 484. 2 (426. 2); H-B. 449. a. quod cum, etc.: cf. 9 8, and note.
  - 44 2 in eo erat ut: was on the point of, a not uncommon Latin idiom.
- 44 3 agendum: sc. esse. The subject is nihil. Remember that the second periphrastic is always passive.
- 44 4 antequam . . . faceret, before he should do, etc. The subjv., showing that the clause is a part of the plan expressed in explorare, gives it this force. The ind. would mean 'before he did this' and would imply that he did it; cf. 40 11. The English form, however, is ambiguous, and the context must show whether there is a 'should' implied in it or not.
- 44 6 nihil sibi, etc.: this is an easy example of the fut. conditional sentence in indir. disc. Ulysses would say nihil mihi proderit, si P. interfecero, it will do me no good if I kill (lit. 'shall have killed') Polyphemus. The fut. proderit in the principal clause becomes in the indir. disc. the fut. infin. profuturum (esse), and interfecero in the subordinate clause becomes interfecisset on account of the past tense of intellexit, the governing verb. Here again we have a typical example to learn by heart.
  - 44 9 quae cum, etc.: cf. 41 16.

- 44 13 multis et magnis: notice that the Latin connects two adjs. used together by a conj. We say many great.
- 44 14 dubium esse: where a word of doubting is negative (no doubt that and the like) the universal construction after it is a subjunctive clause with quin, precisely like the English 'no doubt but that.' English, however, more commonly uses the parallel construction, 'doubt that,' which is usually to be preferred. As the construction requires the subjv., any future idea must be expressed by the periphrastic -rus.
  - 44 16 idem quod, the same as, the regular expression.
- 44 29 postquam: again, as usual, with the perf. ind.; so again in 1.27 and 45 2.
  - 44 27 hoc, the following.
  - 45 4 eodem . . . quo : see 44 16.
- 45 8 ad bibendum: lit. 'for drinking,' gerund denoting purpose; translate to drink.
- 45 14 gratiam . . . referam, repay; cf. gratias agere, thank, and gratiam habere, feel thankful.
- 45 20 extremum palum, the end of the stake. This idiom is very common with words denoting part or order, like prima aestas, the first part of summer; see § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N.<sup>3</sup>); H-B. 244.
- 45 21 dum dormit: note again dum with the pres. ind.; cf. 41 2, also l. 24, below.
  - 45 23 quod necesse fuit, as a matter of course, as was to be expected.
- 46 6 si...volneravit, ...est: a good example of the so-called simple condition, where no opinion is expressed as to the truth or falsity of the supposition.
- 46 8 addiciaris: the same construction as in 44 14; but here there is no future idea, so that the periphrastic is not necessary.
  - 47 2 hoc: cf. hoc, 44 27.
- 47 4 quas vidit pinguissimas: the regular order in Latin for the fattest that he saw.
  - 47 5 unum, etc.: i.e. each group of three carried one man.
- 47 11 evasit: Ulysses himself escaped by clinging to the body of a great ram. See Fig. 19.
  - 47 14 quo: cf. 41 12.
- 47 16 cum; this word might go with animis. It is only by the general sense of the narrative that it is seen to connect the verb. If the verb had no connective it would mean 'would have expected,' which makes no sense here. in horas, from hour to hour; hence the construction with in.
  - 47 17 id quod erat, as was really the case.

- 47 18 auxiliandi causa: a common way of expressing purpose in Latin. Observe again that causā stands after its genitive.
- 47 19 satis tutum, etc.: another example of a conditional sentence in indir. disc.; cf. 44 6. Here, however, there are two exceptional uses. We should expect futurum esse, corresponding to the other case, but a general judgment in Latin as to any course is regularly expressed by the pres. So here Ulysses's thought would be non tutum est (not erit), requiring esse in the narrative indir. disc. Second, in the other case we had the pluperf. subjv. because the action in the direct was regarded as completed in the fut. (interfecero); here, however, it is a continued action 'shall remain' (manebo or maneam). This, under the same circumstances, becomes imperf. subjv. maneret.
- 47 28 minimum afuit quin: a troublesome Latin idiom; lit. 'it was a very short distance off but that,' etc. The quin-clause is used, as in 44 14 (minimum conveying a neg. idea). In both this and the preceding (tutum esse) there is no proper subject, though the dependent clause in each case in a manner takes the place of one. Do not mechanically call it such, for the nature of the clauses makes that absurd. The meaning is obvious and should be expressed in an English idiom.
  - 48 4 hic vasto, etc.: from Virgil's Æneid, Bk. i, 52-54.
- 48 7 hospitio: one of the few words that is used without cum or adjective or genitive modifier to express manner. See note, 40 6.
- 48 8 ad recuperandas viris: a gerundive expression of purpose; cf. 14 6, 21 26, and below, l. 22.
- 48 12 patriae videndae: a gerundive expression depending on cupidum; § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 1); H-B. 612; using the gerund we should have patriam videndi. Cf. note, 24 6.
  - 48 14 tantum: an adverb.
- 48 15 navigando: dat. of gerund with idoneum; § 505. a (299); B. 338. 2; G. 429; H. 627 (542. ii); H-B. 612. ii.
- 48 17 gratiis . . . relatis: this should properly be actis, because as it stands it means 'return the favor' or 'repay,' which Ulysses could hardly have done. See note, 45 14.
- **48** 23 mirabantur, had been wondering; § 471. b (277. b); B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535 (469. 2); H-B. 485.
- 48 25 omittendam: the same form which serves as the gerundive is in the nom. and acc. (without a prep.) used as a 'participle of necessity,' meaning 'to be,' 'ought to be,' and the like, making, with the verb sum, the so-called second periphrastic conjugation. In the infin. the copula esse may be expressed or not. This use can easily be distinguished from the

gerundive or gerund because the noun and the partic always stand in a subj. or pred. relation in the nom. or acc. and without a preposition.

- 49 3 velut, etc.: another quotation from Virgil's Æneid, Bk. i, 82-3.
  - 49 4 data: sc. est.
- 49 6 erant profecti: notice that the subjv. is not required in a clause dependent on the result construction. Such clauses do not usually share in the relation which the subjv. expresses.
  - 49 7 referrentur: in the same construction as possent.
- 49 8 saccum solutum: as in English, the copula is often omitted in Latin where the noun and its modifier make together a conceivable picture. Here the 'bag untied' means the same as 'that the bag was untied.' This principle extends much farther in Latin than in English.
- 49 9 tum vero: as usual, introducing the climax of an action or situation. exarsit, etc.: notice the difference in the tenses even so closely connected. The perfect states the fact once for all, the imperf. means 'proceeded to' or 'began to,' thus dwelling on the description.
- 49 11 videndae: gerundive, as is clear from its agreeing with patriae; cf. 48 12. proiecissent: the subjv. shows that this is not stated by the author as his own reason, but as the one given by Ulysses in a kind of ind. disc. Cf. the stock example fefellisset, 9 13. For a reason stated by the author, where the ind. is used, cf. perspexerat, 19 15; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 540, 541; H. 588 (516); H-B. 535. 2. a, 555.
- 50 3 frumentandi causā: cf. 47 18 and note, also 43 14.—egrediendum esse: used impers.; lit. 'that it must be disembarked.' Cf. note, 43 17. Translate into good English.
- 50 5 haberent: the subjv. in the indir. disc. as a part of Ulysses's thought. Notice how regular is the idiomatic subjv. in subordinate clauses of indir. disc., though a well-known fact may be expressed seeming to require no modal form.
- 50 6 cum . . . tenerent: the descriptive cum expressing the circumstances as a cause.
- 50 7 occubuissent: the indir. question is somewhat more freely used in Latin than we should expect in English. Here there is no question about the death, but only about the degree of cruelty of it (quam crudeli). Yet the main verb has to take the indir. question construction as much as if the verb were queried. Notice also that any word that can be used of thought can introduce such a question. One can 'remember' or even 'see' or 'feel' a question as well as ask it.
- 50 8 egressi essent: the same principle as the indir. disc., but here it appears as a part of the indir. question. It is an almost universal principle

that whatever is the thought of some other person than the writer should be idiomatically in the subjv. This should be observed, but rarely needs to be expressed in the translation. If you find the meaning you can then translate intelligently.

- 50 9 vellet: another idiomatic subjv., which need not now be analyzed, as it requires no modal form in English. Cf. deberet, 18 17. quae cum ita essent: don't be afraid to translate this being so, merely because the absolute case is rare in English. That is just the English expression for what is meant here. The subjv. essent is the same as tenerent, 1. 7.
- 50 11 alteri (sc. parti): always one of two; distinguish from alius. For dative, cf. copiis, 19 7.
- 50 12 pracesset: here, though the construction is, as often before, that of purpose, yet the best translation is with *should*. It is as mechanical to translate always with one expression as the other.
- 50 13 uter: which of two. Distinguish from quis or qui referring to any number. It is always interrogative, and here introduces an indir. question.
- 50 13 inter se: notice that this is the regular reciprocal (cach other) form in Latin. One can easily see how 'among themselves' can come to be used for that idea.—hoc facto: sometimes the abl. abs. admits of a literal translation; see note, 50 9. 'This being done' has been good English for centuries.
  - 50 14 sorte evenit, the lot fell upon, or it fell by lot to.
- 50 15 susciperet: a result-clause is regularly used to express what happens, remains, is added, or follows, and the like; cf. ut...abierit, 30 12.
- 50 16 his rebus: here the 'absolute case' in English would be clumsy and should be carefully avoided. Use your common sense both in what you adopt and in what you avoid.
- 50 18 occupaverat: the Latin often expresses a present or past state of things by means of the action that preceded it. So here, had taken possession, etc.—quin irent: the idiomatic construction after verbs of doubt when negatived; cf. notes 44 14, 47 28. The clause is one of result introduced by quin, which is another form for quo non, whereby not, (50) but that.
- 50 21 visuros: without esse (as often), as if it were 'supposed themselves not about to see.' Cf. note, 41 6. The principle here involved is a far-reaching one, and on it depends the construction of the gerundive, the abl. abs., and many others; cf. post finitos labores, 36 6.—aliquantum: acc. of extent.
- 50 22 villam: the regular word for a country house of any kind, as domus for a city house.
  - 50 25 pulsarent: cf. irent, l. 19.

- 50 26 in hospitium, to accept her hospitality.
- 51 2 foris: abl. of place where; cf. foras, 50 26.—at: as usual, to introduce a change of subject; cf. 41 8.
- 51 4 accuburunt: the Greeks and Romans reclined at meals; cf. No. 6. We may translate it took their places.
- 51 5 Circe: the cut gives an ancient representation of the various points of the story all at once, in the antique manner.
  - 51 13 eo: an adverb.
  - 51 15 at: cf. l. 2.
- 51 19 si quid, etc. The Latin needs no verb of saying after speech or thought has been suggested, as here in obsecrare. We have here another conditional sentence in indir. disc. In English the direct would be 'If anything... (shall have happened) happens to you... the lives of all will be in the greatest peril,'—Si quid tibi acciderit, ... erit, —a vivid fut. condition. Cf. this with 44 6 and notice that the forms here are perfectly regular.
  - 51 21 neminem: obj. of adducturum.
- 51 22 ei licere, etc.: another condition in indir. disc. The direct form would be 'tibi licet, si mavis, in navi manere,' a simple condition. Observe that the changes of mood and tense are regular for indir. discourse.
- 51 24 nullo sequente, without any one following him. 'Without' is often expressed in this way. The abl. of nemo is not used, hence nullo.
- 52 2 fecisset: cf. note on haberent, 50 5.—ut...transiret: a clause of purpose or result is frequently in apposition with a pronoun, so that the clause becomes manageable as a noun. Here we translate was on, the point of, etc. We had the same idiom in 44 2.
  - 52 4 manu, in his hand; but the Latin regards it as means.
- 52 5 nonne, etc.: do you not? etc.; the regular particle for this kind of question.
- 52 7 num vis, you don't want, do you? etc.; the regular particle for this kind of question; cf. l. 5. It is usually said that num expects the answer 'No,' and nonne, 'Yes.' This is not strictly true. It is sometimes implied that it ought to be 'No' and 'Yes,' but not always even that. Cf. 'You don't happen to be going to town to-day, do you?' where an affirmative is hoped for.
- 52 11 valere: for valet of direct disc. Notice that in English we change the tense of the main verb in indir. disc., while the Romans changed the mood and kept the tense; so here we say, 'He said, was potent.'
- 52 13 impetum: obj. of facias.—vide ut facias: a strengthened imv., as in English, see that you make. The subjv. is a purpose-clause, as with most words which have an idea of something 'to be done.'

- 52 14 mortalis, etc.: a quotation from Virgil's Æneid, Bk. iv, 277-8.

   visūs: plur. for sing., much used by poets.
- 53 1 subeunda: gerundive, which must be used here, because the gerund with a prep. does not admit an object.
  - 53 3 atque, as, as often; cf. aliter atque, l. 10, below.
- 53 10 atque, than; cf. l. 3. In both cases the ideas are connected as if alike, and the comparison is left to be made.
  - 53 12 quidquam: cf. note, 18 16.
  - 53 18 reduceret: cf. note, 3 11.
- 53 20 nisi, etc.: again a fut. conditional sentence in indir. disc.; cf. 51 19. Here the direct form would be nisi id factum erit, poenas sumam.—sumpturum: the Latin treats punishment as a penalty to be paid, not as punishment to be suffered, and says 'pay the penalty' (supplicium dare) and 'exact the penalty' (poenas sumere). But English more commonly treats it as inflicted, hence sumo may be rendered inflict.
  - 53 24 atrium: see note, 4 11.
  - 54 5 diceret: cf. referrent, 40 22.
- 54 6 Circaeam: cf. Actiacam, 7 13, and note.—universi, with one accord, or the like,—the peculiar meaning of the word.
  - 54 8 diei: cf. note, 41 23.
- 54 9 discedere: a complementary infin. after the expression in animo habebat.
- 54 13 ei persuasum sit: again the impers. use of the pass. of an intrans. verb; lit. 'it was persuaded to him.' Cf. note, 18 17.—maneret: a purpose-clause dependent on persuasum sit. When verbs taking an object-clause of purpose become pass. the object-clause may be treated as subject.
- 54 14 consumpserat: the pluperf. here is irregular. The perf. only is usually found with postquam, ubi, and the like. See note, 43 5.
- 54 19 reficiendas: gerundive. Could the gerund be used? See note, 53 1.
- 54 21 confecerint: the tense does not follow the general rule for the sequence of tenses, but result-clauses allow this exception.—ubi vidit: cf. l. 14.
  - 54 24 maturandum sibi: cf. sibi praecavendum, 43 17, and note.
- 54 27 perveniret: the subjv. is used on account of the 'should' or 'could' idea involved; cf. 44 4.
- 54 28 longum est: in a judgment as to a future course of action, the Latin uses not sit, 'it would be,' but est, 'it is.'
- LIFE OF CAIUS MARIUS. This selection and the one that follows on the life of Julius Cæsar are taken from Viri Romae, a well-known compila-

tion from the writings of Cicero, Livy, Sallust, Valerius Maximus, and other Roman authors, made by Charles François Lhomond (1727-1794). The Latin has been somewhat simplified, but is in the main taken verbatim from the authors named. The style is, therefore, in general good and the Latin classical.

- 55 1 C.: translate Caius. The Latin name is Gāīus, but the Romans at one time wrote C for both C and G, and retained the character in the abbreviations C. and Cn. for Gaius and Gnaeus. This spelling was forgotten later, and the word came into English as Caius, though it ought to be Gāīus in Latin.
- 55 2 duce Scipione: this free use of the abl. abs. is idiomatic, where we should say 'under Scipio,' etc. Scipione: this was the younger Scipio Africanus, about B.C. 146; see No. 24. posuit: here passed; lit. 'put,' as we might say 'a man put the best years of his life into something.'
  - 55 3 impigram ad, etc.: for order, see note, 18 3.
  - 55 7 inter cenam: simply at dinner.
- 55 8 si quid, etc.: here is a conditional sentence of the same sort as in 51 19 turned into an indir. question. Notice that accidisset stands for a fut. perf., as in the previous case, and is changed in the same way. The main clause is not a statement ('the state will have') but a question ('will the state have?'). It does not therefore become fut. infin. as in the other cases, but becomes an indir. question and takes the first periphrastic subjv., the regular way to represent a future idea in a dependent clause.
  - 55 8 quemnam: more emphatic than quem.
- 55 10 hunc, this young man, or simply him. The acc. depends upon the verb to be supplied from the previous sentence, an ellipsis common in English, as well as in Latin.
- 55 11 rebus, deeds, exploits; the abl. regularly after dignus. Notice again a colorless noun colored by the context; see note on res, 7 8.—spiritus: here, ambition.
- 56 1 Q. Metellum, etc.: we have here a freer and more characteristic order than we have usually had before. In reading, attack it fearlessly, noticing that the first word is acc., and hold it ready to be the object of a verb, or what was really the same thing to the Romans, the subject of an infin. The object first is not absolutely strange to English and is an order often convenient. The verb which governs this object is found to be criminatus est (he accused). The natural modifier of this idea is expressed by 'of,' and bellum ducere can mean nothing else than 'prolonging the war.' In this way, without suspending any construction or changing the Latin order, we have a very good, if not the best, English rendering. If we had

undertaken to analyze the sentence by rule it would have taken twice as long, and very likely we should not have succeeded at all.

- 56 2 eo; i.e. Metellus.
- 56 3 si se, etc.: another case of a fut. condition in indir. disc.; cf. 51 19 and give the direct form. Remember that the Latin needs no new verb of saying.
- 56 8 perfugerat: notice the fondness of the Romans for taking a new point in the narrative and bringing up the circumstances by the pluperfect.
  - 56 10 fudit: here the narrative begins again.
- 56 13 Boccho: dat. with persuasit, which is followed, as usual, by a clause of purpose.
  - 56 14 vinctus: distinguish from victus.
  - 56 15 triumphans: see note, 7 16.
- 56 16 carcerem: this prison was the so-called Tullianum, perhaps originally a well-house, which is still shown at the foot of the Capitoline Hill on the side of the Forum. It was customary to kill dangerous captives in this prison.
- 56 17 os ridentis, etc.: i.e. into a forced smile. os is object of diduxisse, which depends upon fertur.
  - 56 18 fertur: = dicitur; the subj. is Iugurtha.
- 56 19 frigidum, etc.: the Romans were fond of hot baths, and the

bath houses were usually kept warm by special arrangements. Hence the point of this grim speech.

- 56 22 ei...decretum est: the functions of the different magistrates were assigned either by the senate or the people, of either of which decernere can be used.
- 56 25 aliquid: obj. of darent. terrae: partit. gen. In our idiom simply some land; cf. note on sestertium, 7 18.
- 56 26 quod, that which, the rel. being the obj. of petere, to be supplied from its use in the main clause



FIG. 104. - THE TULLIANUM.

plied from its use in the main clause. The omission of the antecedent (id) is not unusual in such a case as this; cf. note, 8 22.

- 57 1 tres duces: see Introd. to Cæsar, p. 116. non sustinuerunt, failed to, etc.; cf. note, 19 4.
- 57 2 actum erat...nisi, etc.: a form of expression common in Latin but not unknown in English, in which a thing is said to have actually

happened, instead of saying it would have happened if something had not occurred to prevent. Here we should expect the 'contrary to fact' construction (cf. 35 12), 'actum esset nisi fuisset,' but to show how near it came, the thing is said to have actually happened (actum erat). The condition, however, is expressed in the usual manner.

- 57 3 nisi Marius fuisset, if it had not been for Marius, the regular way of saying this in Latin; see preceding note.
- 57 4 sub ipsis, etc.: at Aquæ Sextiæ in the valley of the Rhone, near the Isère.
  - 57 5 medium, in the middle (of it).
- 57 6 copia: sc. erat; the copula is sometimes omitted in rapid narrative.

   causa victoriae: notice that this is not the causa of purpose, which is in the abl. and follows its noun.
  - 57 7 flagitante: always used of urgent demand.
- 57 9 eaque, and such.—victores: as the Latin eschews meaningless rhetorical expressions, this must express some additional idea as a pred apposition, like 'gaining the victory' or 'being victorious.'
  - 57 11 caesa: sc. esse; but cf. 50 21.
  - 57 12 saltu: i.e. a wooded height near the battle field.
- 57 13 vir: here again we have a significant appositive, 'being a man,' etc. Cf. note, 18 2, and victores, 1. 9.
- 57 14 tropaea: it was customary to set up at the point where the victory was obtained a rude figure of a man with arms hung upon him (see Fig. 28), and this display was used also in the Roman triumph. Here it is intimated that this stalwart German was more conspicuous than the lay figures on which they hung the captured arms.
- 57 16 qui: subj. of traiecissent. ex alia parte: the Teutons were intending to cross into Italy by the Riviera; the Cimbri with the Helvetii succeeded in crossing the Alps from the north, and were met by Marius on the Po. Athesim: the Adige, a tributary of the Po on the north.
- 57 18 eis: dat. after occurrit; § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.
  - 57 21 quos . . . dicerent, what brothers they meant.
  - 57 22 tenent: note the emphatic position, 'they have it.'
- 57 24 ludibrio (dat.) haberi: cf. 'hold in derision.' ultionem: the Latin says 'threaten vengeance to,' we say threaten with vengeance.
- 57 25 advenissent: notice that this seems contrary to the rule after simul atque; cf. § 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561-3; H. 602 (518); H-B. 557. The subjv. is used because this is a part of what the Gauls said, i.e. implied indir. disc. The main clause 'that they would do something' is absorbed in minati ultionem. Cf. § 592. 2 (341. c); B. 323; H-B. 535. 1. a.

- 57 26 civile: properly the act of citizens with fellow-citizens, but forced later into the meaning 'courteous.' Cf. English 'to be civil.'—foret: used for sit, by a late and not strictly classical usage.—fratribus, etc.: abl. abs.; a common way in Latin of expressing the English idea of 'without doing something'; cf. note, 51 24.
  - 58 3 diem: i.e. to set a time.
- 58 5 Marius cum, etc.: a troublesome mode of expression, not unclassical but somewhat rare. The Latin likes to put the main subj. first, preceding connectives. But, as the subj. of the main clause is usually also the subj. of the dependent clause, there is rarely any difficulty. But here the main clause becomes passive and so the subject is changed. Hence Marius must be taken only with instituisset, contrary to the apparent order, and a new start made with the main clause.
  - 59 1 caesa: sc. esse.
- 59 3 cum: this must go with pugnarent; for mood, cf. 35 23.—
  objectis: i.e. drawn up in front.—desuper: modifies pugnarent, i.e. they
  mounted on their carts and fought from them.
  - 59 5 tamen: i.e. in spite of their brave defence. Cf. note, 66.
  - 59 8 defendere: perf. ind.; distinguish from defendere.
- **59** 10 ei: dat. with inviderant; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362.
- 59 11 ut, as. novo homini: this was a term applied by the Romans to the first man of a family to hold office.
- 59 16 iuris civilis: the regular name for law as affecting the rights of citizens and opposed to military powers.
  - 59 16 illa: i.e. B.C. 88.
- 59 19 causam, etc.: change the voice in translating. See note on cenam, 4 19.
  - 59 21 Sullae: dat. of reference, but best translated by the genitive.
- 59 25 hostis: obj. of fugiens, which sometimes takes an acc. in the sense of 'to flee from' or 'escape.'
  - 59 26 ut erat : cf. 32 6.
- 60 4 Marium se, etc.: as the subj. and obj. of an infin. are both in the acc., an apparent ambiguity often arises, but usually the context at once decides, as here.
- 60 7 agrum: an ancient state consisted of a city, in which was the government and where all business was transacted, and a greater or smaller territory occupied by farmers and the like. This last was the ager.
  - 60 9 lictor: the regular officer of a person in supreme command.
- 60' 10 hoc: i.e. Sextilius.—laesisset: again the subjv. in informal indir. disc. as containing Marius's thought.

- 60 11 tamen, at any rate; i.e. notwithstanding Sextilius's position.
- 60 12 nisi vellet: a simple condition thrown into subjv. imperf. by the indir. disc. In the direct form, 'nisi vis.'—animadverti: impers., action to be taken against; a euphemism for 'put to death.'—torveque, etc., and as Marius, etc. A clause is often thus compressed into a participle.
- 60 13 et vocem, etc., and did n't say anything. tandem ecquid: these emphatic forms are transferred from the direct question, where they would mean 'Pray, tell me, is there anything that,' etc., to the indirect. In English they can hardly be translated except by stress of voice, 'whether there was n't anything he wanted,' etc.
  - 60 16 de inconstantia, etc.: connect with eum admonebat.
- 61 1 rerum, fortune; cf. note, 7 8.—cum: here the best translation is when, because in this case the English word has the same implication of a situation that belongs to the Latin construction.
- 61 11 diripiendas: gerundive agreeing with domos, expressing purpose. It is used only in the acc. with a noun after verbs meaning to 'give,' 'deliver,' 'undertake,' and the like. It resembles the partic. of necessity in implying something to be done; § 500. 4 (294. d); B. 337. 7. b.) 2); G. 430; H. 622 (544. N.<sup>2</sup>); H-B. 605. 2.
- **61** 12 civili luctu: almost an abl. of time, so that the prep. is felt to be unnecessary.
- 61 13 peteret: cf. deberet, 18 17, and vellet, 50 9. Relative-clauses that are used to state some fact about an antecedent already defined take the ind.; but when the relative clause expresses some quality or characteristic of an antecedent not otherwise defined, the subjv. is used, and the clause is called a clause of characteristic. An ind. relative clause means 'a man who actually does something'; a relative clause of characteristic means 'a man of such a character or quality as to do something.' So here the thought is 'no one could be found of such a character as to,' etc.
  - 61 16 viri: modifies vitia.
- 61 17 dictu: supine with adj.; § 510 (303); B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635. I (547); H-B. 619. I.
  - 61 18 quam, etc.: cf. 19 1, quos, etc., and see note.
- 61 19 togatus: the toga, as the garb of peace, is often used as a symbol of peace. fraudis: alluding to the revolutions attempted by Marius.
  - 62 1 durior: cf. artius, 18 9, and note.
- **62 4 lapide:** the abl. of material; § 403 (244); B. 215; G. 395-6; H. 467 (415); cf. II-B. 406. 4, and a.
  - 62 5 aedificandam: cf. for a similar use diripiendas, 61 11.
- 62 6 doctoribus: i.e. the Greeks themselves. suis: referring to the subj. of profuissent, i.e. litterae. profuissent; cf. note, 50 s.

- 62 7 confirmatus: used as an adj.; sc. erat.
- 62 8 ei: dat. of reference, but translate as possessive with crure.
- 62 11 iudicaret: cf. profuissent, l. 6.
- LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR. The student should read in connection with this selection, the Life of Cæsar, p. 97.
- 63 1 familia: abl. of source; source, origin, and material all belong to the same general ablative idea; cf. lapide, 62 4.
- 63 3 Cinnae: the colleague of Marius in his seventh consulship, B.c. 86, and a prominent democratic leader.—duxit: sc. in matrimonium.—cuius pater cum, since her father, etc.
- 63 4 is: inasmuch as no pronoun would be necessary if the first subject were continued, the presence of is shows a change of subject and so it must refer to Sulla.
- 63 5 neque, and yet not. Casar by defying Sulla the dictator when but seventeen years old showed the mettle that was in him.
- **63** 6 veste nocte urbe: the Romans, reading their language straight away and using their common sense, were not troubled by three ablatives together.
- 63 7 quartanae: sc. febris, i.e. an intermittent fever that returns every fourth day, or every third day as we reckon.
  - 63 8 prope per, etc., almost every night.
- 63 10 perduceretur: verbs of hindering take ne or quominus, thus apparently doubling the negative. They are classed as result-clauses because a result is implied, but they were probably originally purpose-clauses, hence ne.
- 63 11 veniam: a noun. The verb of that form would make no sense.
- 63 14 expugnatum: agrees with Sullam. vincerent: for vincite of the direct; cf. 9 11 for this regular construction. scirent: regular subjv. after dummodo, but the modal form does not appear in English.
- 63 15 incolumem: no verb esse is necessary in Latin, but the construction is like 'I want the window opened'; cf. note, 50 21.
- 63 16 partibus, exitio: two datives after futurum; cf. navi praesidio, 47 14.
- 63 19 corona civica: a chaplet of oak leaves presented to the Roman soldier who had saved the life of a comrade in battle and slain his opponent. See Fig. 32.
- 63 20 per otium: the prep. per and some others are used in Latin like many English prepositions to make adverbial phrases in which the sense of the prep. becomes very vague, 'in,' 'at,' 'with,' etc.

- 63 21 traicit: i.e. from the mainland of Asia to Rhodes. For the tense, cf. 41 2, 45 21.
- 65 3 terrori, etc., an object of, etc. The idiomatic dat. of service has often to be freely translated as 'a means of,' 'a source of,' 'an object of' or simply 'a' (as a pred.); cf. partibus exitio, 63 16; § 382 (233); B. 191; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360.
- 65 4 redimeretur: notice the constant use of the relative clause to express purpose; cf. referrent, 40 22.
- 65 6 quibus numeratis, upon the payment of which; notice the variety of renderings of the abl. abs., as might be expected from its original meaning of 'circumstances in which.'
- 65 7 proxime aberat: the Romans could say 'very near off' just as we say 'very far off.' Some equivalent expression must be substituted in English.
  - 65 8 ibique, etc., and collecting a fleet there and sailing, etc.
- 65 10 piratasque: with several connected words a conjunction is used with each, or -que may be added to the last, as here.
- 65 11 quod illis, etc.: notice the difference of idiom between Latin and English with words of threatening; cf. note, 57 24.
- 65 12 crucique: the connective -que and sometimes others are used, not to add something new but only to express a detail already generally included. This sometimes occurs in English as well. So here the crucifixion was the supplicium spoken of.
- 65 13 quaestori: i.e. quaestor provincialis, an officer appointed as assistant to a consul or prætor in charge of a province.—ulterior: Spain was divided into two parts, citerior and ulterior, for military administration.—obvenit: the place of administration of such officers was assigned by lot. For this idea compounds of ob are especially used; cf. obtigit, 9 18.—quo profectus, on his way thither. If you are sure you know what the Latin means, don't be afraid of 'free' translations.
- 65 15 inter se: see note, 50 13. num, whether; in indir. questions this particle suggests no answer; cf. notes on 52 5 and 7.
- 65 16 ambitioni: dat. of reference, regular with locus est and similar expressions, expressing our 'for.'—serio: opposed to per iocum, hence the emphatic position.
- 65 17 dominationis: almost equal to a gerund, dominandi, but a little more abstract; cf. dicendi, 63 21, and regnandi, in the following lines.
- 66 2 Euripidis, etc.: the couplet is, of course, translated from the Greek, but is in the same iambic metre as the original.
  - 66 3 gratiā: used exactly like causā; cf. 43 14. The student may

here call to mind the numerous ways in which purpose (to, in order to) is expressed in Latin:

quibus redimeretur, 65 4 ad navigandum, 54 18 ut operam daret, 63 20 postulantis, 57 19 ne excluderetur, 54 24 ad expediendas pecunias, 65 4 regem visum, 15 14.

- **66 4 rebus:** abl. of respect; § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.—colas: the hortatory subjv. expressing a command.
- 66 5 quod: notice that this rel., though referring to Gades, agrees with the pred. oppidum, the regular Latin construction in such a case.
- 66 7 ignaviam: governed by pertaesus used in an active sense like a deponent. This construction is rather late, taken from Suetonius. Usually the verb is impers. and has the acc. of the person and gen. of the thing.
- 66 8 actum esset: a part of Cæsar's thought; so subegisset.—
  aetate: Alexander had 'conquered the world' at the age of thirty-two.
- 66 12 aedilis: these officers had charge of the public buildings. The munificence displayed in this office had the most important bearing on a Roman politician's popularity and advancement.
- 66 12 Comitium: a paved open space adjoining the Forum, the large square between the Capitoline and Palatine Hills. The Forum was surrounded by temples, porticoes, and shops, and was the centre of the life of the city.
- 66 13 porticibus: these were colonnades built in frequented places to protect the people from the weather and as places of public resort.—venationes, etc.: the public shows also were in great part in charge of the ædiles. Cæsar's displays surpassed all others in splendor.
  - 66 14 factum est ut, etc.: cf. note, 50 15.
- 66 17 miliens sestertium: a contracted expression for miliens centena milia sestertium, a hundred million sesterces, about \$4,100,000. The meaning is that Cæsar was worth so much less than nothing.
  - 66 19 societatem: the First Triumvirate, B.C. 60.
- 66 21 ageretur: agreements, like commands and laws, take the purpose construction.—displicuisset: a part of the command (agreement) reported indirectly. The original form would be ne quid agatur quod ... displicuerit, let nothing... which shall (have), etc. Apart from the technical rule, it is obvious that no form could express this idea indirectly except the subjv., on account of the 'should' notion involved (i.e. the command). All indicatives would imply that the thing happened or was going to happen, neither of which belongs here.—ulli: like quisquam (18 16),

only used with negatives (not any one). Here the negative is disguised, but its force affects the dependent as well as the main clause. This will be seen if we try to substitute 'some one' for 'any one' in English.

66 22 plebi divideretur: here because we do not say 'divide to,' a beginner might be puzzled; but if one uses 'distribute,' the idioms of the languages will agree. Do not be misled by such differences of expression.

66 26 fasces: the emblems of the consul's authority carried before him by the lictors.—ei: the dat. of reference used, as often before, where we might expect the gen. But it means more than that, implying that it was a setting at naught of his authority, or the like.

Colloquial language often has such implications

in English,—'Break his head for him,'
'Call three strikes on him.' Sometimes
this idea can be represented and sometimes not. Often an adv. will suggest it,
'as 'insultingly,' 'contemptuously.'

66 28 domo: regularly domi, but here copied from Suetonius.

67 1 ad arbitrium, at his pleasure, independently.

67 2 testandī, attestation, as with us in the case of wills or deeds, where the date is given and witnessed.

67 4 actum, done, as we say 'signed, sealed,' etc. — Iulio et Caesare: sc. consulibus.

67 5 nomine: Romans regularly had three names, e.g. Gaius (praenomen), Iulius (nomen), Caesar (cognomen). — duobus: i.e. consulibus.

67 6 consulatu: cf. felicitate, 5 13.—Galliam: see Introd. to Cæsar, p. 103.

67 annis: observe that the abl. denotes not only the time 'when,' but also the time 'within which.' 'Time within which' is often considered a space of time marked off, as it were, and expressed as 'time when.'

67 9 primus: i.e. he was the first of the Romans to do these things.

67 12 cum . . . tum: see Vocabulary. — multa . . . illud: notice these vague words characterized by the context. Trans. exploit, deed, or the like.

67 13 quod, that, in that, whereas, introducing a substantive clause.

67 15 aquiliferum: see Fig. 55.

FIG. 105.

SIGNIFER.

- 67 16 comprehensum: translate as if comprehendit et. A verb and participle are often best rendered by two verbs.
- 67 20 vincere: the infin. is used with words like scio, doceo, metuo as a complement with the meaning 'how to'; this infin. must be carefully distinguished from the object clauses that follow such verbs. Translate and taught those how to conquer who were ready to be conquered. paratas: agrees with legiones understood.
  - 68 1 Crasso: see Life of Cæsar, p. 63.
- 68 4 suspectae, etc.: sc. erant, had long been an object of suspicion or jealousy. Pompeiana: cf. Circaeam, 54 8.
- 68 5 ferebat: the imperf. is not generally used with a negative, and when so used it has some special sense like 'could not.'
- 68 6 ne... discederet, ut... liceret: here we have side by side a pure purpose-clause and one used as an obj. after a verb of asking. They are not distinguished in Latin, just as they are often alike in English. But the relation ought to be seen and, when necessary, expressed.
  - 68 8 suadentibus, etc., through the influence of Pompey and his friends.
- 68 9 ei (i.e. Caesar): the indir. obj. of negatum est, the subject of which is Cæsar's foregoing request.
- **68** 10 vindicaturus: this form also denotes purpose, but belongs to later writers and should not be imitated. bellandum: again an impersonal periphrastic in indirect discourse. ratus: always pres. in force.
- 68 11 Rubiconem, etc.: notice the true significance of the famous passage of the river, as given here, but often misused in common speech.
  - 68 15 iacta alea esto: i.e. let us risk it.
- 68 17 Brundisium: the most important seaport in southern Italy for all traffic to the East.
  - 68 20 a Brundisio, etc.: connect with transmisit.
- **69** 1 morae: gen. with impatiens; § 349 (218); B. 204; G. 374; H. 450 (399); H-B. 354.
- 69 6 prius: with quam; the parts of antequam and priusquam are often separated in this way.
- 69 7 obrutus esset: the subjv. with ante quam and prius quam denotes some inner connection between the two clauses, as here, approaching in this the use of cum. The ind. here would only be a kind of date recognized as known, like 'before he was made consul,' which is not at all the meaning here. Here the thought is 'before (i.e. until) he was reduced to such a pass that he was nearly engulfed.' The English does not usually mark this difference by any modal form.
- 69 9 ut, when, construed with perf. ind., like ubi. occisum: i.e. 'that he was killed'; esse might be supplied, but cf. 50 21.

- 69 10 Ptolemaeo: cf. No. 19, p. 12.
- 69 12 Pharnacem: obj. of profligavit.
- 69 13 praeferocem: the word ferox usually has in it not so much the idea of 'fierceness' as of the encouragement of success,—elated, puffed up, emboldened, confident.
- 69 14 quattuor horis: lit. 'in (the same) four hours'; cf. 67 7.—quibus, etc., from the time that he had come in sight.
- 69 15 quod: referring to fulmen. vēnit: we might expect the pres, but the time is attracted by the time of the events described and so put in the past.
- 69 17 ante victum, etc.: in a sentence like this when a rel. dependent clause occurs, the Romans, by leaving out the verb of the relative clause, were able to make a short-hand construction; as 'I see you like the same things as I (do)'. In Latin the 'do' is omitted and 'I' takes the same case as 'you.' So here by omitting the copula with visus it becomes visum, like victum. (In English a 'was' is required.)
- 69 18 praetulit: i.e. he had it carried. titulum: in the triumph all sorts of pictures and inscriptions were carried as pictures and transparencies are in modern political processions.
  - 69 19 Scipionem: Metellus Scipio, Pompey's father-in-law.
- 69 22 Hispaniense, in Spain; sc. bellum. This completion of the idea is shown by the position of Africani before belli, indicating an opposition between 'African' and some other war. With the bellum thus supplied gravius agrees. This is one of the most common forms of ellipsis in Latin, as in English. Cf. note, 28 8.
- 69 24 sequentium: the partic. instead of a relative clause ('those who,' etc.) though rare in classical Latin becomes very common later. The gen. depends on auxiliis and shows that of which it is composed (gen. of material).
- 69 25 sua, his customary; this pronoun is often used in this and similar senses and may then refer to other nouns than the subject.
- 70 1 initum: sc. est. proelium: the battle of Munda, B.C. 45.— Marte: often used for proelio.
  - 70 3 servasset; cf. fefellisset, 9 13.
- 70 4 proinde viderent, let them therefore consider, for videte of the direct; cf. moveret, 9 11.
  - 70 8 omnibus: dat. with ignovit.
- 70 12 trecentorum, etc.: pred. gen. of quality after esset, the subj. of which is annus.
- 70 13 intercalario, etc.: the incongruity between the lunar and the solar year had before been remedied from time to time by inserting a short

month before the Kalends of March. The calendar as revised by Cæsar has remained without essential change till the present day.

70 19 ius civile: Cæsar's death postponed the work of making a cligest of the Roman law for more than 500 years.

70 20 optima quaeque, all the best; cf. 18 18.

70 23 Pomptinas paludes: this marshy tract along the coast of Latium is still almost entirely waste, although millions have been spent since Cæsar's time in efforts to reclaim it.

70 27 in perpetuum; an adv. phrase; cf. per otium, per iocum.

71 3 consulatus, in the consulship. Notice that the genitive is the regular case for one noun depending on another, no matter what the relation seems to be in English. Nouns are not loosely connected by prepositions as with us.

71 4 rostris: so called because adorned with the beaks (rostra) of captured ships.

71 6 sexaginta amplius, sixty or more.

72 1 Idus: referring to a single day, though fem. plur.; hence illas in next line.—is: sc. inquit, answered.

72 4 offici, of a mark of respect.

72 5 renuentique, and as he refused.

72 7 adversum: sc. eum, which is unnecessary in Latin.

**72** 8 adreptum: see note, **67** 16.

72 10 obvolvit: the regular attitude of a Roman in the presence of death.

72 11 confossus est: cf.: -

"Then burst his mighty heart;
And in his mantle muffling up his face,
Even at the base of Pompey's statua,
Which all the while ran blood, great Cæsar fell."

72 14 talem: i.e. sudden and by violence.

72 15 et: correlative with the et in 1. 18.

72 16 valetudine: cf. 217. — Xenophontem: the well-known Athenian general and historian (B.C. 400), author of many books, among them a history of Cyrus the Great.

72 18 occideretur: the subjv. is somewhat irregular and late. Translate simply on the day before he died.—subitam: sc. mortem.

72 19 super: cf. inter, 65 11, and per, 65 15.—esset: the indir. question depends on sermone; cf. 42 7.

72 22 sua, a natural; cf. 69 25.—damnati: i.e. by the gods.—alius alio: cf. 40 18.

- 72 25 quo., . hoc: abls. used with comparatives in this way are ablatives of degree of difference. Notice also that English inverts the order of the clauses, the rarer self-restraint is, etc.
  - 73 3 diversis: i.e. different from his own.
- 73 4 gravius consulendi, etc.: a euphemism, to use severe measures against, etc.
- 73 5 quod, that, introducing a substantive clause. The subjv. is used because the words are given as Cicero's.
- 73 7 ultro: this word, meaning 'beyond,' is constantly used of any act not called for or unprovoked, as here, of his own accord, or without being asked.
- 73 11 fuisse: notice that the infin. expresses time relative to that of the main verb. Esse would mean is at the time spoken of; fuisse means was previously, which become 'was' and 'had been' respectively.
- 73 15 quod ... erat: notice the ind., expressing the author's reason, not Cæsar's thought.
- LIFE OF HANNIBAL. This selection on the life of the great Carthaginian general is from Cornelius Nepos, a contemporary and friend of Cicero, who busied himself chiefly with history, and especially with biography. Only one book of a much larger work of biography, De Viris Illustribus, and the lives of Cato and Atticus are extant. He is only valuable for his style and sometimes as being the sole authority for what he treats.
- 75 1 Hannibal, etc.: this is not a full sentence, but only a name in a list, as it were, and gives the title of the biography.—si...est: notice that in this form of simple cond. there is no indication of the truth cr falsity of the matter supposed; so that, as in English, it is often only a form for saying something which in fact is not conditional at all.
- 75 3 superarit: regularly this should be infin. with acc., but occasionally verum est takes a result-clause, as if it were factum est; see note, 50 15.—tanto...quanto (so much...as much), so much as; abl. of degree of difference; cf. quo...hoc, 72 25.
  - 75 6 eo: i.e. populo Romano.
- 75 7 quod: the Latin often uses a neuter pronoun referring loosely to the preceding, like the vulgar English 'which.' It is translated and, now, but.
- 75 8 esset: the context shows that this must be contrary to fact; cf. note, 35 12. videtur: remember that the Latin prefers the personal construction of verbs of saying, etc., where we should say 'it is said' 'it seems,' etc. potuisse: this must, according to rule, stand for potuit of the direct. This would seem not to agree with the contrary to fact idea; but

words of necessity, propriety, and possibility take the ind. in that construction. Translate could have conquered.

75 11 prius, etc.: the separation of the two parts of priusquam in Latin and the loss of the rel. part (quam) in English make this clause seem difficult. But if we remember that the quam in such words is a rel. whether we make it one or not, we shall see that the sentence must mean 'that he abandoned his life before he would do that,' where 'before' introduces a clause exactly like a rel. word and so corresponds to priusquam.

75 12 deposuerit: for the tense, cf. note, 54 21.

75 13 destiterit: a rel. with the subjv. very often describes a quality or a significant fact about a man (or thing) which has an important bearing on the rest of the statement. Its effect may be very different, according to the context, so that the translation varies between because, although, when, in that, such that, and other forms. This is called 'the characteristic relative clause'; see also note, 61 13.

75 15 ut omittam, to say nothing of, expressed as a purpose, not of what is said, but of saying it.

75 19 venissent, fecissent, comperisset, vidisset: all introduced by cum.

76 1 tamquam, on the ground that, a late usage.

76 2 alia atque, otherwise than; cf. 53 10.

76 9 conficiebatur: contrary to the general rule of dum with the pres., and not to be imitated; see 41 2.

76 12 ducere: in the meaning of hesitate to, dubito regularly takes the infin. — faciam, etc.: a good example of the vivid fut. cond. sentence.

76 14 eam: obj. of tenentem, which agrees with me.

76 15 numquam: note its emphatic position.

76 17 quin . . . sim: the regular construction after verbs of doubting when negatived; cf. note, 44 14.

**76** 19 me: governed by celaris (= celaveris) as the acc. of the person, that of the thing being only implied; § 396. c (239. d); B. 178; G. 339; H. 411 (374); H-B. 393.

76 27 annis: by comparing this with 1. 7 we observe that either the acc. or the abl. may be used in this idiom.

77 10 ea... qua, there ... where, correlative adverbs.

77 12 hac, in this way; an adverbial form from hic; cf. huc and hoc.

77 14 Clastidi, at Clastidium, a locative form. Latin has peculiar forms for relations of place with names of towns and a few other words.

77 15 tertio, for the third time; adverb.

77 20 dextro: oculo may be supplied, though such an ellipsis is common also in English.

- 78 5 proelio: the famous battle of Cannæ, B.C. 216, the worst defeat the Romans ever sustained.
  - 78 9 nullo resistente: cf. 51 24.
  - 78 15 dedit verba: a colloquial expression like 'fooled' or 'outwitted'
- 78 21 pari ac, equal to that of. Cf. § 384. N.<sup>2</sup> (234. a. N.<sup>2</sup>); B. 341. 1. c); G. 643; H. 657. 1. N. (554. i. 2. N.); H-B. 307. 2. a.
  - 78 23 sustulit, destroyed, as coming from tollo.
  - 78 25 longum est: cf. 54 28.
- 78 28 in campo, etc.: i.e. ventured to meet him in the open field. Hannibal maintained himself undefeated in Italy for sixteen years.
- 79 1 defensum: supine, expressing purpose. Cf. visum, 15 14, and note.
  - 79 4 fugarat: = fugaverat; cf. invitarat, 28 16.
  - 79 5 quo: introducing a purpose-clause. Cf. 31 20.
- 79 12 Hadrumeti: another locative. Cf. Clastidi, 77 14; § 427. 3 (258. c. 2); B. 232; G. 411; H. 485. 2 (425. ii); H-B. 449.
- 80 6 ad P. Sulpicium, etc.: again the names of the consuls merely as a date, B.C. 200. So again his magistratibus, 1. 7, under these magistrates.
- 80 11 eorum: we should expect suos, but as it refers to the Carthaginians, who were not strictly the same as the legati, the reflex is not used. Fregellis: place where. Cf. note, 12 23.
  - 80 12 munus, etc.: in the direct discourse would be: -

munus vestrum gratum acceptumque est; obsides quo loco rogatis erunt; captivos non remittemus, quod . . . Hannibalem, cuius opera susceptum bellum est, . . . habetis, etc.

- 80 18 domum: note the regular absence of a prep. with this word.
- 80 19 fuerat: we should expect fuit, but the pluperf. is used with a slightly different feeling.
  - 80 21 bini: the distributive, because they were elected each year.
- 80 22 diligentia: as the abl. of quality has the sense of an adj., it is used here for a pred like an adj. ac: cf. 78 21.
  - 80 23 ut esset, etc., that there was money to pay, etc.
- 80 28 daretur: cf. note, 69 7. The expression is regular for granting an audience.
- 81 2 possent: a vivid fut. condition thrown into the imperf. subjv. as a dependent clause. The command in the direct would be 'comprehendite, si poteritis consequi.' When this command is compressed into a purpose ('which were to arrest'), the condition follows the new turn and becomes si possent (if they should be able, or if they could). This is sometimes called a case of attraction and sometimes an integral-part clause. The essence of it is that the dependent clause partakes of the nature of the main clause

so much that when the main clause becomes dependent the dependent one also takes the subjv. as a part of it.

- 81 4 ipsum: as opposed to his property.—exsulem: pred. acc., as in 'call a man a thief.'
  - 81 5 profugerat: cf. consumpserat, 54 14.
  - 81 6 L. Cornelio, etc.: B.C. 193.
- 81 8 si... inducerentur, to see if, etc.; in this very common form of condition the conclusion is suppressed and the clause becomes equivalent to a kind of indir. question, 'to see whether,' etc.—Antiochi, in Antiochus; cf. note, 71 3.
  - 81 10 huc: i.e. to Cyrene.
  - 81 11 eadem, etc.: cf. ll. 3 and 4.
- 81 15 naufragio, servulis: notice that the means has the abl. alone, the agent takes a; cf. pecunia, 19 27.—interfectum eum: depending, like an infinitive clause, on scriptum reliquerunt, which is equivalent to a verb of saying,—have left the statement that, etc.
- 81 17 voluisset: 'contrary to fact' condition; cf. note, 35 12. instituerat, had begun to.
- 81 18 Tiberi: dat. after propius, which takes the dat. as an adv. of nearness. Thermopylis is of course in the same construction.
- 81 19 quem: i.e. Antiochus; use the name, as is customary in English.

   videbat: in like manner supply Hannibal.
- 82 2 Pamphylio, etc.: i.e. the sea off the coast of Pamphylia in Asia Minor.—quo, in which battle; supplied from the preceding statement.—cum, while; another clause of circumstance, but not quite a concession. Either thought would require the subjunctive.
- 82 3 quo cornu: i.e. eo cornu quo; cf. 'What measure ye mete, (it) shall be measured to you again'; cf. 19 1 and note.—rem gessit, acted or commanded.
- 82 5 ne: remember that after verbs of fearing we translate ne by that or lest, and ut by that not.
- 82 8 omnium: partit. gen.—se fore, etc.: another fut. condition in indir. disc.; in the direct form, 'ero..., nisi providero.'



FIG. 106. - AMPHORA.

82 11 amphoras: the memory of this usage still survives in 'a pot of money.'

- 82 16 domi, at his house; cf. humi, 43 26.
- 82 18 inscientibus eis: translate by a temporal clause; cf. note, 17 24.
  - 82 21 eodem: i.e. the same as before with Antiochus.
- 82 22 quam . . . armavit, than arm; notice the idiom for this idea in Latin; the same form is used after the quam as before it.
- 82 23 opibus: abl. of respect; cf. dignitate, 19 1.—conciliabat, began to, proceeded to, etc.
  - 82 25 eo: i.e. Prusias.
- 82 26 mari, terra: notice that these words need no prep. in this use.

   quo magis, whereby the more; abl. of degree of difference.
  - 82 27 utrobique: i.e. on sea and land.
  - 83 1 quem si, etc.: cf. 82 8.
  - 83 4 superabatur, was overmatched.
- 83 5 imperavit: here followed by the infin. but more usually by an ut-clause of purpose.
  - 83 9 praecipis omnes ut, etc.: his own words would be:-

praecipio omnes ut . . . concurratis, . . . habeatis vos defendere. Id (vos) facile . . . consequemini. Rex autem in qua navi vehatur ut sciatis (ego) faciam; quem si aut ceperitis aut interfeceritis, magno vobis polliceor praemio fore.

Note carefully the changes in mood and tense when this is reported indirectly.

- 83 11 id, etc.: it is to be remembered that the Latin needs no new verb of saying in such a case as this. It is implied in the verb **praecipit**; cf. note, 51 19.
- 83 17 daretur: subjv. as a part of Hannibal's plan, before it could or should be given; cf. notes, 44, 69 7.
  - 83 18 caduceo: the herald's staff, equivalent to a flag of truce.
  - 83 22 esset scriptum: cf. 44 14.
  - 83 25 pertinerent : cf. note, 61 13.
  - 83 27 praecepto: abl. in accordance with.
  - 84 3 reliquae, etc.; for order, cf. Marius cum, etc., 58 5, and note.
- 84 6 coepta sunt: the pass. of this word is used with the same sense as the act. when a pass. infin. is used with it, as here conici.
- 84 9 potissimum: in meaning equal to a superlative of 'rather'; i.e. rather than anything else, most.
  - 84 12 alias: adv., elsewhere, on other occasions.
- 84 15 consularem: ex-consuls retained such dignity from their former office as to constitute a kind of division of the nobility higher than the general senate.

- 84 18 detulit: the technical word for laying anything officially before a person in authority. patres conscripti: the regular appellation of the senate.
- 84 18 qui... existimarent: this may be translated simply as the ind., but the Latin expresses by the subjv. the idea that the statement in the clause has some important bearing or inner connection with the action of the senate. This is often implied in English, but is not distinguished. If we wish to make it clear we must say 'inasmuch as,' or 'since,' or express it by a participle. This usage in Latin is a form of the characteristic subjv.; cf. 61 13.
- 84 21 suum, sibi: observe the indir. reflex., referring to the main subject, the senate, while secum is a direct reflex. referring to Prusias. Such apparent ambiguity is readily explained by the context; cf. 41 14 and note.
- 84 22 ne...postularent: in accordance with the construction of verbs of hindering, the clause with ne is here used; cf. 63 10. We may translate the whole this is the only thing that he refused, that they should ask him, etc.
  - 84 23 esset: cf. 81 2.
- 84 24 comprehenderent: cf. moveret, 9 11. Again indir. disc. without an expressed verb of saying. It is implied in recusavit.
- 84 26 datum erat: not a part of Prusias's words, and so indicative. muneri: cf. commodato, 29 13. aedificarat: for aedificaverat.
- 85 2 multitudine domum circumdedissent: here the verb properly means 'put around,' but comes to mean also *surround*. Hence it has a double construction, put a thing (acc.) round another (dat.), or surround a thing (acc.) with another (abl.). A number of similar verbs have this construction depending on their double meaning.
  - 85 4 foris: acc. plural.
- 85 6 obsideretur: an indir. question can depend on any expression which in sense can introduce a question or the answer to it.
  - 85 7 occupatos: cf. oppletas, 84 8.
- **85** 9 alieno: this word is the possessive of alius, and properly means of another.' Here the whole expression may be translated at another's will, i.e. wishing to die free and not to be put to death.
  - 85 12 laboribus: regular abl. with perfunctus: cf. 5 13.
- 85 13 quibus consulibus: again merely a date, as usual. So also the names following.
- 85 14 Atticus: Titus Pomponius Atticus, the friend of Cicero, who tried his hand at history.
  - 85 15 scriptum reliquit: cf. 81 15.

85 16 Polybius: a historian who wrote in Greek, a friend and protégé of the younger Scipio.

85 18 atque: though we often may translate this word by and, yet it always introduces something striking or important in addition to what has been said. Here almost like 'and yet,' or the colloquial 'and, do you know.'—tantus: merely great, not 'so great,' inasmuch as we do not use a demonstrative in such cases.—tantisque: we should omit the 'and.'

85 20 in eis, among them.—ad Rhodios, etc.: the title of the book, where we should supply 'an address' or the like.

85 21 huius: translate *Hannibal's*; cf. notes, 21 6, 90 24.—belli gesta, exploits in war; cf. 71 3.

85 22 duo: sc. sunt.

85 25 usus est: the regular word for attendance on a teacher.

## III. POETICAL SELECTIONS.

It is of the essence of poetry to use the greatest freedom in constructions and in the choice of words, so that both words and constructions are often unusual and will need more careful consideration. But, on the other hand, they are rarely complex, and, aside from an occasional free use of figurative expressions, — which, after all, are more vivid than the faded ones of prose, — poetry ought to be quite as intelligible as prose. The greater freedom of order will, however, sometimes embarrass a young pupil.

Obviously these extracts must be read metrically, otherwise the effect would be almost entirely lost. But the metres generally are too difficult to be mastered by beginners. For this reason the rhythmical ictus is here marked by an accent. A stress on the syllables so marked will give a rhythmical movement after the English fashion, which is all that most persons attain or even attempt. The rhythm of the ancients was, however, something very different from this. Their poetry was, as it were, set to a definite musical movement, in which time (i.e. quantity) was all-important. All who have learned to read 'quantitatively' will naturally produce something of the ancient effect, because in this book the quantity of the syllables is everywhere indicated. As to the word-accent, if no special attempt is made to have it prominent, the quantitative reading will so weaken it that it will not disturb the rhythm of the verse, while still being sufficiently observed. The rhythmical accent must always be obvious, the time or quantity ought to be, and the word-accent may well be, when it can without losing the feeling of the other two.

If these verses can really be read quantitatively the difficulties of accent will disappear. If one can once get the melody in his head as definitely

as 'Old Hundred' or 'Dennis,' he need n't trouble himself about accent. That will come of itself.

Besides the accents, the reader will find some syllables printed in italics. These are to be suppressed in the reading (elision and ecthlipsis). See § 612. c. f (359. c. d); B. 366. 7; G. 719. 1. 2; H. 733. 1 (608. i); H-B. 646.

- No. 1. See introductory note to No. 13, p. 8.
- 86 1 ad fontem: for the order, cf. 'On Linden, when the sun was low.'
- 86 2 liquore, the limpid mirror.
- 86 5 venantum: the plural of participles is often used for nouns, rarely the singular.
- 86 7 excepit, received; the personal character of the word suggests 'in its depths,' or the like, which our rhetoric usually plainly expresses.—ferum, the creature; not that this word in itself is any better than 'animal' or 'wild beast,' only these suggest associations which do not belong in the picture and so should be avoided.
  - 86 8 retentis, catching or clinging; lit. 'caught' (i.e. by the trees).
  - 86 10 vocem, words.
  - 86 11 me: the acc. is often used in exclamations; cf. English 'Ah me!'
- 86 13 habuerint, have brought; lit. 'had in them.'—luctūs: partit. gen. with quantum; cf. aliquid terrae, 56 25.
- No. 2. From Ovid, one of the most popular and clever writers of the Augustan age. The metre is the so-called elegiac, consisting of alternating hexameters and pentameters of the dactylic type. The even lines have a pause in the middle.
  - 86 14 multos, by scores.
- **86** 16 ut, how; introducing an indir. question. As the interr. and rel. came from the same stem, so the adv. uti (ut) is both interr. (as here) and rel. (as in its meaning when and in the purpose and result constructions).
  - 86 18 tendunt, make their way.
  - 86 19 ibit, will come.
- 86 20 ut, as, correlative with sic, l. 22.—per: here following its case, as often in poetry.—euntibus, as you go; lit. 'to those going,' a dat. of reference.—umbra: the subject.
- 86 21 pressus, obscured; but the figure is more vivid in Latin, something like 'suppressed.'
  - 86 22 lumina: the poetic plur. for singular.
- 86 23 simul: sc. ac; cf. the British use of 'once' and 'directly' as connectives, without 'when' or any such word.
- No. 3. This is an inscription of about B.C 100. Some archaisms not essential to the metre have been modernized.

- 87 2 sepulcrum: notice the alliteration, a common ornament in older Latin.
- 87 3 Claudiam: a second acc. after words of naming, calling, etc. Cf. 'Call him John'; see also 81 4.
- 87 5 creavit, bore. horunc: an old form for horum, in which the c is retained, as in hic.
- 87 6 alium: we should expect alterum as the regular form, but authors are not always careful in this respect.—locat: this may be taken for locavit or treated as present, meaning leaves buried.
  - 87 7 sermone: abl. of quality.
- 87 8 servavit: i.e. did not gad about. fecit, wrought; i.e. spun and wove. These two lines express the ideal qualities of the perfect woman according to the ancient standard. dixi, I've had my say; a common form at the close of a speech. abi, pass on.
- No. 4. From a play of Titus Maccius Plautus (B.C. 254-184) who adapted comedies from the Greek New Comedy. A considerable number of his plays are preserved and rank among the oldest extant Latin literature.
  - 87 9 hominibus: dat. of reference.
  - 87 10 dormientis, when they are sleeping; referring to men.
- 87 11 velut, as for instance, a common meaning of the word. hac nocte, etc.: the redundancy of expression is characteristic of Plautus.
  - 87 13 visast: i.e. visa est, the regular colloquial contraction.
- 87 14 ascensionem, etc., to be trying to climb.—admolirier: an old form for the pres. infinitive.
  - 87 15 postibi: a different form equivalent to postea.
  - 87 16 adgredirier: cf. admolirier, above.
  - 87 17 utendas: cf. diripiendas, 61 11.
  - 87 19 Philomela, etc.: referring to a well-known Greek myth.
  - 87 21 nimio: in early Latin this word means 'much,' not 'too much.'
- 87 22 ultro: from meaning 'beyond,' this word comes to mean 'beyond what is called for or expected'; so here, unprovoked.—malum, trouble. in a colloquial sense.—minitarier: cf. admolirier, l. 14.
- 87 23 med: old form for me. nescio quo modo, somehow or other. The phrase nescio quis rarely introduces a real indir. question, but is only a weak indef. pron., some one or other.
  - 87 24 mediam, by the middle, in our idiom.
  - 87 25 nequissumam: superl. of nequam.
- 87 26 dicam: this word in comedy is often superfluous, but it may be translated to say.
  - 87 27 hodie: a very weak word, merely meaning now, so far, or yet.

- No. 5. A famous bit of Catullus, a lyric poet of the first century B.C. The metre is the so-called Phalæcian  $(\checkmark \ge | \checkmark \lor | \checkmark \lor | \checkmark \lor | \checkmark \lor | \checkmark \lor)$ .
- 88 2 quantumst: i.e. quantum est; cf. visast, 87 13. The phrase is idiomatic for all.—hominum: the earlier and more popular Latin affects the use of the partit. gen.—venustiorum: i.e. endowed with a greater degree of grace than men in general.
  - 88 5 oculis: regular abl. after the comparative.
- 88 6 mellitus, honey sweet. norat: i.e. noverat, knew. suam: refers to the sparrow, and agrees with puellam understood.
- 88 13 male sit, a plague upon you! ill betide you! the most common mild form of curse with the Romans.
  - 88 14 omnia bella, all that's fair.
- 88 17 tua opera, through you, or on account of the emphasis, it is your fault, you are to blame, that, etc.
- No. 6. An extract from a play of Publius Terentius Afer, a comedian somewhat later than Plautus (B.C. 195-159) who wrote in the same field but with less wit and rollicking humor and more elegance and refinement. Only six comedies of his are extant. The metre is iambic, regularly  $\mathcal{L} \cup \mathcal{L}$  repeated three times. et: connecting these remarks with what precedes in the play.
- 88 19 errat: the subj. is the omitted antecedent of qui, one of the commonest of Latin idioms.—mea: pronounced as one syllable, mya.—quidem: emphasizing mea, at least, however others may think.
  - 88 20 credat: cf. note, 61 13. gravius, more potent.
- 88 21 adiungitur: by a curious turn of thought the Romans spoke of uniting the bond as well as the things bound by it. Hence, for instance, iungere pontem means to make a bridge.
- 88 22 ratio, way of thinking, orig. 'reckoning.'—animum: for the tautology, cf. 87 11.
- 88 23 malo: almost technical for punishment. Cf. 'getting into trouble.' Cf. 87 22.
  - 88 24 rescitum iri: the rare fut. infin. passive.
  - 88 25 ingenium: i.e. his natural conduct.
  - 88 26 quem . . . adiungas: here used in the proper sense; cf. l. 21.
  - 88 27 par referre, to repay in kind; cf. gratiam referam, 45 14.
- 88 28 patriumst: when a final vowel or syllable in m would be cut off before est or es it was customary to cut off the vowel of the verb and preserve the ending, as here; cf. quantumst, 88 2.
- 88 29 alieno, of another; cf. 85 9. In many cases in Latin the distinction between objective and subjective gen. is lost sight of; in fact, there is no hard and fast line between the two, the objective being only a

variation of the subjective. The fear belongs as much to the one who inspires as to the one who feels it.

- 89 1 hoc pater, etc.: a short-hand construction for hoc interest inter, etc.—hoc: obj. of nequit; a neuter pron. in the acc. is often used after verbs which otherwise are not transitive. This is of the same kind as the cognate acc., 'to fight a battle,' 'to run a race.'
  - 89 2 fateatur: hortatory subj.; cf. 30 25.
- No. 7. This extract is from one of the satires of Horace, next to Virgil the most famous poet of the Augustan age. He is better known by his odes, but he also wrote satires, pictures of life and manners spiced with genial raillery. This extract and the following are in the common verse of Epic poetry, the dactylic hexameter. This consists of dactyls (———) and spondees (———).
  - 89 3 olim: the regular word in Latin for once upon a time in stories.
- 89 4 rusticus, etc.: poetry not only has a freer order of words, but purposely uses fanciful arrangements in order to set off one word against another. Here the two kinds of mice are contrasted by putting them together, and the two forms of mus, coming as they do, produce an effect that was much liked by the Greeks and Romans.
- 89 5 cavo: without a prep., as often in poetry by an earlier usage, where we should have one in prose.—veterem, etc.: on the disposition of the words, cf. l. 4.
- 89 6 quaesitis: a few neuter adjs. and partics are used, especially in poetry, in the cases which do not show their gender (contrary to note on 3 14).—ut tamen, etc.: the result-clause, though usually having a kind of intensive sense, as, 'It rained so that I could not drive out,' yet not infrequently expresses a limitation, as one might say in reply, 'Yes, that's true, but so that (ut tamen) you could run into your neighbor's.' Here this meaning is made clearer by the use of tamen (but).—artum, close, as the opposite of generous and effusive; cf. 'close-fisted.'
- 89 7 hospitiis: abl. of means, though we may translate by in. For the plural, cf. nives, 1 3.—quid multa: cf. 32 3.
- 89 8 ciceris: an exceptional construction after invidit in the sense of grudge or be sparing of, after the analogy of expressions of plenty and want.
- 89 9 et: connecting the whole sentence, though displaced by avidum with the freedom of poetry.
- 89 11 tangentis: cf. oranti, 6 6. male, hardly. Of a bad thing the word means much, of a good thing little.
  - 89 12 pater domus: i.e. pater familias, the master of the house.
  - 89 13 esset: from edo.

- \*\*89 14 ad: not 'to' him exactly, but rather 'at' him, as reproaching him.—te: the regular acc. after several impers. verbs, like 'it repenteth him of the evil.'
  - 89 15 nemoris: cf. laboris, 73 22.
- 89 17 comes, as my companion, in pred. apposition with the omitted subj. of carpe. terrestria, all carthborn things.
  - 89 18 sortita, possessed of, lit. 'having got by lot.'
- 89 19 leti, from death; cf. note, 71 3.—quo... circa: to be taken together.—bone, my good friend, a familiar form of address.
  - 89 21 aevi: gen. of quality; cf. aetatis, 33 17.
  - 89 24 nocturni, by night; cf. laetus, 1 3.
- 89 25 ponit: in this use, as in 'the sun was just setting when two horsemen were seen,' etc., cum always takes the ind. It will be seen that the idea is entirely different from the other uses of cum; § 546. a (325. b); B. 288. 2; G. 581; H. (600. i. 1); H-B. 566. a. Notice the slight grandiloquence of the style, which is intentional travesty.
- 89 27 canderet: subjv. with the rel. adv. ubi, characterizing the house as a fine one; cf. 61 13.
- 89 29 procul: this word does not necessarily mean 'far off,' but sometimes near by; cf. 'off Cape Hatteras.'
- 90 1 succinctus: i.e. as a waiter or attendant. These would be slaves in short tunics.
- 90 2 verniliter, like a pampered slave. The verna, a slave born in the house, was a pampered pet, and took liberties in thieving, tasting the dainties, etc.
- 90 4 ille, the other; cf. illa, 27 17. Use sensible freedom in the translation of demonstratives. sorte: that in which one delights is expressed by the abl. of cause.
  - 90 5 agit . . . convivam, acts the part of, etc. cum: cf. 89 25.
- 90 7 currere, trepidare: hist. infins.; see note on concuti, 27 10. These are at once recognized from having the subj. in the nominative.
- 90 8 Molossis: a famous breed of dogs, like 'Newfoundland' or 'St. Bernard.'
  - 90 9 canibus: used by a figure instead of the noise as the means.
- 90 10 opus, etc.: cf. the vulgar 'I've no use for.' For the following abl., cf. consilio, 28 20.—valeas, I bid you good-by, an optative subjunctive.
- 90 11 solabitur: i.e. for the implied loss of this dainty fare. Cf. the expression 'consolation prize.'
- No. 8. From the voyage of Æneas to Italy in Virgil's famous poem. The metre is again dactylic hexameter. We may compare the "Story of Ulysses," pp. 50-54.

- 90 12 proxima: i.e. next in the course of Æneas.—raduntur, they graze (lit. 'scrape'), changing the voice.
- 90 13 solis filia: this enchantress was fabled to be the daughter of the sun.
- 90 14 resonat: here translate makes resound; cf. personuit, l. 9.—tectis: for omitted prep., cf. cavo, 89 5, and note.
- 90 16 arguto, etc.: notice the artistic order; such pairs as these are a favorite arrangement.
- 90 17 exaudiri, saevire, ululare: cf. currere, l. 7. gemitus iraeque, the roar and the fury. In Latin a complex idea is often for greater vividness separated into two parts. Here what is meant is the prosaic 'angry roars of the lions,' but both the noun and the adj. are made more emphatic by dwelling on them separately. This use is called hendiadys, a name better forgotten than kept, unless fully understood.
- 90 18 recusantum: the gen. of participles in -um instead of -ium is one of the archaisms of poetry.
- 90 22 inducrat: a confusion of ideas. The goddess had clothed (inducrat) the men with the forms of beasts, but in so doing had put them into those forms (in voltus).
- No. 9. This description of the fabled Golden Age is by Tibullus, one of the less famous poets of the Augustan age. The stanza is in the same metre as No. 2.
- 90 23 Saturno: cf. the giving of dates by naming the consul. vivebant, they lived, i.e. men lived, as in English.
- 90 24 longas, etc. Notice that the two halves of the verse end in words that belong together, and even have a kind of rhyme; so in 1. 25, caeruleas...undas. This is a favorite arrangement with the Latin poets, and will sometimes make clearer the construction, as indeed will all such tricks when they are once understood.
- 90 25 pinus: i.e. the ship, like 'steel' for 'sword,' or 'lead' for 'shot,' or 'birch' for 'canoe.' This is metonymy, and in fact so is 'rubbers' for 'overshoes.'
- 90 26 praebueratque: in prose the connective comes as early as possible along with the words it connects, so that we should expect the enclitic here appended to the first word. But poetry allows it to be delayed to suit the metre, and here we have it appended to the verb.
- 90 27 nec vagus, etc.: the order here seems hopelessly involved, but we may translate almost word for word, nor roving in pursuit of gain in foreign lands had the sailor loaded deep with foreign wares his bark. So much distortion is quite within English usage, and will enable us to notice how closely the Latin follows the development of the picture in the poet's mind.

- 91 2 illo...validus...tempore taurus: observe the parallel arrangement by which one pair (noun and adj.) is let into the corresponding one,—a favorite trick of poets (interlocked order).
  - 91 4 fixus . . . lapis: for order, cf. 90 27.
  - 91 5 qui regeret: relative clause of purpose.
- 91 7 securis, (to the shepherds) free from care; notice that no noun is necessary in Latin, being implied in the adjective.
- 91 8 non acies, no array of battle. ensem, etc.: the order may well be preserved by treating the obj. as subj. and changing the voice of the verb.
- 91 9 immiti: this word naturally is only applicable to persons, but the effect of the poetry is enhanced by assigning the quality to the art of the smith, and giving him another (saevus). The order here again is interlocked; cf. l. 2.
- 91 10 Iove: the reign of Saturn was succeeded by that of Jove, in which the idyllic state of society ceased.
- 91 11 mare: the great catastrophes of the sea were much more present to the imaginations of the ancients than to our own, and even now the sea is still an object of terror; cf. the prophecy of the millenium, 'and there shall be no more sea.'
- No. 10. An address of Horace to a friend on the necessity of death. The metre is called Alcaic, from the Greek poet Alcaus.
- 91 16 non: sc. adferet. trecenis: with tauris. quotquot, etc., for every day that goes, or for every passing day.
- 91 17 places: the long a shows that this comes from place, not from places.
- 91 18 Plutona: a Greek form of acc. This god ruled the world below, and so was the god of death. Only by appearing him could death be stayed.
- 91 19 Geryonen, etc.: fabled monsters in the world below. The first had three bodies.
- 91 20 unda: i.e. the fabled Styx, which surrounded the region of the dead, and so had to be crossed (enaviganda) by departed spirits. omnibus: dat. of agent with enaviganda.
  - 91 21 munere: abl. with vescimur.
  - 91 24 carebimus: i.e. keep out of danger for fear of death.
- 91 26 autumnos: in the climate of Rome the autumn is especially dangerous from fever and the deadly sirocco.
  - 91 27 corporibus: dat. after nocentem; cf. 33 4.
  - 92 1 visendus: i.e. in spite of our precautions death must overtake us.
- 92 2 Cocytos: another fabled river in Hades.—Danai, etc.: these are two famous cases of punishment below. See Classical Dictionary.

- 92 4 laboris: cf. capitis, 23 13.
- 92 5 plăcens: cf. plāces, 91 17.
- 92 7 cupressos: a tree particularly associated with death and funerals. Cf. the old weeping willow as associated with mourning.
- 92 s ulla: i.e. arbor, supplied from arborum. brevem, short lived; the real meaning is 'for only a brief space their owner.' dominum: in apposition with te.
- 92 9 Caecuba (sc. vina): one of the finer wines of Italy; hence centum clavibus.
- 92 11 tinguet: i.e. the precious wine you are so careful to preserve will only be wasted after all by a spendthrift heir who deserves it better than you because he knows how to use it instead of hoarding it.
- 92 12 pontificum: splendid banquets of the various colleges of priests were almost a part of the ritual of the Roman religion. These became proverbial, like aldermen's dinners in England.—cenis: abl. after comparative.
- No. 11. An extract from a longer ode on the joys of country life, a subject on which the Romans were never tired of dwelling. The metre is iambic; cf. No. 6.
- 92 14 prisca, etc.: i.e. in the earlier, simpler times of Roman life; cf. English 'the good old days of yore.'
- 92 16 solutus, etc.: i.e. free from the avaricious anxieties of the money-lender. We should speak in the same tone of the stockbroker.
- 92 17 excitatur, etc.: he is neither a soldier nor a trader with the trials of either. miles, as a soldier; pred. appositive.
- 92 19 forumque, etc.: the arduous duties of political ambition do not disturb him.
- No. 12. An exhortation to the proper enjoyment of life, chiefly, as is Horace's manner, on account of the certainty of death; cf. No. 10. The metre is the same as in that ode.
- 92 21 aequam, etc.: the aim of all the great post-Socratic schools of philosophy was to secure the even temper of the sage, neither depressed by troubles nor exalted by fortune.
  - 92 22 servare: a complementary infin.; cf. redire, 40 5.
- 92 24 moriture: this word is really the keynote of the whole ode. The certainty of death makes the troubles or successes of life too trivial to disturb the calmness of the sage.
  - 93 1 seu . . . vixeris: the condition of moriture.
  - 93 3 bearis: for beaveris.
- 93 4 interiore, etc.: the oldest and so farthest back in the store-house.

- 93 5 quo, to what end? i.e. if not to enjoy them. pinus, etc.: notice that the pairs in this line are reversed in order, a favorite arrangement.
  - 93 6 umbram: governed by consociare in the sense of unite to make.
- 93 7 laborat: suggesting the rocks and other impediments that make the charm of a babbling brook.
- 93 9 unguenta: odors were a much-valued source of enjoyment with the ancients, and as spirits were not yet invented, the only vehicle for them was oils and fats making ointments; cf. the Biblical alabaster box of ointment.
  - 93 10 iube: i.e. the slaves.
- 93 11 sororum fila: an allusion to the Fates who were fabled to spin the thread of human lives; cf.:—
  - "Somewhere on an unknown shore, Where the rivers of life their waters pour, Sit three sisters forever more Spinning a silver thread."
- 93 12 atra: anything connected with death has from time immemorial been associated with darkness.
- 93 13 saltibus, pasture lands, an important source of wealth. domo, villa: cf. note, 50 22.
  - 93 16 divitiis: cf. construction of munere, 91 21. heres: cf. 92 11.
- 93 17 divesne...moreris: an indir. question.—Inacho: the name of an ancient king of Argos; proverbial of ancient and noble descent.
  - 93 20 Orcus: a name of Pluto.
  - 93 21 codem: i.e. to the same end, the world below.
- 93 22 versatur, etc.: as if men's fate was determined by drawing lots shaken in an urn, and when each one's lot was drawn he must go below and cross the Styx in Charon's boat to eternal exile.
  - "Frightful in filth, Charon the ferryman
    These streams and waters guards: upon his chin
    Lies his unshorn and matted beard: his eyes
    Are shafts of fire: his squalid mantle hangs
    Tied at the shoulder with a knot. His boat,
    Trimmed with a sail, he pushes with a pole,
    And in his rusty skiff takes ghosts across,—
    An old man now, but with a god's old age
    Still fresh and green."





FIG. 107. - THE LEGIONARY.

## SELECTIONS FROM CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.



FIG. 108. - COIN OF CASSAR.

THE first Book of the commentaries begins with a general description of Gaul. This is followed by an account of the two wars that occupied Cæsar's attention during his first year in Gaul: the Helvetian War and the campaign against Ariovistus.

THE HELVETIAN WAR. - Early in the year B.C. 58, the whole population of Helvetia (northern Switzerland), amounting to about 360,000, attempted to pass by an armed emigration through the heart of Gaul, in order to settle somewhere near the shore of the Bay of Biscay, possibly with the hope of being masters of the whole country. They were hemmed in by the great natural barriers of the Alps, the Lake of Geneva, and the Jura Mountains on the south and west, and pressed on the north by great hordes of Germans, who kept up a continual border war. Their fields were scant, their harvests insufficient, their people hardy and fearless. Their ambitious chief, Orgetorix, had prepared them so well for this enterprise that his flight and death - when he was charged with guilty conspiracy, and put on trial for his life - caused no delay. The attempt was held in check by Cæsar, during a fortnight's parley, till sufficient earthworks had been thrown up along the Rhone to withstand their advance across the river; the advance was then made in force along the narrow pass between that river and the Jura. But the Helvetians did not succeed in getting more than fifty miles beyond the frontier, when they were overtaken by Cæsar, who, by a few light skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced them back to their own territories with the loss of more than 200,000 lives. This brief campaign lasted only from March to June.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS. — The latter half of this Book is taken up with the expulsion of a military settlement of Germans, which had been made a few years before under Ariovistus, a chief of the Suevi.

The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hædui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans under Ariosistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had exacted a large share of territory and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian War began to threaten. The Roman senate, to make safe, passed the decrees before mentioned, promising favor and friendship

to the Hædui; and at the same time sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend, recognizing his claims on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This was the year before, in Cæsar's consulship. Now, however, that the fear of the Helvetians was passed, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides on the old quarrel.

## BOOK FIRST, CHAP. 1. - B.C. 58.

PAGE 143. LINE 1. Gallia: that is, Transalpine Gaul, excluding the Roman province (*Provincia*) in the southeast, as well as Gallia Cisalpina, now northern Italy. It occupied the territory of France, including the country to the Rhine boundary, with most of the Netherlands and Switzerland (see map, Fig. 2).—omnis (predicate), as a whole.—est divisa, is divided: the adjective use of the participle, not the perfect passive; § 495 (291. b); B. 337. 2; G. 250. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 640. 3 (550. N.<sup>2</sup>); H-B. 320. iii.—unam: sc. partem.

143 2 incolunt: in translation (not in reading the Latin to make out the sense) change the voice to the passive in order to preserve the emphasis in the English idiom. It is well to acquire the habit of making such changes. The natural English form would be: of which one is inhabited by the Belgians, etc., but the Latin uses the active voice. The moment you find an accusative beginning a sentence, if it seems from its meaning to be a direct object, you can at once think of it as a subject in the nominative (at the same time noticing that the Latin does not make it such). The verb can then be instantly thought of as a passive and the subject as agent. This inversion is so common in Latin for purposes of rhetoric that such a device is a very helpful one, and if properly used from the start need not obscure the Latin construction. The Latin plays upon the position of words to produce all sorts of shades of rhetorical expression, and it is never too early to observe these shades and try to render them in our own idiom. -Belgae: probably of the Cymric branch of the Celtic race, allied to the Britons and the modern Welsh; they inhabited the modern Belgium and northern France, and were considerably mixed with Germans (see Bk. ii. ch. 1). - Aquitani: of the Spanish Iberians (the modern Basques) inhabiting the districts of the southwest (see Bk. iii. ch. 20). - aliam: here alteram would be more usual as meaning the second in the list. - qui . . . appellantur: notice that in Latin any relative may suggest its own antecedent, as with the indefinite relative (whoever) in English. In English we have to supply a demonstrative (those) who. So here tertiam qui = tertiam partem ei incolunt qui; see § 307. c (200. c); B. 251. 1; G. 619; H. 399. 4 (445.6); H-B. 284. 1. - ipsorum, etc.: notice that the position of words is so significant in Latin, through its indicated emphasis, that it may allow words

to be omitted which must be supplied in the thought. In this case the English idiom is the same: in their own tongue... in ours.

- 143 3 Celtae: probably of the Gaelic branch, represented by the Irish and the Highland Scotch.—lingua: abl. of specification; § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.
- 143 4 different: the language of the Aquitani was Basque; of the Gauls proper, Celtic; of the Belgians, another dialect of Celtic mixed with German.—inter se, from one another: the preposition inter may be used to show any reciprocal relation; § 301. f(196. f); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. I (448. N.); H-B. 266.—Gallos: see note on incolunt, l. 2.
- **143** 5 **dividit:** the verb is singular, because the two rivers make one boundary; § 317. b (205. b); B. 255. 3; G. 211. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 392. 4 (463. ii. 3); H-B. 331. 3.
- 143 6 horum: part. gen. with fortissimi; § 346. a. 2 (216. a); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346. propterea quod, because; lit. 'because of this, that,' etc. The difference between this and the simple quod is only one of greater emphasis almost as strong as and the reason is or and it is because.
- 143 7 cultu, civilization, as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life. humanitate, refinement, of mind or feeling. provinciae: the province of Gallia Narbonensis, organized about B.C. 120. Its chief cities were Massilia (Marseilles), an old Greek free city, and the capital, Narbo (Narbonne), a Roman colony. The name Provincia has come down to us in the modern Provence.
- 143 8 mercatores: these were traders or peddlers, mostly from the seaport of Massilia; they travelled with pack-horses, mules, and wagons. A very common article of traffic, as with our Indian traders, was intoxicating drinks, wines from the southern coast, which, especially, as Cæsar says, "tend to debauch the character." These people, it is said, would give the traders a boy for a jar of wine. commeant: this verb means, especially, to go back and forth in the way of traffic. The main line of trade lay across the country, by the river Liger (Loire). ea: object of important.
- 143 9 effeminandos: § 506 (300); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 628 (544); H-B. 612. iii. proximi: notice how the three superlatives, longissime, minime, and proximi are arranged. After the emphatic idea of cultu, etc., is completed, the superlatives begin each its own phrase.
- 143 10 Germanis: dat. with an adjective of nearness; § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. 1); H-B. 362. iii. trans Rhenum: the Rhine was, in general, the boundary between the Gauls and the Germans, and has so remained till modern times. continenter (adverb from the participle of contineo, hold together), incessantly; strictly, without any

interruption. The pupil should begin at once to notice the way in which words develop into groups expressing the same idea in the forms of the various parts of speech. See p. 459.

143 11 qua de causa, and for this reason: § 308. f(180. f); B. 251. 6; G. 610; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8; referring back to proximi, etc., and further explained by quod...contendunt.—Helvetii: here, it will be noticed, reckoned as Gauls.—quoque: i.e. just as the Belgians.

143 12 reliquos, the rest of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N.<sup>1. 2</sup>); H-B. 346. c; notice the emphasis of position; the others as opposed to the Helvetii.—virtute, not virtue, but courage; for construction, see note on lingua, l. 3. — praecedunt, excel; lit. 'go ahead of.'

143 13 procliis: abl. of means; finibus: abl. of separation.—cum prohibent, while they keep them off (pro-habeo).

143 14 ipsi (emphatic), themselves, the Helvetians.

143 15 corum una pars, one division of them (the Gauls or Celts), the people being identified with the country.—quam...dictum est, which, it has been (already) said, the Gauls hold. Notice that in direct discourse it would be Galli obtinent: the subject nom. is changed to acc. and the indic. to the infin. after the verb of saying, dictum est; § 561. a (272. R.); B. 330; G. 527; H. 613. 2 (535. 1); H-B. 534. 1, 590. 1. Here quam is the object and Gallos the subject of obtinere, while the clause is the subject of dictum est; § 560, 561, 566. b (329, 330. a. 2); B. 330; G. 528; H. 615 (538); H-B. 238, 590. 1. a.—obtinere (ob-teneo), not obtain, but occupy; strictly, hold against all claimants. Ob in composition almost always has the sense of opposing or coming in the way of something. This is one of the many words which have entirely changed their meaning in their descent from the Latin. Always be on your guard against rendering Latin words



FIG. 109. - GALLIC COIN.

by the English one corresponding. Obtined does not mean obtain, nor occupo, occupy. The corresponding word is often suggestive as a guide to the meaning, but must not be used without careful examination.

144 1 ab Sequanis, on the side of, etc., regarded from the point of view of the Province; a very common use of ab;

§ 429. b (260. b); G. 390. 2. N.6; H. 490 (434. 1); H-B. 406. 2.

144 2 vergit, etc., slopes to the north; the highlands (Cévennes) are along the southern boundary, and the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly. — septentriones (septem triones, "the seven ploughoxen"): i.e. the constellations of the Great and Little Bears. The word is used both in the singular, as below, and in the plural, as here.

- 144 3 Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul, the country just described, not Gallia omnis.
- 144 4 spectant: i.e. considered from the Province, it lies in that direction.
- **144** 6 ad Hispaniam, next to Spain, i.e. the Bay of Biscay: § 428. d (259. f); H. 420. I (433. I).
- 144 7 spectat: cf. spectant above. inter occasum, etc., northwest, i.e. from the Province.

## BOOK SECOND. - B.C. 57.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY.—The people of northern Gaul, including Flanders and the Netherlands, were far remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Roman arms. They lived amid forests and swamps hard to penetrate; they claimed kindred with the German tribes rather than with the more fickle and effeminate Celts; and they had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence, like that which their descendants, the Dutch, exhibited long after in the same regions against the armies of Spain. The Belgian tribes, and particularly the Nervii, appear to have offered to Cæsar a more formidable and desperate resistance than any he met elsewhere until the great rising of B.C. 52. When their spirit was once broken, the conquest of the whole country was simply a question of time.

READING REFERENCES ON THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY.

Dodge's Cæsar, chaps. 7, 8.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 10.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 14.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 3.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 267-281.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 300-304.
Motley's Rise of the Dutch Republic, Vol. I. pp. 11, 12.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 5.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 3.

144 8 Chap. 1. cum esset, etc., while Casar was: subjv. with cum temporal; § 546 (325); B. 288. 1. B; G. 585; II. 600. ii (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524. For discussion of the principle, see notes on 7 5, 7 10, 16 5. The verb comes in this emphatic place on account of the close connection of these words with the preceding book; something like and being thus in, etc. See translation of this chapter in "Directions for Reading," p. 139.—citeriore Gallia: northern Italy.—ita uti (= ut, as): correlatives; the demonstrative word so is often omitted in English: § 323.g (107); G. 110. 3; H. 305; cf. H-B. 144.—demonstravimus, dixeramus: the perfect here implies an act done before the time of writing; the pluperf., what took place before the time of demonstravimus.

- 144 9 adferebantur, certior fiebat; imperf. of repeated action; § 470 (277); B. 260. 2; G. 231; H. 534. 3 (469. ii); H-B. 484. Translate kept coming in; he was informed from time to time.—litteris, by despatches: abl. of means; § 409 (248. c); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423.
- 144 10 Belgas...coniurare...dare, that the Belgians, etc.: indir. disc., acc. and infin. following the verbal phrase certior fiebat; § 459 (272); B. 331. i; G. 527; H. 613 (535); H-B. 589; direct, Belgae coniurant. Cæsar had not yet advanced farther north than the country of the Lingones, so that the Belgæ were as yet unattacked.— quam agrees with partem, though the proper antecedent is Belgas: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. R.8. b; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. I.
- 144 11 esse: indir. disc. (with subj. acc. quam), after dixeramus.—dixeramus is in the indic. because, though a relative clause, it is parenthetical merely, and not a part of the report of Labienus: § 583 (336. b); B. 314. 3; G. 628. R. a; H. 643. 3 (524. 2. 1); H-B. 535. 1. d.
- 144 12 coniurare: from the point of view of the Romans, any war against Rome is a "conspiracy"; a nation enslaved by Rome is "pacified."—inter se, to one another: § 301. f (196. f); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. I (448. N.); H-B. 266.—coniurandi: gerund; § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. a; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.—has esse causas, that the reasons were as follows: the report of Labienus continued, indir. disc.
- 144 13 quod vererentur, sollicitarentur: subjv. because subord. clauses in indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 541; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 2. The two clauses introduced by primum and deinde contain the two reasons for the conspiracy, and so the gist of the sentence. The rest, which makes the whole seem complicated, defines the classes of disaffected Gauls who, though conquered, hoped still to recover their liberty by means of their more warlike neighbors. These classes are two (partim . . . partim), but to these are added in Cæsar's words, but in a different construction (ab non nullis), some who had personal reasons for wishing to expel the Romans. — ne . . . adduceretur : subst. clause, object of vererentur : § 564 (331. f); B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567 (498. iii); H-B. 502. 4. — omni pacata Gallia: translate the abl. abs. freely, often by an active construction, having subdued, etc., or by a temporal, conditional, or such other clause as will best bring out the thought. Gallia: i.e. Celtic Gaul, within which the previous campaigns had been conducted; § 521. a (310. a); B. 305. 1; G. 667; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 578. 6.
- 144 14 exercitus noster: i.e. to subdue them in their turn.—ab non nullis Gallis: § 405 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 468 (415.i); H-B. 406. 1.
- 146 1 partim qui, etc.: not part of Labienus's report, but explanatory remarks added by Cæsar; hence the indic.—ut...ita: correlatives;

- § 323. g (107); G. 110. 3; H. (305); H-B. 144, 563. **Germanos...versari**: object of **noluerant**; § 457, 563. b (271. a, 330. 3); B. 295. N., 331. iv; G. 532; H. 614 (535. ii); H-B. 587 and a.
- 146 2 exercitum hiemare, etc., they took it hard (moleste ferebant) that an army of the Roman people was wintering and getting a foothold (inveterascere, lit. 'grow old') in Gaul. The infinitives, with their subj. acc. exercitum, are in indir. disc. after moleste ferebant: § 572. b (333. b); B. 331. v; G. 650; H. 642. ii (523. N.); H-B. 594.
- 146 4 mobilitate: abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444. novis imperiis studebant = were eager for a change of government (lit. 'new ruling powers'): dat.; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426 (385); H-B. 362. Notice that novis is emphatic.
- 146 5 ab non nullis, by some also (sc. sollicitabantur); these were petty chiefs of clans. quod (causal)... occupabantur, because royal power was (constantly) usurped. Notice the indic.; Cæsar explains the statement of Labienus (quod... sollicitarentur) by facts from his own knowledge; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 540; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555. A clause with the subjv. (occuparentur) would indicate that the reason assigned formed part of the letter of Labienus. potentioribus: used substantively; the more powerful.
- 146 6 ad... facultatis, the means to take men into their pay.—conducendos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338. 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544. N.<sup>2</sup>); H-B. 612. iii.
- 146 8 rem: cf. note on 78.—imperio nostro: strictly a loc. abl., implying time, place, or condition, under our dominion.—consequi, complementary infin.: § 456 and N. (271 and N.); B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 607. 2 (533. i. 2); H-B. 586 and a.
- 146 9 CHAP. 2. nuntiis: abl. of cause; cf. mobilitate, 146 4. duas legiones... misit: these were numbered XIII and XIV, making with the others (VII-XII) eight in all, amounting (with auxiliaries) to perhaps 60,000 men.
- 146 10 inita aestate: abl. abs., expressing time when; § 419 (255); B. 227. 2. a; G. 665; H. 489. I (431. I); H-B. 421. I; aestas is the period from the spring equinox to that of autumn.
- 146 11 qui deduceret (the antecedent is Q. Pedium): relative clause of purpose; § 531 (317.2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2. Pedium: Pedius was Cæsar's nephew, son of his sister Julia. legatum, aide, lieutenant; no English word exactly translates it.
- 146 12 cum primum, etc.: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry and baggage animals could subsist.—inciperet: cf. note on esset, 144 8.—ad exercitum: i.e. to Vesontio, in the country of the Sequani. See map, Fig. 42.

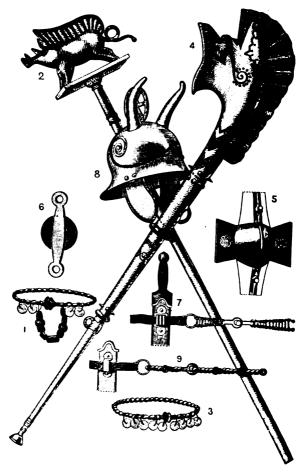


FIG. 110. - GALLIC REMAINS.

n and 3. Necklaces with amber and coral pendants.
 Military standard.
 Bronze trumpet (carnyx).
 Iron boss of shield.
 Iron holder.
 Sword-hilt and girdle.
 Iron helmet.
 Iron belt-chain.

- 146 13 Senonibus: these were north of the Hædui, on the upper course of the Seine; their name is preserved in Sens.—reliquis Gallis, the rest of the Gauls: § 293 (193); cf. B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.1); H-B. 346. c.
- 146 14 Belgis: dat. with finitimi; § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.—uti...cognoscant, to find out. This is a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with negotium; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. iii); H-B. 502. 3. a.—gerantur: subjv. as depending on cognoscant; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.
- 146 15 seque... faciant, and inform him (Cæsar); se is here used as the indirect reflexive; § 300. 2 (196. a. 2); B. 244. ii. a; G. 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2.—constanter, consistently (with one another); their accounts all agreed.
  - 146 16 manus (acc. plur., subject of cogi): small bands or companies.
- 146 17 tum vero: see Vocabulary and observe the emphatic position. dubitandum non [esse], he must no longer hesitate; the infin. of the second periphrastic conjugation, here used in indir. disc. after existimavit; § 158. d. N. (113. d. N.); B. 115; G. 251: H. 531 (466. N.); H-B. 162; dubitandum is impers.; § 208. d (146. d); B. 337. 8. b; G. 208. 2; H. 192. I (195. ii. 1); H-B. 600. 3. a. quin can follow only a negative expression, as here non existimavit, etc. quin . . . proficisceretur, to set out (lit. 'but that he should,' etc.): relative clause of result depending on dubitandum [esse]; § 558. a (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 596. I (505. i. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 3. b. In the sense of hesitate, dubito regularly takes the infin. and not quin, but exceptions occur, as here.
- 146 18 re comparata: on translation of the abl. abs., cf. note on 144 13.
- 146 19 diebus: abl. of 'time within which'; § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. finis: i.e. north of the Matrona (Marne), crossing somewhere between Bois le Duc and Châlons (sur Marne). The march from Besançon would be about one hundred and forty miles, or ten miles a day. He would so be about thirty-five or forty miles southeast of Durocortorum (Rheims), the capital of the Remi.
- **146** 20 Chap. 3. eo: adv. omnium opinione, than any one expected (following the comparative celerius): § 406. a (247. b); B. 217. 4; G. 398. N. l; H. 471. 7 (417. i. N. b); H-B. 416. e.
- 146 21 Remi: these were friendly to the Romans, who by their victory over Ariovistus (see Bk. i) had made them the second power in Gaul; cf. Bk. vi. ch. 12. proximi Galliae, nearest to Gaul; for the dat., see § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 444 (391. i); H-B. 346. e. ex Belgis, of

the Belga, for part. gen. Belgarum; see § 346.  $\epsilon$  (216.  $\epsilon$ ); B. 201. 1. a; G. 372. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 434. 2 (397. 3. N.<sup>3</sup>); H-B. 362; translate with **proximi**.

146 22 legatos, as ambassadors, predicate apposition.

146 23 qui dicerent: a relative clause of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 595. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

The rest of the chapter consists of the speech of the ambassadors, as reported by Cæsar in indir. disc. Notice that the *principal clauses* are in the infin. with subj. acc., and all *dependent clauses* in the subjv.: § 580 ff. (336 ff.); B. 313 ff.; G. 650; H. 642-644 (522-524); H-B. 534. 1 and 2. In dir. disc. this speech would read as follows:

Nos nostraque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittimus; neque [nos] cum reliquis Belgis consensimus neque contra populum Romanum coniuravimus, paratique sumus et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; reliqui omnes Belgae in armis sunt, Germanique, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his coniunxerunt, tantusque est eorum omnium furor ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque nostros, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utuntur (utantur), unum imperium unumque magistratum nobiscum habent (habeant), deterrere potuerimus quin cum his consentirent (consentiant). — se in fidem permittere, put themselves under the protection (good faith), etc.; more commonly with dat. — se suaque omnia, themselves and all their (possessions) ("their all"): object of permittere. The subj. acc. is regularly expressed in the indir. disc.; but here it is omitted to prevent the awkward repetition se (subject) se (object). In the next clause se is expressed.

146 24 neque, and (had) not: § 328. a (156. a); B. 341. 1. d; G. 480; H. 657. I (554. i. 2); H-B. 307. 3.—cum Belgis: accompaniment; § 413 (248. a); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. I (419. i); H-B. 419. I.

146 26 paratos (participial adj.), ready.—dare, facere, etc.: infinitives following paratos; § 460. b (273. b); B. 326. N.; G. 423; H. 608. 4 (533. 3); H-B. 586. f.

146 27 oppidis recipere, receive [the Romans] into their strongholds; oppidis is abl. of place without in: § 429 (258. f); B. 228. 1, cf. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); H-B. 436, cf. 446. 1.—frumento: abl. of means; cf. litteris, 144 9.—ceterisque rebus, everything else (necessary); see Vocabulary.—recipere, iuvare: sc. eos (i.e. the Romans) as object.

147 1 cis: i.e. the west or Gallic side.

147 2 sese... coniunxisse, had united; it often happens that a verb used as active in Latin and requiring a reflexive object may be best translated in English by an intransitive. The reverse of this must not be forgotten in writing Latin. — tantum ... ut: correlatives; § 537. 2. N.<sup>2</sup> (319 R.); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 500. ii. N.<sup>1</sup>; H-B. 521. 2. a.

- 147 3 furorem, madness (blind and unreasoning passion).—ut...
  potuerint: result-clause; § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii);
  H-B. 521. 2; for tense, see § 485. c. N.¹ (287. c. R.); B. 268. 7; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also note on 54 21.—ne...quidem: § 322. f(151. e); B. 347. 1; G. 445; H. 656. 2 (553. 2, 569. iii. 2); cf. H-B. 302. 1.—Suessiones (obj. of deterrere): they occupied territory west of the Remi, about the modern Soissons.
- 147 4 iure et legibus, rights and laws: for case, see § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.—isdem: for eisdem.
- 147 5 unum imperium, etc.: i.e. their close confederacy did not prevent the Suessiones from leaguing with the other party.—cum ipsis: i.e. the Remi; in the indir. disc. se is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of ipse are occasionally used instead. Here ipse is used apparently for emphasis: § 298. e (195. k); B. 249. 3; G. 311. 2; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263.
- 147 6 quin...consentirent, from leaguing with: relative clause of result depending on deterrere; § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3. b. (Notice that deterrere is negatived by ne... quidem above, which makes the whole clause negative, though they are attached only to the emphatic word.)
- 147 7 CHAP. 4. ab his: i.e. of the envoys; \$ 396. a (239. c. N.1); B. p. 126, top; G. 339. R.1; H. 411. 4 (374. N.4); H-B. 393. c.—quae... essent: indir. quest.; \$ 574 (334); B. 300. 1; G. 460; H. 649. ii (529); H-B. 537. b.
- 147 8 quid ... possent, what strength they had in war; quid is cognate acc. with adverbial force; § 390. c and d. N.<sup>2</sup> (240. a); B. 176. 3; G. 334; H. 409. I, 416. 2 (371. ii (2), 378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii.—sic, as follows.—reperiebat: for force of the tense, cf. adferebantur, 144. 9 and note. Observe that the rest of the chapter is in indir. disc., except the words Remi dicebant, 147. 16.—plerosque, etc.: Direct:—

Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque ... traducti propter loci fertilitatem ibi consederunt, Gallosque qui ea loca incolebant expulerunt, solique sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria, ... Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos finis ingredi 'prohibuerint; qua ex re fit uti ... magnam sibi auctoritatem ... sumant. De numero eorum omnia (nos) habemus explorata ... propterea quod propinquitatibus ... coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem ... ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Bellovaci ... valent; hi possunt conficere armata milia centum, polliciti ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi; finis latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria Diviciacus, totius Galliae

potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rex Galba; ad hunc...summa totius belli...defertur; oppida habent numero XII, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervii, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur, longissimeque absunt; quindecim milia Atrebates, (likewise) Ambiani, Morini, etc.... Condrusos, Eburones, etc.... qui ... Germani appellantur, arbitramur (conficere posse or polliceri) ad XL milia.

147 8 plerosque, most of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.<sup>2</sup>); H-B. 244; see the end of the chapter, and compare, regarding the Nervii, Tacitus (Ger. 28). The Belgians were, no doubt, chiefly of Celtic blood; but possibly they considered the Germans a more proud and heroic ancestry.

147 9 ab Germanis: abl. of source; § 403. a. N. 1 (244. a. R.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 469. I (415. ii. N.); H-B. 413. b.— Rhenum: acc. governed by trans in traductos; § 395 (239. 2. b); B. 179. I; G. 331; H. 413 (376. N.); H-B. 386. a.

147 10 traductos: participle agreeing with Belgas. — propter fertilitatem: construe with consedisse.

147 12 qui... prohibuerint: rel. clause of characteristic with solos; § 535. b (320. b); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 1. a and ftn.! Note the retention of the perfect tense contrary to tense sequence, and cf. ut... potuerint, 147 3 and note. — memoria: cf. diebus, 146 19. — Teutonos, etc.: this was in B.C. 102 and 101, a little more than forty years before, and was the worst danger that had threatened the Romans since the destruction of the city by the Gauls three centuries before. See Roman histories.

147 13 ingredi: the subjv. might have been used; § 457 (271.a); B. 295. 1; G. 532. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 596. 2 (505. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 587 and a.—qua ex re, in consequence of which (fact): abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408. N.<sup>7</sup>; H. 475. 4 (416. i); H-B. 444. b.

147 14 fieri uti, it was coming to be the case that: the subject of fieri is the clause uti... sumerent; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 3. a. — memoria: abl. of cause. — sibi: § 376 (235); B. 188. 1. N.); G. 352; H. 425. 2 (384. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 366.

147 15 de numero, etc.: the rest of the chapter depends on Remi dicebant.

147 16 se habere explorata, had found out all about (de), etc.: habere explorata differs but little in sense from explorasse; § 497. b (292. c): B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. 1. N.); H-B. 605. 5 and a; in construction explorata agrees with omnia, which is obj. of habere. See note on redactas habuerunt, 17 15.

- 147 17 propinquitatibus, ties of blood. adfinitatibus, alliances by marriage.
- 147 18 quantam quisque...pollicitus sit: indir. quest., object of cognoverint; cf. 147 7.
- 147 19 cognoverint: the primary tense is used in violation of the sequence of tenses. The statement is made more vivid by putting it in the same tense that was used by the speakers. They said cognovimus, we know (lit. 'have found out'). The perfect is very often retained in indir. discourse.
  - 147 20 virtute, etc.: abl. of specification.
- 148 1 armata milia centum = armatorum hominum milia centum. As here expressed, milia is the noun with which the adj. armata agrees; § 134. d (94. e); B. 80. 5; G. 293; H. 168 (178); H-B. 131. 3.
  - 148 2 electa, choice troops, picked men.
- 148 3 sibi: dat. of reference; cf. sibi, 147 14, above; it refers to the Bellovaci.—suos, their own (i.e. of the Remi); notice that the reflexive regularly refers to the speaker. See note on cum ipsis, 147 5.
- 148 4 possidere: sc. eos, i.e. the Suessiones. fuisse... esse: notice the difference of time; fuisse (in the dir. disc. fuit) refers to time past, esse (dir. est) to time present, with respect to the verb of saying (dicebant, l. 8). regem: showing that royal power had not yet been overthrown among the Belgians.
  - 148 6 cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also.
- 148 7 Britanniae: the first mention of Britain by a Roman author.—
  obtinuerit, had held; in the dir. obtinuit, held. For tense, cf. note on cognoverint, 1. 19, above.
  - 148 8 summam: subject of deferri.
- **148** 9 voluntate: abl. of manner; § 412. b and N. (248. R.); B. 220. 2; G. 399; H. 474. I (419. iii. N.<sup>2</sup>); H-B. 445. I.—habere: the subject must be supplied from Suessiones, above.—numero: abl. of specif.; cf. **147** 20.
- 148 10 Nervios, etc. (see map, Fig. 42): the names of several of these tribes are found in the modern towns, as: Atrebates, Arras; Ambiani, Amiens; Caleti, Calais; Viromandui, Vermandois; Condrusi, Condroz.
  - 148 11 feri: pred. after habeantur, are regarded.
- 148 15 Condrusos, etc.: subjects of polliceri or conficeri posse understood.—qui...appellantur: the indic. shows that this is an explanatory note added by Cæsar, and not a part of the indir. disc., while qui...habeantur above, on the other hand, is a remark made by the Remi, as is shown by the subjunctive; cf. note 81 2.
- 148 16 Germani: this name seems to belong especially to the four last named (Condrusi, Eburones, etc.)—arbitrari: in dir., arbitramur;

in translation we may say they thought, parenthetically, as in the English usage in indir. disc.

- 148 17 CHAP. 5. cohortatus, prosecutus: for the tense of these participles, cf. § 491 (290. b); B. 336. 5; G. 282. N.; H. 640. I (550. N.<sup>1</sup>); H-B. 601. 1.
- 148 19 obsides (pred. appos.), as hostages: if the chiefs should break their faith, these boys would probably be sold as slaves.—quae omnia, and all this. Latin very frequently connects clauses by a relative where our idiom prefers a conj. with a demonstrative: § 308.f(201.e); B. 251.6; G. 610. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8.
- 148 21 quanto opere... intersit, how greatly it concerns both the republic and their common safety. For the genitives, see § 355 (222); B. 211. 1; G. 381; H. 449. 1 (406. iii); H-B. 345.
- 148 22 intersit: indir. quest.; cf. 147 7, 147 18. manus (acc. plur.) . . . distineri: infin. clause, subject of intersit. ne confligendum sit, lest they should have to contend: clause of purpose depending on distineri; § 530 (317); B. 282. 1; G. 545. 3; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2. confligendum sit is an impers. 2d periphrastic; § 193, 208. c (129, 146. d); B. 115, 138; G. 208, 251. 2; H. 237, 302. 7 (234, 301. 2); H-B. 162, 600. 3. a.
- 148 23 id fieri posse, etc., this, he said, could be done, etc. Notice that no new word of saying is necessary in Latin, but in English one is usually inserted parenthetically.
- 148 24 suas copias: the emphatic position opposes the forces of the Hædui to the Roman army. Bellovacorum: these lay farthest west and most remote from Cæsar's field of operations; so that the manœuvre indicated would divide the enemy (cf. 153 28 ff.). introduxerint... coeperint: fut. condition; in the dir. disc. these would be fut. perf.; § 516.  $\epsilon$  (307.  $\epsilon$ ); B. 303; G. 596. 1; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. a, 577. a.
- 148 25 eorum: i.e. Bellovacorum. dati: words in the text thus printed in italics are conjectural readings not found in the MSS.
- 148 26 dimittit: the effect of his mission appears in 154 2, and he has returned to Cæsar in 156 11. postquam...vidit, as soon as he saw: \$ 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561; H. 508 (518); H-B. 557.
- 148 27 neque: -que connects vidit and cognovit; ne- with iam = no longer. [vidit]: words thus inclosed in brackets are of doubtful authenticity.
  - 148 28 ab eis: construed with cognovit.
- 149 1 Axonam (apposition), the Aisne; here flowing nearly due west, and joining the Seine below Paris, through the Oise.—in extremis... finibus, in the remotest part of the territory of the Remi: § 293 (193): B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. 2, notes 1 and 2); H-B. 244; the phrase is used in

a general sense merely, for Bibrax, a town of the Remi, lay eight miles farther off.

- 149 2 exercitum is dir. object of traducere; flumen (l. 19) is secondary object, depending on trans (tra-duco = trans-duco); § 395 (239. 2. b); B. 179. 1; G. 331. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 413 (376); H-B. 386.—castra: the site of this camp has been made out at Berry au Bac (Fig. 47), a little village about twelve miles north by west of Rheims and about twenty-five miles east of Soissons. Traces of Cæsar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a low hill called Mauchamp (see map, Fig. 48).
- 149 3 quae res, this movement (or manauvre), i.e. his having crossed the river and then pitched his camp where he did. Cæsar's camp was protected in the rear by the Axona, and in front by a small marshy stream.

   ripis: cf. frumento, 146 27.
- 149 4 post eum quae erant, the rear of his army (lit. '[those things] which were behind him').—tuta: pred. acc.; § 393. N. (239. a. N.¹); B. 177. 2; G. 340; H. 410. 3 (373. 1. N.²); H-B. 392. a; the dir. object is ea, the omitted antecedent of quae.—commeatus: subject of possent.
- 149 5 ut...possent: subst. clause of result, object of efficiebat; § 568 (332); B. 297. I; G. 553. I; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a; cf. this with the pure result-clause, 147 3, and with the subject clause of result, 147 14.
- 149 6 efficiebat: the subject is still quae res; observe the imperfect tenses describing the situation, and cf. note on 5 2, 10 1.
- 149 7 in altera parte, on the other side, i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, towards the Remi. Cæsar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side towards the Suessiones.
- 149 9 pedum XII: gen. of measure, with vallo; § 345. b (215. b); B. 203. 2; G. 365. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. When pronouncing the Latin, always give the Latin words for numerals. duodeviginti pedum: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width. See chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 116.
- 149 11 CHAP. 6. nomine: cf. the ablatives in 147 20.—Bibrax: this town has been variously identified as Vieux Laon, about the proper distance to the northwest, and Beaurieux to the west, more probably the latter.
- 149 12 milia passuum octo, eight miles: the regular way of stating measure, milia being acc. of extent of space, and passuum partit. gen. The passus was the stretch from heel to heel, i.e. from where one heel is raised to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five Roman feet. A Roman mile (mille passuum) was about 400 feet less than ours; it measures the distance which a soldier would march in a thousand double

- paces. ex itinere, on the march, i.e. turning aside from their course to attack the town. magno impetu: abl. of manner: cf. voluntate, 148 9.
- 149 13 aegre sustentatum est (impers.), it was with difficulty that they held out. In English we are often inclined to put into two clauses what the Latin crowds into one. Gallorum...haec, the attack (mode of attacking) of the Gauls, being the same as (atque) that of the Belgians, is this (the following).
  - 149 14 ubi: cf. 40 16, 43 5 and notes.
- 149 15 circumiecta multitudine (abl. abs.)...moenibus, a host of men being thrown round all the walls: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429. 2 (386. 2); H-B. 376. Here the English absolute construction is admissible, though usually to be avoided.
- 150 1 iaci: complem. infin.; cf. consequi, 146 8 and note.—coepti sunt: the pass. is used with the pass. infin.—defensoribus: abl. of separation; § 401 (243. a); B. 214; G. 405; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.
- 150 2 testudine facta, making a testudo. See chapter on military affairs, VII (last part), and Fig. 79.
- 150 3 quod, this, i.e. the movements just described. tum, in the present instance. multitudo: subject of conicerent: § 317. d(2) (205. c. 1); B. 254. 4. a; G. 211. Exc. (a); H. 389. 1 (461. 1); H-B. 331. 1. cum . . . conicerent: cum describing the situation, but almost causal; see note on 144.8.
- 150 4 consistendi: gen. of gerund with potestas; § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. a; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.
- 150 5 nulli: dat. of possessor; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374; nobody could keep a foothold on the wall (lit. 'power of standing on the wall was to nobody'). cum . . . fecisset: again describing the situation. oppugnandi: gerund; cf. coniurandi, 114 12.
- 150 6 summa nobilitate et gratia, [a man] of the highest, etc.; abl. of quality; § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443.—inter suos, among his [fellow-citizens].—oppido: dat. with praeerat; § 370 (228); B. 187. 3; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.
- 150 7 unus ex eis, one of those: after numerals ex with the ablative is preferred to the part. gen. legati, as ambassadors: pred. appositive.
- 150 8 nisi...posse: indir. disc. depending on the idea of reporting contained in nuntium mittit. Translate unless reënforcements, he said, etc.—sibi: i.e. Iccius; the dat. is used instead of ad se with subsidium submittatur, because the idea of help (for him) is more prominent than that of motion (towards him). In the dir. disc. the message of Iccius was:

Nisi subsidium mihi submittetur, (ego) diutius sustinere non possum.

150 10 CHAP. 7. eo, thither, to that place, i.e. Bibrax. — isdem ducibus usus, employing the same men [as] guides: for the ablative, cf. iure, 147 4. Observe that ducibus is pred. appos.; cf. legati, 150 7.

150 11 Numidas et Cretas: both these (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. See Fig. 100.

150 12 Baleares (adj.): the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, east of Spain, were famous slingers. See Fig. 46. These nations served as auxiliaries in the Roman armies. — subsidio oppidanis: dat. of service with dat. of person affected; § 382. 1 and N.\(^1\) (233. a); B. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360. b. — et . . . et: see Vocabulary.

150 13 studium...accessit, eagerness for a vigorous defence was inspired in the Remi.—propugnandi; obj. gen. of the gerund; cf. coniurandi, 144 12.

150 14 hostibus, from the enemy: dat.; § 376 (235); B. 188. 1; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. N.³); H-B. 366. — potiundi oppidi: gerundive; § 503. N.² (296. R.); B. 339. 4; G. 427. N.⁵; H. 623. 1 (544. 2. N.⁶); H-B. 613. N.

150 15 morati...depopulati...vicis...incensis: observe the change of construction. The Latin can use a perf. part. with active meaning only (as here) of deponent verbs. The corresponding construction with other verbs is the abl. abs. with the perf. pass. part.; as here, vicis incensis, which is to be translated accordingly. See last note on 144 13.

150 16 quo, to which (or the like).

**150** 17 **omnibus copiis**: cf. **146** 24, and for the omission of **cum**, see § 413. *a* (248. *a*. N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 474. 2. (419. iii. 1); H-B. 420.

150 18 a milibus passuum minus duobus, less than two miles off: a is used adverbially; § 433 (261. d); B. 144. 1; G. 335. N.; H. 417. 3 (379. 2. N.); cf. H-B. 303. c; milibus is abl. of degree of difference: § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H-B. 424; minus does not affect the construction: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.<sup>4</sup>; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. N.<sup>2</sup>); H-B. 416. d; amplius (l. 19) is acc. of extent of space: § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387; and milibus (l. 19), abl. after the comparative: § 406 (247); B. 217. 1; G. 398; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. We have here both of the two constructions allowable with these neuter comparatives; see reference under minus.

150 22 CHAP. 8. eximiam opinionem virtutis, their high reputation for valor: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. — proelio supersedere, to defer the engagement: for the abl., cf. defensoribus, 150 1, and see § 401 (243. a); B. 214. 1; G. 390; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

- 150 23 quid...posset...quid...auderent, indir. questions.—virtute: abl. of specification. But the whole is best rendered, tested the prowess of the enemy, and the daring of our own soldiers. Notice that the form of thought is entirely different in Latin and in English.
- 150 24 periclitabatur: note the tense and cf. adferebantur, 144 9 and note.
- 150 25 loco . . . idoneo: abl. abs. expressing cause. ad . . . instruendam: gerundive expression of purpose; cf. 146 6.
- 150 27 tantum, etc., spread over as much (tantum) ground as (quantum), etc. adversus, right in front.
- 152 1 in latitudinem, in breadth, i.e. from the camp towards the confluence of the Aisne with a little stream, the Miette, which here makes a swamp.—loci: part. gen. with quantum, but more conveniently translated with the correlative tantum, with which it has to be supplied to complete the sense.
  - 152 2 lateris deiectus (acc. plur.), lateral slopes (lit. 'slopes of the side').
- 152 3 in fronte, etc., falling with an easy slope in front (i.e. to the west), sank gently to the plain (see battle plan, Fig. 48).
  - 152 4 transversam: i.e. at right angles to his line of battle.
- 152 5 passuum quadringentorum: gen. of measure; cf. pedum, 149 9. extremas, the ends of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.\*); H-B. 244.
- 152 6 tormenta: see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Figs. 75, 92, and 94.
- 152 7 instruxisset: subjv. by attraction for fut. perf. ind.; § 593. 547 (342, 325. c); B. 324. 1, 289; G. 662 at end, 580; H. 652, 600 (529. ii, 521. i); H-B. 539, cf. 524. d.—tantum: adv. acc.; cf. quid, 147 8.—poterant: this clause is parenthetical, and hence is not (like instruxisset) attracted into the subjunctive.
- 152 8 ab lateribus, on the flanks: § 429. b (260. b); H. (434. i); H-B. 406. 2; modifying circumvenire. suos: i.e. Cæsar's, referring back to the subject of conlocavit.
- 152 10 si quo (adv.): sc. duci, but translate freely if they were needed anywhere. esset: protasis of a fut. condition (si...erit); here in the imperf. subjv. because depending on the final clause ut... possent; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539. subsidio: dat. of purpose or end; cf. note on 150 12.
- 152 11 sex: see note on 146 9. suas: notice the emphatic position, THEIR forces too.
- 152 12 copias...eductas instruxerunt, had led out and drawn up. etc.: the Latin is fond of using a participle for what is practically a coordinate clause, instead of an additional finite verb.

- **152** 13 CHAP. 9. **nostrum**: poss. pron.; poss. gen. could not be used; § 302. a (197. a); B. 243; G. 362. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 440. I. N.<sup>2</sup> (396. ii. N.); H-B. 339. a.
- 152 14 hanc: i.e. paludem.—si...transirent, (to see) if our men swould cross: § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 460; H. 649. 3 (529. ii. 1. N.¹); cf. H-B. 582. 2.
- 153 1 si... fieret, in case they should begin the passage (lit. 'a beginning of crossing should be made by them'): fut. condition (si... fiet); here in the subjy. because part of the final clause ut... adgrederentur; cf. note on esset. 1. 10.
  - 153 2 adgrederentur: purpose, depending on parati, etc.
  - 153 3 contendebatur: impers.; cf. note on 7 7.
- **153** 4 nostris: § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.
- 153 6 ad flumen, etc.: evidently somewhat lower down, so that they were concealed by the hills beyond the marsh.
- **153** 8 **eo consilio ut**, etc.: the final clauses are in apposition with **consilio**; \$ 531. 1. N.<sup>1</sup> (317. a); G. 545. 1; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 502. 2. a.
- 153 9 castellum, the redoubt beyond the river, held by Sabinus (149 7).
   cui: cf. oppido, 150 6.
- 153 10 pontem: the bridge held at one end by a garrison, at the other by the redoubt (149 7). By destroying this, the Belgæ would cut off Cæsar's supplies and hinder his retreat; cf. 149 3-6.—si possent (1. 8), si minus potuissent: fut. conditions; possent represents the fut., potuissent the fut. perf. indic.; for change of mood and tense, cf. note on 152 10.—minus, not.
- 153 11 popularentur, prohiberent: in same construction as expugnarent. magno nobis usui: cf. note on subsidio oppidanis, 150 12. ad bellum gerendum (gerundive), for carrying on the war; cf. note on 152 10.
  - 153 12 commeatu: abl. of separation; cf. defensoribus, 150 1.
  - 153 13 CHAP. 10. ab Titurio: abl. of voluntary agent.
- 153 14 levis armaturae (gen. of description), of light equipment = light-armed (see chapter on military affairs, I. 3, and Figs. 65, 99). Numidas, etc.: these light-armed troops were trained runners, and so could arrive at the ford in time to stop the passage of the Belgians.
- 153 15 traducit: with two accusatives; cf. 149 2 and note. pugnatum est: cf. note 7 7.
  - 153 18 conantis: with reliquos.
- 153 19 equitatu: considered here as means or instrument; therefore, no prep. circumventos interfecerunt: cf. note on eductas, 152 12.

153 20 ubi... intellexerunt: the regular mood and tense with ubi; cf. 149 14.—de, with regard to.

153 21 neque, and . . . not.

153 22 pugnandi causa: gerund construction, expressing purpose; § 404. c, 533. b (245. c, 318. b); B. 338. 1. c; G. 373; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 444. d, 612. i.

153 23 ipsos: i.e. the enemy. The superiority of the Roman commissariat was a most important factor in winning their victories. The enemy could not carry on a long campaign with a large army for lack of provisions, and when they were compelled to disband, the Romans destroyed them piecemeal at their leisure.

153 24 constituerunt here has two objects: (1) optimum esse, etc. (indir. disc.), (2) [ut] convenirent (subst. clause of purpose); § 580. d (332. A); B. 295. I and N.; G. 546. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 565. 5 (498. i. N.); H-B. 589. a; cf. note on 3 11. The subject of esse is the infin. clause of quemque reverti: § 452 (330); B. 330; G. 422; H. 615 (538); H-B. 585. Thus the confederacy dissolves into a mere defensive alliance, and all the members are cut to pieces in detail. — domum: § 427. 2 (258. b); B. 182. I. b; G. 337; H. 419. I (380. 2. 1); H-B. 450. b.

153 25 quorum: the antecedent is eos.

153 26 introduxissent stands for the fut. perf., and is attracted into the pluperf. subjv. by being made part of the purpose-clause; cf. potuissent, 153 10.—convenirent: sc. ut; § 565. a (331. f. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 565. 2 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a. ftn.<sup>2</sup>.

153 27 suis, alienis, domesticis: notice the emphatic position of the adjectives.

154 2 quod...cognoverant: indic. because Cæsar gives the reason on his own authority; cf. 146 5 and note. The clause is in apposition with haec ratio. — Diviciacum...adpropinquare: see 148 24. — finibus: dat. after adpropinquare.

154 3 his persuaderi, etc., these could not be persuaded, etc. (lit. 'it could not be persuaded to these'). Verbs that take the dat. in the act. are used impers. in the pass, and retain the dat. — ut, etc.: subst. clause of purpose, depending for its construction on persuaderi, but (in the impers. construction) used as subject of poterat.

154 4 neque . . . ferrent, and so fail to carry (lit. 'and not carry'). — suis: § 363 (225. b); B. 193; H-B. 365. ftn. par. 2.

154 5 CHAP. 11. strepitu, tumultu, ordine, imperio: abl. of manner; cf. impetu, 149 12.

154 7 cum, where, describing the situation, but approaching in sense a causal clause: § 549. N.2 (326. N.2); B. 288. B; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 525.

154 8 fecerunt: notice the emphatic position; cf. the English, 'the result was.'—ut...videretur: subst. clause of result, object of fecerunt; \$568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a.—fugae: \$384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

154 9 per: the agent, when considered as instrument or means, is generally expressed by per with the acc.;  $\S$  405.  $\delta$  (246.  $\delta$ ); G. 401; H. 468. 3

|                   |           |          | PO                | TA DE   |                    |           |         | nici eministra mist | _                 |
|-------------------|-----------|----------|-------------------|---------|--------------------|-----------|---------|---------------------|-------------------|
| nata nata na      | Auxilia   |          | Pedites extraord. |         |                    | Auxilia   |         |                     |                   |
|                   |           | Equi     | tes               | e x     | fra                | ordi      | nari    | i                   | ] _ [             |
| STREET DEXTRA     | Pudites   | Equitoe  | Quan              | · Д љ.  | wt.                | Forum     | Equitor | Podites             | PORTA PRINCIPALIS |
| 9                 | delecti   |          | Tribuni Tribuni   |         |                    |           | delecti |                     | R                 |
| <u> </u>          |           | i        |                   | G~      |                    |           | ipalis  |                     | , <u>s</u> ,      |
| PORTA PRINCIPALIS | <i>6</i>  | 3 O C    | R 0 m.            | R o m   | Rom.               | Кот.      | ,<br>0  | ပ်<br>၁             | LIS SINISTRA      |
|                   |           | لسن      | وولانا            | ينا     | ببب                | النبا     | L       |                     | ا د               |
| enandeningeneem   | Ded lites | Equites. | Principes         | Equitos | Equites<br>Triarii | Principes | Equites | Pedites             |                   |
|                   |           |          | POF               | TA PR   | AETO               | RIA       |         |                     |                   |

FIG. 111. - CASTRA ROMANA.

(415. i. N.<sup>1</sup>); II-B. 380. d. — speculatores, spics: they obtained information by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the scouts, exploratores, were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.

154 10 veritus, fearing; cf. note on 148 17.—discederent: indir. quest.; cf. 147 18, 148 21, 152 14.

\*154 11 castris, in camp: § 429. f(258.f); B. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

154 12 re: i.e. the fact that the enemy were really retreating. — ab exploratoribus: abl. of agent; cf. above, per speculatores. — qui moraretur: rel. clause of purpose; cf. 146 23.

154 13 his: dat. with praefecit; cf. construction of oppido, 150 6.

154 16 milia: cf. 149 12 and note.

154 17 cum: causal; cf. 154 7 and note. — ab extremo agmine, in the rear.

- 154 18 quos: relates to the implied subject of consisterent. ventum erat: § 208. d (146. d); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. 1); H-B. 200. a. 1.
- 154 19 priores: sc. and in English. This refers to the van of the retreating enemy.—quod...viderentur, because they seemed (i.e. they thought themselves). This word and continerentur are subjunctives as being part of the subjv. clause cum...ponerent. For similar cases of attraction, see 81 2, 153 9, 153 26.
- 154 21 exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus (abl. abs., the first defining the time of the second), breaking ranks on hearing the outcry (of those engaged in the rear).
- 154 22 sibi: § 376 (235); B. 188. I. N.; G. 345; H. 425. 4 (384. 4); H-B. 366. ponerent: same construction as consisterent and sustinerent.
- 154 23 tantam...spatium, killed as great a number of them as the time (before night) allowed (lit. 'as the day was long'); notice the correlatives tantam...quantum; § 152 (106); G. 642.1; H. 189 (191); H-B. 144; cf. 150 27, 151 1.
- 155 1 CHAP. 12. postridie eius diei, next day (lit. 'on the day after that day'); for the gen., see § 359. b (223. e); B. 201. 3. a; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. c.—priusquam...reciperent, before the enemy could recover themselves: § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; II. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. b.
- 155 2 in finis . . . duxit: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other.
- 155 3 Remis: cf. Galliae, 146 21. magno itinere: see chapter on military affairs, VI.
- 155 4 Noviodunum (now Soissons): about twenty miles west of Bibrax. Celtic dunum = English "town"; hence Noviodunum = Newton or Newburg. Soissons is derived from Suessiones.—ex itinere: i.e. as soon as he arrived, by filling up the ditch and scaling the walls, without waiting to throw up works or form regular lines of approach; cf. 149 12.
  - 155 5 esse: sc. oppidum for subject.
- 155 6 paucis defendentibus (abl. abs. denoting concession), though there were few defenders.—oppugnare means to attack; expugnare, to take (by storm). Unable to take the town by storm, Cæsar was obliged to begin a regular siege. See chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 59, 89, 90, 112, 116.
- 155 7 quaeque, etc.: i.e. wood, earth, stones, etc.; the antecedent of quae, if expressed, would be ea.
- 155 8 ad oppugnandum: § 506, 385. a (300, 234. b); B. 338. 3, 192. 2. N.; G. 432, 359. R.<sup>3</sup>; H. 628, 435. I (542. iii, 391. ii); H-B. 612. iii, 364. 6.

- 155 11 magnitudine: i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations. quae, which (i.e. the like of which).
  - 155 12 ante: adverb.
- 155 14 petentibus Remis, at the request of the Remi.—ut conservarentur: subst. clause of result, obj. of impetrant; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501); H-B. 521. 3. a.
- 155 15 CHAP. 13. obsidibus acceptis primis, after he had received as hostages the chief men, etc.
  - 155 16 Galbae: see 148 7-9.
- 156 2 Bellovacos: their territory lay thirty or forty miles due north of Paris, about Beauvais. qui cum, and when they. A relative is often used to begin a new sentence where the English idiom would lead us to expect a demonstrative with a connective (here hi autem). The relative serves to bind the new sentence more closely to the preceding. se suaque omnia: cf. 146 23 and note.
- 156 3 Bratuspantium: probably Breteuil, at the head of the Somme valley. Notice that Bratuspantium is in apposition with oppidum, not in the gen. according to the English usage.
- 156 4 circiter, etc., [only] about five miles. milia passuum: cf. 149 12, 154 16.
- **156** 5 maiores natu: § 131. c (91. c); B. 226. 1; G. 87. 9; H-B. 122; natu is abl. of specification.
- 156 6 voce significare, show by the tones of their voice (of course they could not talk Latin).—in eius fidem...venire: i.e. surrendered at discretion; cf. the clause se in fidem permittere, 146 23. Notice that the reflexive sese refers to the speakers, and represents the first person of the dir. disc.; eius refers to Cæsar, the person spoken to.
  - 156 7 neque, and [that they would] not.
- 156 9 pueri mulieresque, women and children.—ex muro: English says on the wall, from another point of view.
- 156 10 ab Romanis: \$ 396. a (239. c. N.1); B. 178. 1. a; G. 339. N.2; H. 411. 4 (374. N.4); H-B. 393. c.
  - 156 11 CHAP. 14. pro his, in behalf of these, i.e. the Bellovaci.
  - 156 12 eum: i.e. Cæsar.
- 156 13 Bellovacos, etc.: the rest of this chapter is in indir. disc., depending on facit verba. Direct:—

Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeduae fuerunt; impulsi ab suis principibus, qui dicebant Haeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnis indignitatis . . . perferre, et ab Haeduis defecerunt et populo Romano bellum intulerunt. Qui eius consili principes fuerant, quod intellegebant quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugerunt.

Petunt non solum Bellovaci sed etiam pro his Haedui ut tua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utaris. Quod si feceris, Haeduorum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas amplificabis, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderunt, sustentare consuerunt.

156 13 omni tempore, always. — in fide atque amicitia: i.e. they had been subject-allies of the Hædui.

156 14 impulsos (notice the emphatic position: not of their own accord, but induced by their chiefs); agreeing with the subject (eos) of defecisse and intulisse, which is to be supplied from Bellovacos.

156 15 dicerent: this word introduces another clause in the indir. disc., the statement of the chiefs, which is thus reported at second-hand by Cæsar as a part of the speech of Diviciacus. The subject is **Haeduos**; the verb, perferre. — omnis, all (kinds of).

156 17 qui, (those) who.—eius consili, in this design: § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. Notice that the gen. expresses nearly all the relations of one noun to another, and may be translated by in, to, and many other forms of speech in English.

156 18 quantam . . . intulissent: cf. 147 7 and note.

156 19 civitati: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376. — Britanniam: the support and sympathy which the Gauls received from Britain was Cæsar's excuse for his subsequent expedition there.— profugisse: the subject is the implied antecedent of qui.

156 20 sua clementia, his (characteristic or well-known) clemency: for the case, cf. 147 4, 150 10.

156 21 in eos: but for the interposition of Haeduos, this would be in se; § 300. b (196. 2); B. 244. ii; G. 520, 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2; here, as often, the last word or thought governs the construction.—utatur: subst. clause of purpose, after petere; § 563. d (331. d); B. 295. 4; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. 3); cf. H-B. 530. 2. ftn.<sup>1</sup>; cf. also 3 11 and note. Observe that from this point the present and perfect tenses of the subjv. are used; cf. cognoverint, 147 19 and note.—quod si fecerit: fut. condition (more vivid); fecerit is perf. subjv. for the fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc. The apodosis is amplificaturum: § 516. a (307. a); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574. 2 (508. 2); H-B. 579. a; on the use of quod, see note on qui cum, 156 2.

156 23 quorum: the antecedent is Belgas.—si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint: general condition; see dir. disc. above. For the tenses used in general conditions, see § 518. b (309. c); G. 594. N.; H. 578. 1 (508. 5); cf. H-B. 579, 577. a.

156 24 consuerint: present in force; § 205. b. N.2 (143. c. N.); B. 262. A; G. 175. 5, 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.

156 25 CHAP. 15. honoris Diviciaci... causa, out of respect for Diviciacus (lit. 'for the sake of honor'). — Diviciaci: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. — causa: abl. of cause; § 404. c (245. c); B. 198. 1; G. 373, 408; H. 475. 2 (416. ftn.²); H-B. 444. d, 339. d; used almost like a preposition with the gen., and always following its noun, as here honoris.

156 26 recepturum [esse]: the fut. act. infin. commonly omits esse, as here. — quod erat: the indic. implies that this was the real reason, not merely one given by Cæsar at the time (which would require quod esset), cf. 146 5.

- 158 1 magna . . . auctoritate: cf. 150 6. multitudine: cf. 147 20.
- 158 4 Ambianorum; about Amiens, near the coast of the Channel.

158 5 eorum finis: notice the emphatic position. *Their territorics* reach to the Nervii.—natura: i.e. what sort of people they were, like quales essent.

158 6 reperiebat: cf. note on 144 9. — nullum aditum, etc.: Direct, — Nullus aditus est ad eos mercatoribus; nihil patiuntur vini . . . inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos . . . existimant; sunt homines feri magnaeque virtutis; increpitant atque incusant reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dediderint patriamque virtutem proiecerint; confirmant sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.

158 7 mercatoribus (dat. of possessor; cf. nulli, 150 5), traders have.

— pati (subj. eos understood): the subj. acc. of the infin. in indir. disc. should regularly be expressed, but occasionally it is omitted when the sense is clear. Cæsar is very free in this respect, because his work is only brief notes of his campaigns (commentarii). — nihil . . . vini: § 346. a. I (216. a. I); B. 201. I; G. 369; H. 440. 5 (397. I); H-B. 346.

158 9 relanguescere: an inceptive verb (ending, -sco); § 263. I (167. a); B. 155. I; G. 133. v; H. 277 (280); H-B. 212. 2.—esse, that they are.

158 10 magnae virtutis: § 345 (215); B. 203. 1; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. Note that the descriptive gen. has exactly the force of an adj., so that it is even connected with feros by a coördinate conj.: § 223. a (154. a); B. 341; G. 474; H. 657 (554); H-B. 305. i.

158 11 Belgas: object. — qui . . . dedidissent . . . proiecissent, who [they said] had surrendered, etc.: § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. a; cf. also note on 50 8.

158 12 patriam: an adjective.

158 13 missuros...accepturos: on the omission of esse, cf. note on 156 26. The subject of the infinitives is sese, which refers back to the omitted subject (eos) of confirmare.

158 14 Chap. 16. cum . . . fecisset: for similar cum-clauses, cf. 144 8, 150 3, 6.—eorum: i.e. of the Nervii.—triduum: § 423 (256); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

158 15 Sabim flumen, etc.: Direct, -

Sabis flumen a castris... milia passuum x abest; trans id flumen omnes Nervii consederunt adventumque Romanorum exspectant una cum Atrebatibus... (nam his... persuaserunt uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur); exspectantur etiam ab eis Aduatucorum copiae atque sunt in itinere; mulieres quique... inutiles videbantur in eum locum coniecerunt, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

— Sabim: the Sambre, which flows northeasterly into the Meuse (Mosa); § 75. a. 1 (56. a. 1); B. 37; G. 57. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 102. 2 (62. ii. 2. (1)); H-B. 88. 1. The Nervii occupied the basin of this river and of the upper Scheldt.—non amplius milia, etc.: milia is acc. of extent, and is not affected in construction by amplius; cf. a similar construction, 150 18, and see § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.<sup>4</sup>; H. 471. 4 (417. i. N.<sup>2</sup>); H-B. 416. d.

158 18 Atrebatibus, etc.: small tribes to the south and west; modern Arras, Vermandois.—his: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. i.

158 19 experirentur: subst. clause of purpose; cf. 156 20.

158 20 exspectari: note throughout this indir. disc. the variation between pres. and perf. infin., according as the dir. disc. has the pres. or perf. indic.

158 21 quique, and (those) who (not to be confounded with the plur. of quisque with the same form); qui, as so often, implies its own antecedent eos, the obj. of coniecisse.

158 22 quo = in quem.

158 23 esset: already in dir. disc. a rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283, I; G. 631, I; H. 591, I (503, i); cf. H-B. 521, I; cf. 147 11. The emphasis is shown in "to which on account of the MARSHES an army could not get access."

158 25 CHAP. 17. locum . . . idoneum: see chapter on military affairs, v. — deligant: cf. construction of dicerent, 146 23. — ex . . . Belgis: for part. gen. following complures, cf. 146 21, 150 7.

158 26 dediticis: i.e. the three states just subdued.

158 27 una, along (with him).

159 1 corum dierum, during those days: see note on consili, 156 17.

159 3 inter singulas legiones, between each two legions. — impedimentorum magnum numerum, a great number of baggage-animals (i.e. a very long baggage-train). See chapter on military affairs, I. 6.

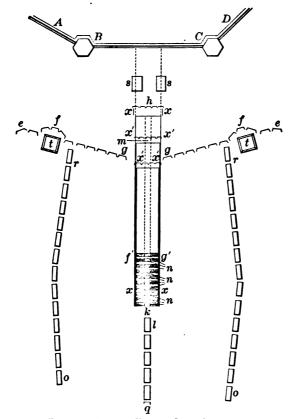


FIG. 112. - GENERAL VIEW OF SIEGE OPERATIONS.

ABCD, hostile wall; ss, testudines aggestitine, protecting those levelling the ground; hk, agger; xx, x'x', etc., plutei, protecting those working on the agger; efg, line of plutei, manned with archers and slingers; tt, turres, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with tormenta; ro, covered way of vineae, giving approach to archers and slingers; tq, covered way of vineae approaching the point of beginning the agger; f'g', position of plutei, covering the beginning of the agger; mn, covered gallery through the agger; mn, etc., steps and platforms of the several stories.

159 4 neque, and that ... not (or no); notice that in Latin the connective has a strong attraction for the negative where our idiom separates them. — negoti: part. gen.; cf. nihil vini, 158 7.

- 159 5 cum...venisset...abessent: subjv. because subordinate clauses in the indir. disc.; the verbs refer to future time, and represent respectively the fut. perf. and the fut. indic. of the direct discourse.
- 159 6 hanc: i.e. the first legion.—sarcinis: see chapter on military affairs, IV. e, and Fig. 25.—adoriri: subject of esse (l. 20), quicquam being in the predicate.—qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis (abl. abs. = protasis of a future condition), if this should be routed, etc.
- 159 7 futurum [esse]: apodosis of the condition.—ut...non auderent: subst. clause of result, subject of futurum [esse]; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H-B. 521. 3. a; the whole is little more than a roundabout way of expressing the fut. infin.; § 569. a (147. c. 3); B. 270. 3; G. 248. 2; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H-B. 472. c.—contra consistere, to withstand their attack.
- 159 8 adiuvabat: the subject is the subst. clause quod Nervii... effecerant, the advice of those who reported the matter was REËNFORCED by the fact that the Nervii, etc. Notice the emphatic position of adiuvabat, which may be expressed in English by using the passive as above.
- 159 9 antiquitus: adv.; the use of the hedges described below was an immemorial custom, and they are still, it is said, common in this region. Traces of such about 400 years old still exist in England.—cum: causal.
- 159 10 nihil (adv. acc.) possent, had no strength. neque enim, and in fact... not. ad hoc tempus: opposed to antiquitus. rei: cf. construction of imperiis, 146 4.
- 159 11 quicquid (cf. nihil above) possunt, etc., all the strength they have is in infantry.—quo facilius... impedirent, in order to check the more easily; quo is the regular conj. introducing a purpose-clause which contains a comparative; § 531. a (317. b); B. 282. 1. a; G. 545. 2; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2. b.
- 159 12 praedandi causa: cf. 153 22. venissent: attracted from the fut. perf.; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.
- 160 1 in latitudinem, etc.: i.e. when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang from its sides so as to make a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briars and thorns. These hedges were of course for the defence of individual farms, to hinder cavalry from raiding across country.
- 160 2 ut... praeberent: object-clause of result, depending on effectrant; cf. 154 8. instar muri: § 359. b (214. g); B. 198. 2; G. 373; H. 446. 4 (398. 4); H-B. 339. d.
  - 160 3 quo (adv.): i.e. into which.
  - 160 4 posset: result-clause.

- 160 5 sibi: dat. of agent with omittendum [esse].
- **160** 6 CHAP. 18. loci...quem locum: § 307. a (200. a); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.—castris: the dat. of purpose of concrete nouns is used in prose in a few military expressions; § 382. 2 (233. b); B. 191. 1; G. 356; H. 425. 3 (384. ii. 1. 3); H-B. 361.
  - 160 7 aequaliter declivis, with even downward slope.
- 160 8 quod agrees in gender with flumen. vergebat: imperf. of description; cf. note on 5 2. ab: i.e. on the other side.
- 160 9 pari acclivitate: abl. of quality; cf. 150 6, 158 1. Notice the opposition to declivis, above. adversus . . . contrarius, facing this, and on the other side (of the stream).
- 160 10 passus: cf. 149 12, 154 16.—apertus: i.e. cleared of woods.—infimus, at the foot: § 293 (193); B. 241. I; G. 290. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N.<sup>2</sup>); H-B. 244; opposed to ab superiore parte, along the upper portion: § 429. b (260. b); G. 390. I; H. 434. I; H-B. 406. 2.
- 160 11 ut non: observe that a negative result is expressed by ut non, while a negative purpose is expressed by ne.
  - 160 13 secundum: preposition.
- 160 14 pedum trium: gen. of measure, here in the predicate; cf. 152 5.
- 160 16 CHAP. 19. copiis: cf. 146 24, 150 17.—ratio ordoque: as these two words convey but a single thought, the verb is singular.—aliter...ac, etc. (see Vocabulary), was different from what the Belga had reported (lit. 'had itself otherwise [than] as,' etc.): § 324. c (156. a); B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 516. 3 (459. 2); H-B. 307. 2. a.
- **160** 17 ad Nervios: § 363 (225. b); B. 358. 2. a; G. 340. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 429. 3 (386. 3).
  - 160 18 consuetudine sua, in accordance with his custom.
- 160 19 ducebat: for the order of march, see chapter on military affairs, vi. conlocarat, had put in place (of greatest safety); this verb (conloco) is often confounded by beginners with conligo, collect.
- 160 20 proxime conscriptae, latest levied. These were legions XIII and XIV, mentioned in 146 9, 10, which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.
  - 160 21 praesidio impedimentis: cf. 150 12, 152 10, 153 11.
- 160 23 cum, etc.: this clause describes the situation, and is shown to be temporal by interim, which follows (cf. 150 3, 5, 158 14). This movement is important because it allowed time for the main body to arrive and begin the camp, contrary to the expectation of the Nervii.
- 160 24 reciperent . . . facerent, kept retiring, etc. (strengthened by identidem).

FIG. 113. - VEXILLUM.

160 25 quem ad finem: the antecedent attracted into the relative clause, according to the Latin idiom. Translate as if it were ad finem ad quem, which, however, the Romans would rarely say.

160 26 cedentis agrees with eos the understood object of insequi. Notice that the Romans can always omit a pronoun if its case is determined by some word in agreement.

161 1 opere dimenso, having staked out the works. See chapter on military affairs, v.

161 2 ubi... visa sunt: cf. 149 14, 153 20. Notice that this is purely temporal. Cæsar might have used cum with the subjv., but in that case it would describe the situation. A comparison of this with 160 23 shows the difference clearly.

161 4 quod tempus, the moment which. Notice the difference of the Latin and the English idiom; tempus is in apposition with the clause ubi ... visa sunt. The attraction of the antecedent into the relative clause is regular when it is in apposition with something preceding (cf. 17 8 and note).—committendi proeli: depending on tempus. See note 71 3.—ut (just as)...confirmaverant: i.e. the movement was not a confused sally on the individual impulse of savages, but an organized attack with the united and settled determination to resist the invaders. He may have said this only to enhance the glory of his victory, but he more than once

pays tribute to the prowess of the enemy, and he probably does so here.

161 8 ut, so that (result).

161 9 [et iam in manibus nostris]: i.e. within reach of our weapons. This makes sense, and may be so translated.

161 11 adverso colle, etc., pushed straight up the hill. The way by which is put in the abl. without a preposition; cf. semitis, 925.—eos: after ad.—occupati, still at work on the fortifications (in opere); occupatus is regularly used as an adj.

**161** 13 CHAP. 20. Caesari: dat. of agent; cf.

sibi, 160 5. Notice the emphatic position of omnia. Cæsar had to do everything at one time.—vexillum: the large banner hoisted at head-quarters to announce an engagement impending. See Fig. 113, and chapter on military affairs, 11.

161 14 proponendum [erat]: second periphrastic, like agenda erant above; so also dandum, etc.

161 15 tuba: the signal to take their places in the ranks. See Fig. 53.—ab opere, etc.: those who were already detailed must have needed further orders before going into battle.



161 16 qui relates to the understood subject (ei) of arcessendi [erant].

— aggeris, materials for a mound, an unusual meaning. — arcessendi: soldiers who were out of hearing of the customary signals would need a messenger.

161 17 cohortandi: pass., as always, though from a deponent verb; § 190. d (135. d); B. 112. b; G. 251; H. p. 114, ftn. at end; H-B. 291.—signum dandum: the last signal for immediate action; cf. 162 16. This list includes all the functions of the commander, ordinarily extended over a considerable time. In this emergency Cæsar says these needed to be done at once, and this was impossible (cf. impediebat). But the difficulty was partially remedied by the good sense and discipline of the soldiers, who did what was proper without orders.



**162** 1 difficultatibus . . . subsidio: cf. **150** 12, Fig. 114. — Scutum. **162** 21.

162 3 quid ... oporteret: indir. quest., object of praescribere; cf. 147 7.

162 4 quam connects similar constructions: § 323. a (208. a); H-B. 305. 1.

162 5 quod: i.e. the second of the two things mentioned. — singulos, etc., had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.

tegions.

162 6 nisi munitis castris: abl. abs.; see note on 144 13. The meaning here is not until after, etc. 162 7 nihil: adv. acc.; § 390. d. N.<sup>2</sup> (240. a); B. 176. 3. a; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii; it is stronger than non; nihil iam, no longer.

162 8 quae videbantur, what seemed best.

162 10 CHAP. 21. necessariis: i.e. such as were (absolutely) necessary; observe emphasis.—ad cohortandos milites: gerundive of purpose; cf. 146 6, 150 25.

FIG. 115. — SCUTUM.

162 11 quam in partem = in eam partem in quam; cf. note on quem ad finem, 160 25.

162 12 decimam: Cæsar's favorite legion. — non longiore . . . quam uti, with no more words than that they should, etc.

162 13 retinerent, perturbarentur, sustinerent: object-clauses of purpose with ut, etc., expressing indirectly the commands given in his address.

162 15 quam quo...posset: rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320.c); B. 283. 2. a; G. 298; H. 591. 6 (503. ii. 3); cf. H-B. 521. 1 and 2. c.

- 162 18 pugnantibus: sc. eis, and see note on cedentis, 160 26.—hostium depends on animus.
  - 162 19 paratus (adj.) ad dimicandum, ready for battle.
- 162 20 ad insignia accommodanda, for fitting on the decorations (of the helmets, etc.). Some of these indicated the rank of the wearer. Perhaps, too, the different legions were distinguished by the insignia of the helmets. At all events, these were considered important and were always put on before an engagement. See chapter on military affairs, VII.
- 162 21 scutis: abl. of separation; cf. 150 1, 153 12. On the march helmets were slung upon the breast, shields covered with leather, and ornaments kept in some unexposed place. See Fig. 25.—defuerit, failed, i.e. there was not time enough to, etc.; for tense, cf. 147 6, 147 13.—quam in partem, to whatever place.
- 162 22 ab opere: i.e. from his position in the work of fortifying.—quaeque, etc., and whatever standards he saw first (prima, adj. with signa), he fell in (lit. 'took his stand') there. The Roman soldier was so well drilled that, to whatever part of the legion he found his way, he knew perfectly the duties belonging to it.
- 162 23 haec (signa): antecedent to quae, but implying also the antecedent (in hac parte) of quam above, for which it is really substituted.—
  in quaerendis suis [signis]: gerundive. The standards distinguished the different cohorts, and hence they here refer to the place of each soldier in the ranks, as we might speak of a company or platoon. See chapter on military affairs, 11; also Figs. 81, 105.
- 162 25 CHAP. 22. ut... quam ut: as... than as. The military science of the ancients was adapted to level, open ground, in which the troops could be drawn up and kept in regular lines.
- 162 27 cum: causal; cf. 154 7.— aliae alia in parte, some in one position, some in another: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265. For position of the various legions, see battle plan, Fig. 51.
  - 163 1 saepibus . . . interiectis : cf. note on 159 9.
- 163 2 ante: i.e. in ch. 17. impediretur: connected with resisterent by -que in l. 1.
- 163 3 neque: here begins the main clause, the verb of which is poterant.
- 163 4 provider: complem. infin. with poterat supplied from poterant. The subject of this poterat is the indir. quest. quid . . . opus esset. ab uno (emphatic), by only one man.
- 163 5 fortunae: emphatic, set off against rerum. The circumstances were diversified; the fortune that attended them consequently had various results.

- 163 6 eventus (nom. plur.): subject of sequebantur.
- 163 7 CHAP. 23. ut, as, i.e. in the position in which they were. The clause is nearly equivalent to an English participle, having taken up their position: cf. § 493. d. 2 (290. d); B. 356. 2. c; H-B. 602. 1. Observe that in the sense of as, ut is not followed by the subjv. sinistra: here Labienus was in command.
- 163 8 acie: gen.; § 98. N. (74. a); B. 52. 3; G. 63. N. 1; H. 134. 2 (120); H-B. 100. 2. pilis emissis: see chapter on military affairs, VII, and Fig. 118. examimatos: agrees with Atrebates (object of compulerunt).
- 163 10 ex loco superiore: i.e. from the higher ground up which the Atrebates had rushed after crossing the river.
- 163 12 impeditam, embarrassed (in their attempt to cross).—ipsi: referring to milites, 163 7.
- 163 13 progressi: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill on the other side of the river. See description of the ground, ch. 18.
  - 163 14 rursus resistentis (acc.), when they again made a stand.
- 163 17 ex loco superiore: i.e. starting from, etc. in ripis modifies proeliabantur (were continuing the fight).
  - 163 18 totis: emphatic position (cf. English "exposed entirely almost").
- 163 19 nudatis, being exposed, i.e. by the absence of the other legions, which were pursuing the enemy. The only ones left near the camp were VII and XII, in dextro cornu.
- 163 20 constitisset: causal, showing why the enemy charged in that quarter; but it is often impossible to say when the description of a situation passes over into cause. magno intervallo, confertissimo agmine: best regarded as ablatives of manner, though we must remember that the Romans did not trouble themselves about our classifications. The ablative was the proper form for all these ideas; and so they used it for all without distinction, as we should use in, at, or by.
  - 163 21 duce: abl. abs.; translate under the leadership of.
- 163 23 aperto latere: i.e. the right, not protected by shields; for omission of prep., see § 429 (258. f); B. 228. 1. b; G. 338; H. 485. 2 (425. ii); H-B. 436.—legiones: the twelfth and the seventh.—castrorum: not part., but poss. gen. (i.e. the height on which the camp stood).
- 163 25 CHAP. 24. levis armaturae: descriptive gen.; note how it is naturally translated in English by a descriptive adj., *light-armed*. See chapter on military affairs, I. 3, and Figs. 65, 99.
  - 163 26 una: adverb.
- 164 1 pulsos [esse]: infin. of indir. disc., with subj. acc. quos. adversis hostibus, etc., met the enemy face to face: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

- 164 2 occurrebant... ferebantur: these descriptive imperfects belong to the side action; the main narrative, which is interrupted by them, is resumed in the perfects contenderunt, etc., at the end of the chapter. See note on 5 2.
- 164 3 ab decumana porta: i.e. the rear gate; see chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 111. The camp was partly on a slope, and the rear commanded a wide view of the surrounding country.
- 164 5 cum respexissent, on looking back. Notice that this descriptive cum-construction has a great variety of translations, but all indicate an inner connection; cf. cum...vidissent, l. 11, below.
- 164 6 praccipites: adj., agreeing with calones, but with the force of an adv., pell-mell, in utter confusion; § 290 (191); B. 239; G. 325. 6; H. 497 (443); H-B. 245.
- 164 7 qui, etc.: this refers to the baggage-train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as a rear guard; see 160 19-21.
- 164 8 oriebatur: observe the sing. number, and cf. 160 16 and note.—
  alii aliam: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; G. 323; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B.
  265.—perterriti, frantic with fear, panic-stricken (thoroughly frightened).
  Observe the force of per- (see Vocabulary).
- 164 10 quorum (poss.) virtutis (obj.) opinio, whose reputation for valor: § 348. b (217. b); B. 200; G. 363. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 446. 2 (398. 2); H-B. 354.

  164 11 a civitate: abl. of agent, the state being thought of as a body of citizens.
- 164 12 compleri (was filling)...premi...teneri...fugere: indir. disc. with vidissent. The present tenses indicate what they saw going on before their eyes (dir. complentur...premuntur...tenentur...fugiunt). The beginner should notice that difference of idiom requires a change of tense in translation.
  - 164 15 domum: cf. 153 24 and note.
  - 164 16 pulsos superatosque [esse]: indir. disc.; the subject is Romanos.
- -castris: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
  - 164 17 hostis: acc., subject of potitos [esse].
- 164 18 CHAP. 25. Caesar: subject of processit, 165 4. In this characteristic example of Latin style notice that the main verb of the sentence is not expressed until the attendant circumstances have been introduced in the form of modifying phrases, dependent clauses, etc. Thus the sense and construction are suspended. Such a sentence is called a Period: § 600, 601 (346); B. 351. 5; G. 684, 685. 2; H. 685 (573); H-B. 629, 630. An English writer would have used several short, independent sentences, each describing a single act or circumstance; and a really good translation should have that form, thus:—

Cæsar, after addressing the tenth legion, passed to the right wing. Here he saw his men were hard pressed. The standards were all huddled together and the soldiers of the twelfth, massed in a solid body, were in each other's way. All the centurions of the fourth cohort had fallen, the standard-bearer was killed, and the standard lost. In the other cohorts almost all the centurions were either killed or wounded. Among these the first centurion, P. Sextius Baculus, one of the bravest of soldiers, was disabled by many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand on his feet. The rest were showing no spirit, and some in the rear had abandoned the fight and were drawing back to get out of range of the missiles. The enemy meanwhile continued to come up in front from below without cessation, and to press them hard also on both flanks. The situation was desperate. Seeing this, and realizing that there were no reserves that could be sent in, Cæsar snatched a shield from a man in the rear rank—it happened that he had come there without a shield himself—and advanced to the front.

164 19 ubi: construe with vidit, l. 21.—in unum locum: i.e. the soldiers were so crowded together that they could not keep their alignment, and the standards were bunched in a confused mass in the crowd.

164 20 sibi . . . impedimento, hindered one another in fighting (lit. 'were for a hindrance themselves to themselves'); cf. 153 11, 160 21.

164 21 quartae cohortis: this stood on the left of the front line and so bore the brunt of the attack. See chapter on military affairs, VI and VII.

— omnibus centurionibus occisis: notice that seven different events are expressed in this sentence by ablatives absolute. See note on omni pacata Gallia, 144 13.

164 22 signo: i.e. the standard of the cohort.

164 24 in his, among these.—primipilo: see chapter on military affairs, I. 7.—Baculo: this was one of Cæsar's best centurions. His further exploits are mentioned in Bk. iii. ch. 5 and Bk. vi. ch. 38.

164 26 iam ... non, no longer. — tardiores, rather slack (discouraged): § 291. a (93. a); B. 240. 1; G. 297; H. 498 (444. 1); H-B. 241. 2.

164 27 ab novissimis, in the rear: so below, l. 8.—deserto proelio, withdrawing from the fight (abl. abs.).

164 28 neque: correl. to et =  $both \dots not \dots and$ .

165 2 vidit: repeated from 164 21 on account of the length of the sentence. — neque ullum subsidium: the rear guard, legions XIII and XIV, had not yet arrived.

165 3 posset: rel. clause of characteristic; cf. 147 12, 162 16. — militi: dat. after detracto; cf. construction of hostibus, 150 14 and note.

165 6 signa . . . laxare, to charge and [thus] open out the ranks, i.e. as they advanced, the space between the ranks would be increased, and

so more room obtained for the use of the sword. — quo . . . possent: cf. 159 11.

165 7 gladiis: cf. castris, 164 16. - militibus: dat. with inlata.

165 9 etiam . . . rebus, even in his own extreme peril.

166 1 CHAP. 26. constiterat (from consisto): NOT had stood, but had taken up a position, and so stood; cf. consuerint, 156 24; § 476 (279. e); B. 262. A; G. 241. R.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.

166 3 ut...coniungerent...inferrent: subst. clause, secondary obj. of monuit; cf. 156 20 and note. — conversa, etc., should face about and charge the enemy in opposite directions (lit. 'bear turned standards against'). The two united thus formed a kind of hollow square. It is not necessary to suppose that the soldiers stood immediately back to back, though this is probable, inasmuch as the attack was on both flanks and in front.

166 4 alii: dat. after a verbal phrase of helping; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. I (385. i); H-B. 365. ftn. 1. 2d par.

166 5 ne... circumvenirentur: cf. ne... adduceretur, 144 13.—aversi, in the rear (lit. 'while their backs were turned').—ab hoste: collectively, in which sense the plural is more common.

166 7 legionum duarum: i.e. XIII and XIV; see plan, Fig. 51.

166 9 colle: i.e. the site of the Roman camp. — Labienus: he, with legions IX and X, had been pursuing the Atrebates; see first lines of ch. 23.

166 11 gererentur: indir. quest.

166 19 qui: i.e. the soldiers of the tenth legion.

166 13 esset: indir. quest.

166 14 nihil . . . fecerunt, hastened as fast as they could (lit. 'left nothing undone in the way of speed').

**166** 15 reliqui: a pred. gen. Various genitives of this sort are used with facere: § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 369. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 447 (403); H-B. 340. a.

166 17 CHAP. 27. etiam qui, even such as. — procubuissent; subjv. of characteristic; see 84 18 and note. — scutis: abl. with innixi: § 431 (254. b); B. 218. 3; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. 1. N.); H-B. 438. 2. a. See Figs. 114, 115.

166 19 inermes armatis, etc., (though) unarmed, threw themselves upon the armed (enemy). — occurrerent: result, like redintegrarent.

166 20 delerent, praeferrent: purpose-clauses, but in slightly different relations, dependent on pugnant. The use of quo as a conj. to introduce a purpose-clause when the clause contains no comparative is rare. It is used regularly in 159 11, 165 6. Here we should expect ut.

166 21 at: marks with emphasis the change of the narrative from the Romans to the enemy.

- 166 22 tantam virtutem praestiterunt: on this clause depend the following subjunctives of result, insisterent, pugnarent, conicerent, remitterent.
- 166 23 primi, foremost. iacentibus (sc. eis, dat. after insisterent), stood upon them as they lay fallen (lit. 'them lying').
- 166 25 qui superessent: characteristic clause. ut ex tumulo, as if from a mound.
- 166 26 ut... deberet, so that we may consider (lit. 'it must be judged') that not without good hope of success (nequiquam) did men, etc.; ut... deberet is a result-clause dependent on the whole of the preceding sentence. The subject of deberet is the infin. clause homines ausos esse.
- 167 2 quae: the antecedents are the preceding infin. clauses describing the acts of the enemy; translate deeds which.—facilia: pred. adj.; § 285. 2, 282. b (186); B. 233. 2; G. 211; H. 382. 2 (438. 2); H-B. 320. iii.

The battle with the Nervii and their allies was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Their surprise of the Romans was complete, their courage such as to evoke Cæsar's wonder and admiration. Had the Romans come up in the order of march expected, —a legion at a time with intervening baggage, —they could hardly have escaped defeat or even annihilation. As it was, only the steadiness and discipline of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence and example at a critical moment saved the day.

- 167 4 CHAP. 28. prope ad internecionem: the Nervii were not by any means exterminated. Three years later they revolted again (Bk. v. ch. 38), and two years after that they sent a force of 5000 men to Alesia to relieve Vercingetorix (Bk. vii. ch. 75).
- 167 6 aestuaria: the country lying to the north, the modern Zealand, is low and marshy, cut up with bays and tide-water inlets.
- 167 7 dixeramus: for tense, cf. note on the same word, 144 11.—cum: causal; cf. 154 7.—impeditum [esse], etc., there was no obstacle in the way of (lit. 'nothing hindered to') the conquerors.
  - 167 10 in . . . calamitate: gerundive construction.
- 167 12 qui... possent: this would naturally be a characteristic subjv. in the dir.; cf. 61 13.—quos: see note on 156 2.
- 167 13 usus [esse]: § 582 (330. b); B. 332. b; G. 528. 1; H. 611. N.<sup>1</sup> (534. 1. N.<sup>1</sup>); cf. H-B. 590. 2. misericordia (abl.), mercy: it has been observed that Cæsar's dealings with the Gauls were comparatively merciful for a Roman dealing with barbarians, but his cruelty seems to us atrocious.
- 167 15 ut... prohiberent: subst. clause of purpose, obj. of imperavit; cf. this construction with that of uti iussit just before.
- 167 17 CHAP. 29. supra: see 158 20.—cum...venirent, while on the way.—omnibus copiis: cf. 146 24, 150 17.

- 167 20 sua omnia: cf. 146 23 and note.—oppidum: often identified with the citadel of Namur, at the confluence of the Meuse and Sambre (see Fig. 57). For a striking description of the locality, see Motley's "Dutch Republic," iii. 224. Others place it more probably at Falhize, opposite Huy, on the Meuse below Namur, though neither place quite agrees with Cæsar's description.
  - 167 21 quod cum: cf. qui cum, 156 2 and note.
  - 167 23 pedum: cf. 149 9.
  - 167 25 conlocabant: notice the change of tense from the pluperf.
- 167 26 ex Cimbris Teutonisque: abl. of source; cf. 147 9. This refers to the terrible invasion of the Cimbri and Teutons with their allies. They first appeared B.C. 106 and swept away six Roman armies, one after the other. They were finally annihilated by Caius Marius. See pp. 56-8.
- 169 2 impedimentis refers to cattle as well as portable baggage; hence the two verbs, agere and portare. Cf. ferre et agere, to plunder.
- 169 3 custodiam, a guard, whose duty it was to keep an eye on the booty, etc.; praesidium, a garrison, who were to hold the place. The words are in apposition with milia.
- 169 4 sex milia: this Teutonic military colony was probably merely adopted into the Celtic tribe of the Aduatuci, thus giving rise to the story that the whole tribe were of Teutonic descent.—una (adv.), with it, i.e. the impedimenta.—hi: i.e. the six thousand.—eorum: i.e. the Cimbri and Teutons.
- 169 5 obitum, destruction: the Teutons were totally defeated by Caius Marius at Aquæ Sextiæ (Aix-les-Bains), B.C. 102; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus, the next year, at Vercellæ.—alias: adverb.
- 169 6 inferrent: the regular word for offensive war. inlatum [sibi bellum] defenderent, defended themselves when attacked. consensu corum omnium, by mutual agreement, i.e. between themselves and all their neighbors.
- 169 7 sibi domicilio: cf. 150 12. hunc locum: the land between the Meuse and the Scheldt.
  - 169 8 CHAP. 30. adventu: abl. of time.
- 169 9 faciebant: notice the tense, and cf. 144 9 and note. parvulis: for the formation of the word, see § 243 (164. a); B. 153; G. 189. 6; H. 340 (332); H-B. 207. 1.
- 169 10 pedum XII: i.e. in height. XV milium: fifteen miles (sc. passuum) seems large for so small a hill, but no satisfactory explanation has yet been given.
- 169 11 oppido: for the omission of in, cf. castris, 154 11 and note. For the siege operations, see chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 59, 89, 90, 112.

- 170 2 viderunt: note the regular mood and tense in the temporal-clause with ubi; cf. 161 2 and note. inridere: histor. infin.; see note on 27 10.
- 170 3 quod . . . institueretur: because (as they said), etc.; subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; § 540, 592. 3 (321, 341. d); B. 286. 1, 323; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 555. a. ab tanto spatio, so far off (lit. 'away by so great a space'): abl. of degree of difference, ab having an adv. force. quibusnam, etc.: the enclitic nam gives a sarcastic emphasis to this jeering question of the barbarians, by what hands, pray, or what strength?
- 170 7 conlocare: indir. disc.; we should have expected the fut. infin., conlocaturos [esse]. Apparently the Gauls thought the Romans meant to lift the tower and set it up on the wall (in muro); and such an idea, of course, seemed very amusing. But when the tower began to roll forward they saw their error.
- **170** 8 Chap. 31. moveri, that it was actually moving: for the omission of the subj. acc. turrim, see § 581. N. (336. a. N.); B. 314. 5; G. 527. 4; H. 642 (p. 296, ftn. 2); H-B. 592.
  - 170 10 locuti, speaking: cf. 148 17.
- 170 11 existimare (sc. se, and cf. 158 7 and note), that they thought: depending on locuti.
- 170 13 possent: a rel. clause expressing cause; § 535. e (320. e); B. 283. 3. a; G. 633; H. 592 (517); H-B. 523.—se (obj.)... permittere, that they surrendered themselves, etc.: depending on dixerunt.
- 170 14 unum, only one thing; notice the emphatic position of the word. pro sua, etc., in accordance with his usual, etc.; cf. 167 13.
- 170 15 quam . . . audirent, which they were [all the time] hearing of: repeated action.
- 170 16 statuisset: for the fut. perf. (statueris) of the dir. disc.; § 516. c (307. c); B. 264. a; G. 595; H. 540. 2 (473. 2); cf. H-B. 536, 470. ftn.\(^1\).—

  ne... despoliaret: subst. clause of purpose in app. with unum, but really depending on deprecari for its form. Clauses thus used in apposition with a noun or pronoun take the form required by the verb on which the appositional word depends.
  - 170 17 inimicos: cf. 169 4-6.
- 171 1 virtuti: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362.—traditis armis (= si arma tradita essent): abl. abs., equivalent to a protasis; § 521. a (310. a); B. 227. 2. b; G. 593. 2; H. 489. 2 (431. 2); H-B. 578. 6. In the dir. disc. a vivid fut. condition, si arma tradita erunt, non poterimus.
- 171 2 sibi praestare, that it was better for them: impers.; the subject is the following infin. clause. si . . . deducerentur (fut. condition), if they should be reduced to such an extremity.

- 171 3 quamvis: from quivis.
- 171 4 consuessent: for the form, see § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. 1. Give the speech of the ambassadors of the Aduatuci in dir. disc., and also Cæsar's reply, ch. 32.
- 171 5 CHAP. 32. consuetudine . . . merito: cf. note on 163 20. This is a good example of the free use of the ablative case in Latin. If consuetudine were alone we should call it manner, "that in accordance," etc.; if merito were alone we should call it cause. Cæsar in using them both did not think of either category; to him they were both ablatives and needed no classification. We may call them cause if we like.
- 171 7 aries: a long beam with an iron head (like a ram's), suspended from a framework, and swung with great force against a wall, crumbling the strongest masonry (see Fig. 124).—attigisset...dedidissent stand for attigerit...dedideritis (fut. perf.) of the dir.: § 551. c (327. a); B. 291. 1; G. 574; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. b.
  - 171 8 nisi armis traditis: cf. nisi munitis castris, 162 6.
- 171 9 facturum: i.e. in case they came to terms. ne quam, lest any: § 310. a (105. d); B. 91. 5; G. 315; H. 512. 1 (455. 1); H-B. 142.
- 171 10 re nuntiata ad suos: the idea of motion causes the use of ad; the dat. would refer simply to the utterance of the message, not to its being carried.
- 171 11 imperarentur: the subjv. shows that this subordinate clause is a part of the indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 534. 2. facere: sc. se as subj. acc., which is very often omitted by Cæsar; cf. 158 7. We should expect facturos [esse]. The pres. infin. standing for facimus of the dir. is somewhat colloquial; § 468 (276. c); G. 228; H. 533. 2 (467. 5); cf. H-B. 571. dixerunt: i.e. the ambassadors on their return.
- 171 13 ut prope...adaequarent: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep space between the wall and the end of the agger almost to the top. See Figs. 59, 116.
- 171 16 eo die: the day is thought of as fixing the time, not as marking its duration, hence the abl.; § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. pace . . . usi: i.e. they enjoyed the cessation of war and were peaceable, opposed to their later conduct.
- 171 17 CHAP. 33. ex oppido exire: for the repetition of ex, see § 402 (243. b); B. 214. 2; G. 390; H. 462. I (413. N.8); H-B. 408. I.
  - 171 18 ne quam: see note on 171 9.
- 171 19 ante inito consilio, in accordance with a plan previously agreed upon.
- 171 20 quod crediderant: a reason stated on the writer's own authority, hence the indic.; cf. 146 5, 154 2.—praesidia; i.e. those stationed in the castella.

171 22 ex cortice: abl. of material; § 403 (244); B. 224; G. 396; H. 470 (415. iii); H-B. 406. 4.

171 23 viminibus intextis: in the same construction as cortice.

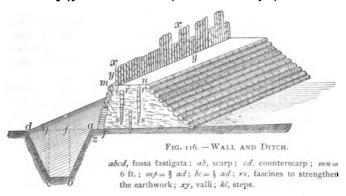
**171** 24 pellibus: abl.; § 364 (225. d); B. 187. i. a; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 376.  $\delta$ .

171 25 qua, where; an abl. or instrumental form, used adverbially.

172 1 celeriter: note the emphatic position. Cæsar had ordered them to give the signal, in case of any disturbance, and to do it *instantly*.—ignibus: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watch-tower.

172 2 eo, to that place. — concursum . . . pugnatum: impers. use of pass.; § 208. d (146. d); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. 1); H-B. 290. a. 1; see note on 7 7.

172 3 ita . . . ut, they fought as fiercely as brave men ought to fight.—
in extrema spe, for their last chance (lit. 'in the last hope').



172 4 iniquo loco: § 429. I (258. f); B. 228. I. b; G. 385. N.<sup>1</sup>; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436. — qui... iacerent: subjv. of characteristic; cf. 147 12, 167 12.

172 5 in una virtute, in valor alone. — cum . . . consisteret, at a time when, etc.; see note on 161 2.

172 6 ad, about.

172 7 postridie eius diei: cf. 41 23 and note.

172 9 sectionem . . . universam: i.e. the whole people, as slaves, with all their possessions.

172 10 milium: pred. gen., after esse understood.

172 13 CHAP. 34. Venetos, etc.: the name of the Veneti survives in the modern Vannes; that of the Redones, in Rennes.

- 172 14 maritimae civitates: inhabiting the modern Brittany and Normandy; they are spoken of at length in Bk. iii. chs. 7-16.
- 172 19 Chap. 35. perlata: notice the force of per; the news travelled from tribe to tribe.
- 172 20 incolerent: subjv. of integral part; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652. 1 (529. ii. N.<sup>1</sup>. 1); H-B. 539.
- 172 21 se...daturas: fem. because they were representatives sent by the tribes and spoke for them.
- 172 22 in Italiam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Cæsar's province extended to the Rubicon. Illyricum: this province formed part of Cæsar's government, but he went there only during the winter season; see 174 3 and 221 14.
- 172 24 Carnutes: their country lay between the Seine and the Loire, comprising the modern Orléans, formerly their capital; their name is preserved in the modern Chartres. Andes (whence Anjou): near the lower Loire. Turonos: preserved in Tours. These camps made a cordon from Orléans through Angiers and Tours and probably Vannes along the Loire to the sea-coast. quaeque civitates: translate as if et civitates quae.
- 173 3 supplicatio, a public thanksgiving: ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithridates. But Cæsar's party was now all powerful at Rome. quod: for id quod; § 307. d. N. (200. e. N.); B. 247. 1. b; G. 614. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); II-B. 325. a. N.<sup>2</sup>.



Book Third, 7-16. — B.C. 56.

FIG. 117. - SHIPBUILDER.

THE higher valleys of the Alps were inhabited by tribes who got a scanty living by working in mines, and often waylaid and plundered expeditions on the march. Two legions under L. Pedius (Bk. ii. ch. 2) had been attacked by these predatory people. The first six chapters of this Book give an account of Servius Galba's

campaign, which was intended to strike terror into the mountain tribes. Following this was the campaign against the Veneti.

NAVAL CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI. — The Veneti inhabited the peninsula of Aremorica, called Bretagne, Brittany, or Little Britain, since the emigration from Great Britain to escape the Saxon invasion. It has always been the home of the hardiest, most independent, and most strongly characterized of all the Gallic populations. Its scenery is wild and secluded, the character of its coast being clearly given in Cæsar's narrative. Its language remains Celtic to this day. No one of Cæsar's campaigns shows more strikingly his boldness and fertility of resource than this.

### READING REFERENCES ON CESAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN.

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 9.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 11.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 4.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 289-297.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 304-309.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 6.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 4.

- 174 2 CHAP. 7. Germanis: i.e. under Ariovistus. It will be noticed that the geographical order, and not the order of events, is followed in this summary. Of the Alpine tribes the Seduni are mentioned as the most important. The passage in brackets makes sense, and may be translated.
  - 174 4 Illyricum: part of Cæsar's province.
- 174 6 Crassus: see 72 24 ff. adulescens: like our 'junior,' to distinguish him from his father.
- 174 7 mare: following proximus with the construction of prope; § 432. α (261. α); B. 141. 3; G. 359. N.<sup>1</sup>; H. 435. 2 (391. 2); H-B. 380. δ.
  - 174 8 praefectos: officers of cavalry and auxiliaries.
  - 174 9 compluris goes with civitatis.
- 174 13 CHAP. 8. huius civitatis: i.e. the Veneti, on the southern coast of Brittany, the modern Morbihan.
  - 174 14 orae: part. gen. regionum: added to describe and limit orae.
- 174 15 Britanniam: at this time an important Celtic country, having close commercial and social relations with the mainland. Doubtless a large part of the shipping trade was in the hands of the Veneti and their allies, whose commerce extended from Ireland to Spain.—consumerunt, are accustomed: § 476 (279. e); B. 262. A; G. 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. I. 2); H-B. 487. Cf. 156 24.
- 174 17 in magno . . . aperti: i.e. on a sea exposed to great and violent storms.



- 174 18 omnis...habent vectigalis: i.e. levy tolls upon them all; vectigalis is in pred. apposition with omnis.
- 174 22 subita...consilia: this national characteristic of the Gauls is often alluded to by Cæsar and other Roman historians.
- 175 5 quam acceperint: \$ 592 (341); B. 323; G. 628; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 1. a.
- 175 6 quam perferre, than to endure, following the comparative contained in malint.
- 175 9 remittat: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in legationem mittunt. The dir. disc. would be si vis etc., remitte.
- 175 11 CHAP. 9. aberat longius, was too far off, i.e. to take command at once in person.—navis longas, galleys. See chapter on military affairs, IX, and Figs. 61, 63. The Gallic ships, it seems, used sails alone, without oars; see 180 25-28.
- 175 12 Ligeri: the Loire, on the banks of which Crassus was wintering. institui, to be organized, i.e. in gangs for the several galleys.
- 176 1 cum primum: the first moment when (lit. 'when first'). Cæsar had spent the winter as usual in Cisalpine Gaul. He reached his army perhaps in April or early in May.
  - 176 3 [certiores facti]: omit in translation.
- 176 4 admissions: indir. quest. legatos... coniectos (the specific act): in app. with facinus, but the construction is determined by intellegebant; see note on 170 16; legatos: they were hardly such in the sense of international law. They were only Cæsar's legat? or lieutenants.
  - 176 5 quod nomen: cf. quod tempus, 161 4 and note.
  - 176 9 pedestria itinera, etc., approaches by land.
- 176 10 concisa, impeditam: with esse. They depend upon sciebant.
- 176 11 inscientiam: i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance. neque . . . confidebant, and they trusted that our armies could not, etc. Notice that connective and negative have an attraction for each other, though we separate them.
- 176 13 ut...acciderent, etc., granting that, etc.: ut here introduces a concessive clause. This is the only instance in the "Gallic War." Note that when so used the subjv. mood follows; § 440 (266. c); B. 278; G. 608; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 532. 2. b.
- 177 1 posse and the following infinitives depend upon perspiciebant, 1. 5.
- 177 3 gesturi essent: subjv. of indir. disc. Observe the first periphrastic conj. referring to future time.

- 177 4 longe aliam . . . atque, very different . . . from ; cf. aliter ac, 160 16. concluso: i.e. like the Mediterranean, where there is no tide, and which is quiet as compared with the Atlantic.
- 177 9 socios: pred. apposition; cf. vectigalis, 174 25.—Osismos, etc.: the coast tribes as far as Flanders. The name Lexovii remains in Lisieux; Namnetes in Nantes; Diablintes in Jablins.
- 177 14 CHAP. 10. iniuria retentorum equitum, the wrong done by detaining the knights: § 497 (292. a); B. 337. 5; G. 664. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 636. 4 (549. 5. N.<sup>2</sup>); H-B. 608. 2. rebellio, renewal of hostilities (not 'rebellion').
- 177 16 ne...arbitrarentur: a new rising was threatened by the Belgians, while the maritime tribes, it is said, were already fearful of a Roman attempt upon Britain. (Observe that this purpose-clause is under the same construction as the nominatives iniuria, defectio, etc., which express other reasons for Cæsar's action, and are all in apposition with multa.)
  - 177 17 idem: subj. of licere.
- 177 19 excitari: the pres. infin. here corresponds to the pres. of a general truth; while odisse answers to oderunt taken as a pres., all men naturally hate.
  - 177 20 priusquam . . . conspirarent : see note on 69 7.
  - 177 24 CHAP. 11. flumini: dat. with proximi, but cf. 174 13.
- 177 25 adeat: after mandat, which expresses a command; cf. 3 11 and note; § 565. a (331. f. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a. ftn.<sup>2</sup>.
- 177 26 auxilio: dat. of service or end for which. arcessiti [esse] dicebantur, were reported to have been invited.
  - 178 2 Crassum: cf. 174 12 and note.
- 178 3 Aquitaniam: in southwest Gaul; see 144 5-7. These peoples were of different race and language from the other Gauls, and took little interest in their affairs, not even joining in the great revolt described in Bk. vii.
  - 178 6 Venellos, etc.: in Normandy.
- 178 7 distinendam: cf. 61 11, 62 5 and notes. Brutum: afterwards one of the conspirators against Cæsar, with the more celebrated Marcus Brutus.
- 178 8 Pictonibus, Santonis: on the coast south of the Loire (Poitou and Saintonge).
  - 178 12 CHAP. 12. eius modi . . . ut, of such sort that.
- 178 13 lingulis: some of these narrow tongues of land run out to sea several miles.
- 178 14 cum...incitavisset: i.e. at high tide. [bis]: apparently an error of the MSS. Some editors read XXIV instead of XII; others refer it to the general ignorance or carelessness of ancient writers.

178 15 quod . . . adflictarentur: subjv. as an integral part of the result-clause.

178 16 minuente, at the ebb: intransitive.

178 17 utraque re, in either case.

178 18 superati, agreeing with the subject of coeperant.

178 19 his (aggere ac molibus) . . . adaequatis, when these were brought level with the walls.

General von Göler explains the Roman works as follows: "A dike was extended along each side of the isthmus in the direction of the town. While these were building, of course with each rise of the tide the space within would be overflowed. When the dikes were nearly completed, the Romans waited until the ebb had carried off the water, and then rapidly pushed their works to completion before the next turn of the tide. Thus the sea was shut out and the isthmus left dry. Meanwhile the dikes themselves, being raised to the height of the walls, each served the purpose of an agger for approach to the town."

178 23 haec . . . faciebant, this they continued to do: repeated action.

178 24 partem: duration of time.

178 25 summa: with difficultas; note the emphasis.— vasto mari, etc.: in each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean. The words may be called abl. abs., but they probably go back to the locative abl.; see § 419 (255) ftn.; cf. H-B. 421. 4.

178 28 CHAP. 13. namque: introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti, [but the Veneti had less trouble] for.—ipsorum, their own.

178 29 aliquanto: abl. of degree of difference.

179 1 navium: depending on carinae understood. — quo... possent: cf. 31 20, 159 11.

179 2 atque item puppes, and the sterns too: accommodatae (being adapted) standing as an additional predicate.

179 4 quamvis: from quivis.

179 5 transtra, etc., the cross benches (for the rowers) of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a [man's] thumb.

179 7 pelles: the Romans used sails made of flax, the Veneti of skins untanned (pelles) or tanned (alutae).

179 11 tanta onera navium, ships of so great weight. - non satis commode, not very well.

179 12 nostrae classi: dat. of possession, but translate the encounter of our fleet with, etc.

179 13 praestaret, had the advantage (i.e. our fleet).

179 14 reliqua: here a neut. plur. substantive, everything else.

**179** 15 eis: dat. with nocere; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. I (385. i); H-B. 362.

179 16 rostro: see Figs. 61, 63.

180 2 copulis: the Romans were not very skilful in naval tactics, and they always aimed, by means of grappling hooks and boarding bridges, to get aboard the enemy's ship and reduce the conflict as soon as possible to a hand-to-hand combat, in which they excelled.—accedebat ut, there was this additional advantage that, followed by the result-clauses, ferrent, consisterent, and timerent; cf. 50 15, 147 14.

180 3 se vento dedissent, ran before the wind. The phrase is a nautical one; hence ventus is repeated to give the complete expression.

180 4 consisterent, rode at anchor.

**180** 5 **ab aestu relictae**: translate *if* or *when*, etc.; § 496 (292); B. 337. **2.** a, b; G. 664 ff.; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 604. 3. — **nihil**: cf. **162** 7 and note.

180 8 CHAP. 14. neque: see note on 176 11.

180 9 eis noceri posse, they could be harmed. Observe that the expression is impers., and cf. 18 17 and note.

180 10 quae ubi: cf. note on qui cum, 156 2.

180 11 paratissimae, fully equipped; ornatissimae, thoroughly furnished. The battle was probably fought in the bay of Quiberon, off the heights of St. Gildas, on which Cæsar was encamped. The fleet of Crassus issued from the Loire and took a northwesterly course. Meanwhile the fleet of the Veneti came out of the Auray estuary, and passing through the Morbihan entrance to the bay, encountered the Romans directly opposite Cæsar's camp. See Fig. 62.

180 13 neque satis Bruto . . . constabat, and Brutus could not make out. agerent and insisterent refer to Brutus and his officers.

180 14 tribunis militum, etc.: in the ancient modes of fighting, the fleet was only a part of the army, and was commanded by the military officers, as here.

180 16 noceri, etc.: cf. similar phrase above, l. 9.

180 17 excitatis, raised. The abl. abs. has a concessive force, as is shown by the following tamen.

180 18 ex barbaris navibus, on the enemy's ships; for force of ex, cf. una ex parte, ex itinere, etc.

180 20 magno usui, of great service (cf. auxilio, 177 26), in fact turning threatened disaster to victory; but Cæsar will not use words that hint at possible defeat.

180 22 muralium falcium, wall-hooks, long poles with sickle-shaped hooks attached, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling

down walls (see Fig. 124). The gen. limits formae understood, which would be dat. after absimili. — cum = whenever, as often as, and the sentence following is a general condition, the verbs comprehensi adductique erant being in the protasis, and praerumpebantur in the apodosis expressing repeated action, which is regularly expressed in Latin by the indic.; cf. 156 23 and note.

180 24 praerumpebantur, etc., they [the halyards] were torn away by driving the ship forward with the oars.

180 26 Gallicis navibus: dat. of reference used for poss. gen.

- 181 1 paulo fortius factum: one of Cæsar's mild expressions for 'an act of remarkable daring.'
- 181 4 CHAP. 15. cum, etc.: another general condition; see note on 180 22.—singulas, etc.: i.e. two or three ships surround each one of the enemy's.
- 181 6 contendebant: expressing repeated action; cf. with contenderunt below, which describes a single act. quod postquam: cf. quae ubi, 180 10 and note.
  - 181 8 cum . . . reperiretur: a causal clause; cf. 35 23, 154 7.
- 181 9 conversis . . . navibus: i.e. steered so as to run before the wind.

The prevailing winds at present towards the end of summer in this quarter are from the east or northeast,—the precise winds needed for the two fleets to have met as indicated above. Further, when these winds have blown during the morning, it usually falls calm at noon. This is just what happened on the day of the battle. The calm was probably just after midday.

- 181 14 pervenerint, came to land; for the tense, cf. 54 21, 147 3, the perf. subjv. being used, as usual, to express past time in a result-clause, without regard to sequence of tense.
  - 181 15 hora IIII (quarta): about 10 A.M.
  - 182 2 CHAP. 16. cum . . . tum, while . . . at the same time.
- 182 4 convenerant, coegerant: i.e. for this war. quod ubique, all that there were anywhere, followed by the part. gen. navium.
  - 182 5 quo, whither: i.e. any refuge.
- 182 8 eo gravius . . . quo, the more severely, etc., in order that. vindicandum [esse] (impers.), punishment should be inflicted.
- 182 10 sub corona vendidit, sold [as slaves] at public auction; lit. 'under the wreath,' since the captives were crowned like animals to be sacrificed, as indeed they had been in earlier times. Thus the only naval power in Gallia that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul any more trouble.

THE CAMPAIGN IN SOUTHERN GAUL. — The campaign in Aquitania, which closes the year, was made merely for strategic reasons. It was not provoked by any attack or threat of war, and appears to have been quite unnecessary (see note on 1783) as well as difficult and dangerous. The Aquitani had no strong military league or combination, but consisted of small, isolated clans, and were besides of more industrious habits than the Gauls, being good miners and engineers. As a mere narrative, however, this is an interesting episode of the war.

# BOOK FOURTH, 1-19. - B.C. 55.

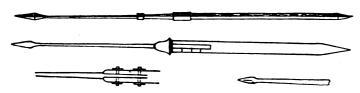


FIG. 118. - ROMAN JAVELINS (#lla).

THE FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY.— The year B.C. 55 appears to have been marked by a general movement in the migration of the German tribes. An advance, consisting of two tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, crowded forward by the more powerful Suevi, crossed the lower Rhine into northern Gaul. Cæsar assumed the defence of the country he had just conquered, drove them back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territories, and fully established the supremacy of the Roman arms. Another brief campaign in Germany two years later confirmed this success, and the Rhine became the military frontier, recognized for many centuries, between the Roman Empire and the barbarian world.

#### READING REFERENCES ON THE FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY.

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 10.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 12.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 5.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 365-375.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 309-312.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Tracitus's Germania.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 5.

183 1 ea quae, etc.: mark the emphasis as shown by the order and compare the opening of Bk. iii and note. — Pompeio, Crasso: i.e. the year B.C. 55. Observe that the usual way of fixing a year is by naming the consuls for that year. The coalition between Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus,

sometimes called the First Triumvirate, had been formed five years before. In carrying out the scheme, Cæsar held the government of Gaul, while the others took into their own hands the whole control of affairs at home (see Introduction, "Life of Cæsar," p. 102).

- 183 2 Usipetes, Tencteri: beyond the Rhine, a little below Cologne.
- 183 4 quo: adv. = in quod.
- 183 5 quod . . . prohibebantur: Cæsar states this reason as his own, therefore the indic. Suevis: this people (the modern Swabians) occupied the greater part of central Germany, and was made up of several tribes.
- 183 6 premebantur, prohibebantur: the imperfects here express that which was still going on, they were being hard pressed, etc.
- 183 8 centum pagos: there is probably some confusion here with the ancient German institution of the *Hundred*, a division of the population giving its name to a district of territory. Each hundred seems to have sent 1000 men (singula milia) to the army. The term early lost its numerical value, and became a mere local designation.
- 183 9 bellandi causa: gerund, expressing purpose with causa. Observe that causa in this use always follows its case; cf. above causa transeundi, with a totally different meaning.
- 183 11 hi...illi, the latter... the former.—anno post, the following year: § 424. f (259 d); B. 357. 1; G. 403. N.4; H. 488. I (430); cf. H-B. 424.

  183 12 ratio, theory (theoretical knowledge); usus, practice (knowledge derived from experience).
- 183 13 sed: i.e. they attended to agriculture systematically, but, etc.—privati...agri: i.e. the land was held in tribal communities.
- 183 14 longius anno: i.e. the community had no fixed possessions, but was transferred yearly from one tract to another, its place being taken by another community. As is shown in Bk. vi. ch. 22, the community was composed of persons kindred by birth. The annual shifting of occupancy would prevent at once forming local attachments, building up large properties, and too rapidly exhausting the soil.
- 183 15 frumento (abl. of means), etc.: they were still in a half-nomadic state, though with some little advance in agriculture (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 22, and Tacitus, Germania, 27). maximam partem: adv. acc.; it is worth while to learn the few words that commonly occur in this construction; § 390. c, 397. a (240. a, b); B. 185. 1; G. 334. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 388.
  - 183 17 quae res: cf. note on 17 8.
- 185 1 quod . . . faciunt: this clause is a parenthesis; because, having been trained from childhood to no service or discipline, they do nothing whatever against their will,—a lively contrast of barbarous manners with the severity of Roman family and civil discipline.

- 185 3 alit: the subject is quae res. homines [eos] efficit, makes [them] men, etc.
- 185 4 eam: correl. with ut, introducing a clause of result. locis (abl. abs., concessive) frigidissimis, even in their extreme climate.
- 185 5 vestitus: part. gen. with quicquam. haberent, have; lavarentur, bathe: imperf. by sequence of tenses following adduxerunt; § 485. a (287. a); B. 268. 1; G. 511. R.<sup>8</sup>; H. 546 (495. i); H-B. 481.
- 185 8 CHAP. 2. eo ut . . . habeant, so (on this account) that they may have (some one) to whom, etc.
- **185** 9 quam quo... desiderent, than that they want, etc. For the use of quo expressing cause with the implied negative, see § 592. N. (341. R.); B. 323; G. 541. N.<sup>2</sup>; H. 588. ii. 2 (516. 2); H-B. 535. 2. b.
- 185 11 impenso pretio, at high cost.—importatis non utuntur, do not import for use (lit. 'do not use imported').
- 185 13 deformia, ill-shaped. summi laboris, (capable) of great labor (gen. of quality).
- 185 20 quamvis pauci, however few. vinum: cf. the description of the Nervii, 158 6-10. They drank a kind of beer, however, and mead made of honey.
  - 185 23 CHAP. 3. publice, as a community.
- 185 26 una... Suevis, extending from (the territory of) the Suevi in one direction.—sexcenta: probably exaggerated.—agri, their lands.
  - 185 27 Ubii: along the Rhine, opposite Cologne.
- 186 1 paulo...humaniores, somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race (Germans).
  - 186 4 cum: concessive, as shown by the following tamen.
- 186 5 gravitatem, importance, referring to the warlike character and extensive resources of the people; while amplitudinem refers to their great numbers.
- 186 7 vectigalis: sc. eos referring to the Ubii. humiliores (pred.): in translating sc. so as to be.
  - 186 9 CHAP. 4. in eadem causa, in the same situation.
  - 186 12 quas regiones: North Brabant, with the north bank of the Rhine.
  - 186 13 ad utramque ripam, along both banks.
  - 186 14 multitudinis: see 192 10.
  - 186 16 cis Rhenum: i.e. the west side.
  - 186 18 vi contendere, to force a passage.
  - 186 22 confecto: with itinere.
  - 186 23 oppresserunt: not 'oppressed'; see note on obtinere, 143 15.
- **187** 2 priusquam . . . fieret: § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. b; see also note on **69** 7.

- 187 5 partem: acc. of time. eorum copiis, on their supplies (cattle and grain).
  - 187 6 CHAP. 5. infirmitatem, weakness of purpose = fickleness.
- 187 8 nihil . . . committendum, no confidence should be placed in them. Observe that committendum [esse] is impers. and nihil adv. acc.
- 187 9 est... consuctudinis, it is [a point] of Gallic custom:  $\S 343.c$  (214. d); B. 198. 3; G. 366. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 439 (401); H-B. 340.—uti... cogant, etc.: we have here a number of clauses of result in app. with hoc.
  - 187 14 rebus atque auditionibus, facts and hearsays.
- **187** 15 quorum eos... paenitere: § 354. b (221. b); B. 209. 1; G. 377; H. 457 (409. iii); II-B. 352. in vestigio, on the spot: cf. **185** 16.
- 187 16 serviant, are slaves to. plerique: i.e. the travellers and traders.
  - 187 17 corum: i.e. the questioners.
- 187 18 CHAP. 6. graviori bello, too serious a war (i.e. unmanageable): § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.
- 187 19 maturius, earlier, i.e. in the season. ad exercitum: the army was now in Normandy.
  - 187 20 facta: sc. esse; so with missas below.
  - 187 21 missas legationes, etc.: these infinitive clauses explain ea.
- 187 22 uti... discederent: i.e. further into Gaul. The Belgæ, it will be remembered, claimed kindred with the Germans, and were no doubt ready to assist them against the Romans.
- 187 23 postulassent: for fut. perf. of dir. disc.; § 478, 519, 585 (281, 316, 336, B); B. 264, 312. 2, 318; G. 244, 516; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 468. 6, 536, 470. ftn.\(^1\). fore parata, should be made ready (used for the fut. infin. pass.). It depends on some word of saying, like promiserunt, implied in invitatos. Instead of fore parata, we might expect fore ut pararentur.
  - 187 24 Eburonum, etc.: German tribes.
- 187 27 permulsis, calmed from their terror (lit. 'soothed by stroking,' like a nervous horse).
- 188 1 CHAP. 7. equitibus delectis: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.
  - 188 3 a quibus: refers to locis.
- 188 5 priores: first, or, as aggressors.—neque recusare, they do not decline, followed by quin and subjv.; cf. 147 6.
- 188 7 [haec]: may be translated. quicumque: the antecedent is eis (dat.) implied with resistere.
- 188 8 neque deprecari, and ask no quarter (lit. 'and not beg off'). haec tamen dicere, this, however, they did say; supply se for subj. of dicere and following infinitives. For similar instances, see 158 7, 170 11, 171 11.

- 188 10 eis: i.e. to the Romans. attribuant: subjv. in indir. disc. for imv. of the direct.
  - 188 11 eos: sc. agros.
  - 188 12 concedere, yield, as inferior.
- **188** 13 reliquum...neminem: the position gives a force like BESIDES THESE there was no one ELSE on earth, etc.
  - 188 15 CHAP. 8. quae visum est, what (it) seemed proper (to answer).
  - 188 20 Ubiorum: see ch. 3.
- 188 21 quorum sint, etc., whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him to (lit. 'and') complain, etc.
- 188 25 CHAP. 9. post diem tertium (= tertio die): i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually counted in the Roman reckoning.
- **188** 26 **propius se: propius** sometimes has the force of a preposition; § 432. a (261.a); B. 141. 3; G. 416. 22; H. 420. 5 (437.1); H-B. 380. b.—id: i.e. the two days' delay (expressed by ne... moveret).
  - 189 1 trans: i.e. westwardly.
- 189 2 exspectari: change the voice and translate as active, they were waiting for.
- 189 4 CHAP. 10. Vosego, the Vosges: in fact, the Meuse flows from the plateau of Langres.
- 189 5 parte...recepta: the Rhine branches in these low, marshy regions; one branch (Vacalus, the modern Waal) unites with the Meuse near Bois le Duc (see note, ch. 15).
  - 189 6 Omit the words in brackets.
- 189 9 Nantuatium: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 1, where they are placed upon the Rhone, just above Lake Geneva; this was perhaps a branch or kindred tribe. The list of names here is incomplete.
  - 189 12 multis . . . effectis: translate actively, making many, etc.
- 189 13 feris...nationibus: see the introduction to Motley's "Dutch Republic."
  - 189 15 capitibus, mouths (more commonly, sources).
- 189 17 CHAP. II. ut erat constitutum, as had been arranged (i.e. the return of the envoys). Either this is a careless expression, or Cæsar's consent is omitted in ch. 9. It is there stated merely that they said they would return.
  - 189 19 eos equites (antecedent to qui), the cavalry who, etc.
- 189 20 antecessissent: attracted into the subjv. by the ut-clause; cf. 172 20. praemitteret: used without an object; translate send word.
  - 189 21 sibi: i.e. the Germans.
  - 189 22 quorum si, and if their: cf. note on qui cum, 156 2.
  - 189 23 condicione . . . usuros, would accept the terms: see ch. 8.

- 189 25 daret: sc. petebant uti from l. 19.—eodem illo pertinere, tended the same way (see ch. 9), i.e. to gain time till the German cavalry should arrive (eodem and illo are adverbs).
- 189 28 aquationis causa: a small stream (probably the Niers) lay between him and the German encampment.
- 190 3 accessisset: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5.
- 190 5 CHAP. 12. amplius DCCC, more than eight hundred: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.<sup>4</sup>; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. N.<sup>2</sup>); H-B. 416. d. Tacitus in his "Germania" (ch. 32) says that this tribe was distinguished for cavalry.
  - 190 9 indutiis: dat. of the end for which.
  - 190 10 resistentibus: sc. nostris.
- 190 11 subfossis, etc.: after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men; observe again, as in 189 12, that an abl. abs. with a pass. part. is often best translated actively.
  - 190 14 venissent: cf. 187 2.
- 190 17 genere: abl. of source; § 403. a (244. a); B. 215; G. 395; H. 469. 2 (415. ii); H-B. 413.—regnum obtinuerat, had held supreme power.
  - 190 20 quoad: cf. this use and construction with that in l. 2.
- 190 25 Chap. 13. neque iam, no longer: knowing how little his own cavalry (of Gauls) were to be trusted, and that the arrival of the main body of the Germans would put them at once to flight, Cæsar resolved to attack at the first opportunity, right or wrong.
- 190 26 ab eis qui, from men who, etc., followed by the subjv. of characteristic.
  - 191 1 exspectare: subject of esse; note the emphasis of position.
  - 191 2 dementiae: pred. genitive.
- 191 3 quantum . . . auctoritatis, etc., how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle.
- 191 5 quibus: i.e. the enemy (dat., indir. obj. of dandum [esse]); on the relative serving as a connective, see note, 9 8.
  - 191 7 ne quem, etc.: cf. 171 9.
  - 191 8 res: in app. with quod . . . venerunt.
- 191 9 eadem perfidia: their perfidy Cæsar takes for granted, as the best apology for his own; but the presence of the chiefs and old men looks more as if they came, as they said, to offer amends for the attack of the day before.
- **191** 11 simul...simul, partly...partly.—purgandi sui: see § 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 626. 3 (542. 1. N.<sup>1</sup>); H-B. 614.

- 191 12 contra atque, contrary to what; see Vocabulary. Observe the subjunctives of implied indir. disc. in this passage.
- 191 13 si quid . . . de indutiis, whatever (lit. 'if anything') they could in the way of truce.
- 191 14 fallendo: i.e. by another trick. quos, illos: both refer to the same subject. quos oblatos [esse] gavisus, delighted that they were put in his power (gavisus, from gaudeo). By detaining their chief men, he would at once perplex and disable them.
- 191 17 subsequi, to follow in the rear; they usually went in advance (cf. 189 20), but now he could not trust them in the intended attack.
- 191 18 CHAP. 14. acie triplici: i.e. a march in line of battle; see chapter on military affairs, VI and VII.
  - 191 19 quid ageretur, what was going on.
  - 191 20 possent: cf. 187 2, 190 14.
  - 191 21 et . . . et, both . . . and.
- 191 23 ne...an...an: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 380 (353); H-B. 234; the three infinitives all belong to praestaret, whether it was better.
  - 191 24 quorum timor cum: note the emphatic order.
- 191 29 reliqua multitudo: the presence of women and children shows that it was a migration for settlement, not a mere inroad for plunder.
- 192 1 ad quos consectandos (freq. of sequor), to hunt them down. Referring to this massacre of helpless fugitives, Plutarch, in his "Life of Cæsar," writes that when the Senate was voting public thanksgiving and processions on account of the victory, Cato proposed that Cæsar should be given up to the barbarians to expiate that breach of faith, in order that the divine vengeance might fall upon its author rather than upon Rome. Cato was Cæsar's bitter political and personal enemy, but still Cæsar's cruelty and perfidy in this transaction can be justified only on the ground of absolute necessity. To secure the Roman power, he must destroy these Germans in order to establish the Rhine as the Gallic frontier and deter others from crossing.
- 192 3 CHAP. 15. Germani: i.e. those who were fighting. clamore: i.e. of those who were being massacred.
  - 192 4 signis: figures of animals carried on poles; see Figs. 81, 110.
  - 192 6 reliqua fuga, further flight.

This action is usually placed at the junction of the Rhine and the Meuse. There are many reasons against this, but no other location seems possible without doing violence to the text, and for this no sufficient case is made out.

192 9 ex . . . timore, (relieved) from the apprehension of so great a war.



192 12 discedendi potestatem, permission to depart. This was a practical acquittal of the charge of treachery.

192 13 veriti: regularly pres. act. in force, fearing.

192 17 CHAP. 16. illa, the following.

192 19 suis: note the emphasis on this word.

192 20 cum intellegerent: here nearly equivalent to a participle.

192 21 accessit quod, and besides: see Vocabulary.

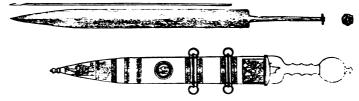


FIG. 119. - ROMAN SWORDS (gladii).

192 22 quam... transisse, which, as I mentioned above, had crossed: see 188 27 ff. (the conj. that of indir. disc. cannot be used in English to introduce a rel. clause). Observe that Cæsar the writer uses the first person (commemoravi); Cæsar the actor is always in the third.

192 25 Sugambrorum: living just north of the Ubii.

192 27 intulissent: cf. antecessissent, 189 20. — dederent: observe the omission of ut; § 565. a (331. f. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a. ftn.<sup>2</sup>.

192 28 finire: see introductory note to Bk. iv.

193 1 aequum: pred. adj. agreeing with the infin. clause Germanos . . . transire.

193 2 sui... imperi: pred. gen. of possession after esse, under his power.

193 7 occupationibus rei publicae, by the demands of state affairs.

193 8 transportaret: same construction as ferret.

193 9 futurum [esse]: sc. verb of saying from orabant, l. 5; so, too, for the following sentence.

193 17 CHAP. 17. dignitatis: cf. 193 2.

193 19 latitudinem, etc.: Cæsar's passage of the Rhine was most probably at Bonn, where the high and rocky banks begin; or at Neuwied, 20 or 25 miles further south, where there is a break in the chain of hills, though here, it is said, the bottom is rock, and not fit for driving piles. The width of the river at either place is about 1400 feet, and its depth is very variable. It is now crossed in these parts by bridges.

- 193 21 rationem, plan. The brief description which Cæsar gives of his rough-and-ready but very serviceable engineering may be made clearer by giving its different points as follows (see Fig. 70):—
- 1. A pair of unhewn logs, a foot and a half thick (tigna bina sesquipe-dalia), braced two feet apart and sharpened at the end, are set up by derricks and driven with pile drivers (fistucis) into the bottom, sloping a little with the stream.
- 2. A similar pair is driven in opposite, 40 feet below, sloping a little in the other direction against the stream; the upper ends of the two pairs would thus be some 25 or 30 feet apart, the width of the roadway. It is possible, as Rüstow thinks, that the 40 feet refer to the top and not to the bottom of the piles.
- 3. A beam of square timber, two feet thick (trabs bipedalis), and about 30 feet long, is made fast at the ends by ties (fibulis) between the logs of each pair, which are thus kept at a proper distance apart, while they are strongly braced against the current.
- 4. A suitable number (probably about 60) of these trestles, or timberarches, having been built and connected by cross-ties,—this part of the structure must be taken for granted,—planks are then laid lengthwise of the bridge (directa materia), resting on the heavy floor-timbers; and upon these, again, saplings and twigs (longurii, crates) are spread, to prevent the jar and wear of the carts and hoofs of the pack-animals on the flooring.
- 5. Piles (sublicae) are then driven in below, resting obliquely against the logs, to which they serve as shores or buttresses (pro ariete), and other heavier piles a little way above, to break the force of floating logs or boats sent down to destroy the bridge.
- 193 22 tigna: probably unhewn logs. bina, two and two, i.e. in pairs.
- 193 24 pedum duorum: i.e. between the timbers of each pair. cum ... defixerat, etc.: cum here equals whenever or as often as and the clause is equivalent to the protasis of a general condition; hence the use of the pluperf. indic.; cf. 180 22 and note.
  - 193 26 sublicae modo, like a pile.
- 193 27 ut . . . procumberent, so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.
- 193 29 ab inferiore parte, downstream. contra... conversa, slanting against; agrees with duo [tigna].
- 193 30 hace utraque... distinebantur, these two sets (or pairs) were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal [in thickness] to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (quantum... distabat), with a pair of ties at each end. For number of utraque, see Vocabulary.

- 194 2 quibus [tignis] . . . revinctis, after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions: i.e. the horizontal beams held the piles (tigns) apart, which, sloping in opposite directions, had been secured by the clamps.
- 194 4 rerum, structure: see note on 78.—quo maior...hoc artius: the greater...the more closely, abl. of degree of difference. The only doubtful part of the description is in fibulis, of which the exact meaning is somewhat uncertain. They are thought by some to be cross-ties. But, as the word means properly a kind of clasp exactly like a modern safetypin, it seems better to suppose they were clamps joining the two piles with perhaps an iron bolt put through, answering to the pin of the fibula.
- 194 5 haec . . . contexebantur, these (the framework of timber) were covered with boards placed lengthwise.
- 194 7 sublicae . . . agebantur, piles also were driven on the lower side in a slanting direction, so as to prop the bridge against the current.
  - 194 8 pro ariete, as a buttress.
- 194 10 aliae item: other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater. There is nothing in the text to show whether these were attached to the bridge or not.—spatio: abl. of degree of difference.
- 194 11 deiciendi operis, to throw down the work: pred. gen. expressing tendency or purpose; § 504. a. N.¹ (298. R.); B. 339. 6; G. 428. R.²; H. 626. 5 (544. N.²); H-B. 616, last example.
- 194 12 neu... nocerent, and that they [trunci, etc.] might not harm the bridge.
- 194 14 CHAP. 18. diebus X quibus, within ten days from the time when.—coepta erat: pass. because used with the pass. infin.; c. 150 1; see also 1. 20 below.
  - 194 15 traducitur: the histor. pres., resumed from 192 21.
- 194 16 Sugambrorum: these were a little to the northeast of the bridge.
- 194 21 hortantibus eis, etc.: i.e. the few who had escaped the massacre of ch. 15, and had taken refuge across the Rhine.
- 194 23 in solitudinem: notice that the Latin construction is that following verbs of motion, on account of the meaning of abdiderant; we say 'hid in,' etc.
- 194 27 CHAP. 19. pollicitus: this word implies a main clause in the infin., se daturum, on which the conditional clause would depend. This clause does not appear, but the dependent clause remains in the subjy., according to the rule.
- 194 28 premerentur: a good example of the subjv. in implied indir. disc.; see notes on 9 13, 50 8.
  - 196 1 per exploratores: cf. note on 154 14.

196 3 uti... convenirent: object-clauses of purpose, following the verbal phrase nuntios... dimisisse, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice. The rest of the sentence contains only statements and is therefore in the indir. disc. construction.

196 5 hunc, etc., this had been selected about the middle, etc.: medium is used as a pred. agreeing with hunc in preference to an adverbial phrase in medio; § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 325. R.6; H. 497. 4 (440. N.2); H-B. 244.

196 7 decertare: not merely fight, but fight the decisive battle or decide the issue. This force of de is very common.

196 10 ut... liberaret, etc.: these clauses are in app. with rebus, and their form as result-clauses is determined by confectis. For infinitive clause in apposition, cf. 176 4 and note. In English some change of construction is often necessary in such cases. Here, having accomplished, etc. (namely), inspired, ... chastised, ... relieved.

196 13 arbitratus: cf. 148 17 and note.

## Воок Sixth, 9-29. — в.с. 53.

THE SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY AND THE CUSTOMS OF THE GAULS AND GERMANS. — Cæsar's first invasion of Germany was immediately followed by his first invasion of Britain. In the following year (B.C. 54), he went to Britain again in force, but was able to accomplish but little. On his return, he was compelled to put down a rebellion of the Gauls, so serious that he lost a division of his army and barely saved another from the same fate. The last campaign, mainly unsuccessful as it was, must have been in the eyes of the Gauls at least as good as a drawn battle, and have given them fresh hope in the struggle. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they had the support of raids from across the Rhine, — a danger which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check by a daring blow; hence the policy of this new, but idle, advance into Germany. It may be borne in mind that this campaign was the more critical, as it followed closely upon the defeat and destruction of the Roman armies under Crassus in the East.

#### READING REFERENCES ON CASAR'S SIXTH CAMPAIGN.

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 14.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 13.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 17 (last part).
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 6.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 398-405.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 9.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Tacitus's Germania.
Taylor's Hist. of Germany, chaps. 1 and 2.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 7.

196 19 CHAP. 9. paulo supra, a little above, or to the south, probably near Andernach.

196 20 nota... ratione, on the plan already tried and approved (cf. Bk. iv. ch. 17).

197 1 purgandi sui: \$ 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 626. 3 (542. i. N.<sup>1</sup>); H-B. 614.

197 5 cognita, having inquired into.

197 9 CHAP. 10. paucis post diebus: § 424. f(259. d); B. 357. 1; G. 403. N.4; H. 488. 1 (430); H-B. 424.

197 10 eis...imperio: subject tribes, not confederate allies. Tacitus, however (Germania, 38), represents the Suevi as a confederacy; its former subjects may, after Cæsar's time, have been admitted to alliance.

197 18 quaeque: -que connects mittant and cognoscant.

197 22 silvam: this was the natural frontier and defence (pro nativo muro) of the north German plain towards the south. A range of wooded hills still borders the Saxon duchies on the north. The Cherusci held the valleys of the Weser and Elbe.

198 1 CHAP. 11. locum, etc.: here there is really nothing to tell, as Cæsar found the country deserted (ch. 29), and returned at once to Gaul. We owe to this void in the narrative a most curious and entertaining glimpse into the geographic and ethnographic knowledge of the time. See the introductory chapters on Gaul and Germany.

198 7 existimantur: is only explanatory, hence the indicative.

198 8 quorum: the antecedent is principes.

198 9 redeat: is characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631. I; H. 591. I (503. i); cf. H-B. 521. I. The idea seems to be: It is the chief men of these factions (those namely who are regarded as most influential) who have the supreme authority. Hence the effort of each of the chieftains to look out for his dependents. A good illustration is found in modern political bosses.

198 10 ne... egeret: in app. with eius rei, the past tense (egeret) taking its time from institutum [esse]: § 485. j, 585. a (287. i, 336. B. N.<sup>2</sup>); B. 268. 7. b, 268. 2; G. 518; H. 548 (495. iv); H-B. 483.

198 13 baec... Galliae, this same state of things exists in general throughout entire Gaul.

198 14 divisae: adj. use of the participle; cf. divisa, 143 1.

198 15 CHAP. 12. cum...venit: notice the difference between this and the cum in descriptive clauses (cf. 16 5, 144 8). Here it means merely 'at the time when,' and there is no inner connection with the main clause.

198 16 Sequani: these succeeded to the domination of the Arverni.—hi, the latter.

198 17 antiquitus: really only a little while before, as the Hædui had risen by favor of the Romans.

198 18 clientelae, dependencies. These were the petty tribes which grouped themselves about one or the other of the great rival states.

198 24 iurare: i.e. the Hædui.

198 25 nihil . . . consili, no plans, part. gen. — et: connects cogerent and possiderent.

199 1 infecta re, without effecting his object.

199 2 adventu Caesaris...dimiserant: this long Latin periodic sentence should in our idiom be rendered by several coördinate sentences (cf. note on 164 18).—facta commutatione: i.e. by his friendship to the Hædui and the defeat of Ariovistus, the king of the Germans.

199 4 ei; subj. of videbant.

199 6 reliquis rebus: abl. of specification.

199 8 adaequare, were equal; i.e. to the Hædui. (The infin. clause quos adaequare is the subj. of intellegebatur, which is used impersonally.)

199 9 gratia: abl. of specification.

199 11 dlcabant: distinguish from dicebant.

199 13 statu: loc. ablative.

199 16 CHAP. 13. plebes: here a noun of the fifth declension; cf. plebs.

199 18 cum... premuntur: a general condition expressing repeated action, cum meaning whenever or as often as. The perf. indic. would be more usual; cf. si qua, etc., 156 23.

199 21 quae dominis (dat. of poss.), as masters have.

199 22 druidum (pred. gen.), that of the druids. — illi: the former.

199 25 hi: i.e. the druids.

199 26 eos: i.e. the Gauls.

199 27 quod facinus, any crime.

200 1 idem: nom. plural.

200 2 qui: why not quis? Observe also si qui in l. 10 below.

200 3 sacrificis: abl. of separation; understand eos with interdicunt.

- poena: like an excommunication, taboo, or boycott.

200 5 decedunt (with dat.): sc. de via (i.e. 'make way for' them in the street).

200 6 incommodi: part. gen. following quid.

200 13 Carnutum: this central spot was at or near the modern town of Dreux, where, it is said, traces of these assemblies may still be found.

200 16 disciplina, system of doctrine; cf. meaning of the same word in 199 25. — Britannia: many think that druidism originated in Gaul and was carried thence to Britain, where it still flourished, but that it had declined for various political reasons in the mother country.

- 200 21 CHAP. 14. The bracketed words merely repeat the thought of the preceding sentence and may be omitted.
- 201 2 numerum versuum: i.e. their lore was put into verse to assist the memory.
  - 201 4 fas: the words fas and nefas refer to what is religiously right and wrong; ius and iniuria refer to human obligations only.
  - 201 8 litteris confisos, by trusting to written words, a useful hint to teachers.
  - 201 11 hoc (acc.), more usually illud, refers to what follows; hoc (abl.) to what has just been said.
  - 201 12 transire: the belief in the transmigration of souls was common to many ancient peoples, and is still a tenet of some Eastern religions, especially of the Buddhists.
  - 201 15 mundi, the universe (system of things); terrarum (cf. orbis terrarum), the world.
  - 201 17 CHAP. 15. equitum: these made a sort of military nobility. It is interesting to compare the two "upper classes" here described with the ecclesiastics and feudal noblesse of France before the Revolution.—cum est: notice the force of the indicative. See note on cum...premuntur, 199 18.—usus: a noun; see Vocabulary.
  - 201 21 ut quisque... amplissimus, ita plurimos, the more powerful... the greater number: § 313. b (93. c, at end); G. 642. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 515. 5 (458. 2).
  - 201 22 ambactos: this Celtic word was known as the equivalent of servus, slaves, as early as the time of Ennius, 150 years before. Cf. 199 16-21.
  - 201 27 CHAP. 16. homines immolant: it is not certain that the practice of human sacrifice existed so late as this in Gaul. Cæsar appears not to have known any actual instances of it.
  - 202 3 plācārī: distinguished from placēre. publice.: as opposed to the private ones just referred to.
    - 202 4 habent instituta: cf. 17 15, 147 16, and notes.
    - 202 9 cum . . . deficit : cf. cum est, 201 17.
  - 202 12 CHAP. 17. Mercurium: the gods had no such names, nor were they, in fact, the same gods; but they were identified with similar Roman divinities as nearly as possible. The name of the god whom the Romans identified with Mercury is lost (Teutates?); but it appears from inscriptions and images that his worship was very widespread and important throughout the period of the Empire. The other deities here mentioned appear under numerous epithets. Jupiter was probably the Gallic Taranis, whose name appears to indicate that he was a god of thunder. He has been

identified by some with a statuette bearing in its hand a long hammer or mallet, like the Scandinavian Thor. (See Esquisse de la Religion des Gaulois, by Henri Gadioz.)

202 20 cum, etc.: see 199 18 and note.

202 21 ceperint: subjv. of informal indir. disc., for the fut. perf. ind. of the direct.

203 2 neglecta religione: i.e. in violation of his vow. — capta, taken as spoil. — apud se, at his house.

203 3 posita, consecrated as a gift.

203 5 CHAP. 18. Dite, Pluto, the god of Darkness, or of the Underworld, meaning that they believe themselves to have sprung from the soil, the world below them: see § 403. a. N.1 (244. a. R.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 469. I (415. ii. N.); H-B. 413. b.

203 7 noctium, etc.: this usage is common to many primitive peoples; e.g. the Germans (Tacitus, Germania, 11). Our word "fortnight" is a relic of it. It doubtless had its origin in keeping time by the changes of the moon.

203 9 ut . . . subsequatur: i.e. the calendar day began at sunset.

203 10 fere (with hoc): i.e. speaking loosely.—suos liberos, etc. The Romans, on the other hand, accustomed their sons to public life, and in early times even took them with them into the Senate. Again cum with the perf. ind. expressing repeated or customary action; cf. 202 20. Observe that this perf. becomes a present in our idiom, expressing repeated action or a general truth.

203 13 turpe ducunt, they consider it disgraceful, turpe being pred. adj. agreeing with the infin. clause.

203 14 CHAP. 19. quantas...communicant: i.e. the husband deposits, in a common fund, an amount equal to the wife's marriage portion.

203 16 ratio habetur, a reckoning is kept.

203 17 fructus, revenues or profits. - vita: abl. of specification.

203 19 viri in uxores, etc.: cf. the Roman patria potestas; the rank of the wife was much higher among the Germans.

203 22 de uxoribus: this would seem to imply polygamy among the Gauls. Probably it was limited to the chiefs, as among the Germans; see Tacitus, Germania, 18.—in servilem modum, after the manner of slaves, i.e. by torture.

203 23 compertum est: i.e. that there has been foul play.

203 24 excruciatas interficient: cf. 67 16, 152 12, and notes. — pro cultu, considering the degree of civilization.

203 27 hanc = nostram (cf. 148 5), i.e. a generation ago.

204 1 dilectos: distinguish from delectos. — iustis, regular, by conventional rule. When these had been fulfilled, the sacrifice of dependents

was added. These usages are in accordance with the belief of the Gauls in immortality, which is fully attested.

- 204 3 CHAP. 20. quae civitates = eae civitates quae; a relative clause standing first generally incorporates its antecedent.
- 204 4 legibus sanctum, established by law, agreeing with the sentence si...communicet (obj. of habent); cf. 147 16.
- 204 6 neve, and that not, the regular connective for a negative purposeclause. — quo; indef., any one.
  - 204 7 quod saepe, etc.: cf. the lively account 187 9-17.
- 204 9 quae visa sunt, what they think fit to conceal (understand occultanda).
- 204 11 per concilium, by means (or, in the proceedings) of the public assembly.
- 204 14 CHAP. 21. neque druides habent: i.e. this particular hierarchy. They had, however, both priests and priestesses, with religious forms public and private.
- 204 15 deorum numero, etc. In this, Cæsar's testimony is directly contradicted by Tacitus, who speaks (Germania, 9) of their worship of Mercury, Mars, and Hercules. This is almost the only contradiction between these writers, in whose accounts of political and other institutions there is a striking agreement. This is all the more remarkable when we bear in mind that Cæsar went but little beyond the German frontier and had relatively little to do with them. This description of the Germans may be profitably compared with Cæsar's account of the Suevi in the opening chapters of Bk. iv.
- 204 19 a parvis, from childhood. qui... permanserunt: i.e. "who are slowest to outgrow" their boyhood. Cf. Tacitus: 'sera juvenum venus, eoque inexhausta pubertas'; and contrast the premature debaucheries of the Roman youth.
  - 204 20 hoc: abl. of cause.
  - 204 23 nulla occultatio: like the English 'there is no hiding.'
- 204 25 renonum: i.e. small cloaks of hide. magna . . . nuda: abl. abs.
- 204 26 CHAP. 22. agri culturae: as to this chapter, cf. what is said in the Introduction to Cæsar and in Bk. iv. ch. 1, where it is shown that the soil was tilled, not by the labor of old men, women, or slaves, but by that of the fighting men. In other words, the Germans were, though "barbarians," not (in one sense) a barbarous people.
- 204 27 neque quisquam, etc.: this temporary and shifting occupation of land, as well as the holding of it by the family or clan (cognationibus), is characteristic of a primitive society. Cf. the Introduction, as above.

- 205 1 finis proprios, private lands.
- 205 2 gentibus, etc.: in the general gathering for this assignment each clan must have met by itself, and have been represented by its chief.
  - 205 3 quantum agri, as much land; agri is part. gen.
- 205 6 agri cultura: notice the use of the abl., here to be rendered for; § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478. 4 (422. N.<sup>2</sup>); H-B. 427. I, cf. 431.—ne... expellant: this was a flagrant evil in Italy, which Cæsar in his own consulship had attempted to check, following the precedent of the Gracchi. There the potentiores had already succeeded in ousting the humiliores, and enormous plantations, cultivated by slaves, had taken the place of the earlier peasant freeholds.
- 205 11 cum ... videat: this looks as if the land was portioned in equal shares to rich and poor alike. But on this question there are many and various opinions, and, at any rate, the words do not prove a division to each man as a freehold.
  - 205 13 CHAP. 23. maxima laus: so in Bk. iv. ch. 3.
- **205** 14 virtutis: § 385. c (234. d); B. 204. 2; G. 359. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 435. 4 (301. ii. 4); H-B. 339. c.
- 205 16 prope, near; consistere, to stay or settle. The infinitive clauses are in apposition with hoc.
- 205 17 cum . . . infert: note the force of pres. indic. with cum; cf. 199 18 and note.
- 205 18 magistratus...deliguntur: by lot, according to the Saxon Bede, from among existing magistrates. The Goths, Burgundians, Franks, and Lombards, on the other hand, had real kings.
  - 205 19 praesint, habeant: subjv. of characteristic.
- 205 21 principes... pagorum: these local and village chiefs, forming a sort of governing body, were probably the natural leaders each of his own district. They are said, however, to have been elected, no doubt for life, by an assembly of the tribe or nation (Tacitus, Germania, 12).
- 205 22 latrocinia . . . extra finis: as with the "cattle-lifting raids" of the Scottish Borderers.
- 205 25 ubi quis, etc., whenever any one, equivalent to the protasis of a general condition. This is the manner in which volunteers were mustered for the raids in question.
  - 205 26 profiteantur: representing an imv. form in the direct discourse.
  - 206 2 omnium rerum fides, confidence in anything.
- 206 3 qui...venerunt: again the perf. indic. in the protasis of a general condition, whoever comes to them for any reason whatsoever; cf. 202 20.

- **206** 6 CHAP. 24. cum . . . superarent: a clause of characteristic, such that, etc.; see § 535. a. N.8 (322. R.); G. 631. 2; H. 591. 4 (503. i. N.2); H-B. 521. 1.
- 206 7 superarent, inferrent, mitterent: asyndeton, i.e. omission of connectives.
- 206 10 Hercyniam silvam: the great wooded range extending from the Black Forest to the Bohemian Highlands.—Graecis: i.e. other Greeks, as Eratosthenes was a Greek, though not of Greece proper.
- 206 11 Volcae Tectosages, etc.: occupying the southern part of Gaul, about Narbonne or Toulouse. A portion only had migrated to Germany; or, perhaps, had stayed behind from an early Celtic migration westward.
  - 206 16 Gallis: indir. obj. of largitur, multa being the direct object.
- 206 22 CHAP. 25. iter: acc. of extent; cf. 1883.—expedito (dat.): i.e. to a man unencumbered with baggage.—non...noverunt: i.e. the Germans who lived there. So at the present day, in the mountain regions of Germany and Switzerland, distance is measured by "hours" (Stunden) instead of miles.
- 206 24 Nemetum, etc.: along the middle course of the Rhine, where it flows northward from Bâle.—recta regione: i.e. parallel.
- **206** 25 **Dacorum**, etc.: occupying the eastern and western portions of Hungary.
- 206 26 sinistrorsus: in reality it is the river which leaves the course of the forest or highland, bending abruptly to the right, or southward.
  - 207 1 huius: that familiar to the Romans, viz. western.
- 207 2 [aut audisse]: may be omitted in translation.—initium: as we should say 'the end,' eastward, where it is lost in the Carpathian range. Its extent, in a direct line, is stated as 1600 miles.
- 207 3 processerit: subjv. as an intermediate clause in indir. disc. for perf. indicative.
  - 207 4 acceperit: subjv. of characteristic.
  - 207 5 quae, such as, followed by the subjv. of characteristic.
  - 207 6 differant: subjv. of characteristic.
- 207 8 CHAP. 26. bos: this name seems to have been given loosely to any large-horned, unfamiliar beast, and even to the elephant; here it is perhaps the *reindeer*, which had anciently a wide-scattered range.
  - 207 9 unum cornu: this description is unintelligible.
- 207 10 palmae ramique (hendiadys; cf. note on 90 17), branching antlers, evidently comparing the horns to a flat hand with branches like fingers.
- 207 13 CHAP. 27. alces: this name is undoubtedly c/ks, but the description is widely unlike and quite unrecognizable.

207 15 crura . . . habent: for the same story, cf. Pliny, H. N. viii. 16, 39.

207 17 si... conciderunt: cf. 206 3 and note. By what tense should this perfect be rendered? The same construction occurs below in 1. 20, cum est animadversum, and in 1. 23, cum reclinaverunt.

207 21 omnes: with arbores.

207 22 ab radicibus, at the roots.—accidunt, cut into.—tantum ut, etc.: lit. 'so far that the perfect appearance of them standing is left'; translate so that to all appearances they are standing firmly.

207 26 CHAP. 28. uri: this name is generally understood to refer to the German *Urochs* (the primitive or wild ox, probably *buffalo*), said still to be found in the forests of Lithuania. Cæsar evidently describes a very different animal, with spreading horns like those of a reindeer or moose; but the whole description must have been derived from a confused account.

208 6 quae sint testimonio, to serve as evidence, a purpose-clause.

208 7 ne . . . excepti, not even when caught quite young.

208 12 CHAP. 29. Caesar, etc. This chapter directly follows ch. 10 in the narrative, the intervening passage being a digression.

208 14 supra: see 204 26.

208 15 ne... tolleret: as would be done by completely destroying the bridge.

**208** 16 barbaris: dat.; § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. d; G. 345. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371.—atque, and at the same time.—ut tardaret: which he did by making the bridge practically useless.

208 17 auxilia: i.e. which the Germans might send to aid the Gauls.

208 19 in extremo ponte. There seems to have been an island in the river at this place, so that the bridge was in two sections. The section between the island and the east bank was destroyed, and at what was now the end of the bridge (extremo), on the island, the tower was built. There was probably a redoubt, as usual, at the entrance to the bridge on the mainland; see Fig. 70.

208 20 cohortium: these were auxiliaries, as it appears in ch. 33 that he took all his legions with him.

208 22 cum maturescere, etc.: i.e. early in August.

208 24 Arduennam: the modern Ardennes.

208 26 D: an obvious mistake, possibly of some copyist. The distance is about 150 miles.

**208** 27 **Basilum**: afterwards one of the conspirators against Cæsar. — **si...possit**, (to see) whether he can, etc.: see § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 460. (b); H. 649. 3 (529. ii. 1. N.<sup>1</sup>); H-B. 582. 2 and a.

208 30 subsequi: notice the pres. for the future.

### BOOK FOURTH, 20-36. - B.C. 55.

THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.—What is called the First Invasion of Britain, though it marks an interesting date in history, gave fresh stimulus to Roman curiosity and ambition, and had a significant moral effect, was in itself an affair of small account. It was, in fact, only meant for a reconnaissance, or, perhaps, to open the way to further schemes. Towards the end of summer, after Cæsar had returned from his first expedition into Germany, he sailed across to the cliffs of Dover, coasted a few miles towards the west, and established a camp on the British coast. His cavalry, meanwhile, had been weatherbound in their transports, and then, after crossing, were driven back by rough winds, so that they did not even come to land. After holding an uneasy and perilous position for about three weeks, he returned to Gaul without accomplishing anything beyond a barren display of daring. This expedition was, in fact, only intended for a "demonstration." Yet, as the beginning of the national history of England, the event assumes great interest and importance, so that it has given rise to volumes of comment and discussion both in France and England.

#### READING REFERENCES ON THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.

Abbott's Julius Cæsar, pp. 97-106.
Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 11.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 12.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 375-383.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 312, 313.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Scarth's Roman Britain, chap. 2.
Tacitus's Agricola.

- 209 1 Chap. 20. exigua . . . reliqua: abl. abs.; translate by a temporal clause.
  - 209 2 ad septentriones, towards the north: cf. Bk. i. ch. 1, p. 144.
- 209 4 omnibus bellis: abl. of time. hostibus: dat. after subministrata.
  - 209 5 si . . . tamen, even if time should fail, still, etc.
- 209 6 fore: the subject is practically the clause si... cognovisset, he thought it would be of great advantage if, etc. In all languages the proper subject is often absorbed in some different form of expression; here it is properly 'that fact,' 'that result,' implied in the conditional clause. The idiom is the same in English except that we supply 'it.'
- 209 7 adisset, etc.: the pluperf represents the fut. perf. adieirt of dir. disc. Observe in this sentence that while Cæsar's action is given in the perf. (contendit), his reasons are in the imperf. (intellegebat, arbitrabatur); cf. note on 5 2. The conditional clauses si deficeret, si adisset, etc., are strictly fut. conditions carried into the past by the indir. discourse.

- **209** 8 quae omnia, all of which: § 346. c (216. c); B. 201. 1. b; G. 370. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 442. 2 (397. 2. N.); H-B. 346. c. For the order, cf. **17** 8, **183** 17 and note.
- 209 9 Gallis...incognita: probably they were not so uninformed as they seemed; cf. the relations of the Veneti, 174 19. neque enim: neg. of etenim, to be rendered with quisquam, for no one; § 324. h (156. d); cf. B. 341. 2. d; G. 498. N.3; cf. H-B. 311. 6. a and b.
- 209 10 illo: adv.; see Vocabulary. neque... quicquam, and nothing: observe that, as usual, the negative combines with the connective. eis: dat. after notum; § 375 (232. a); B. 189. 2; G. 354; H. 431. 2 (388. 1); H-B. 373. 2.
  - 209 11 Gallias: i.e. Celtic and Belgic Gaul.
- 209 12 vocatis . . . mercatoribus, etc., he called the traders, but could not, etc.
- 209 13 quanta...portus: these indir. questions follow reperire poterat. Notice that the imperf. poterat is used rather than potuit, referring to his repeated questions to the different traders.
  - 209 14 quem usum, what degree of skill. belli: cf. note on 71 3.
- 209 17 CHAP. 21. faceret: the subjv. here indicates a purpose or calculation in Cæsar's mind. The perf. ind. would refer only to priority of time; § 551 (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. 2 (520. i. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 4. a; see also 69 7 and note. The English idiom expresses this by some such phrase as "before making the attempt."
- 209 18 idoneum: this remark seems to have reference to his actual want of success, as appears later. Volusenum: one of Cæsar's tribunes. navi longa: see chapter on military affairs, 1x, and Figs. 61, 63.
- 209 21 Morinos, occupying the nearest point to Britain (Boulogne, Calais, Ostend, etc.): in clear weather the British coast is in sight from these shores.
- **209** 23 quam . . . classem: § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6. Veneticum bellum: see Bk. iii. chs. 7-16.
- 211 1 insulae: Britain was supposed to be an island, but the fact was not established, so far as we know, until more than a century later, when the Romans sailed around it.
- 211 2 qui polliceantur: a purpose-clause, but in English best expressed by the pres. participle.
- 211 3 dare: complem. infin., instead of se daturos [esse], a use not uncommon in Cæsar, and apparently somewhat colloquial; § 580. c. N. (330. f. N.); cf. B. 328. 1; G. 531. N.<sup>4</sup>; H. 618. 1 (537. N.); H-B. 593. a.—imperio: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385); H-B. 362.



- 211 6 Atrebatibus (see Bk. ii. chs. 4, 16, 23): the same people, it is said, had occupied Berkshire in England, whence the supposed influence of Commius.—ibi: i.e. among the Atrebates; § 321. a (207. a); G. 611. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 308. 2 (304. iii. 2).
- 211 8 fidelem, etc.: perhaps Cæsar says this in view of the fact that Commius afterwards turned against him; see Bk. vii. ch. 76.
- 211 9 magni: gen. of indefinite value; § 417 (252. a); B. 203. 3; G. 380; H. 448 (404); H-B. 356. 1.—huic: indir. obj. of imperat; the order he gave is the whole clause down to nuntiet.
  - 211 10 fidem sequantur, i.e. accept the protection of.
  - 211 11 se: i.e. Cæsar, the main subject, as usual in indir. discourse.
- 211 12 quantum (sc. tantum) . . . auderet, so far as opportunity could be given to one who did not venture, etc.
  - 211 13 auderet: subjy. of characteristic.
- 211 14 perspexisset: for tense, see § 485. e (287. e); B. 268. 3; G. 511. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491 and 2; the sequence of tenses does not depend upon the form of statement, but on the time as conceived in the writer's mind.
  - 211 18 CHAP. 22. superioris temporis, of the season before.
- **211** 19 homines barbari, being (as they were) barbarians. consuetudinis: § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. I (399. i. 2); H-B. 354.
- 211 20 fecissent: the statement of the ambassadors, hence subjv. on the principle of implied indir. discourse.
  - 211 21 pollicerentur: the same construction as excusarent above.
- 211 22 arbitratus: translate as present, as often with the perf. part. of dep. verbs.
  - 211 23 belli gerendi: obj. gen.; connect with facultatem.
- 211 24 has... anteponendas, that occupation about these little matters should take precedence of [the invasion of] Britain. For the number of occupationes, see § 100. c (75. c); B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. N.<sup>5</sup>; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. b.
- 211 25 iudicabat: note this and the preceding descriptive imperfects; cf. note on 5 2.
- 211 27 navibus: see chapter on military affairs, IX.—coactis, gathered from various quarters; [contractis] (which may well be translated), brought together into port. This must have been either at Boulogne or a few miles farther north, at Wissant. The port has never been satisfactorily determined, but it must have been between Boulogne and Calais, about twenty miles apart in a straight line, which is near enough to give a definite idea of the place (see map, Fig. 68). This whole coast has suffered enormous alterations since Cæsar's time, and everything is much changed.

- 211 28 duas legiones: the seventh and tenth.
- 211 29 quod . . . habebat, what galleys he had besides.
- 212 2 ex eo loco, etc.: this would be at Ambleteuse or at Calais, according to the location of the main port.—tenebantur quo minus, were detained from, the usual construction after verbs of hindering: § 558. b (317. b. N.1, 319. c); B. 295. 3; G. 549; H. 568. 8 (499. 3. N.2); H-B. 502. 3. b.
  - 212 4 equitibus: of these there were 450.
- 212 10 CHAP. 23. tertia... vigilia, at midnight. The date was very near August 26, when high water would be about half past seven P.M.; the ships, therefore, could go out at about half-tide.—solvit, cast off the ships: a technical phrase used like our 'weighed anchor.'—equites: these were to embark at Ambleteuse, as stated above.
  - 212 12 paulo tardius: they sailed after a delay of three days (ch. 28).
- 212 13 hora... quarta: this would be about ten A.M., an hour after high tide. The distance across is about thirty miles, and the landing was near Dover, where he lay at anchor till half past three.
  - 212 16 montibus anguste, etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore.
- **212** 18 dum...convenirent, until the other ships should come up: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. When is dum followed by the indic.? cf. **41** 2, **45** 21, **63** 21.
- 212 22 ut... postularent, as military science and especially seamanship require: rel. clause following monuit [ut]...administrarentur, enjoined that everything should be done promptly. Ut is omitted after monuit, as is often the case after verbs of directing or urging. The rel. clause has the subjv. because an integral part of the command.
- **212** 23 ut quae... haberent, since they have, etc.: the imperf. is used by sequence of tenses; § 535. e (320. e); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592. 1 (517. 3. 1); H-B. 523 and b.
- 212 25 his dimissis, when they were sent to their posts (observe the distributive effect of di-). aestum . . . secundum: the tide in this place would not turn east and north until about half past six.
  - 212 27 progressus: towards the north.
- 212 28 aperto...litore: thought to be somewhere near Deal and Walmer Castle.
- 213 2 CHAP. 24. essedariis: the essedum was a two-wheeled war chariot; see Figs. 121, 122.—quo...genere: i.e. including both cavalry and chariots, as described below, 219 7 ff.
- 213 3 consuerunt: to be translated by what tense? cf. 156 24 and note.—egredi: infin. for the more usual ne or quominus with the subjv.; cf. 212 2 and note.



213 5 alto: here a noun; see Vocabulary.

213 6 militibus (dat. after desiliendum), the men had to leap down.

213 7 oppressis (taken with militibus), weighted as they were. Notice in this passage the free use of participles and phrases to modify the main idea, first the abl. of place, then the abl. abs., then a participle agreeing directly with militibus.

213 9 cum . . . conicerent, while they (the Britons), etc.: a good example of cum and the subjv. describing the situation; cf. 7 5, 160 23.

213 11 insuefactos, trained to it, i.e. to charge to the water's edge.

213 13 generis: gen.; cf. 211 19.

213 14 pedestribus, on land, where the main strength lay in infantry.

**213** 15 Chap. 25. **navis**: subject of **removeri**; § 563. a (330. B. 2); B. 331. ii, 587. b; G. 423. N.<sup>6</sup>; H. 613. 2 (535. ii); H-B. 587. b.

213 16 inusitatior, quite strange.

214 2 latus apertum: i.e. the right, unprotected by their shields.—inde: connect with propelli ac submoveri.



FIG. 120. - AQUILA.

214 3 tormentis: see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Figs. 75, 94, 92.—ac: notice that this word always adds something with emphasis.

214 4 quae res, a manœuvre which: cf. 183 17 and see note on 17 8.

214 8 qui... ferebat, the one who carried: the antecedent of qui is the understood subject of inquit.— X legionis; again the splendid tenth distinguishes itself; cf. 116 11.

214 9 obtestatus, appealing to. Such prayers almost always preceded any formal address among the Romans, like "God save the Commonwealth of Massachusetts." The words would be Quod vobis feliciter

eveniat, desilite, etc. — legioni, imperatori: dat. of reference.

214 10 nisi voltis: a present simple condition; § 515 and a (306 and a); B. 302 and 4; G. 595; H. 574, 580 (508 and 4); H-B. 579, 582. 1.

214 11 ego certe... praestitero, I at any rate shall have done, etc.: § 478. N. (281. R.); B. 264. a; G. 244; H. 540 (473); cf. H-B. 494.

214 14 inter se, one another: § 301. f (196. f); B. 245. 1; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266. — universi, in a body.

214 15 ex proximis navibus, from the nearest ships. Omit [primis].

214 16 adpropinquaverunt: the subject is the soldiers, implied.

- 214 17 CHAP. 26. ab utrisque, on both sides: cf. utraque, 193 30.
- 214 18 poterant... submittebat: notice the numerous imperfects in this description, implying repeated or continuous action.—alius alia ex navi, men from different ships: § 315.c(203.c); B. 253.2; G. 319; H. 516.1 (459. i); II-B. 265.—quibuscumque signis: dat. after occurrerat; the antecedent noun and pronoun (eis signis), if expressed, would be dat. after adgregabat.
- 214 21 ubi... conspexerant... adoriebantur, etc.: a general condition, whenever they saw, etc.; cf. 180 22, 193 24, and notes.
  - 214 22 singularis, scattered soldiers.
- 214 23 adoriebantur, would attack: to express the repeated action. So, too, circumsistebant and coniciebant.
- 214 24 ab latere aperto: see 214 2.— in universos, upon the whole body. This word means not merely all, but all at once, or all together, and the like; cf. universi, 214 14.
- 214 26 speculatoria navigia: swift, light boats for reconnaissance.—
  quos...conspexerat...submittebat: another general condition, precisely like the one noted above (l. 21), quos equalling whomsoever, or if any.
- 214 28 simul [atque], as soon as. suis omnibus consecutis, and all their comrades had joined them.
- 215 1 longius, very far. quod equites, etc.: they were wind-bound at the upper harbor, 212 1-4.
- 215 3 fortunam: this is not a mere casual remark, but an expression of his belief in "his star," always an important factor in the greatness of a commander.
- 215 6 CHAP. 27. quae imperasset, what he should require (in dir. disc. quae imperaveris).
  - 215 7 quem . . . praemissum [esse] : cf. 211 5-11.
- 215 9 hunc, etc.: it is not unlikely that his imprisonment was a mere pretence.—oratoris modo, in the character of envoy (or spokesman).
- 215 13 ut ignosceretur, that their act might be pardoned: ignosco may take a dir. obj. of the thing, with an indir. obj. of the person; § 369 (227. f); B. 187. i. a; H-B. 364. 4; hence the word here may be either personal or impersonal.
  - 215 14 cum ultro, etc.: cf. 211 1-3.
- 215 15 bellum . . . intulissent: these barbarous people might well be pardoned for mistaking Cæsar's expedition for an invasion. ignoscere: for the omission of the subject, cf. note on 158 7.
  - 215 17 arcessitam, after they had been fetched.
  - 215 18 remigrare, to move back, i.e. from the strongholds to their farms.

215 21 CHAP. 28. post diem quartum quam, three days after (according to English reckoning): § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. 1; G. 403. N.4 a; H. 488. I (430); H-B. 550. c.

215 22 naves, etc.: see 212 1.

215 25 Britanniae: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376, cf. 362.—tempestas: from the northeast.

215 26 aliae . . . aliae, some . . . others.

216 2 propius . . . occasum: cf. 188 26.

216 3 cum... complerentur, since they began to fill: the imperf. shows that the action was not completed.

216 4 adversa nocte, in spite of the darkness.

216 6 CHAP. 29. eadem nocte: this was probably the night of August 30; the moon was then full at 3 A.M.

216 7 aestus maximos, very high tides. The ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were a strange phenomenon to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean. One is at a loss to understand why the Romans had not learned more about the tides in the war with the Veneti.

216 9 navis: obj. of compleverat. — [quibus, etc.]: an unnecessary explanation, and may be omitted.

216 11 adflictabat (intensive), dashed about.

216 12 facultas, etc.: i.e. chance to manage their own ships or help their companions.

216 14 funibus . . . amissis, etc., from the loss of, etc.

**216** 15 id quod: § 307. d (200. e); B. 247. 1. b; G. 614. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. a. N.<sup>2</sup>.

217 1 quibus = ut eis: result.

217 2 quod . . . constabat, because it was understood: the subject is oportere, of which the subject is hiemari, that it was best to winter in Gaul.

217 3 provisum: see note on 153 23.

217 5 CHAP. 30. principes: subject of duxerunt in l. 11.

217 9 hoc: abl. of cause, originally degree of difference; see note on 72 25.

FIG. 121. — GALLIC COIN.

217 10 optimum: in pred. agreement with frumento . . . producere.

217 11 factu: cf. 61 17.—duxerunt: see Vocabulary.—frumento commeatuque, corn and other supplies.

217 12 rem, the campaign. — his . . . interclusis, if these should be overcome, etc.: abl. abs. expressing condition.

- 217 15 rursus: not 'a second time,' which would be iterum, but back again from negotiations to hostilities.
  - 217 16 deducere: i.e. from their farms; cf. 215 18-20.
- 217 17 CHAP. 31. at Caesar: emphatic transition to Cæsar from what the soldiers feared and the Britons planned; cf. 166 21.
- 217 18 ex eventu navium, from what had befallen the ships. ex eo quod, from the fact that.
  - 217 19 suspicabatur, began to suspect.
- **217** 21 quae... naves, earum, etc., the timber and the bronze of those ships which, etc.: § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.
- 217 22 aere: the Romans used the word aes both for copper and bronze. These metals were more common than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust. They were employed to sheathe the *rostrum*, or beak, and to make the spikes that held the timbers together.
- 217 23 quae ... usui: the antecedent of quae is ea, the understood subject of comportari; see note on qui ... appellantur, 143 2.
- 217 26 reliquis . . . effecit, he managed so that they could sail (navigari, impers.) tolerably with the rest.
- 218 1 CHAP. 32. geruntur: § 556 (276. c); B. 293.

  i; G. 229. R.; H. 533. 4 (467. iii. 4); H-B. 559. Notice that this present is regular with dum when there is no contrast of time. Cf. the use of dum, 212 18. frumentatum: supine; cf. 79 1.
  - 218 3 pars hominum, some of the people.
- 218 4 remaneret: indicating peaceable intentions on the part of the enemy. ventitaret, returned from time to time: frequentative or iterative; § 263. 2 (167. b); B. 155. 2; G. 191. 1; H. 364 (336); H-B. 212. 1.
- 218 5 statione: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.
  - 218 6 quam . . . ferret, than usual.
  - 218 7 id quod erat, what was the fact.
- 218 8 aliquid ... consili (part. gen.), that some new design was on foot; infin. clause in apposition with id.
- 218 11 armari, to arm: in verbs thus used reflexively, English prefers the active and Latin the passive form.—paulo longius, some little distance.
- 218 12 premi . . . sustinere, were getting hard pushed, and hardly held their ground.

218 13 conferta legione (abl. abs.), the legion was closely crowded together, while weapons were hurled, etc. Observe the tendency of Latin to convey a description, as here, by a participial phrase.

219 2 una, only one. - suspicati, supposing: cf. 211 22 and note.

219 4 dispersos, occupatos: agreeing with nostros, understood from the preceding line.

219 5 incertis ordinibus (abl. abs.), because the ranks were unsteady.

219 7 CHAP. 33. ex essedis: these chariots held six men (essedarii) each besides the driver (auriga), and were drawn by two horses.

219 8 terrore equorum: objective gen., the terror that the horses arouse.

219 10 cum se . . . insinuaverunt, when they have worked their way between: the protasis of a general condition, ex essedis . . . proeliantur, being the apodosis; cf. 193 24. The perf. indic. with cum is here used as a protasis because a repeated action is spoken of. - equitum, the cavalry of the Britons. When the essedarii had dismounted, the British line was composed of alternate bodies of horse and foot.

219 12 illi: i.e. the fighting men spoken of above.

219 13 expeditum . . . receptum, a ready retreat.

219 15 praestant, exhibit. Cæsar was much struck with the efficiency of the German and British horse (see p. 190, ch. 12), and later made it the basis of important changes in the Roman army. The ordinary cavalry was never able to cope with infantry.



FIG. 123. - CALIGA.

219 16 uti... consucrint: clause of result following efficient. declivi ac praecipiti loco, a steep downward slope.

> 219 17 incitatos equos sustinere, to check their horses in full gallop (complementary infin. after consuerint) .- brevi, within a short space.

> 219 18 iugo: made of straight or curved wood, resting on the necks of the horses and holding up the pole of the chariot.

219 20 CHAP. 34. quibus rebus, under these circumstances: abl. of means. - nostris: dat. following auxilium tulit. - novitate: depends on perturbatis.

219 24 alienum tempus, unfavorable time; so suo would be favorable (cf. "one's own time").

220 1 quae . . . continerent: note the subjunctive.

220 4 quanta . . . facultas daretur : indir. quest. following demonstrayerunt.

220 5 sui liberandi: cf. 197 1 and note.

220 10 CHAP. 35. ut... effugerent: a result-clause in app. with idem, the subject of fore, namely, that if, etc.

220 11 effugerent, would escape: the future idea is given by fore.—equites XXX: these few cavalry would be of no service in an engagement, but only in pursuit. To chase and cut down the beaten army was considered an essential part of the battle.

220 19 ante: i.e. 211 5-11, 215 7-11.

**220** 15 tanto spatio, over as much ground: § 425. b (257. b); B. 223; G. 389; H. 417. 3 (379. 2); cf. H-B. 426. c.

220 22 CHAP. 36. die aequinocti, etc. (September 24, always held to be a stormy season), since the time of the equinox was near and his ships were unseaworthy. Napoleon III estimates that the return to Gaul occurred September 11 or 12. This would make the stay about three weeks.

220 26 eosdem portus, the same ports with the others.

220 27 paulo infra: the west current sets in on the French coast, while the east current is still running in mid-channel.

# BOOK FIFTH, 1-23. - B.C. 54.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.—The landing of the previous year had been only a reconnaissance. Cæsar now determines upon a regular advance and occupation. The earlier part of the season was chiefly taken up with naval preparations. The ships were apparently built on the inland streams, and the rigging and outfit brought from Spain, which was considerably in advance of Gaul in civilization. It abounded in metals, and, in particular, furnished the esparto, or Spanish grass, whose long, tough fibre made the best of cordage. Cæsar sails (by the reckoning of Napoleon III) on the 20th of July from Portus Ilius, at or near Boulogne, drifting first with wind and tide some distance to the northeast, then making his way to his former landing.

READING REFERENCES ON THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.

Abbott's Julius Cæsar, pp. 97-106.
Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 12.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, pp. 199-206.
Froude's Cæsar, last part of chap. 16.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 384-389.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 313-315.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 8.
Scarth's Roman Britain, chaps. 2 and 3.
Tacitus's Agricola.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 6.

- **221** 1 CHAP. I. L. Domitio, etc.: cf. 183 1 and note. The consuls entered on their office January 1, according to the official calendar; the real date appears to have been December 12. Cæsar's visit to Italy was therefore probably later.
  - 221 2 ut quotannis, etc.: cf. 172 22.
- 221 4 navis: see chapter on military affairs, IX. navis... curent, have as many vessels as possible built during the winter and the old ones repaired: cf. 61 11, 178 7 and note.
  - 221 5 modum formamque, style of build.
- 221 6 subductionis: the vessels of the ancients were usually 'beached' and not left at anchor. humiliores: agrees with eas, the understood object of facit: see note on 160 26.
  - 221 7 nostro: i.e. the Mediterranean.
- 221 8 id: sc. facit; § 319 (206. c); B. 166. 3; H. 388. 5 (368. 3. N.1); H-B. 222. a.
- 221 9 minus magnos seems to refer to the smooth ocean swell, compared with the angry 'chopping seas' of the Mediterranean.
- 221 10 iumentorum: not pack animals so much as horses for his cavalry, the lack of which he felt so seriously the year before; see 214 27 ff.
- 221 11 actuarias: fitted with oars as well as sails. The Gallic ships, it will be remembered, did not have oars. See Bk. iii. ch. 14.
  - 221 12 humilitas: as compared with the high-banked galleys.
  - 221 13 armandas, fitting out: see introductory note.
- 221 14 conventibus, proconsular or provincial courts. These courts were regularly held in the winter.
- 221 15 Illyricum: cf. 172 22.—Pirustis: a tribe long allied with Rome, inhabiting the valley of the Drina.
- 221 17 imperat: in the sense of to levy, to make requisition for, impero takes the acc. of the thing levied and the dat. of the person upon whom the levy is made.
  - 222 5 arbitros, arbitrators.
- 222 6 litem, amount of damages.—poenam: i.e. the amount of compensation to be paid.
- 222 8 CHAP. 2. Galliam revertitur: Cæsar's activity during these winter months had been remarkable. He left his troops in Belgium about January 1, travelled all through Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul, crossed over to Illyricum, and returned to his army again early in the spring. The distance was at least 2000 miles.
- 222 9 circumitis, having inspected: see last note on 144 13; § 388. b (237. d); B. 175. 2. a; G. 331; H. 406 (372); H-B. 391. 2. ftn.

- 222 10 studio, etc.: i.e. the energy of the soldiers in building the vessels under difficulties.
- 222 12 neque... quin, and are not far from the condition that; eo is antecedent to the vague relative idea in quin, etc.
- 222 15 Itium: Boulogne or Wissant, either of which agrees with the account (cf. Bk. iv. ch. 23, and note on 211 27).
- 222 17 XXX: a little less than 28 English miles. [transmissum]: omit in translation.
  - 222 18 satis . . . militum, enough soldiers : part. genitive.
- 222 19 Treverorum: a tribe reckoned as Gauls or Celts, but believed to be, in part at least, of German origin. Their name appears in the modern Trèves. This, their principal town (Augusta Treverorum), was long the seat of Roman power in northern Gaul.
- **222** 20 concilia, assemblies, held by a province or confederacy for consultation or law-making. Cæsar seems to have organized such assemblies under his own authority in Belgic Gaul after its conquest. veniebant, etc.: notice the force of the imperf. tense; § 471. f(277. g); G. 233.
- 222 22 dicebantur: the personal form is regularly used with the tenses of incomplete action.
- 222 23 CHAP. 3. Galliae: part. gen.; § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.
  - 222 24 ut supra demonstravimus: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 11.
  - 222 27 alter, the latter, Cingetorix, the son-in-law of Indutiomarus.
- 223 1 suos: i.e. clansmen, retainers, etc. Cingetorix offers to bring his nation under Roman authority on condition of ruling them himself as a subject or friend of Rome.
  - 223 3 at: marking the transition to the other man.
  - 223 4 cogere: with instituit, l. 8.
- 223 5 Arduennam: this hilly and forest region makes the natural frontier between Gaul and the Netherlands, and is the seat of the famous Belgian iron mines.
- 223 11 petere: used absolutely (i.e. without an object); ask his decision or assistance.—civitati, etc.: they were prevented by Indutiomarus from taking any measures for the general good, and so asked favors of Cæsar for themselves individually.
- 223 12 possent: the reason given by these Gauls, hence the subjunctive.
  - 223 16 laberetur, lit. 'fall off' (from obedience).
- 223 17 se . . . eius fidei permissurum, to put . . . under his protection.
  - 223 22 CHAP. 4. omnibus . . . comparatis, now that, etc.

- 223 28 quod cum, etc.: Cæsar seems to think this double dealing needs some excuse.
- 223 99 cum... intellegebat, considered on the one hand.—cum... tum: see Vocabulary; eius refers to Cingetorix, se to Cæsar.—merits eius, according to his deserts: § 418. a (253. N.); cf. B. 220. 3; G. 397: H. 480 (424); cf. H-B. 414.—magni interesse: § 417 (252. a); cf. B. 203. 3: G. 380; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 356. 1.
- 224 9 [suam...minui]: in app. with id factum, and may be translated, though not necessary to the sense.
- 224 3 qui... fuisset, while, etc.: § 535. e (320. e); cf. B. 283. 3. b: G. 634; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 523.
  - 224 4 hoc dolore, this grievance; properly, indignation at this.
- 224 6 CHAP. 5. in Meldis: these people were on the Marne, near Meaux. The ships were built here, probably for convenience of timber; they were low and of light draft (ch. 1), and proved too frail for the Channel waters (ch. 10; cf. Bk. iii. ch. 9, where sturdier craft are built upon the Loire).
  - 224 8 codem (adv.) = in cundem locum.
- **224** 13 loco, in the condition: § 429. 3 (254. a); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N.<sup>1</sup>; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436.
- 224 14 cum . . . abesset, while he should be away: a fut. idea (cum abero) thrown into the past by verebatur.
- 224 15 CHAP. 6. Dumnorix: as it appears, he had been kept four years under strict surveillance.
- 224 19 accedebat huc quod, to this was added the fact that: cf. 180 2 for a different construction after accedebat.
- 224 20 deferri: the present expresses the action as in process of completion, i.e. that Cæsar was making arrangements, or intended, or the like.
  - 224 21 neque, and yet not, a very common force of the word.
  - 224 25 timeret, diceret: cf. possent, 223 12.
- 224 26 religionibus, scruples, perhaps in regard to leaving the country or crossing the sea; among superstitious peoples such ideas are common
  - 225 2 territare: histor. infin.; see 27 10 and note.
- 225 3 fleri ut, etc., it was coming to pass that, etc.; or may be translated that Gaul was, etc., compressing the two clauses into one. esse: depending on a verb of saying implied in metu territare.
- 225 6 interponere: same constr. as territare.—ex usu, to the advantage.
  - 225 7 intellexissent: here represents the fut. perf. of direct discourse.
  - 225 8 deferebantur: note the force of the tense.

- 225 9 CHAP. 7. quod . . . statuebat: i.e. the severity shown to Dumnorix was proportioned to the favor and consequence granted by Cæsar to his state.
  - 225 11 longius, too far.
- 225 12 prospiciendum [esse], that precautions must be taken: depends on statuebat.
- **225** 13 quid . . . nocere, to do some harm to: quid is cognate or adv. acc.; § 390. d. N.<sup>2</sup> (240. a. N.); B. 176. 3. a; G. 333; H. 409. 1 (371. ii, 378); cf. H-B. 306. 2, cf. 387. iii.
- 225 14 commoratus: i.e. during the delay; cf. 71 8. Corus (or Caurus), the northwest wind.
- 225 15 omnis temporis, every season of the year; the windmills on this coast are said to have had their sails set permanently to the northwest.
  - 225 18 milites: i.e. the legionary infantry.
- 225 19 at: note its force and cf. 223 3.—omnium impeditis animis, while the attention of all was occupied.
- 225 24 si vim . . . iubet: informal indir. disc. The direct would be 'si vim facit neque paret, interficite [eum].'
  - 225 25 pro sano, rationally.
- 225 26 neglexisset: the tense depends on arbitratus, which is, however, essentially present in meaning; see note on commoratus, l. 14.
- 225 28 liberum, etc.: Cæsar takes no pains to conceal the violence of his acts. He had no authority over Dumnorix except that of the stronger.
- 226 7 CHAP. 8. pro tempore et pro re, to suit the time and circumstance.
  - 226 8 pari . . . quem, the same . . . as, etc.: i.e. 2000, as in 1. 5.
  - 226 10 Africo: the southwest wind.
- 226 19 sub sinistra: i.e. he had drifted to the northeast (see map, Fig. 73).

The voyage has been carefully calculated as follows: Cæsar weighed anchor at sunset (about 8 P.M.). A gentle breeze was then blowing from the southwest; but at the same time a tidal current was setting towards the southwest. Under the impulse of these two forces, the fleet kept a northwesterly course until about midnight. The wind then died down, and the current also began to set in the opposite direction (northeast). With this current the Romans drifted, and at dawn the British coast appeared on their left. They had passed by (relictam) the North Foreland, and were drifting farther away from the land. But at about this time (5 A.M.) the tide changed, and the current again began to flow towards the southwest. With its help, and that of the oars, the fleet now began to

move towards the land, aiming to reach the same point that had been found in the previous expedition to be the most convenient for debarking. Here they arrived at about noon. (von Göler.)

226 15 superiore aestate: cf. Bk. iv. ch. 23.

226 16 virtus, pluck, spirit. — gravibusque, and heavy-laden besides. — navigiis: abl. of means.

226 18 accessum est (impers.): the landing was probably near Walmer Castle.

226 20 cum: concessive.

226 22 quae...amplius DCCC, more than 800 of which: subject of visae erant.—annotinis, those built the year before.—sui commodi: pred. gen.; § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 366. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 447 (403); H-B. 340, here expressing purpose; cf. note on deiciendi, 194 11.

These were vessels that the rich members of Cæsar's staff had had built for their own use.

226 27 CHAP. 9. cohortibus X: i.e. two from a legion.

227 1 navibus: dative.

227 3 noctu: not nocte; see Vocabulary.

227 5 equitatu atque essedis: abl. of accomp. without cum; § 413. a (248. a. N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 474. 2 (419. iii. 1. 1); H-B. 420. — flumen: the Stour, which flows northeasterly through Canterbury. — superiore: the north bank is higher ground than the opposite.

227 11 ipsi . . . propugnabant, they themselves rushed out of the woods in small parties to fight.

227 12 testudine facta et aggere . . . adiecto: from the rapidity with which this agger was completed, it is evident that it was not the elaborate structure required in attacking more formidable defences, but rather a mass of hastily collected material. We may also infer that the British stronghold was only rudely fortified.

228 5 CHAP. 10. tripartito: i.e. following different roads.

228 7 extremi: i.e. the rear of the retreating enemy.

228 8 Atrio: who had been placed in command of the camp, 227 3.

228 12 concursu: referring to the violent driving together of the ships after they had broken from their moorings.

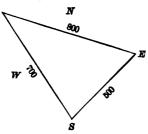
228 15 CHAP. 11. revocari: i.e. those who were in advance and out of sight.—resistere, to halt: i.e. those who were near.

228 17 coram perspicit: i.e. after a careful and thorough personal examination. Cæsar did not leave important duties of this sort to subordinates.—sic ut, etc.: i.e. he sees that the account of the disaster is true to the extent that, etc.; ut and similar words often have a limiting meaning; cf. tantum, meaning only so much, and ut tamen, 89 6 and note.

- 228 19 fabros deligit: a certain number of carpenters (fabri lignarii) was attached to the engineer corps of the army, but Cæsar seems to have had no regular engineer corps, except that a praefectus fabrum was on his staff. See chapter on military affairs, I. 4.
  - 228 20 legionibus: abl. of means.
  - 228 26 easdem quas, the same as: see 226 27.
- 228 27 eodem; i.e. to the British defences on the Stour; cf. note on 224 8.
- 229 4 a mari: probably from Cæsar's place of landing. The distance is reckoned, not in a straight line, but by the roads, as the army marched.
- 229 5 huic, etc.: "The brave and cautious prince Cassivellaunus (Caswallon), who ruled in what is now Middlesex and the surrounding district, formerly the terror of the Celts to the south of the Thames, but now the protector and champion of the whole nation." (Mommsen.) huic . . . cum reliquis civitatibus . . . intercesserant, had occurred between him and the other states; note the idiomatic construction.
- 229 8 CHAP. 12. natos in insula: they were not, however, indigenous, but a Celtic population following an earlier Iberian race.
- 229 9 proditum [esse]: the subject is quos natos [esse] in insula. pars: sc. incolitur.
  - 229 11 eis nominibus: for example, Atrebates and Belgae.
- 230 3 Gallicis: brief references to the Gallic customs of building are made in Bk. v. ch. 43, and Bk. vi. ch. 30; see also introductory chapter on Gaul and the Gauls.
  - 230 4 [aut nummo aereo]: omit in translation.
- 230 6 plumbum album: Cæsar is mistaken in placing tin mines inland and iron on the coast; it was just the other way. The tin mines of Cornwall were known to the Phœnicians from the earliest times. He does not say whether iron was used in the arts, which, if true, would imply a pretty advanced civilization.
- 230 7 exigua: the great mineral wealth of England was then unknown.
- 230 9 fagum atque abietem: another error; the beech and fir are both native to Britain.
- 230 10 gallinam, etc.: it is of interest to note that these domestic fowls were known to the savage Britons.
  - 230 12 frigoribus, seasons of cold.
- 230 17 CHAP. 13. ad Hispaniam, etc.: i.e. he places Spain west of Britain on the same side as Ireland. For this crude geography, cf. Tacitus (Agricola, 34), who says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. Cæsar conceives Britain as lying somewhat in the accompanying form.

230 20 atque, as: § 324. c (156. a); B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 657. 1. x. (554. i. 2. N.); H-B. 307. 2. a; i.e. the distance from Ireland to Britain is the same as that from Britain to Gaul.

230 21 Mona: the Isle of Man, or confounded with it; but Tacitus evidently gives this name to Anglesea.



230 25 ex aqua mensuris: the clepsydra, or water-clock, measured time by the dropping of fixed measures of water through a small pipe or aperture something like a sand-glass. — breviores: naturally, as this was in the summer.

231 1 hoc: sc. latus.

231 6 CHAP. 14. interiores: the ruder barbarians here described are probably represented by the later Picts, whose

name Picti (cf. picti, painted) has been thought to denote their woadstaining. The woad plant, Isatis tinctoria, akin to the common shepherd's purse, is still used somewhat for dyeing.

231 11 parte: § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. ii (419. ii); H-B. 443.

231 13 sed qui sunt, etc., but the children of these wives are regarded as belonging to the man to whom each maiden was first espoused.

231 14 quo (adv.) here stands for ad quos; § 321. a (207. a); G. 611. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 307. 4 (304. ii. 3. N.); H-B. 284. 10.

231 16 CHAP. 15. essedarii: see Bk. iv. ch. 33.

231 18 fuerint: for tense, see 181 14 and note.

231 25 atque his, and these, too. — primis: the first cohorts had the best soldiers; see chapter on military affairs, I. 7 (last part).

231 27 per medios: i.e. through the interval between the two cohorts.

232 11 CHAP. 16. [equestris, etc.]: this parenthesis may be translated.—cedentibus et insequentibus (abl. abs.): with eis understood, referring to the Britons. Whether advancing or retreating, the islanders were equally formidable.

232 14 proeliarentur: this clause is conceived as a result, and hence is expressed by ut with the subjv. instead of the usual construction with quod and indic.; cf. 224 19 and note.—stationes, supports. It will be observed that the Britons showed considerable military skill, and that their mode of battle somewhat resembled that of the Romans themselves. They used an open and flexible array, rather than the dense masses (phalanges) of the Gauls and Germans.

232 24 CHAP. 17. quoad: followed by the indic.; cf. 190 9 and note.

**232** 25 subsidio: abl. with confisi; § 431 (254. b); B. 219. 1; G. 401. N.6; H. 476. 3 (425. 1. 1. N.); H-B. 437.

232 27 sui conligendi: cf. 197 1, 220 5.

233 1 ex, directly after.

233 5 Chap. 18. uno loco: somewhere between Brentford and the mouth of the Wey. The details of Cæsar's march are here uncertain.

233 13 capite solo: a most hazardous depth. By the rule for modern infantry, a ford should not be more than three feet deep. But, says Merivale, "the swimming and fording of rivers were among the regular exercises of the Roman legionary. Though immersed up to his chin in water, he was expert in plying his hatchet against the stakes which opposed his progress, while he held his buckler over his head not less steadily than on dry land. Behind him a constant storm of stones and darts was impelled against the enemy from the engines which always accompanied the Roman armies."

234 1 CHAP. 19. supra: i.e. 233 1-3.

234 3 servabat, excedebat, etc.: note the imperfects, expressing customary and repeated action, he used to; cf. 225 8.

234 4 locis, regionibus: loc. abl. — locisque impeditis ac silvestribus: from this description we must infer that the British chariots were very narrow, to pass through the forest roads, and had high wheels, to go easily over rough ground.

234 7 cum...eiecerat: a general condition; see note on cum, 180 22. Other instances of general conditions occur in 193 24, 214 21, 26.

234 9 emittebat, confligebat, prohibebat: the subj. is Cassivellaunus.

234 10 hoc... prohibebat, by fear of this kept them [sc. eos] from roving too widely.

234 11 relinquebatur ut, the consequence was that.

234 12 discedi: impersonal.

234 13 tantum . . . quantum: correlatives; see Vocabulary.

234 14 noceretur: impers., governs the dat. hostibus; cf. notes on 18 17, 154 3.

234 16 CHAP. 20. Trinobantes: in Essex. Their chief place was Camulodunum, later Colonia Castrum, now Colchester. This defection was soon followed by the break-up of the Briton confederacy.

234 18 [Galliam]: omit in translation.

234 23 mittat: sc. aliquem.

234 24 his imperat obsides: see note on 221 17.

235 2 CHAP. 21. Cenimagni, etc.: these were petty populations of the vicinity.

235 4 oppidum Cassivellauni: thought to be the modern St. Albans,

- 235 6 oppidum, etc.: the Britons, like the Germans, did not live in towns, but used these strongholds simply for defence against attack.
- 235 7 cum, whenever, another general condition: cf. 234 7 and note. The preceding case refers to repeated action in past time, this to the present of a general truth. Notice the difference between these cases and the regular descriptive cum in narration.
  - 235 9 consucrunt: what tense in translation?
  - 235 14 multi: i.e. the people, not the cattle.
  - 235 17 CHAP. 22. supra: see 231 5.
- 235 18 regionibus: implying that Kent (Cantium) was divided into four recognized military commands.
- 235 20 castra navalia: i.e. the fortified camp on the beach, surrounding the beached ships; see 228 21-25.
- 235 28 neque multum aestatis: Cæsar had now been in Britain about two months (cf. ch. 23). The dates assigned by Napoleon III for his sailing and return are July 20 and September 21.
- 235 29 extrahi, protracted, i.e. wasted. Besides, Cæsar had just learned of the death of his daughter Julia, Pompey's wife, which threatened the dissolution of the triumvirate and gave him strong reason for wishing to be nearer home.
- 236 1 vectigalis (part. gen.): this was mere form, as no means were left to enforce the tribute.
- 236 7 CHAP. 23. commeatibus: has its original meaning; see Vocabulary.
  - 236 8 accidit uti, etc.: cf. 234 11 for a similar construction.
  - 236 10 portaret, remitterentur: subjv. of characteristic.
- 237 1 [et]: omit. prioris commeatus, etc., after the soldiers of the first trip had been landed.
- 237 2 quas: refers back to ex eis. faciendas curaverat, had had made: cf. 61 11, 178 7. Labienus had been ordered to build these directly after the big storm; see 228 20.
- 237 3 locum: i.e. Britain. caperent, reicerentur: in the same construction as desideraretur.
  - 237 6 aequinoctium: cf. 220 22 and note.

The remainder of this Book records a desperate rebellion of the Gauls. Its events are among the most critical of the entire Gallic War, and show to what extreme peril Cæsar had exposed his conquests by his expedition across the Channel. They serve, besides, to bring out in very marked relief the personal qualities of his several lieutenants. As a series of episodes, this Book is, in fact, the most interesting of the eight. The Romans did not visit Britain again till A.D. 43, in the relgn of Claudius.

## BOOK SEVENTH, 1-15. - B.C. 52.

GENERAL UPRISING OF GAUL. — The last three campaigns had been conducted wholly in the north, with a view either to crush the bolder and more restless northern populations, or to overawe the more barbarous Britons and Germans beyond the frontier. It is not quite clear why the discontented spirits of the south did not seize the occasion to join forces with the formidable Belgian revolt. At all events, they seemed quiet and submissive after their defeats in the earlier campaigns, and might have continued so but for the execution of Acco, the chief of the Cenones and very influential throughout Gaul, which had aroused the spirit of all the Gallic nobility, and the news from Rome, where the hostile aristocracy had long been waiting for some opportunity to check Cæsar in his career of conquest and call him home.

This opportunity seemed to offer in the disorders which followed the death of Clodius. Clodius was a bully and professional politician belonging to the popular party, a bitter enemy of Cicero, whom he had succeeded, a few years before, in driving into exile. He was killed in a street brawl on the 20th of January of this year by Milo, a ruffian of the senatorial or aristocratic party. For the time, all regular and orderly government was at an end, till at length Pompey was invested with dictatorial powers, and quiet was restored. The news of these events coming to Gaul gave the native leaders reasonable ground to hope that a new uprising might be successful. Their plan, it will appear, was, by a sudden movement, to cut off Cæsar's communications with his military posts in the north, which would thus be speedily starved into surrender. This plan Cæsar foiled by striking, with his usual rapidity, through their line, and through the neutral or hostile populations of Central Gaul, and so advancing upon his assailants with the support of his legions from the north. His campaign of this year was the most fiercely contested, as well as the most important and decisive, of the entire war.

N.B. — In this Book the editors have purposely abstained from grammatical comment except such as seemed necessary for the interpretation of the text, in order that the student might have one book of Cæsar's Commentaries, and that one of the finest pieces of simple narrative in literature, to enjoy without trying to see how the words were parsed. Grammar is absolutely necessary for Latin, but there is much in Latin besides grammar. Intelligent reading presupposes that, but does not always have it uppermost.

#### READING REFERENCES ON CESAR'S SEVENTH CAMPAIGN.

Dodge's Cæsar, chaps. 15-20.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 13.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 19.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 19.
Guizot's Hist. of France, Vol. I. pp. 56-65.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 7.
Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. II. chap. 12.
Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 323-340.
Napoleon's Cæsar, chap. 10.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 8.

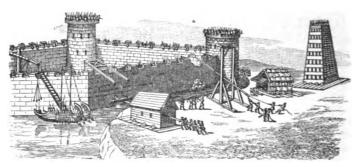


FIG. 124. - OPPUGNATIO.

NOTE. — This cut represents an attack both by land and water, in which no agger is employed. While in these respects unlike the attack on the Gallic towns, it shows very clearly some siege implements in active use.

- 238 1 CHAP. I. quieta Gallia: cf. 172 18. in Italiam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.
- 238 3 Clodi: see note above. ut . . . coniurarent (clause depending on senatus consulto): this was not an ordinary conscription, but a levy in mass, in which the entire population of Italy liable to military duty (the iuniores, between 17 and 46) took the oath of service. In addition, Cæsar orders a levy throughout his own province (tota provincia), in which were included Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Transalpina, and Illyricum.
- 238 7 quod videbatur: it naturally seemed to them impossible for Cæsar to quit Italy at this crisis (urbano motu).
- 238 9 qui dolerent: translate by pres. part., being indignant, etc.; the characteristic subjv. constantly has this meaning; cf. the use of cum. It approaches a causal relation, but has properly no notion of cause.—ante: adv. modifying dolerent.
- 238 11 principes Galliae: subj. of queruntur. locis: loc. abl. without a prep., as usual.
  - 238 13 Acconis: see introductory remarks.
  - 238 15 qui: sc. eos, i.e. some state to begin hostilities.
  - 239 1 capitis, of their lives; the sing. is idiomatic in Latin.
- 239 3 ut...intercludatur (see introductory note): depends on rationem, a plan (of campaign).
  - 239 9 CHAP. 2. Carnutes: this name is represented by Chartres.
- 239 12 cavere inter se, take security from each other. ne res efferatur: as the exchange of hostages would be a conspicuous and public act.

- 239 13 conlatis, etc.: an armed or symbolically armed council seems to have been the most binding form of public ratification of concerted measures. Here the standards were gathered in a sheaf and the oath was taken by this symbol of unity.
- 239 15 deserantur: it seems to have needed the most solemn forms of agreement to bind the discordant and jealous Gauls.
  - 239 19 CHAP. 3. Cenabum: now Orléans, on the Loire.
- 239 20 negotiandi: their business was money-lending, the farming of taxes, purchase of slaves or corn, and the like. Cicero had said, some years before, that business affairs in Gaul were wholly controlled by Roman citizens.
  - 239 21 constiterant, had settled.
  - 239 24 major atque inlustrior: i.e. than usual.
- 239 25 clamore: a sort of vocal telegraph, by which, as also by signal-fires, messages were conveyed, it is said, from towers 500 yards apart.
  - 239 27 Cenabi: locative.
- 239 28 ante...vigiliam: between nine and ten at night; the sending of the message thus occupying about sixteen hours. Arvernorum: i.e. the country now called Auvergne, a region always noted for the vigor and hardihood of its people, who now became leaders in the great revolt, and furnished its dauntless chief Vercingetorix.
- 240 1 Chap. 4. Vercingetorix: a name or title explained as meaning "very brave lord," and well calculated (says the historian Florus) to inspire terror.
- 240 2 principatum, the headship; see note, 7 15 and last note on 143 15.
  - 240-3 totius Galliae: i.e. all Celtic Gaul.
  - 240 5 incendit: sc. eos.
- 240 6 prohibetur: conative present; i.e. they try to prevent him. This discouragement of the elders was of evil omen to his enterprise from the start.
- 240 8 Gergovia: the chief town of the Arverni, on an eminence near Clermont.
- 240 9 perditorum: men of ruined fortunes, desperate. This is the usual course of things and the usual accusation. The well-to-do are rarely ardent patriots. When trouble comes, they either make terms or flee to the provinces.
- 240 15 Senones, etc.: several of these names are preserved in the modern Sens, Paris, Poitiers, Tours, Limoges. The league included all Celtic Gaul south of the Seine and west of the loyal (or doubtful) Hædui and Bituriges, who were drawn into it later on.

- 240 19 imperat, he levies, with acc. and dat.
- 240 20 quantum armorum, how many arms.
- 240 21 quod (interrog.): agrees with tempus, and before what time.
- 240 25 necat: i.e. the offenders.
- 241 3 CHAP. 5. Rutenos: these, as well as the Cadurci, lay between the Arverni and the Roman province. It was important, therefore, to secure them as a frontier defence.
  - 241 6 de consilio, by the advice.
- **241** 8 **qui**: agrees with the persons implied in **equitatus peditatusque**; § 280. a (182. a); B. 235. B. 2. c; G. 211. R.<sup>1</sup>; H. 397 (445. 5); H-B. 325.
  - 241 11 veritos: translate by a causal clause.
  - 241 12 quibus id, etc., who they knew had this plan.
- 241 13 ipsi: i.e. the Bituriges. —id eane, etc., whether they did this for the reason which, etc.
- 241 15 quod (adv. acc.), because (the reason for non videtur, etc.). This is a bit which goes to show that the commentaries, notwithstanding their aim at political effect, are substantially true. Cæsar was too great a man to deceive others except when he deceived himself.
- **241** 19 Chap. 6. virtute = vigor. This word is in Latin often used in a vague sense equivalent to our 'thanks to' or the like.
- 241 21 qua...posset: indir. quest. following difficultate, which implies doubt.
- 241 23 se absente: Cæsar knew well his own influence over his army. See also introductory notes. dimicaturas [esse]: sc. eas, i.e. the legions.
- 241 24 ipse, etc.: the most submissive Gauls at such a time were not to be depended upon, if they had the slightest chance to capture him.—eis: indir. obj. of committi, the subj. of which is suam salutem.
- 242 1 Chap. 7. Lucterius, etc.: an officer of Vercingetorix; see 241 1. He endeavored to rouse the border tribes against the Romans, but was checked by the promptness and farsightedness of Cæsar.
- 242 2 Nitiobriges et Gabalos: these completed the Arvernian frontier, the Volcae and Helvii being within the limits of the Province.
- 242 4 Narbonem, Narbonne, the chief town of Gallia Narbonensis, founded by C. Gracchus.
- 242 5 antevertendum [esse] has for its subj. ut . . . proficisceretur, and is followed by the dat. consiliis.
- 242 7 provincialibus: a portion of the Ruteni had been incorporated in the Province.
  - 242 14 CHAP. 8. quod . . . putabat: referring to Lucterius.
- 242 15 Cevenna: the pass crossing this range is about 4000 feet high.

- 242 16 durissimo, etc.: Pompey was put in authority February 25 (by the *old calendar*, which was now about six weeks ahead of the actual time); Cæsar, who left Italy directly after, probably crossed the Cevennes about the middle of January.
- 242 18 summo...labore: "these admirable soldiers were worthy of the genius of their chief," but such men as Cæsar and Napoleon make that kind of soldiers.
- 242 21 singulari...homini, a solitary wayfarer, to say nothing of an army.
- 243 1 CHAP. 9. at: marks a transition as usual; translate mean-while.
  - 243 2 usu . . . praeceperat, had suspected would come to pass. per



FIG. 125. - HOLLOW SQUARE (agmen quadratum).

causam, on the pretext (so elsewhere in Cæsar): his real motive was to join his force.

- 243 4 Brutum: Decimus Junius Brutus, afterward one of Cæsar's assassins. This same officer had command of the fleet in the famous battle with the Veneti; see 178 7-10.
- 243 6 triduo: this was a pretence, and was given out to conceal his real design.
- 243 8 Viennam, Vienne, a little below Lyons on the Rhone.—
  recentem: i.e. they were well rested and in good condition for a forced march.
- 243 11 hiemabant: his route would lie due north up the Saône along the eastern line of the Hædui. The distance of this rapid winter journey was above 300 miles.—quid: with consili.

- 243 19 de sua salute, affecting his own safety; opposed to any design on his forces.
- 243 13 reliquas, etc.: two of them were somewhere near Luxembourg, and six at Seas, about 140 miles apart.
  - 243 14 prius: with quam. unum locum: evidently Sens.
- 243 17 Gorgobinam: this was situated probably on the Allier, a southern confluent of the Loire.
  - 243 18 Haeduis attribuerat: this Cæsar mentions in the first Book.
- 243 20 difficultatem: the dilemma in which Cæsar finds himself is expressed by the two parallel conditions, si...contineret, ne...deficeret, and si...educeret, ne...laboraret.
- 244 1 CHAP. 10. stipendiariis: i.e. the Boii, who were tributaries of the Hædui.
- 244 2 amicis, etc., since his friends would find there was no help for them in him.
  - 244 4 ab, in respect to his supply of com.
  - 244 10 Agedinci: now Sens, the chief town of the Senones.
- 244 12 CHAP. 11. altero die, on the second day of the march.— Vellaunodunum: the position of this town is somewhat uncertain, but Cæsar apparently did not march directly towards Gorgobina, but made a detour towards the north in order to cross the Loire at Orléans.
  - 244 13 quo, in order that.
- 244 15 circumvallavit: the circumvallation consisted of a line of wall and trench surrounding the town.
  - 244 18 iter: i.e. to the relief of the Boil at Gorgobina.
- 244 19 qui tum primum, etc.: i.e. they had just heard of the investment of Vellaunodunum and, thinking the siege would last longer, were raising a force to defend their chief town about 120 miles off.
  - 244 20 eam rem: i.e. the siege.
  - 244 21 quod mitterent, to send, giving the purpose of comparabant.
  - 244 24 in posterum: sc. diem.
- 244 25 militibus imperat, he orders the soldiers to prepares the direct obj. of imperat being a demonstrative antecedent of quae, not expressed in Latin, and in English absorbed in 'what.'
- 244 26 contingebat, touched: i.e. led directly to. The town being on the north bank, the bridge would allow its defenders to cross to the friendly Bituriges.
- 245 3 desideratis quin, etc.: a loose use of the quin-construction; all, with very few exceptions, were captured.
  - 245 5 diripit: cf. the fate of Avaricum, ch. 28.
  - 245 8 CHAP. 12. ille: i.e. Cæsar.

- 245 9 Noviodunum: the position is uncertain. Cæsar's march, however, was certainly to the south up the Loire. This town is to be distinguished from Noviodunum, a city of the Hædui.
- 245 11 celeritate: we may supply in English a demonstrative as antecedent to qua.
  - 245 20 novi aliquid . . . consili, some new design.
- 245 22 omnis incolumis: see l. 15 above; construe with receperunt, got their men all back safe to Cæsar's camp.
- 245 24 CHAP. 13. Germanos: this force was much superior to the Gallic cavalry, and was destined to turn the battle in Cæsar's favor at many critical times; see chs. 70, 80. The tactics of the German cavalry are described Bk. i. ch. 48.
- 245 25 ab initio: the meaning of this is not clear. He had no German cavalry at the beginning of his campaigns. He may have obtained them after his struggle with Ariovistus.
  - 246 2 quibus, and these (the Gallic horse).
- 246 3 eos (obj. of perduxerunt): i.e. the leaders in the sudden movement described above, ch. 12.
- 246 5 Avaricum: the modern Bourges, an important town of 40,000 inhabitants, the geographical centre of France.
- 247 3 Chap. 14. longe alia ratione atque, in a way quite different from, etc.; by purely defensive or guerilla war.
- 247 6 anni tempore: i.e. scarcely yet spring, long before harvest; all supplies must be got from granaries or storehouses (aedificia), which might easily be destroyed.
  - 247 8 hos omnis: i.e. hostis.
  - 247 10 incendi: just as the Helvetians did B.C. 58.
- 247 11 hoc spatio: explained by quo, etc., i.e. the range of the Roman foraging parties. [a Boia]: omit.
  - 247 13 quorum: the antecedent is corum.
- 247 15 neque interesse, and it makes no difference [he says].—ne ...an, whether ... or.
  - 247 19 sint receptacula, serve as retreats.
- 247 90 neu, and lest, sc. sint from preceding clause.—proposita, offered to be captured by the Romans. The method of warfare here advised by Vercingetorix and afterwards consistently followed by him stamps him as a general of first-rate ability. We may fitly compare Fabius Maximus harassing and weakening the army of Hannibal, and the burning of Moscow by the Russians to drive out Napoleon.
- 247 26 CHAP. 15. urbes: Cæsar more commonly calls them oppida. Rome alone is always urbs.

248 9 solaci: part. gen. with hoc.

248 3 amissa, all they had lost (obj. of recuperaturos).

248 4 incendi, etc.: a double indir. quest., whether . . . or.

248 9 flumine: the city was just above the junction of the Auron with the Yèvre.

248 12 volgi: obj. gen.; i.e. his compassion for the poor people, who would be turned out of house and home in the winter, if the town should be burned.

# BOOK SEVENTH, 16-30. - B.C. 52.

### THE SIEGE OF AVARICUM.

For reading references, see notes at the beginning of Bk. vii.

248 15 CHAP. 16. longe, distant. — certos (cerno), regular.

248 16 in . . . tempora, from hour to hour.

248 20 etsi, etc., although so far as skilful planning (ratione) could provide (against this danger), our men took the precaution of going at uncertain times and in different directions.

248 21 ut...iretur: a clause of purpose, taking its construction from provideri, though not immediately connected with it. The verbs are used impersonally.

248 23 CHAP. 17. quae...habebat: i.e. the neck of the peninsula on which the town was situated (248 8 ff.).

248 24 intermissa, left free. - [a]: omit.

248 25 aggerem, etc.: see chapter on military affairs, VIII.

Between the Yèvre and the Auron was a plateau, some 1200 to 1600 feet high, with rather steep banks. As this plateau approached the town, it narrowed to a ridge only about 400 feet wide, with the Auron on one side and a swampy brook, the Yévrette, on the other. From the Yévrette to the Yèvre extended a morass. At a distance of about 300 feet from the city wall the ridge was intersected by a sudden depression like a trench, perhaps 50 feet deep (see plan, Fig. 88). Cæsar pitched his camp on the plateau just back of the ridge, a little over half a mile from Avaricum. Along the ridge, right across the intersecting ravine, he built the agger.

248 28 alteri: the Hædui, already wavering in their allegiance; alteri (next line): the Boii, a fragment of the defeated Helvetians.

249 8 ab eis: the source of vox, not the agent of audita. Notice again in this passage the invincible endurance of these soldiers.

249 14 ignominiae loco, in the place of (i.e. as) a disgrace.

249 16 Cenabi: locative.

- 249 17 parentarent = ut parentarent, the natural construction. As one might say irregularly in English, 'It is better to suffer anything than not avenge our comrades,' omitting 'to.'
  - 249 23 CHAP. 18. qui... consuessent: as described Bk. i. ch. 48.
  - 250 2 sarcinas, etc.: the regular preparation for battle.
- 250 5 CHAP. 19. difficilis, hard to cross; impedita, embarrassing; the two words express only different phases of the same idea.
  - 250 7 fiducia loci, trusting to the strength of the position.
- 250 8 [in civitatis]: omit. vada [ac saltus], fords and open spaces, where the way seemed practicable.
- 250 10 haesitantis, struggling in the mud or bushes. premerent: a purpose-clause, taking its construction from sic animo parati, determined; cf. 251 3, where the same words take a result-clause. The two constructions approach each other, but the first refers to future time, the last to present.
- 250 11 propinquitatem: i.e. the armies were separated only by the swamp. videret: the contrast is between the casual observer and the careful inspector (qui...perspiceret). prope, etc., on nearly equal terms; iniquitatem (next line), unfair advantage, showing that their offering battle was inanis simulatio.
- 250 14 quod . . . possent: follows indignantis, chafing that, etc. conspectum suum, the sight of them.
  - 251 2 necesse sit, etc., a victory must needs cost, with the abl. of price.
- **251** 4 iniquitatis: § 352 (220); B. 208. 2. a; G. 378; H. 456 (409. ii); H-B. 342.
  - 251 8 CHAP. 20. proditionis: see last note.
- 251 10 discessisset and venissent refer to the action in ch. 18.—imperio = imperatore.
  - 251 12 non haec, etc., all these things could not [they said].
  - 252 1 illum: connect with malle . . . habere.
  - 252 2 ipsorum: sc. concessu.
- 252 5 persuasum [esse]: impers., that it had been recommended.—qui se...defenderet, which was its own defence (ch. 19).
- 252 12 fortunae (dat.): as well as huic (referring to alicuius), to be construed with habendam gratiam, thanks were due.
  - 252 16 imperium: the same as regnum Galliae above.
- 252 18 quin etiam, may even. Distinguish carefully from quin introducing a neg. result. remittere, is ready to resign; in dir. disc., remitto, I resign. si = [to see] whether (indir. quest.).
- 252 27 nec iam viris, etc., that no one any longer has sufficient strength; viris is from vis.

- 252 28 posse: sc. quemquam, supplied from cuiusquam.
- 252 30 [Vercingetorix]: may be omitted.
- 253 2 quem: construe with ne . . . recipiat, subj. of provisum est, and as it basely flees from this spot, I have provided that no state shall receive it within its boundaries.
- 253 4 CHAP. 21. suo more: cf. Tacitus (Germania, 11), "si placuit sententia, frameas concutiunt.".
  - 253 5 in eo, in the case of him.
  - 253 6 summum: this word is often used where we should say 'a great.'
  - 253 7 maiore ratione, with bitter generalship.
  - 253 11 si . . . retinuissent: in app. with eo (that condition).
  - 253 14 CHAP. 22. genus: i.e. the Gauls.
- 253 15 atque . . . aptissimum: cf. Bk. iv. ch. 5; atque connects the descriptive gen. summae sollertiae and the descriptive adj. aptissimum.
  - 253 16 laqueis, etc.: see Fig. 124.
- 253 17 cum destinaverant, . . . reducebant : a general condition expressing repeated action in past time : cf. 234 7.
  - 253 19 ferrariae: so of the copper mines of the Aquitani.
- 253 25 cotidianus agger: i.e. the daily increase in the height of the agger. commissis malis, by splicing the upright timbers; these were the high corner beams of the towers, by which they were raised in successive stages, so that each increase in the height of the Roman works was met by a corresponding increase in the height of the defences. The towers on the walls were probably connected by covered galleries, one for each story.
- 253 26 apertos cuniculos . . . morabantur, etc. : this refers to the obstructions put by the Gauls in the way of the open passage-ways which ran through the agger, and which the soldiers used in carrying material for its advance and completion; morabantur has the force of blocked or obstructed. See Figs. 89, 90, 112, and chapter on military affairs, VIII.
- 254 2 CHAP. 23. directae, at right angles with the course of the wall. perpetuae in longitudinem, along the whole length.
- 254 4 revinciuntur, are fastened by beams some forty feet in length, running lengthwise of the wall.
- 254 5 intervalla: i.e. the two feet between each two of the beams in the lower tier (ordo).
- 254 7 ut idem, etc., in such a way that the same space (between the beams) is preserved, and that the beams do not touch each other; but, placed at equal intervals, the individual beams are firmly bound together by the corresponding stones placed between them; i.e. so alternating in the successive layers that beams rested on stone, and stone on beams.
  - 254 11 cum: correlative with tum below.

254 15 quadragenum: note the distributive, forty each.

255 1 introrsus revincta: i.e. the beams were mortised together at some distance from the exposed ends, making it next to impossible to force them apart; see Fig. 91.

255 4 CHAP. 24. frigore: it was still very early in the year, scarcely spring.

255 6 latum: as a width of over 300 feet is incredible, some have supposed that this is an error for longum; others, that the numeral should be xxxx.—altum pedes LXXX: it must be remembered that the height of the agger had to equal the depth of the ravine it crossed, and also the height of the Gallic wall. The latter may have been thirty feet.



FIG. 126. - PLUTEUS.

255 11 cuniculo: i.e. a mine running under the agger. It should be remembered that the agger was built largely of wood.

255 13 turrium: the Roman towers, mounted on wheels or rollers, and here referring to those flanking the agger;

and here referring to those flanking the agger; see Figs. 59, 89, 124.

255 19 partitis temporibus: i.e. in their

turn.

255 20 reducerent: i.e. out of reach of the fire.

255 21 interscinderent: i.e. they cut away the unfinished end of the agger, which was in flames. Thus the rest was saved.

255 25 CHAP. 25. pluteos: here the high wooden bulwarks (loricae) protecting each story of the tower.

255 % nec . . . animadvertebant, and noticed that the exposed men did not readily approach to give assistance.

256 2 accidit, etc., an incident occurred before my eyes, which, seeming worthy of record, I thought ought not to be omitted. Observe the use of the plural pronoun, the 'editorial we,'



extremely common in Latin.

256 4 per manus...traditas: i.e. his companions passed them to him to throw.

- 256 5 scorpione: this was a powerful cross-bow, for hurling darts or bolts; see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Fig. 92.
  - 256 18 palus: probably the watery valley of the Auron.
  - 257 3 CHAP. 26. suorum, their husbands.
  - 257 5 quos: refers to se as well as to liberos.
- 257 8 quo timore: the regular Latin idiom where we should expect cuius rei timore.
- 257 16 CHAP. 27. [intra vineas]: it would be impossible for *legions* to find room *inside* the vineae. Either legiones here refers to the storming columns, or intra vineas means within the line of the sheds, and so out of sight. Many editors omit the words altogether. expeditis, put in fighting order.
- 257 18 adscendissent: informal indir. disc. for the fut. perf. of the direct.
- 257 22 CHAP. 28. cuneatim, in a compact body; (lit. 'wedge-fashion') implying tactics like those of the Romans.
- 257 23 si qua... veniretur, if an attack should be made from any side; [contra] may be omitted; veniretur is impersonal.
  - 257 25 circumfundi (impers. pass.) = that men were pouring in.
  - 257 27 continenti impetu, without stopping.
  - 258 1 exitu: abl. of cause.
  - 258 3 quisquam: i.e. Romanorum. Cenabensi caede: see ch. 3.
- 258 10 [ut]: omit. procul in via, etc., placing his friends and the chiefs of the states at intervals for some distance along the road, he took care that they [the fugitives] should be separated and conducted to their own people.
- 258 12 quae...pars = ad eam partem...quae and refers to the persons implied by suos, and is explained by 250 7, where it is said that the Gallic forces were arranged generatim.
- 258 14 CHAP. 29. consolatus cohortatusque: the fall of Avaricum must have been a crushing blow to Vercingetorix, but he meets the disaster with a magnificent courage.
  - 258 18 errare si qui = that those were mistaken who, etc.
  - 258 19 sibi numquam placuisse: see 248 3-13.
- 258 20 quae... dissentirent: i.e. the states that had not yet joined the rebellion.
  - 258 27 effectum habere: see notes on 17 15, 147 16.
- 258 28 impetrari, etc.: i.e. he had a right to ask them to proceed to fortify, etc.; notice the modesty of these words, appropriate to the great disaster just suffered.
  - 259 5 CHAP. 30. re integra, before anything had happened (see ch. 15).

259 6 ut . . . sic: correlatives.

259 9 de reliquis, etc.: follows in spem, hope of, etc.

259 11 homines insueti: an appositive expressing concession; translate by although.

After the fall of Avaricum, Vercingetorix levies new troops and prepares to continue the struggle. Cæsar sends Labienus northward with four legions, and himself proceeds towards Gergovia. This city, situated on a high and steep mountain, was almost impregnable. Both Cæsar and the Gauls occupied commanding positions before the city. In the operations that followed Cæsar was far from being as successful as he himself had hoped or wished. It was the only city that defied his assault successfully. The prestige of Vercingetorix was so greatly increased by Cæsar's failure to take the city that almost entire Gaul joined the revolt. Even the Hædui, Cæsar's oldest and most faithful allies, plotted against him. For a time his condition seemed almost desperate, but he managed to save his army and at least hold his own until Labienus returned from the north. Cæsar then turned all his energies against Vercingetorix, who was daily becoming more powerful. In a cavalry battle the Gauls were defeated and withdrew to Alesia.

BOOK SEVENTH, 68-90. - B.C. 52.

THE SIEGE OF ALESIA.

For reading references, see notes at the beginning of Bk. vii.

**260** 2 Chap. 68. Alesiam: this famous fortress (now called Alise Ste. Reine) was on the territory lying just north of the Hæduan frontier. Its natural advantages — summed up in the succeeding chapters — are thus described:

"Alesia, like Gergovia, is on a hill sloping off all round, with steep and, in places, precipitous sides. It lies between two small rivers, both of which fall into the Brenne, and thence into the Seine. Into this peninsula, with the rivers on each side of him, Vercingetorix had thrown himself with 80,000 men. Alesia as a position was impregnable except to famine. The water supply was secure. The position was of extraordinary strength. The rivers formed natural trenches. Below the town, to the west, they ran parallel for three miles through an open alluvial plain before they reached the Brenne. In every other direction rose rocky hills of equal height with the central plateau, originally perhaps one wide tableland, through which the water had ploughed out the valley. To attack Vercingetorix where he had placed himself was out of the question; but to

blockade him there, to capture the leader of the insurrection and his whole army, and so in one blow make an end with it, on a survey of the situation seemed not impossible."—Froude's "Cæsar." See plan, Fig. 97.

**262** 2 CHAP. 69. loco: in app. with colle; cf. § 282. d (184. c); B. 169. 4; G. 411. 3; H. 393. 7 (363. 4. 2); H-B. 319. i.

262 7 sub muro, etc.: this sentence is an excellent example, at the same time, both of the natural precedence of the relative in Latin and of the freedom of all real language from grammatical trammels. The student should first translate it literally thus: Under the wall, which side of the hill (i.e. the side which) faced the east, all this space the forces of the Gauls had filled, and had carried along a ditch, etc. The meaning of this is obvious, but it is not at all in accordance with our English idiom. Indeed, it is not strictly grammatical in any language. After the student has seen what it means, he should try to put it into some form that is allowable in English idiom, say: Under the wall, the side ..., all this space the forces ..., and had made there, etc.

262 10 munitionis: Casar constructed a line of contravallation; i.e. a series of works entirely surrounding the town, so as to resist a sortie.

262 11 milia: acc. of extent; tenebat having here the force of pertinebat.—castra, etc.: in the remains of these works traces have been found of four infantry and four cavalry camps (see plan, Fig. 96).

262 13 stationes, etc.: in the daytime a mere picket-guard occupied each redoubt; at night it was necessary to station in them strong garrisons with numerous sentries (excubitoribus) on their walls.

262 18 CHAP. 70. supra: i.e. l. 4.

262 19 Germanos: cf. ch. 13.

**262** 20 **pro castris**: these were on the high ground south of the city (see plan, Fig. 96); **castris** is plural, = camps.

262 23 angustioribus, too narrow, either from unskilful construction or more easily to prevent the enemy's entrance. The gates referred to were in the stone wall (maceria); see plan.

262 24 acrius, with all the more vigor.

264 1 veniri . . . existimantes, thinking that an immediate attack is to be made upon them.

264 4 portas, town gates: these were closed, lest those who manned the exterior defences (the fossa and maceria) should rush into the town in a panic.

264 7 CHAP. 71. perficiantur: for mood, cf. 69 7 and note.

264 11 suae, se: i.e. Vercingetorix. — neu, and not, the regular way of continuing a negative purpose. We say 'and not'; the Romans said 'nor,' which is the real meaning of neu.

- 264 14 ratione inita, having made a calculation.
- 264 17 opus: i.e. the Roman works of contravallation, still unfinished.
- 264 21 copias omnis: not those that held the fortification east of the town (262 7-10), but the outlying pickets on all the other sides.
  - 264 26 CHAP. 72. pedum viginti: i.e. in breadth.
- 264 27 directis, vertical, the bottom (solum) being as broad as the top. The ditch was usually dug with sloping sides; the object here was (as it was probably shallow) to make it harder to cross. This was the interior line of defence against the town. solum: notice the quantity of the first syllable.
- 265 2 [id] may be omitted. hoc consilio, with this design, followed by the app. clauses of purpose, ne... possent.
- 265 3 quoniam . . . ne, that, since, etc., not, etc.—esset complexus and cingeretur are subjv. because integral parts of his purpose, ne . . . possent.
- 265 4 nec = et non, as usual. totum opus, the entire work, eleven miles in extent, according to 262 11.
  - 265 6 operi: take with destinatos.
- 265 8 eadem altitudine, of equal depth. quarum interiorem: i.e. the one nearer the town. campestribus . . . locis: loc. abl. describing the situation.
- 265 10 aggerem: here not the technical approach used in a siege, but a bank of carth serving as a rampart, on top of which was placed the vallum of stakes, twelve feet in height.
- 265 11 loricam, pinnas: these were to raise higher the defence of the vallum.—cervis: stumps with roots, or trunks with branches, projecting like stags' horns.—ad commissuras, at the joining, i.e. the place where these plutei were fixed in the agger, which would be at their lowest part.
- 265 12 pluteorum: the lorica was really a series of plutei, arranged side by side on a wall and bound together.
- 265 13 turris: if these were ten feet wide at the base, there must have been at least 400.—quae...distarent: not 'which were distant' (this would be indic.), but so placed as to be, etc., hence subjv.; cf. 61 13.
- 265 15 CHAP. 73. erat: with necesse; its subj. is the infinitives. materiari: i.e. to get timber; lignari would mean to get firewood.
  - 265 16 copiis: Cæsar had about 50,000 men.
  - 265 20 quo, in order that.
- 265 21 truncis arborum, etc.: trunks of trees or very stiff boughs were cut down; then the boughs were trimmed and sharpened at the ends, and then planted in five rows in trenches each five feet deep (quinos pedes), and perhaps one and a half feet wide.

265 24 huc . . . eminebant, those boughs being sunk in these (huc, i.e. the trenches) and being securely fastened at the bottom so that they could not be torn up, projected from the ground only with their branches.

265 25 quini . . . ordines: these five rows of chevaux-de-frise, intertwined so as to be continuous, covered a space perhaps twenty-five feet

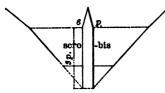


FIG. 128. - L:LIUM.

wide, so that, even with the help of a pole, an enemy could not easily leap over them.

265 26 quo qui intraverant, whoever entered within them; protasis of a past general condition.

265 27 cippos: i.e. boundarystones, so called jestingly by the troops; see Fig. 97.

265 29 scrobes, little pits, with sloping sides, three feet deep, dug in eight rows, arranged, as we should say, in diamond-pattern, or as trees were planted in an orchard (in quincuncem), so that each should be equally distant from the six adjacent. A stout, sharp stake was set in each, packed with a foot depth of earth, its point projecting four inches, the pit being then loosely filled with twigs and brush. This funnel-shaped trap for man or beast the soldiers called a 'lily-cup' (lilium); see Fig. 128. — paulatim . . . fastigio, sloping gradually towards the bottom.

265 30 teretes, round, like a cylinder, while the word rotundus means round like a ball. - huc, in these; cf. same word in 1. 24.

265 31 praeusti: to harden the point.

266 9 singuli . . . exculcabantur, a foot of each [stake] was packed down with earth at the bottom.

266 7 taleae: blocks of wood or stakes with iron barbed points fixed in them. Several of these hooks have been found in excavations on this site; see Fig. 129. - totae, their whole length, so that only the hooks projected.

266 10 CHAP. 74. regiones . . . aequissimas: the line of circumvallation (see plan, Fig. 96) was parallel with the works just described, and distant from it about 700 feet. was protected by a single ditch.

266 11 XIV milia: of course the works of circumvallation included all the Roman camps, and must have had a greater circuit than the inner line of contravallation (see 262 11).

266 12 diversas, facing the other way.

266 14 Omit the bracketed words.

266 16 habere . . . convectum: see note on redactas habuerunt, 17 15.





- 266 19 CHAP. 75. omnis: subj. of convocandos [esse].
- 266 94 [Blannoviis]: this name is doubtful.
- 266 % milia: dir. obj. of imperant, the datives being the indir. obj. The same construction is continued in the next sentences, where imperant is to be supplied.
  - 268 4 The bracketed words may be omitted.
  - 268 6 quo in numero: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 7, p. 174.
  - 268 12 pro, in consideration of.
  - 268 13 CHAP. 76. Commi: cf. 211 5-11, 215 7, 8, 220 12, 235 26.
  - 268 15 civitatem: i.e. the Atrebates. immunem, free from tribute.
  - 268 16 attribuerat, had assigned to him as a prince.
  - 268 19 moveretur: i.e. Gallia.
- 268 23 Viridomaro et Eporedorigi: these Hæduan nobles had been among Cæsar's most faithful friends and had received many favors from him.
- 268 24 Vercassivellauno: in this word, as in Vercingetorix, the prefix Ver is probably a title, like the modern 'Sir' or 'Lord.'
  - 268 25 his: indir. obj. of attribuuntur.
- 268 29 ancipiti, with double front, having to be fought behind and before.
- 268 30 cum... foris, etc., [in a case] where they would fight in a sally from the town, and on the outside, etc.
  - 270 1 CHAP. 77. at: to mark the change of scene.
- 270 7 crudelitatem: perhaps so in a Gaul, but in a Roman it would be constantiam.
  - 270 10 deditionis: a mere 'laying down of arms.'
  - 270 19 cum . . . est, I have to do with those.
- 270 14 animi est, etc.: the infin. clause following is in app. with ista. From the English idiom we should expect istud, but in Latin such pronouns agree with the predicate.
  - 270 16 offerant, ferant: subjv. of characteristic.
- **270** 17 atque, and yet. probarem . . . viderem: apodosis and protasis in a contrary-to-fact supposition; § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.
- 270 18 tantum potest: see Vocabulary. dignitas: i.e. of those who advocate making a sally.
- 270 19 vitae nostrae: depending on iacturam, to be supplied according to the Latin idiom.
  - 270 21 quid animi, what heart.
  - 270 22 propinquis, consanguineis: dat. of possessor after fore.
  - 270 27 prosternere, subicere: connected by nec with exspoliare.

- 271 2 animi causa, for the pleasure of it. illorum: the Gauls; his: the Romans. exerceri, are toiling.
  - 271 4 testibus, as witnesses, pred. appositive.
- 271 6 consili: pred. gen. facere: sc. meum consilium est, from the preceding.
- 271 7 Cimbrorum: see pp. 56-8. They did great damage in laying waste Gaul and Spain before they turned to Italy.
- 271 12 pulcherrimum: in pred. agreement with the two preceding infinitives. quid, etc., what was there in that war like this?
  - 271 17 quos: the antecedent is horum.
  - 271 21 finitimam: over the border, the Province.
- 271 22 securibus: the lictors' axes, the sign not simply of military rule, but of bloody execution (as a servile insurrection would be revenged).
- 271 27 CHAP. 78. illo: observe the emphasis.—potius, with quam.—utendum [esse]: impers., governing the abl.; § 500. 3 (294. c. N.); B. 337. 7. b. 1; G. 427. N.<sup>4</sup>; H. 623. I (544. N.<sup>5</sup>); H-B. 600. 3. a.
- 272 4 prohibebat: one of the cruel necessities of war. The wretched creatures must have perished miserably between the city walls and the Roman lines.
- 272 7 CHAP. 79. colle: this hill is southwest from Alesia, beyond the Brenne; see plan, Fig. 96.
  - 272 10 demonstravimus: see 262 4.
  - 272 13 concurrunt: i.e. the Gauls in Alesia.
  - 272 16 fossam: see 264 26 ff., and plan, Fig. 96.
- 272 23 CHAP. 80. Galli, etc.: the Gauls here adopt the German cavalry tactics.
  - 272 26 complures: i.e. of the Roman cavalry.
- 273 5 neque ... ac, etc. (perhaps a misreading for neque ... nec), and because neither a brave nor a cowardly action, etc.
- 273 8 Germani: for the fourth time in this campaign the Germans decide the day for Cæsar; cf. 260 9 and note.
  - 273 12 at: what is its force here? Cf. 272 4, 270 1, and note.
  - 274 3 CHAP. 81. atque, and even.
- 274 4 harpagonum: iron hooks fastened to poles, for tearing down the defences; see Fig. 124.
- 274 5 campestris munitiones, the works in the plain; i.e. the line of circumvallation in the Plain of the Laumes, southwest from Alesia; see plan, Fig. 96.
  - 274 6 qua = ut ea: introducing a clause of purpose.
  - 274 8 cratis, hurdles of woven twigs, to cover the trenches.
- 274 13 fundis librilibus: heavy stones fastened to a thong, by which they were hurled with great force.

- 274 14 glandibus: leaden bullets
- 274 18 his auxilio: two datives.
- 274 19 deductos: sc. milites. The thought is that men were withdrawn from the more distant redoubts to defend those that were in greatest danger.
  - 274 22 CHAP. 82. stimulis: cf. 266 7-9. scrobis: cf. 265 28 ff.
  - 274 23 pilis muralibus: large darts perhaps hurled by the engines.
- 274 26 superioribus: on the higher ground to the north and south (see next chapter).
- 274 29 fossas: this word should probably be fossam. It seems to refer to the ditch twenty feet wide; see 264 26 ff. and plan.—explent: coördinate with proferunt.
- 275 6 CHAP. 83. collis: see plan; the camp of these two legions was on the southern slope of Mont Rea.
  - 275 13 quoque pacto, and in what manner.
  - 275 15 Vercassivellaunum: see 268 23-25.
  - 275 29 CHAP. 84. multum valet, tends greatly.
- 276 1 quod...constare: as the attack is both from without and within, the Romans in their fortifications have enemies both in front and in the rear, and the shouting of those in their rear tends to disconcert them. As they face the enemy they feel that their safety depends on the valor of those who are defending their rear.
  - 276 4 CHAP. 85. idoneum locum: i.e. where he can see everything.
- 276 5 utrisque, etc., the thought is present to the minds of both parties that this is the time of all others best suited for the greatest exertion.
  - 276 8 si rem obtinuerint, if they (shall) gain the day.
- 276 11 iniquum... fastigium, the unfavorable downward slope of the ground (see 275 8). The Romans always aimed to have their camp where no higher ground could command it.
  - 276 13 agger: i.e. earth, stones, or anything else handy.
  - 276 15 occultaverant: i.e. the stimuli, scrobes, etc., described in ch. 73.
- 276 17 CHAP. 86. Labienum: he was encamped on the heights of Bussy. See plan.
  - 276 19 deductis . . . pugnet, to draw off his cohorts and make a sally.
  - 276 22 interiores: i.e. the Gauls within the town.
  - 276 23 loca praerupta: probably the Heights of Flavigny.
  - 276 24 [ex]: may be omitted.
  - 276 26 vallum ac loricam: see 265 10 ff.
- 277 1 Chap. 87. integros: i.e. troops that had not yet been engaged. The cohorts of Brutus and Fabius were probably of those that had been defending the works in the plain.
  - 277 2 eo, etc.: i.e. to the works on Mont Rea.

277 10 Chap. 88. ex colore: the purple or scarlet paludamentum. The bracketed words may be omitted.

277 12 de locis superioribus, from the high ground occupied by the Gauls.

277 13 declivia, the downward slopes. — cernebantur, were in plain sight.

277 14 excipit clamor: i.e. the shout of the combatants is taken up and reëchoed all along the lines. Notice the vividness and power of the following description, the short quick sentences, the absence of connectives, and the rapidity of the whole.

277 16 equitatus: who had been sent for that purpose as told above.

277 22 conspicati: agrees with the subj. of reducunt; sc. Galli.

**277** 24 quod: lit. 'as to which,' referring to the preceding sentence; § 397. a (240. b); B. 185. 2; G. 610. R.<sup>2</sup>; H. 510. 9 (453. 6); cf. H-B. 388. a. N.; translate and.

277 25 crebris subsidiis, constant service in relief parties.

278 8 CHAP. 89. Vercingetorix deditur: the fate reserved for this gallant and ill-fated chieftain was to be kept for six years in chains, and then, after being led in Cæsar's triumphal procession, to be put to death. Plutarch in his "Life of Cæsar" describes the surrender as follows: "Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, and adorning his horse, came out of the gate, and rode round Cæsar as he sat, then dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and remained sitting quietly at Cæsar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

278 9 si [to try], whether, indir. question.

278 10 capita singula, one apiece.

278 17 CHAP. 90. huic: i.e. Labienus.

278 25 Bibracte: loc. ablative.

From 1862 to 1865 careful excavations were made under direction of the emperor Napoleon III on the site of the works at Alesia. The discoveries that resulted were most interesting. There were found the remains of Cæsar's four infantry camps and of his four cavalry camps. Of the twenty-three redoubts, remains of only five could be traced. It is likely that the rest were mostly of wood, so that they had crumbled entirely away. The trench twenty feet wide remains in its entirety. Of the pits (scrobes) in which the sharp stakes were buried, more than fifty were discovered. They are all three feet deep, two feet wide at the top, and one foot wide at the bottom. Of course they do not retain the original dimensions. In the trenches were found a great number of coins, Roman and Gallic, swords, daggers, spear-heads, and the like. The result of these researches was a very striking corroboration of Cæsar's narrative.

CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN. — If Cæsar was merciless in war, he was wise and humane in victory. Even in the moment of the fall of Alesia, he uses his prisoners to make terms with the more important states (si per eos, etc.). His aim was "not to enslave the Gauls, but to incorporate them in the Empire; to extend the privileges of Roman citizens among them, and among all the undegenerate races of the European provinces. He punished no one. He was gracious and considerate to all, and he so impressed the central tribes by his judgment and his moderation that they served him faithfully in all his coming troubles, and never more, even in the severest temptation, made an effort to recover their independence."

Cæsar's own narrative closes with the great and decisive victory at Alesia. The short remainder of the story is told by his faithful officer and friend, Hirtius Pansa, in the Eighth Book. A rising of the Carnutes and Bituriges in the west, undeterred by the fate of Avaricum, was crushed by a rapid winter march across the Loire. The Remi in the north, who alone of the Gauls had been steadily true to Rome, were attacked by the Bellovaci under Commius, but the latter were crushed in a single battle, and Commius fled to Germany. The final rally of the patriot party was made at the stronghold of Uxellodunum, on a branch of the Garonne, in the southwest; but this was also reduced by a siege of extreme difficulty, and the one act of vindictive barbarity which stains Cæsar's record was inflicted after its fall by cutting off the hands of the desperate defenders who had held out to the last for the independence of Gaul. Cæsar then "invited the chiefs of all the tribes to come to him. He spoke to them of the future which lay open to them as members of a splendid imperial state. He gave them magnificent presents. He laid no impositions either on the leaders or their people; and they went to their homes personally devoted to their conqueror, contented with their condition, and resolved to maintain the peace which was now established, - a unique experience in political history."

# GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS.

N.B. — Titese lists are not intended to be exhaustive, and pupils may do well to add to them as they increase their vocabularies.

acer, sharp, violent.
acriter, violently.
acerbus, bitter, cruel.
acerbe, bitterly.
acerbe ferre, take hard.
acerbitas, bitterness, suffering.
acervus, heap.
acies, sharp edge, line.
[acus, needle.]
acuo, sharpen.
acutus, sharp.

alacer, lively.
alacriter, promptly.
alacritas, readiness.

aedes, fireplace, house.
aedificium, building.
aedifico, build.
aestas, heat.
aestivus, hot.
aestus (boiling), tide.
aestuarium, tideway.

aequus, even, level.
iniquus, uneven, unfavorable.
iniquitas, unfavorableness.

aequitas, fairness.
aequalis, equal.
aequaliter, evenly.
aequinoctium, equinox.
aequo, equalize.
adaequo, make equal.

ago, drive.
actuarius, fast sailing.
agmen, line of march.
ager, field.
cogo, compel.
cogito, think.
adigo, force.
agito, pursue.
examino, weigh.

alo, foster. altus, grown high. altitudo, height.

7
alius, other.
alienus, of another.
alieno, alienate.
alias, elsewhere.
aliter, otherwise.
alio, elsewhither.

· 10

animus (breath), soul, mind. anima, breath. animal, animal. exanimis, out of breath.

ante, before.
antea, before.
antiquus, ancient.
antiquitus, anciently.

ars, art.
articulus, joint.
arma, arms.
armo, equip.
armamentum, rigging.
armatura, equipment.

arx, citadel.
arceo, keep off.
co-erceo, restrain.
exerceo, exercise.
exercitus, training, army.
exercitatio, exercise.

augeo, increase.
auctor, responsible party.
auctoritas, influence.
autumnus, harvest season.
auxilium, help.
auxiliaris, helping.
auxilior, assist.

f3
cado, fall.
casus, fall, chance.
cadaver, body.
caedo, fell.
caedes, murder,

accido, befall.
accido, cut into.
concido, fall down.
concido, cut down.
incido, happen.
incido, cut into.
occido, fall.
occasio, occasion.

capio, take.
captus, capacity.
captivus, captive.
accipio, receive.
decipio, deceive.
excipio, take up.
excepto, catch up.

15
caput, head.
capillus, hair.
anceps, double-headed.
praeceps, head-foremost.

cerno, separate, distinguish certus, fixed, certain.
crimen, charge.
certe, surely.
[certo, decide by contest.]
certamen, contest.
concerto, contend.
decerno, decide by contest.
decerto, decide by contest.
decretum, decision, decree.
discerno, decide.
discrimen, decision.

circum, around. circa, circiter, about. circinus, compasses. circuitus, circuit. colo, till.
cultus, cultivation.
culturs, cultivation, culture.
[colonus, husbandman.]
colonia, colony.
incolo, inhabit.
incola, inhabitant.

conscius, conscious.
[conscients, being conscients.]
conscientia, conscience.
conscisco, resolve.
inscius, not knowing.
insciens, unknowing.

19

consto, be established (stand firm). constants, firm. constanter, firmly. constantia, firmness. consisto, take a stand. constituo, establish.

consul, consul.
consulatus, consulship.
consulo, consult.
consilium, plan.
consultum, decree.
consulto, by determination, designedly.
consulto, consult.

cresco, grow.
creber, thick.
crebro, frequently.
creo, make to grow, create.
[Ceres, goddess of growth.]

23
CUITO, run.
CUITUS, chariot.

22

cursus, course.
concurso, run together.
concursus, rush.
concurso, rush together.
decurro, run down.
excursio, sally.
incurro, rush upon.
incursio, attack.
incursus, rush.
percurro, run along.
succurro, run to help.

de, down from.
desuper, from above.
deinde, then.
demum, at last (farthest down).
denique, at last.
deterior, worse.

defatiscor, give out (cf. 'busted'). defessus, tired out. defatigo, wear out. defatigatio, exhaustion.

25

dīco, say.
indīco, ordain.
index, informer.
indicium, information.
indico, give information.
iudex, judge.
iudicium, trial.
[vindex, avenger.]
vindico, avenge.
dictum, thing said.
dictio, pleading.
dĭco, adjudge.
dĭcio, sway ('say so').
condicio, terms.

27

dies, day.
diu, long, all day.
interdiu, by day.
diutinus, long continued.
diurnus, by day, daily.
diuturnus, long.
diuturnitas, length of time.
biduum, two days.
triduum, three days.

28

dies, day.
cotidie, every day.
cotidianus, daily.
hodie, to-day.
pridie, the day before.
postero die, the next day.
postridie, the day after.
[perendie, day after to-morrow.]
perendinus (adjective).

29

do, give.
dedo, give over.
deditus, devotion.
deditio, surrender.
dediticius, surrendered.
reddo, give back.
trado, hand over.
donum, gift.
dono, present.

30

duo, two.
bis, twice.
bini, two apiece.
bellum, for duellum, war.
dubius, doubtful.
dubium, doubt.
dubito, doubt.
dubitatio, doubt.

duplex, double. duplico, double.

31

emo (take), buy. eximius, exceptional. exemplum, specimen.

32

equus, horse.
eques, horseman.
equester, of cavalry.
equitatus, cavalry.
[equito], ride.
adequito, ride up.
perequito, ride over.

33

ex, out.
exter, outer.
extra, outside.
extremus, last.

34

facio, make, do.
beneficus, well doing, beneficent.
facilis, easy (to do).
facultas, facility.
difficilis, difficult.
difficultas, difficulty.
difficulter, with difficulty.
factio, employment, party.
facies, face (the 'make').
factum, deed.
facinus, deed (usually evil).
artifex, artist.
conficio, make up.
perficio, accomplish.

fides, faith.
fidelis, faithful.
perfidus, faithless.
perfidia, perfidy.

35

fiducia, confidence. foedus, treaty. infidelis, unfaithful. confido, trust.

#### 36

finis, bound, boundary.
fines, country.
finio, set bounds.
finitimus, neighboring.
adfinis, connection.
adfinitas, connection (by marriage).
confinis, adjacent.
confinium, neighborhood.
definio, set limits, fix.

#### 37

fors, chance. fortuito, accidentally. fortuna, fortune. fortunatus, fortunate.

#### 38

fruor, enjoy.
fructus, enjoyment.
fructuosus, fruitfut.
fruges, grain.
frumentum, grain.
frumentor, forage.
frumentatio, foraging.
frumentarius, of grain.

### **39** fugio, *fly*.

fuga, flight.
fugo, put to flight.
fugitivus, a runaway.
effugio, escape.
perfuga, refugee.
perfugio, escape to.
perfugium, refuge.
profugio, flee forth.
refugio, run away.

#### 40

geto, carry, carry on.

res gestae, exploits.
[aggero, heap up.]
agger, carthworks.

congero, heap together.

suggestus, raised mound.

#### 41

iacio, throw.
iaculum, javelin.
iaceo, lie.
iactura, loss.
iacto, toss about.

#### 42

is, this.
item, likewise.
ita, so.
itaque, therefore.
iterum, again.
idem, the same.
ideo, therefore.
ipse, himself.
eo, thither.
ea, that way.

#### 43

iubeo, order. iussu, by order. iniussu, without orders.

#### 44

ius, right.
iudex, judge.
iudicium, judgment.
iudico, judge.
adiudico, assign.
deiudico, decide (between).
iniuria, wrong.
iustus, just.
iustitia, justice.
iuro, swear.

coniuro, conspire.
coniuratio, conspiracy.

#### 45

[lego, choose.]
legio, levy, legion.
delectus, levy.
legionarius, soldier.
lex, law.
[lēgo, assign by law.]
legatus, lieutenant.
legatio, embassy.
deligo, select.
diligo, love.
intellego, understand.

#### 46

[libet], it pleases.
libenter, willingly.
liber, free.
liberi, children.
libertas, freedom.
liberalis, generous.
liberaliter, generously.
liberalitas, generosity.
libero, set free.

#### 47

mane, in the morning.
maturus, early, ripe.
mature, early,
maturo, make haste.
maturesco, ripen.

#### 48

memini, remember.
mens, mind.
[demens], mad.
dementia, madness.
mentio, mention.
[memor], mindful.
memoria, memory.
moneo, remind.

reminiscor, remember. commemoro, mention.

#### 49

moveo, move.
motus, motion.
mobilis, mobile.
mobiliter, easily.
mobilitas, mobility.
momentum, means of motion.
commuto, change.

#### 50

nascor, be born. natus, birth. natalis, of birth. nativus, native. natura, nature. natio, race.

#### 51

navis, ship.
navicula, boat.
navalis, naval.
nauta, sailor.
nauticus, of a sailor.
navigo, sail.
navigium, vessel.
navigatio, voyage.

#### 52

nosco, learn.
novi, be acquainted with.
notus, known.
notitia, acquaintance.
ignotus, unknown.
nobilis, famous.
ignobilis, ignoble.
nobilitas, nobility.
nomen, name.
nomino, name.
nominatim, by name.
ignominia, disgrace.

cognosco, investigate. ignosco, pardon.

53

nuntius, messenger, news. nuntio, announce. denuntio, warn. enuntio, report. renuntio, bring back word. pronuntio, make known.

54

obses, hostage. obsideo, blockade. obsidio, blockade. obsessio, blockade.

55

[Ops], goddess of abundance. opes, resources. copia, abundance. copiae, resources. copiosus; well supplied. inops, poor. inopia, want.

56

[paciscor, agree.] pango, join. pactum, agreement. pax, peace. paco, pacify. pacatus, subject.

57

pario, acquire. parens, parent. parento, sacrifice to ancestors.

58

ex-perior, try. peritus, experienced. periculum, danger (trial). periculosus, dangerous. periclitor, be in peril. aperio, open. reperio, find.

paro, prepare. impero, order. imperium, power. pareo, be on hand, obey.

60

parum, too little. parvus, small. parvulus, very small. paucus, few. paucitas, small number. paulus, small. paulatim, little by little. paulum, a little. paululum, a very little. paulo, a little. paulisper, a little while.

61

[pasco, feed.] pabulum, forage. pabulor, forage. pabulatio, foraging. pabulator, forager. pater, father. patrius, belonging to a father. patronus, patron, protector. patruus, uncle (on the father's side)

62

pes, foot. pedes, footman (man on foot). peditatus, infantry. pedester, of men on foot. pedalis, a foot long, etc. impedio, entangle. impedimentum, hindrance.

impeditus, hampered. expedio, disentangle. expeditus, unincumbered. expeditio, expedition.

63

pleo, fill.
compleo, fill up.
expleo, fill out.
plenus, full.
plene, fully.
plerique, most of.
plerumque, for the most part.
completus, filled up.
expletus, filled out.
plus, more.
plurimus, most.
complures, very many.

also

plebs, the populace.
populus, people.
publicus, of the people.
publice, publicly.
publico, confiscate.

#### 64

porta, gate.
porto, carry.
adporto, bring in.
comporto, bring together.
deporto, carry away.
exporto, carry off.
reporto, bring back.
supporto, bring up.
transporto, carry over.
portus, harbor.
portorium, customs.

65

[putus], clean.
puto, clean up, reckon, think.
[purus, clean.]

purgo, clear, excuse. computo, reckon. disputo, discuss. disputatio, discussion.

66

pro, before.

probus, good.

improbus, bad.

prope, near.

propinquus, neighboring.

propinquitas, nearness.

protinus, straight away, 'right away.'

propter, near by, on account of.

propterea, for this reason.

67

prae, in front.
praeustus, burnt at the end.
praeter, along side, beside.
praeterea, besides.
praeterita, bygones.
prior, before.
primus, first.
pridie, the day before.

68

rego, direct, rule.
rectus, straight.
regio, direction.
regnum, kingdom.
regno, reign.
rex, king.
regius, royal.
[regula, rule.]
dirigo, direct.
directus, straight.
pergo, keep on.

sancio, bind.
sacer, sanctus, sacred.

sacerdos, priest.
sacramentum, oath.
sacrificium, sacrifice.
70

70 seco, *cut*.

sectio, a cutting, a lot. sectura, mine.

securis, axe.

71

sequor, follow.

secundus, second. secus, otherwise.

secius, less.

sector, pursue.

socius, companion.

ocietas, som,

72

[sero, bind.]
servus, bondman.

servio, be a slave.

servo, guard.

conservo, preserve.

servilis, servile.

servitus, slavery.
sermo, speech (connected discourse).
praesertim, especially (at the head

of the row).

similis, like.

simul, at the same time.

simultas, quarrel.

simulo, pretend.

dissimulo, pretend not. simulatio, pretence.

similitudo, likeness.

simulacrum, image.

74

species, appearance. conspicio, behold.

conspectus, sight.

conspicor, espy.
adspectus, view.
specto, gaze at.
exspecto, expect.
speculor, watch.
speculator, spy.

75

statio, station.

statio, station.

statim, forthwith. status, position.

statuo, set up.

Blatuo, set up.

constituo, establish.

stabilis, stable.

stabilitas, steadiness. stabilio, make firm.

----

sub, under, up.

superus, above.

super, over.

superior, superior. supero, overtop.

supra, over.

summus, | highest.

summa, total.

superbus, proud.

superbe, arrogantly.

77

tam, so.

tamen, nevertheless.

tametsi, although.

tandem, at last.

tantus, so great.

tantummodo.

tantulus, so little.
tantum, only (so much and

78

tango, touch.

contingo, touch, happen.

no more).

contagio, contact. contamino, taint. integer, untouched, whole. redintegro, renew.

79

tempus, time. tempestas, weather. tempero, control. temperantia, self-control.

80

teneo, hold.
tener, tender.
tenuis, thin.
tenuitas, scantiness.
tenuiter, scantily.
contineo, hold together.
continens, continuous (a continent).
continenter, without stopping.
continentia, self-control.
continuus, continuous.
continuo, forthwith.
continuo, continue.
continuatio, continuance.

also

tendo, stretch.
tento, try.
contendo, contend.
contentio, contest.
intendo, strain.
ostendo, show.
ostentatio, ostentation.

81

[tribus, tribe.] tribunus, tribune. tribuo, assign. tributum, tribute. distribuo, distribute. attribuo, assign. 82

utor, use.
utilis, useful.
utilitas, advantage.
usus, use.
usitor, use.
usitatus, customary.

83

verto, turn.
versus, towards.
versus, verse.
universus, all together.
verso, deal with.
versor, engage in.
averto, turn aside.
adverto, turn to.
adversus, turned towards, opposed.
adversarius, opponent.
animadverto, attend to.
converto, turn about.
reverto, turn back.
rursus, back, again.
transversus, across.

84

vetus, old. veteranus, veteran. inveterasco, grow old in.

85

vir, man. virgo, maiden. virtus, manliness. viritim, man by man.

86

volo, wish.
voluntas, will.
voluntarius, volunteer.
voltus, countenance.
voluptas, pleasure.
malo, wish more.
nolo, not wish, wish not.

# LATIN COMPOSITION.

#### I. COLLOQUIAL EXERCISES.

THESE exercises are put in the form of dialogues (conloquia) for rapid oral drill in forms and pronunciation. They are based upon the text and introduce its vocabulary, construction, and idioms. In the first few the questions and answers are given in full, to serve as models for those that follow, in which the questions only are given. In the latter the student will answer the questions in Latin after a careful study of the text. Questions should not be answered by simply 'Yes' or 'No,' but fully, as in the models. The models should be carefully studied and memorized.

#### I. A Letter.

<sup>1</sup> Ecce, aliquid novī habeō.

Quid est?

Epistula Latīna ā puerō quī hiemat in Ītaliā cum parentibus.

Gravisne est hiems in Ītaliā?

Minimē. Illīc nivem rārō vident et rīdet, ut est apud poētās, caelum.

Quam iūcundum! Et amoenane sunt loca?

Amoenissima. Illīc est Vesuvius mons, illīc multae urbēs clārae, illīc pulchrae īnsulae in marī sitae.

Quid agit puer?

Linguae Îtalorum et linguae Latinae puer cotidie operam dat.

1 See here, I have something new.

### 2. Cock-fighting.

Quae pūblica certāmina Athēniēnsēs īnstituērunt? Gallōrum pūblica certāmina īnstituērunt Athēniēnsēs.

N. B. A superior figure after a word refers to that word alone; when placed before a word it refers to the next two or more words.

Cūius consilio?

Themistoclis consilio.

Quid Themistoclēs vīdit cum bello Persico iter in hostīs faciēbat? Duos gallos vīdit in viā dīmicantīs.

Quos ad spectaculum convocavit?

Mīlitēs suös ad spectāculum convocāvit.

Quam ōrātiōnem tum habuit?

"Hī gallī non pro patriā et cēterīs rēbus dīmicant; dē nūllā rē dīmicant nisi dē victoriā."

Nonne 1 excitavit haec oratio animos militum?

Excitavit,2 nec impetum eorum hostes sustinere poterant.

- <sup>1</sup> Nonne: an interrogative particle commonly used when the speaker expects an affirmative answer to his question. Here 'Did not?' etc.
- <sup>2</sup> The usual manner of answering a question in Latin is to repeat the verb of the question for 'Yes,' and with a negative for 'No.'

### 3. Gladiators.

Quibus ex spectāculīs Romānī māgnam voluptātem capiebant? Gladiātoriīs e spectāculīs māgnam voluptātem capiebant.

Hāc in rē nonne cernēbātur bellicosum populī Romānī ingenium?

Non tam bellicosum populī Romānī ingenium quam prāva volgī indolēs.

Quā dē causā prīmo pūgnae gladiātoriae ēdēbantur?

Prīmō inter mortuōrum exsequiās ēdēbantur.

Posteā quī haec spectācula ēdēbant?

Eī quī magistrātum petēbant.

Quot paria Caesar simul in harēnam mīsit?

Trecenta vīgintī paria Caesar simul in harēnam mīsit.

Quae genera hominum ferē adscrībēbantur gregī gladiātōrum?

Ferē barbarī captīvī et servī sed multī etiam aliī.

Quālia arma eīs erant?

Varia et multa.

Sine dubiō permultī miserē periērunt.

Periērunt,¹ sed non nūllī dīvitiās hoc tam atrocī quaestū consecūti sunt.

1 Yes, or they did.

Quibus verbīs salūtābant Caesarem gladiātōrēs? "Avē, Caesar, moritūrī tē salūtant."

#### 4. The Horse and the Ass.

Quae nova fābula est haec?

Dē equō et asinō haec fābula est.

1 Quid erat asino?

Onere pressus asinus erat.

Cur non equum rogavit ut aliqua oneris parte se levaret?

Rogāvit, sed ille repudiāvit comitis precēs.

Quid tum accidit?

Asinus paulo post languore consumptus in via conruit et efflavit animam.

Quid de sarcinis quas asinus portaverat?

Sarcinīs agitātor equum onerāvit atque īnsuper pelle asinō dētrāctā.

<sup>2</sup> Quō animō equus hōc ferēbat?

Ille dēplōrāns fortūnam suam, "Quam stultē," inquit, "contempsī-comitis precēs!"

Quid sī asinō obtemperāvisset?

Tum non gravissimum onus portavisset coactus.

1 What was the matter with? etc. 2 Freely, How did the horse like that?

## 5. The Wonderful Deliverance of Simonides.

Quis erat Simonides?

Poēta Graecorum ēgregius Simonides erat.

Ubi habitābat Simonidēs?

Diū Cranone in Thessaliā habitābat, et ibi aliquando apud Scopam cēnābat.

Eratne Scopās quoque poēta?

Minimē, sed fortūnātus homō quī paulō ante in pugilum certāmine māgnam victōriam reportāverat.

Nonne carmen cantavit poeta in laudem victoris?

Cantāvit, et piō animō etiam Castorem et Pollūcem, certāminum patrōnōs, celebrāvit.

Nonne Scopas voluptatem e carmine cepit?

Minimē, sed improbāvit, invidiā commōtus, carmen, et recūsāvit dīmidium praemī promissī.

Nonne īra poētam movit?

Mōvit, sed is cēlāvit īram, et paulō post duo iuvenēs eum ēvocāvērunt.

Quī erant hī iuvenēs?

Castor et Pollūx; sed ille eos non vīdit.

Ouā rē non? Nonne ante iānuam erant?

Nēminem ante iānuam invenit, sed iam vērō horribilī post tergum fragōre conturbātur.

Quid acciderat?

Obrutus erat tyrannus cum convīvīs omnibus trīstissimā ruīnā, sed mīrificē servātus est pius poēta.

#### 6. The Roman Dinner.

1. Ubi prīscī Rōmānī cum familiā cēnābant? 2. Quandō mōs erat dominō cum hospitibus in trīclīniō cēnāre? 3. Quid rē vērā erat trīclīnium? 4. Quot convīvae in trīclīniō accumbere poterant? 5. Nōnne Rōmānī ad mēnsam cōnsīdere solēbant? 6. Quot trīclīnia erant? 7. Quot in partīs Rōmānī dīvidēbant cēnam? 8. Quae prīma pars vocābātur? 9. Quae altera? 10. Quae tertia? 11. Quod prōverbium erat Rōmānīs dēductum ab mēnsae mōribus? 12. Quī cēnam ministrābant? 13. Num¹ dīvitēs ēlegantēsque Rōmānī cibum digitīs capiēbant?

I Just as nonne puts a question in the form for an affirmative answer, — 'Is he not?' 'Do they not?' etc., — so num usually looks to a negative reply, — 'He is n', is he?' 'They don't, do they?' etc.; see notes, 52 7.

## 7. Augustus and the Veteran.

1. In equō an pedibus per urbem īre solēbat Augustus? 2. Quō modō adeuntīs excipiēbat? 3. Quis eum convēnit? 4. Quā dē causā ille auxilium ab Imperātōre petīvit? 5. Quem patrōnum ēlēgit Augustus? 6. Quid tum veterānus exclāmāvit? 7. Nōnne est mōtus hīs verbīs Imperātor? 8. Quis dēmum patrōnus veterānī factus est?

# 8. The Wolf and the Dog.

Eratne lupus bene sagīnātus?
 Ubi canis habitābat?
 Num famē canis ēnecābātur?
 Nonne lupo licuit eādem fēlīcitāte

fruī? 5. Dum ūnā eunt, quid animadvertit lupus? 6. Quid quaesīvit lupus? 7. Quā dē causā interdiū canem adligābant? 8. Quid dīxit lupus postquam vestīgia collāris vīdit?

### q. The Lion and the Mouse.

1. Quid mūsculī petulantēs faciēbant? 2. Quō modō mūsculus excitāvit leōnem dormientem? 3. Nōnne¹ leō eum comprehendit? 4. Num¹ leō eum dēvorāvit? 5. Paulō post quid leōnī accidit, nōn satis cautē praedam vestīgantī? 6. Potuitne sē līberāre? 7. Quis procul eum rugientem audīvit? 8. Cūr grātō animō erat mūsculus in leōnem? 9. Quem ad modum leōnem līberāvit mūsculus? 10. Nōnne leō praeclārum misericordiae suae praemium reportāvit?

1 See 6, foot-note 1.

## 10. The Dancing Horses.

1. Ubi erat Sybaris? 2. Corinthiōsne incolae lūxuriā ferē superābant? 3. Nōnne artem bellicam contemnēbant? 4. Quibus rēbus vacābant? 5. Quam ad exercitātiōnem lepidē equōs īnstituerant? 6. Quī erant fīnitimī Sybarītīs? 7. Quid Crotōniātae, cum bellum gererent cum illīs, in aciem sēcum dūxērunt? 8. Quam diū silēbant illī? 9. Quandō cantāvērunt numerōs ad saltandum aptōs? 10. Hīs audītīs, nōnne equī Sybarītārum saltāre coepērunt? 11. Quid dominīs accidit?

## 11. Augustus and the Raven.

1. Quō annō Antōnium superāvit Augustus? 2. Post hanc victōriam reportātam,¹ quis occurrit illī triumphantī? 3. Quālem avem homō manū tenēbat? 4. Quid dīxit corvus? 5. Quantī Caesar officiōsam avem ēmit? 6. Quās aliās avīs similiter salūtantīs ēmit? 7. Quis hīs exemplīs commōtus est ut ad eandem vōcem corvum īnstitueret? 8. Quid saepe avī nōn respondentī dīcēbat? 9. Eratne hōc dictum Rōmānīs in prōverbiō? 10. Postquam corvus suum illud didicit, quō properat sūtor? 11. Cūr ad eum properat? 12. Audītā vōce, quid dīxit ille? 13. Quid deinde ēvēnit? 14. Nōnne haec rēs rīsum excussit Augustō? 15. Quantī tum avem sūtōris ēmit?

1 Perf. partic., but in English was won.

### 12, 13. The Wolf and the Lamb.

Quō lupus et āgnus vēnerant?
 Cūr illūc vēnerant?
 Ubi lupus stābat?
 Quid improbus latrō quae rēbat?
 Quid latrō āgnō dīxit?
 Quid inde respondit āgnus?
 Quid deinde lupus dīxit?
 Quid deinde āgnus?
 Quid postrēmō lupus dīxit?
 Quid ad extrēmum lupus āgnō fēcit¹?
 Quis poēta hanc fābulam nārrat?

1 In English do with, or to.

### 14. The Rivalry of Two Painters.

1. Quō saeculō Zeuxis et Parrhasius flōrēbant? 2. Erantne hī virī poētae? 3. Quod certāmen hī quondam īnstituērunt? 4. Quam pictūram Zeuxis pīnxerat? 5. Exaequāvitne nātūrae vēritātem? 6. Quid Parrhasius pīnxerat? 7. Quod cum Zeuxis vidēret, quid putāvit? 8. Quid proinde flāgitāvit? 9. Quid respondit Parrhasius? 10. Quis palmam accēpit? 11. Cūr Zeuxis illī palmam dedit?

# 15. The Fox and the Monkey.

1. Quam bellē sīmia in bēstiārum conventū saltāvit? 2. Nonne stultissimum hoc erat? 3. Quid prīmum volpēs ēgit? 4. Quibus verbīs tentāvit sīmiam? 5. Quid interrogāvit sīmia? 6. Ubi thēsaurum abditum esse volpēs dīxit? 7. Ā quō thēsaurus volpī erat indicātus? 8. Ad quem thēsaurus vidēbātur pertinēre? 9. Quid sīmia respondit verbīs volpis? 10. Quō sīmia abdūcī volēbat? 11. Quam ob rem clandestīnīs sēmitīs volpēs sīmiam abdūcēbat? 12. Quid, tōtā silvā peragrātā, volpēs monstrāvit? 13. Quid inde volpēs dīxit? 14. Nonne illūc penetrābat sīmia? 15. Num quidquam invēnit? 16. Quid deinde subitō accidit? 17. Quid sērō sēnsit sīmia? 18. Cūr volpēs bēstiās convocāvit? 19. Quid eīs dīxit?

#### 16. The River-God and the Golden Axe.

Quis nāvem resarciēbat?
 Ubi erat nāvis?
 Quem ad modum faber secūrim āmīsit?
 Quō modō ferēbat iactūram?
 Quis audīvit miserābilīs ēius vōcēs?
 Quid interrogāvit deus fluvī?

7. Quid respondit faber? 8. Hīs audītīs quid deus fēcit? 9. Paulō post revertēns quid dextrā gerēbat? 10. Nōnne haec erat secūris quam āmīserat faber? 11. Cūius generis erat haec secūris? 12. Cūius generis erat altera secūris quam deus reportāvit et exhibuit fabrō? 13. Negāvitne vir probus hās esse suās? 14. Postrēmō quālem secūrim deus reportāvit? 15. Nōnne hanc laetus āgnōvit ille? 16. Quid proinde fēcit deus hāc probitāte dēlectātus? 17. Quō modō alius quīdam operam dedit ut similī locuplētārētur fortūnā? 18. Nōnne eī adparuit deus? 19. Cum auream ostenderet secūrim, quid ille respondit? 20. Quid tum deus īrātus dixit? 21. Hīs dictīs quō īvit? 22. Nōnne ille oleum et operam perdidit?

### II. Exercises for Oral and Written Translation.

## 17. The Husbandman and his Sons. (Oral.)

Subject Nominative, § 339 (173); B. 166; G. 203; H. 387 (368); H-B. 335. Predicate Noun, § 283 (176, 185); B. 167-8; G. 205-6, 325; H. 393 (362); H-B. 230, 317.

Accusative, Direct Object, § 387 (237); B. 172; G. 330; H. 404 (371); H-B. 390, 394.

1. The husbandman was an old man. 2. The husbandman called his sons together. 3. Sons sometimes quarrel. 4. The sons bring a bundle of twigs. 5. They could not break this bundle. 6. The old man distributed the twigs, one to each. 7. These were quickly broken. 8. Harmony is strong. 9. Discord is weak.

## 18. Demosthenes and the Judges. (Oral.)

Apposition, § 281, 282 (183-4); B. 169; G. 320-1; H. 393 (363-4); H-B. 317, 319.

Predicate Adjective, § 286, 287 (186-7); B. 234; G. 211; H. 394-5 (438-9); H-B. 317, 319, 323.

Dative, Indirect Object, § 363-6 (225-6); B. 187; G. 345-6; H. 424 ff. (384 ff.); H-B. 365, 362.

1. Demosthenes was famous. 2. Demosthenes, the orator, was defending a certain man. 3. The jury (iudices) was not very attentive. 4. "Give me your attention," said he. 5. "I will tell you a good story. 6. A young man<sup>1</sup> was riding on an ass from Athens to Megara. 7. In the middle of the journey the heat became severe.

8. The trees did not afford shade to the youth. 9. So<sup>2</sup> he sat down in the shade of the animal. 10. But the driver forbade this. 11. 'You hired the ass,' said he, 'but not the shadow.' 12. A quarrel arose between them. 13. They fought even with their fists. 14. At last they went to court." 15. The jury was now listening attentively. 16. But Demosthenes suddenly left the stand. 17. The jury asked for the rest of the story. 18. The orator did not tell it to them. 19. They were not willing 8 to listen to the case of a man in danger of his life.

1 Latin, 'was being carried by.' 2 itaque. 8 Form of vel5 with the complementary infin.

### 19. The Death of Pompey. (Oral.)

Ablative Absolute Denoting Time, § 419 (255); B. 227; G. 409-10; H. 489 (431); H-B. 421.

Ablative of Degree of Difference, § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H-B. 424.

I. Pompey, after giving up his plan of going to Syria, put <sup>1</sup> a vast sum of money aboard his ships. 2. When he had put two thousand armed men on board, he came to Pelusium. 3. King Ptolemy was a boy in years. 4. He was waging war with his sister Cleopatra. 5. She was a <sup>2</sup> few years older (senior). 6. A few months before, he had driven her from the throne. 7. The camp of Cleopatra was not far distant from his camp. 8. Ptolemy, the king, did not receive Pompey, his father's friend. 9. Pompey's messengers, after their duty was done, talked very kindly to the soldiers of the king. 10. When this was known, the king's friends began to fear Pompey. 11. They commanded Pompey to come to the king. 12. <sup>8</sup> A few hours later Pompey was killed.

<sup>1</sup> Latin, 'a great weight of bronze.' <sup>2</sup> Latin, 'older by a few years.'
<sup>8</sup> Latin, 'afterwards (post) by a few hours (hora).'

## 20. Niobe and her Children. (Written.)

1. Niobe, a most beautiful woman, was the wife of Amphion, the king of Thebes. 2. She was not only very beautiful, but also very proud, because she had seven sons and seven daughters. 3. Once, when the Thebans were preparing sacrifices to Latona, the mother

of Apollo and Diana, Niobe said, "Latona has only two children, I have fourteen. Why don't you make sacrifice to me?" 4. ¹ On hearing these words, Latona, roused to anger,² besought her children ³ to avenge the insult. 5. And so all of Niobe's fourteen children were killed, and ⁴ she herself was turned to stone.

1 Latin, 'these words having been heard.'
2 Latin, 'by anger.'
3 An ut-clause of purpose.
4 ipse.

### 21. Crœsus, King of Lydia. (Oral.)

- Subjunctive of Purpose: Pure Purpose with ut or nē, § 530 (317); B. 282;
   G. 545; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2; Purpose Expressed by the Supine,
   § 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618.
- 1. Crossus was king of the Lydians. 2. The fame of his riches had filled both Europe and Asia. 3. Many came 1 to see the king.

  4. Among these was Solon, who was counted among the seven sages of Greece. 5. Crossus asked him: "2 Am I not the most blest of all men?" 6. "No one is happy before he is dead," said Solon. 7. Soon after, the king found out 8 that this was true. 8. Cyrus, the king of the Medes and Persians, was at that time terrifying the neighboring nations by his victories. 9. In order to check him, Crossus was preparing for war. 10. At the same time he sent messengers to Delphi 1 to ask about the issue of the war. 11. The god replied: "Crossus will destroy a great empire."
  - 1 Express the purpose in two ways. 8 An infinitive clause.
  - <sup>2</sup> Notice that this is a direct question, expecting an affirmative answer.
  - 2. Sequence of Tenses, § 482-5 (285-7); B. 267-8; G. 509 ff.; H. 543 ff. (491 ff.); H-B. 476 ff.
    - Subjunctive of Pure Result with ut and ut non, § 537 (319); B. 284; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 1. 2, 519. 2. 3. a.
- 1. ¹Upon obtaining this reply, Crœsus hoped for victory. 2. He invaded the kingdom of Cyrus in order to fight with him. 3. ²But the issue of the battle was such that neither was victorious. 4. ³In the second battle, however,⁴ Cyrus won the victory from the Lydians. 5. Then Crœsus, being taken captive, is condemned to be burned. 6. The wood is brought and he is bound. 7. Suddenly ⁵ he called "O Solon!" in a loud voice. 8. And told Cyrus about the words of the Athenian. 9. Cyrus was so moved that he set Crœsus free.

10. And before his death he advised his son <sup>6</sup> to preserve the old man's friendship.

1 Abl. abs. 2 See text. 8 Latin, 'by another battle.'
4 autem, always postpositive. 5 subitō. 6 Subjv. of purpose.

# 22. An Epitome of Roman History. (Oral.)

Accusative of Extent and Duration, § 423, 425 (256-7); B. 181; G. 335-6; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

Ablative of Time, § 423 (256); B. 230-1; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439-

1. Rome was founded in the 753d year before Christ. 2. Kings ruled the state for about 250 years. 3. In the 509th year two consuls were chosen. 4. There were two, in order that one might check the power of the other. 5. The Romans kept up this custom for nearly five centuries. 6. Learned men divide this period of time into two equal parts. 7. In the middle of the third century the Romans had subdued the nations of Italy. 8. They declared war upon the Carthaginians in the year 264. 9. The First Punic War was finished in the 241st year. 10. The Second Punic War began in the 218th year. 11. It lasted 18 years. 12. The Third Punic War lasted only 2 three years. 13. Carthage was destroyed in the 146th year before Christ. 14. Corinth was destroyed in the same year. 15. Cæsar was killed in the 44th year. 16. The empire was established by Augustus in the 31st year.

<sup>1</sup> durö. <sup>2</sup> tantum.

# 23. The Omen of the Puppy. (Written.)

1. Æmilius Paulus, the consul, whose father fell at <sup>1</sup> Cannæ, obtained Macedonia as his province. 2. At that time Perses was king there, and had renewed the war against the Romans which his father had begun <sup>2</sup> many years before. 3. Tertia, Paulus's little daughter, had a puppy which she called <sup>3</sup> Persa. <sup>4</sup> 4. When Paulus was about to set out against Perses, Tertia was so <sup>5</sup> sad that her father noticed it. 5. <sup>6</sup> When he asked the cause, she replied: "My father, Persa is dead." 6. Paulus thought this chance remark an omen of his triumph, and straightway set out for the enemy.

1 Latin, 'near.' 2 Cf. paucis ante mēnsibus, p. 12, l. 19. 3 nomino.
4 Pred. acc. 5 tam. 6 Latin, 'to whom asking,' dat. indir. obj.

## 24. Scipio Æmilianus. (Oral.)

Temporal Clauses with cum, § 545-6 (325); B. 288-9; G. 580, 585; H. 600-1 (521); H-B. 524, 550. a.

1. When Scipio was serving as a soldier in Spain, he was under Lucullus, the general. 2. When a very strong city was being besieged, Scipio <sup>1</sup> was the first to mount its walls. 3. There was no one in that army whose life <sup>2</sup> was more precious. 4. But at that time the most illustrious youths undertook <sup>3</sup> the greatest perils. 5. Scipio demanded this military service for himself. 6. He did this in order that he might not be surpassed by others in valor.

1 See text. 2 Latin, 'ought to be looked out for more.' 8 Latin, 'the most of peril.'

## 25. The Battle of Thermopylæ. (Oral.)

- I. The Complementary Infinitive, § 456 (271); B. 328; G. 423; H. 607 (533); H-B. 586. a.
- 1. The Greeks could not defend the passes of Thessaly. 2. They determined to seize Thermopylæ. 3. They sent 8000 men to hold 1 that place. 4. King Leonidas wished to fight. 5. When he had led forth his forces, he waited for the approach of the Persians. 6. Xerxes at first began to laugh, when he saw the Greeks. 7. Then he ordered 2 them to lay down their arms. 8. Will not the Persian arrows hide the light of day? 9. Yes, but the Greeks will fight in the shade.

1 Not infin.

2 iubeo with infin.

- Ablative of Agent, § 405 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 468 (415. i, 397); H-B. 406. 1.
   Partitive Genitive, § 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367-72; H. 440. 5, 441-4; H-B. 346.
- 1. Many thousand men waited. 2. Xerxes waited four days. 3. The troops were not withdrawn by Leonidas. 4. On the fifth day Xerxes joined battle. 5. A great number of Persians was killed by the Greeks. 6. There were ten thousand 1 picked men. 7. The Immortals were thrown into the pass by the king. 8. Ephialtes had been bribed by the Persians. 9. He had been bribed with money. 2 10. He pointed out the pass to the Persians. 11. Then Leonidas

sent back a great part of his army. 12. He, with his three hundred Lacedæmonians, remained. 13. <sup>8</sup> After fighting a long time, they were all killed by the Persians.

1 See text. 2 Note that this is means, not agency; hence use no preposition.
8 Latin, 'when they had fought.'

### 26. A Roman Maiden. (Written.)

1. Pliny has written a very sad letter concerning the death of the younger daughter of Fundanus, who was so¹ lovely that she seemed² almost worthy of immortality. 2. She was not yet fourteen when she died, but already had³ the dignity of a matron, combined⁴ with the sweetness of maidenhood. 3. She loved her nurses, attendants, and teachers, each according to his service, and was loved by all. 4. She bore her last illness with remarkable⁵ fortitude and self-control, in order that she might encourage her father and sister. 5. Truly her death was sad and bitter. 6. Her wedding day had already been set. 7. To what sorrow was this joy changed when Fundanus spent on spices and perfumes what⁶ he had intended to pay out for dresses and jewelry!

1 tam. 2 Subjv. of result. 8 Latin, 'was to her,' dat. of possessor.
 4 Omit. 5 mīrābilis. 6 What = that which.

# 27. Æmilius Paulus and his Sons. (Oral.)

Substantive Clause of Purpose, § 563 (331); B. 295-6; G. 546-9; H. 564. 1. 3, 565 (498, 499. 3); H-B. 502. 3. a, 511. 2, 530. 2.

Ablative of the Gerund, § 507 (301); B. 338. 4; G. 431, 433; H. 629-30 (542. iv); H-B. 612. iv.

I. Paulus made over two of his four sons to the Cornelian and Fabian families. 2. Two fortune took from him.<sup>1</sup> 3. One of these died three days before his father's triumph, the other two days after.

4. <sup>2</sup> So he was suddenly left childless. 5. He bore this calamity with a <sup>3</sup> courageous heart. 6. He made a speech to the people concerning his exploits. 7. He made his spirit <sup>4</sup> clear to all by adding the following <sup>5</sup> closing words. 8. "I feared that some evil threatened the Roman people. 9. I prayed the gods to turn it all against my house.

- 10. By granting 6 my prayers, they have brought this to pass.

  11. You are grieving for my calamity, 7 not for your own."
- Not abl.
   Note the idiom of the text.
   Latin, 'strength of heart.'
   Latin, 'assenting to,' hence followed by the dat.
   Abl. of cause.

### 28. Androclus and the Lion. (Oral.)

- I. Ablative of Accompaniment, § 413 (248. a); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. 1, 474 (419. i. and 1); H-B. 418-19.
  Ablative with ex instead of the Partitive Genitive, § 346. c (216. c); B. 201.
  I. a; G. 372. 2; H. 444 (397. N.8); H-B. 346. c.
- 1. The Romans <sup>1</sup> used to provide splendid shows to amuse the people. 2. Often men fought <sup>1</sup> with wild beasts. 3. Once <sup>2</sup> a Roman general ordered some <sup>3</sup> wretched slaves to fight <sup>4</sup> with lions. 4. One of these was Androclus. 5. He, with the rest of his companions, was led into the arena. 6. One of the beasts, a huge lion, chose out Androclus from the rest. 7. He was so frightened that he expected sure <sup>5</sup> death. 8. Suddenly the lion stopped. 9. And threw himself at his feet. 10. The general called Androclus to him to ask <sup>4</sup> him about this wonderful event.<sup>6</sup>
  - 1 Imperf. ind. 2 ölim. 8 non nulli. 4 Not infin. 5 certus, -a, -um. 6 res.
    - 2. Ablative of Means, § 409 (248. c. 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423.
- 1. Androclus had once <sup>1</sup> committed a fault. 2. He fled to escape <sup>2</sup> punishment. 3. He entered a cave to conceal <sup>2</sup> himself. 4. He was seized with great fear when a lion entered it. 5. There was no chance of escaping. 6. Androclus thought the lion would attack him. 7. But the lion by pitiful moaning gave evidence of great pain. 8. His foot had been pierced <sup>8</sup> by a great thorn. 9. Androclus pulled this out. 10. The grateful lion regarded him as a friend. 11. Daily he provided food by hunting. 12. <sup>4</sup> One day he was off hunting. <sup>5</sup> 13. Androclus determined to depart. 14. Three days later he was captured by soldiers. 15. After a short time he was condemned to death. 16. But the grateful lion knew him. 17. The general was moved by this

wonderful event. 18. Not only liberty, but also the lion was given to Androclus.

1 One word. 2 Not infin. 8 transfodio. 4 olim. 5 Latin, 'in order to hunt.'

## 29. Cicero's Letters. (Oral.)

The Roman Calendar, § 424. g, 631 (259. e, 376); B. 371-2; G. p. 491; H. 754 ff. (641 ff.); H-B. 664-8.

- 1. Paulus sends greetings to his Tertia. 2. I want you to write 1 to me on the 17th of May. 3. On the 2d of June he informed me of the fever. 4. Take good care of your health. 5. They expect to arrive on the 1st. 6. See to it that all things necessary be ready. 7. I think that several friends will come on the 9th of October.
  - 1 Subjy. of purpose with ut omitted, as usual after forms of vole.

### 30. A Roman Ultimatum. (Written.)

1. When Popilius, the Roman ambassador, came to Antiochus, who was harassing Ptolemy with war, he handed over to him a decree of the senate. 2. This decree forbade¹ the war. 3. Antiochus read the tablets and said he would consult his friends. 4. But Popilius marked off the ground on which the king was standing and said,² "Give me an answer before you move from this circle." 5. The king was so terrified by his ³ abrupt and impressive manner that he immediately gave assurance ⁴ that he would abstain from war with Ptolemy.

1 vető. 2 inquam: note its position. 8 abecisa gravitās. 4 Subjv. of result.

# 31. The Haunted House. (Oral.)

Ablative of Quality or Description, § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443.

The Historical Infinitive, § 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610 (536. 1); H-B.

1. In a large house at Athens there was a ghost. 2. The ghost

was a 1 very gaunt old man. 3. The ghost 2 had a long beard. 4. The ghost had 2 shaggy hair. 5. The inhabitants left the house through

fear. 6. Athenodorus, the philosopher, came to Athens. 7. 8 After hearing the price of the house, 4 he became suspicious because of its cheapness. 8. He learned everything, but none the less rented the house. 9. Was he not a man of great courage? 10. When it began to grow dark, he dismissed all his companions. 11. He turns his attention 5 to writing, that he may not imagine vain fears. 12. At first there was silence. 13. Then iron was shaken, and chains rattled, 6 14. He neither raised his eyes nor dropped his pen. 15. Then the noise increased,6 drew near,6 and was now heard 6 within the threshold. 16. He looked round and saw the ghost. 17. It stood 6 and beckoned 6 with its finger. 18. Athenodorus, without delay, followed it to the courtyard of the house. 19. Suddenly it disappeared. 20. Athenodorus marked the spot with leaves. 21. The next day he advised the magistrates to dig up that spot. 22. Bones were found bound with chains. 23. 8 After these had been buried, the house was free from ghosts.

Latin, 'used up by leanness.'
 Latin, 'was of,' abl. of description.
 Latin, 'he suspected the cheapness.'
 Latin, 'mind.'
 Hist. infin.
 designo, -are.
 Abl. abs.

# 32. An Eclipse Foretold. (Oral.)

Causal Clauses with quod, quia, quoniam, quandô, § 540 (321); B. 286; G. 539-42; H. 588 (516); H-B. 535. 2. a. N.<sup>1</sup>.

1. Gallus called the soldiers to an assembly. 2. He called them together because he wished 1 to foretell the eclipse 2 of the moon.

3. An eclipse can be known beforehand, because it takes place at stated intervals. 4. The moon goes into an eclipse because it is concealed by the shadow of the earth. 5. Do you count it a prodigy that the moon shines now with full orb and now with a small crescent?

6. When was 8 this eclipse? 7. It was on the night 4 preceding the 4th of September. 8. To the Romans the wisdom of Gallus seemed almost supernatural, 6 because he had foretold the eclipse.

<sup>1</sup> That is, 'he wished, as he said,' the reason being on the authority of Gallus and not on that of the speaker. 2 dēfectus, -ūs, m. 8 Perf. ind. 4 See text. 5 Give as on the authority of the Romans.

### 33. Anthony and the Usurer. (Oral.)

Relative Clauses of Purpose, § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2, ftn.8. 4.

Ablative with opus and usus, § 411 (243. e); B. 218. 2; G. 406; H. 477. iii (414. iv); H-B. 430. 1.

1. Anthony met one or two jolly fellows. 2. The priest was in need of money. 3. There was no provision for a feast. 4. There was need of ready wit. 5. <sup>1</sup> After he had taken one of the moneylender's kettles, he ordered the meat and broth to be poured out. 6. He sent a servant <sup>2</sup> to polish the kettle. 7. Then he sent him <sup>2</sup> to borrow two francs from the usurer. 8. The usurer could not recognize the kettle. 9. The pledge was received and the money counted out. 10. With this money they bought the wine <sup>3</sup> which they needed. 11. <sup>4</sup> The cook was scolded because the kettle was missing. 12. What is the need of many words? 13. Men were sent <sup>2</sup> to search Anthony's house. 14. In the presence of many witnesses, Anthony showed his receipt.

Change the voice and use the abl. abs. 8 Latin, 'of which there was need.' 2 Relative clause of purpose.4 Note the idiom in the text.

### 34. A Practical Joke. (Written.)

1. <sup>1</sup> Maccus had the habit <sup>2</sup> of making himself known by a joke.
2. <sup>8</sup> Once he walked into a shoemaker's shop.
3. By simply <sup>4</sup> casting <sup>5</sup> his eyes upon some leggings and shoes, and by nodding assent <sup>5</sup> to the shoemaker's questions, <sup>6</sup> both shoes and leggings were given to him for nothing, <sup>7</sup> for neither <sup>8</sup> of them made any mention of price.
4. After he was thus equipped for running, he took to his heels.
5. The shoemaker chased him with all his might, but could not catch him.
6. Afterwards, when an action for theft was brought against Maccus, he <sup>9</sup> said that he had touched nothing belonging to another <sup>10</sup> against the owner's will.

<sup>1</sup> Latin, 'the custom was to,' etc.' <sup>2</sup> Gen. of gerund. <sup>8</sup> aliquandö. <sup>4</sup> tantum. <sup>5</sup> Abl. of gerund. <sup>6</sup> quaestiö. <sup>7</sup> gratfs. <sup>8</sup> neuter. <sup>9</sup> Latin, 'denied that he had touched a thing.' <sup>10</sup> Latin, 'the owner being unwilling.'

## 35. The Priest, the Vender, and the Impostor. (Oral.)

Substantive Clauses of Result, § 568 (332); B. 297; G. 553; H. 571 (501); H-B. 521. 3. a.

1. An impostor caused 1 a priest to lose 2 a purse full of money. 2. Priests wear a sacred robe when they make 8 sacrifice. 3. Did the citizens send the impostor to buy a robe for the priest? 4. There is no doubt 4 that they did not send him. 5. The vender caused the priest to put on a robe. 6. It happened that the robe fitted wonderfully. 7. But the impostor looked at it in front and behind. 8. And pretended that it was too short in front. 9. Then the vender feared that the bargain would fall through. 10. "The full purse 6 makes it look short," said he. 11. He asked the priest to lay 7 aside the purse. 12. 8 When the priest's back was turned, the thief seized the purse. 13. The thief took to his heels and escaped.

1 efficiö. 2 perdő. 8 Perf. ind. 4 quin, clause of result. 6 Latin, 'causes the shortness to offend.' 7 Not infin. 8 Abl. abs.; see text.

### Cyrus, King of Persia, Chaps. 1 and 2. (Oral.)

The Dative with Special Verbs, § 367 (227); B. 187. ii; G. 346; H. 426 (385); H-B. 362.

- 1. Astyages had a grandson whose name was Cyrus. 2. Astyages feared 1 that his grandson would be king in his 2 place. 3. Cambyses, the Persian, had married Mandana. 4. Astyages ordered Harpagus to kill 8 his grandson. 5. Harpagus was moved with pity for 4 the boy's fate. 6. He did not obey the command of the king. 7. 5 He gave the same orders to the king's shepherd that the king had given him. 8. The king's shepherd did not obey the orders of Harpagus. 9. He kept the boy and brought him up. 10. Once the son of a noble Mede did not obey Cyrus. 11. Cyrus, with the shepherd, was led 6 into the presence of the king. 12. The face of Cyrus was 7 like that of Mandana, and the king recognized him. 13. Astyages took vengeance on Harpagus by a very cruel punishment, because he had not obeyed his orders. 14. But Cyrus he kept with 6 him.
- 1 A mēclause of purpose. 2 suus, as indir. reflex. 8 Not infin. 4 Latin, 'because of,' hence abl. 5 Latin, 'he ordered the same to.' 6 apud. 7 Latin, 'like Mandana.' The redundant 'that of' in such expressions is regularly omitted in Latin.

### Cyrus, King of Persia, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Oral.)

The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions, § 574 (334); B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 649. ii (529. i); H-B. 507, 507. 3.

1. Harpagus brought it about that Cyrus was very well liked both by Medes and Persians. 2. He often asked Cyrus why he did not drive his grandfather from the throne. 3. Did Cyrus obey this counsel? He did. 4. Astyages ordered the Persians to obey Cyrus in all things. 5. Cyrus asked them whether they chose hardships or pleasures. 6. Then he urged them to attack 1 Astyages and declare their independence. 7. Astyages placed Harpagus in command of all the forces. 8. We know how 2 Astyages had once 3 aroused the bitterest hatred in him. 9. Harpagus urged Cyrus to join 1 battle without fear. 10. The Medes fled, and Astyages was captured. 11. After this victory he conquered and captured Crossus, the king of the Lydians. 12. Don't you wish to know 4 in what year he began the war with the Babylonians?

1 Not infin. 2 quo modo. 8 Latin, 'set him on fire with,' etc. 4 scire.

### Cyrus, King of Persia, Chaps. 5 and 6. (Oral.)

The Demonstrative Pronouns, § 146, 296-8 (100-2, 195); B. 246; G. 305-11; H. 505-9 (450-2); H-B. 271-4.

1. Babylon, that famous and powerful city, had great walls. 2. By means of a stratagem Cyrus <sup>1</sup>made a way into that city for his soldiers.

3. Cyrus took possession of the gates <sup>2</sup> and walls by night. 4. Those who dwelt in the <sup>8</sup> middle of the city did not hear <sup>4</sup> about that event.<sup>5</sup>

5. He allowed the Jews to rebuild the temple. 6. Revolts of the same tribes called Cyrus into those parts a second time. 7. Among those barbarians were the Massagetæ and their queen Tomyris.

8. Cyrus determined to marry her. 9. But she spurned his <sup>6</sup> offer of marriage. 10. And invited him to cross the Araxes river <sup>7</sup> for a battle. 11. Cyrus himself did not know what to do. 12. He asked Cræsus what he advised. 13. "I advise you to do what Tomyris has asked," said Cræsus. 14. By following <sup>8</sup> this advice, Cyrus killed a great part of them and captured the queen's son.

<sup>1</sup> For idiom, see text, 37 21. 2 Gen.; see text. 8 Latin idiom, 'the middle city.' 4 nuntium accipere. 6 res. 6 Omit 'offer of.' 7 Latin, 'for fighting,' gerund of purpose. 8 ator; use abl. of gerund.

## Cyrus, King of Persia, Chap. 7. (Written.)

woman, and had defeated a large force and captured her son, the queen advised Cyrus to send back her boy and lead away his army.

2. Cyrus did not obey these words, but collected his forces and joined battle.

3. The captive son, meanwhile, had seized a sword and killed himself.

4. In a bloody battle, both Persians and barbarians fought bravely, the former for life, the latter for freedom; but finally Cyrus was killed, and a large part of his army fell with him.

5. Tomyris cut off his head and threw it into the gore, because she had promised to give him all the blood he wanted.

ingredior.
 interim.
 Forms of ille and hic; see grammar.
 follow the idiom of the text.
 Write the reason as on the authority of Tomyris.
 Fut. infin.
 Follow idiom of the text.

## The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 1 and 2. (Oral.)

Accusative of Limit or End of Motion, § 427. 2 (258. b); B. 182; G. 337; H. 418 (380); H-B. 385. b.

Ablative of Place from which, § 426. 1 (258); B. 229; G. 390-1; H. 462 (412); H-B. 408.

I. The city of Troy was besieged for ten years. 2. From Troy the Greeks hastened to return home. 3. They set sail with great joy, for they were wearied with the long war. 4. Ulysses wished to return to the island Ithaca. 5. A very beautiful wife was 1 waiting for him at home. 6. He had married her before he set out for the war. 7. A storm carried the ship of Ulysses to the south. 8. Some ships were carried in one direction, and others in another. 9. In ten days the ship of Ulysses was carried from the coast of Troy to the coast of Libya. 10. He put some of his companions ashore. 11. They met some of the inhabitants. 12. The food of the inhabitants consists almost entirely of the lotus. 13. Those who eat the lotus wish to remain in that land forever. 14. The Greeks forgot their fatherland 2 and companions.

1 exspecto, with acc.

<sup>2</sup> Gen.; see text.

## The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Oral.)

The Reflexive Pronoun, § 299, 300 (196); B. 244; G. 309; H. 502-4 (448-9); H-B. 260-4.

- 1. Ulysses fears that his companions are in danger. 2. Some of the remaining companions are put on shore. 3. They go to a village and find the others drunk as if with wine. 4. They were unwilling to return with them to the ship. 5. Ulysses himself in vain attempted to persuade them. 6. Finally he carried his companions back against their will and set sail as quickly as possible. 7. They cried out that they would never leave that spot of their own accord. 8. The next day Ulysses and twelve of his companions disembarked upon an unknown shore. 9. Soon they perceived the fortified entrance of a huge cave. 10. "I wonder who inhabits this abode," said Ulysses. 11. A giant of immense size lived there. 12. He was of human form, but had only one eye. 13. Ulysses had already heard about the Cyclops, but had never seen one of them.
- Distinguish carefully between reperio, to find by seeking, and invenio, to come upon by chance. 2 mole. 8 tandem. 4 Latin, 'unwilling.' 5 Latin, 'go from.' 6 Remember to insert this phrase in the quotation. 7 ib.

## The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 5 and 6. (Oral.)

The Second Periphrastic Conjugation, § 193-6, 500. 2 (129, 294. b); B. 115; G. 251; H. 237 (234); H-B. 162, 600. 3.

Dative of Agent, § 374 (232); B. 189; G. 354-5; H. 431 (388); H-B. 373. 1.

1. Vulcan had his workshop under Mount Ætna. 2. The Cyclops were his servants. 3. The Greeks hid themselves in the cave, because they were almost frightened to death. 4. The giant saw them and asked who they were. 5. ¹ Ulysses had to reply that they were Greeks returning from Troy. 6. When the giant asked about the ship. Ulysses had to be on his guard. 7. Then Polyphemus ate two of the Greeks. 8. They were so frightened by this horrible meal that they gave up all hope of safety. 9. Ulysses must not let a ² favorable opportunity for action³ go by. 10. Ulysses was ⁴on the point of killing Polyphemus. 11. But the stone must first be removed from the entrance. 12. ⁵ Even in many great perils we must not

despair of safety. 13. There is no doubt that the gods will give us aid.

Latin, 'It had to be replied by Ulysses.' Do not forget that the second periphrastic is always passive, and with intrans. verbs impersonal. 2 occasio. 3 rei gerendae. 4 in eo ut. 5 Latin, 'not even in,' etc., no... quidem, putting the emphatic word or phrase between.

## The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 7 and 8. (Written.)

1. At daybreak Polyphemus, in the same way as before, seized and ate two of the remaining Greeks. 2. When he removed the great stone from the door, the Greeks <sup>1</sup> had great hopes of escaping, <sup>2</sup> but after all his sheep had gone forth, he put the stone back into its place. 3. The situation was critical, but Ulysses did not give way to tears. 4. He sharpened a great stake and awaited the return of the giant. 5. At evening, when the giant had returned home, Ulysses filled a great bowl with wine and invited him to drink. <sup>3</sup> 6. Polyphemus thanked him for the wine and asked him <sup>4</sup> what his name was, and soon thereafter was overcome by sleep. 7. Ulysses thought that so favorable an opportunity for action should not be let slip.

1 Latin, 'came into great hope.' 2 Gen. of the gerund. 8 Latin, 'for drinking,' gerund with ad, expressing purpose. 4 See text.

## The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 9 and 10. (Oral.)

Temporal Clauses with **postquam**, ubi, ut, etc., § 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561-3; H. 602 (518); H-B. 557.

1. After the Greeks 1 had bored out the giant's eye with the 2 end of a stake, they hid. 2. Polyphemus, as was to be expected, raised a frightful outcry. 3. When the other Cyclops heard the noise, they came to the cave from every side. 4. They asked Polyphemus what the matter was. 5. He replied that violence had been done him by nobody. 6. After the Cyclops 1 heard that, they thought that Polyphemus had become insane. 7. When his friends had gone away, Polyphemus tried to lay hands on Ulysses. 8. After he had removed the stone from the entrance, the sheep went out to pasture. 3 of Polyphemus had to sit 4 at the entrance. 10. He felt of each

sheep's back, in order that Ulysses might not escape. II. Ulysses so tied his friends to the sheep that they were completely hid. I2. After Polyphemus had allowed all the sheep to pass by, Ulysses himself escaped last.

<sup>1</sup> The common subj. of a principal and a subordinate clause usually stands before both. <sup>2</sup> Note the idiom in the text. <sup>3</sup> Latin, 'to the fields.' <sup>4</sup> 'Sit' being intrans., will of course be impersonal in the passive.

## The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 11 and 12. (Oral.)

Ablative of Specification, §418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.

Partitive Genitive, § 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367-72; H. 441-3 (397); H-B. 346.

1. Some 1 of the Greeks had been left behind 2 to guard the ship.
2. They received Ulysses with great joy. 3. They feared that Ulysses had fallen into serious danger. 4. Ulysses determined to hasten from the shore as quickly as possible. 5. Polyphemus paid the just penalty for his cruelty. 6. After the Greeks had sailed a few thousand feet into the deep, Polyphemus hurled a huge rock in that direction.
7. The Greeks 8 did not lack much of being drowned. 8. They sailed a few miles 4 to a certain island. 9. This island was Æolia by name.
10. The Greeks tarried there a few days. 11. Were they not desirous of seeing their native land? 12. Æolus shut up all the winds but Zephyrus in a bag. 13. The Zephyrus was a favorable wind for sailing. 14. At midday Ulysses tied the bag to the mast. 15. When all was prepared, he sailed from the harbor.

1 non nulli. 2 Latin, 'for a guard to the ship.' 8 Note the idiom in the text.
4 Latin, 'thousands of paces.'

## The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 13 and 14. (Oral.)

Accusative of the Gerund and the Gerundive, § 506 (300); B. 338. 3, 339; G. 430, 432; H. 628 (542. iii, 543 ff.); H-B. 612. iii.

1. On the ninth day he came in sight of his native land. 2. His native land was an island, I thaca by name. 3. Ulysses lay down to rest. 4. His companions thought that gold was shut up in that bag. 5. Ulysses was worn out with fatigue. 6. This was a favorable opportunity <sup>1</sup> for opening the bag. 7. A great storm aroused Ulysses from sleep. 8. The daughter of the sun, Circe by name, lived on an

49 I

island. 9. Ulysses and his companions approached this island 2 to get supplies. 10. He brought the ship to land 2 for the purpose of disembarking. 11. All remembered the cruelty of the Cyclops. 12. No one could be found who was willing 8 to disembark on 13. Finally they cast lots, and Eurylochus was Circe's island. chosen 4 to 5 make this venture.

1 ad with the gerundive. 2 ad with the gerund, or as in the text. 8 Subjy. in relative clause of characteristic. 4 deligo.

## The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 15 and 16. (Written.)

1. Eurylochus and his twenty-two companions, who had been chosen by lot, did 1 not at all doubt that they were going to meet death. 2. When they came 2 to Circe's house, they heard a voice of such sweetness that they could in no way be restrained 8 from entering. 3. Circe set a magnificent banquet before them,4 but after she had touched their heads with her golden wand, they were suddenly all changed to pigs. 4. Eurylochus, who was waiting outside, finally returned to the ship alone, so alarmed that he could hardly tell what he had seen. 5. He begged Ulysses not to expose himself to danger, and said, "If anything serious happens 5 to you, the safety of all will be in the greatest peril." 6. But Ulysses replied, "I will take no one with me <sup>6</sup> against his will," and <sup>7</sup> set out alone.

1 nihil. <sup>2</sup> Pluperf. subjv. with cum. 8 quin with imperf. subjv. <sup>5</sup> Fut. perf. ind. <sup>6</sup> Latin, 'unwilling.' <sup>7</sup> See text. with compound.

## The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 17 and 18. (Oral.)

The Interrogative Particles -ne, nonne, num, § 332. a-c (210. a. c); B. 162. 2; G. 454-6; H. 378 (351. 1. 2); H-B. 231. 1. b-d.

1. When Ulysses was on the point of entering Circe's house, Mercury stood before him. 2. 1 Mercury said, "Don't you know that this is Circe's house?" 3. Did Circe change Ulysses's friends into pigs? She did. 4. Ulysses did n't wish to suffer<sup>2</sup> the same fate, did he? No. 5. "I will give you a drug which is very powerful," said Mercury. 6. Was not Ulysses prepared to meet all dangers? 7. Circe did everything just as before. 8. Matters often come out 3 quite differently from what we expect. 9. Circe could n't change Ulysses

into a pig by her golden wand, could she? 10. Neither by her poison nor by her words could she accomplish anything.<sup>4</sup> 11. Will not Ulysses make an attack upon Circe with drawn sword? 12. Yes, and she will beg him with many tears <sup>8</sup> not to take her life.

1 Latin order, "Don't you know?" said Mercury, etc. 2 Latin, 'come into.' 8 omninō aliter atque. 4 quidquam: learn to use this word in neg. clauses. 5 nē with pres. subjv.

## The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 19 and 20. (Oral.)

Ablative of Separation, § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 462 (414); H-B. 408 ff.

- changed to pigs. 2. Unless Circe restores them to human form without delay, Ulysses will inflict merited punishment. 3. "I will do 2 all that you have asked," said Circe. 4. The pigs recognized their leader. 5. But could not inform him of their misfortunes. 6. In a short time, however, they were set free from their great sorrow. 7. Ulysses spent a whole year with Circe. 8. He could not be persuaded to stay longer. 9. His ship, battered by the storms, was almost useless for sailing. 10. Within three days everything which is of use for refitting ships was prepared. 11. Ulysses intended to sail as soon as possible. 12. Circe took it ill, but could not persuade Ulysses to give up that design. 13. Ulysses set sail, that he might not be cut off from navigation by the time of the year.
- 1 The fut. perf. ind. in a vivid fut. cond. 2 omnia quae. 8 Latin, 'things,' rēs. 4 liberō, āre. 5 apud. 6 Latin, 'it could not be persuaded to him.' See notes, 18 17. 7 Dat. of service. 8 Latin, 'desist from.' 9 longum est, an idiomatic use of the present ind. where the subjv. might have been expected. 10 reliquus, -a, -um.

#### Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 1 and 2. (Oral.)

The More Vivid Future Condition, § 516 (307); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. a.

Marius was dear to Scipio, though 1 born in a lowly station.
 If Scipio wishes 2 to inspect the horses, he will find the horse of Marius well cared for.
 If anything serious happens 2 to Scipio,

the republic will have Marius. 4. Marius was the lieutenant of Metellus, 8 who had been sent against Jugurtha. 5. Marius said, "If the Romans make me consul, I will subdue Jugurtha in a short time." 6. After Marius had been elected consul, Jugurtha fled to Bocchus. 7. 5 Bocchus was persuaded to give up Jugurtha to Sulla, the quæstor. 8. Marius, 6 in his triumph, drove Jugurtha in chains before his chariot. 9. Jugurtha called his prison a cold bath-room.

1 Omit. 2 The English pres, may express fut, or even fut, perf. time. 8 Translate the relative clause by the perf. pass. partic. 4 Fut. perf. 5 Latin, 'it was persuaded to, etc., that he,' etc. 6 Latin, 'triumphing.' 7 nomino, -are.

#### Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Written.)

1. The Cimbri and Teutons, wanderers from the frontiers of Germany, had been shut out from Gaul and Germany, and so asked the Romans to give them 2 some land. 2. Marius first crushed the Teutons, and the slaughter was so great that there was more blood than water in the river <sup>8</sup> between them. 3. The Cimbri did not know of the calamity of their brethren and entered Italy from another direction. 4. As soon as the Cimbri came up, they demanded land for themselves and their brothers. 5. " Never mind your brothers," said Marius, "they have already received land from us." 6. The Cimbri thought that they were being held in derision, but 4 soon thereafter the chiefs of the Teutons were led out in chains.

2 Latin, 'something of land,' partit. gen. 1 itaque. 8 medius, -a, -um. 4 post breve tempus.

## Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 5 and 6. (Oral.)

Construction after peto, § 396. a (239. c. N.1); G. 339. R.1 and N.1; H. 411. 4 (374. 2. N.4); H-B. 393. b. c.

Causal Clauses with cum, § 549 (326); B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 526.

1. The Cimbri then 1 went forth from the camp. 2. They asked 2 Marius, the Roman general, to set a time for battle. 3. The next day Marius destroyed the Cimbri with terrible slaughter. 4. There was a great battle with the women, since they fought from the wagons as if from towers. 5. The conquered women8 hung themselves on the trees, since they could 4 not obtain liberty from 5 Marius. 6. The chief men of the state had envied Marius.6 7. Now they confessed that he had saved the state. 8. He presented two cohorts with the citizenship. 9. At that time Sulpicius asked 7 the people to depose 8 Sulla from the chief command. 10. Marius hid in a swamp, but was seized and put in prison. 11. They sent a Cimbrian slave to kill him. 12. 9 When he saw Marius, he did not dare to kill him.

1 deinde. 2 pet5. 8 May be omitted. 4 Imperf. subjv. of possum. 5 ab.
 6 Not acc. 7 peto. 8 Note the idiom in the text. 9 The idea of time is bere combined with that of cause as an added circumstance; see notes, 7 5.

#### Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 7, 8, and 9. (Oral.)

The Gerundive, in Agreement with the Object, to Express Purpose, § 500. 4 (294. d); B. 337. 7. b). 2); G. 430; H. 622 (544. N.?); H-B. 605. 2.

1. After Marius was let out of prison, he went to Africa. 2. He expected kindness from the Roman prætor, since he had never done him injury. 3. "Depart from the province," said the lictor. 4. The lictor reported to the prætor that he had seen Marius sitting on the ruins of Carthage. 5. We have these two very conspicuous examples of the fickleness of human fortune 1 to place before our eyes. 6. Marius was more enraged than subdued by misfortune. 7. After he returned to Italy, he gave 2 Rome up 8 to destruction by murder and robbery. 8. The houses of the slain he gave to the mob 4 for plunder. 9. It is not easy to say whether Marius was better in war or more dangerous in peace. 10. Marius despised the artists of Greece, since he was too rough for the pursuits of culture. 11. He 5 had the temple of Honor built of common stone.

1 Gerundive. 2 trado. 8 Latin, 'to be destroyed,' gerundive. 4 Latin, 'to be plundered.' 5 'Had . . . built'; note the idiom in the text.

## Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 1 and 2. (Oral.)

Two Datives, — to which and for which, § 382 (233); B. 191; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360.

1. Did not Cæsar lose his father in his sixteenth year? 2. Cæsar married the daughter of Cinna. 3. Cæsar was stripped of his possessions <sup>1</sup> because he would not divorce her. 4. He escaped from the city by night. 5. He was seized by a freedman of Sulla, although he changed his hiding place almost every night. 6. The most distinguished men pleaded for Cæsar.<sup>2</sup> 7. He will be <sup>3</sup> the cause of their

destruction. 8. "Have your own way! there are many Mariuses in Cæsar," said Sulla. 9. Cæsar wished 4 to attend upon Apollonius, the teacher of oratory. 10. He crossed to Rhodes and was captured by pirates. 11. He was a 5 source of terror to them. 12. He sent servants to get money. 13. He threatened 6 the pirates with punishment.

1 Latin, 'because he was unwilling to,' etc. 2 Dative. 8 Latin, 'for destruction to them.' 4 operam dare. 5 Cf. 7th sentence. 6 Latin, 'punishment to the pirates.'

## Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Oral.)

Simple Conditions, § 515 (306); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579.

1. Cæsar had rather be first in a small village than second at Rome. 2. If Cæsar is greedy for power, he covets the sovereignty.

3. Cæsar groaned 1 at the sight of a statue of Alexander. 4. If he violated the law, he did 2 it for the sake of sovereignty. 5. He wasted his patrimony on hunts and games. 6. I need a hundred million sesterces to have nothing. 7. I will make an alliance with Pompey and Crassus. 8. Cæsar wished to divide the Campanian land among 8 the people. 9. If he proposed the law, the senate opposed it. 4 10. Bibulus had his fasces broken for him. 11. After that, Cæsar was consul alone. 12. The wags 6 used to write in jest, "In the consulship of Julius and Cæsar."

1 Express by abl. abs., as in the text. 2 Repeat the first verb. 8 Latin, 'to.' 4 Omit.
6 Latin, 'the fasces of Bibulus were,' etc. 6 Imperf. tense.

## Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 5 and 6. (Oral.)

Ablative with ator, fruor, etc., § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.

1. Cæsar was in command of Gaul for nine years. 2. <sup>1</sup> He was the first of the Romans to attack the Germans. 3. This he did <sup>2</sup> after he had completed his consulship. 4. <sup>3</sup> When the army wavered in flight, Cæsar seized a shield from the hand of a fleeing soldier. 5. In another battle he drew a fleeing standard-bearer in the opposite direction. 6. By using <sup>4</sup> such exhortations he taught those <sup>5</sup> how to conquer <sup>6</sup> who were ready to be conquered. 7. A hostile <sup>7</sup> rivalry

arose between Cæsar and Pompey. 8. The former could not bear<sup>8</sup> a superior nor the latter an equal. 9. Since Cæsar was detained in Gaul, <sup>9</sup> he was not allowed to seek a second consulship. 10. He crossed the Rubicon with an army <sup>10</sup> to make war. 11. After he had crossed this stream, he could not turn back. 12. Pompey and the consuls used Brundisium as a refuge.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Latin, 'he first attacked.' <sup>2</sup> Express by the perf. partic. <sup>8</sup> Abl. abs. <sup>4</sup> Abl. of gerund of ütor. <sup>5</sup> Infin. <sup>6</sup> Perf. partic. <sup>7</sup> infēnsus, -a, -um. <sup>8</sup> Imperf. ind. <sup>9</sup> Latin, 'it was not permitted to him.' <sup>10</sup> The gerund with causa. <sup>11</sup> perfugium.

#### Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 7 and 8. (Written.)

1. After Cæsar had followed Pompey into Epirus, his troops delayed to follow. 2. Impatient of the delay, he performed a deed of remarkable daring; for he secretly embarked on a little skiff, and, though the sea was raging with a wild tempest, he ordered the trembling skipper to steer his craft out to sea. 3. After the battle of Pharsalia, Cæsar first 1 made war upon Ptolemy and then 2 upon Pharnaces, the son of Mithradates, whom he destroyed in a single battle in four hours. 4. In his Pontic triumph Cæsar used only 5 three words to recount 4 this victory: "I came, I saw, I conquered."

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 9, 10, and 11. (Oral.)
Participles, § 488 ff. (289 ff.); B. 336-7; G. 664 ff.; H. 636 ff. (548 ff.); H-B. 599 ff.

1. The son of Magnus had aroused a great and terrible war in Spain. 2. Those ¹who followed the lustre of his father's name came together ² from every quarter. 3. When the conflict became fierce and doubtful, he declared to his soldiers that he would never retreat.

4. If Cæsar is ³ victorious, he will pardon all that have borne arms against him. 5. Then he will turn his attention to ordering the condition of the state. 6. Those convicted ⁴ of extortion were removed from the senate. 7. Cæsar ⁵ made more and greater plans daily for the beautifying of the city. 8. ⁴ While he was doing these and other things, death prevented him. 9. ⁴ After he had been chosen dictator, he received the senate sitting. 10. Antony placed a crown on Cæsar's

head <sup>4</sup> as he was sitting on a golden chair. 11. For these reasons <sup>6</sup> a conspiracy was made against him.

Pres. partic. <sup>2</sup> Latin, 'from the whole world.' <sup>8</sup> Fut. in force. <sup>4</sup> Express by a partic. <sup>5</sup> Latin, 'planned more and greater things.' <sup>6</sup> Latin, 'it was conspired.'

## Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 12 and 13. (Oral.)

Infinitive with Subject Accusative, § 452, 459 (272, 330); B. 329 ff.; G. 527, 532-3; H. 414, 613, 614 (534, 535); H-B. 585 ff.

- 1. Spurinna, the soothsayer, warned Cæsar 1 to beware of the Ides of March. 2. Cæsar said that the Ides had already come. 3. Spurinna replied that they were not yet past. 4. One of the conspirators seized Cæsar's toga 2 by the shoulders. 5. Cæsar cried out that this was violence. 6. Then he saw 8 daggers drawn against him on every side. 7. 4 It is said that he was pierced with twenty-three wounds. 8. Cæsar read in Xenophon that Cyrus had given certain orders about his own funeral. 9. Nearly all agree 6 that Cæsar wished for a quick and unexpected death. 10. All the conspirators died in less than three years. 6 11. None of them died a natural death. 12. They perished 7 by different fates.
- 1 Dat. 2 Latin, 'from each shoulder.' 8 See text. 4 Use the personal construction, 'he is said,' etc. 6 constat, impers. 6 Abl. 7 See idiom in text.

#### Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 14 and 15. (Oral.)

Genitive with Adjectives, § 349 (218); B. 204; G. 374; H. 450 (399); H-B. 354.

- 1. The rarer moderation is in kings, the more it should be praised.
  2. Cæsar ¹used to forget nothing excepting injuries.
  3. Cæsar was of tall stature, and had ² bright black eyes.
  4. He was bald-headed, a ³ defect which ⁴ annoyed him.
  5. He received from the senate the right of wearing a laurel wreath constantly.
  6. Cæsar was very temperate in his use of wine.
  7. He was very skilful in his use of weapons and in horsemanship.
  8. He could endure hardship beyond belief.
  9. He was eager ⁵ for power, but used his victory very mercifully.
- 1 The imperf. ind. expressing customary action.
  2 Continue the construction of the first clause.
  3 Latin, 'which defect'; see note, 17 8.
  4 Latin, 'he bore ill.'
  5 avidus, -a, -um.

## Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 1 and 2. (Written.)

1. No one doubts that <sup>1</sup> Hannibal excelled all other generals in skill, for as often as he contended with the Romans, he always left the field victorious. 2. He was crippled by the envy of his countrymen at home, and finally <sup>2</sup> driven from his fatherland, but he never gave up his design of carrying on war with the Romans. 3. He was so desirous <sup>3</sup> of fighting that he made both Philip and Antiochus enemies to Rome. <sup>4</sup> 4. <sup>5</sup> When he was a little boy not more than nine years old, his father, Hamilcar, <sup>6</sup> who was just leaving Carthage for Spain, took him to the altar and ordered him to swear that he would never be friendly <sup>7</sup> to the Romans.

1 quin with subjv.; see note, 44 14. 2 demum. 8 cupidus. 4 Latin, 'to the Romans.' 5 May be expressed by an appositive, 'him a little boy,' etc. 6 Pres. partic. 7 Latin, 'in friendship with.'

#### Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Oral.)

The Locative Case, § 427. 3 (258. c. 2); B. 232; G. 411; H. 484, 485. 2 (425. ii, 426); H-B. 449.

1. Hamilcar set out from Carthage for Spain. 2. Hannibal did not remain at Carthage, 1 but went with his father. 3. After the death of Hasdrubal, the supreme authority was conferred upon Hannibal. 4. He got together three very large armies. 5. One went to Africa. 6. One remained in Spain with his brother. 7. He led the third into Italy across the Pyrenees and the Alps. 8. The inhabitants tried to prevent him from crossing. 9. At Rome there was great terror. 10. At Clastidium, on the Po, he fought with Scipio. 11. He defeated the same man at the Rhone and at the Trebia. 12. After his journey to Etruria through the Apennines, he never 2 had perfect use of his right eye. 13. At Cannæ 5 two consuls came to meet him.

1 Loc., Carthagini. <sup>2</sup> See text. <sup>8</sup> Cannae, -ārum.

## Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 5 and 6. (Oral.)

The Supine in u, § 510 (303); B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635. 1 (547); H-B. 619.

1. He pitched his camp in the mountains near Rome. 2. He delayed several days at Capua. 3. He escaped from Fabius by a

stratagem without any loss to his army.<sup>1</sup> 4. The cattle caused great terror in the Roman army. 5. Minucius was master of horse, with the authority of dictator. 6. It would be tedious to recount all the victories of Hannibal. 7. Many armies were sent to fight <sup>2</sup> with him. 8. But, wonderful <sup>8</sup> to tell, no one could resist him in the battle line. 9. He was called back to Africa to defend <sup>2</sup> his fatherland. 10. This was hard <sup>8</sup> to do, for the resources of his country were exhausted. 11. Incredible to relate, he was defeated by Scipio near Zama. 12. Zama is about three hundred miles from Hadrumetum. 13. At Hadrumetum he gathered together many soldiers in a few days.

<sup>1</sup> Objective gen.; see note, 37 12. <sup>2</sup> Supine of purpose. <sup>8</sup> Supine in ū.

## Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 7 and 8. (Oral.)

Conditions Contrary to Fact, § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.

1. Hannibal and Mago, his brother, were busily engaged in making preparations. 2. Ambassadors came to thank the Romans. 3. They will ask that their hostages be kept 1 at Fregellæ. 4. The Romans would have let the captives go, if Hannibal had not had command of an army. 5. The Carthaginians called Hannibal home and made him king. 6. There will be money 2 to pay the Romans according to the treaty. 7. Ambassadors came from Rome to Carthage 3 to demand Hannibal. 8. The Carthaginians would have caught him, if they had been able. 4 9. If they had been roused to war, Antiochus would have set out for Italy with his armies. 10. Some write that Mago was killed by shipwreck, 5 others by his slaves. 5 11. If Antiochus had obeyed Hannibal's counsel, he would have carried on the war nearer to the Tiber.

1 Omit. 2 Relative clause of purpose. 8 Gerundive construction with grātia. 4 See note, 75 8. 5 Note the difference between means and agency here.

#### Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 9 and 10. (Written.)

t. Since Hannibal was carrying<sup>1</sup> a large sum of money with him to Crete, he feared that he would be<sup>2</sup> in great danger, because of the avarice of the Cretans. 2. He therefore <sup>3</sup> placed some amphoras full of lead in the temple of Diana, pretending that they were full of gold.

- 3. The Cretans would not have guarded the temple so carefully, if they had known what he carried in the bronze statues. 4. From Crete he went to Prusias in Pontus, where he carried on war against Eumenes, who was very friendly to the Romans. 5. In a naval battle he promised his seamen a great reward, if they should capture or kill him.
- <sup>1</sup> Imperf. subjv. in a cum-clause of circumstance. <sup>2</sup> Cf. ne dederetur of text. <sup>3</sup> Itaque. <sup>4</sup> Latin, 'with such great care,' abl. of manner. <sup>5</sup> Latin, 'into.' <sup>6</sup> Express by adj. apposition. <sup>7</sup> Fut. infin. with two datives, as in the text. <sup>8</sup> Pluperf. subjv. for fut. perf. ind. of the direct form.

#### Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 11, 12, and 13. (Oral.)

Temporal Clauses with antequam and priusquam, § 551 (327); B. 291-2; G. 574-7; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. a-d, 550. b, 561.

- 1. Before the battle began, Hannibal sent a letter to Eumenes.
  2. The letter carrier made it clear where the king was.
  3. ¹ After opening the letter, Eumenes did not hesitate to join battle.
  4. The jars aroused laughter among the soldiers before they saw the serpents.
  5. While they ² were dining at the house of Flaminius, mention was made of Hannibal.
  6. Ambassadors were sent to demand Hannibal from the king.
  7. The king said, "Catch him, ³ if you can."
  8. If Prusias had surrendered Hannibal, it would have been contrary to the law of hospitality.
  9. The boy did not see the armed men before they had surrounded the house.
  10. Hannibal took poison because he was mindful of his former ⁴ heroic deeds.
- <sup>1</sup> Abl. abs. <sup>2</sup> Pres. tense; see note, 4I 2. <sup>8</sup> A simple condition. <sup>4</sup> Plural of virtis.

# **VOCABULARY**

## SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

··· f }···

| a., act active.                  | neg negative(ly).               |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| abs absolute(ly).                | n neuter (intransitive).        |
| adv adverb, adverbially.         | N., neut neuter.                |
| borr borrowed.                   | num numeral.                    |
| cf compare.                      | opp opposed.                    |
| cog cognate.                     | orig originally.                |
| comp composition.                | p present participle.           |
| compar comparative.              | pass passive.                   |
| conn connection.                 | perf perfect.                   |
| decl declined.                   | perh perhaps.                   |
| def definite, defective.         | pl., plur plural.               |
| dep deponent                     | poss possibly.                  |
| dim., dimin diminutive.          | possess possessive.             |
| distrib distributive.            | p.p perfect participle.         |
| emph emphatic.                   | prob probably.                  |
| end ending.                      | pron pronoun, pronominal.       |
| Eng English.                     | reduced indicates the loss of a |
| esp cspccially.                  | syllable in derivation          |
| r., fem feminine.                | or composition.                 |
| f. p., fut. p future participle. | redupl reduplicated.            |
| fig figurative(ly).              | reflex reflexive(ly).           |
| fr from.                         | rel relative.                   |
| freq frequentative.              | sc supfly.                      |
| Gr Greek.                        | sing singular.                  |
| impers impersonal.               | Sk Sanskrit.                    |
| imv imperative.                  | st stem.                        |
| increased indicates the addition | subjv subjunctive.              |
| of a letter or letters.          | subst substantive(ly).          |
| ind indicative.                  | superl superlative.             |
| indecl indeclinable.             | term termination.               |
| indef indefinite.                | transf transferred (i.e. fr. a  |
| insep inseparable.               | proper to a forced              |
| instr instrumental.              | meaning).                       |
| intens intensive.                | unc uncertain.                  |
| interr interrogative.            | v <i>verb</i> .                 |
| irr irregular.                   | weakened indicates a change of  |
| lit literal(ly).                 | vowel.                          |
| loc locative.                    | wh which, whence.               |
| M., masc , masculine.            | ,                               |

Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.

- (-). A hyphen at the end of a word means that the word is a stem; between two words it means composition.
- (+). A plus sign indicates derivation by means of a derivative suffix following the sign.

A root is generally given in SMALL CAPITALS.

- (†). A dagger denotes a word not actually found, but assumed as having once existed.
  - (\*). An asterisk is prefixed to a word not found in classical Latin.
  - (?). A query denotes a doubtful etymology or meaning.

Full-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.

1, 2, 3, 4 refer to conjugations of verbs.



## VOCABULARY.

#### Δ

ā, see ab.

ab (a, abs) [akin to Eng. off, of], adv. (in comp.). - Prep. with abl., away from, from (cf. ex, out of). -Of place, with idea of motion, from: ab Arari iter convertere. - Of time, ab hora quarta. - Fig., from, with more or less feeling of motion: ab cohortatione profectus; ab ramis from the branches (as far as where they begin). - With expressions of measure, off, away, at a distance of: a milibus passuum duobus, two miles off. — With different notion in Eng. : oriri ab, begin with; vacuum ab, destitute of; ab tanto spatio, so far off. - Esp. with passives and similar notions, by. — Esp. also (prob. as the place whence the impression comes), on the side of, on, at, in, on the part of: a fronte; a tergo; ab infimo; ab altero latere; a re frumentaria (in respect to). - In comp., off, away, apart; not, dis-, un-.

abditus, -a, -um, p. p. of abdo.

abdo, -dere, -didi, -ditus [ab-do, put], 3. v. a., put away, remove, hide. — With reflex., conceal one's self, hide. — With in and acc., hide in, withdraw to (take refuge among),

withdraw and hide away. — abditus, -a, -um, p. p., hidden, remote, removed.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [ab-duco], 3. v. a., lead away, draw away, take away, lead off, carry away (of persons or things which move of themselves).

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [ab-eo], irr. v. n., go away, go off, retire, go (out of sight or away).

abicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectus [ab-ia-cio], 3. v. a., throw away, throw down, throw (away from one's self), throw aside.

abiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of abicio. abies, -ietis [?], F., fir or spruce (tree or wood).

abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ab-rogo (in its political sense)], 1. v. a., pass a vote to annul, annul, take away.

abs, see ab.

abscēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [abs-cedo], 3. v. n., withdraw, depart.

abscido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [abscaedo], 3. v. a., cut off, lop off, tear off, tear away. — Fig., p. p. as adj., abrupt, rough, severe: dignitas.

abscīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of abscīdo.

absconditus, -a, -um, p. p. of abscondo.

abscondo, -dere, -didi, -ditus [abscondo], 3. v. a., hide away, hide, conceal.

absens, -entis, see absum.

absimilis, -e [ab-similis, like], adj., unlike.

absisto, sistere, stiti, no p. p. [absisto], 3. v. n., stand off, stand away, withdraw. — Fig., leave off, keep aloof.

abstinentia, -ae [abstinent- (cf. abstineo) + ia], F., self-restraint (abstaining from gratifying one's passions), self-control.

abstineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus [abs-teneo], 2. v. a. and n., hold (one's self) off. — With se, keep away. — Fig., refrain, spare: proelio (refrain from giving); mulieribus (spare).

abstractus, -a, -um, p. p. of abs-traho.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [abs-traho], 3. v. a., drag off, drag away.

abstuli, see aufero.

absum, esse, fuī (āfuī), futūrus [ab-sum], irr. v. n., be away, be absent, be off (at a distance), be distant.

— Fig., non multum aberat (not far away); ab eo quin (be far from being); multum quin (lack much of, etc.); minimum quin (came very near being); a bello (keep aloof, take no part in).

— absens, p. as adj., away, absent, in one's absence.

absūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus [ab-sumo], 3. v. a., (take away), consume.

abundo, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [1 abundo-, lost adj. st., abounding; cf. abunde, abundantly], 1. v. n., overflow. — Fig., abound. — Transf. (of the place, etc., containing the thing), be strong in, be rich in, abound in.

ăc, see atque.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [ad-cedo, go or come], 3. v. n., move towards, draw near, approach, come up, come (to), advance to, advance.— Fig., come to: Remis studium (be inspired in; cf. discedo).— Esp., be added, where often an explanatory word is necessary in Eng.: huc accedere, be in addition to this; huc accedere, be in addition to this (disadvantage) that; so with quod, there was also the fact that, there was also the reason that, or simply moreover, then again.

accelero, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [adcelero, hasten; cf. celer, swift], 1. v. a. and n., hasten.

accendo, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnsus [ad-†cando, cf. candeo, glow, burn], 3. v. a., kindle, light: ignem.

acceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of accipio.
accido, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p. [adcado], 3. v. n., fall to, fall upon, fall:
tela gravius (strike). — Fig., happen,
befall, occur, present itself, turn out,
arise. — Often euphemistically for
death, defeat, etc.: si quid gravius
ei.

accipio, cipere, cept, ceptus [adcapio], 3. v. a., take, receive: exercitum (take command of).— Less exactly, volnus; incommodum (suffer, meet with).— Fig., accept, learn, hear, get, take: usus (acquire); aliquid fama (hear of).— acceptus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., acceptable.

acclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [adclamo, shout], 1. v. n., shout to, call to, exclaim at, exclaim.

acclivis, -e [ad-clivus, slope (weakened)], adj., sloping towards, rising, sloping, ascending: collis; aditus.

acclivitās, -ātis [acclivi- + tas], F., slope (upward), inclination, steepness.

Acco, -onis [Celtic], M., one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans.

accommodātus, -a, -um, p. p. of accommodo.

accommodo (adc-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [accommodo-, fitting, or ad-commodo], 1. v. a., fit on, fit: insignia (put on, adjust); annum ad cursum solis (adjust, adapt). — accommodātus, -a, -um, p. p., fitted, adapted.

accumbo, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitus [ad-tcumbo, cf. cubo], 3. v. n., recline (esp. at table).

accurate [old case-form of accuratus, done with care], adv., with care, carefully.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [adtcauso (cf. causor), assign as a reason or charge], I. v. a., accuse, blame, find fault with.

ācer, -cris, -cre [AC, sharp (cf. acus, needle) + ris], adj., sharp. — Fig., keen, active, violent.

acerbē [acerbus], adv., bitterly.— Fig. (of the mind), ferre inopiam (suffer severely from, etc.).

acerbitās, -ātis [acerbē- + tas], F., bitterness. — Concrete in plur., sufferings (with a change of point of view in Eng.).

acerbus, -a, -um [acer (treated as st.) + bus (cf. superbus)], adj., bitter (to the taste). — Fig. (to the mind), bitter, hard to bear, cruel, distressing. ācerrimē, superl. of ācriter.

acervus, -i [acer (shortened as st.) + vus], M., (pointed?), a heap, a pile.

Achillas, -ae [Gr.], M., one of the murderers of Pompey.

aciës, -ëi [AC (sharp) + ies (cf. materies)], F., point, sharp edge, edge. — Esp., line, battle line, array, army (in battle array, cf. agmen), rank (of an army in several ranks), battle, engagement: acie instructa depugnare, fight a pitched battle.

acinus, -ī (-um, -ī) [Gr.], M. (N.), a berry. — Also, a seed or stone.

ācriter [acri- + ter], adv., sharply.

— Fig., fiercely, violently, hotly (of fighting), with spirit, keenly, actively: acriter pugnatum eat, a fierce battle was fought, there was hot fighting.

Actiacus, -a, -um [Actio+ acus], adj., of Actium (a promontory and town of Greeve, off which the great victory of Octavius over Antony was gained, B.C. 31).

āctio, -onis [prob. tacti + 0, but as if AG + tio], F., a doing (including all the activities expressed by ago).

— Esp., a civil action (cf. ago, plead), a prosecution, an action (at law).

āctor, -ōris [AG + tor], M., a doer (cf. actio). — Esp., a pleader, a plaintiff, a prosecutor.

āctuārius, -a, -um [actu-, movement (AG in ago) + arius], adj., fast sailing (provided with both sails and oars). āctum, -ī [N. p. p. of ago], N., an act, a deed.

āctus, -a, -um, p. p. of ago.

acuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [acu-, sharp (in acus, needle)], 3. v. a., sharpen. — acūtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., sharpened, sharp.

acūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of acuo.

ad [?], adv. (in comp.). - Prep. with acc. — With idea of motion, to, towards, against .- Where the idea of motion is more or less obliterated, to, towards, for, at, on, against, in, near, by, in regard to. - Of time, till, at, on: ad diem, on the day. - With numerals, about. - Esp., deferre ad, lay before; ad fortunam Caesari defuit (Caesar lacked to complete, etc.); contendere ad occupandam (to, for), and often with the gerund or gerundive expressing purpose; ad certum pondus (up to, i.e. of); ad modum (in); ad impedimenta (by); ad auxilium (to give assistance); ad arbitrium (according to); proficisci ad (for); ad unum, to a man; ad celeritatem (for, in the way of); ad extremum, at last, finally. - In comp., to, towards, up to, up against, in, by, in addition, and the like.

a. d., see ante.

adāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of adigo.
adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [adaequo-, make equal; cf. aequus], I.
v. a., make equal to: moles moenibus
(make as high as).— More commonly with the verb neuter and the
acc. or dat. depending on the combined idea, become equal to, equal:
altitudinem muri (reach up to); cursum (keep up with).

additus, -a, -um, p. p. of addo. addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [ad-de (1 and 2)], 3. v. a., give to. — Also, place to, add (with acc. or absolutely), attack, put on (pedibus).

addūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus [adduco], 3. v. a., lead to, draw to, bring in (of persons), bring, draw in (towards one), drive, force: secum (take).— Fig., induce, drive, influence.

adductus, -a, -um, p. p. of adduco.
ademptus, -a, -um, p. p. of adimo.
adeo, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus [ad-eo],
irr. v. a. and n., go to, visit, get at,
come to, come up, go to (a place),
get in (to a place), advance (somewhere), attack, approach (speak
with), accost: with ad, come into the
presence of.

adeō [ad-eō, thither], adv., to that point.— Less exactly, to that degree, so much so, so.— Still weaker, in fact, indeed, at all, exactly.

adeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of adipiscor. adequito, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [adequito, ride, cf. eques], 1. v. a. and n., ride up, ride against, skirmish with (of cavalry).

adfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of adficio. adfero (aff-), -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [ad-fero], irr. v. a., bring to, bring: litteras; auxilium (render). — Fig., cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce.

adfició (aff-), -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad-facio], 3. v. a., do to, affect. — With acc. and abl., affect with, inflict upon, produce in, cause to, visit with, afflict, fill with. — In pass., suffer, receive, be in (a condition), be

afflicted by, suffer from: magno dolore adfici, be greatly distressed, be in great pain.

adfigo (aff-), figere, fixī, fixus [ad-figo, fix, fasten], 3. v. a., fasten to (by insertion or the like).

adfingo (aff-), -fingere, -finxī, -fictus [ad-fingo], 3. v. a., make up in addition. — Of rumors, invent more, add.

adfinis (aff-), -e [ad-finis, limit], adj., bordering on. — Fig., akin to (by marriage). — As noun, a kinsman, a relation (by marriage).

adfinitās (aff-), ātis [adfini-+ tas], F., nearness. — Esp. of relation by marriage, relationship, alliance, connection. — Concretely, a connection: adfinitatibus conjuncti (marriages).

adfīrmātiō (aff-), -ōnis [adfirmā-(cf. adfirmo) + tio], F., assurance. —Concretely, an assertion.

adfirmō (aff-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-firmo], 1. v. a., (establish by assertion), declare, assert.

adfixus (aff-), -a, -um, p. p. of adfigo.

adflicto (aff-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [adflicto, cf. ad-fligo], 1. v. a. freq., dash against, dash upon, dash to the ground. Hence, overthrow, overwhelm, wreck.

adflictus (aff-), -a, -um, p. p. of adfligo.

adfligo (aff.), -fligere, -flixī, -flictus [ad-fligo], 3. v. a., dash upon. Hence, overthrow, wreck, overturn: navis (shatter, damage); arbores (throw down).

adfore (aff-), see adsum.

adgredior (agg-), -gredī, -gressus [ad-gradior, step, go], 3. v. dep., go towards, go to, come to, approach, march against, attack, assail.

adgrego (agg-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-grego, flock, cf. grex, flock], I. v. a., unite in a flock, gather: se (gather around, flock to); se ad amicitiam (attach one's self to).

adhibeo, -ēre, -uī, -itus [ad-habeo], 2. v. a., have in. Hence, call in, admit, bring with (one), invite. — Fig., employ, use.

adhibitus, -a, -um, p. p. of adhibeo. adhortātiō, -ōnis [adhortā- (cf. adhortor) + tio], F., encouragement, exhortation, an address.

adhortātus, -a, -um, p. p. of adhortor.

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus [ad-hortor], 1. v. dep., encourage, address, urge, rally (soldiers).

adició (adiic-), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus' [ad-iacio], 3. v. a., throw to, hurl, fling: telum adici (be thrown to, i.e. reach); aggerem (throw up). — Fig., join to, add.

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [ad-ago], 3. v. a., drive to, drive up (of cattle, etc.). — Less exactly, drive in, drive home (of piles), move up (of towers), shoot (of weapons).

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [ademo, take], 3. v. a., take away (the action being looked upon as done to somebody, usually in the dat.).—Fig., destroy, cut off: spem; prospectum (intercept, cut off).

adipiscor, -ipiscī, -eptus [ad-apiscor, lay hold of], 3. v. dep., obtain, secure.

aditus, -ūs [ad-itus, cf. adeo, go to], M., approach, arrival, coming, access: defugere (contact, intercourse).

— Concretely, an avenue (of approach), access (excuse for approaching), admission, means of approach, means of access, way of approach, approach (in military sense).

adiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of adicio. adiungo, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [ad-iungo], 3. v. a., join to, unite to, attach, unite with, add. — Fig., win over: imperium (unite, attach, enforce).

adiuvo, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtus [adiuvo, help], 1. v. a., assist, help, help on, be of advantage, be an assistance to.

adlatus (all-), -a, -um, p. p. of adfero.

adligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-ligo], 1. v. a., bind, tie up.

admātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [admaturo, cf. maturus, early], 1. v. a., hasten: defectionem (bring to a head more quickly).

administer, -trī [ad-minister, servant], M., servant, minister: ad sacrificia (priest, celebrant).

administro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [administro, serve], I. v. a., carry into execution, perform, execute, manage, carry out, carry on (war), attend to (duties): imperia (give, carry out the duties of a commander).

admīror, -ārī, -ātus [ad-miror, wonder], 1. v. dep., be surprised, wonder at, admire. — admīrandus, -a, -um, as adj., surprising.

admissus, -a, -um, p. p. of admitto. admitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [ad-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go to), let go: admisso equo, at full speed. — Fig., allow (cf. com- and per-mitto): in se facinus (commit); dedecus (permit to be incurred, incur). — Also, pass. without in se, be committed.

admodum [ad-modum, measure, limit], adv., to a degree. Hence, very, very much, greatly, exceedingly, so (very) much.

admolior, -īrī, -ītus [ad-molior, struggle], 4. v. n., strive for: ut faceret (exert one's self).

admoneo, -ēre, -uī, -itus [ad-mo-neo], 2. v. a., warn, urge, remind.

adnuō, -nuere, -nuī, no p. p. [adnuo], 3. v. n., nod to, nod assent, assent.

adolēsco, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus [ad-olesco, grow], 3. v. n., grow up (to maturity), mature. See also adulescens.

adoptio, -onis [ad-optio, cf. adoptio], F., a taking as a child, adoption.

ador (nom. and acc.) [?], N., a grain, spelt.

adorior, -orirī, -ortus [ad-orior], 4. v. dep., (rise up against), attack, assail.

adortus, -a, -um, p. p. of adorior. adpāreō (app-), -parēre, -paruī, -paritūrus [ad-pareo, appear], 2. v. n., appear.

adparo (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-paro, make ready, cf. pareo, be on hand], I. v. a. and n., prepare, get ready, make preparations.

adpello (app-), -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [ad-pello, drive], 3. v. a. and n., land (ships), bring to land, come to land, put in. adpetō (app-), -petere, -petivī (-iī), -petītus [ad-peto, aim at], 3. v. a. and n., seek to gain, desire, aim at. — Abs., approach.

adplico (app-), -plicare, -avī (-uī), -plicatus (-plicitus) [ad-plico, fold], 1. v. a., (bend towards). — With reflex., lean against.

adpono (app-), -ponere, -posuī, -positus [ad-pono], 3. v. a., place before, set before (of food), serve up.

adporto (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-porto, carry], I. v. a., bring in, bring (to some place).

adprehendo (app-), -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus [ad-prehendo, seize], 3. v. a., seize: manum (grasp, take).

adprobo (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-probo, esteem good, cf. probus, good], I. v. a., approve of, agree with (an opinion or action).

adpropinquo (app-), -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [ad-propinquo, cf. propinquus, near], 1. v. n., approach, come nearer, come near.

adpulsus (app-), -a, -um, p. p. of adpello.

adquiësco (acq-), -quiëscere, -quiëvī, -quiëtūrus [ad-quiesco], 3. v. n., become quiet. Hence, go to one's rest, die.

adrēpō (arr-), -rēpere, -rēpsī, no p. p. [ad-repo], 3. v. n., creep to, creep up, steal up.

adreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of adripio. adrigō (arr-), -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [ad-rego], 3. v. a., set up, raise.— Fig., arouse, excite.

adripiō (arr-), -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [ad-rapio], 3. v. a., snatch up, seize, grasp.

adscendo, see ascendo.

adscēnsus, see ascensus.

adscisco (asc-), -sciscere, -scivi-scitus [ad-scisco, approve, fr. scio], 3. v. a., attach (by formal decree).— Less exactly, attach to (one's self), unite with (one's self).

adscribō (asc-), -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus [ad-scribo], 3. v. a., write down (somewhere), enroll, assign.

adsequor (ass-), -sequī, -secūtus [ad-sequor], 3. v. dep., follow after, follow up, overtake.

adsīdō (ass-), -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessūrus [ad-sido], 3. v. n., sit down (near or by something).

adsiduō (ass-), see adsiduus.

adsiduus (ass-), -a, -um [adtsiduus (SED in sedeo, sit, + uus)], adj., (sitting by), constant, continued, incessant: adsiduo, abl. as adv., continually.

adsistō (ass-), -sistere, -stitī, no p. p. [ad-sisto, place (one's self)], 3. v. n., stand by, attend, assist: in conspectu patris (appear).

adspectus (asp-), -ūs [ad-†spectus, cf. adspicio, look at], M., a looking at. — Transf., an appearance, aspect.

adspició (asp-), -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [ad-tspecio], 3. v. a. and n., look upon, behold, see, observe.

adstō (ast-), -stāre, -stitī, no p. p. [ad-sto], I.v. n., stand by, stand near. adsuēfaciō (ass-), -facere, -fēcī, -factus [†adsuē- (cf. suesco, become accustomed) -facio, make], 3. v. a., accustom, train. — Pass., be accustomed. adsuēfactus (ass-), -a, -um, p. p.

adsuētactus (ass-), -a, -um, p. p of adsuefacio.

adsuēscō (ass-), -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus [ad-suesco, become accustomed], 3. v. a. and n., accustom, become accustomed, become wonted (of animals).

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [adsum], irr. v. n., be near, be by, be present, be at hand, be here, be there, appear.

adsūrgō (ass-), -sūrgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus [ad-surgo], 3. v. n., rise up. Esp., rise up, rise (to show respect). adtulī, perf. of adfero.

Aduatuci, .ōrum [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of the Belgae (originally Germans) living on the west bank of the Meuse (later *Tongri*).

adulescens (adol-), -entis [p. of adolesco, grow up], adj., young. — As noun, a youth, young man. — With proper names, the younger (Jr., to distinguish one from his father).

adulēscentia (adol-), -ae [adules-cent- + ia], F., youth.

adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus [ad-venio], 4. v. n., come to, come up, arrive.

adventō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [ad-tvento, through advenio], 1. v. n. intens., come (to), approach.

adventus, -ūs [ad-†ventus, cf. advenio, come to], M., a coming, arrival, approach.

adversārius, -a, -um [adversō-(reduced) + arius], adj., (turned towards), opposed. — As noun, opponent, adversary, foe, enemy.

adversus, -a, -um, p. p. of adverto, in various uses.

adversus, prep. with acc., see adverto.

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [ad-verto], 3. v. a., turn towards: animum (turn the attention, notice, see animadverto), turn against, turn (to anything). — adversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., in front, opposed, opposite, in opposition, adverse, unfavorable, in the face of: hostibus adversus occurrebant (right against, in their front); res adversue, adversity, want of success. — Neut. as noun, a calamity, a misfortune. — adversus, adversum [petrified as adv., cf. versus], prep. with acc., against.

advesperäscit, -ere [ad-vesperascit], 3. v. impers., grow dark, approach evening.

advolo, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [advolo], 1. v. n., fly to, fly at. — Less exactly, of cavalry, rush at, fly at, charge upon.

aedes (-is), is [AID (cf. aestus) + es], F., (hearth, fireplace), temple. — Also (only in the plur.), a house, a dwelling.

aedificium, -ī [†aedific- (cf. aedifico) + ium], N., building. — Esp., buildings standing singly, opposed to villages, farm houses.

aedifico, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†aedific-(aedes, house, FAC in facio)], 1. v. a., build (of houses). — Less exactly, of ships.

aedīlis, -is [aedi- (as st. of aedes) + lis], M., (belonging to a temple?), an aedile, an officer at Rome.

Aegaeus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj. Ægean (of the Ægean Sea): mare Aegaeum, the Ægean.

aegerrimē, superl. of aegre.

aegre [old case-form of aeger], adv., feebly. Hence, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.

Aegyptus, -ī [Gr.], F., Egypt.

Aemiliānus, -ī [Aemiliō (reduced) + anus], M., surname of P. Cornelius Scipio, who was the adopted son of one of the Scipios, and son of L. Æmilius Paulus.

Aemilius, -1 [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. Lucius Æmilius Paulus, who fell at Cannae. — 2. Lucius Æmilius Paulus, the conqueror of Perses.

aemulātiō, -ōnis [aemulā- (st. of aemulor, rival) + tio], F., rivalry, competition.

aemulus, -a, -um [?cf. aequus], adj., rivalling, emulous. — Esp., masc. or fem. as noun, a rival.

aēneus, -a, -um [aenŏ- (reduced) (cf. aes) + eus], adj., of bronze, of copper, bronze (adj.), copper (adj.).

Aeolidēs, -ae [Greek patronymic from Aeolus], M., son of Æolus.

— Esp., Sisyphus.

Aeolius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., belonging to Eolus. — Fem. as noun, Aeolia, the country of the winds, a group of islands near Sicily (now Lipari Islands).

Aeolus, -ī [Gr.], M., Æolus, the god of the winds.

aequālis, -e [aequŏ- (reduced) + alis], adj., equal.

aequaliter [aequali- (fr. aequus, even) + ter], adv., evenly, uniformly, equally.

aequē [old case-form of aequus], adv., equally, in like manner, to the same extent.

aequinoctium, -ī [as if aequinoctindirectly fr. aequo-, equal, nox night) + ium], N., the time of the equinox, the equinox.

aequitās, -ātis [aequŏ- (even, equal) + tas], F., evenness. Hence (cf. aequus), fairness, justice. — Esp., aequitas animi, evenness of mind, contentment, resignation.

aequo, -are, -avī, -atus [aequo-, equal], I. v. a., make equal, equalise.

aequus, -a, -um [?, perh. akin to unus, formed with -cus instead of -nus], adj., even, level, equal. Hence, fair, just, equitable: mentem (unruffled); aequo Marte, on equal terms, with equal success.

'āēr, -ëris [Gr.], M., the air.

aerārius, -a, -um [aer- (as st. of aes, copper) + arius], adj., (having to do with copper). — Neut. as noun, the treasury.

aereus, -a, -um [aer- (as st. of aes, copper) + eus], adj., of copper, copper (adj.).

aes, aeris [?], N., copper (as metal for ships, or as money). Hence, money. — Esp., aes alienum, debt (another man's money).

aestās, -ātis [st. akin to aedes (hearth) + tas], F., (heat), summer (the season for military operations).

aestimātiō, -ōnis [aestimā- (st. of aestimo, value) + tio], F., valuation, estimation, value.

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aestimō-, assayer], 1. v. a., value, estimate. — Less exactly, regard: gravius (con sider more serious, of calamities).

aestuārius, -a, -um [aestu- (cf. aestus, tide) + arius], adj., (relating

12

to the tide). — Only in neut., as noun, creek, estuary, marsh.

aestus, -ūs [AID (in aedes, hearth) + tus], M., heat (plur. in same sense). Hence, boiling, tide.

aetās, -ātis [for aevitas, fr. aevo-(st. of aevum, age) + tas], F., age (of old or young): prima aetate, in childhood; aetate confectus, oppressed with years.—Also, an age (time, generation).

aeternus, -a, -um [aevŏ- (st. of aevum, age) + ternus], adj., (relating to age), eternal, lasting: aeternum, in aeternum, forever.

Aetna, -ae [Gr.], F., Mt. Ætna, the famous volcano in Sicily.

aevum, -I [1 (cf. eo, go) + vum (neut. of vus)], N., age (young or old), life: aevi brevis, short-lived. — Esp., old age, age.

aff-, see adf-.

Āfricānus, -a, -um [Africō- (reduced) + anus], adj., of Africa, African.

Africus, -a, -um [Afrŏ- (st. of Afer, African) + cus], adj., of Africa. — Esp., sc. ventus, the southwest wind (blowing from Africa to Italy). — Fem. as noun, the country or province of Africa.

āfuisse, āfutūrus, see absum. agāsō, -ōnis [?], m., a driver.

Agēdincum, -ī [Celtic], N., chief town of the Senones, on the Yonne; now Sens.

ager, agri [AG in ago (drive?) + rus, akin to Eng. acre], M., land (cultivated), fields, country (opposed to city), territory (country), cultivated lands, fields (as opposed to woods).

agg- (except agger), see adg-.

agger, eris [ad-ger (for GES in gero, as st.)], M., (that which is carried to a place), earth (for a wall), earth of a wall, a mound of earth, a wall, a rampart, a mole, a dike (either the regular earthwork of the Romans for an entrenched camp or line of circumvallation, or the dike of approach, a long sloping mound leading up to the height of the walls): cotidianus (daily addition to the dike or walls).

agitātor, -ōris [agitā- + tor], M., a driver.

agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [†agitō- (as if st. of ago, put in motion)], 1. v. a. freq., drive, chase. Hence, vex, trouble. — Fig., turn over (in mind), propose, discuss, purpose.

agmen, inis [AG (in ago, put in motion) + men], N., a moving, a march. — Concretely (of bodies in motion), a body in motion, a column, an army, a line (of troops in march), a train, a fleet. — Less exactly, an army (not in march). Phrases: primum agmen, the van; novissimum agmen, the rear; claudere (bring up the rear); conferto agmine, in close order; agmine facto, in column (of attack); agmine, on the march; agmen legionum (the main column); extremo agmine, in the rear.

āgnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitus [ad-(g)nosco], 3. v. a., recognize (in some relation to one's self, cf. co-gnosco).

āgnus, -ī [?], M., a lamb.

ago, agere, ēgi, āctus [AG, put in motion], 3. v. a., drive (apparently

from behind, cf. duco, lead): sublicas (drive down); vineas, turres, etc. (set in motion, move on, advance); ac portare (of live stock as booty, drive off). — Loosely, do (cf. "carry on"), act, treat, discuss, plead, cause, have business. — Phrases: conventum (hold); gratias (render, give, express, cf. habere and referre); convivam (act the part of); annum agens sextum et decimum, in his sixteenth year; actum erat de, it was all over with; quid agit, what is one about? quid agitur, what is going on?

agrestis, e [unc. stem (from agro-) + tis (cf. caelestis)], adj., (of the fields), belonging to the country (as opposed to the town), country, rustic. — As noun, a rustic, a peasant.

agricola, -ae [agrŏ- + cola, cf. incola], M., a husbandman, a farmer. agricultūra, see cultura.

āiō [?], 3. def. v. n., say, assert. alacer, -cris, -cre [?], adj., active, eager, spirited.

alacritās, -ātis [alacri-(eager) + tas], F., eagerness, readiness, spirit, promptness.

alacriter [alacri- + ter], adv., eagerly.

albus, -a, -um [?, cf. Alpes], adj., white (pale, opp. to ater, cf. candidus, shining white, opp. to niger): plumbum album, tin; populus (hoary).

alces, is [Teutonic, cf. elk], F., the elk (a large beast of the deer kind, resembling the moose).

ālea, -ae [?], F., a die (for playing).

Alesia, -ae [Gallic], F., a city of
the Mandubii, west of Dijon; now
Alise-Ste.-Reine.

Alexander, -drī [Gr.], M., a common Greek name. — Esp., Alexander the Great, son of Philip of Macedon.

Alexandria, -ae [Gr.], F., Alexandria, the famous city built by Alexander the Great on the coast of Egypt.

aliās [unc. case-form of alius, but cf. foras], adv., elsewhere.—
Of time, at another time: alias...
alias, now...now (cf. alius...
alius).

alienātus, -a, -um, p. p. of alieno. alienō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [alienō-, another's], I. v. a., make another's. — Also, make strange, alienate, estrange.

aliënus, -a, -um [unc. st. akin to alius, other (prob. imitated from verb-stems of 2d conj.) + nus], adj., of another, another's, of others, other people's: fines (others'); aes allenum, debt. Hence, strange, forcign, unfavorable (cf. suus), forcign to the purpose.

alio [old case-form of alius], adv., elsewhither, elsewhere (of end of motion).

aliquamdiü [aliquam-diu, cf. quam diu], adv., for some time, some time, a considerable time.

aliquando [ali- (in alius, other)
-quando, when], at some time, once.
— Emphatically, at last (at some time, though not before), at length: tandem aliquando, now at length.

aliquanto, see aliquantus.

aliquantus, -a, -um [ali- (in alius, other) -quantus, how great (cf. aliquis)], adj., considerable. — Neut.

as noun, a good deal, a considerable part. — aliquanto (as abl. of measure), by considerable, considerably, a good deal.

aliquis (-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod) [ali- (in alius, other) -quis, any], indef. pron. (more forcible than quis; not universal, like quisquam), some, any. — Emphatically, some (considerable), any (important). — As noun, some one, any one, something, anything.

aliquot [ali- (in alius, other) -quot, how many], indecl. adj., several, some (more than one, but not conceived as many).

aliter [ali- (in alius, other) + ter], adv., otherwise, differently. — Often rendered by a noun or adjective implied in the context: aliter se habere ac, be different from what, etc.

alius, -a, -ud [unc. root (cf. else) + ius], adj. pron., another (any one, not all), other, different, else, another (of the second of three or more). — Repeated (either in separate clauses or in same), one ... another, one another, one one (thing), another another: alius alio casu, one by one fate, another by another: alius atque (see atque).

all-, see adl-.

alo, alere, alui, altus [AL, nourish], 3. v. a., cause to grow, feed, nurse, support (supply with food), foster, raise, keep (of animals and gladiators): staturam (increase). — Fig., foster, foment, feed.

Alpēs, -ium [Celtic form (cf. albus) + is], F. plur., the Alps, more or less loosely used of the whole mass

of mountains between Italy (Cisalpine Gaul), Gaul, and Germany.

Alpicus, a, um [Alpi- + cus], adj, of the Alps. — Esp., M. plur. as noun, the inhabitants of the Alpine region.

alter, -era, -erum [AL- (in alius, other) + ter (for -terus, compar. suffix)], adj. pron., the other (of two) — In plur., the other party. — Repeated (cf. alius), one . . . the other, one another (of two). — In plur., one farty . . . the other. — Also, the second (of more than two), another (the second of three): dies (the second). — Also (esp. with negatives), another (besides one's self, where all are conceived as two parties, one's self and all the rest).

alternus, -a, -um [alter- (as st.) + nus], adj., alternate, reciprocal, mutual, alternating.

altitūdō, -inis [altō-(high) + tudo]. F., height, depth (cf. altus), thickness (of timber).

altus, -a, -um [p. p. of alo (nourish) as adj.], (grown high by nourishing), high, lofty. — From opposite point of view, deep. — Neut. as noun, the sea, the deep: in alto, in deep water; ex alto, from the sea; exstructis in altum, high-piled.

alūta, -ae [?, cf. alumen, alum], F., leather (of a fine sort, like morocco?).

amābilis, -e [amā- + bilis], adj., lovable.

amanter [amant- (p. of amo) + ter], adv., lovingly, affectionately.

amb- [akin to ambo, both], prep. only in comp., about, round about.

ambactus, -i [prob. German], M, a retainer, a vassal.

Ambiānī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriva, is now called from their name Amiens.

Ambibarii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., an Aremorican tribe living in a part of Normandy.

ambiguus, -a, -um [amb-taguus (AG + vus), through ambigo, plead on both sides], adj., in doubt, doubtful, dubious.

Ambiliātī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a tribe on the Somme (possibly part of the Ambibarii).

Ambiorix, -īgis [Celtic], M., an able prince of the Eburones. He caused a revolt of his nation against Cæsar, which was partially successful, and came near being entirely so. He caused Cæsar uneasiness for several years, and eluded every effort to capture him.

ambitiō, -ōnis [amb-titio, cf. ambio], F., a going round. — Esp., a canvass for office. Hence, ambition.

Ambivaretī (Ambila-),-ōrum [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a Gallic tribe, dependents of the Hædui.

Ambivaritī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a Belgic tribe on the west bank of the Meuse.

ambō, -ae, -ō (-ōrum) [akin to amb-, round about], num. adj., both (together, cf. uterque, both separately).

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ambulō-(fr. amb-, round about)], 1. v. n., walk, take a walk: in ius (go to law).

āmentia, -ae [ament-(mad) + ia], F., madness, frenzy, (mad) folly.

amīcē [old case-form of amicus],

adv., friendly, in a friendly manner: cogitare (have kind thoughts).

amīcitia, -ae [amicŏ- + tia], F., friendship, friendly relations, alliance, personal friendship (opp. to hospitium).

amīcus, -a, -um [unc. st. fr. AM (in amo, love) + cus], adj., friendly, well-disposed.—Masc. as noun, a friend, an ally.

āmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of amitto. āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus

amitto, -mittere, -miss, -missus [ab-mitto], 3. v. a., let go (away), let slip, let pass. Hence, lose (esp. of military losses).

amo, -are, -avi, -atus [?], 1. v. a., love, be fond of.

amoenus, -a, -um [stem akin to amo + nus, cf. amicus], adj., lovely, pleasant, charming: 108a.

amor, -ōris [AM (in amo) + or (for os)], M., love, affection.

āmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [ab-moveo], 2. v. a., move away, take away, remove.

Amphion, -onis [Gr.], M., a king of Thebes, husband of Niobe, famous for his performances on the lyre.

amphora, -ae [Gr.], F., (a large oblong vessel with two handles), a jar, an amphora.

amplē [old case-form of amplus], adv., widely, largely. — amplius, compar., farther, more, longer: amplius quingenti, five hundred and more; amplius obsidum (see amplus).

amplificatus, -a, -um, p. p. of amplifico.

amplifico, -are, -avī, -atus [ampli-

fice- (ample- with FAC, make)], I. v. a., increase, enlarge, extend, heighten.

amplio, -are, -avī, -atus [amplo-], 1. v. a., enlarge, extend.

amplitudo, -inis [amplo- + tudo], F., size, extent, greatness: cornuum (spread).

amplus, -a, -um [?, perh. amb-(about) + st. akin to plus, plenus], adj. Of size and extent, lit. and fig., large, wide, great, huge, spacious. — Esp., prominent, of consequence, splendid, noble, distinguished: dimissis amplioribus copiis (the greater part of). — amplius, neut. compar. as noun (cf. plus), more, a number: amplius obsidum.

an [?], conj. introducing the second member of a double question, or, or rather. — Often with the first member only implied, or. — In indir. questions, whether.

Anartes, ium [?], M. plur., a people in Dacia (*Transylvania*), on the river Theiss, at the eastern end of the Hercynian forest.

Ancalites, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a nation of Britain.

anceps, -cipitis [amb-, about, caput, head], adj., (having a head on both sides), double-headed. — Less exactly, twofold, double: proclium (on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways).

ancora, -ae [Gr.], F., anchor: in ancoris, at anchor.

Andēs, -ium [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul north of the Loire, in modern Anjou.

Andi, -ōrum, the same as Andes.

Andocombogius, -î [Celtic], M., 2 chief man of the Remi.

Androclus, -i [Gr.], a slave who cured the foot of a lion, and was afterwards recognized and spared by him.

angulus, -i [prob. anco- (st. of ancus, bent + lus], M., (a little hook), a corner.

angustē [old case-form of angustus], adv., narrowly, in narrow quarters (closely). — Fig., sparingly [cf. ample), in small quantity.

angustiae, -ārum [angustě- + ia], F. plur., narrowness (prop. concrete, narrows), a narrow pass, a pass: itinerum (a narrow pass); locorum (narrow defiles). — Fig., straits (difficult position, etc.), hard straits, difficulties.

angustus, -a, -um [angor (squeesing) + tus], adj., narrow, confined: angustiora castra (less extensive); angustiore fastigio (narrowing, sloping, drawing in). — Fig., in angusto resest, the position is critical (cf. "in a tight place").

anhēlus, -a, -um [an-(?) halus (cf. halo, breathe)], adj., panting, puffing.

anilis, -e [anu- (reduced, cf. anus, an old woman) + ilis], adj., of an old woman, an old woman's, an old lady's.

anima, -ae [ani- (treated as root, fr. AN, blow) + ma (F. of mus), cf. animus], F., breath. Hence, soul, life. — Plur., the soul (of man, abstractly).

animadversus, -a, -um, p. p. of animadverto.

animadverto, -vertere, -verti, -versus (also animum adverto) [ani-

17

mum adverto], 3. v. a., turn the mind to, attend to: in aliquem (punish, cf. the domestic "attend to").—Less exactly, observe, notice, learn.

animal, -ālis [anima- + lis, N. of adj.], N., (a creature endowed with life), an animal (including man), a living creature (opp. to booty).

animus, -ī [ani- (st. as root, fr. AN, blow) + mus], M., breath, life, soul (vital). - Usually (the above meanings being appropriated to anima, wh. see), soul (as thinking, feeling), mind, feelings, feeling, intellect (but cf. mens), spirit, heart: animus fortis, courage; levitas animi (disposition, nature), or together, want of constancy; animi mollitia, want of energy or endurance; animo paratus, resolute; animum advertere (see animadverto). -Esp. (in a good sense, often in plur.), spirit, constancy, courage, resolution: confirmare (encourage any one); telanguescere; paratus ad aliquid. --Also (as opp. to mens, wh. see), the moral powers, will, desires, affections, etc., the heart, the feelings, the disposition: ex animo, from the heart, sincerely; bono animo esse, be welldisposed, be of good cheer; offendere or avertere (feelings); magni animi, of great ambition; toto animo cogitare (deeply). - Also, animus magnus, courage, magnanimity, lofty spirit; animi magnitudo, lofty spirit; permulcere (angry spirit); animi causa, for pleasure, for amusement, for fancy. annālis, -e [anno- (reduced) + alis], adj., yearly, annual. - As noun (sc. liber, book), a record (by years), a chronicle, a report.

annotinus, -a, -um [some form of anno- (year) + tinus (cf. diutinus)], adj., last year's, old (of ships made the year before).

annus, -i [?], M., a year (as a point of time, as the course of the year, or as a period).

annuus, -a, -um [annö- + us], adj., annual: magistratus creatur (annually).

anser, -eris [for hanser, akin to goose], M., a goose.

ante [old case-form], adv., before (of place and time), in front: ante dictum (above, before, previously); ante habuerat (formerly, once); iam ante, already before, already; paucis ante diebus, a few days before; ante quam, before (with clause). — Prep. with acc., before (of place or time). — In dates, ante diem (a. d.) (on such a day before). — In comp., before (of place, time, and succession).

anteā [ante eā, case-form of is], adv. (of time), before, previously, once.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [ante-cedo], 3. v. n. and a. (fr. force of prep.), go forward, advance, surpass (in size, etc.), exceed, precede, go in advance of.

anteeo, -ire, -ivi (-ii), no p. p. [ante-eo], irr. v. n., go before, go ahead, precede.

antemna, -ae [?], F., a yard (for sails).

antepono, -ponere, -posui, -positus [ante-pono], 3. v. a., (place in advance, cf. antefero), think of more importance.

antequam, see ante.

anteverto, -vertere, -verti, -versus [ante-verto], 3. v. a., (turn in front, cf. antepono), prefer, get the start, get ahead.

Antiochus, -ī [Gr.], M., the name of several Eastern potentates. — Esp., Antiochus the Great, King of Syria, conquered by the Scipios in B.C. 190.

antiquitus [antiquo- (ancient) + tus], adv., from ancient times, from early times. — Less exactly, long ago, in early times, anciently.

Antistius, ·ī [antisti- (antistes, overseer) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Antistius Reginus, a legatus of Cæsar.

Antônius, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Marcus Antonius, Mark Antony, the famous triumvir, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul. — 2. Antony, a priest.

antrum, -ī [Gr.], N., a cave.

anxietās, -ātis [anxiŏ- + tas], F., anxiety, solicitude.

anxius, a, -um [†anxŏ- (p. p. of ango, throttle) + ius], adj., anxious, troubled, fearful.

Ap., for Appius.

apage [Gr.], interj., begone! away with you!

aperio, perire, perui, pertus [abpario, get off, cf. operio, cover], 4. v. a.,
uncover, open. — apertus, a, um, p.
p. as adj., open, exposed, uncovered,
unobstructed, unprotected: latus (the
right side, not covered by the shield);
collis (without trees); loca (open country); impetus maris (unbroken).

apertē [old case-form of apertus], adv., openly.

apertus, -a, -um, p. p. of aperio.

Apollo, -inis [?], M., the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana, god of the sun, of divination, of poetry and music, and president of the Muses. He was also god of archery, of pestilence, and on the other hand, of healing. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity.

Apollonius, -i [Gr.], surnamed Molon, a distinguished rhetorician of Rhodes.

apparo, see adparo.

1 appello, see adpello.

<sup>2</sup>appellō (adp-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†ad-pellō-, cf. compello], 1. v. a. call, name, address, call upon, style (declare one something or address in a certain character).

Appius, -ī [?, a Sabine word?], M., a Roman prænomen.

aptus, -a, -um [AP (in apiscor, lay hold of) + tus], adj., (fitted w). suited, adapted, fit, apt.

apud [akin to ab], prep. with acc., at, among, with, near, before, on one's part, in relation to (a person); at the house of, in one's house (company, possession): apud Xenophontem, in (the works of) Xenophon.

Apūlia, -ae [Apulö- + ia, F. of adj.], F., a division of Southern Italy east of Campania and Samnium, and north of Lucania.

aqua, -ae [?], F., water, a watercourse, a spring: mensurae ex aqua, by the waterclock (a contrivance like an hourglass for telling time by the running of water).

aquātio, -onis [aqua- (st. of

aquor, fetch water) + tio], F., getting water (cf. pabulatio).

aquila, -ae [F. of aquilus, dark gray, perh. remotely akin to aqua], F., an eagle. — Esp., the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff.

aquilifer, -erī [aquila-fer (reduced fr. -ferus, FER (in fero, bear) + us)], M., a standard-bearer (of the eagle).

Aquitania, -ae [F. of adj. developed fr. Aquitanus], F., the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean. (See Cæsar, I. 1.)

Aquitanus, -a, -um [?], adj., of Aquitania. — As noun, an inhabitant of Aquitania, an Aquitanian.

āra, -ae [?], F., an altar.

Arar, -aris [?], M., the Sabne, a river of Gaul rising in the Vosges and flowing into the Rhone at Lyons.

Araxes, -is [Gr.], M., the Araxes, a river in Persia.

arbiter, -trī [stem akin to ad-bito (go) + trus, cf. -trum], M., (a by-stander), a witness.— Less exactly, a referee, an arbitrator.

arbitrium, -ī [arbitrō- (umpire, judge) + ium (cf. iudicium)], N., judgment, will, pleasure (what one sees fit to do).

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus [arbitrō-, umpire, judge], 1. v. a. and n., think, judge, suppose.

arbor, -oris [?], F., a tree.

arcesso, -ere, -īvī, -ītus [akin to accedo, but the exact relation uncertain], 3. v. a., summon, invite, send for, call in.

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsus [prob.

arido-, dry], 2. v. n., be hot, he on fire.

— Fig., be excited, be in a blaze, burn.

ārdor, -ōris [ard- (as if root of ardeo) + or], M., heat, flame. — Fig., fire, fury, eagerness, zeal.

Arduenna, -ae [?], F., the Ardennes, a very large forest region in northeastern Gaul.

arduus, -a, -um [?], adj., high, steep, difficult (of ascent). — Fig., difficult: arduis rebus, hardships.

ārea, -ae [?], F., a court, a court-

Arecomici, -ōrum [?], M. plur., a branch of the Volcæ.

Aremoricus (Arm-), -a, -um [Celtic are, near, and mor, the sea], adj., only F. plur., Aremorican (of the states of Gaul near the ocean in Normandy and Brittany).

argenteus, -a, -um [argento- + eus], adj., of silver, silver (adj.).

argentum, -ī [akin to arguo, make bright], N., (the shining metal), silver.

— Also, of things made of the metal, silverware, silver.

argūtus, -a, -um [p. p. of arguo, make bright], adj., sharp, shrill: pecten (ringing).

 $\bar{a}$ ridus, -a, -um [ $\dagger$ arō- (wh. areo, be dry) + dus], adj., dry. — Neut. as noun, dry land.

aries, -ietis [?], M., a ram. — Fig., a battering ram (a long timber armed at the end with metal, for demolishing walls). — Less exactly, a buttress (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge).

Ariovistus, -ī [?], M., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who conquered and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans.

arma, -ōrum [AR, fit (cf. armus, the shoulder joint) + mus], N. plur., arms, equipment: in armis esse, to be under arms, to be ready for service, to be in service; parati in armis, armed for war; in armis, in battle; arma inferre (war); armis congressi (in battle), and the like.

armāmenta, -ōrum [armā- (st. of armo) + mentum], N. plur., (fittings), implements. — Esp., rigging, tackle.

armātūra, -ae [armā- (st. of armo) + tura], F., equipment: levis armaturae Numidae (light armed, without the heavy defensive armor of the legionary).

armātus, -a, -um, p. p. of armo. Armenia, -ae [Gr.], F., a country of Asia.

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [armō- (st. of arma)], 1. v. a., equip, arm, fit out. — Pass., arm (one's self). — armātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., armed, in arms, equipped. — Masc. plur. as noun, armed men.

arr-, see adr-.

ars, artis [AR (fit) + tis (reduced)], F., (skill in fitting), skill, art. — Plur., the arts, the useful arts. artē [old case-form of artus], adv., closely, tightly.

articulus, -ī [artu- (joint) + culus], M., a little joint. — Less exactly, a joint.

artifex, icis [†arti- (ars) -fex (FAC as st.)], M. and F., areartist.

artificium, -ī [artific- (artificer) + ium], N., a skilful contrivance, an

artifice, a trick. Also, a trade (opp. to ars, a higher art).

artus, -a, -um [p. p. of arceo (shul up)], as adj., tightly bound, close: silva (thick). — Fig., frugal, straitened, narrow.

Arvernus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj, of the Arverni (a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne). — Masc. plur. as noun, the Arverni.

arvum, -ī [AR (in aro, plough) + vum], N., land (cultivated), a field.

arx, arcis [ARC (in arceo, shut up) + is (reduced)], F., a stronghold, a fortress, a citadel.

ascendo (ads-), -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsus [ad-scando, climb], 3. v. a. and n., climb up, climb, ascend: vallum (mount, scale); navem (go on board).

ascēnsiō (ads-), -ōnis [ad-†scensio, cf. ascendo], F., (a climbing up), an ascent: ascensionem facere, climb up. ascēnsus (ads-), -ūs [ad-†scansus, cf. ascendo], M., a climbing up, an ascent, a going up. — Concr., a way up, a means of ascent: prohibere ascensu (from climbing up).

ascisco, see adscisco.

Asia, -ae [Gr.], F., the country now called Asia Minor. — Esp., the Roman province of Asia, embracing Phrygia, Caria, Mysia, and Lydia.

asinus, -ī [?], M., an ass.

aspectus, see adspectus.

asper, -era, -erum [?], adj., rough, harsh. — Fig., fierce, violent, rude, ascetic.

aspernātus, -a -um, p. p. of aspernor.

aspernor, -ārī, -ātus [†asperno-(st. akin to ab-sperno), 1. v. dep., disdain, spurn, despise.

ass-, see ads-.

Astyages, -is [Gr.], M., king of Media, father of Mandana, and grandfather of Cyrus, by whom he was deprived of his throne.

at [prob. form of ad], conj., but, but yet, at least.

ater, -tra, -trum [?], adj., black, dark, opp. to albus (dead white), cf. niger (jet black). - Fig., black, dark, gloomy, dismal.

Athēnae, -ārum [Gr.], F. plur., Athens, the great city of Attica.

Athēniensis, -e [Athena- + ensis], adj., of Athens, Athenian .- Plur. as noun, the Athenians.

Athēnodorus, -ī [Gr.], M., an Athenian philosopher.

Athesis, -is [?], M., a river in upper Italy (now the Adige).

atque (āc) [ad-que], conj., and (generally introducing some more important idea), and even, and especially, and what is more. - Also, as, than: par atque, idem atque, the same as; simul atque, as soon as; aliter ac (atque), otherwise than, different from what, etc.; aliud atque, different from, etc.

atqui [at-qui (old abl. or instr.)], conj., (but somehow), but yet, but still.

Atrebas, ātis [Celtic], adj., Atrebatian, of the Atrebates (a people of Belgic Gaul), rarely sing. of one. -Plur. as noun, the Atrebates.

atrium, -ī [atro- (st. of ater) + ium], N., the atrium, the main room, the hall, of a Roman house.

Atrius, -ī [atro-(st. of ater) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. - Esp., Quintus Atrius, a soldier in Cæsar's army.

atrox, -ocis [st. akin to ater + cus (reduced), adj., savage, cruel. -Also, of things, atrocious, inhuman, monstrous: proelium (fierce).

attendo (adt-), -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [ad-tendo], 3. v. a. and n., (stretch towards). - With or without animum, attend, notice, listen. attentus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., attentive: quaesitis (devoted to his gains).

attentus, -a, -um, p. p. of attendo. attero (adt-), -terere, -trīvī, -trītus [ad-tero], 3. v. a., rub against, rub. -From the effect, rub off, wear away.

Atticus, -I [Gr.], M., surname of Titus Pomponius Atticus, a Roman historian, a great friend of Cicero. He lived chiefly in Athens, whence his surname.

attineo (adt-), -tinere, -tinui, -tentus [ad-teneo], 2. v. n., (hold out towards). - Fig., pertain, relate.

attingo (adt-), -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [ad-tango], 3. v. a., touch upon, touch, reach, join (of a nation's boundaries).

attonitus, -a, -um [p. p. of attono, strike with a thunderbolt ], adj., thunderstruck, spellbound, awestruck.

attribuo (adt-), -buere, -bui, -būtus [ad-tribuo], 3. v. a., allot to, assign. attuli, see adfero.

auctor, -oris [AUG (in augeo, in-

crease) + tor], M., a voucher (for any act or statement), an authority, an adviser, an author, a promoter: victoriae (a cause or source); auctor esse, approve, advise.

auctoritas, -ātis [auctor- (as if i-st.) + tas], F., influence, prestige, authority (not military or political, cf. imperium and potestas), dignity.

auctus, -a, -um, p. p. of augeo. audācia, -ae [audac- (bold) + ia],

F., daring, boldness, effrontery, audacity.

audācter [audac- (bold) + ter], adv., with daring, boldly, fearlessly (but used of an enemy): audacissime, with the greatest daring.

audeo, audere, ausus [prob. avido-, eager], 2. v. a. and n., dare, venture, risk, dare to try (or do).—ausus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, daring.

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [prob. akin to auris, ear], 4. v. a., hear, hear of, listen to.

audītiō, -ōnis [audī- (st. of audīo)
tio], F., a hearing, hearsay, report.
audītus, -a -um, p. p. of audīo.

aufero, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [ab(s) -fero], irr. v. a., take away, carry off, remove.

augeo, augere, auxī, auctus [AUG (causative or fr. unc. noun-st.)], 2. v. a., increase, magnify, enhance, add to (something). — Pass., increase, grow.

Augustus, -ī [augustus, venerable, august], M., a title (used as a surname) of Octavius Cæsar.

Aulercus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., of the Aulerci (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul). — Plur. as noun, the Aulerci.

aura, -ae [AU (blow) + ra (F. of

rus)], F., air (in motion), a breeze — More gen., the air.

Aurēlius, -ī [for Auselius, akin to aurum, Aurora, and uro], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Aurelius Cotta, a consul in Hannibal's time.

aureus, -a, -um [aurŏ- + eus]. adj., of gold, golden.

auriga, -ae [poss. akin to auris and ago, cf. aurea, headstall], M. and F., a charioteer, a driver.

auris, is [akin to ear (cf. audio)], F., an ear: auris mihi praebete, give attention to me, "lend me your ears."

aurum, -ī [akin to uro, burn], N., gold.

Aurunculēius, -ī [Aurunculō-(dim. of Auruncus, name of an Italian tribe) + eius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar.

auscultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†ausculta-, for auricula], 1. v. n., hear with attention, listen.

Auster, -tri [US (burn) + ter (1-tro, cf. -trum)], the south wind (dry and hot). — Personified, Auster, the god of the South Wind.

ausus, -a, -um, p. p. of audeo.

aut [?, but cf. autem], conj., or (regularly exclusive, cf. vel). — Repeated, either . . . or.

autem [?, akin to aut], conj., but (the weakest degree of opposition. cf. sed), on the other hand, then again, now (explanatory), whereas (in slight opposition to something preceding), however.

autumnus (auct-), -ī [for †auc-

tominus, †aucto- (cf. augeo, increase) + minus], autumn (the season of increase).

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus [†auxilio-, help], 1. v. dep., give assistance.

auxilium, -ī [†auxili- (akin to augeo, increase) + ium], N., assistance, aid, remedy, relief: extremum (the last resource); ferre (to assist, to aid ); auxilio (as a reënforcement ); quos auxili causa habebat (as auxiliaries, etc. - Plur., auxiliaries (as opp. to the regular heavy-armed infantry), reënforcements: auxilia tardare, hinder from rendering assistance.

Avaricum, -ī [Celtic], N., a town of the Bituriges, now Bourges.

avāritia, -ae [avaro- (g reedy) + tia], F., covetousness, greed, avarice.

avārus, -a, -um [†avā- (st. akin to aveo) + rus (cf. gnarus)], adj., avaricious, covetous, greedy.

ave [imv. of aveo, be happy], farewell, hail (in salutations).

avēna, -ae [?], F., oats, oat straw. aveo, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [prob. tavo- (AV (desire) + us)], 2. v. a., desire earnestly, be eager.

aversus, -a, -um, p. p. of averto. āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [ab-verto], 3. v. a., turn aside, turn away, turn off, push aside.aversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., turned away. Hence, flying, also, with a change of point of view in translation, in the rear (of that to which the word is applied): ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur (by the enemy getting in their rear, etc.).

avia, -ae [avo-+ia], F., a grandmother.

avidus, -a, -um [tavo- (cf. aveo and avarus) + dus], adj., eager, desirous.

avis, -is [unc. root + is], F., a bird. avus, -ī [?], M., a grandfather.

Axona, -ae [Celtic], F., a river of Gaul (now Aisne), a tributary of the Isara (Oise).

В

23

Babylon, -onis [Gr.], F., an ancient and renowned city on the Euphrates river, taken by Cyrus the Great.

Babylonicus, -a, -um [Babylon- + icus], adj., Babylonian, Babylonic.

Babylonius, -a, -um [Babylon-+ ius], adj., Babylonian. - M. plur. as noun, the Babylonians.

Bācenis, -is [Teutonic], F., with silva, a forest of Germany between the Cherusci and the Suevi.

baculum, -ī [?], N., a staff, a sceptre, a wand.

Baebius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. - Esp., Cnaus Babius Tamphilus and Marcus Bæbius Tamphilus, consuls in Hannibal's

Baleāris, e [?], adj., Balearic (belonging to the Baleares insulae, in the Mediterranean, now Iviza, Majorca, and Minorca, famous for their slingers).

balneum, -i (plur. -ae or -a) [Gr.], N. and F., a bath, a bath-room.

barba, -ae [?], F., the beard.

barbarus, -a, -um [prob. fr. imitation of unintelligible speech, cf. balbus, stammering], adj., foreign (not Greek or Latin), uncivilized, savage, barbarian, of the barbarians.

— Masc. plur. as noun, barbarians, the barbarians or savages.

Basilus, -ī [?], M., agnomen of Lucius Minucius Basilus, an officer in Cæsar's army.

Batavi, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., the Batavi or Batavians, a nation occupying the region about the mouths of the Rhine.

beātus, -a, -um, p. p. of beo.

Belgae, -ārum [?], M. plur., the Belgae or Belgians, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul.—Perh. also a small tribe of that nation with this special name.

Belgium, -ī [Belga + ium], N., the country of the Belgæ.

bellē [old case-form of bellus], prettily, neatly, finely, well.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellicŏ- (of war) + osus], adj., warlike.

bellicus, -a, -um [bellŏ- (war) + cus], adj., of war, in war.

bello, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [bello-, war], 1. v. n., fight, make war.

Bellovacī, -ōrum [?], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise, about modern Beauvais.

bellum, -ī [old duellum (fr. duo), a strife between two], N., war, a war: bello persequi, etc. (in arms); bellum inferre, make war (offensive); bellum

defendere, defend one's self from war; parare bellum, make warlike preparations, prepare for war.

bellus, -a, -um [contr. from benulus, from bonus (cf. bene)], adj., pretty, handsome, agreeable, lovely.

bene [old case-form of bonus, good], adv., well: bene habet, it is well.

beneficium, -ī [beneficŏ- (reduced) (cf. bene, FAC in facio) + ium], N., well-doing, a service, a favor, a kindness, often rendered by Eng. plur., services, favors shown, services rendered.

benignē [old case-form of benignus, kind], adv., kindly, generously.

benīgnitās, -ātis [benignō-(kind) + tas], F., kindness, courtesy.

beō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a. bless, make happy, gladden. — beātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., happy, fortunate, blessed.

bēstia, -ae [?], F., a brute (as oppto man, cf. belua, a monster or ferocious beast), a beast, an animal.

bēstiola, -ae [bestia- + ola (fem. of olus, dim. ending)], F., a little animal, a "beastie."

bibliothēca, -ae [Gr.], F., a library. bibō, bibere, bibī, bibitus [redupl. unc. root, cf. potus], 3. v. a., drink.

Bibracte, -is [Celtic], N., the chief town of the Hædui (Mont Beauvray) near Autun, which was founded later.

Bibrax, -ctis [cf. last word], F., 2 town of the Remi.

Bibroci, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of southeast Britain.

Bibulus, -ī [bibo- (drinking) +

lus], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus (Calpurnius) Bibulus, Cæsar's colleague in the consulship.

bīduum, -ī [bi- (for dvi-, akin to 'duo) -duum (akin to dies)], N., two days' time, two days.

bīnī, -ae, -a [bi- (for †dvi-, akin to duo) + nus], distrib. num. adj., plur., two each, two sets of, two (of things in pairs or sets).

bipedālis, -e [biped- (bi-ped-, in pes, foot) + alis], adj., of two feet (in measure), two feet (long, wide, etc.).

bis [for dvis, unc. case-form of duo], adv., twice.

Bīthyniī, -ōrum [Gr.], M. plur., the Bithynians, people of Bithynia in Asia Minor.

Bituriges, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul, in two branches, Vibisci (around Bordeaux) and Cubi (around Bourges).

Blannovii, -orum [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe, dependents of the Hædui.

Blithō, -ōnis [?], M., a Roman family name. See Sulpicius.

Bocchus, -ī [?], M., a king of the Gætuli, conquered by Marius.

Boduognātus, -ī [Celtic], M., a leader of the Nervii.

Boia, F. sing. of Boii, Boia.

Bōiī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic nation, of which a part occupied lands in Cisalpine Gaul, a part settled in Pannonia, and a part joined the Helvetii in their emigration.

Boiorix, -igis [Celtic], M., a leader of the Cimbri, conquered by Marius.

bonus, a, um [?], adj., good: bono animo esse, to be well disposed. dapis meliora (the better parts); optimum est, it is best. — Neut. as noun, good, advantage; plur., goods, property, estate.

bos, bovis [akin to cow], c., a bull, a cow, an ox.—Plur., cattle, oxen.

\* brabēum, -ī [Gr.], N., a prize. bracchium (brāch-), -ī [?], N., an arm.

Brannovices, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a division of the Aulerci living near the Hædui.

Bratuspantium, -i [Celtic], N., a fortified town of the Bellovaci, not certainly identified.

brevis, -e [for thregus (BRAGH, break + us)], adj., short (of space or time): dominus (short-lived); brevi, in a short space.

brevitās, -ātis [brevi- + tas], F., shortness, short stature: brevitas temporis, want of time.

Britannī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., the Britons (including all the tribes of Britain).

Britannia, -ae [†Britannö- + ia (f. of ius)], f., Britain.

Britannicus, -a, -um [†Britannŏ-+ cus], adj., of Briton, Briton: bellum (with Britain).

brūma, -ae [brevi- (short) + ma (superl.), sc. dies], F., the winter solstice.

Brundisium, -ī [?], N., a port of Apulia (now Brindisi).

Brūtus, -ī [brutus, heavy], a family name at Rome. — Esp.: 1. Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus, a legatus

of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Junius Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins. He was afterwards killed in Gaul by order of Antony. — 2. Marcus Junius Brutus, mentioned above.

С

C, for centum, hundred. C., for Gaius.

Cabillonum, -ī [Celtic], N., a town of the Hædui on the Saone (Chalon-sur-Saône).

cacumen, -inis [?], N., the top (of trees, mountains, etc.).

cadaver, -eris [akin to cado, fall], N., a corpse, a body (dead).

cado, cadere, cecidi, casurus [CAD, fall], 3. v. n., fall, be killed.

cādūceus, -ī [akin to Gr.], M., a herald's staff, the token of a peaceful embassy.

Cadūrcus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., of the Cadurci (a tribe of Aquitania).

— Plur. as noun, the Cadurci.

Caecubus, -a, -um [?], adj., Caecuban, of Caecubum, a place in Latium celebrated for its wine.—
Neut. as noun (sc. vinum), Caecuban (wine).

caecus, -a, -um [?], adj., blind. caedēs, -is [†caed (as if root of caedo, kill) + is or es], F., a mur-

der, a massacre, slaughter, killing.

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus
[prob. causative of cado, cf. fall,
fell], 3. v. a., strike, strike down, cut,
fell, cut down, slay.

caelestis, -e [tcaelit- (st. of caeles, fr. caelum) + tis], adj., heavenly. — Plur. as noun, the gods.

caelum, -ī [?], N., the sky, the heavens, heaven.

caenōsus, -a, -um [caenō- + osus], adj., filthy, foul.

caenum, -ī [?], N., dirt, filth, mud, mirc.

caerimonia, -ae [?], F., a rite, a ceremony.

Caerosi, -orum [?], M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

caeruleus, -a, -um [perh. akin to caesius, bluish], adj., dark blue.

Caesar, -aris [?], M., a family name in the gens Iulia. — Esp., Caius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul and the author of the Commentaries.

caesus, -a, -um, p. p. of caedo.

calamitās, -ātis [?], F., disaster, (orig. to crops?), defeat, misfortune, loss.

\*calceārius, -ī [calcŏ- + arius], m... a shoemaker, a dealer in shoes.

calceus, -ī [calc- (calx, heel) + eus], M., a shoe.

calculus, -ī [calc- (calx, lime) + ulus (as if calco- + lus)], M., a pebble, a stone for reckoning. Hence, fig., a relation of calculos revocare, state and calculos revocare calculations.

[unc. case-form (akin to caleo, be hot) -facio], I. v. a., heat, make hot.

Caletes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe in Normandy on the Seine.

Caleti, -orum, same as the preceding.

callide [old case-form of callib dus], adv., shrewdly, craftily.

callidus, -a, -um [†callo- (cf. callum, thick skin) + dus], adj., (tough?), shrewd, cunning, skilful.

cālo, -onis [?], M., a servant (of a soldier), a camp follower.

Calpurnia, -ae [?], F., Cæsar's wife.

calumnia, -ae [fcalumno- (cf. calvor, deceive) + ia], F., a false prosecution.

calvitium, -I [calvo- + tium], N., baldness.

calvus, -a, -um [?], adj., bald.

Calvus, -ī [calvus], M., a Roman surname. - Esp., Caius Licinius Macer Calvus, a poet and orator.

Cambyses, -is [Gr.], M.: 1. The father of Cyrus the Great. - 2. Son of Cyrus.

Camers, -ertis [?], adj., of Camerinum, Camertian. - Masc. plur. as noun, the Camertians.

Campānus, -a, -um [campŏ- (reduced) + anus], Campanian, of Campania, a district of southern Italy.

campester, -tris, -tre [campo-+ ster, as if tcampet- + tris (cf. equestris)], adj., of the plain: loca (level plains).

campus, I [ ]. W. a plain, a field. candeo, ere, -cl, no p. ( tando-(CAN in canus, white)], w v. n., be brilliant, shine, glow (with a glistening color).

candidus, -a, -um [†candŏ-(whence

candeo) + dus], adj., shining, white, bright.

Caninius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. - Esp., Caius Caninius Rebilus, a legatus of Cæsar.

canis, -is [?], M. and F., a dog. canistrum, -ī [Gr.], N., a basket.

Cannae, -ārum [?], F. plur., a town of Apulia in Italy, where Hannibal totally defeated the Romans.

Cannēnsis, -e [Canna- + ensis], adj., of Cannae.

Cantium, -i [Celtic], N., Kent, the southeast corner of Great Britain.

canto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [canto-, song], I. v. a., produce melodious sounds, sing, sound, play (an instrument).

cantus, -us [CAN (sing) + tus], M., a song, melody, music.

capax, -ācis [CAP (in capio) + ax (as if, perh. really, †capā- + cus reduced)], adj., wide, capacious.

capillus, -ī [adj. form akin to caput, head], M., the hair (collectively).

capio, capere, cepi, captus [CAP], 3. v. a., take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize: arma (take up). - Less exactly, choose, select: locum. - So also (esp. of ships, etc.), reach: portus (arrive at, make). -Fig., take in (deceive), captivate, beguile, experience (dolorem): consilium (adopt); quietem (take, enjoy); fugam (take to).

capitālis, -e [capit- + alis], adj., (relating to the head or life), capital, involving life: causa.

Capitolium, -ī [developed from capit-], N., the Capitol at Rome.

capra, -ae [?], F., a she-goat.

captīvus, -a, -um [as if tcaptī-(imaginary st. of capto, fr. capio) + vus], adj., captīve. — Masc. as noun, a captīve, a prisoner.

captō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [captō- (cf. capio)], I. v. a. freq., seize eagerly, catch at, watch for.

captus, -a, -um, p. p. of capio.

captus, -us [CAP (in capio) + tus], M., a seizing. Hence, what one can grasp. — Fig., capacity, character, nature.

Capua, -ae [?], F., the chief city of Campania in Italy, famed for its wealth and luxury.

caput, -itis [?, akin to head], N., the head: capite solo ex aqua exstare, have only the head above water.—
Less exactly, person (cf. "head of cattle"), mouth (of a river).— Fig., life: poenam capitis (of death); capitis periculo (of life); capitis damnare (to death).

carcer, -eris [Gr.], M., a prison.
careo, -ere, -uī, -itūrus [?], 2. v. n.,

be without, go without, be free from, keep away from.

carina, -ae [?], F., a keel, the bottom (of a ship).

carmen, inis [akin to cano], N., a song, music, a foem, a magic formula, an incantation, a charm.

Carnutes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic people between the Loire and the Seine, about Orleans.

caro, carnis [akin to crudus and raw], F., flesh, meat. — Plur., preces of meat.

carpō, -pere, -psī, -ptus [akin to harvest], 3. v. a., pluck: viam (take).

carrum, -ī [Celtic], N., a cart (of the Gauls).

carrus, -ī, M., another form for carrum.

Carthāginiēnsis (Kar-), e [Carthagin- (as if -ini-) + ensis], adj., of Carthage, Carthaginian. — Masc. as noun, a Carthaginian.

Carthago (Kar-), -inis [prob. Gr.], F., Carthage, the famous city in Africa once the rival of Rome.

cārus, -a, -um [?], adj., dear, frecious, valuable.

Carvilius, -I [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Also, a king of part of Kent.

Casca, -ae [?], M., surname of C. Servilius, one of Cæsar's assassins.

cāseus, -ī [?], M., cheese.

Cassī, -ōrum [Celtic, cf. Veliocasses and Cassivellaunus], M. plur., a British tribe.

Cassius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Cassius Longinus, one of Cæsar's assassins.

Cassivellaunus, -ī [Celtic], M., a British chief ruling north of the Thames, who took command of the general resistance of his countrymen to Cæsar, but was finally reduced to submission.

castellum, -ī [castrŏ- (fortress) + lum (N. of lus)], N., a fortress, a stronghold, a fort, an outwork, a redoubt.

Castor, -oris [Gr.], M., twin brother of Pollux, son of Jupiter and Leda, worshipped as a divinity, along with his brother, by the Greeks and Romans.

castrum, -ī [SKAD (cover) +

trum], N., a fortress. — Plur., a camp (fortified, as was the manner of the Romans): in castris, in camp, also in service; castra ponere, pitch a camp; castra movere, break camp, move.

casus, -us [CAD (in cado, fall) + tus], M., (what befalls), an accident, a chance (good or bad), a fate, a mischance, a misfortune, a downfall: casu, by accident, by chance; casu devenit, chanced to, etc.; quarum rerum casus (the occurrence, the happening, the possibility); belli casum sustinere (take the chances); ad omnes casus, against all accidents; in eum casum deduci (that pass).

catellus, -i [catulo- (whelp) + lus], a puppy.

catena, -ae [?], F., a chain (for prisoners), a cable.

Catō, -ōnis [prob. catō-(cat) + ō (cf. Catulus)], M., a Roman family name.

— Esp., Marcus Porcius Cato Uticensis, famous for the constancy (perhaps obstinacy) of his character and for his death at Utica, which he sought with his own hands rather than submit to Cæsar.

Catulus, -i [dim. of Catulus], M., Valerius Catullus, one of the greatest of Roman lyric poets.

causa, ae [?], F., a cause, a reason, an excuse, grounds, an occasion, a motive (for an act), a right (to anything). Abl. after a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for, on behalf of: libertatis causa; praedandi causa (to, etc.); insidiarum causa, for an ambuscade; animi causa, for amusement, for fancy. — Also, a

cause (in law), a case: causa cognita, after trial. Hence, also, a situation, a case: in eadem causa, in the same situation, on the same side.

causor, .ārī, .ātus [causa-], I. v. dep., assign or give as a reason (real or feigned), pretend, allege.

cautē [old case-form of cautus], adv., with caution, cautiously.

cautes, is [akin to cos, whetstone], F., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.

cautus, -a, -um, p. p. of caveo.

caveo, cavere, cavi, cautus [perh. SKV, cover], 2. v. n. and a., be on one's guard, guard against (something), take or give security, beware of.

cavum, -ī [N. of cavus, hollow, as noun], N., a hole, a cave.

CC, for ducenti, -ae, -a, two hundred.

CCCC, for quadringenti, -ae, -a, four hundred.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus [?], 3. v. n., make way (in any direction). — Esp., give way, retreat, retire, depart: cedentes, the flying. — Fig., yield: fortunae.

cedrus, -ī [Gr.], F., cedar, juniper tree.

celebrō, āre, āvī, ātus [celebri-(reduced)], I. v. a., crowd, throng, frequent. Hence, celebrate, extol, praise. celer, -eris, -ere [CEL (in cello, rush) + ris], adj., swift, quick,

speedy, fast: motus (sudden).

celeritās, -ātis [celeri- (in celer) + tas], F., swiftness, activity, speed, promptness: ad celeritatem onerandi, to secure quick loading; itineris (quick marching).

30

celeriter [celeri- (in celer) + ter]. adv., quickly, speedily, very soon, soon.

cēlo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?, akin to clam, secretly, and caligo, mist ], 1. v. a., conceal, hide: arma. - Pass., pass unnoticed.

Celtae, -ārum [Celtic], M. plur., a great race in Gaul and Britain. -More particularly, the Celts (in a narrower sense, occupying the interior of Gaul).

Celtillus, -i [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix.

cēna, -ae [?], F., a dinner, a meal, a repast, a banquet.

Cēnabēnsis, -e [Cenabo- + ensis], adj., of Cenabum, of the Cenabenses, the people of Cenabum.

Cēnabum (Gēn-), -ī [Celtic], N., the chief city of the Carnutes, now Orleans (from its later name, urbs Aurelianensis).

Cēnimāgnī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a British tribe.

cēno, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cena-], I. v. n., dine.

Cēnomānī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a division of the Aulerci.

cēnseo, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus [?], 2. v. a., (perh. fine), reckon, estimate. - Less exactly, give one's opinion, advise, determine.

Centenius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. - Esp., Caius Centenius, a Roman prætor, conquered by Hannibal.

centēsimus, -a, -um [centŏ- + esimus], num. adj., the hundredth.

centum (C) [akin to hund-red], indecl. num. adj., a hundred.

centurio, -onis [centuria- (century) + 0], M., a centurion. A subaltern officer from the ranks, commanding a 'century,' originally a hundred men.

cēra, -ae [Gr.], F., wax, a writing tablet (covered with wax).

cerevisia, -ae [Celtic], F., beer.

cernere, crēvī, crētus (sifted, separated), certus (determined) [CER-, separate], 3. v. a., Hence, distinguish, see, separate. behold, descry, discern. - Also, determine.

certamen, -inis [certa- (in certo, cf. cerno) + men], N., a struggle, a contest, rivalry.

certe [old case-form of certus], adv., certainly, surely, at least (surely what is mentioned, if nothing more). certo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [certo-],

I. v. n., strive, contend, fight.

certus, -a, -um, p. p. of cerno, as adj, determined, fixed, certain (of the thing as well as the person), definite, sure, established, regular: certiorem facere, inform, order; dies certa, an appointed day or time; certa subsidia (regular, as organized beforehand); certum in locum (particular.

cervix, -īcis [akin to cerebrum, the brain], F., the neck.

cervus, -i [root of cornu (horn) + vus], M., a stag; plur., in military language, a structure of forked stakes (like stag's horns), chevaux-defrise.

cesso, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cesso- (p. p. of cedo)], I. v. n. freq., linger, delay. (cēterus), -a, -um [CE (in ecce,

behold, hic, this) + terus (cf. alter)], adj., the other, the rest of (cf. alius, other, not including all).— Usually plur., the rest, the remaining, the others; frumento ceterisque rebus (everything else necessary, where aliis would mean some other things).

Cethegus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Publius Cornelius Cethegus, a Roman consul in Hannibal's time.

Cevenna, -ae [Celtic], F., the Cevennes, a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley.

Chēruscī, .orum [?], M. plur., a tribe of the Germans between the Weser and the Elbe.

chirographum, -I [Gr.], N., a handwriting, hand, a writing, a receipt.

Christus, -ī [Gr.], M., Christ.

cibārius, -a, -um [cibō-, food (reduced) + arius], adj., pertaining to food. — Neut. plur. as noun, provisions.

cibus, -ī [?], M., food.

cicătrix, -îcis [?], F., a scar.

cicer, -eris [?], N., the chickpea, chickpease.

Cicero, -ōnis [cicer (chickpea) + 0, orig. a nickname, possibly from excrescences on the nose], M., a name of a Roman family from Arpinum.

— Esp. 1. Marcus Tullius Cicero, the great orator. — 2. Quintus Tullius Cicero, his brother, in Cæsar's service in Gaul as legatus.

Cimber, -brī [?], adj., Cimbrian.

— As noun, a Cimbrian, one of a German tribe living in Jutland, who

overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered at Aquæ Sextiæ and Vercellæ by Marius and Catulus, B.C. 102 and 101.

Cingetorix, -igis [Celtic], M.: 1.

A leader of the Treveri, brotherin-law of his rival, Indutiomarus.—
2. A British prince in Kent.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus [?], 3. v. a., surround, encircle. — Less exactly, man (occupy in a circuit, of walls).

Cinna, -ae [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., L. Cornelius Cinna, a colleague of Marius, and one of his adherents in the civil war with Sulla.

cippus, -ī [?], M., a stake, a pillar, a post. — Plur., apparently jocosely used of a peculiar form of palisades, boundary posts (?), chevaux-de-frise.

Circaeus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of Circe.

Circe, -es (ae) [Gr.], F., a daughter of the sun, said to have fled from Colchis to Circeii in Italy. She was famous for her sorceries, by which she changed her guests into beasts.

circiter [circo- (around) + ter], adv. and prep. with acc., about. — Fig. (of time, number, and quantity), about (in the neighborhood of), near, not far from.

circuitus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumeo. circuitus, -ūs [circum-itus], M., a circuit (a going round), a circuitous route, a circumference: in circuitu, all around.

circulus, -ī [circŏ- (cf. circum) + lus], M., a circle.

circum [acc. of circo-, around (cf. curvus)], adv. and prep. with acc., about, around.

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [circum-claudo], 3. v. a., enclose around, encircle, place a band around.

circumdatus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumdo.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus [circum-2do], I. v. a., put around: murus circumdatus, (encircling, thrown around).— By a confusion of ideas, surround, encircle: aciem redis.

circu(m)eō, -īre, -iī, -itus [circum-eo], irr. v. n., go around. — Becoming active, visit, make a tour of: hiberna; make the round of: foris.

circumfundo, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [circum-fundo], 3. v. a., pour
around. — Pass. (as reflexive), pour
in, rush around, rush in on all sides.
— Also (cf. circumdo), surround:
multitudine praesidia (surround with
a swarming multitude).

circumicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectus [circum-iacio], 3. v. a., throw around.

— Esp., in a military sense, hurl around, throw around: circumiecta multitudine (assailing on all sides).

circumiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumicio.

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [circum-munio], 4. v. a., fortify around, throw fortifications around, fortify, protect (by a fortification).

circummunitus, -a, -um, p. p. of circummunio.

circumplector, -plectī, -plexus [circum-plecto, twine], 3. v. dep., embrace, surround.

circumsedeo, -sedere, -sedi, -sessus [circum-sedeo], 2. v. a., sit around, surround. Hence, block-ade, besiege.

circumsiliō, -silīre, no perf., no p. p. [circum-salio, leap], 4. v. n., jump or hop around.

circumsisto, -sistere, -steti, no p. p. [circum-sisto, place (one's self)], 3. v. a., stand around, flock around, rally around, surround, hem in, beset.

circumsto, -stare, -steti, no p. p. [circum-sto, stand], I. v. a., surround, stand around.

circumvāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [circum-vallo, intrench], 1. v. a., surround with walls, blockade, invest.

circumvenio, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [circum-venio, come], 4. v. 2., surround. — Fig. (cf. "get round"). impose upon, defraud, betruy, circumvent.

circumventus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumvenio.

circus, -i [?], M., a circus (a building, orig. oval, for races, contests, etc.), an arena.

cis [case-form of ce (cf. ec-ce, cetera)], adv. and prep. with acc., this side, this side of.

Cita, -ae [perh. cr (in cieo) + ta (cf. nauta)], M., a Roman family name. — Only, Caius Fufius Cita, a Roman knight doing business in Cenabum.

citātus, -a, -um, p. p. of cito.

citer, -ra, -rum [CE (cf. cis) + terus (reduced, cf. alter)], adj., on this side (rare and antiquated). — Usually citerior (compar.), nearer,

kither (as adj.): Gallia (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps as opp. to Farther Gaul).

cito, -are, -avī, -atus [cito- (fr. cieo, put in motion)], 1. v. a. intens., urge on, hurry. — citatus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., in haste: citatus fertur, runs very rapidly.

cito [abl. of citus (fr. cieo, put in motion)], adv., quickly: citissime, very rapidly.

citrā [case-form, F. of citer], adv. and prep. with acc., this side, within (as opp. to beyond).

civicus, -a, -um [civi- + cus], adj., of a citizen, pertaining to a citizen (more literal than civilis), civic.

cīvīlis, -e [civi- (lengthened) + lis], adj., of a citizen (or citizens), courteous, civil, polite: bellum (civil); ius (civil, as opp. to natural).

cīvīliter [civili- + ter], adv., as becomes a citizen, courteously, politely.

cīvis, is [CI (in quies, rest) + vis (weakening of -vus)], M. and F., a citizen, a fellow-citizen.

cīvitās, -ātis [civi- + tas], F., the state of being a citizen, citizenship. — Esp., Roman citizenship, the Roman franchise. — Less exactly, a body of fellow-citizens, the citizens (as a body), one's fellow-citizens, a state (composed of citizens), a city (because the city was the state), a nation, a tribe (politically): expellit ex civitate (from the country).

clādēs, -is [?], F., a disaster, a defeat. clam [case of st. akin to caligo, mist, etc.], adv. and prep. with abl., secretly: fore clam, will not be found out. clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of clamo], 1. v. a., keep crying out, vociferate, cry out, shout.

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [noun st. akin to calendae], 1. v. n., shout, exclaim.

clāmor, -ōris [clam (as if root of clamo) + or], M., a shouting, a shout, a cry, an outcry.

clandestinus, -a, -um [unc. st. (perh. manufactured from clam) + tinus], adj., secret, clandestine.

clārus, -a, -um [CLA (in clamo) + rus], adj., bright, clear. — Fig., famous, conspicuous.

classiārius, -a, -um [classi- + arius], adj., belonging to a fleet. — Masc. plur. as noun, naval forces, seamen.

classicum, -ī [classi- + cum (N. of cus)], N., (belonging to the army, see classis), a signal for battle, a trumpet-call.

classis, is [CLA (in clamo) + tis], F., (a summoning). — Less exactly, the army (called out). — Esp., an army called out for duty at sea, a fleet (the most common later meaning).

Clastidium, -ī [?], N., a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

Claudia, -ae [F. of Claudius], F., a Roman female name.

Claudius, -ī [claudo- (lame) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name, probably borrowed from the Sabines. — Esp.: I. Appius Claudius, consul with L. Domitius in B.C. 54. — 2. Marcus Claudius Marcellus, see Marcellus.

claudo, claudere, clausi, clausus

[of unc. form., akin to clavis, key], 3. v. a., close, shut, fasten, shut in.— Esp., claudere agmen, close the line of march, bring up the rear.

clausula, -ae [clausŏ- (cf. claudo) + ula, dim. ending], F., a conclusion (of a speech).

clausus, -a, -um, p. p. of claudo. clāvis, -is [CLAV (fasten) + is], F., a key.

clavus, -ī [akin to clavis and claudo], M., a nail, a spike.

clementer [clement- (gentle) + ter], adv., mildly, mercifully, with forbearance.

clémentia, -ae [clement- (gentle) + ia], F., kindness, gentleness, humanity, clemency.

Cleopatra, -ae [?], F., the famous queen of Egypt, who with Mark Antony was defeated at Actium by Octavius Cæsar, B.C. 31.

cliens, entis [ = cluens, p. of clueo, hear, obey], M. and F., (a hearer), a dependent, a vassal, a retainer.

clientēla, -ae [client- + ēla (imitating suadela, etc.)], F., vassalage (as condition of a cliens). Hence (viewed fr. the other side), protection. — Phrases: magnae clientelae, many vassals (extensive relations of "clientage"); Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt (surrendered themselves as vassals to, etc.).

clipeus, -ī [?], M., a shield (round, as opp. to scutum).

clītellae, -ārum [?], F. plur., a pack-saddle.

Clādius, -ī [the popular form of Claudius], M., a Roman gentile name, belonging to the plebeian

branch of the gens Claudia. — Esp., Publius Clodius, a most bitter enemy of Cicero. He was killed in a fray by T. Annius Milo, who was defended by Cicero in a famous oration still extant.

Cn., for Gnaeus.

coacervo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [coa-acervo], 1. v. a., heap up, mass together, heap on top (of others).

coactus, -a, -um, p. p. of cogo.

coagmentő, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [coagmentő-, joint], 1. v. a., fasten together.

coarto (-arc-), -are, -avi, -atus [con-arto, bind], 1. v. a., press to-gether, confine.

coccum, -ī [Gr.], N., a berry yielding a scarlet dye, scarlet.

coctus, -a, -um, p. p. of coquo.

Cocytus, -i [Gr.], M., a fabled river of the lower world.

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [con-emo], 3. v. a., buy up, purchase. coēmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of coēmo. coeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), no p. p. [coneo], irr. v. n., come together, unite,

meet.

coepī, -isse, coeptus [con-tapi
(perf. of tapo, cf. apiscor)], def. v. a.,
(have taken hold of), began, under-

took, started. — coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. used in the active sense with pass. infinitives.

innnitives.

coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of coepi. coerceo, -ercere, -ercui, -ercitus [con-arceo], 2. v. a., confine, keep in check, hold in check, restrain.

cogito, -are, -avi, -atus [con-agito (in sense of revolve, discuss)], 1. v. a., consider, think over. — Esp. (as

to some plan of action), think about, ponder, reflect, discuss (what to do), have an idea of, intend, consider (that something may happen), expect (contemplate the possibility): idem cogitare, have the same idea or feelings.

cognatio, -onis [con-(g)natio, birth], F., connection by birth. — Concretely, a family, a clan.

cognitus, -a, -um, p. p. of cognosco.

cognomen, -inis [con-(g)nomen], N., a family name, a surname.

cognosco, -gnoscere, -gnovī, -gnitus [con-(g)nosco, learn], 3. v. a., learn, find out, find, become aware. — Esp., investigate, inquire into, learn about, study. — In perf. tenses (cf. nosco), know, be aware: cognitum est de aliqua re (something was known).

cogo, cogere, coegi, coactus [conago], 3. v. a., bring together, collect, assemble, get together. Hence, drive, force, compel, oblige.

cohibeo, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus [con-habeo], 2. v. a., hold together, hold back, check, restrain.

cohors, -hortis [con-thortis (reduced), akin to hortus, garden], F., an enclosure. Hence, a body of troops, a cohort (the tenth part of a legion, corresponding as a unit of formation to the company of modern tactics, and containing from 300 to 600 men).

cohortātiō, -ōnis [con-hortatio, cf. cohortor], F., an encouraging, encouragement. — Esp. (to soldiers), an address (almost invariably a preliminary to an engagement).

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus [con-hortor],

 v. dep., encourage, rally, address (esp. of a commander): cohortati inter se, encouraging, urging one another.

collare, -is [N. of adj. †collaris (cf. collum), as noun], N., a collar.

collis, -is [?], M., a hill.

collum, -ī [?], N., the neck.

colo, colere, colui, cultus [?], 3. v. a., till, cultivate. — Fig., attend upon, court, cultivate (as a friend), cherish, honor, pay court to, worship (of divinities).

colonia, -ae [colono- (cf. colo) + ia], F., (state of a colonist). — Concretely, a colony (both of the establishment and the persons sent). The Roman colonists were and continued to be Roman citizens, and served as armed occupants of the soil where they were sent in the interests of the mother country.

colonus, -i [colo- (old st. akin to colo) + nus], M., a farmer, a peasant.

ant.
color, -ōris [prob. akin to caligo

(mist) as opp. to white], M., color. columba, -ae [?], F., a dove, a pigeon.

com- (con-, co-) [the same as cum], adv. in comp., with, together, up. Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [con-†buro (?), relation to uro very uncertain, cf. bustum, funeral pyre], 3. v. a., burn up, consume.

comes, -itis [con-tmitis (MA in meo, go, + tis)], C., a companion (esp. an inferior as attendant or follower), a comrade.

comitas, -ātis [comi-(courteous) + tas], F., courtesy, affability.

comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of comitor.

comitium, -i [?, perh. comit- (see comes) + ium, the assemblage of followers (cf. servitium)], N., the Comitium, a part of the Forum at Rome.

comitor, -ārī, -ātus [comit-, companion], 1. v. dep., accompany. comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, accompanying.

commeatus, -ūs [con-meatus, cf. commeo, go to and fro], M., a going to and fro, an expedition (back and forth), a trip. Hence, communications (of an army). — So also, supplies (of an army), provisions.

commemoro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conmemoro, call to mind], 1. v. a., remind one of. Hence, speak of, mention, state (in a narrative).

commendo, -are, -avi, -atus [commando, commit], I. v. a., intrust, commend, recommend, surrender.

commentum, -i [con-†mentum (p. p. of memini)], N., (thing thought up), a fiction, a pretence.

commeo, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [conmeo], I. v. n., go back and forth. — With ad, visit, resort to.

commīlitō, -ōnis [con-milit- + o], M., fellow-soldier, comrade.

commissura, -ae [con-tmissura (cf. committo)], F., a joint, a seam.

committo, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [con-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go (send) together or altogether). Hence, join, unite, attach: proelium (join, engage, begin the engagement). — Also,

trust: se barbaris committere (put one's self in the hands of, etc.); nihil his committere (place no confidence in, etc.); in periculum se committere (expose). — Also, admit, allow (to happen), commit (suffer to be done, cf. admitto), perpetrate: committere ut posset, leave it possible.

Commius, -ī [Celtic], M., a leader of the Atrebates.

\*commodātum, -ī [p. p. of commodo as noun], N., a loan.

commodē [old case-form of commodus], adv., conveniently, filly, readily, advantageously, to advantage: satis commode, to much advantage; non satis commode, not very easily.

commodo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-modo-, cf. commodus], I. v. a., lend, loan, give.

commodum, see commodus.

commodus, -a, -um [con-modus, measure], adj., (having the same measure with), fitting, suitable, convenient, advantageous, agreeable: incessu commodo, of gentle mien; commodissimum est, it is the best thing, most advantageous. — Neut. as noun, convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: rei familiaris commodum, the interests of one's property; quas sui quisque commodi fecerat (for his own convenience).

commoratus, -a, -um, p. p. of commoror.

commoror, -ārī, -ātus [con-moror],
1. v. dep., delay, stay, linger.

commotus, -a, -um, p. p. of commoveo.

commoveo, -movēre, -movi, -mo-

tus [con-moveo], 2. v. a., move, stir, agitate: bellum (begin). — With reflex., or in pass., be moved, move (intrans.), stir. — Fig., disturb, agitate, affect, alarm, move, arouse, influence (with idea of violent feeling).

communicatus, -a, -um, p. p. of communico.

communico, -are, -avi, :atus [†communicos, (st. of †communicus, communi- + cus)], 1. v. a., (make common), share, communicate, consult (with a person about a thing, and so make it common), add (a thing to another), put in along with (something else).

communis, -e [con-munis (cf. munia, duties)], adj., (having shares together), common, general, in common: consilium (general plan, concerted action).

commūtātiō, -ōnis [con-mutatio (cf. commuto)], F., change: aestūs (turn).

commūtātus, -a, -um, p. p. of commuto.

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conmuto], 1. v. a., change, exchange: studium belli agricultura (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture).

comparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of <sup>1</sup> comparo.

1 comparo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conparo], I. v. a., get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together, prepare for (with a different view of the object in English): his rebus comparatis, having made these arrangements.

<sup>2</sup> comparo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conparo], 1. v. a., (pair together), compare. compello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [con-pello], 3. v. a., drive together (or altogether), drive in, force, drive, compel.

compendium, -ī [com-†pendium, cf. pendo, weigh], N., (a weighing in, cf. expendo, weigh out), a saving, profit, gain.

comperio, -perire, -peri, -pertus [con-pario], 4. v. a.. (get together), find out (by inquiry), ascertain, find out, discover, learn of. — compertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., certain (cf. exploratus).

compertus, -a, -um, p. p. of comperio.

†compēs, -edis [con-pes, foot], F., generally plur., fetters, shackles.

compēsco, -ere, -uī, no p. p. [?], 3. v. a., restrain, confine.

complector, -plecti, -plexus [conplecto, fold], 3. v. dep., embrace, include, enclose.

compleo, -plere, -plevi, -pletus [con-pleo], 2. v. a., fill up, fill.—With a different conception of the action from Eng., cover, man (of walls).

complexus, -a, -um, p. p. of complector.

complūrēs, -plūra (-ia) [con-plus], adj. plur., very many, a great many, a great number of.

compōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [con-pono, put], 3. v. a., (put to-gether), settle: bellum.

comporto, -āre, -āvī, ātus [conporto], 1. v. a., bring together, collect.

comprehendo, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsus [con-prehendo], 3. v. a., seise,

catch, arrest, capture, grasp (one by the hand or clothing).

comprehensus, -a, -um, p. p. of comprehendo.

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conprobo], I. v. a., prove, approve: consilium fortuna (justify).

compulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of compello.

conātus, -a, -um; p. p. of conor.
conātus, -ūs [conā- (st. of conor)
+ tus], M., an attempt, an effort.
concēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus
[con-cedo], 3. v. a. and n., (give up
a thing to one), allow, grant, assign
(leave, where the rest is taken away);
permit, yield the palm (to a superior),
yield, make a concession.

concerpo, -cerpere, -cerpsi, -cerptus [con-carpo], 3. v. a., pluck, pull: folia.

concessus, -a, -um, p. p. of concedo.

concessus, -ūs [con-tcessus (cf. concedo)], M., a concession, a permission.

concido, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p. [con-cado], 3. v. n., fall down, fall.

concido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [concaedo], 3. v. a., cut to pieces, cut down (kill), cut up (land by estuaries).

concilio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [concilio-, assembly], 1. v. a., bring together. Hence, win over, secure (even by force), win, gain.

concilium, -I [con-tcilium (perh. CAL (call) + ium, cf. Kalendae)], N., a meeting. — Esp., an assembly (of war or state), a council, a conference: per concilium, in council.

concipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [con-capio], 3. v. a., take up, take on, conceive.

concīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of concīdo. concitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conito.

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-cito, cf. cieo, stir], 1. v. a. freq., arouse, stir up, instigate, call out (and so set in motion), cause (stragem).

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conclamo, cry out], 1. v. n., cry out, shout.

conclave, -is [con-clavis, key], N., a chamber, a room (originally locked): per totum conclave, all over the room.

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [con-claudo], 3. v. a., shut up, enclose, confine: mare conclusum (enclosed, inland).

conclūsus, -2, -um, p. p. of concludo.

Conconnetodumnus, -I [Celtic], M., a leader of the Carnutes.

concordia, -ae [concord- (harmo-nious) + ia], F., harmony, concord.

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitūrus [con-crepo], I. v. n., rattle, clash: armis (clash their arms, of soldiers).

concupisco, -cupiscere, -cupivi (-ii), -cupitus [con-tcupisco (cf. cupio, desire)], 3. v. a., desire earnestly, strive after, long for, aspire to.

concurro, -currere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursus [con-curro], 3. v. n., run to-gether, rush up, rush in, rush (advance), flock to, hasten in, make an attack: concursum est, there was a rush.

concursus, -a, -um, p. p. of con-

concursus, -ūs [con-cursus (cf. concurro)], M., a rushing to and fro, a dashing together (collision). — Esp., a charge, onset, a crowd running, a crowd.

concutio, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus [con-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., shake violently, shake.

condemno, are, avi, atus [condamno, condemn], 1. v. a., condemn, find guilty.

condicio, -onis [con-DIC, say (cf. condico, agree)], F., terms, condition, terms of agreement, terms (of fighting), state (of slavery): ad iniquam condicionem pugnandi, to fight on unequal terms.

conditus, -a, -um, p. p. of condo.

condo, -dere, -didī, -ditus [con
do], 3. v. a., (put together). — For
preservation, put away, lay away,
store. — For concealment, cover,
hide. — So also, bury, lay to rest.

condono, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [condono], I. v. a., give up, give, grant.

Condrūsī, .ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Belgic tribe on the Meuse, clients of the Treveri.

conduco, ducere, duxi, ductus [conduco, lead], 3. v. a., bring together, bring up (soldiers), hire.

conductus, -a, -um, p. p. of conducto.

conecto, -nectere, -nexui, -nexus [con-necto], 3. v. a., bind together, bind, fasten.

confectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conficio. confercio, -fercire, -fersi, -fertus [con-farcio], 4. v. a., crowd together. - confertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., close, crowded, dense, closely crowded, in close order, in a solid body.

confero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [confero], irr. v. a., bring together, get together, bring in, gather, collect, bestow. — With or without culpam, lay the blame on, charge. — With reflexive, betake one's self, proceed, remove, take refuge. — So with other words: fortunas (remove, transfer).

confertus, -a, -um, p. p. of confercio.

confestim [acc. of tcon-festis (cf. festino, hasten)], adv., in haste, immediately, at once.

conficio, -ficere, -fecī, -fectus [con-facio], 3. v. a., (do up), accomplish, complete, finish up, carry out, finish, perform. — Also, make up, write, write up (of a document), work up, dress (of skins): e corio (make). — Also (cf. Eng. "done up"), finish up, exhaust, wear out.

confido, -fidere, -fisus sum [confido, trust], 3. v. n., (trust fully), be confident, trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on, feel assured.—confisus, -a, -um, p. p. in act. sense, trusting in.

configo, figere, fixi, fixus [configo, fix], 3. v. a., fasten together, fasten.

confirmatus, -a, -um, p. p. of confirmo.

confirmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [confirmo, make firm], 1. v. a., strengthen.

— Fig., strengthen, establish (pacem), reassure, encourage, confirm, assure (by oath): se (resolve). Hence (of things and statements), confirm,

declare. — confirmatus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., resolute, confident.

confisus, a, um, p. p. of confido. confixus, a, um, p. p. of configo. configo, fligere, flixi, flictus [confligo, strike], 3. v. a. and n., dash against, contend, fight.

confio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-fio, blow], I. v. a., blow up (of a fire). — Fig., excite, kindle, stir up: aes alienum (contract).

confluens, -entis [pres. p. of conflue], M., a meeting of two rivers, a confluence.

confluo, -ere, -fluxi, no p. p. [confluo], 3. v. n., flow together. — Less exactly (of persons), flock together, assemble.

confodio, -fodere, -fodi, -fossus [con-fodio, dig], 3. v. a., (dig up). Hence, stab, pierce.

confossus, -a, -um, p. p. of confodio.

confugio, -fugere, -fügi, no p. p. [con-fugio], 3. v. n., flee, take refuge, flee for refuge.

confundo, fundere, fūdī, fūsus [confundo], 3. v. a., pour together. — Less exactly, mingle, mix indiscriminately, unite without distinction, unite, combine.

congredior, -gredi, -gressus [congradior, step], 3. v. dep., come together. — In peace, unite with. — Esp., in war, come in contact with, engage, fight.

congressus, -a, -um, p. p. of congredior.

congressus, -ūs [con-gressus, cf. congredior], M., an engagement, an encounter.

congruo, -ere, -ui, no p. p. [?], 3. v. n., (flock together), correspond agree, suit, fit.

conició (-iicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus
[con-iacio], 3. v. a., throw together,
throw, hurl, cast, discharge: oculos
(cast); se conicere, throw one's self,
rush; coniect se in pedes, took to
his heels.— Less exactly (esp. in a
military sense), throw (in vincula),
put (to flight), place, station (cf.
military throw troops into, etc.),
force.— Fig., put together (of ideas).
coniectūra, -ae [con-iactura, cf.
conicio], F., a guess ("putting two
and two together"), a conjecture, a
conclusion.

coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conicio. coniunctim [acc. of tconiunctis (iung (as root) + tis, cf. coniungo)], adv., unitedly, in common, all logether.

coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of coniungo.

coniungo, ·iungere, ·iūnxī, ·iūnctus [con-iungo, join], 3. v. a., unite, join, connect, fasten together. — In pass., or with reflexive, unite (neut.), connect one's self, join. — coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., united, closely connected.

coniunx, iugis [con-tiux (IUG, yoke, as st., with intrusive n as in iungo)], M. and F., a spouse. — Esp., F., a wife.

coniuratio, -onis [con-iuratio, cf. coniuro], F., conspiracy, a confederacy.

coniūrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of coniuro.

coniuro, -are, -avi, -atus [con-

iuro], I. v. n., swear together, take an oath (together), swear mutual oaths. Hence, conspire, plot. coniūrātī, p. p. m. plur. as noun, conspirators.

conlatus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of confero.

conlaudātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conlaudo.

conlaudo (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus
[con-laudo], I. v. a., praise (in set
terms).

conlectus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conligo.

conlega (coll-), -ae [con-tlega (LEG + a)], M., a colleague (one of two or more persons holding an office with equal powers).

conligō (coll-), -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [con-lego], 3. v. a., gather together, gather, collect, acquire (by accumulation). — With reflex., collect one's self, recover.

conlocatus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conloco.

conloco, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conloco, place], I. v. a., place, set, station (of troops, etc.): angustius milites (stow, in a vessel). — Fig., settle:
Roice ibi.

conloquium (coll-), -ī [contloquium, cf conloquor], N., a conference, an interview, a parley, a conversation.

conloquor (coll-), -loquī, -locūtus [con-loquor], 3. v. dep., (talk together), confer, hold an interview (or parley), parley, converse.

conor, ārī, -ātus [? con-, st. akin to onus, burden], 1. v. dep., attempt, try, endeavor.

conquiro, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus [con-quaero, seek], 3. v. a., search for, seek for, hunt up.

conquisitus, -a, -um, p. p. of conquiro.

conreptus (corr-), -a, -um, p. p. of conripio.

conripiō (corr-), -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [con-rapio, seize], 3. v. a., seize, snatch up.

conrodo (corr-), -rodere, -rosi, -rosus [con-rodo, gnaw], 3. v. a., gnaw, gnaw to pieces.

conruō (corr-), -ruere, -ruī, no p. p. [con-ruo, fall], 3. v. n., fall down, sink to the ground.

consanguineus, -a, -um [con-sanguin-(blood) + eus], adj., akin (by blood). — As noun, a kinsman.

conscendo, -scendere, -scendi, -scensus [con-scando, climb], 3. v. a., climb, climb upon: navis (in navis) (go on board); moenia (scale).

conscribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus [con-scribo], 3. v. a., write down. — Esp., enrol, conscribe, levy, enlist. — conscripti, p. p. M. plur. as adj., conscript (fathers).

conscriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of conscribo.

consecratus, -a, -um, p. p. of consecro.

consecro, -are, -avi, -atus [consacro, make sacred], 1. v. a., hallow, consecrate. — consecratus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., consecrated, sacred.

consector, -ārī, -ātus [con-sector, cf. consequor], 1. v. dep. freq., over-take, follow up.

consecutus, -a, -um, p. p. of consequor.

consensio, -onis [con-tsensio, cf. consentio], F., agreement, unanimity.

consensus, -ūs [con-sensus, cf. consentio], M., agreement, consent, harmonious (or concerted) action.

consentio, -sentire, -sensi, -sensurus [con-sentio, feel], 4. v. n., agree, conspire, make common cause, act with (some one).

consequor, -sequi, -secutus [consequor], 3. v. dep., follow (and stay with), overtake, pursue. Hence, obtain, secure, attain, succeed in (some purpose). — Also, follow close upon, succeed, ensue.

consero, -serere, -serui, -sertus [con-sero, bind together], 3. v. a., join: manum conserere, join battle, engage.

conservo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conservo, save], I. v. a., save, preserve, keep, spare. — Also, observe (law, right), regard.

considero, -are, -avi, -atus [?], 1. v. a., consider, reflect.

consido, sidere, sedi, sessurus [con-sido], 3. v. n., sit down (in a place). — Less exactly, take a position, halt, encamp, settle.

consilium, -i [con-†silium (cf. consul, akin to salio, in some earlier unc. meaning)], N., deliberation, a council (of war, more commonly concilium). — Esp., wise counsel, advice, prudence, discretion. Hence, a plan, counsel, design, purpose, ability, strategy. — And so (design carried out), course, measure, conduct. — Esp., quasi consili sit res, as if it were a matter for consultation;

commune consilium, concerted action; publicum consilium, action of the state, official action.

consimilis, -e [con-similis], adj., very like, just like.

consisto, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p. [con-sisto, place (one's self)], 3. v. n., take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (of troops). — In perf. tenses, have a position, stand. Hence, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (of ships), remain, stay. — With in, occupy, rest on. — Fig., depend on, rest on.

consobrinus, -I [con-sobrinus, cf. soror, sister], M., first cousin (on the mother's side). — Less exactly, (any) cousin german.

consocio, -are, -avi, -atus [consocio, bind together], 1. v. a., unite, connect, join together.

consolatus, -a, -um, p. p. of consolor.

consolor, -ārī, -ātus [con-solor, comfort], 1. v. dep., console, cheer. consolātus, -a, -um, p. p. as pres... consoling.

conspectus, -us [con-spectus, cf. conspicio], M., sight: in conspectu, in one's presence.

conspicatus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicor.

conspicio, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [con-specio, look at], 3. v. a., catch sight of, espy, see, behold.

conspicor, -ārī, -ātus [†conspic-, cf. spec, see, and auspex], 1. v. dep., catch sight of, espy, see.

conspiro, -are, -avī, -atus [conspiro, breathe], 1. v. n., sound to

gether. — Fig., harmonize, agree. — Also, conspire, league together.

constanter [constant- (standing firm) + ter], adv., consistently, uniformly, steadily, with constancy, firmly.

constantia, ae [constant-(standing firm) + ia], F., firmness, constancy, undaunted courage, heroism.

consternatus, -a, -um, p. p. of consterno.

¹ consterno, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†consterno-(cf. sterno and sternax, prostrating)], 1. v. a., overwhelm. — Fig., dismay, alarm. — consternatus, -a, -um, p. p., stricken with fear.

<sup>2</sup>consterno, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus [con-sterno], 3. v. a., strew over (both of the thing thrown and that over which).

constituo, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus [con-statuo], 3. v. a. and n., set up, raise, put together, make up. Hence, establish, station, arrange, draw up (aciem). — Fig., determine, resolve, appoint, agree upon, determine upon, fix, decide upon: praemia (offer).

consto, -stare, -stiti, -statūrus [con-sto], 1. v. n., stand together. — Fig., agree (esp. of accounts), consist (e fructu). Hence, be established, appear, be agreed upon, be evident, be known. — Esp., constat, it appears, etc. — Also (from accounts), cost. — Also (with in), depend upon.

consuefacio, -facere, -feci, -factus [†consue- (cf. suesco, become accustomed) facio, make], 3. v. a., accustom, habituate.

consuesco, -suescere, -suevi, sue-

tus [con-suesco], 3. v. n., become accustomed. — In perf. tenses, be accustomed, be wont.

consuetudo, inis [con-tsuetudo (prob. tsuetu- + do), cf. consuesco], F., habit, custom, habits (collectively), manners, customs, practice: itineris (usual manner of marching).

consul, -ulis [con-sul (cf. prae-sul, exsul), root of salio in some earlier unc. meaning], M., a consul (the title of the chief magistrate of Rome, cf. consilium). —With proper names in abl., the usual way of indicating dates: Cn. Pompeio M. Crasso consulibus, in the consulship of, etc.

consularis, -e [consul- + aris], adj., of a consul, consular. — Esp., masc. as noun, an ex-consul.

consulātus, -us [†consulā-(cf. consul) + tus], M., consulship.

consulo, -sulere, -sului, -sultus [prob. consul, though poss. a kindred or independent verb], 3. v. a. and n., deliberate, consult, take counsel, decide. — With acc., consult, take the advice of. — With dat., take counsel for, consult the interests of, consult for the welfare of, look out for, do a service to: vitae (spare).

consulto, -are, -avi, -atus [consulto-, decision], 1. v. n., consult: de bello (take measures for).

consulto [prob. an abl. abs. used impersonally], adv., with deliberation, purposely, designedly.

consultum, -i [N. p. p. of consulo], N., a decision, an order, a decree. — Esp., senatus consultum, an order of the senate. consumo, -sumere, -sumpsi, -sumptus [con-sumo], 3. v. a., (take out of the general store). Hence, waste, consume, destroy, spend, exhaust.

consumptus, -a, -um, p. p. of consumo.

consurgo, -surgere, -surrexi, -surrectus [con-surgo, rise], 3. v. n., rise, rise up.

contabulo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [contabulo, cf. tabula, board], 1. v. a., build up (with floors in stories), floor with planks. — Also, build up (generally, as of a wall with towers).

contagio, -onis [con-ttagio, fr. TAG in tango, touch, cf. contingo], F., contact. — Esp., with something noxious, implying contagion.

contego, -tegere, -texi, -tectus [con-tego], 3. v. a., cover up, cover.

contemno, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptus [con-temno, slight], 3. v. a., despise, disregard, hold in contempt, make light of, defy.

contemplatus, -a, -um, p. p. of contemplor.

contemplor, -ārī, -ātus [†contemplŏ- (con-templŏ-, place of observation)], I. v. dep., vicw attentively, survey.

contemptor, -ōris [con-temptor (through contemno)], M., a scorner, a despiser.

contemptus, -ūs [con-†temptus, cf. contempo], M., contempt, scorn: contemptui est, is a matter of ridicule.

contendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [con-tendo, stretch], 3. v. n., strain, struggle, strive, try, endeavor, exert one's self, attempt, be zealous, insist, entreat. — Esp. with verbs of motion,

press on, hasten. — Also, fight, contend, wage war. — With ad and in like constructions, hasten, march, start to go (in haste): vi contendere, to force a passage; petere contendit, seek earnestly.

contentio, -ōnis [con-ttentio, cf. contendo], F., struggle, efforts. — Esp., contest, fighting, dispute, strife. contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of contendo and contineo.

conterritus, -a, -um [p. p. of conterreo, alarm greatly], much frightened.

contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus [con-texo], 3. v. a., interweave, weave together. — Also, weave (make by weaving).

contextus, -a, -um, p. p. of contexto.

continens, entis, p. of contineo. continentia, -ae [continent- (holding together) + ia], F., self-restraint, moderation.

contineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus [con-teneo], 2. v. a., hold together, hold in, contain. Hence, in many fig. meanings, restrain, hold in check. keep (within bounds), hem in, retain (in something). - Pass. or with reflex., keep within, remain, be included in, be bounded, consist in (be contained in). - Also, hold on to, join. - continens, -entis, pres. p. as adj-(holding together), continual, contiguous, continuous: continenti impeta, with one continuous rush. - Also, restraining one's self, continent.-As noun, the continuous land, the continent. -- contentus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., satisfied, content.

contingo, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [con-tango, touch], 3. v. a. and n., touch, reach, join. — With dat., happen.

continuo, -are, -avī, -atus [continuo-], 1. v. a., prolong, make continuous: dapes (serve dish after dish).

continuo [abl. of continuus], adv., immediately, straightway, forthwith.

continuus, -a, -um [con-†tenuus (TEN in teneo (hold) + uus)], adj., continuous, successive.

contio, -onis [prob. for conventio], F., an assembly.

contrā [unc. case-form (instr.?) of tconterus (con- + terus, comp. ending)], adv. and prep. with acc., opposite, contrary to, against, in opposition, on the other hand: contra atque, contrary to what, etc.

contractus, -ūs [con-tractus (cf. contraho)], M., (a drawing together).

— Late, a contract, a bargain.

contraho, -trahere, -traxī, -tractus [con-traho], 3. v. a., draw together, draw in, bring together, collect, gather together, contract, narrow, make smaller, bring into smaller compass. — Less exactly, bring about.

contrārius, -a, -um [†conterō- (see contra) + arius], adj., opposite (lit. and fig.), contrary: ex (e) contrario, on the contrary; in contrariam patrem, in the opposite direction.

contrecto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [contracto, handle], 1. v. a., touch. — Fig., take by stealth, appropriate.

controversia, -ae [controversŏ-(opposite) + ia], F., a dispute, a quarrel. — Plur., grounds of quarrel.

contumēlia, -ae [unc. adj. stem

(cf. crudelis) (akin to tumeo, swell) + ia], F., (swelling pride?), an outrage, an insult, an affront. — Fig., violence (of waves), buffeting.

contumēliosē [old case-form of contumeliosus (cf. contumelia)], adv., abusively, insolently.

conturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [conturbo, disturb], 1. v. a., disturb, confound.

contus, -ī [Gr.], M., a pole, a pike. convectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conveho.

conveho, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus [con-veho], 3. v. a., bring together, bring in, collect.

convenio, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [con-venio], 4. v. a. and n., come together, meet, assemble, come in, arrive, agree upon, agree. — With acc., meet, come to. — Also, of things, be agreed upon, be fitting, be necessary (in a loose sense in Eng.): convenit (impers.), it is agreed.

conventus, -ūs [con-tventus (cf. convenio and adventus)], M., an assembly, a meeting. — Esp., an assize, court (the regular assembly of Roman citizens on stated occasions, in a provincial town at which justice was dispensed).

conversus, -a, -um, p. p. of converto.

converto, -vertere, -verti, -versus [con-verto], 3. v. a., turn about, turn: se convertere, turn. — Fig., change: signa (change front, wheel); conversa signa in hostes inferre, face about and charge, etc.; in fugam conversa, put to flight; contra vim fluminis, against the current.

convictus, -a, -um, p. p. of convinco.

convinco, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus [con-vinco, conquer], 3. v. a., prove, make good (a charge, etc.). — Also, find guilty, convict.

conviva, -ae [con-tviva (cf. agri-cola)], M., a guest.

convivium, -i [conviva- (reduced) + ium (N. of -ius)], N., (a meal in company), a feast, a banquet.

convocô, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [convoco], 1. v. a., call together, summon, call (a council).

coörior, -oriri, -ortus [con-orior, rise], 3. (and 4.) v. dep., arise, spring up, break out (of a war).

coörtus, -a, -um, p. p. of coörior. cophinus, -i [Gr.], m., a basket.

The second secon

copia, ae [tcopi- (con-ops, aid) + ia, cf. inopia and inops], F., abundance, plenty, supply (both great and small), quantity, number. — Esp., luxury (abundance of everything). — Plur., (esp. of forces), forces, resources, supplies: magna copia locorum (choice); copia atque usus, necessary supplies.

copula, -ae [con-tapula (from AP, lay hold of)], F., (holding together), a grappling-hook.

coqua, -ae [F. of coquus (cf. coquo)], F., a cook.

coquō, coquere, coxī, coctus [COC], 3. v. a., cook.

cor, cordis [root as st. (akin to Eng. "heart")], N., the heart: cordi esse, be dear.

coram [unc. case, formed from con and os, face], adv., and prep. with abl., face to face, present, in person.

Corinthius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj. of Corinth, Corinthian.

Corinthus, -ī [Gr.], F., Corinth, a city of Greece.

Coriosolites, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aremoric Gaul.

corium, -ī [?], N., a hide, a skin, leather.

Cornelius, -ae [F. of Cornelius], F., Cæsar's first wife, the daughter of (Cornelius) Cinna.

Cornelius, -I [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: I. L. Cornelius Cinna (see Cinna). — 2. L. Cornelius Sulla (see Sulla). — 3. P. Cornelius Scipio (see Scipio). — 4. P. Cornelius Cethegus (see Cethegus).

Cornelius, -a, -um [same word as the preceding], adj., of Cornelius, Cornelius.

cornū, -ūs [?], N., a horn. — Fig., a wing (of an army), a horn (of the moon).

corona, -ae [?], F., a garland, a wreath, a crown. — Fig., a circle (line, of soldiers): sub corona, at auction (the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction).

corpus, -oris [unc. root + us], N., the body, the person. — Also, s body (dead), a corpse: magnitude corporis, size, stature.

corrigo (conr-), -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [con-rego, direct], 3. v. a. straighten. Hence, correct, reform: trepidationem (calm).

corrumpo, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [con-rumpo, break], 3. v. a., spoil, ruin, bribe, buy over.

G

H

corruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of corrumpo.

cortex, -icis [?], M. (also F.), bark.
Corus (Caurus), -i [?], M., the
northwest wind.

corvus, -î [?], M., a raven.

cōtēs (cau-), -is [akin to cos, whetstone], F., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.

cotidianus (quo-), -a, -um [cotidie-(reduced) + anus], adj., daily.

cotīdiē (quo-) [old case-form of quot (how many) -die, loc. of dies], adv., daily, every day.

Cotta, -ae [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar.

Cotuātus, -ī [?], M., a chief of the Carnutes.

Cranon, -onis [Gr.], F., a town in Thessaly.

crassitūdō, -inis [crassŏ- + tudo (as if crassitu- + do)], F., thickness.

Crassus, -I [crassus, fat], M., a Roman family name.—Esp.: 1. Marcus (Licinius) Crassus, consul with Pompey, B.C. 55; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate.—2. Publius Crassus (called Adulescens, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the Triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry.

crātēra, -ae [Gr.], F., a bowl.

crātēs, -is [?], F., a hurdle, a fascine (a hurdle used to hold up earthworks in fortification). — Also, wicker (for hurdles).

creatus, -a, -um, p. p. of creo. creber, -bra, -brum [cre- (in creo, bring forth) + ber], adj., thick, close, numerous, frequent: arbores (thickly growing).

crēbrēscō, -brēscere, -bruī, no. p. p. [†crebrē- (cf. creber) + sco], 3. v. n., become frequent, increase.

crēdo, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus [tcred-, faith (of unc. formation) + do, place], 3. v. a. and n., trust, entrust, believe, suppose, think: mihi crede, take my advice.

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., burn, consume: igni cremari, be burned alive, be burned to death.

creo, -are, -avi, -atus [st. †cre, akin to cresco], 1. v. a., (cause to grow), create, bring forth, give birth to.— Esp., elect, choose, appoint.

Crēs, Crētis [Gr.], M., a Cretan.

— As adj., Cretan.

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus [st. crē- (also in creo, bring forth) + sco], 3. v. n., grow, increase.

Crēta, -ae [Gr.], F., Crete, a large island south of the Ægean Sea.

Crētēnsis, -e [Creta- + ensis], adj., of Crete, Cretan. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Cretans.

crimen, -inis [cri- (as root of cerno, sift) + men], N., (a decision).

— Less exactly, a charge, a fault, a crime.

crīminor, -ārī, -ātus [crimin-, charge], I. v. dep., charge, accuse of. crīnis, -is [?], M., the hair (of the head).

Critognātus, -ī [Celtic], M., a chief of the Arverni.

crocito, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [crocito-(cf. crocio, croak as a raven)], 1. v. n. freq., croak aloud. Croesus, -ī [Gr.], M., a king of Lydia, proverbial for his wealth.

Crotoniates, -ae [Gr.], M., an inhabitant of Croton, a town in southern Italy.

cruciatus, -us [crucia- (st. of crucio, torture) + tus], M., crucifying. Hence, torture. — With a change of relation, suffering (of the person tortured).

crūdēlis, -e [†crudē- (in crudesco, akin to crudus, bloody) + lis, cf. Aprīlis, animālis], adj., (bloody?), cruel.

crūdēlitās, -tātis [crudeli- + tas],
F., crucity.

cruentus, -a, -um [†cruent- (partic. st. akin to cruor) + us], adj., bloody, blood stained.

crumēna, -ae [?], F., a money-bag, a purse.

cruor, -ōris [crū- (in crudus, bloody) + or], M., blood, gore.

crūs, crūris [?], N., the leg.
crux, crucis [?], F., a gallows, a

cubile, -is [†cubi- (st. akin to cumbo) + lis (cf. crudelis), N. of adj.], N., a couch, a resting place, a bed, a lair.

cubo, -āre, -uī, -itus [CUB (bend)],
1. v. n., lie, recline.

culina, -ae [perh. for tcoclina (cf. coquo, cook)], F., a kitchen.

culpa, -ae [?], F., a fault, blame, guilt.

cultura, -ae [cultu- (cf. colo, till) + ra (F. of rus)], F., cultivation, culture: agri cultura, or agricultura, the cultivation of the soil, agriculture. cultus, -ūs [COL (in colo, till) +

tus], M., cultivation. — Esp. of one's self, care. Hence, civilization, manner of life, state of civilization.

cum [?], prep. with abl., with.

cum (quom) [case-form of qui], conj., when, while, whenever.—
Often rendered by a different construction in Eng.: cum non possent, not being able; cum prohibent, while defending.—Of logical relations (usually with subjv.), when, while, since, inasmuch as, though, although: cum... tum, not only... but also, while... so also; cum primum, as soon as.

cumba (cym-), -ae [Gr.], F., a boat, a skiff.

cumulus, -ī [tcumŏ + lus], M., a mass, a heap, a pile.

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus [?], 1. v. dep., hesitate, hang back, be reluctant.

cunctus, -a, -um [for coniunctus?], adj., all, all together.

cuneātim [cuneŏ-, wedge (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of tcuneatis], adv., in the shape of a wedge.— Esp. of soldiers, in (a peculiar wedgeshaped) column of attack.

cunīculus, -ī [Gr.], M., (a cony). — Transf., a burrow. Hence, a mine (esp. in a military sense).

cūpa, -ae [?], F., a cask, a barrel. cupidē [old case-form of cupidus], adv., eagerly, zealously, earnestly.]

cupiditas, -ātis [cupido- + tas], F., desire, eagerness, greed.

cupido, -inis [tcupi- (cf. cupio) + do], F., desire, longing, eagerness. — Personified, Cupid, the god of love.

cupidus, -a, -um [noun-st. akin to cupio + dus], adj., eager, desirous,

longing (for), fond of, ambitious (for), with a passion (for).

cupio, -ere, -īvī, -ītus [partly root verb, partly from tcupi- (cf. cupidus)], 3. (and 4.) v. a. and n., be eager (for), be anxious, desire (stronger than volo). - With dat., wish well to, be realous for.

cupressus, -ī [Gr.], F., the cypress, a tree sacred to Pluto, and a sign of death and mourning.

cur (quor) [perh. for qua re], adv., why (rel. and interr.).

cūra, -ae [akin to caveo, beware], F., care, anxiety, attention.

cūrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of curo.

cūria, -ae [?], F., a senate-house. - Esp., the curia Hostilia, the senatehouse. - Fig., the senate.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cura-], 1. v. a. and n., take care, provide for, care for. — With gerundive, cause (to be done), have (done): cura ut, see that.

curro, currere, cucurri, cursurus [?], 3. v. n., run, scamper.

currus,  $-\bar{u}s$  [CUR (?) + us, cf. curro, run], M., a chariot.

cursito, -are, no perf., no p. p. [†cursitŏ- (as if p. p. of curso)], 1. v. n. freq., run hither and thither, bustle about.

curso, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [curso-(cf. curro)], I. v. n., run, rush, hurry. cursus, -ūs [CUR (?) + tus, cf. curro, run], M., a running, running, speed, a run (in concrete sense), a course (space or direction run): cursum adaequare (keep up with); cursu incitato or magno, at full speed; in hoc medio cursu, midway of this passage, from Britain to Ireland; cursu, on the run; certamen cursus, a running-match.

custodia, -ae [custod- (guard) + ia], F., custody, guard (state of being guarded). - Concretely, a guardhouse, a prison. - Plur., guards, keepers.

custodio, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [custod-, guard, as if custodi-], 4. v. a., keep under guard, guard.

custodite [old case-form of custoditus], adv., carefully.

custos, -odis [unc. st. + dis (cf. merces, -ēdis, palus, -ūdis)], M. and F., a guard, a watchman, a keeper, a spy.

Cyclops, -opis [Gr.], M., a Cyclops, one of the fabled giants who had one eye in the middle of the forehead.

Cyrenaeus, -a, -um (Cyrene) + eus], adj., of Cyrene, a town of northern Africa. - Masc. plur. as noun, the Cyrenæans.

Cyrus, -i [Gr.], M., Cyrus, the Great, the most famous king of Persia.

**D** [half of CID = M], for quingenti, -ae, -a, five hundred.

D

D., for Decimus, also for dicit or data (in letters).

Dācus, -a, -um [?], adj., Dacian (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mour tains, occupying parts of Hungar



Gallicia, Wallachia, etc.). - Plur., the Dacians.

damno, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [damno-, loss], I. v. a., (fine), find guilty, condemn.

damnum, -ī [?, DA (give) + menus (syncopated, cf. alumnus)], N., (fine), loss.

Danaus, -ī [Gr.], M., a mythic king of Egypt who settled in Argos, father of the Danaides, and king of Argos.

Danuvius (-bius), -ī [?], M., the Danube, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

†daps, dapis [?], F., a feast, a banquet.

datus, -a, -um, p. p. of do.

DCCC, for octingenti, -ae, -a, eight hundred.

de [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in idem, dum)], adv. (only in comp.), and prep. with abl., down from, off from, from, away from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason; de consilio (by, cf. ex). — Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris. - Also (cf. Eng. of), about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for: de vita desperare; de iniuriis satisfacere. — In expressions time, just after, about: de media nocte. — Phrase: de improviso, of a sudden, unexpectedly. - In comp., down, off, away, through (cf. debeo, decerto).

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [de-habeo], 2. v. a., (have off of one's possessions), owe, be bound, ought, must, cannot help: iudicari debere (might well be, etc.). - Pass., be due, be owing. dēbitus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., due, appropriate, deserved.

dēbilito, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [1debilito-, fr. debilis, weak], I. v. 2., weaken.

dēcēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [de-cedo], 3. v. n., (make way off, cf. cedo), retire, withdraw, withdraw from, shun. - Esp. (from life), depart, die.

decem [?], indecl. num. adj., ten. dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus [de-cerno], 3. v. a. and n., (decide off, so as to clear away), decide, determine, decree, assign (by decree), order (as a result of determination). - Esp. in a contest, contend, fight.

dēcerto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-certo, fight], I. v. a. and n., contend (so as to close the contest, cf. "fight it out"), decide the issue, try the issue (of war), carry on war, fight (a general engagement): risk a decisive battle (with or without pugna).

dēcessus, -ūs [de-†cessus, cf. decedo and incessus], M., withdrawal, departure: aestus (ebb, fall).

dēcido, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [decado], 3. v. n., fall off (or down).

decimus, -a, -um [†deci- (as st. of decem) + mus], num adj., tenth. - Masc. as noun, a Roman prænomen (see Brutus).

dēclāro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-claro], I. v. a., (clear off), make plain, point out, declare (decide and state).

dēclīvis, -e [de-clivis (or -clivus, . slope)], adj., sloping down, inclined. - Plur. as noun, slopes.

dēclīvitās, -ātis [declivi- + tas],

F., slope: ad declivitatem, down-ward.

decretum, -ī [prop. N. of decretus], N., a decree, a decision.

dēcrētus, -a, -um, p. p. of decerno.
decumānus, -a, -um [decumō(reduced) + anus], adj., belonging
to the tenth: porta (the rear gate, of
a camp, where the tenth cohort was
posted).

dēcurrō, -currere, -curri (-cucurrī), -cursūrus [de-curro], 3. v. n., run down, run away, hurry off.

dēdecus, -oris [de-decus, honor], N., disgrace, dishonor.

dēditīcius, a, um [deditō- + cius], adj., surrendered. — Plur. as noun, prisoners (taken by surrender), sub-iects, persons surrendered.

dēditiō, -ōnis [de-datio, cf. dedo], F., surrender: in deditionem accipere, receive one's surrender: in deditionem venire, to surrender.

dēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of dedo.

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [de-do], 3. v. a., give over, surrender, give up, devote. — In pass. or with reflex., surrender one's self, submit: lamentis (give way to). — deditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., devoted.

dēdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus [de-duco], 3. v. a., lead down or off, lead away, withdraw, conduct, draw off (praesidia), take away (of men), bring away, lead (from one place to another), bring (into a situation).

— Fig., induce, bring, lead. — Esp. of ships, launch (draw down); of women, marry (lead home, used of the man, cf. nubo); of things, bring, draw, turn. So, raise (a man to

fortune). — Also, re in controversiam deducta (brought to, come to, etc.).

dēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of deduco. dēfatīgātus (-fet-), -a, -um, p. p. of defatīgo.

dēfatīgō (-fet-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-fatīgo], I. v. a., wear out, exhaust, worry, tire out.

defectio, -onis [de-factio, cf. de-ficio, fail], F., falling off, defection, falling away, revolt.

dēfectūrus, -a, -um, p. p. of deficio.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus [de-fendo, strike], 3. v. a., ward off, defend one's self against. — Also, with changed relation, defend, protect.

dēfēnsio, -onis [de-tfensio, cf. defendo], F., a defence.

dēfēnsor, -ōris [de-ffensor, cf. defendo], M., a defender. — Also, a means of defence, a defence, a buffer.

dēfēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of defendo.
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [defero], irr. v. a., carry down, carry
away, carry off, bring, land (of
ships). — Pass., be borne down or
on, drift (of ships), turn aside:
delati in scrobes (falling). — Fig.,
confer upon, put in one's hands,
hand over, offer, report, lay before.

dēfessus, -a, -um, p. p. of defetiscor.

dēfetīscor, ·fetīscī, ·fessus [defatiscor, gape], 3. v. dep., crack open.

— Fig., become exhausted. — dēfessus, ·a, ·um, p. p. as adj., exhausted;
as noun, an exhausted man.

dēficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [defacio, make], 3. v. a. and n., fail, run

out, fall away, revolt, fall off, abandon (with ab): animo (despond); luna (be eclipsed).

dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [de-figo, fasten], 3. v. a., fix (in or down), plant, set, fasten, drive down.

dēfiniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [de-finio, end], 4. v. a., set limits to, fix, appoint.

dēfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of defigo. dēflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexus [de-flecto], 3. v. a., turn aside.

dēfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus [de-fluo], 3. v. n., flow down, flow apart, divide (of a river).

dēfore, see desum.

dēformis, -e [de-forma, shape, weakened and decl. as adj.], adj., uncomely, unshapely, ugly, bad looking. — Fig., unbecoming, humiliating, unseemly.

dēformitās, -ātis [deformi- + tas], F., deformity, disfigurement.

dēfricō, -fricāre, -fricuī, -fricātus [de-frico], I. v. a., rub down, rub hard, polish.

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p. [de-fugio], 3. v. a. and n., fly from, avoid, fly, flee.

dēfunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of defungor.

dēfungor, -fungī, -fūnctus [defungor], 3. v. dep., (perform to the end), die. — P. p. as adj., dead.

dēiciō (dēiic-), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [de-iacio], 3. v. a., cast down, throw down, drive off, drive out, dislodge, kill (pass., fall), overthrow, throw on shore (of ships), deprive, reduce.

dēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of deicio.

deiectus, -ūs [de-iactus, cf. iacio, throw], M., a declivity, a slope.

dein, see deinde.

deinceps [dein- (cf. deinde) + ceps, CAP in capio], adv., in succession.

deinde (dein) [de-inde, thence], adv., then, next, afterwards.

dēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of defero. dēlectātus, -a, -um, p. p. of delecto.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [detlecto, cf. delicio], 1. v. a., delight, please, entertain. — Pass., take delight, delight in, enjoy.

déléctus (dī-), -ūs [de-lectus, cf. deligo, select], M., a levy, a conscription.

dēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of deligo. dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus [de-tleo (akin to lino)], 2. v. a., (smear out). blot out, wipe out (of a disgrace). — Fig., annihilate, destroy.

dēlētus, -a, -um, p. p. of deleo.
dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [detlibero, perh. akin to libra, balance],
1. v. a. and n., discuss, consult, deliberate: re deliberata, after discussing the matter.

dēlibrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†delibrō-, barkless], 1. v. a., peel, strip (of bark).

déliciae, -ārum [perh. st. akin to delinquo (cf. delicus, cosset) + ia]. F. plur., delight, pleasure. — Concretely, a delight, a darling.

dēlictum, -ī [N. p. p. of delinquo]. N., thing left undone, failure, offence. dēligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of deligo. dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [delego], 3. v. a., choose out, select.— delectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., chosen, picked.

<sup>2</sup> dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-ligo, bind], I. v. a., tie down, moor, tie, fasten.

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, no p. p. [de-latesco (cf. lateo, hide)], 3. v. n., hide away, hide, skulk, lurk.

Dellius, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Q. Dellius, to whom Horace addressed an ode.

Delphicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of Delphi (the seat of the famous oracle of Apollo in Greece), Delphic.

dementia, -ae [dement-(mad)+ia], F., madness, folly.

dēmergō, -mergere, -mersī, -mersus [de-mergo], 3. v. a., sink, plunge.

dēmessus, -a, -um, p. p. of demeto. dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus [de-meto, reap], 3. v. a., reap, cut down.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [demigro, depart], 1. v. n., move away (change residence), move one's effects, emigrate.

dēminuo, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [deminuo, cf. minus], 3. v. a. and n., diminish, curtail, lessen, detract.

dēminūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of deminuo.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [de-mitto], 3. v. a., let go down (cf. mitto), let down, throw down, stick down (at the bottom of a ditch).—In pass. or with reflex., let one's self down, descend, set one's self down.—Fig., despond (se animo), be discouraged: animos (lose).

dēmonstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of demonstro.

dēmonstro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [demonstro, show], 1. v. a., point out, show, represent, mention, state, speak of, make known.

Dēmosthenēs, -is [Gr.], M., the most celebrated of Greek orators.

dēmum [acc. of †dēmus (superl. of de), nethermost, last], adv., at last, at length (not before), only.

dēnego, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-nego], I. v. a. and n., deny, refuse, say not.

dēnī, -ae, -a [for decnī, decem reduced + nus], distrib. num. adj., plur., ten each, ten (on each side), ten (in sets of ten).

dēnique [†denŏ- (de + nus, cf. demum) -que], adv., at last. — Of order, finally, in a word, in short. — Of preference, at any rate (if nothing better, etc.).

dēnotō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-noto].

1. v. a., mark out, mark off.

dens, dentis [?, cf. tooth for †tonth], m., a tooth.

densus, -a, -um [?], adj., thick, crowded, dense.

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [denuntio], I. v. a., announce (with notion of threat), threaten, declare, warn, order.

dēnuō [for de novo, new], adv., anew, again.

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [depello], 3. v. a., drive off, drive (away), dislodge, avert: famem (appease, satisfy).

dēpereo, -perire, -perii, -peritūrus [de-pereo, perish], irr. v. n., be lost.

dēploro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-ploro, lament], 1. v. a., lament, deplore.

dēpono, -ponere, -posui, -positus

[de-pono], 3. v. a., lay down, take down, lay aside, deposit. — Fig., lose, abandon (hope), blot out (memory), resign, give up.

dēpopulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of depopulor.

dēpopulor, ārī, -ātus [de-populor], 1. v. dep., ravage, lay waste. — P. p. as pass., laid waste.

deporto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-porto],
1. v. a., carry off, carry away, remove.

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, no p. p. [de-posco], 3. v. a., demand earnestly, demand, call for, claim.

dēpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of depono.

deprecor, ari, atus [de-precor], 1. v. dep., pray to avert something, pray (with accessory notion of relief), beg, beg off, pray for pardon, pray to be spared, resort to prayers, ask for quarter, beseech.

dēprehendō, hendere, hendī, hēnsus [de-prehendo, grasp], 3. v. a., capture, catch, seize, take possession of. dēprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of deprehendo.

dēpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [depugno], 1. v. n. (and a.), fight decisively, fight it out.

dēpulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of depello. dērēctē (dī-) [old case-form of derectus], adv., straight: ad perpendiculum (perpendicularly).

dērēctus (dī-), -a, -um, p. p. of derigo.

dērigō (dī-), -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [de-rego], 3. v. a., straighten out, direct, steer: opera (set in order, arrange). — dērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., straight, straight up and down, perpendicula r.

dērīvātus, -a, -um, p. p. of derīvo. dērīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [perh. immediately fr. de-rīvus (brook), prob. through adj.-st.], I. v. a., draw off (orig. water), divert.

dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-rogo, in its political sense], 1. v. a., take away, withdraw.

descendo, scendere, scendi, scensurus [de-scando], 3. v. n., climb down, descend, go down: equo (dismount). --- Fig., resort to, have recourse to, adopt (with ad).

dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus [deseco], 1. v. a., cut off.

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus [desero, join], 3. v. a., disunite. — Esp. abandon, forsake, desert, give up, leave in the lurch. — dēsertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., deserted, solitary.

desertor, -oris [de-tsertor, cf. de-sero], M., a deserter.

dēsertus, -a, -um, p. p. of desero. dēsīderātus, -a, -um, p. p. of desidero.

dēsīderium, -ī [cf. desidero], N., a desire, longing (for something lost).

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?, fr. †desīdus, out of place, cf. considero], 1. v. a., feel the want of, desire, miss, need, desire (want to see), lose (of soldiers). — Pass., be missing (lost): perpauci desiderati quin cuncti, etc. (all with very few exceptions).

desidia, -ae [desid- (st. of †deses, idle) + ia], F., idleness, sloth.

dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultūrus [desalio], 4. v. n., leap down, leap (down), jump overboard, dismount.

dēsipiēns, -entis [p. of desipio, &

siily], adj., foolish. — As noun, a crasy man.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus [de-sisto], 3. v. n., stand off, cease, stop, desist from, abandon: fuga (cease flying).

despectus, -a, -um, p. p. of despicio.

dēspectus, -ūs [de-†spectus, cf. despicio], M., a view down, view (from a height): oppidum haberet despectūs (sheer precipices).

dēspērātus, -a, -um, p. p. of despero.

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [despero, cf. spes, hope], 1. v. n., (but see below), cease to hope, despair. — dēspērātus, -a, -um, as pass., despaired of. — Also as adj., (hopeless?, perh. orig. despaired of, hence), desperate.

dēspiciō, spicere, spēxī, spectus [de-specio], 3. v. a. and n., look down, look down upon. — Fig. (cf. Eng. equivalent), look down upon, despise.

dēspolio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [despolio], I. v. a., strip off. — With change of relation, strip (also fig., as in Eng.).

dēstinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of destino.
dēstino, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [perh.
dēstina-, a prop (fr. de-STA-nus)],
1. v. a., fasten, make fast, make firm,
get fast hold of, catch firmly. Hence,
fig., fix upon, appoint, choose, purpose, design, destinc.

dēstituō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtus [destātuo], 3. v. a., set apart (from one's self), abandon, leave, desert. — P. p. as adj., destitute of.

dēstitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of destituo.

dēstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of destringo.

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus [de-stringo], 3. v. a., strip off. — Also (cf. despolio), strip, draw (of swords, stripping them of their scabbards).

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [desum], irr. v. n., (be away), be wanting, be lacking, fail.— Esp., fail to do one's duty by, etc.— Often, lack (changing relation of subj. and following dat.), be without, not have.

desuper [de-super], adv., from above.

dētēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of detego. dētegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [detego, cover], 3. v. a., uncover.

dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus [de-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten off, deter, prevent (esp. by threats, but also generally).

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [de-teneo], 2. v. a., hold off, detain, delay, stop.

dētrāctō (-trecto), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-tracto], I. v. a., (hold off from one's self), avoid, shun.

dētrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of detraho. dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [de-traho], 3. v. a., drag off, snatch (away). — With less violence, take away, take off, withdraw (with no violence at all).

dētrectō, see detracto.

detrimentum, -i [de-†trimentum (tri- in tero, rub, + mentum), cf. detero], N., (a rubbing off), loss, injury. — Esp., defeat, disaster.

Digitized by Google

dētrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus [de-trudo], 3. v. a., thrust out, drive out.

dēturbo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-turbo, disturb ], 1. v. a., drive off (in confusion).

deūro, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [de-uro], 3. v. a., burn off, burn up.

deus, -ī [akin to divus, Iovis, dies], M., a god.

deūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of deuro.

dēvenio, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus [de-venio], 4. v. n., come away, land (come down from the sea), come (from one place to another).

dēvexus, -a, -um [prop. a p. p. of deveho, carry down], adj., sloping. - Neut. plur. as noun, slopes, hillsides.

dēvictus, -a, -um, p. p. of devinco. dēvinco, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus [de-vinco, conquer], 3. v. a., conquer (so as to prostrate), subdue (entirely), overcome.

dēvoro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-voro], 1. v. a., swallow up, devour, gulp down.

dēvoveo, -vovēre, -vovī, -votus [de-voveo], 2. v. a., vow (away). — Less exactly, devote, consecrate.

dexter, -era, -erum (-ra, -rum) [unc. st. (perh. akin to digitus?) + terus], adj., right, in (on) the right hand. — dextra (-era), F., (sc. manus), the right hand (esp. used as a pledge of faith, as with us).

Diablintes (-tres), -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci.

diadēma, -atis [Gr.], N., a royal crown, a diadem.

Diāna, -ae [perh. akin to lanus]. F., the goddess of the moon and of hunting, sister of Apollo.

dicio (less correctly dit-), -onis [st. akin to dico + o, cf. legio], F., (command, cf. Eng. "say"), dominion, sway.

dico, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†dico- (cf. causi-dicus)], I. v. a., adjudge, essign (in some legal manner). - Less exactly (esp. with reflex.), assign, make over : se in clientelam (bind one's self, attach one's self); se in servitutem (surrender).

dīco, dīcere, dīxī, dictus [DIC, in dico and -dicus], 3. v. a. and n., (point out?), say, speak, name, cell, tell. - Esp., with authority, name, appoint, fix: ius (administer, cf. dlco); sententiam (give). — Special uses: dicunt, they say; ius dicere, administer justice; magister dicendi, teacher of oratory. See also dictum.

dictator, -oris [dicta- (dictate) + tor], M., a dictator (a Roman magistrate appointed in times of danger, and possessing absolute power).

dicto, -are, -avī, -atus [dicto- (cf. dico)], 1. v. a. freq., declare, prescribe, dictate.

dictum, -ī [N. p. p. of dico], N., a thing said, a statement, a remark, a command, a word: fortuito dictum, a word accidentally spoken.

dīdūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [dis-duco], 3. v. a., draw apart, lead apart, separate, divide: 08 (open wide).

dies, -ei [prob. for dives, DIU + AS, cf.-us], M. (rarely F. in some uses), a day (in all Eng. senses). - Also, time: in dies, from day to day, with idea of increase or diminution; ad diem, on the day.

differo, differre, distulī, dīlātus [dis-fero], irr. v. a. and n., bear apart, spread. — Also, postpone, defer, differ.

difficilis, e [dis-facilis, easy], adj., not easy, difficult.

difficultās, -ātis [difficili- (weakened) + tās], F., difficulty: magna difficultate adficiebatur, was much troubled; rei frumentariae (difficulty of supplying grain).

diffundo, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [dis-fundo], 3. v. a., spread out.

digitus, -[?], M., a finger: pollex (the thumb). — As in Eng., a finger's breadth, a finger (as a measure).

dignitas, atis [digno- + tas], F., worthiness, worth, dignity, prestige, distinction, position (superior); tribuere (have respect for).

dignus, -a, -um [?, perh. DIC (root of dico) + nus], adj., worthy.

digredior, -gredī, -gressus [diagradior, step], 3. v. dep., step aside, go away, depart.

digressus, -a, -um, p. p. of digredior.

dīlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus [dis-labor, slide], 3. v. dep., glide away, slip away, vanish.

dīlanio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis-lanio, tear], 1. v. a., tear to pieces.

dīlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of diligo.

diligenter [diligent- (careful) + ter], adv., carefully, diligently, with care, with exactness, exactly, with pains: conservavit (took pains to save).

diligentia, -ae [diligent- (careful) + ia], F., care, pains, painstaking, diligence, earnestness: remittere (cease to take pains, take less care).

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus [dislego], 3. v. a., (choose out), love, be fond of.

dīmēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of dimetior.

dimétior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus [dismetior], 4. v. dep., measure (in parts), measure out (esp. of camp). — dīmēnsus, -a, -um, measured.

dīmicātiō, -ōnis [dimicā-+tio], F., a fight, a contest.

dīmico, -are, -āvī, -ātūrus [dismico], 1. v. n., (brandish swords to decide a contest?), fight (a decisive battle), risk an engagement.

dimidius, -a, -um [dis-medius], adj., (divided in the middle), half.

— Neut. as noun, the half.

dimitto, -mittere, -missi, -missus [dis-mitto], 3. v. a., let go away, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon: oppugnationem (raise). — Also, send in different directions, send about, despatch, detail, disband, dismiss, send away.

dirēctus, -a, -um, see derectus.

dîreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of diripio. dîrigō, see derigo.

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [dis-rapio], 3. v. a., seise (in different directions), plunder, pillage, ravage.

dīruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus [disruo], 3. v. a., tear asunder, overthrow, destroy.

dīrus, -a, -um [DI (fear) + rus], adj., dreadful, awful, frightful.

dis-, dī- (dir- dif-) [akin to duo?], insep. prep. (adv.), in comp., apart, asunder, in different directions, not, un-.— Cf. discedo, discerno, dirimo, diffundo.

11

Dis, Ditis [akin to dives, rich, as the earth is the source of riches], M., Pluto (the god of the under world, and so of death).

discēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [dis-cedo, go], 3. v. n., withdraw, depart, retire, leave (with ab), go away, come off: locus unde discesserant, the place which they had left; spes hostibus (forsake, fail); ab signis (leave the ranks).

discerno, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus [dis-cerno, separate], 3. v. a., separate, distinguish.

discessus, -ūs [dis-†cessus, cf. discedo], M., a departure, a with-drawal.

disciplina, -ae [discipulo- (reduced) + ina, cf. rapina], F., (pupillage?), discipline, instruction, a system (of doctrine, etc.), a course of instruction.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [dis-claudo], 3. v. a., shut apart, keep apart, separate, divide.

disclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of discludo.
discō, discere, didicī, no p. p.
[for tdicsco (DIC + sco)], 3. v. a.
and n., learn: discendi causa, for
instruction.

discordia, -ae [discord- (at variance) + ia], F., discord, discording.

discordo, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [discord- (at variance)], I. v. n., be at variance, differ, quarrel.

discrimen, -inis [dis-crimen, cf.

discerno], N., a separation, a decision. Hence, a moment of decision, a crisis, critical condition, danger.

discussus, -a, -um, p. p. of discutio.

discutio, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus [dis-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., strike (or shake) apart, beat away, drive away. clear away.

disicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectus [disiacio], 3. v. a., hurl apart, break up (a phalanx), disperse, scatter, tear off (yards): domum, (raze, destroy).—disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., scattered, broken, in disorder.

disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of disicio. dispālātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dispalor.

dispălor, -arī, -ātus [dis-palor, wander], 1. v. dep., wander about. straggle.

dispār, -paris [dis-par], adj., unequal, inferior, ill matched, different disparo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [disparo], I. v. a., scatter, separate (cf.

dispergō, spergere, spersī, spersus [dis-spargo, scattèr], 3. v. a., scatter, disperse.

disiungo).

dispersus, -a, -um, p. p. of dispergo.

displiceo, plicere, plicui, plicitus [displaceo, please], 2. v. n., displease, be unsatisfactory.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [dis-pono], 3. v. a., place about (in various places), station (variously), array (at several posts).

dispositus, -a, -um, p. p. of dispono.

disputo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [disputo, reckon], I. v. n. and a., discuss, investigate.

dissensio, -onis [dis-tsensio (cf. dissentio)], F., difference of opinion, disagreement, dissension.

dissentio, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus [dis-sentio, feel], 4. v. n., differ in opinion (cf. sentio), be at variance, disagree (ab, with).

dissero, ere, no perf., no p. p. [dissero], 3. v. a., plant here and there, place at intervals.

dissideo, -sidere, -sedi, no p. p. [dis-sedeo], 2. v. n., (sit apart).— Hence, disagree, have a dissension.

dissimulo, -are, -avī, -atus [dissimulo, make like], I. v. a. and n., (pretend something is not), conceal (what is), dissemble.

dissipātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dissipo.

dissipo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [distsupo, throw], 1. v. a., scatter, disperse, spread abroad: dissipati, straggling troops.

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [dis-suadeo], 2. v. a., advise to the contrary, oppose (in argument), dissuade.

distineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus [dis-teneo], 2. v. a., keep apart, hold asunder, keep from uniting, cut off (in military sense), isolate.

dīstō, -stāre, no perf., no p. p. [dis-sto], 1. v. n., stand apart, be distant: quantum iunctura distabat (as far as the distance between, etc.); quantum summa labra distabant (the width [of the ditch], at the top).

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [dis-traho], 3. v. a., drag asunder, separate.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtus [dis-tribuo, assign], 3. v. a., assign (to several), distribute, divide.

districtus, -a, -um, p. p. of distringo.

dīstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus [dis-stringo, draw], 3. v. a., (draw apart), engage, occupy.

diū [prob. acc. of st. akin to dies], adv., for a time, a long time, for some time, long: tam diu, so long; quam diu, how long, as long, as long as; diutius, (any) longer, too long; diutissime, for the longest time, longest.

diurnus, -a, -um [†dius (akin to diu and dies) + nus], adj., of the day, daily (as opposed to nightly): diurnis nocturnisque itineribus (by night and day).

dīvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -volsus (vul-) [dis-vello, tear], 3. v. a., tear asunder, tear apart.

dīversus, -a, -um, p. p. of diverto. dīvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [dis-verto], 3. v. a. and n., turn aside (or apart), separate. — dīversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., separate, distant, diverse, different, opposite.

dīves, itis [?], adj., rich, wealthy.

Dīviciācus, i [Celtic], M.: I. A
leader of the Hædui, brother of
Dumnorix.— 2. A leader of the
Suessiones.

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus [distvido, VIDH (?), cf. vidua, widow], 3. v. a., divide, separate, sever, distribute. — dīvīsus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., divided: Gallia divisa est. — Also, spread out.

divinus, -a, -um [divo- (as if divi) + nus], adj., of the gods, divine: 108 divinae, matters of religion, religion.

dīvitiae, -ārum [divit- (cf. dives) + ia], F. plur., wealth, riches.

dīvolsus, -a, -um, p. p. of divello. dīvus, -a, -um [DIV (akin to deus) + us], adj., (of a god). - Neut., as noun (only with sub), the sky: sub divo, in the open air, in the light of day. 1 do, dare, dedī, datus [DA, give, cf. 2do], I. v. a., give, afford, offer, allow, concede, assign, grant: responsum (answer, reply); mella (yield); nullo dato responso, making no reply; se vento (run before the wind); se in viam (set forth); hostes in fugam (put to flight); operam (devote one's self, take pains, exert one's self, see to it that, etc.); negotium uti (employ one to, etc., engage one to, etc.); arbitros (assign referces, a judicial function).

<sup>2</sup>do [DHA, place], confounded with <sup>1</sup>do, but appearing in comp., place, put, as in abdo, condo.

doceo, docere, docui, doctus [unc. formation, akin to dico and disco], 2. v. a., teach, show, inform, represent, state (in the course of the narrative), show how.—doctus, .a, -um, p. p. as adj., learned.

doctor, -ōris [doc- (in doceo) + tor], M., a teacher.

doctus, -a, -um, p. p. of doceo.

documentum, -1 [docu-(?) (as st. of doceo) + mentum], N., a means of teaching, a proof, a warning, an example.

doleo, dolere, dolui, doliturus [perh. dolo- (st. of dolus, craft)].
2. v. n., feel pain, suffer. — Esp. mentally, be pained, grieve.

dolor, -ōris [dol- (as root of doleo) + or], M., pain (physical or mental), distress, indignation, chagrin, vexation, sorrow, grief: magno dolor ferre, be very indignant, feel much chagrin; almost concrete, a grietance. See adficio.

dolus, -ī [perh. akin to doleo, originally stroke?], M., an artifice, deceit, treachery, tricks, a stratagem, a trick.

domesticus, -a, -um [domo- (as if domes-, cf. modestus) + ticus], adj. (of the house), of one's home, one's own, at home, private, personal: belum (domestic, internal, intestine).—
Plur. as noun, the inmates of a house.

domicilium, -ī [perh. domŏ-† cilium (fr. root of colo)], N., an abode, a dwelling place, a house (as a permanent home).

domina, -ae [fem. of dominus], F., a mistress.

dominātiō, -ōnis [dominā- + tio], F., mastery, rule, dominion, supremacy.

dominātus, -ūs [dominā- + tus]. M., mastery, rule, sovereignty.

dominor, -ārī, -ātus [dominŏ-], 1. v. dep., rule, be master.

dominus, -ī [†domŏ- (ruling) + nus], M., a master, an owner.

Domitius, I [domito- (reduced) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul in B.C. 54.

domitus, -a, -um, p.p. of domo.

domo, -āre, -uī, itus [DOM, tame], I. V. a., tame, subdue.

domus, -ī (-ūs) [DOM (build?) + us (-os and -us)], F., a house, a home: domī, at home; domum, home, to one's home; domo from home; domo excedere, go away, emigrate.

donec [?], conj., as long as, until, till.

dono, -are, -avi, -atus [dono-], 1. v. a., present, give (as a gift). — Also, honor with a gift, present (one with a thing); civitate aliquem donare, give one the rights of citizenship.

donum, -i [DA (give) + num (N. of nus)], N., a gift.

dormiō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [?], 4. v. n., sleep.

dorsum (-us), -ī [?], N. (and M.), the back.— Less exactly, a summit (of a long ridge), a ridge.

dos, dotis [DA (give) + tis (reduced)], F., (a gift). — Esp., a marriage gift, a dowry, a portion (given at marriage).

drachma, -ae [Gr.], F., a drachma (a Greek coin worth 19 cts.), a franc.

druides, -um [Celtic], M., the Druids, the priests of the Gallic religion.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [†dubitō-(partic. of lost verb dubo? cf. dubius)], 1. v. n., doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful. — Also (absolutely, or with infin., rarely with quin), hesitate, feel hesitation, vacillate.

dubius, -a, -um [duo- + bius, cf. superbus and dubito], adj., doubtful, uncertain: est dubium, there is doubt, it is doubtful; sine dubio, without doubt; dubio Marte, the contest doubtful.

ducentésimus, -a, -um [ducenti-(reduced) + esimus], num. adj., two hundredth.

ducenti, -ae, -a [duŏ-centi (plur. of centum)], num. adj., two hundred.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus [DUC (in dux)], 3. v. a., lead, draw, bring (of living things), take, conduct: primum pilum (be first centurion); ensem (make, fashion). — Esp. of a general, lead, march. — With or without in matrimonium, marry (of the man, cf. nubo). — Less exactly, run (a a line, ditch), dig, draw, make. — Fig., prolong, drag out. — As mercantile word, and so fig., reckon, consider.

dulcēdō, -inis [dulci- (reduced) +
edo, as if †dulcē- + do], F., sweetness.
dulcis, -e [?], adj., sweet.

dum [pron. DA, prob. acc., cf. tum], conj., at that time. — Also, while, so long as. Hence, till, until: dum modo or dummodo, so long as, provided. — With negatives, yet, as yet.

dummodo, see dum.

Dumnorix, -igis [Celtic], M., a leader of the Hædui, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o [dual of st. †dvŏ-, cf. bis], num. adj., two.

duodecim [duo-decem], indecl. num. adj., twelve.

duodecimus, -a, -um [duo-de-cimus], num. adj., twelfth.

duodēnī, -ae, -a [duo-deni], num. adj., twelve (in a set).

duodētrīgintā [duo-de-triginta], indecl. num. adj., twenty-eight.

duodēvicēsimus, -a, -um [duo-de-

! 1

vicesimus, twentieth], num. adj., eighteenth.

duodēvīgintī [duo - de - viginti, twenty], indecl. num. adj., eighteen.

duplex, -plicis [duo-tplex, cf. plico, fold], adj., twofold, double.

duplicatus, -a -um, p. p. of duplico.

duplico, -are, -avi, -atus [duplic-],
1. v. a., double, increase twofold.

dūritia, -ae [durŏ- + tia], F., hardness, hardship.

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [durō-], 1. v. a. and n., harden, toughen, make hardy. — Also, (harden one's self), hold out, persevere, last, remain.

dūrus, -a, -um [?], adj., kard.— Fig., hard, harsh, severe, difficult.— Also, rough, uncultivated.

Dūrus, -ī [durus], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Quintus Loberius Durus, a military tribune in Cæsar's army, killed in Britain.

dux, ducis [DUC (lead) 2s st.], M. and F., a leader, a guide, a commander, a general.

Dyrrachium, -ī [Gr.], N., a town in Illyria, nearly opposite Brundisium in Italy.

E

ē, shortened form of ex (esp. in composition), wh. see.

ea [instr. or abl. of is], adv., this way, that way, thus, in that direction, in that quarter, there.

ēbrius, -a, -um [?], adj., drunk. eburnus, -a, -um [ebor- (ivory) + nus], adj., of ivory, ivory (adj.).

Eburones, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Belgian tribe, dependents of the Treveri, living north of these between the Meuse and the Rhine.

Eburovices, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci living in the region of modern Perche.

ecquis (-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod)
[en-quis], indef. interr. pron.,
(whether) any? does (is, etc.) any?
— Esp., ecquid, N. acc. as adv., at
all: ecquid scis, fray, do you know?
ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no p. p.
[ex-disco], 3. v. a., learn off, learn
by heart, commit to memory.

ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of ēdo.

edő, edere (ēsse), ēdī, ēsus [ED]. 3. v. a., eat.

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [ex-do], 3. v. a., put forth, utter, give forth, announce: pugnas (ludos) (bring out, exhibit); facinus (do, perpetrate). ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., elevated, raised, high.

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctus [ex-doceo, teach], 2. v. a., show forth, explain, inform, tell, instruct.

ēducātus, -a, -um, p. p. of educo. ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [teduc- (cf. redux), 1. v. a., bring up, rear, educate.

- ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [exdūco], 3. v. a., lead out, lead forth, bring out (a baggage-train).

ēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of edūco. effarciō (-ferc-), -farcīre, -farsī, -fertus [ex-farcio], 4. v. a., stuff out, fill in (solid).

effectus, -a, -um, p. p. of efficio.

effemino, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [extfemino, or perh. teffemino- (or -i), in either case from femina, woman], I. v. a., make into a woman.—Less exactly, (make like a woman), enervate, weaken.

efferātus, -a, -um, p. p. of <sup>1</sup>effero.

<sup>1</sup>efferō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [efferō- (st. of efferus, savage), 1. v. a., make savage, brutalize.

<sup>2</sup>efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [exfero], irr. v. a., carry out, bring out, carry away. — Less exactly and fig., spread abroad, make known, publish abroad.

efficāx, ācis [effic- (as st.) + ax], adj., effectual, powerful.

efficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [exfacio], 3. v. a., make out, make, effect, enable, accomplish, cause, produce, cause to be, make into, make out (furnish), make up, complete: ut praeberent (make them afford); ut sint laboris (make capable of); ut posset (make possible); classem (get together, construct).

effigiës, -ēī [ex- ffigies (FIG (cf. fingo, fashion) + ies)], F., an image, a figure.

efflägitő, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exflagito], 1. v. a., demand urgently, request.

efflo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-flo, blow],

1. v. a., breathe out: animam
(breathe one's last).

effodio, -fodere, -fodi, -fossus [exfodio], 3. v. a., dig out, gouge out.

efiossus, -a, -um, p. p. of efiodio. effugio, -fugere, -fugi, -fugiturus [ex-fugio], 3. v. a., escape, flee (absolutely), fly from. effundo, fundere, fūdī, fūsus [exfundo, pour], 3. v. a., pour out, empty. — Fig., squander, spread abroad.

effūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of effundo. egēns, -entis, p. of egeo.

egeō, egēre, eguī, no p. p. [?, (cf. indigus, in want)], 2. v. n., want, need, be in want.— egēns, -entis, p. as adj., needy, destitute.

egestās, -ātis [unc. st. (perh. egent-) + tas]. F., poverty, destitution.

ego, meī [cf. Eng. I], pers. pron.. I (me, etc.). — Plur., nos, we, us, etc.

egredior, -gredi, -gressus [exgradior, step], 3. v. dep., march out, go out, move beyond: finis (pass beyond); navi or e navi (land, disembark, go ashore); ex oppido (evacuate).

ēgregiē [old case-form of egregius], adv., remarkably, finely, extremely well, excellently.

ēgregius, -a, -um [e grege (out of the herd) + ius], adj., out of the common, remarkable, superior, excellent, uncommon, special, renowned. ēgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of egre-

dior. ēgressus, -ūs [e-gressus, cf. in-

gressus and egredior], M., a landing. ēheu [?], interj., alas! alack!

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [exiacio], 3. v. a., cast out, drive out, cast up (cf. edo). — With reflex., rush out, rush.

ēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of eicio.

ēiusmodī [eius modi], as adj. phrase, of this kind, of such a kind, such, of such a nature, of this nature. ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus [ex-labor], 3. v. dep., slip out, escape.

ēlāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of elabor. ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of eligo.

ēlegāns, -antis [p. of † elego (cf. eligo, choose out)], adj., fastidious, nice.

ēleganter [elegant- + ter], adv., neatly, elegantly.

elephantus, -ī [Gr.], m., an ele-phant.

Eleutetī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a people dependent on the Arverni.

ēlīdo, -līdere, -līsī, -līsus [ex-laedo, strike], 3. v. a., dash to pieces, crush.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [exlego], 3. v. a., pick out, choose, select, appoint (dies). — ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., picked (troops).

ēlūdō, -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsus [exludo, play], 3. v. a., escape, avoid, elude.

ēmergō, -mergere, -mersī, -mersus [ex-mergo, plunge], 3. v. n., rise (from under water), come forth, arise, emerge.

ēmineō, -minēre, -minuī, no p. p. [ex-†mineo, project], 2. v. n., stand out, project, tower above. Hence, be conspicuous.

ēminus [ex manu, hand, cf. cominus], adv., at a distance, at long range.

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [ex-mitto], 3. v. a., let go, let out, drop, send out, throw, hurl, discharge, let loose: vocem (utter). — Pass., or with reflex., rush out.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus [EM?, orig. take], 3. v. a., (take, only in compounds). — Esp., buy (cf. Eng. "sell," orig. give), purchase.

ēmptor, -ōris [EM (cf. emo) + ter], M., a buyer, a purchaser.

ēn [?], interj., lo! behold!

ēnārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-narro, tell], I. v. a., tell, relate, recount.

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus [ex-nascor].
3. v. dep., grow out, spring out.

ēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enascor.

ēnāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exnavigo, sail], I. v. a., sail over, traverse, pass over.

ēnecō, -necāre, -necuī (-āvī), -nectus [ex-neco, kill], 1. v. a., exhaust, wear out.

enim [prob. e (in en, ecce) + nam] (always postpositive), conj. really. — Esp., as explanatory, fer, but, now, for in fact: neque enim, for of course... not, for you see... not.

ēnsis, -is [?], M., a sword, a blade.
ed, īre, īvī (iī), itūrus [root 1], irī
v. n., go, pass, march, advance, proceed: itum est, they went; dies (go
by).—Pass. infin. īrī used with verbs
to form the fut. pass. inf.

eð [old dat. of is], adv., thither. there (in sense of thither). — Often translated by more def. expressions in Eng., to the place (where, etc.), on them (it, him, etc.): usque eo ut, to that degree that, so far that.

eō, abl. neut. used as the abl. of degree of difference. See is.

eodem [old dat. of idem, cf. eo, thither], adv., to the same place, in the same place (cf. eo), there also: eodem illo pertinere . . . ut, favored the same idea . . . that, belonged to the same design . . . that.

Ephialtes, -ae [Gr.], M., the be-

trayer of the Greeks at Thermopylæ.

ephippiātus, -a, -um [ephippiā-(as if st. of verb, cf. auratus) + tus, see ephippium], adj., saddled, caparisoned: equites (riding on saddles, as a less manly form of horsemanship).

ephippium, -i [Gr.], N., a horse-cloth, caparison, housing.

epigramma, -atis [Gr.], N., an epigram.

**Epīrus**, -ī [Gr.], F., a province in northern Greece.

epistula (epistola), -ae [Gr.], F., a letter, a note, a message (in writing), a despatch.

Eporēdorix, -igis [Celtic], M., a nobleman of the Hædui.

epulum, -ī, plur. -ae, -ārum [?], N. (sing.), F. (plur.), a feast, a banquet.

eques, itis [equo + tis (reduced)], M., a horseman, a rider.—
Plur., cavalry.— Esp. (as orig. serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate).— So also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class).

equester, -tris, -tre [equit- + tris], adj., of knights, of cavalry.

equidem [e (in en, ecce) -quidem], adv., certainly, surely, truly, at least, to be sure.

equitātus, -ūs [equitā- (as st. of equito, ride) + tus], M., cavalry, horse (troops serving on horseback).

equito, -are, -avi, atus [equit-], 1. v. n., ride.

equus, -i [AK (swift) + vus], M., a horse.

Eratosthenēs, -is [Gr.], M., a Greek philosopher and mathematician of Alexandria, born B.C. 276.

ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of erigo.

ēreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of eripio.

ergā [prob. instr. of same st. as ergo], prep. with acc., towards (of feeling and conduct).

ergo (-o rarely) [unc. form, perh. dat., cf. erga], adv., therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [exrego, make straight], 3. v. a., set up straight, raise up. — With reflex., get up. —ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., high, high and straight.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [ex-rapio], 3. v. a., snatch away, take away, wrest (a thing from), deprive (one of a thing, changing the relation in Eng.), take from, rescue.

ērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-rogo, ask], 1. v. a., appropriate (orig. from the public treasury), pay out, expend.

errö, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [?], I. v. n., wander, meander (of a river), go astray, err, be mistaken.

error, -ōris [ERR (as if root of erro) + or], M., a mistake, an error.

**ērubēscō**, -rubēscere, -rubuī, no p. p. [ex-rubesco, redden], 3. v. n., turn red, blush.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [ex-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., burst out, break out, sally out, make a sally.

ēruptiō, -ōnis [ex-ruptio, cf. erumpo], F., a breaking out, a sally, a sortic.

ervum, -I [?], N., vetch (a kind of pulse).

esseda, ae (-um, i) [Celtic], F. (and N.), a war chariot (of the Gauls).

essedărius, i [essedŏ- (-a) (reduced) + arius], M., a charioteer (a warrior fighting from an essedum).

Esuvii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the region of Normandy.

et, conj., and: et . . . et, both . . . and. — With emphasis, and also. etiam [et iam], conj., also, too, even, even now, yet, and also, besides: quin etiam, nay more; etiam tum, even then, till then.

etiamtum [etiam-tum], adv., even then.

Etrūria, -ae [?], F., a division of Italy north of the Tiber and west of the Apennines.

etsi [et si], conj., even if, although, though.

Eumenēs, is [Gr.], M., king of Pergamum, B.C. 198-158, a friend and ally of Rome.

euntis (gen. of iens), p. of eo.

Euphrātēs, -is [Gr.], M., a river of Asia, rising in Armenia and joining the Tigris near Babylon.

Eurspides, -is [Gr.], M., a celebrated Greek tragic poet.

Europa, -ae [Gr.], F., Europe.

Eurylochus, -i [Gr.], M., one of the companions of Ulysses.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus [ex-vado, go], 3. v. n., escape: evadere ad, arrive at.

ēvānēscō, -vānēscere, -vānuī, no p. p. [ex-vanesco], 3. v. n., vanish away, disappear.

ēvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of eveho.

ěvehő, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus [exveho, carry], 3. v. a., (carry out). —
Also, bear aloft, raise, elevate.

evenio, -venire, -veni, -venturus [ex-venio], 4. v. n., come out, turn out, happen, fall out.

ēventus, -ūs [ex-tventus, cf. conventus and evenio], M., result, issue, fate, success.

everto, vertere, verti, versus [exverto, turn], 3. v. a., turn upside down, overturn, overthrow.

ēvīto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-vito, shun], I. v. a., avoid, escape.

evocatus, -a, -um, p. p. of evoco.
evoco, -are, -avi, -atus [ex-voco],

I. v. a., call out, call forth, summon. ēvolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [ex-

evolo, -are, -avi, -aturus [exvolo], I. v. n., fly out, rush out. ex (\varepsilon) [?], adv. (in comp.), and prep. with abl., out of (cf. ab, away

prep. with abl., out of (cf. ab, away from), out. - Less exactly, from (lit and fig.), of (made of): facilia ex difficillimis redegerat, had made easy instead of most difficult, as they were. Hence, after. - Also, on account of, in accordance with, by means of .-Also, above (raised from). - Also (cf. ab), in, on: una ex parte, on one side; ex itinere, on the march, starting from it; ex corum corporibus; ex ea civitate, from that nation, belonging there; ex fuga, in their flight; ex ordine, in order. - Other phrases: magna ex parte, in a great degree, for the most part; ex cratibus (of, made of); unus e filiis (one of, etc.); ex Hispania (a man from); ex usu, for the advantage, cf. " of use "; ex planitie editus (above, raised out of); e regione, opposite; ex litteris (in

accordance with, from facts stated in, etc.); ex (e) contrario, on the contrary. — In comp., out, completely (cf. "out and out"), off, up, after, from, un-.

exaequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-aequo (cf. aequus, equal)], 1. v. a., make equal, equal.

exagitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of exagito.

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-agito, freq. of ago, drive], 1. v. a., pursue, drive, harass, persecute.

exăminătus, -a, -um, p. p. of examino.

exāminō, ·āre, ·āvī, ·ātus · [examin- (st. of examen, tongue of the balance)], 1. v. a., weigh. — Fig., examine, test.

exanimātus, -a, -um, p. p. of exanimo.

exanimis, -e [ex-anima-, decl. as adj.], adj., (out of breath), breathless (from fear), in dismay, half dead.

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exanimō-], 1. v. a., deprive of breath or life, kill.—exanimātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., out of breath, weakened, exhausted.

exărdēsco, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, no p. p. [ex-ardesco, cf. ardeo, burn], 3. v. n., blaze up, be kindled. — Fig., become enraged, become excited, burn.

exaudiō, ·īre, ·īvī, ·ītus [ex-audio], 4. v. a., hear (from a distance), hear distinctly, distinguish.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [ex-cedo], 3. v. n., go out, leave (with abl.), withdraw, retire.—Absolutely, leave the fight.

excello, -cellere, -cellui, -celsus

[ex-tcello], 3. v. a. and n., raise. rise, surpass, excel. — excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., high, elevated, tall.

excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. of excello. exceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of excipio. excidium (exsc-), -i [ex-tacidium (SCID + ium, cf. exscindo, cut off)], N., downfall, overthrow.

excido, cidere, cidi, no p. p. [excado, fall], 3. v. n., fall down, fall out: ei (from his hand).

exciō (-cieō), -cīre, -cīvī (-iī), -cītus [ex-cio (cieo, stir)], 4. v. a., call forth, summon.

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [excapio], 3. v. a., take off, take up, pick up, intercept, receive, catch (of animals), welcome (of persons). Hence, follow, come after, come next: vada (stand, of vessels); vim fluminis (break); alios alii (succeed); hunc alii (follow, take up the cry, in shouting). — Also, meet, befall.

excitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of excito. excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-cito, cf. excieo, call up], 1. v. a., call out, arouse, rouse, excite, stimulate (induce). — Also, raise (towers), kindle (fire).

exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exclamo], 1. v. a. and n., cry out, exclaim.

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [ex-claudo], 3. v. a., shut out, cut off (from doing a thing), prevent.

exclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of excludo. excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [excogito], 1. v. a., think out, devise.

excruciatus, -a, -um, p. p. of excrucio.

excrucio, -are, -avi, -atus [excrucio, cf. crux, cross], I. v. a., torture, torment.

excrució

excubitor, -oris [as if ex-†cubitor, cf. excubo], M., a sentinel (as lying out of the camp or tent).

excubo, -cubare, -cubui, -cubitūrus [ex-cubo], 1. v. n., lie outside. -Esp., of camp, stand guard, keep a night watch, watch.

exculco, -are, -avi, -atus [ex-calco], 1. v. a., tread down, trample down.

excursio, -onis [ex-tcursio, cf. excurro, run out ], F., a sally, a sortie. excuso, -are, -avi, -atus [ex-†causo, cf. causa, reason], I. v. a., give as an excuse. - Also, with change of relation), excuse, exculpate.

excutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [ex-quatio], 3. v. a., shake out : risum (force).

exedo, -edere, -ēdī, -ēsus [ex-edo, eat ], 3. v. a., (eat out), devour. -Less exactly, wear away.

exemplum, -i [ex-templum, EM (in emo, take) + lus with parasitic p], N., (something taken out), a sample, a copy, a precedent, an example, an instance, a case.

exeo, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itus [ex-eo], irr. v. n., go forth, come forth, go out, emigrate, march out, remove: fama (go abroad, spread).

exerceo, -ercere, -ercui, -ercitus [ex-arceo], 2. v. a., (drive off humors of the body), train, practise, exercise. — Of persons, worry, exasperate: legem (administer, carry into effect); rura (till, cultivate).

exercitătio, -onis [exercită- (st. of exercito) + tio], F., practice, exercise.

exercitătus, -a, -um, p. p. of exercito.

exercito, -are, -avi, -atus [exercitb., cf. exerceo], I. v. a., train, practise. - exercitātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., trained.

exercitus, -ūs [as if ex-arcitus, cf. exerceo], M., (a training). - Concretely, (a body trained or in training), an army (large or small, acting independently), a force.

exēsus, -a, -um, p. p. of exedo.

exhaurio, -haurire, -hausi, -haustus [ex-haurio], 4. v. a., drain off. -Also, wear out, exhaust.

exhaustus, -a, -um, p. p. of exhaurio.

exhibeo, -hibere, -hibui, -hibitus [ex-habeo], 2. v. a., hold out, show, exhibit.

exiguē [old case-form of exiguus], adv., scantily, meagrely: exigue habere frumentum (have a scanty supply of, etc.).

exiguitās, -ātis [exiguŏ- + tas], F., scantiness, meagreness: temporis (short time, want of time); pellium (small size); castrorum (narrowness, small size).

exiguus, -a, -um [ex-taguus (AG + uus), cf. exigo], adj., (exact?), narrow, scanty, small, meagre.

eximius, -a, -um [ex-temius, Ex + ius, cf. eximo, take out], adj., (taken out), exceptional, remarkable, very high (opinio), extraordinary.

exīstimō, .āre, .āvī, .ātus [exaestimo, reckon], I. v. a. and n., estimate, believe, think, suppose, imagine. exitium, -I [ex-titium (ito- + ium),

cf. exeo], N., destruction, ruin.

F

6

exitus, -ūs [ex-itus, cf. exeo], M., (a going out), a passage (out, concretely), an outlet. Hence, an end, the last part. — Fig., a result, a turn (of fortune), lot, fate, an issue.

expedio, ire, ivi, itus [prob. texpedi- (st. of adj. tex-pes, foot-free)], 4. v. a. and n., disentangle, extricate, disencumber, free, set free (cf. impedio). — Less exactly and fig., set in order, get ready, arrange, station (of troops), procure, raise (money). — expeditus, a, -um, p. p. as adj., unencumbered, easy (iter), not difficult, quick, active, light-armed (of troops), in light marching order (of troops without baggage), mobile (of troops), ready.

expedītiō, -ōnis [expedī- + tio, cf. expedīo], F., (light-armed service?), a getting ready, a despatching. Hence, an expedition: misit in expeditionem (detached).

expeditus, -a, -um, p. p. of expedio.

expello, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [ex-pello], 3. v. a., drive out.

experior, periri, pertus [extperior, pass. of pario, get], 4. v. dep., (get for one's self?), experience, try: fortunam (risk, try, bear, endure).

expleo, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [expleo], 2. v. a., fill out, fill up, make up (filling the required measure).

explorator, -ōris [as if ex-†plorator, cf. exploro], M., a scout, a pioneer (as a means of reconnoitring, cf. speculator, a spy).

exploratus, -a, -um, p. p. of exploro.

exploro, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-ploro, prob. search by calling or crying], 1. v. a., investigate, explore, search, examine, reconnoitre. — explorātus, -a, -um, p. p., assured, certain: explorata victoria, being assured of victory: habere omnia explorata, know certainly: exploratum (est), an inquiry was made.

expono, -ponere, -posui, -positus [ex-pono], 3. v. a., place out, set out: exercitum (disembark, also draw up, array): in terram (put ashore).

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exporto], I. v. a., carry out, carry away, export.

exposco, -poscere, -poposci, no p. p. [ex-posco], 3. v. a., demand (with eagerness).

expositus, -a, -um, p. p. of expono.

exprimo, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [ex-premo], 3. v. a., press out, force out. Hence, express.— Also (cf. edo), raise up: turrīa agger (as the mound of circumvallation rose with the towers on it as it approached the city).

expūgnātiō, -ōnis [ex-pugnātio, cf. expugno], F., a storming (of a city), taking (of a city by storm).

expūgnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of expugno.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [expugno, fight], I. v. a., take (by storm), capture (by storming a city or boarding a ship), overcome, conquer: stipendiariis expugnatis, the cities of their tributaries sacked.

expulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of expello. exsequiae, -ārum [ex-†sequia

(sequö- + ia), cf. exsequor, follow out], F. plur., obsequies, funeral riles.

exsilio, -silire, -silui, no p. p. [ex-salio, jump], 4. v. n., spring out, start up from.

exsilium, -ī [exsul- + ium, cf. exsilio], N., exile.

exsisto, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p. [ex-sisto], 3. v. n., stand out, rise up, come out: malacia (ensue); comu (grow out, project).

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exspecto], 1. v. a. and n., look out for, wait for, wait, wait to see (si, whether, etc.), expect, anticipate.

exspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-spiro],
1. v. n., breathe out (esp. the last breath), expire.

exspolio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exspolio], 1. v. a., strip off. — Also, strip of (cf. despolio). — Fig., deprive, rob (of, abl.).

exstō, -stāre, -stitī, no p. p. [exsto], 1. v. n., stand out: ex aqua (be above).

exstructus, -a, -um, p. p. of exstruo.

exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus [ex-struo], 3. v. a., heap up, build up, pile up. — exstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., well filled.

exsul, -ulis [ex-SAL (of salio), as st., with some lost connection of meaning, cf. consul], M. and F., an exile.

extemplo [ex templo (cf. templum, place of the augur)], adv., immediately, forthwith, at once.

exter, -tera, -terum [ex + terus (reduced)], adj., outer, outside.—

Compar., exterior, -us. e.cterior. — Superl., extremus, -a, -u'., farthest. extreme, last: extremi, as noun, the rear; in extremis lingulis (at the extremity of, etc., and often in this sense); ad extremum, till the last, to the end, at last; ad extremum producta casum (to the last extremity); ab extrema parte, at the very end; in extrema spe, almost in despair; in extremis suis rebus, in the last extremity; extrema fames, the last extremity of hunger.

externus, -a, -um [extro- (in externs, outer) + nus], adj., from abroad, foreign.

exterreo, -terrere, -terrui, -territus [ex-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten away, frighten greatly, terrify.

exterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of ex terreo.

extimesco, -timescere, -timui, no p. p. [ex-timesco], 3. v. a. and n., fear greatly, fear (much), dread.

extrā [abl. or instr. (?) of exter, cf. supra], adv. and prep. with acc., outside, out of.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [ex-traho], 3. v. a., drag out, draw out, pull out: multum aestatis (drag out, waste).

extrēmus, see exter.

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus [ex-trudo], 3. v. a., thrust out, pusk out, shut out (by dikes): mercis (dispose of, cf. "shove off").

extrūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of extrudo. exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [ex-, unc. verb, cf. induo], 3. v. a., strip off. — Also (cf. despolio), strip, deprive. despoil: Romanos impedimentis. F

71

faber, -bri [FA (in facio) + ber (for brus) (M. of faber, skilful), M., a mechanic, an engineer (in an army), an artisan, a workman, a smith.

Fabius,  $-\bar{i}$  [? faba- (bean) + ius, cf. Cicero], M., a Roman gentile name. - Esp.: 1. Quintus Fabius Maximus, a Roman consul and dictator in the Second Punic War .--2. Caius Fabius, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul. - 3. Q. Fabius Labeo, a Roman consul in B.C. 183. - Fabius, -a, -um, as adj., Fabian.

fabricatus, -a, -um, p. p. of fabrico.

fabrico, -are, -avi, -atus [†fabrica- $(fabr\ddot{o} + cus)$ , 1. v. a., fashion, make, build.

fābula, -ae [FA (in for, speak) + bula (F. of bulus)], F., a myth, a fable, a story.

facies, -ēī [†facŏ- (reduced, cf. facio) + ies], F., form, shape. — Concretely, face.

facilis, e [†facŏ- (cf. beneficus) + lis], adj., easy (to do, cf. habilis), convenient, without difficulty, easy (generally). — facile, N. as adv., easily, conveniently, readily, without difficulty.

facinus, -oris [†facin- (as if root of tfacino, longer form of facio) + us], N., a deed (of any kind). - Esp. (as in Eng.), a deed (of crime), a misdeed, a crime, guilt (referring to some particular act), criminal conduct. See admitto.

facio, facere, feci, factus [FAC + io], 2. v. a. and n., make, do, act. - Used in a great variety of senses as Eng.: conjurationem (form); proelium (bring on); iter (march, travel, proceed); vim (use violence, force a passage, offer resistance); testudinem (form); ea (perform); pacem (as in Eng.); finem epistulae (bring to a close); verba (speak, act as spokesman); potestatem (give an opportunity, permit, allow). - Esp. with clause of result, cause (to), do (omitting in Eng. the connective that, and expressing the thing done in the indicative): facies ut sciam, you will let me know. - So in pass., be done, be caused, happen, result, ensue, occur, turn out, be, become: non sine causa fit, it is not without reason; fit ut, the result is that; fieri posse, be possible; quid fit, what is going on; fit gratulatio, one is congratulated. - Often with two accs. (or with adj. corresponding to second acc.), make, render. - Esp.: certiorem facere, inform. - So with pred. gen.: nihil reliqui, leave nothing undone, leave no further possibility; sui commodi naves (make for his convenience). - factum, -ī, N. of p. p., half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either, act, thing done, fact, etc.: id factum graviter tulit, took this action much to heart; recte factum, good conduct (but notice the adverb); factum male, a woful deed. - fio, fieri, as pass. in all senses.

STOP STOP

factio, -onis [prob. ffacti + o, but treated as FAC + tio, cf. co-



111

hortatio], F., a business, an employment. — Also, a party, a faction.

factum, -ī, see facio.

factus, -a, -um, p. p. of facio.

facultās, -ātis [facul (for facilicf. simul) + tas], F., ease, facility. —So, chance, power, opportunity: quantum facultatis dari potuit, so far as opportunity was offered; sui conligendi (chance to, etc.). Hence, concretely, means, resources, supply: navium.

faenerātor, -ōris [faenerā- (lend on interest) + tor], M., a usurer.

faenus, -oris [unc. st. fr. FE (produce) + nus, cf. facinus], N., interest, usury.

fagus, -1 [prob. BHAG (eat) + us, from the fruit], F., a beech, beech (of the timber).

Falernus, -a, -um [?], adj., generally with ager, the Falernian territory, in Campania, famous for its wine. — Also, neut. (sc. vinum) as noun, Falernian (wine).

fallo, fallere, fefelli, falsus [? SPHAL, trip up], 3. v. a. and n., deceive: spes aliquem (disappoint); fallendo, by deceit. — falsus, -a, -um, p. p., deceived. — Also (transferred to things), false, unfounded.

falsus, -a, -um, p. p. of fallo.

falx, falcis [?], F., a sickle, a pruning-hook.—Also, a hook (of similar form for demolishing walls).

fāma, -ae [FA (in for, speak) + ma], F., speech, common talk, reputation. — Concretely, a rumor, a story, a report, fame, reputation.

fames, -is [?], F., hunger, star-vation.

familia, -ae [famulo- (servant), reduced, + ia], F., a collection of attendants, a household, a family: gladiatorum (a gang, a troop). — Applied to Gauls, a clan, retainers.

familiāris, -e [prob. familiā- + ris, but treated as famili- + aris (cf. animalis)], adj., of the household: res (estate, property). — Esp. as noun, a friend.

tamiliāritās, -ātis [familiari-+ tas], F., intimacy (with, gen.).

fāmōsus, -a. -um [fama- + osus], adj., slanderous, scandalous.

famula, -ae [F. oi famulus, servant], F., a maid-servant.

fās [FA (in for, speak) + us], indecl. N., right (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fas (permitted, allowed).

fascis, is [?], M., a bundle.— Esp. in plur., the fasces, the bundle of rods with an axe, carried by the lictor before the higher magistrates.

fastīdium, ·ī [akin to fastus, scorn], N., squeamishness. — Plur, want of appetite.

fastīgātē [old case-form of fastigatus], adv., sloping.

fastīgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of fastīgo. fastīgium, -ī [ffastīgŏ- (unc. form, akin to fastus, scorn, cf. castīgo) + ium, cf. fastīgo], N., elevation, slope, descent (of a slope).

fastigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†fastigō-(cf. fastigium)], 1. v. a., bring to a point. — Esp., fastīgātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., inclined, sloping: leniter (with an easy slope).

fāstus, -a, -um [fas + tus], adj, secular (of days when the courts,

etc., could rightly be held). — Masc. plur. as noun, the fasti (the list of such days), the calendar.

fātālis, e [fatŏ- (fate) + alis], adj., fated, fatal. — Hence, dangerous.

fateor, -ērī, fassus [perh. akin to fatigo], 2. v. dep., confess, acknowledge.

fatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†fatīgŏ-(†fatī-agus, cf. prodigus), 1. v. a., tire out, weary.

tfaux, tfaucis [?], F. (only abl. sing. and plur.), the throat, the jaws.—
Fig., appetite.— Also, voracity, greediness: fauce improba.

faveo, favere, favi, fautūrus [?], 2. v. n., favor, be favorable to.

fax, facis [?], F., a torch, a firebrand, fire (lighted missiles).

febris, -is [akin to ferveo, be hot], F., a fever, fever.

fēlīcitās, -ātis [felic- (as if felici-) + tas], F., good fortune, good luck, lucky star.

feliciter [felic- (as if felici-) + ter], adv., happily, fortunately, luckily, successfully.

fēlīx, -īcis [akin to feo, produce], adj., (fruitful). Hence, happy, fortunate, lucky, successful.

fēmina, -ae [FE (nurse) + mina, cf. alumna], F., a woman, a female.

femur, -oris (-inis) [?], N., the thigh.

fera, see ferus.

ferāx, -ācis [reduced noun-st. (akin to fero) + ax, as if †ferā + cus (reduced)], adj., fertile.

ferculum, -i [FER (in fero) + culum], N., (a means of carrying, a

dish). — Transf., a dish, a mess, a course.

ferē [?, old case-form of st. †ferŏ-(akin to fero)], adv., almost, about.

— Also, almost always, generally, usually, for the most part. — With negatives, hardly.

fero, ferre, tuli, latus (for tlatus) [BHAR, bear, and TOL (TLA) in tollo], irr. a. and n., bear, carry, endure, to'erate, suffer, stand, withstand, carry off, win. - Often in a loose sense, translated by various special words in Eng., commit, offer, etc. - With reflex. or in pass., rush, pass, proceed, roll (of a river). -With advs. indicating manner of receiving anything, suffer, bear, take it, feel: acerbius ferre inopiam (suffer severely from); magno cum dolore ferre, be much pained or indignant at; moleste (graviter, aegre) ferre, be annoyed at, take hard, be indignant at, take to heart. - Special uses: auxilium (carry aid, assist); arma (bear arms, fight); condicionem (propose); legem (propose, carry, pass); signa (bear on the standards, march); ventus ferebat (carried the ships, blew); consuetudo fert (is); opinio fert (goes); fertur, it is said.

fērox, -ocis [akin to ferus], adj., fierce, savage, insolent.

ferraria, -ae [F. of ferrarius, cf. ferrum], F., an iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um [ferro- + eus], adj., of iron, iron (as adj.).

ferrum, -I [?], N., iron, steel, sword: ad ferrum et manus, to close quarters.

fertilis, -e [ferto- + lis (as if FER + tilis)], adj., fertile, fruitful.

fertilitās, -ātis [fertili- + tas], F., fertility, productiveness.

•

ferus, -a, -um [FER (rush) + us, cf. deer], adj., wild, ferocious.—
Masc. or fem. as noun, wild beast, game.

fervefacio, -facere, -feci, -factus [†ferve- (case-form akin to ferveo, be hot) + facio], 3. v. a., heat, heat red-hot (iacula).

fervefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of fervefacio.

fessus, -a, -um [?], adj., wearied, tired, worn out.

fēstīvus, -a, -um [festŏ- + ivus], adj., festive, gay. — Also, agreeable, bleasa

fēstus, -a, -um [?], adj., festive, festal, happy: dies.

fībula, -ae [FIG (in figo, fasten) + bula], F., a clasp, a buckle.

fictilis, e [ficto- (cf. fingo, fashion) + lis], adj., of earth, earthen (as fashioned by the potter).

fictus, -a, -um, p. p. of fingo.

fidēlis, -e [fidē- (st. of fides or kindred st.) + lis], adj., faithful.

fides, ei [FID (bind) + es], F., a promise, a pledge: laedere (break faith); fidem facere, give assurance; fidem praestare, keep faith, perform one's duty. — Also, good faith, fidelity: bona fide, in good faith, with sincerity. — Transf., confidence, faith (in), credit, belief. — Esp. of promised protection, protection, dependence, olliance: quorum in fide (under whose protection); Caesaris fidem sequi (come under, surrender one's self to); in fidem se permittere (venire), place themselves under protection of.

fiducia, ae [fiduc- (fidu-, faith ful, + cus, reduced) + ia], F., confidence, reliance.

figō, figere, fixi, fixus [FIG], 3. v. a., fix, fasten (in the ground). Hence, erect, set up.

figura, -ae [ffigu- (Fic, in fingo, + us) + ra (F. of rus)], F., skape, form, appearance.

filia, -ae [F. of filius], F., a daughter.

filiola, -ae [filio- + la (F. of lus, dim. ending)], F., a little daughter.

filius, -ī [?], M., a son.

filum, -ī [?], N., a thread.

fingo, fingere, finxi, fictus [FIG, cf. figura], 3. v. a., mould. — Fig., invent, contrive, imagine, feign, pretend. — fictus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, N. plur., fictions: ficta respondeant, make up answers.

finio, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [fini-], 4. v. a., set bounds to, limit, bound, measure (ending a division). — Also, finish, end.

finis, is [?], M., a limit, a boundary, an end: finem facere, put an end to, cease, bring to a close (epistulse); quem ad finem, as far as.—Plur., boundaries, limits, territories, country.

finitimus (-umus), -a, -um [fini-+ timus], adj., on the borders, neighboring, adjacent, neighbors (of). — Plur. as noun, neighbors.

fīnītus, -a, -um, p. p. of finio. fīō [FU in fui], as pass. of facio, wh. see.

firmiter [firmö- + ter], adv., firmly, stoutly, steadily.

firmitūdo, -inis [firmo- + tudo]. F., solidity, strength (of resistance). firmo, -are, -avi, -atus [firmo-],

1. v. a., make strong, strengthen,
fortify.

firmus, -a, -um [DHAR (hold) + mus], adj., strong (for resistance), firm, steady.

fistūca, -ae [?], F., a pile-driver. fīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of figo.

flägitö, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [as if flagitö-, p. p. of flago, akin to flagro, blaze], 1. v. a., ask (in heat?), demand earnestly.

flagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [†flagrŏ-(FLAG, blaze)], I. v. n., burn, be on fire.

Flamininus, -i [Flaminio + inus], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Titus Quintius Flamininus, envoy of the Romans to King Prusias to demand the surrender of Hannibal.

Flāminius, -ī [flamin- (priest) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Flaminius, a Roman consul, who commanded the Romans at the Battle of Lake Trasumenus.

flamma, -ae [FLAG (blaze) + ma], F., flame, fire.

flavus, -a, -um [?], adj., yellow. flecto, flectere, flexi, flexus [?], 3. v. a., bend, turn.

fleo, flere, flevi, fletus [?], 2. v. a. and n., weep: flentes, in tears.

fletus, -us [fle- (st. of fleo as root) + tus], M., weeping, lamenta-tion.

**flō**, flāre, flāvī, flātus [?], 1. v. n. and a., blow.

florens, entis [p. of floren, bloom], as adj., blooming. — Fig., flourishing, prosperous, influential (iuvenis).

flos, floris [?], M., a flower, 2 blossom. — Fig., the flower (of troops).

fluctus, -ūs [FLUG (in fluo, cf. fluxi) + tus], M., a wave.

flümen, -inis [FLUG (in fluo, flow) + men], N., a river, a stream, a current.

fluvius, -ī [†fluŏ- (cf. fluidus) + ius], M., a river, a stream.

fodio, fodere, fodi, fossus [?], 3. v. a., dig.

foederātus, -a, -um [p. p. of foedero], adj., allied, federated.

foedus, -eris [FID (in fides, cf. fidus) + us], N., a treaty, a league, a compact.

folium, -ī [?], N., a leaf.

fons, fontis [?], M., a spring.

forās [acc. plur. of †fora, cf. forīs], adv., (to the doors), outdoors, out of the door (as end of motion).

fore, for futurum esse; see sum. forem, for essem; see sum.

foris, is [FOR (akin to Eng. "door") + is], F., a door. — Plur., doors, a door (double).

foris [abl. plur. of tfora], adv., out of doors. — Less exactly, outside (beyond the siege lines).

forma, -ae [DHAR (in firmus) + ma], F., shape, form. — Esp., fine form, beauty. — Concretely, a shape, a form.

formica, -ae [?], F., an ant.

formīdō, -inis [†formidō- (unc. st., cf. formidō, perh. akin to formus, warm) + 0], F., fear (generally violent), dread, terror.

formõsus, -a, -um [forma- (reduced) + osus], adj., beautiful, lovely.

fors, fortis [FER (in fero) + tis (reduced)], F., chance. — forte, abl. as adv., by chance, perchance, accidentally, as it happened.

fortasse [?, akin to forte], adv., perhaps, possibly.

forte, see fors.

fortis, -e [akin to firmus], adj., strong, stalwart, brave, courageous: vir fortis, a man of courage.

fortiter [forti- + ter], adv., bravely, stoutly, undauntedly.

fortitūdō, -inis [forti- + tudo], f., bravery, prowess.

fortuītus, -a, -um [p. p. of verb in -uo, cf. fortuna], adj., casual, accilental. — fortuītō, abl. as adv., by chance, casually, accidentally.

fortuna, -ae [†fortu- (FER + tus, cf. fortuito) + na (F. of nus)], F., fortune, chance, fate, lot (one's fortune), chances (belli), success (good or bad). — Plur., fortunes, resources, chances (means) of success. — Esp., good fortune, success: fortunam temptare, try one's chances. — Personified, Fortune, the goddess.

fortunātus, -a, -um [p. p. of fortuno], adj., fortunate, prosperous.

forum, -ī [akin to †fora], N., (an open place), a market-place. — Esp., the Forum (the great market-place at Rome, used also for all public purposes).

fossa, -ae [F. of fossus, p. p. of fodio, dig], F., a ditch, a trench.

fovea, -ae [?, perh. akin to foveo, as orig. a pit for storage], F., a pitfall.

frāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of frango. fragor, -ōris [FRAG (cf. frango)+ or], M., (a breaking), a crash, a dim, a noise.

frango, frangere, frego, fractus [FRAG], 3. v. a., break (as a solid body).—Esp., of ships, wreck: fractis fluctibus (breaking).

frater, -tris [prob. FER + ter, akin to tor, cf. pater], M., a brother.

fraus, fraudis [?, akin to frustra], F., loss. Hence, treachery, deceit.

Fregeliae, -ārum [?], F. plur., a town of Latium.

fremitus, -ūs [fremi- (st. of fremo, roar) +tus], M., a murmur, a confused noise, a roar.

frēno, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freno-], 1. v. a., bridle, curb, check, restrain.

frēnum, -ī (plur. also -ī, -ērum) [root or verb-st. (akin to firmus) + num], N. and M., a bridle, a curb. a bit.

frequens, -entis [orig. p. akin to farcio, stuff], adj., crowded, numerous, in great numbers.

frequenter [frequent- + ter], adv., often, frequently.

frigidus, -a, -um [†frigŏ- (whence frigeo, be cold) + dus], adj., cold.

frigus, -oris [FRIG (in frigeo, etc.) + us], N., cold. — Plur., cold (cold "snaps," frosts).

frons, frontis [?, akin to brow].

F., brow, face: media frons, the middle of the forehead.— Less exactly,
front, brow: a fronte, in front.

früctus, üs [FRUG + tus], M. enjoyment. Hence (what one enjoys), fruit, crops, income, profit, interest (from money): victoriae (advantages of victory).

frumentarius, -a, -um [frumenti-

(reduced) + arius], adj., of grain: loca (fruitful in grain); res (grain supply, provisions).

frumentātiō, -ōnis [frumentā- (st. of frumentor) + tio], F., foraging, gathering grain, harvesting, foraging expedition.

frümentor, -ārī, -ātus [frumentō-], 1. v. dep., forage, gather grain, get supplies.

frümentum, -ī [FRUG (in fruor) + mentum], N., grain (cf. fructus). — Plur., standing grain, crops.

fruor, fruī, frūctus [FRUG, cf. fructus], 3. v. dep., enjoy.

frustra [abl. or instr. of st. akin to fraus, loss], adv., to no purpose, without effect.

früstror, -ārī, -ātus [†frustrŏ- (cf. frustra)], I.v. dep., disappoint, deceive.

früstum, i [FRUD (in fraus) + tum (N. p. p. of lost verb, cut off?)], N., a bit, a piece.

Fūfius (-sius), -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. See Cita.

fuga, -ae [FUG + a], F., flight, escape: fit fuga, a rout ensues; fugae mandare se, fugam inire, take to flight; fugam petere, seek safety by flight, escape.

fugāx, -ācis [as if fug- + ax, prob. ffugā- + cus (reduced)], adj., fleeing, fleeting, swift.

fugio, fugere, fugi, fugiturus [FUG (in fuga)], 3. v. a. and n., fly, fly from, run away, flee. — Fig., shun, avoid.

fugo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fuga-], 1. v. a., put to flight, rout.

fulgeo, fulgere, fulsi, no p. p. [FULG, blaze], 2. v. n., shine.

fulmen, -inis [FULG (in fulgeo) + men], N., a thunderbolt, a lightning flash.

Ġ

fūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fumŏ-], 1. v. n., smoke.

fūmus,  $-\overline{i}$  [FU (DHU) + mus, akin to dust], M., smoke.

functus, -a, -um, p. p. of fungor.

funda, -ae [akin to fundo], F., a sling.

fundamentum, -i [funda-(set fast) + mentum], N., a foundation: a fundamentis, to the ground, utterly.

Fundānus, -ī [Fundō- (st. of Fundi, a town of Latium) + anus], M., a Roman family name.

fundator, -ōris [funda (as if verbst.) + tor], M., a slinger.

fundo, fundere, fūdī, fūsus [FUD], 3. v. a., pour. — Less exactly, scatter. — Esp. of battle, put to rout, rout.

funebris, -e [cf. funus], adj., of a funeral. — Neut. plur. as noun, funeral rites.

fungor, fungi, functus [?], 3. v. dep., perform, discharge (abl.).

fūnis, -is [?], M., a rope.

fūnus, -eris [unc. root + us], N., (murder?), death, a funeral.

fūr, fūris [FUR (perh. akin to fero) as st.], M. and F., a thief.

furens, -entis [p. of furo, rage], adj., raging, mad, crasy.

furibundus, -a, -um [ffuri- (as st. of furo, rage) + bundus], adj., raging, frenzied, furious.

Fūrius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp. Lucius Furius, a Roman consul in Hannibal's time. furor, -ōris [FUR (cf. furo, rage) + or], M., madness, frenzy, fury.

fürtum, -ī [N. p. p. of lost verb

akin to fur, thief], N., theft, a theft.

futūrus, -a, -um, p. p. of sum.

G

Gabali, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic people, dependants of the Arverni.

Gādēs, -ium [?], F. plur., a town in southern Spain, now Cadiz.

Gaetūlus, -a, -um [?], adj., of the Gaetulians or Gaetuli, a tribe of northern Africa. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Gaetulians.

Gāius (Cāius, C.), -ī [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

Galba, -ae [Celtic, meaning fat], M., a Gallic and Roman family name. — Esp., a king of the Suessiones.

galea, -ae [?, akin to galerus, leather cap], F., a helmet (of leather, worn by cavalry).

Gallia, -ae [F. of adj. in -ius (Gallö- + ius)], F., Gaul, including all the country bounded by the Po, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium.

Gallicus, -a, -um [Gallo- + cus], adj., of the Gauls, Gallic.

gallina, -ae [gallo- (cock) + ina], F., a hen.

gallus, -I [?], M., a cock, a rooster.
Gallus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., of
Gaul, Gallic. — As noun, a Gaul,
the Gauls. — Also, as a Roman
family name. See Trebius.

Garumna, -ae [Celtic], c., a river

of southwestern Gaul, now the Garonne.

gaudeo, gaudere, gavisus [†gavido-, cf. avidus], 2. v. n., be delighted, rejoice.

gaudium, ·ī [†gavidŏ- (reduced) + ium, cf. gaudeo], N., joy, delight, pleasure.

gāvīsus, -a, -um, p. p. (neut. pass.) of gaudeo.

Geminus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. See Servilius.

gemitus, -ūs [†gemi- (as st. of gemo, groan) + tus], M., a groan, a roar, a roaring: gemitus iraeque, angry roaring.

gemma, -ae [?], F., a gem, s precious stone.

gener, -erī [?], M., a son-in-law.

generātim [as if acc. of tgeneratis (generā- + tis)], adv., by tribes.

genitus, -a, -um, p. p. of gigno. gens, gentis [GEN (beget) + tis (reduced)], F., a family, a tribe, a clan, a people, a nation, a race.

genus, eris [GEN (beget) + us], N., a generation, a race, a family (stock), a nation, a tribe. — Less exactly, a kind, a sort, a class. — Also, abstractly, kind, character, nature, method (pugnae): genus hominum, the character of the inhabitants.

Gergovia, -ae [Celtic], F., a city in the lands of the Arverni.

Germānia, -ae [F. of adj. in -ins,

fr. Germanus], F., Germany, the whole country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.

Germānicus, -a, -um [Germānŏ- + cus], adj., of the Germans, German, Germanic.

Germānus, -a, -um [?], adj., German (of the country of Germany or its people. The name of the people is the original, but as usual is an adj.). — Plur. as noun, the Germans.

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus [GES, of unc. kin], 3. v. a., carry (indicating a more lively action than fero), carry on, accomplish, manage, wage (war), hold (a magistracy), do (any business), wear (chains): se gerere, conduct one's self, act, behave.—Pass., be done, go on (of operations): rem bene (male) (operate successfully or otherwise, carry on operations, succeed well or ill); occasio rei bene gerendae (for striking a successful blow); his rebus gestis, after these operations; res gestae, exploits, operations, a campaign; gesta, events.

Gēryon, -onis [Gr.], M., a famous monster in Spain, whose oxen were carried off by Hercules.

gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [gestŏ-, cf. gero], 1. v. a., bear, carry, wear.

gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of gero. gigās, -antis [Gr.], M., a giant.

gīgnō, gīgnere, genuī, genitus [GEN, redupl.], 3. v. a., beget, give birth to, produce.

glaber, -bra, -brum [?], adj., smooth.

gladiātor, -ōris [gladiā- (cf. gladius) + tor], M., a gladiator.

gladiātōrius, -a, -um [gladiator+ ius], adj., gladiatorial.

gladius, -ī [?], M., a sword.

glans, glandis [?], F., a nut, an acorn. — Also, a ball (for shooting).

glēba (glae-), -ae [?], F., a clod (of earth), a lump.

gloria, -ae [akin to inclutus, renowned], F., fame, glory.

glorior, -ārī, -ātus [gloria-], 1. v. dep., glory in, boast of (abl.).

Gnaeus (Cnēius, Cn.), -ī [akin to gnavus, active], M., a Roman prænomen.

Gobannitio, -onis [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix.

Gorgobina, -ae [Celtic], F., a city in the territory of the Hædui, founded by the Boil emigrating from Cisalpine Gaul.

Gortynius, -a, -um [gortyna- (reduced) + ius], adj., Gortynian, of Gortyna, a city of Crete.—Masc. plur. as noun, the Gortynians.

Gracchus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, a Roman consul in Hannibal's time.

gradus, -ūs [GRAD (cf. gradior, step) + us], M., a step.

Graecia, -ae [Graecŏ- + ia (F. of ius)], F., Greece.

Graecus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of the Greeks, Greek. — As noun, a Greek, the Greeks. Cf. Germanus for relation of noun and adj.

Grāius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., Graian, referring to a section of the Alps.

grāmen, -inis [akin to germen,

a sprout], N., grass, an herb: in remoto gramine, in some grassy nook.
grandis, -e [?], adj., large, of great size.

h.

graphium, -ī [Gr.], N., a pen, a style (for writing).

grātia, -ae [gratŏ- (reduced) + ia], F., "gratefulness" (in both Eng. senses of grateful), gratitude (that one has from others or towards others), good will, favor. Hence, influence, friendship, source of influence, ground of friendship. - Also, a return, a recompense. - Esp.: gratias agere, express gratitude, render thanks, thank; gratias habere, feel gratitude, be grateful; gratias [gratiam] referre, make a grateful return, return thanks, pay off an obligation, requite. - gratia, with gen., for the sake of, on account of, for, to (for the purpose of).

grātulātiō, -ōnis [gratulā- + tio, cf. frumentatio], F., a congratulation (of others or one's self), rejoicing: fit gratulatio, there is great rejoicing. grātulor, -ārī, -ātus [gratulō-(gratŏ + lus)], I. v. dep., congratulate.

grātus, -a, -um [p. p. of lost verb], adj., pleasing, acceptable, grateful. — Also, pleased, thankful: gratum facere, do a favor.

gravātus, -a, -um, p. p. of gravo. gravis, -e [for †garvis, †garus], adj., heavy. — Fig., serious, severe, hard, dangerous. — Also, weighty, strong (causas, imperium); gravioris aetatis, of more advanced years; si gravius quid accideret, if anything serious should occur; caerimonia (solemn, binding).

gravitās, -ātis [gravi- + tas], F., weight. — Fig., importance, power, dignity.

graviter [gravi- + ter], adv., heavily, with great weight, with force. — Fig., severely, seriously: graviter ferre, take to heart, suffer from; premere (press hard); multo gravius exarsit (more violently); gravius consulere, take severer measures.

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [gravi- (as if grava-)], 1. v. a., make heavy (cf. levo), load, burden, oppress, overcome, press, upbraid. — Pass. as dep., (make heavy for one's self), be reluctant, be unwilling, be vexed.

gremium, -ī [?], N., the lap, the bosom.

grex, gregis [?], M. (rarely F.), a herd, a flock.— Also, a gang, a band, a troop.

gubernātor, -ōris [gubernā- (steer) + tor], m., a pilot, a helmsman.

guberno, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [Gr.], 1. v. a., steer, pilot.

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [gustō-, (st. akin to gustus, Eng. "choose")].

1. v. a., taste, eat.

gustus, -ūs [unc. root + tus], Maa tasting. — Esp., a light dish beginning a meal, a relish.

habeo, habēre, habuī, habitus [?], 2. v. a. and n., have, hold, keep, occupy, possess: aditum (have in itself, and so offer); castra (occupy); se habere, be; secum or apud se habere, have with him, also detain; censum and the like (hold, conduct); in animo habere, intend; orationem (make, deliver); bene habet, it is well. - Esp., with p. p. as a sort of continued perf. (whence the perf. of modern languages), have, hold, keep: equitatum coactum (get and keep). - Also, treat: ludibrio, pro amico. Hence, consider, regard (cf. hold). - Esp.: rationem habere, keep an account, take an account of, have regard for, consider, regard, act in view of; habere quemadmodum oppida defenderent (have any means of, etc.).

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [habitō-, cf. habeo]. I. v. a. and n., dwell, live, dwell in, inhabit.

hactenus [hac tenus], adv., thus far, to this point.

Hadria (Adr-), -ae [Gr.], M., the Adriatic Sea.

Hadrūmētum, -ī [?], N., a town on the coast of Africa.

Haeduus (Aed-), -a, -um [Celtic], adj., of the Hæduans, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — As noun, a Hæduan, the Hæduans or Hædui.

haesito, -are, -avī, -atūrus [freq. of haereo, stick, cf. dictito], 1. v. n., get caught, stick, struggle (caught in a marsh).

Hamilcar, -aris [?], M., the father of Hannibal.

hāmus, -ī [?], M., a hook.

Hannibal, -alis [?], the great general of the Carthaginians in the Second Punic War.

H

harēna (arēna), -ae [ $\dagger$ arē- (st. of areo, be dry) + na (F. of nus)], F., sand, an arena, an amphitheatre.

harpagō, -ōnis [Gr.], M., a hook (esp. for walls, like a fire-hook), a grappling iron.

Harpagus, -I [?], M., a Median nobleman who is said to have preserved the infant Cyrus. He was afterwards one of Cyrus's generals.

haruspex, -icis [unc. st. + SPEC (see) as st.], M., a soothsayer, a diviner.

Hasdrubal, -alis [?], M.: 1. Hannibal's brother-in-law, who succeeded Hamilcar. — 2. Hannibal's brother, who fell in battle.

hau, same as haud.

haud [?], adv., not (negativing single words), not at all.

hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustus [cf. haustus], 4. v. a., drain, drink, drink off.

haustus, -ūs [HAUS (in haurio) + tus], M., a draught, a drinking: ad meos haustus, to me to drink, to my lips.

Helvēticus, -a, -um [Helvetiŏ-(reduced) + cus], adj., Helvetian (see Helvetius).

Helvētius, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). Cf. Germanus for the form. — Plur. as noun, the Helvetii or Helvetians.



Helvii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province.

herba, -ae [?], F., an herb, a plant grass. — Also (from plants), a drug.

Hercle [contr. voc. of Hercules], interj., indeed | bless me | at any rate |

:1

Hercules, -is [Gr.], M., the famous demigod, renowned for his strength and for his services to mankind.

Hercynius (Orcyn-), -a, -um [Teutonic], adj., (only with silva), Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany).

hērēditās, -ātis [hered-, keir (as if heredi-), + tas], F., inheritance, an inheritance.

hērēs, -ēdis [?], M. and F., an heir. hērōs, -ōis [Gr.], M., a demigod, a hero.

hesternus, -a, -um [hesi- (cf. heri, yesterday) + ternus], adj., of yesterday, yesterday's: hesterno die, yesterday, the day before.

Hibernia, -ae [?], F., Ircland.

hibernus, -a, -um [hiem- + ernus, cf. nocturnus], adj., of winter, winter (adj.). — Neut. plur. (sc. castra), winter quarters, a winter encampment.

hic [thi- (loc. of hi-c) + ce], adv., here, in this place, there (of a place just mentioned), at this point.

hīc, haec, hōc, hūius [hi- (pron. st.) + ce, cf. ecce, cetera], dem. pron. (pointing to something near the speaker in place, time, or interest), this, these, he, they, this man (woman or thing). — Referring to things before mentioned (but with more emphasis than is). — Less

commonly, of what follows: his mandatis (the following, as follows, these). - Esp.: haec memoria, the present generation; tempus (the present); his paucis diebus within a few days. - hoc, N. abl. used adverbially, in this respect, on this account, by so much the (emph. with comparatives). - Often where a more definite word is used in Eng.: his its respondit (to this embassy) .- Often hic . . . ille, the one ... the other, this (near by) ... the other (farther off), this last (nearer on the page) . . . the other, the latter ... the former.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [hiem-(as if hiema-)], 1. v. n., winter, pass the winter.

hiems (-mps), -emis [?], F., winter, a storm.

hinc [ $\dagger$ him (loc. of  $\dagger$ hi) +  $\infty$ ], adv., from here, hence.

hirundinīnus, -a, -um [hirundin- + īnus], adj., of a swallow, a swallow's.

hirundo, -inis [?], F., a swallow.

Hispānia, -ae [Hispano- + ia (F. of ius)], F. (of adj., cf. Gallia), Spain.

Hispāniēnsis, -e [Hispania-+ensis], adj., of Spain, Spanish.

historia, -ae [Gr.], F., a story, an account.

historiola, -ae [historia- + ola, dim. ending], F., a little story.

hodiē [†ho- (abl. of hic) -diē], adv., to-day. — Weakened with negs., now, surely: numquam hodie.

hodiernus, -a, -um [hodie-+ ernus], adj., of to-day, to-day's.

homo, -inis [prob. humo- (the

earth) + o], c., a human being (cf. vir, a man, as a male), a man (including women), a person.

homunculus, -i [homun- (for homin-) + culus, dim. ending], M., (a little man). — Late, a fine fellow.

honestus, -a, -um [hones- (orig. st. of honor) + tus], adj., esteemed, respected, worthy, honorable.

honor- (ös), -ōris [unc. root + or], M., honor, respect: honoris causă, out of respect. — Also, of honors conferred by the people, an honorable position, an honor, an office. — Personified, Honor.

hora, -ae [Gr.], F., an hour (of the day). —The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always so many twelfths of the solar day.

hornus, -a, -um [Gr., cf. hora, season], adj., of this season, this year's.

horreo, horrere, horrui, no p. p. [horro- (HORR, orig. HORS, bristle, + us), prob. used orig. of the sensation called "goose pimples," where the hair seems to stand on end], 2. v. n. and a., bristle (see above). Hence, shudder at. dread.

horreum, -ī [?], N., a storehouse, a granary.

horribilis, -e [horri- (as if st. of horreo) + bilis], adj., to be shuddered at, frightful, dreadful.

horridus, -a, -um [thorro- (cf. horreo) + dus], adj., bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful.

hortātus, -a, -um, p. p. of hortor. hortor, -ārī, -ātus [for horitor, freq. of old thorior, urge], 1. v. dep., encourage, urge on, urge, address. — Less exactly, of things, urge, move, prompt.

hortus, -ī [?], M., a garden.

hospes, -itis [prob. GHAS-PATIS, orig. host (lord of eating)], M., a host.

— Also, a guest, a stranger, a visitor. Hence, a guest-friend (in the peculiar relation of hospitium, which was a kind of hereditary friendship between persons of different countries, not personal, but of a family or state), a friend (of the kind above mentioned).

hospitālis, e [hospit-+alis], adj., (relating to a guest or host). Hence, hospitable, friendly, inviting.

hospitium, -ī [hospit- + ium], N., the relation of host (or guest). Hence (cf. hospes), friendship: hospitium atque amicitia, alliance and friendship, family and personal friendship, hospitality: in hospitium, to a hospitable reception.

hostia, -ae [prob. hosti- (st. of hostis, reduced) + ia], F., a victim (for sacrifice).

hostiliter [hostili- (hostile) + ter], adv., as an enemy.

hostis, -is [GHAS (cf. hospes) + tis], c. (orig. guest), a stranger, an enemy (of the state), the enemy (collectively, either sing. or plur.).

hūc [hō- (dat. of hi-, see hīc) + ce], adv., hither, here (in sense of hither), to this (place, etc., cf. eo): huc accedebant, to these [ships before mentioned], were added (see accedo); accedebat huc, to this was added the fact that, etc.



hūiusmodī, see hic and modus.

hümänitäs, -ātis [humanö-+ tas], F., humanity (as opp. to brutishness), civilization, cultivation, refinement, courtesy.

hūmānus, -a, -um [st. akin to homo, man, + nus], adj., civilized, cultivated, refined, human.

humilis, -e [humo- (ground) +

lis], adj., low, shallow (cf. altus, deep). — Fig., low, humble, poor: Ubios humiliores redegerunt (humbled, rendered less important).

humilitās, -ātis [humili- + tas]. F., lowness, shallowness.

humus, -ī [?], M., the ground: humi, on the ground.

ı

I., for unus, etc., one.

. 19

iaceō, -cēre, -cuī, -citūrus [?, cf. iaculum], 2. v. n., lie, lie dead: iacentes, p. as noun, the slain.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus [?, cf. iaceo], 3. v. a., throw, hurl, cast: aggerem (throw up); ancoras (cast, drop).

iactūra, ae [iactu- + ra (F. of rus)], F., a throwing away, a loss, a sacrifice (of men in war), an offer (of reward).

iactus, -a, -um, p. p. of iacio.

iam [acc. of pron.-st.], adv., now (of progressive time, cf. nunc, emphatic and instantaneous), by this time, at last, already, at length, presently, at once: iam non, no longer; iam ante, some time before, even before; iam utebatur, was getting to use; iam reverti (was at last, etc.; was beginning to, etc.); nihil iam, no longer; also with no idea of time, even, in fact; iam dudum, iam pridem, now for a long time, long ago, long since.

iamdūdum, see iam.

ianua, -ae [akin to lanus, the god of openings], F., a door.

ibi [old case-form of is (cf. tibi)], adv., there (in a place before mentioned), in it, thereupon.

ībit, ībat, see eo.

Iccius, -ī [?], M., a nobleman of the Remi.

ictus, -ūs [IC (in ico, strike) + tus], M., a stroke: ictus scorpionis (a shot of, etc.).

Id., for Idus.

idcirco [id (N. acc. of is) -circo (case-form of same st. as circa, circum)], adv., for that reason, for this reason, therefore.

idem, eadem, idem [is dem, cf. dum], dem. adj. pron., the same.—
Often as noun, the same thing (things), the same: idem imperavit, gave the same command: idem castellum, this very fort.

identidem [cf. idem and word akin to tandem], adv., repeatedly, again and again.

ideo [id-eo, this for this reason]. adv., therefore, for this reason.

idolon, -i [Gr.], N., a spectre, an apparition, a ghost.

idoneus, -a, -um [?, akin to idem?], adj., fit, suitable, adapted:

homo (capable); tempestas (favorable).

. Idus, -uum [?, perh. akin to aestus], F. plur., the Ides (a day of the lunar month falling at the full moon, conventionally on the 15th of March, May, July, October, and the 13th of the other months, and used by the Romans to reckon dates).

igitur [perh. unc. st. + tus (cf. divinitus)], conj., therefore, then, accordingly.

ignārus, -2, -um [in-gnarus (GNA, know, + rus)], adj., ignorant, not knowing.

ignāvia, -ae [ignavŏ- (reduced) + ia], F., inactivity, idleness, sloth.

ignis, is [?, same word as Sk. agnis, the god of fire], M., fire.—Plur., camp-fires.

ignominia, -ae [tignomin- (in-(g)nomen, name) + ia], F., want of fame, disgrace. — Almost concr., disgraceful defeat.

ignoro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ignaro-, ignorant], I. v. a., fail to notice, not know, be ignorant of.

ignosco, -noscere, -novi, -notus [in- (unc. which meaning) -(g)nosco, know], 3. v. n. and a., overlook, pardon.

ignotus, -a, -um [in- (g)notus], adj., unknown, strange.

IIII, for quattuor, four.

Ilias, -adis [Gr.], F., the Iliad.

ilico [in-loco], adv., at once, immediately.

ille, -a, -ud [old ollus, fr. pron. root + lus (?)], dem. pron., that (of something remote, cf. hic). — Also, the well-known, the famous. Often

as noun (opposed to some other emphatic word), he, she, it, they: hic...ille, this...that, the other, the latter...the former.

illic [loc. of ille + ce, cf. hic], adv., there (more remote, opposed to hic, near by), in that place (nation, country, etc.): illic...quo, in the place to which (but with more emphasis than ibi...quo).

illo [dat. of ille, cf. eo], adv., thither, there (in sense of thither), that way.

illūc [illo- (cf. eo) -ce (cf. hic)], adv., thither, to that place, there (in the sense of thither).

Illyricum, -ī [?, N. of adj.], N., Illyria (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace. It belonged to Cæsar's province along with the two Gauls).

imāgō, -inis [akin to imitor], F., (an imitation, a copy). — Concretely, a statue, a bust, a picture. — Esp., a phantom, a ghost, an apparition.

imbēcillis, -e (-us, -a, -um) [?], adj., weak.

imbēcillitās, -ātis [imbecillō- + tas], F., weakness, feebleness: animi (feebleness of purpose, pusillanimity).

imber, imbris [?], M., a rainstorm, a rain.

imitor, -ārī, -ātus [†imitŏ-, p. p. of †imo (cf. imago)], 1. v. dep., imitate, copy.

immānis, -e [in-†manus, good?], adj. ("uncanny"?), monstrous, huge, enormous.

immānitās, -ātis [immani- + tas], F., cruelty, barbarity, ferocity.

immēnsus, -a, -um [in-mensus, measured], adj., (unmeasured), vast, immense, boundless.

immergō, -mergere, -mersī, -mersus [in-mergo, plunge], 3. v. a., plunge in. — With reflex. or in pass., plunge (one's self) in.

immineo, -minere, no perf., no p. p. [in-mineo], 2. v. n., overhang, project. — Fig., threaten.

immissus, p. p. of immitto.

immītis, -e [in-mitis, gentle], adj., ungentle, fierce, cruel.

immitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [in-mitto], 3. v. a., let in, drive in, let down (into), insert, throw (upon), send against, let loose.

immo [abl. of imus (in-mus, superl. of in], adv., (in the lowest degree), nay, nay rather, nay more.

immolo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†immola-(in-mola, meal)], 1. v. a., (sprinkle with the sacred meal), sacrifice.

immortālis, -e [in-mortalis], adj., immortal. — Plur. as noun, the immortals.

immortālitās, -ātis [immortali- + tas], F., immortality.

immunis, -e [in-tmunis, cf. communis and munia], adj., free from tribute.

immūnitās, -ātis [immuni- + tas], F., freedom from public burdens.

impatiens, -entis [in-patiens], adj., impatient.

impedimentum, -i [impedi-+ mentum], N., a hindrance: esse impedimento, to hinder. — Esp., in plur., baggage, a baggage-train (including the beasts of burden), pack-horses.

impedio, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [timped-(in-pes, foot, as if impedi-)], 4. v. a., entangle, hamper, interfere with. — Fig., hinder, embarrass, impede. impedītus, -a, -um, p. p., hampered, entangled, occupied, difficult (navigatio), impassable (loca): esse victoribus nihil impeditum (there is no obstacle in the way of, etc.); prospectus (interrupted).

impedītus, p. p. of impedio.

impello, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [in-pello], 3. v. a., drive on. — Fig., instigate, incite, impel, move.

impendo, -pendere, -pendo, -pensus [in-pendo, weigh], 3. v. a., lay out, expend, apply, devote. — impēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., expensive, very high (of price). — Fem. as noun (sc. pecunia), expenditure, outlay.

impēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of impendo.

imperator, -ōris [impera- + tor], M., commander (in chief), general, emperor.

imperātum, -ī [N. p. p. of impero], N., an order, a command.

imperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of impero.

imperfectus, -a, -um [in-perfectus], adj., unfinished: re imperfecta, without accomplishing one's purpose, unsuccessful.

imperitus, -a, -um [in-peritus, skilled], adj., unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in.

imperium, -ī [timperŏ- (whence impero, cf. pario, get) + ium], N. command, supreme authority, control, supremacy, supreme power, power (military), rule, sway (both

sing. and plur.), the empire, the state. — Concretely, an order, a command. — Esp.: novis imperiis studere (new forms of government); nullo certo imperio (command of any particular person); imperi aut potestatis, military or civil authority.

impero, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [timpero- (in-tparus, cf. pario, get)], I. v. a. and n., demand (make requisition for, prob. orig. meaning), require (in same sense). Hence, order (in military sense), rule, command, give orders, control: illo imperante, under his command.

impetro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inpatro, bring to pass], 1. v. a., accomplish (anything by a request), succeed in (obtaining), obtain, gain (a request): impetro a, prevail upon, persuade; ab eis impetrari ut, they be persuaded to; impetro ut, etc., obtain a request to, be allowed to, etc., succeed in having.

impetus, -ūs [in-†petus (cf. peto, aim at)], M., a rush, an attack, an onset, a charge, an assault, violence, fury: facere (inroad, charge, invasion); is impetus, such fury, etc.

impiger, gra, grum [in-piger, slow], adj., active, energetic.

impius, -a, -um [in-pius], adj., impious (offending divine law).

impleo, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [intpleo, cf. compleo], 2. v. a., fill, fill up, cover, complete.

implicatus, -a, -um, p. p. of implico.

implico, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātus (-itus) [in-plico, fold], 1. v. a., entangle, interweave, entwine, encircle.

implörö, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inploro, cry out], 1. v. a., implore, beseech.

impono, -ponere, -posuī, -positus [in-pono], 3. v. a., place upon, place: in navis (or dat.) (put on board). — Fig., impose, impose upon.

importatus, -a, -um, p. p. of importo.

importo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-porto, carry], 1. v. a., import.

impositus, -a, -um, p. p. of impono.

\*impostor, -ōris [in-†positor (positor, fr. pono)], M., a deceiver, an impostor.

impraesentiarum [for in praesentia rerum], adv., for the present.

imprīmīs [in primis], adv., among the first, especially, particularly (more than anything else).

improbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inprobō-], 1. v. a., (hold as bad), disapprove, blame, censure.

improbus, -a, -um [in-probus, good], adj., bad, wicked, unprincipled, impious. — Also, cruel, greedy, voracious (fauce).

improvisus, -a, -um [in-provisus], adj., unforeseen: improviso (de improviso), on a sudden, unexpectedly, unawares.

imprūdēns, entis [in-prudens, foreseeing], adj., not expecting, incautious, unsuspecting, off one's guard, unguarded, not being aware.

imprudenter [imprudent- + ter], adv., unwisely, imprudently.

imprūdentia, -ae [imprudent-+ ia], F., ignorance, want of consideration, want of forethought. impūbēs, eris (is) [in-pubes], adj., beardless, immature. Hence, chaste, unmarried.

impulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of impello.

ī

imus, -a, -um [in + mus], superl.
of inferus.

<sup>1</sup> in [cf. Eng. "un-"], neg. particle, only in comp. with nouns and adjs., not verbs.

<sup>2</sup> in [?, cf. Eng. "on"; cf. also inde], prep. a. With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on (cf. ad, with terminus at or near), into, upon, within, to, against, among: in volgus elatum est (spread abroad, among). - Of time, for, to, till. - Fig., without actual motion, but only direction, towards, against, upon. - Often where Eng. has a different conception, in, on: abdere in silvas, hide in the woods; in conspectum venire (in sight). - In adverbial expressions where no motion appears, in, according to, with, to: in altitudinem, in height, cf. to the height of. - Esp.: in horas, from hour to hour; in Morinos (into the country of, etc.); in fugam conicere, put to flight.

b. With abl., of rest (lit. and fig.), in, on, among, within. — Often, in the case of, in respect to: in eo, in his case, in regard to him. — Esp.: in Meldis (in the country of); in ancoris, at anchor; in praesentia, for the present; in opere esse, to be engaged in the work; in proverbio esse, be a common saying, proverb; in illo vestigio temporis positum (depending

on, etc.); in eo constare (depend upon, etc.). — In comp. as adv., in, upon, towards, and the like.

inaccessus, -a, -um [in-accessus], adj., (unapproached), inaccessible.

Inachus, -i [Gr.], M., the son of Oceanus and Tethys, the mythic founder of Argos, and father of Io.

inanis, -e [?], adj., empty. — Fig., empty, vain, idle, mere, bare.

incalēsco, -calēscere, -calui, no p.p. [in-calesco], 3. v. n., grow warm.

incautē [old case-form of incautus], adv., incautiously, carelessly.

incautus, -a, -um [in-cautus, p. p. of caveo], adj., incautious, off one's guard, careless.

incendium, -ī [in-tcandium, cf. incendo], N., a burning, a fire: incendia aedificiorum, the burning of buildings, each one being conceived as a separate burning.

incendo, -cendere, -cendi, -census [in-tcando, cf. candeo, glow], 3. v. a. set fire to, set on fire, burn. — Fig. rouse, excite, fire, inflame.

incēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of incendo. incertus, -a, -um [in-certus], adj. uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy (rumores): ordinibus (in disorder).

incessus, -ūs [in-tcessus, cf. in-cedo], M., a gait, a walk, bearing, mien.

incido, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [incado], 3. v. n., fall upon, fall. — Less exactly and fig., fall in with, meet. occur, happen: in morbum (fall sick); in insaniam (become insane).

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [incaedo], 3. v. a., cut into, half cut down (trees).

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [incapio, take], 3. v. a. and n., begin, undertake.

incīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of incīdo. incitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of incito.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-cito], 1. v. a., set in motion (in some particular direction) (lit. and fig.), urge on, drive, impel, excite, rouse, incite.—incitātus, -a, -um, p. p., excited to anger, angered, spurred on: incitato equo, at full gallop; incitato cursu, at full speed.— Esp.: se aestus incitare (rush in).

inclūdo, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [in-claudo, close], 3. v. a., shut up, enclose, confine.

incognitus, -a, -um [in-cognitus], adj., unknown.

incola, -ae [in-tcola (COL + a), cf. agricola], M. and F., an inhabitant.

incolò, -colere, -coluî, no p. p. [in-colo], 3. v. a. and n., inhabit, live, dwell: incolendi causa, for a permanent abade.

incolumis, e [?], adj., unharmed, unhurt, preserved, safe, safe and sound, uninjured.

incommodus, -a, -um [in-commodus], adj., inconvenient, unfortunate.

— Esp., incommodum, N. as noun, disadvantage, misfortune, euphemism for defeat, loss, disaster, harm.

inconstantia, -ae [inconstant-+
ia], F., inconsistency, changeableness.
incredibilis, -e [in-credibilis], adj.,
incredible, marvellous, extraordinary.

increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [increpito (cf. increpo)], 1. v. a. freq., upbraid, taunt, revile.

increpō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitus [in-crepo], 1. v. a., rattle, sound. Hence, chide, rebuke.

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus [in-cumbo], 3. v. n., lie upon.

— Esp. fig., bend to, bend one's energies to: animo et opibus in (bend one's mind and energies to).

incursio, -onis [in-teursio, cf. incurro, rush upon], F., an inroad, an attack, an invasion, a raid.

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-tcauso, cf. causa, cause], 1. v. a., upbraid, rebuke, chide.

inde [tim (loc. of is, cf. interim, hinc) -de (form akin to -dem, dum, cf. indu, old form of in)], adv., from there, thence, from the place (which, etc.), after that, then.

indicium, -ī [indic- + ium], N., information. Hence, an indication, a sign.

indico, -are, -avī, -atus [indic-, an informer], 1. v. a., point out, reveal, show, indicate.

indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus [indico, say], 3. v. a., order, proclaim, appoint: bellum (declare).

indigeo, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [indigo-, needing], 2. v. n., (need, want), be dependent on.

indīgnātiō, -ōnis [indignā- + tio], F., displeasure, indignation.

indignitas, -atis [indigno- + tas], F., unworthiness, disgrace, outrage, an indignity.

indignor, -ārī, -ātus [indignō-], 1. v. dep., be indignant (deem unworthy of one's self).

indīgnus, -a, -um [in-dignus], adj., unworthy, intolerable.

indīligēns, -entis [in-diligens], adj., negligent, careless, heedless.

indiligenter [in-diligenter, cf. in-diligens], adv., carelessly, negligently.

indiligentia, -ae [indiligent-+ia], F., carelessness, want of care, want of energy (application).

indoles, is [indu-(old form of in) -toles (OL, grow, cf. olesco)], F., nature, natural disposition, character.

indomitus, -a, -um [in-domitus], adj., (untamed). — Less exactly, indomitable, inexorable.

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [induco], 3. v.a., draw on, try on (ocreas). Hence, cover: scuta pellibus. — Also, lead on, draw in, draw over. Hence, induce, instigate, impel: animum inducere, conclude.

inductus, -a, -um, p. p. of induco. induo, -duere, -dui, -dutus [?, cf. exuo], 3. v. a., put on, clothe, dress. Hence, fig. with reflex., pierce, impale (one's self): se vallis; se stimulis (be pierced by).

indutiae (induc-), -ārum [?], F. plur., a truce, an armistice.

Indutiomarus, -ī [Celtic], M., a chief of the Treveri.

ineo, -Ire, -Ivi (-ii), -itus [in-eo], irr. v. a., enter upon, go into. — Fig., adopt, make, begin, gain, secure. — Esp.: inita aestate, at the beginning of summer; inire rationem, take an account, adopt a scheme; inire consilium, form a plan; inire numerum, enumerate.

inermis, -e (-us, -a, -um) [in-arma], adj., unarmed, defenceless.

inerro, -are, no perf., no p. p. [in-

erro, wander], I. v. n., wander about: in oculis (hover before).

iners, -ertis [in-ars, skill], adj, shiftless, cowardly, sluggish, unmanly.

infamia, -ae [infami- (disretutable) + ia], F., dishonor, disgrace: latrocinia nullam habent infamiam (bring no dishonor, are not held dishonorable).

infamis, -e [in-fama, infl. as adj.]. adj., (of ill report), infamous, noto-rious.

infans, -antis [in-fans, p. of for, speak], M. and F., (not speaking), a child, an infant, an infant child.

infantia, -ae [infant- + ia], F., infancy.

infectus, -a, -um [in-factus], adj., not done. — Esp.: re infecta, without success, cf. imperfectus; re infecta discedere, redire (without accomplishing one's purpose).

înfēlīx, -īcis [in-felix], adj., un-lucky, unhappy.

inferior, compar. of inferus.

infero, ferre, tuli, -latus [in-fero].

irr. v. a., bring in, import, put upon:
bellum (make, of offensive war);
signa (make a charge, advance);
volnera (inflict). — Fig., cause, inflict, commit: periculum (creat,
cause); spem (inspire); causam (adduce, assign, allege, get up).

inferus, -a, -um [unc. st. + rus (cf. superus)], adj., low. — inferior, lower: inferior pars, the lower end; ab inferiore parte, down below, of a river. — Superl., infimus (imus), lowest, the bottom of, at the bottom: infimus collis, the foot of the kill.

— Fig., most ignoble. — Neut. as noun, the bottom.

infēstus, -a, -um [in-festus, conn. unc.], adj., hostile, in hostile array.

inficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [?, infacio], 3. v. a., (work into?), dye, stain.

infigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [2 infigo], 3. v. a., fasten in, fix in, fix on.

infimus [infero- + mus], superl. of inferus.

infinitus, -a, -um [in-finitus], adj., unbounded, countless, endless, numberless, infinite.

înfirmitās, ātis [infirmő- + tas], F., feebleness, unsteadiness, inconstancy, fickleness.

infirmus, -a, -um [in-firmus, strong], adj., weak, feeble: arbores (unsound, weakened); infirmior, less powerful; naves (unseaworthy).

infitior, -ārī, -ātus [in-fitia- (st. akin to fateor, confess)], 1. v. dep., deny.

infixus, -a, -um, p. p. of infigo. inflatus, -a, -um, p. p. of inflo.

inflecto, -flectere, -flexi, -flexus [in-flecto], 3. v. a., bend down.—
Pass., become bent.

inflexus, -a, -um, p. p. of inflecto.
inflo, -are, -avi, -atus [in-flo], 1. v.
a., blow upon, blow into, inflate.

influo, -fluere, -fluxī, -fluxūrus [in-fluo], 3. v. n., flow into, empty into.

īnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [in-fodio], 3. v. a., dig in, bury.

infra [instr. (?) of inferus], adv. and prep. with acc., below, farther down, less than.

infringo, -fringere, -fregi, -fractus [in-frango], 3. v. a., break, shatter.— Fig., break down, crush, overcome.

ingemīscō, -gemīscere, -gemuī, no p. p. [in-gemīsco, groan], 3. v. n., mæirn, lament.

ingemo, -gemere, -gemul, no p. p. [in-gemo, groan], 3. v. n., groan, sigh.

ingenium, -I [in-†genium (GEN + ium, cf. genius)], N., inborn nature, character, nature, natural bent.

ingens, entis [in-gens, not belonging to the kind (?)], adj., huge, great, very large, mighty, immense.

ingenuus, -a, -um [in-†genuus (GEN + uus)], adj. (inborn, free-born). Hence, noble, liberal.

ingrātus, -a, -um [in-gratus], adj., unpleasing.

ingravēsco, ere, no perf., no p.p. [in-gravesco, be weighed down], 3. v. n., grow serious, become oppressive.

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus [ingradior, step], 3. v. dep., march into, enter, march in.

inhabitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inhabito], I. v. a., dwell in, inhabit.—
p. as noun, an inhabitant, an inmate.

inhaereo, -ere, -sī, -sūrus [inhaereo], 2. v. n., stick to, cling to.

inicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectus [iniacio], 3. v. a., throw into, throw in, throw upon, put upon, lay upon.— Less exactly, place in, put on.— Fig., inspire.

inimicitia, -ae [inimico- + tia], F., enmity, hostility.

inimīcus, -a, -um [in-amicus], adj., unfriendly, hostile. — As noun, an enemy (personal, or not in war.

cf. hostis, an enemy of the state, or an enemy at war), a rival, an opponent: inimicissimus, worst enemy.

iniquitas, -ātis [iniquö- + tas], F., inequality, irregularity, unevenness. — Fig., unfairness, unequal nature, unfavorableness.

H

iniquus, -a, -um [in-aequus], adj., uneven. — Fig., unfavorable, unfair, disadvantageous. — Compar., iniquior locus, less favorable position.

initium, -ī [in-fitium (itō-+
ium), cf. ineo], N., a beginning, the
first of: initium capere, facere, begin,
start; transeundi (the initiative, the
first steps, the first attempt to, etc.);
initium fit ab, the start is first made
at (also by); fugae factum (the first
tendency to fly was shown); retinendi
(the first detention); silvarum (the
edge); Remorum (boundary); artificiorum initia (the first principles, the
first knowledge of, etc.).—initio,
abl. as adv., in the beginning, at first.

initus, -a, -um, p. p. of ineo.

iniungo, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [in-iungo], 3. v. a., attach to. — Fig., impose upon (his . . . servitutem).

iniūria, -ae [in-lus (right) + ia, cf. iniurius], F., injustice, outrage, injury, wrong, violence (as opposed to right), abuse.

iniūstus, -a, -um [in-iustus], adj., unjust.

inlacrimābilis (ill-), -e [in-lacrimābilis, tearful], adj., (not moved by tears), pitiless.

inlatus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of infero.

inligātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of inligo.

inligō (ill-), -āre, -āvī, ātus [inligo, bind], 1. v. n., bind on, attach. fasten to.

inlūdō (ill-), -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsus [in-ludo, sport], 3. v. a., make sport of, mock at, deceive.

inlūstris (ill-), -e [in-lustrŏ- [or kindred st.), cf. lustro, light], adj. distinguished, renowned, remarkable, famous: inlustriore loco natus, of any prominence.

inlūsus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of inludo.

innitor, -niti, -nisus (-nixus) [innitor], 3. v. dep., lean upon, support one's self on.—innixus, -a -um. p. p. in present sense, leaning on. supported by.

innīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of innitor. innocēns, -entis [in-nocens, p. of noceo, injure], adj., harmless, guilless, innocent. — Plur. as noun, the innocent.

innotēscō, -notēscere, -notuī, no p. p. [in-notesco], 3. v. n., become known, make one's mark.

innuō, -nuere, -nui [in-nuo], 3. v. n., nod, give a sign.

inopia, -ae [inop- (needy) + ia]. F., scarcity, dearth, destitution, want, privation, want of supplies.

inopinans, -antis [in-opinans], adj., unsuspecting, not suspecting.

inopinātus, -a, -um [in-opinatus], adj., unexpected.

inops, -opis [in-ops, help], adj., without resources, poor, needy.

inquam [?], def. v. n., say.

inrētiō (irr-), -īre, -īvī, -ītus [finreti- (in-rete, net)], 4. v. a., entrap, ensnare.

inrīdeō (irr-) -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsus [in-rideo, laugh], 2. v. n., ridicule, laugh at, make sport of.

inrumpō (irr-), -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [in-rumpo], 3. v. n. and a., break in, break into, storm.

inruo, -ruere, -ruī [in-ruo], 3. v. n., rush in, rush upon.

inruptio (irr-), -onis [in-truptio, cf. eruptio and inrumpo], F., a breaking in, an attack (on a fortified place), raid, incursion.

insania, -ae [insano- (unsound) + ia], F., insanity, madness.

însatiābilis, -e [in-†satiabilis (cf. satio, satisfy)], adj., insatiable.

Insciens, -entis [in-sciens], adj., not knowing, unaware: insciente Caesare, without C.'s knowledge.

inscientia, -ae [inscient- + ia], F., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.

inscitus, -a, -um [in-scitus, clever], adj., silly, stupid.

inscius, -a, -um [in-†scius, cf. conscius and scio], adj., not knowing, unaware, ignorant.

insecutus, -a, -um, p. p. of insequor.

insequor, -sequi, -secutus [insequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue, follow.

inserö, -serere, -serui, -sertus [insero, join], 3. v. a., insert, stick in, mingle with.

insertus, -a, -um, p. p. of insero. insidiae, -ārum [tinsid- (cf. insideo, sit in, and obses) + ia], F. plur., an ambush, a stratagem, a trick, a plot, a trap, a surprise: per insidias, with deception, treacherously. Insidior, -ārī, -ātus [insidia-], 1. v. dep., lie in wait, make treacherous attacks, plot against.

Insignis, -e [in-signő-, mark, decl. as adj.], adj., marked, memorable, signal, conspicuous. — Insigne, N. as noun, a signal, a sign, a decoration (of soldiers), a mark, an honor, a distinction. — Also, a memorable act.

insimulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of insimulo.

Insimulo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [insimulo, make like], 1. v. a., charge, accuse.

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-sinuo], 1. v. a. and n., wind in. — With reflex., work one's way into, slip in.

insisto, sistere, stiti, no p. p. [in-sisto], 3. v. a. and n., stand upon, set foot upon, stand, keep one's footing. — Fig., adopt (rationem pugnae), devote one's self (in bellum).

insolens, -entis [in-solens, cf. soleo, be wont], adj., unusual, excessive, arrogant.

insolenter [insolent- (cf. soleo, be wont) + ter], adv., (in an unusual manner), insultingly, insolently, arrogantly.

insono, -sonare, -sonui, no p. p. [in-sono, sound], i. v. n., sound, resound: catenis (rattle the chains over).

īnspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inspecto], I. v. a. and n., look upon, look on: inspectantibus nobis, before our eyes.

Inspicio, spicere, spexi, spectus [in-†specio], 3. v. a., look upon, inspect, examine.

īnstābilis, -e [in-stabilis, cf. sto],

94

adj., unsteady. — Fig., changeable, uncertain.

instar [instā- + ris (?, reduced)], N. indecl., (an image), in the likeness of (with gen.), like, in the manner of.

instituo, -ere, -ui, -ūtus [instatuo], 3. v. a., set up, set in order, array: opus (finish).—Also, provide, procure, get ready.—Also, set about, undertake, begin to practice, adopt (a plan, etc.), begin, set on foot, establish, fix, arrange.—So, teach, train, habituate.

institutum, -I [N. p. p. of instituo], N., a habit, a practice, an institution, a custom.

īnstitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of instituo.

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus [insto, stand], 1. v. n., be at hand, press on. — Fig., threaten, impend, menace: instans senecta (advancing).

instructus, -a, -um, p. p. of instruc.

instruo, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus [in-struo, build], 3. v. a., build, fit up, fit out, array, furnish, draw up (of troops), provide, prepare.

insuefactus, -a, -um [p. p. of †insuefacio], trained.

īnsuētus, -a, -um [in-suetus], adj., unaccustomed, unused.

insula, -ae [akin to in-salio?], F.,
("tussocks" in a swamp), an island.
insum, -esse, -fui [in-sum], irr. v.
n., be in.

insuper [in-super, above], adv., on the top, above, at the top. — Also, besides.

integer, -gra, -grum [in-†teger

(TAG, in tango, touch, + rus)], adj, untouched, unimpaired, unwearied, fresh. — Plur. as noun, fresh troops. — Esp., not entered upon (of business); re integra, before anything was done, before being committed to any course of action.

intego, -tegere, -texi, -tectus [intego], 3. v. a., cover over, face (turris coriis).

intellegenter [intelligent- + ter], adv., intelligently, appreciatively.

intellego, -legere, -lexi, -lectus [inter-lego], 3. v. a., (pick out [distinguish] between), learn, know, find out, discover, see plainly, be aware.

intendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [in-tendo], 3. v. a., stretch, strain, direct, bring against, bring forward.

— Esp., of the mind or eyes, be intent, be absorbed.

intentātus, -a, -um, p. p. of intento.

intentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-tentō, cf. intendo], 1. v. a. freq., direct, aim at, threaten.

inter [in + ter, cf. alter], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., between, among, amid, at, during (epulas), in the midst of: arbitros inter civitatis (referees to decide between).

— Of time, within, for. — Often in a recip. sense: inter se, with, to, from, etc., each other, one another, together; cohortati inter se, encouraging each other, one another; obsides inter se dare, to exchange hostages.

intercalārius, -a, -um [intercalari-(cf. intercalo) + us], adj., intercalary.

intercalo, -are, -avī, -atus [inter-

95

calo, call], I. v. a., insert in the calendar, intercalate.

Intercatia, -ae [?], F., a town in Spain.

intercedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessurus [inter-cedo], 3. v. n., come between, go between, lie between, intervene, exist between, occur between, be, pass (of time), come in: mentionem (be made).

interceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of intercipio.

intercipio, -cipere, -cepī, -ceptus [inter-capio, take], 3. v. a., intercept, cut off.

interclūdo, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [inter-claudo, shut], 3. v. a., cut off, shut off, block (roads): fugam (stop, cut off).

interdico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus [inter-dico], 3. v. a., (intervene by an order), forbid, prohibit: interdicere ne, forbid to, order not to.

interdiū [inter diu (acc. or abl.?, akin to dies)], adv., in the daytime, by day.

interdum [inter dum (orig. acc.)], adv., for a time, sometimes.

intereā [inter ea (prob. abl.)], adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

interēmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of interimo.

intereo, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itūrus [intereo (go into pieces?, cf. interficio)], irr. v. n., perish, die, be killed.

interest, see intersum.

interfector, -oris [inter-factor, cf. interficio], M., a slayer, a murderer. interfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of interficio.

interficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus

[inter-facio], 3. v. a., (cut to pieces. cf. intereo), kill, put to death.

intericio, -icere, -iecī, -iectus [inter-iacio], 3. v. a., throw in (between). - Pass., lie between, intervene: spatio interiecto (intervening), i.e. leaving a short interval; portubus interiectis (lying at intervals); sagittariis (thrown in at intervals).

interiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of intericio.

interim [loc. of tinterus, cf. inter, interior], adv., meanwhile.

interimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [inter-emo, take], 3. v. a., kill, slay, put to death.

interior, -us [compar. of tinterus (in-terus, cf. alter)], adj., inner, interior: nota (older, as more remote in the wine-cellar). - Masc. as noun, interiores, men in the interior, men in the town. - Neut. plur. as noun, the inner part.

interitus, [inter-itus, cf. -ūs intereo], M., destruction, death.

intermissus, see intermitto.

intermitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [inter-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., (let go between), leave off, discontinue, stop, interrupt, cease: spatiis intermissis, leaving intervals; brevi tempore intermisso, waiting a short time; spatio intermisso, after a time; subcuntes non intermiserunt (did not cease, etc.); intermissa profectione (delaying); vento intermisso (ceasing, failing); nocturnis temporibus ad laborem intermissis, ceasing their toil in the night time; tempus ab opere, at any time cease the work; intermissae trabes (separated); intermissis magistratibus, passed over for a year; pars oppidi intermissa a flumine (left unprotected); planities intermissa collibus (broken by, lying between).

interneciō, -ōnis [inter-†necio, same root as neco, kill], F., extermination, annihilation (exercitus).

interpono, -ponere, -posui, -positus [inter-pono], 3. v. a., put in between (lit. and fig.), interpose, allege (an excuse to break off something): moram; nulla suspicione belli interposita, no suspicion of war appearing to hinder; fidem interponere, pledge one's honor.

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus [interpret-], 1. v. dep., interpret, explain.

interrogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of interrogo.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [interrogo], 1. v. a., (ask at intervals), question, interrogate, ask.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [inter-rumpo], 3. v. a., break off (between two points), break down (bridges), destroy.

interscindo, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus [inter-scindo], 3. v. a., cut off (between two points), break down, tear down.

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [inter-sum], irr. v. n., be between, be among, be in, be engaged in: non amplius intersit, there is an interval of not more than, etc.; proelio, divinis rebus (be engaged in, take part in). — Also, be different, differ. — Esp., impers., it is of importance, it interests, it concerns; with neg., it makes no difference.

intervāllum, -ī [inter-vallus, dis tance between stakes in a rampart], N., distance (between two things), distance apart, interval.

intervenio, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus [inter-venio], 4. v. n., come between, come up (at a particular juncture), arrive.

interventus, -ūs [inter-tventus, cf. eventus and intervenio], M., a coming (to interrupt something), intervention.

intexo, -texere, -texui, -textus [intexo], 3. v. a., weave in, weave together.

intextus, -a, -um, p. p. of intexo.

intrā [instr. (?) of tinterus, cf. inter and extra], adv. and prep. with acc., into, within, inside, in.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [interō-], 1. v. a., enter, go in.

introduco, ducere, duxi, ductus [introduco], 3. v. a., lead in, bring in, march in (troops).

introitus, -ūs [intro-itus, cf. introeo], M., an entrance, an approach (means of entrance).

intrōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of intromitto.

intromitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [intro-mitto], 3. v. a., let go in, send in. — With reflex. or in pass., rush in: intromissus, p. p., rushing in.

introrsus [intro-vorsus (petrified nom., p. p. of verto, turn)], adv, into the interior, inside, within.

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus (-tūtus) [intueor], 2. v. dep., gaze upon, gaze at, cast one's eyes upon. intuli, see infero.

intumésco, -tuméscere, -tumui, no p. p. [in-tumesco, swell], 3. v. n., be swollen, swell, swell with rage, rage.

inūsitātus, -a, -um [in-usitatus], adj., unwonted, unaccustomed: inusitatior, less familiar.

inutilis, e [in-utilis], adj., of no use, unserviceable, useless. — In a pregnant sense, unfavorable.

invehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus [inveho], 3. v. a., carry in. — Pass., sail in.

invenio, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [in-venio], 4. v. a., find (come upon, cf. reperio, find by search), learn.

inventor, -ōris [in-tventor, cf. in-venio], M., a discoverer, an inventor.

inventus, -a, -um, p. p. of invenio.

inveterāscō, -āscere, -āvī, -ātūrus [in-veterasco], 3. v. n., grow old in, become established in.

invicem (often as two words) [invicem], adv., by turns, in turn.

invictus, -a, -um [in-victus], adj., unconquered. — Also, unconquerable, invincible.

invideo, -videre, -vidī, -vīsus [invideo, see], 2. v. n. and a., (look askance at), envy, be jealous of, grudge.—invīsus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., hated, hateful, detested, odious.

invidia, -ae [invido- (envious) + ia], F., envy, odium.

inviolātus, -a, -um [in-violatus], adj., inviolate. — Also (cf. invictus), inviolable, sacred.

invīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of invideo. invītātus, -a, -um, p. p. of invito. invīto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., invite, request, attract.

invītus, -a, -um [?], adj., unwilling. — Often rendered as adv., against one's will.

io [Gr.], interj., ah! oh!

iocus, -ī [?], M., also N. in plur., a jest, a joke: inter (per) iocum, in jest.

Iovem, see Juppiter.

ipse, -a, -um [is-potis (?)], intens. pron., self, himself, etc. (as opp. to some one else, cf. sui, reflex., referring to the subject), he, etc. (emph.), he himself, etc., in person, very: hoc ipso tempore, at this very time; ipsi inter se (see sui), each other, with each other, by each other, etc.

īra, -ae [?], F., anger, wrath.

īrātus, -a, -um [p. p. of irascor, be angry], adj., angry, in anger.

irem, etc., see eo, go.

is, ea, id [pron. 1], dem. pron., this (less emph. than hic), that (unemph.), these, those, etc., the, a, he, she, it, such: quae pars ea, etc., the part which, etc.; et id, and that too; ea quae, the things which, what; cum ea ita sint, since this is so; is locus quo, a place where; in eo erat ut, was on the point of.—eō, N. abl., the (old Eng. instr.), so much, on that account, therefore; eo magis, all the more.

iste, -a, -ud [is-te (cf. tum, tantus, etc.)], dem. pron., that, that of yours.

ita [1 + ta (instr. (?) of TA)], adv., so, in such a way, in this way, thus, to such an extent, as follows: ut...ita, as...so, though...yet, both...and; ita...ut, in propor-

tion as, as; ita narravit, told this story.

Italia, -ae [†Italő- (reduced) + ia (F. of -ius)], F., Italy.

Italus, -a, -um [prob. Gr.], adj., Italian. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Italians.

itaque [ita que], adv., and so, accordingly, therefore.

item [1-tem (acc.?, cf. idem)], adv., in like manner, so also, in the same way (before mentioned), likewise.

iter, itineris [st. fr. 1 (go) + unc. term.], N., a road, a march, a way, a route, a course, a journey: in itinere, on the road; in eo itinere, on the way; iter facere, march, travel; iter dare, allow to pass; magnis itineribus, by forced marches; tutum iter, a safe passage.

iterum [I (in is) + terus, cf. alter], adv., a second time, again.

Ithaca, -ae [Gr.], F., an island in the Ionian Sea, the home of Ulysses.

Itius [Celtic], adj., (with portus), the port where Cæsar embarked for Britain the second time; either Wissant or Boulogne.

itum, see eo, go.

Iuba, -ae [?], M., a king of Numidia, who was defeated by Julius Cæsar at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iūssus [prob. ius-habeo, cf. praebeo], 2. v. a., order, command, bid.

iūcundus, -a, -um [perh. akin to iuvo, aid], adj., pleasant, agreeable.

Iūdaei, -ōrum [?], M. plur., the fews.

iūdex, -icis [ius- †dex (DIC, as st.)], M. and F., a judge.

iūdicium, -ī [iudic- (in iudex, judge) + ium], N., a judgment (judicial), a trial, an opinion (expressed officially); an opinion (generally), advice; often translated by court.

iūdico, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [iudic- (in iudex, judge)], 1. v. a., formally decide, decide, judge, adjudge, think, consider.

ingulum, ·ī [iugŏ- + lum], N., the collar-bone (forming a kind of yoke).

— Less exactly, the throat, the neck.

iugum, -ī [IUG (in iungo) + um]. N., a yoke. Hence, a ridge, a crest (of a row of hills).

Iugurtha, -ae [?], M., a king of Numidia, who was defeated and captured by Marius.

Iūlia, -ae [F. of Iulius], F., Cæsar's daughter, who was married to Pompey.

Iūlius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. See Caesar.

iumentum, -I [1UG- (?) + mentum], N., a beast of burden, a pack-horse, a horse.

iunctura, -ae [iunctu- + ra (F. of -rus)], F., a joining, a joint: quantum distabat iunctura, as far as the distance apart, of two things joined.

iunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of iungo.

iungo, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus [IUG], 3. v. a., join, unite, attach together: societātem (form). — In pass. or with reflex., unite with, attach one's self to.

iunior, compar. of iuvenis.

Iūnius, -ī [?, prob. iuveni- + ius.

but cf. Iuno], M., a Roman gentile name. See Brutus.

Iunius, -a, -um [see the foregoing], adj., of June.

Iuno, -onis [prob. for Iovino, akin to Iuppiter], F., the queen of the gods, wife of Jupiter.

Iuppiter, Iovis [Iovis-pater], M., the god of the visible heavens and the atmosphere, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans.

iūrgium, -ī [tiurgō- (ius-agus, cf. prodigus) (reduced) + ium], N., a quarrel, a complaint, a reproach.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [iur- (st. of ius)], 1. v. n., swear, take an oath.

1 ius, iūris [?], N., broth, soup.

<sup>2</sup> iūs, iūris [YU (akin to IUG) + us], N., justice, law, right, rights (collectively), rights over (anything), claims: in ius vocare (into court).—iure, abl. as adv., rightly, justly.

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī [see the two words], N., an oath.

Kal., for Kalendae and its cases. Kalendae (Cal-), -ārum [F. plur. of tcalendus, pass. p. of verb akin to calo, call], F. plur., the Calends (the iūssū [abl. of tiussus], used as adv., by order, by command.

iūstitia, -ae [iusto- + tia], F., justice (just behavior), sense of justice, fair dealing.

iūstus, -a, -um [ius + tus], adj., just, lawful, right. — Also, complete, perfect, regular.

iuvencus, -ī [†iuven- (earlier form of iuveni-) + cus], M., a bullock, a steer.

iuvenis, -e [?], adj., young. — As noun, a young man (not over 45), a youth: iuniores, the younger soldiers.

iuventūs, -ūtis [iuven- (orig. st. of iuvenis) + tus], F., youth. — Concretely in a collective sense, the youth, the young men.

iuvo, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus [?], 1. v. a., help, aid, assist. — Also, please, delight.

iūxtā [instr. (?) of tiuxtus, superl. of tiugis (IUG + is)], adv. and prep. with acc., next, near, near by.

K

first day of the Roman month, when, as it would seem, the times of the moon were announced to the assembled people).

L

L., for Lucius.

L ( $\psi$ ) [a corrupt form of the Greek letter  $\psi$  (prop.  $\chi$ ), originally used for 50, and retained in the later notation, prop.  $\psi$ ], a sign for quinquāgintā, fifty.

Labeo, -onis [?], M., a Roman family name. See Fabius.

Laberius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. See Durus.

Labiēnus, -ī [?, perh. labia (lips) + enus], M., a Roman family name.

— Esp., Titus Atius Labienus, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards on the side of Pompey in the Civil War.

labor, -ōris [RABH (seize) + or (for -os)], M., toil, exertion (in its disagreeable aspect), labor (as painful), trouble, hardship.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus [unc., cf. lǎbō, totter], 3. v. dep., slip, slide, fall: annus (glide by). — Fig., commit an imprudence, go wrong, be disappointed.

laboriose [old case-form of laboriosus, toilsome], adv., laboriously, industriously.

laboro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [labor-], 1. v. n., toil, exert one's self, struggle. — Also, suffer labor, be hard pressed, labor, suffer, be afflicted.

labrum, -ī [LAB (in lambo, lick, cf. labia, lips) + rum], N., the lip.

— Less exactly, the edge (of a horn, of a ditch), the rim (of a cup).

lābrum, -ī [akin to lavo, wash?], N., a basin, a tub.

lāc, lactis [?], N., milk.

Lacedaemonius, a, -um [Gr.], adj., Lacedaemonian, Spartan. — Plur. as noun, the Lacedaemonians, the Spartans.

lacerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of lacero. lacerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [lacerō-, torn], 1. v. a., tear to pieces, tear.— Fig., slander, abuse.

lacessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītus [st. akin to lacio (entice) + unc. term.], 3. v. n., irritate, provoke. — Esp., attack, harass, assail, skirmish with.

lacrima, -ae [†dakru- + ma], F, a tear.

laedo, laedere, laesi, laesus [unc.], 3. v. a., wound, injure. — Esp. fig., break (one's word, etc.), violate.

laesus, -a, -um, p. p. of laedo.

laetitia, -ae [laető- + tia], F., joy, gladness, pleasure (cf. laetus), exultation.

laetus, -a, -um [unc. root (perh. akin to glad) + tus], adj., joyful (of the inner feeling), rejoicing, glad. — Also, pleasing, agreeable.

lamentum, -ī [unc. root + mentum], N., a shriek, a lament, a lamentation.

lana, -ae [?], F., wool: lanam facere, spin wool.

lancea, -ae [prob. Gr.], F., a spear, a lance.

languide [old case-form of languidus], adv., with little energy, feebly.

languidus, -a, -um [cf. langueo, be weary], adj., spiritless, listless, languid.

languor, -ōris [LANG (in langueo, be weary) + or], M., want of spirit, listlessness, weariness.

läniger, era, erum [lana- (weak-ened) -ger (cf. gero)], adj., wool-bearing, fleecy. — As noun, a fleecy sheep, woolly-back.

lapis, -idis [?], M., a stone (to throw, etc.). — Collectively, stone, stones.

lāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of labor.

laqueus, -ī [LAC (in lacio, entice) + eus], M., a slip-noose, a snare, a trap. lārdum (-idum), -ī [akin to Gr.],

N., bacon, lard.

largior, -īrī, -ītus [largö-, abun-dant], 4. v. dep., give lavishly, be-stow upon, supply with.

lassitūdo, -inis [lasso- (weary) + tudo, cf. fortitudo], F., weariness, exhaustion.

late [old case-form of latus], adv., widely: latius, too far; longe lateque, far and wide.

latebra, -ae [late- (in lateo) + bra], F., a hiding-place.

lateo, latere, latui, no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., lie concealed, lurk, be concealed, pass unnoticed.

Latīnus, -a, -um [Latiö- (or simpler st.) + inus], adj., of Latium, Latin.

lātitūdō, -inis [latŏ- + tudo], F., breadth, width.

Latona, -ae [Gr.], F., the mother of Apollo and Diana.

latro, -onis [prob. st. borrowed fr. Greek +0], M., a mercenary (?), a robber, a brigand.

latrocinium, -ī [latron- + cinium, cf. ratiocinor], N., freebooting, robbery, highway robbery.

lātus, -a, -um [prob. for †platus, cf. Eng. "flat"], adj., broad, wide, extensive.

latus, lateris [prob. lato-], N., the side (of the body). — Also, generally, a side, a flank, an end (of a hill).

lātus, -a, -um [for tlatus, TLA (cf. tollo, tuli) + tus], p. p. of fero. laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laud-],

I. V. 2., praise, commend, approve.

laurea, -ae [lauro- + ea (F. of eus)], F., laurel, a laurel crown.

laus, laudis [?], F., praise, credit, glory, merit (thing deserving praise).

laute [old case-form of lautus, splendid], adv., splendidly, sumptuously.

lavo, -āre (-ere), -āvī (lāvī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus) [?], 1. v. a., wash, lave. — In pass. used reflex., bathe.

laxo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laxo-, loose], I. v. a., loosen, open out, extend.

lectīca, -ae [lectŏ- + ica, F. of icus], F., a litter, a sedan.

lēctitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [lectō-, cf. lego, read], I. v. a. freq., read often, read.

lectus, -ī [?], M., a bed, a couch.

lēgātiō, -onis [legā- (despatch) + tio], F., (a sending or commission), an embassy, an embassy (message of ambassadors).

lēgātus, -ī [prop. p. p. of lēgo, commission, despatch], M., an ambassador, envoy. — Also, a lieutenant, a legatus. To a Roman commander were assigned (legare) one or more subordinate officers capable of taking command in his absence or engaging in independent operations under his general direction. These were the legati, and with the quæstor composed a kind of staff.

legiö, -ōnis [LEG (select) + io], F., (a levy). Hence, a legion (originally the whole levy, later the unit of army organization, numbering from 3000 to 6000 men, divided into ten cohorts).

legionārius, -a, -um [legion- + arius], adj., of a legion, of the line, legionary (the Roman heavy infantry of the legion as opposed to all kinds of auxiliary troops).

lego, legere, lēgī, lēctus [LEG,

gather], 3. v. a., collect, choose, pick out. Hence, read.

Lemovices, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Limousin. The name is preserved in Limoges.

lēnis, -e [?], adj., gentle, smooth, soft, calm.

lenius, with less vigor.

lentus, -a, -um [perh. akin to lenis], adj., sluggish, slow.

leo, -onis [poss. Gr.], м., a lion.

Leonidas, -ae [Gr.], M., a Spartan king, commander of the famous three hundred at Thermopylæ, B.C. 480.

lepidē [old case-form of lepidus], adv., wittily, ingeniously.

lepidus, -a, -um [†lepŏ- (LAP, shine) + dus], adj., pleasant, agreeable, charming, witty.

Lepontii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps on the Italian side of St. Gothard.

lepus, -oris [?], M., a hare. lētum, -ī [?], N., death.

levis, -e [for tleghvis, LAGH (jump) + us (with inserted i, cf. brevis), Eng. "light"], adj., light, slight, unimportant, of no weight.—
Also, quick, nimble.— Also (cf. gravis), inconstant, fickle, wanting in character.

levitās, -ātis [levi- + tas], F., lightness. — Also (cf. levis), inconstancy, fickleness.

levo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [levi- (as if levo-)], 1. v. a., lighten. Hence, free from a burden, relieve.

lēx, lēgis [LEG (in lego, select)], F., a statute, a law.

Lexovii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur, a Gallic tribe in modern Normandy.

\* Leydis, -is [?], F., Leyden.

libēns, see libet.

libenter [libent- + ter], adv., willingly, with pleasure, gladly. — With a verb, be glad to, etc.

liber, -brī [?], M., a book.

liber, -era, -erum [†libő- (whence libet, it pleases) + rus (reduced)], adj., free (of persons and things), unrestricted, undisturbed, unencumbered.

liberaliter [liberali- + ter], adv., generously, kindly (respondit): oratione prosecutus (addressing in generous language).

liberātus, -a, -um, p. p. of libero. liberē [old case-form of liber], adv., freely, boldly, without restraint: liberius, with too little restraint, rather freely.

liberi, -örum [prob. M. plur. of liber, the free members of the house-hold], M. plur., children.

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [liberō-].

1. v. a., free, set free, relieve (from some bond); liberare se, secure one's freedom.

libertäs, -ātis [liberö- (reduced) + tas], F., liberty, freedom, independence.

lībertus, -ī [liberŏ- (reduced) + tus], M., a freedman.

libet, -ēre, -uit (-itum est) [?, cf. līber], 2. v. impers., it pleases, one desires. — libēns, -entis, p. as adj., willing, glad.

lībrīlis, -e [libra- (pound) + ilis], adj., of a pound weight: fundae (heavy missiles from slings, one-pounders).

Libya, -ae [Gr.], F., a region of Africa.

licentia, -ae [licent- (cf. licet) + ia], F., lawlessness, want of discipline, liberty, license.

licet, -ēre, -uit (-itum est) [†licŏ-, cf. delicus, reliquus], 2. v. n., be allowed, be permitted, one may (might): id sibi, etc. (that they be allowed); licet conspicari, one can see; petere ut liceat, to ask permission.

lictor, -ōris [?], M., a lictor (the attendant of the higher Roman magistrates).

Liger, eris [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul between the Hædui and the Bituriges, the *Loire*.

lignum, -ī [?], N., a piece of wood, a log.

ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., bind, tie, fasten.

Ligures, -um [?], M. plur., the Ligurians, a people of Cisalpine Gaul.

lilium, -i [?], N., a lily. The name is applied jocosely to a peculiar kind of chevaux-de-frise.

limen, inis [unc. root (in limus, aslant, and limes, boundary) + men], N., a threshold.— Less exactly, an entrance, a portal.

linea, -ae [lino- (flax) + ea (F. of eus)], F., a line.

Lingones, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Vosges Mountains.

lingua, -ae [?], F., tongue. Hence, language.

lingula, -ae [lingua- + la (F. of lus)], F., a little tongue, a tongue of land.

linquo, -ere, liqui, lictus [LIQU], 3. v. a., leave, forsake.

linteum,  $-\overline{i}$  [linő- (through st. in -to) + eus], N., a curtain.

līnum, -ī [prob. borr. fr. Gr.], N., flax.

liquor, -ōris [liquö- (reduced, cf. liquidus) as root + or], M., a fluid, a liquid, water.

lis, litis [for †stlis, cf. locus and Eng. "strife"], F., a suit at law. — Also, the amount in dispute, damages. ROP Q

littera (līt-) [?, akin to lino, smear], F., a letter (of the alphabet).

— Plur., letters, writing, an alphabet, a letter (an epistle), records.

— Also, letters, literature.

lītus, -oris [?], N., a shore, a beach.
loco, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [loco-], 1. v.
a., place, put, lay. — Hence, let (for hire), contract for.

loculi, -ōrum [locŏ- + ulus, dim. end.], M. plur., (a receptacle with compartments), a coffer, drawers, a pocket.

locuples, -ētis [?, loco-ples (ple + tus, reduced)], adj., (with full coffers?), rich, wealthy, well-stored.

locuplēto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [locuplet-], 1. v. a., enrich.

locus, -ī [for tstlocus (STLA, place + cus)], M. (sing.), N. (commonly in plur.), a place, a spot, a position, a region (esp. in plur.), a point, the ground (in military language), space, extent (of space), room. — Fig., position, rank, a point, place (light, position, character), a situation, an opportunity, a chance: obsidum loco, as hostages; in loco, instead; in loco amici, as a friend.

locūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of loquor. lolium, -ī [?], N., darnel, a weed.

longe [old case-form of longus], adv., far, too far, absent, far away, far off, distant: non longius mille (not more than); longius aberat, was rather far away; errat longe, is much mistaken.

longinquus, -a, -um [case-form of longus (perh. loc.) + cus], adj., long, distant.

longitūdō, -inis [longŏ- + tudo], F., length.

longurius, -ī [longŏ- + urius], m., a long pole.

longus, -a, -um [?], adj., long (of space and time); navis longa, a ship of war, a war galley (opposed to the broader naves onerariae); longum est, it would take too long (with infin.).

Longus, -i [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Tiberius (Sempronius) Longus, a consul defeated by Hannibal at the Trebia.

loquor, loqui, locutus [?], 3. v. dep., speak, talk, converse.

lorica, -ae [loro- (strap) + ica], F., a coat of mail (orig. of leather thongs). — Also, a breastwork, a rampart (on a wall).

lõrum, -ī [?], N., a thong, a strap. lõtus, -ī [Gr.], F., water-lily, lotus.

Lūcānī, -ōrum [?], M. plur., the Lucanians, a people of lower Italy. lūcidē [old case-form of lucidus,

bright], adv., clearly.

Lūcius, -ī [luc- (in lux) + ius], M., a Roman prænomen.

lucrum, -ī [?], N., gain, wealth. Lucterius, -ī [?, perh. Celtic], M., a Gallic name, perh. borrowed from the Romans. — Esp., Lucterius Cadurcus, a commander under Vercingetorix.

luctor, -ārī, -ātus [?], 1. v. dep., struggle, strive, contend.

luctus, us [LUG (cf. lugeo) + tus], M., mourning, lamentation, grief, distress.

Lūcullus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Lucullus, consul in B.C. 151.

lücus, -ī [prob. LUC (shine) + us (orig. opp. to thick, dark woods)], M., a grove.

lüdibrium, -ī [ludibri- (cf. ludus and ludicer) + ium], N., sport. — Transf., a laughing-stock, a butt.

lūdicrum, -ī [N. of ludicer, sportive], N., sport, jest. — Also, a show, a public game.

lūdo, -ere, lūsī, lūsus [LUD], 3. v. n., play, sport.

lūdus, -ī [LUD + us], M., a sport, a game: ludos facere, play tricks upon, mystify.

lūgeo, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus [?], 2. v. n., mourn, lament.

Lugotorix, -igis [Celtic], M., a British prince.

lumen, -inis [LUC (shine) + men], N., a light (also fig.). — Also, a lamp.

lūna, -ae [LUC (in luceo, shine) + na], F., the moon. Also personified, Luna, the Moon.

lupus, -ī [?], a wolf.

lūx, lūcis [LUC, shine, as st.], F., light, daylight: prima luce, orta luce, or luce, at daybreak.

lüxuria, -ae [†luxurŏ- (luxu-

(excess) + rus) + ia], F., luxury, riotous living.

Lydians, a people of Lydia in Asia Minor.

lympha, -ae [?], F., clear water, water.

LX, for sexaginta, sixty.

LXX, for septuaginta, seventy. LXXX, for octoginta, eighty.

M

M., for Marcus.

**M** [corruption of CIO (orig.  $\Phi$ ) through influence of mille], 1000.

Maccus, -ī [?], M., a family name.

Macedones, -um [Gr.], M. plur.,

the Macedonians, people of northern

Greece.

Macedonia, -ae [Gr.], F., a country of northern Greece.

māceria, -ae [†mācerŏ- (reduced) (cf. macerō, soften) + ia], F., (mortar?), a wall.

māchinātiō, -ōnis [machinā-+tio], F., contrivance (mechanical). — Concretely, a contrivance, an engine, a derrick.

māciēs, -ēī [MAC (cf. macer, lean) + ies], F., leanness, emaciation.

maeror, -ōris [maes- (cf. maestus) + or], M., grief, sorrow, sadness.

maestus, -a, -um [p. p. of maereo, MIS (in miser, wretched) + tus], adj., sad, sorrowful, dejected.

magicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of magic, magic (adj.).

magis [MAG (in magnus) + ius (N. compar.)], adv., more, rather, more and more: eo magis, so much the more, all the more. See also maxime.

magister, -trī [magis (for magius) + ter (for terus)], M., a master, a teacher, a commander.

magistrātus, ūs [magistrā- (as if st. of †magistro, cf. magistro) + tus], M., an office, a magistracy (office of a magistrate). — Concretely, a magistrate (cf. "the powers that be").

TOP Q

māgnificē [old case-form of magnificus], adv., splendidly, grandly.
māgnificentia, -ae [†magnificent(as if p. stem) + ia], F., splendor,
magnificence.

māgnificus, -a, -um [magnō-ficus (FAC (in facio) + us)], adj., splendid, grand, magnificent.

māgnitūdō, inis [magnō- + tudo], F., greatness, great size, size, extent, stature, force (venti), severity (supplici): corporum (size, stature).

māgnopere, see opus.

māgnus, -a, -um [MAG (increase) + nus, cf. magis], adj., great (in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree), large, extensive, important, high (aestus), loud (vox): magni habere, to value highly, make much account of; magni interest, it is of great importance. — māior, comparin usual sense. — Also, māior (with or without natu), elder, older. — In plur. as noun, elders, ancestors. — māximus [mag- + timus], superl., largest, very large, greatest, very great, etc.: maximis itineribus, by

forced marches. See also Maximus.

Māgō, -ōnis [?], M., a brother of Hannibal.

māiestās, -ātis [maios- (orig. st. of maior) + tas], F., (superiority), majesty, dignity.

māior, see magnus.

malacia, -ae [borr. fr. Greek], F., (soft weather), a calm.

male [old case-form of malus], adv., badly, ill, unsuccessfully, barely, scarcely: male sit, ill betide.—peius [see malus], compar.—pessime, superl.

maledīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus [male- (ill), dīcō (say)], 3. v. a., revile, abuse.

maleficium, -ī [maieficŏ- (mischievous) + ium], N., harm, mischief.

mālō, mālle, māluī, no p. p. [mage-(for magis) -volo], irr. v. a. and n., wish more, wish rather, prefer, prefer rather.

mālum, -ī [Gr.], N., an apple.

malus, -a, -um [?], adj., bad (in all senses), ill, wicked. — peior [?], compar. — pessimus, superl. — Neut. as noun, an evil, a mischief, a misfortune, a punishment.

mālus, -ī [Gr.], M., (cf. the meaning apple tree), mast, beam (upright).

Mandana (ē), -ae [Gr.], F., mother of Cyrus the Great.

mandātum, -ī [N. p. p. of mando], N., a trust (given to one), instructions (given), a message (given to some one to deliver).

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?, †mandō- (akin to manu-do)], 1. v. a., put into one's hands, entrust, instruct (give instructions to), order, command, enjoin, commit: se fugae (take to); quaedam mandare, give certain instructions.

Mandubii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe north of the Hædui.

Mandubracius, 4 [Celtic], M., a Briton, prince of the Trinobantes.

mane [old case-form of †manis (?, ma + nis, cf. Matuta, goddess of dawn)], adv., in the morning.

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, 2. v. n., stay, remain, stay at home (absolutely, opp. to proficiscor).

mānēs, -ium [cf. immanis], M. plur., departed spirits, a ghost, a shade.

manipulus, -I [manu-†pulus (PLE + us)], M., (a handful, esp. of hay, used as an ensign), a maniple (two centuries, a third of a cohort).

Mānlius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. Lucius Manlius, as proconsul, beaten by the Aquitani in B.C. 78. — 2. Cnæus Manlius Volso, a Roman consul in Hannibal's time.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [†mansuē- (cf. mansuesco, grow tame, and calefacio) -facio], 3. v. 2., tame. — Pass., mānsuēfīō, be tamed. mānsuētūdō, -inis [†mansue- (cf. mansuefacio) + tudo], F., tameness,

manubiae, -ārum [akin to manus], F. plur., booty, prize money, spoils.

gentle disposition, kindness.

manus, -ūs [?], F., the hand: in manibus nostris, just at hand, within reach; manu defendere (by arms).— Also (cf. manipulus), a company, a band, a troop. — Also, handwriting, hand.

Marcellus, -ī [Marculo- (Marco- (hammer) + lus) + lus, second dim. of Marcus], M., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Marcus Claudius Marcellus, a famous Roman general, five times consul, and neuror of Syracuse in B.C. 212. — 2. M. Claudius Marcellus, a Roman consul in B.C. 183.

Marcus, -I [the hammer, akin to marceo, be soft, and morior, die], M., a Roman prænomen.

mare, is [?], N., the sea: mare oceanum, the ocean: nostrum (i.e. the Mediterranean).

margarītum, -ī (-a, -ae) [Gr.], N. (F.), a pearl.

maritimus (-umus), -a, -um [mari-+ timus, cf. finitimus], adj., of the sea, sea-, maritime, naval, on the sea: aestus (in the sea); ora (the seashore).

marītus, -ī [st. akin to mas (male) + tus], M., a husband.

Marius, -I [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion.

marmor, -oris [?], N., marble.

Mārs, Mārtis [?, perh. MAR (in morior, die) + tis, the slayer, but more probably of wolves than of men in battle], M., Mars, orig. prob. a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards identified with Gr. "Apps and worshipped as the

god of war. Cæsar again identifies him with the Celtic Hesus. For phrases, see aequus and dubius.

Martius, -a, -um [Mart- + ius], adj., of Mars. — Esp. (sc. mensis), of March.

mās, maris [?], adj., male. — As noun, a male.

Massagetae, -ārum [Gr.], M. plur., a people of Scythia.

māter, -tris [?, prob. MA (create) + ter], F., a mother, a matron.

mater familias (old gen. of familia), F., a matron.

māteria, -ae (-es, -ēi) [?, prob. mater + ia (F. of -ius)], F., wood (cut, for material), timber (cf. lignum, wood for fuel).

māterior, -ārī, -ātus [materia-], I. v. dep., get timber, bring wood.

Matisco, -onis [Celtic], F., a city of the Hædui, now Macon.

mātrimōnium, -ī [mater- (as if matri) + monium], N., (motherhood), marriage, matrimony.

Matrona, -ae [Celtic], M., the Marne, a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris.

mātronālis, -e [matrona- + alis], adj., of a matron, a matron's.

mātūrē [old case-form of maturus], adv., early, speedily.

mātūrēscō, -tūrēscere, -tūruī, no p. p. [maturē- (cf. maturo) + sco], 3. v. n., get ripe, ripen.

mātūro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [maturo-], 1. v. a. and n., hasten, make haste.

mātūrus, -a, -um [†matu- (MA (in mane) + tus) + rus], adj., early.

māximē [old case-form of maximus], adv., in the greatest degree,

Digitized by Google

most, very, in the highest degree, especially, very much: maxime confidebat, had the greatest confidence.

māximus, -a, -um, see magnus.
Māximus [superl. of magnus], м.,
a Roman family name.

mē, see ego.

mēd, old form for me.

medicāmentum, -ī [medicā- (heal) + mentum], N., a drug.

medicus, -I [†medŏ- (cf. medeor, heal) + cus], M., (a healer), a physician, a doctor.

mediocris, -cre [medio-+ cris], adj., middling, moderate: spatium, summam (a little, no great).

Mediomatrici, -ōrum (-um) [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Rhine, about Metz.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um [mediŏterra (land) + aneus], adj., inland. meditor, -ārī, -ātus [†meditŏ-, as if p. p. of medeor, heal], 1. v. dep., practise. — Also, plan, devise.

medius, -a, -um [MED (cf. Eng. "mid") + ius], adj., middle, the middle of (as noun in Eng.), mid: in colle medio (half way up): simiam (about the waist).

Mēdus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., Median, of Media, a country of Asia, south of the Caspian. — As noun, a Mede, a Median.

Megara, -ae [Gr.], F., a city of Greece near Athens.

mel, mellis [Gr.], N., honey.

Meldī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul.

melior, compar. of bonus.

mellitus, -a, -um [melli- (as if verb-st.) + tus], adj., honey-sweet. —- Fig., darling.

membrum, -I [prob. formed with suffix -rum (N. of -rus)], N., a limb, a part of the body.

memini, -isse [perf. of MAN, in mens, etc.], def. v. a., remember.

Memmius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Memmius, an opponent of Cæsar.

memor, -oris [prob. SMAR (think), redupl. as st.], adj., remembering, mindful.

memorābilis, e [memorā- (cf. memoro, mention) + bilis], adj., worth telling, remarkable.

memoria, -ae [memor- + ia], F., (mindfulness), memory, recollection, power of memory.— Also, time, period of recollection: duplex memoria, two accounts; Romanorum (history); memoria tenere, remember; memoriam prodere, hand down the memory (of something just mentioned); memoriae proditum, handed down by tradition; memoriae mandare, relate, tell; supra hanc memoriam, beyond the memory of this generation; dignum memoria, worthy of remembrance; nostrā memoriā, within our memory, in our own time.

Menapii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur, a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

mendāx, ācis [st. akin to menda, a fault (cf. also mentior, lic) + ax], adj., false, lying, deceitful.

mens, mentis [MAN + tis (reduced)], F., (a thought?), the intellect (as opposed to the moral powers,

cf. animus), the mind, a state of mind, feeling, temper, disposition.

mēnsa, -ae [F. of p. p. of metior (measure), sc. tabula, a board], F., a table.

mēnsis, -is [unc. form fr. MA, measure (cf. moon, month)], M., a month.

mēnsūra, -ae [mensu- (MA, measure, as if man- + tu) + ra (F. of rus)], F., measure: ex aqua mensurae, measures by the water-clock; itinerum (accurate length).

mentio, -onis [as if MAN (in memini) + tio (prob. †menti + o)], F., mention.

mercātor, -ōris [†mercā- (cf. mercor, trade) + tor], M., a trader (who carries his own wares abroad).

mercătura, -ae [†mercatu- + ra (F. of rus)], F., traffic, trade, commercial enterprise.

mercor, -ārī, -ātus [merc-, goods], 1. v. dep., buy, purchase.

Mercurius, -ī [unc. form, akin to merces, etc.], M., Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc. He is identified by Cæsar with a Celtic divinity, probably Teutates.

mereor, -ērī, -itus (also mereo, act.) [?], 2. v. dep., win, deserve, gain. — Also (from earning pay), serve: mereri de, serve the interests of.

mergö, -ere, mersī, mersus [MERG, dip], 3. v. a., sink.

merīdiānus, -a, -um [meridiē- + anus], adj., of midday: tempus (noon).

merīdiēs, -ēī [prob. medio- (reduced) -dies], M., midday, noon. —
Also, the south.

meritum, -ī [N. p. p. of mereo], N., desert, service. — meritō (abl. as adv.), deservedly: minus merito, without the fault; magis... quam merito eorum, more than by any act of theirs; merito eius a se fleri, that he deserved that he should do it, "served him right."

meritus, -a, -um, p. p. of mereo, both act. and pass.

n. P.

merus, -a, -um [?], adj., pure, unmixed. — Neut. as noun, sc. vinum, unmixed wine, wine.

merx, mercis [perh. root of mereo + cus (reduced)], F., goods, merchandise.

-met [?], intens. enclitic particle, used with prons., self.

Metellus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., Quintus Metellus (Numidicus), consul B.C. 109, superseded by Marius in the Jugurthine War.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus [†meti-(MA + tis?)], 4. v. dep., measure, measure out, deal out (rations), distribute.

meto, metere, messui, messus [?], 3. v. a., cut, reap, gather.

metuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [metu-], 3. v. a. and n., fear.

metus, -ūs [unc. root + tus], M., fear. — Often superfluous with other words of fearing: metu territare, terrify. — Esp.: hoc metu, fear of this.



meus, -a, -um [MA (in me) + ius], possess. adj. pron., my, mine. mī, voc. of meus.

mihi, see ego.

miles, -itis [unc. st., akin to mille as root + tis (reduced), not fr. eo], C., a soldier, a common soldier (as opposed to officers), a legionary soldier (heavy infantry, as opposed to other arms of the service).—Collectively, the soldiers, the soldiery.

Mīlētus, -ī [Gr.], F., a city of Asia Minor.

mīliēns(-ēs) [mille- + iens], num. adv., a thousand times.

mīlitāris, e [milit- + aris], adj., of the soldiers, military: signa (battle-standards). See res.

mīlitia, -ae [milit- + ia], F., military service, service (in the army).

mīlitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [milit-], I. v. n., be a soldier, serve as a soldier, serve. mīlle, indecl. mīlia, -ium [akin to miles], adj. (apparently) in sing., noun in plur., a thousand: mille passuum, a thousand paces, a mile.

minātus, -a, -um, p. p. of minor.

Minerva, -ae [unc. form, akin to memini, etc.], F., Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts, identified with the Greek Athene.

minime [old case-form of minimus], adv., in he smallest degree, least, very little, not at all.

minimus, -a, -um [lost st. (whence minuo) + mus (cf. infimus)], used as superl. of parvus, adj., smallest, least. -- Neut. as noun and adv., the least, least, very little.

ministro, -ārē, -āvī, -ātus [ministro-, servant], 1. v. a., serve, supply.

minitor, -ārī, -ātus [minitŏ-, as if p. p. of minor], 1. v. dep. freq., threaten, menace.

minor, .ārī, .ātus [mina-, st. of minae, threats], 1. v. dep., threaten. minor, .us [lost st. (cf. minimus) + ior (compar. end.)], adj. (used as compar. of parvus), smaller, less, younger: dimidio minor, half as large.— Neut. as noun and adv., less, not much, not very, not so much, not so: quo minus, in order that ... not; si minus, if not; minus valebat, was not so strong, was less, etc.; minus uti (not so well): minus magnus fluctus (less violent, smaller).

Minturnae, ārum [?], F. plur., a city in Campania.

Minucius (Minut-), -ī [perh. akin to minus], M., a Roman gentile name. See Basilus and Rufus.

minuō, uere, uī, ūtus [†minu-(cf. minus)], 3. v. a. and n., lessen, weaken diminish: aestus (ebb); vim (break 'he force, etc.); controversias (settle): desidiam (cure, correct).

mīrābilis, -e [mirā- + bilis], adj., wonderfui -turvellous.

mīrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of miror. mīrē [old case-form of mirus], adv., wonderfully.

mīrificē [old case-form of mirificus], adv., wonderfully.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus [mirō-], 1. v. dep., wonder, wonder at, admire, be surprised. — mīrātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, surprised.

mīrus, -a, -um [?, smi (cf. smile)

+ rus], adj., surprising, marvellous, wonderful.

misceō, -ēre, -uī, mixtus (mistus)
[†miscō-, cf. promiscus, in common],
2. v. a., mix, mingle.

misellus, -a, -um [misero- (reduced) + ellus, dim. end.], adj., (rather wretched): passer, poor little.

miser, -era, -erum [MIS (cf. maereo) + rus], adj., wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor.

miserābilis, -e [miserā- + bilis], adj., pitiable, miserable, wretched.

miserābiliter [miserabili- + ter], adv., pitiably, pitifully.

miserē [old case-form of miser], adv., wretchedly, miserably.

misericordia, -ae [misericord+ia], F., mercy, pity, clemency.
misericors, -cordis [miserö-cor (heart), decl. as adj.], adj., merciful, compassionate.

miseror, -ārī, -ātus [†miserō-], 1. v. dep., bewail, complain of, pity: nil miserans, unpitying, pitiless.

missio, -onis [mit- (as root of mitto) + tio], F., a release, a discharge from service.

missus, -a, -um, p. p. of mitto.

Mithradātēs (-idātēs), -is [Gr.], M., a name of several kings of Pontus in Asia. — Esp., Mithradates VI, called the Great, with whom the Romans were at war B.C. 88-61.

Mithradaticus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of Mithradates, Mithradatic.

mitto, mittere, mīsī, missus [?], 3. v. a., let go (cf. omitto), send, despatch, discharge, shoot.

Mitylenae, -ārum [Gr.], F. plur.,

Mitylene, a famous city on the island of Lesbos in the Ægean Sea.

mobilis, -e [prob. movi- (as if st. of moveo) + bilis], adj., easily moved, movable, mobile, fickle, hasty.

mobilitas, -ātis [mobili- + tas], F., mobility, activity (of troops), inconstancy, fickleness.

mobiliter [mobili- + ter], adv., easily (of motion), readily.

moderātiō, -ōnis [moderā- + tio], F., self-control, moderation.

modestē [old case-form of modestus], adv., modestly.

moderor, -ārī, -ātus [†moder-(akin to modus, cf. genus, genero)], I. v. dep., control, regulate, restrain.

modo [abl. of modus], adv., (with measure?), only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: paulum modo (just, a very); non... modo, not only; modo... modo, now... now; aspectum modo, the mere sight.

modus, I [MOD (cf. moderor) + us], M., measure, quantity. Hence, manner, fashion, kind, style, method, way. — Also, a code: ad hunc modum, after this fashion; nullo modo, in no way; in modum, after the manner; quo modo, how, as. See eiusmodi.

moenia, -ium [MI (distribute?) + nis (cf. communis) (orig. shares of work done by citizens?)], N. plur., fortifications, walls of a city.

mõlēs, -is [?, cf. molestus], F., a mass. — Esp., a dike, a dam.

moleste [old case-form of molestus], adv., heavily, severely: moleste ferre, take hard, be vexed at.

molestus, -a, -um [moles (a burden) + tus], adj., troublesome, irksome.

mölior, -īrī, -ītus [moli- (as st. of moles)], 4. v. dep., (struggle with a mass), attempt, contrive, plan.

mollis, e [?], adj., soft. — Fig., weak, feeble: litus (gently sloping).
mollities, -eī (also, -a, -ae) [molli+ ties (cf. -tia)], F., softness. — Fig.,
weakness, feebleness (animi).

Molo, -onis [Gr.], M., see Apollonius.

Molossus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of the Molossi, Molossian.

momentum, -i [movi (as st. of moveo, move) + mentum], N., means of motion, cause of motion. — Fig., weight, importance, influence, vigorous action: habere (be of importance). — Also, moment, instant.

Mona, -ae [Celtic], F., the Isle of Man, off the coast of Britain, but confounded with Anglesea.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [causative of MAN (in memini) or denominative fr. a kindred st.], 2. v. a., remind, warn, advise, urge.

mons, montis [MAN (in mineo, project) + tis (reduced)], M., a mountain, a mount, a height.

monstro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [monstro-], 1. v. a., point out, show.

monstrum, -ī [mon- (as root of moneo) + trum (the s of doubtful origin)], N., a prodigy, a supernatural appearance, a monster.

mora, -ae [prob. root of memor (thoughtful) + a], F., delay, grounds of delay: in mora est, hinders.

morātus, -a, -um, p. p. of moror. morbus, -ī [MAR (in morior, die) + bus, cf. turba, probus], M., sickness, illness, disease. mordeo, -ēre, momordī, morsus [?], 2. v. a., bite: frenos (champ).

Morinī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgæ on the coast of modern Picardy.

morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus (moritūrus) [MAR (cf. mors)], 3. v. dep., die. — mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., dead. — Plur. as noun, the dead. moritūrus, -a, -um, fut. p. of morior.

moror, -ārī, -ātus [mora-], 1. v. dep., retard, hinder, check (the advance of), delay, wait, stay, linger.

— With neg., care for, desire, prize.

— Also, nec moratus, without delay.

mors, mortis [MAR (cf. morior) + tis (reduced)], F., death: sibi mortem consciscere, commit suicide.

morsus, -ūs [mord- (as root of mordeo) + tus], M., a biting, a bite, a sting. — Fig., jaws, teeth.

mortālis, -e [mort- (shorter st. of mors) + alis], adj., mortal, human, of men. — Masc. plur. as noun, mortals.

mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. of morior.
mos, moris [?], M., a custom, a
usage, a way (of acting), a manner:
more fulminis, like a thunderbolt.—
Plur., customs, habits, character (as
consisting of habits, cf. ingenium
and indoles, of native qualities).

Mosa, -ae [Celtic], M., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse or (Flemish) Maas.

mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of moveo.

mōtus, -ūs [movi- (as st. of moveo)
+tus], M., a movement, a disturbance,
an uprising: expedition (movement
of ships); celer atque instabilis
(changes, of the passage of events

113

in maritime warfare); siderum (revolutions).

moveo, movere, movi, motus [?], 2. v. a., set in motion, move, stir, affect, cause, produce, occasion.—
Also, remove, expel: castra (move from a place to another; also, absolutely, break camp, cf. Eng. "move").

mox [?], adv., presently, soon, hereafter, later.

mulier, -eris [?], F., a woman.

multiplex, -icis [multö-plex (cf. duplex)], adj., many fold, manifold.
multitūdō, -inis [multö- + tudo],
F., a great number, a multitude, great
numbers, number (generally).—Esp.,
the multitude, the common people.

multus, -a, -um [?, poss. root of mille (and miles) + tus], adj., much, many: multo die, late in the day; ad multam noctem, till late at night. - multum, neut. as noun and adv., much. - Also, plur., multa, many things, much, a great deal. multo, abl. as adv., much, long, far. — Compar., plūs, plūris [akin to pleo], N. noun and adv.; plur. as adj., more, much, very : as noun, several, many. - As superl., plūrimus, -a, -um [st. of plus + mus], most, very many, very much: quam plurimi, as many as possible; quam plurimos possunt, the most they can; plurimum posse, have most power, be very strong or influential; plurimum valere, have very great weight.

mulus, -i [?, perh. akin to molo, grind], M., (the mill-beast?), a mule.
mundus, -i [?], M. (orig. adj., well ordered), the universe, the world.

mūnīmentum, -ī [munī- + mentum], N., a fortification. — Plur., a defence.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [muni-(st. of moenia, orig. shares, cf. country highway laws)], 4. v. a. and n., fortify. — Less exactly, protect, defend, furnish (by way of protection), make (by embankment), construct: castra; iter; viam; so munitissimum oppidum (very strongly fortified).

mūnītiō, -ōnis [munī- + tio], F., fortification (abstractly). — Concretely, a fortification, works, fortifications, defences.

mūnītus, -a, -um, p. p. of munio. mūnus, -eris [MIN (as if root of moenia) + us, orig. share (cf. moenia)], N., a duty, a service, a task: munus militiae, military service. — Also, (a contribution), a tribute, a gift, a present, bounty.

mūrālis, e [murŏ- + alis], adj., of a wall, wall-: pila (heavy javelins for service in siege operations).

mūrus, -ī [?], M., a wall (in itself considered, cf. moenia, defences).

mūs, mūris [MUS, steal?], M. and F., a mouse.

musca, -ae [cf. preceding word], F., a fly.

mūsculus, -ī [mus + culus, dim. end.], M., (little mouse), hence, from fancied resemblance, a shed (small and very strong, for covering besieging soldiers).

mūtātus, -a, -um, p. p. of muto. mutilus, -a, -um [?], adj., mutilated: cornibus (with short broken horns, of the elk). mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [perh. †mutō-(for movitō-), cf. moveo and mutuus], I. v. a., change, turn. mūtuo [old case-form of mutuus], adv., in exchange, in return.

mūtuus, -a, -um [akin to muto], adj., mutual, in return.

N

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.
nam [old case-form, cf. tam,
quam], conj., for.

Namnetes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe on the Loire around Nantes.

namque [nam-que], conj., for (a little more emphatic than nam, cf. etenim).

nanciscor, -cisci, nactus (nanctus) [NAC], 3. v. dep., find, get, procure, light upon, get hold of, obtain, meet with, secure.

nanctus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.

Nantuātes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul of uncertain position, probably in Savoy.

Narbō, ōnis [Celtic], M., a city of the Roman province of Gaul, early made a Roman colony, now Narbonne.

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [for old gnarigo, †gnarigō- (gnarō-, knowing, + †agus, cf. prodigus)], 1. v. a., tell, relate, recount.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus [GNA, cf. gigno], 3. v. dep., be born, arise, be produced, spring up, be raised (of beasts), be found (plumbum). — nātus, -a, -um, p. p., sprung, born. — As noun, a son: natus ab, a descendant of.

nātālis, -e [natu- (reduced) + alis], adj., of birth: dies natalis, a birthday.

nātiō, -ōnis [GNA (cf. nascor) + tio, perh. through intermediate st.]. F., (a birth), a race, a nation, a tribe, a clan.

nātīvus, -a, -um [natu- (reduced) + ivus], adj., native, natural.

nātūra, -ae [natu- + ra (F. of -rus)], F., (birth), nature, character (of living creature), character, nature (of inanimate things); ea rerum natura, such the state of the case; secundum naturam fluminis, down stream; natura triquetra (in form); de rerum natura (physical science); eadem feminae marisque (form, organisation); natura loci, nature of the ground.

nātūrālis, -e [natura- + lis], adj., of nature, natural.

nātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nascor.

nātus, -ūs [GNA (cf. nascor) + tus], M., birth: maiores natu, elders.

naufragium, -ī [naufragŏ- (ship-wrecked) + ium], N., a shipwreck.

nauta, -ae [borr. from Gr.], M., a sailor, a boatman, a mariner.

nauticus, -a, -um [nauta- + cus], adj., of a sailor (or sailors), naval.

nāvālis, -e [navi- (reduced) + alis], adj., of ships, naval: navalis pugna, sea-fight.

nāvicula, -ae [navi- + cula], F., a boat, a small vessel, a skiff.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis [navigā- + tio], F., a sailing, a voyage, travelling by sea, sailing, a trip (by sea).

nāvigium, -ī [†navigō- (navi- + †agus) + ium], N., a vessel (general), "a craft," a boat.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†navigō-(cf. navigium)], 1. v. n., sail.

nāvis, -is [(s)NU, float (increased), with added i], F., a ship, a vessel, a boat: oneraria (a transport); longa (a war galley); navi egredi, land; navem adpellere, put in.

nāvita, -ae, same as nauta.

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [(g)navō-, busy], I. v. a., do one's best: operam (do one's best).

ne [NA, unc. case-form], conj., lest, that ... not, not to (do anything), from (doing anything), so that ... not, for fear that. — After verbs of fearing, that. — Also adv., ne ... quidem, not ... even, not ... either.

-ne (enclitic) [prob. same as nē, orig. = nonne], conj., not? (as a question, cf. nonne), whether, did (as question in Eng.), do, etc. See also necne, neque.

nec, see neque.

necessarius, -a, -um [†necesso-(reduced) + arius], adj., (closely bound?), necessary: res (absolutely necessary, needful, indispensable). necessario, abl. as adv., of necessity, necessarily, unavoidably.

necesse [?, ne-cesső-, cf. cedo], indecl. adj., necessary. — With est, one must, one cannot but, one must inevitably.

necessitās, -ātis [†necessŏ- +

tas], F., necessity, constraint, compulsion: temporis (exigency); suarum necessitatum causa (interests).

neco, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātus (-tus), [nec (st. of nex, death)], 1. v. a., put to death, kill, murder (in cold blood).

nefārius, -a, -um [nefas + -ius], adj., wicked, infamous, abominable.

neglego (necl-), -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus [nec (= ne) -lego], 3. v. a., not regard, disregard, neglect: iniurias (leave unavenged, leave unpunished); hac parte neglecta (leave unnoticed); metu mortis neglecto (careless of, etc.).

negō, ·āre, ·āvī, ·ātus [?, poss ne-aio], 1. v. a. and n., say no, say ... not, refuse, deny.

negōtiōr, -ārī, -ātus [negotiō-], 1. v. dep., do business (on a large scale, as in money, etc.).

negotium, -ī [nec-otium, ease], N., business, occupation, an undertaking. — Less definitely, a matter, a charge, a thing. — Also, difficulty, trouble: dare negotium alicul, employ one, give in charge to.

Nemetes, -um [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmō, tnēminis [ne-homo, man], M. and F., no one, nobody: non nemo, many a one.

nemus, oris [NEM (assign) + us], N., (assigned pasture land), a wooded pasture. — Less exactly, a wood, a grove.

nepōs, -ōtis [?], M., a grandson. nēquam [?], adj., indecl., worthless, good for nothing, vile. — Superl., nequissumus. nēquāquam [ne-quaquam, anyway (cf. eā, quā)], adv., in no way, by no means.

neque (nec) [ne-que], adv., and not, and yet ... not, nor: neque ... neque, neither ... nor.

nequeo, -quire, -quivi, -quitus [nequeo, be able], 4. v. n. def., cannot, be unable.

nēqui(d)quam (nēquic-) [ne . . . qui(d)quam, anything], adv., to no purpose, in vain, not without reason.

nēquissumus (-imus), -a, -um, see nequam.

Nervius, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., Nervian. — Masc. plur., the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -i [prob. for tnevrus], M., a sinew. — Fig., in plur., strength, vigor.

nesciō, -scīre, -scīvī (-iī), -scītus [ne-scio], 4. v. a., know not, know not how: nescio quo modo, in some way or other.

neu, see neve.

neuter, -tra, -trum [ne-uter, which (of two)], adj. pron., neither. — Plur., neither party, neither side.

neve (neu) [ne-ve], conj., or not, and not, nor.

nex, necis [?], F., death, violent death, execution.

nī, for nisi.

nīdus, -ī [?], M., a nest.

niger, -gra, -grum [?], adj., black, dark.

nihil, see nihilum.

nihildum [nihil-dum], N., indecl., nothing as yet.

nihilum (nihil), -ī [ne-hilum, trifle, whit?], N. (also indecl.),

nothing: nihil reliqui, nothing left; nihil dubitare, have no doubt.—
nihilo, abl. as adv., none, no.—
nihil, acc. as adv., not at all: non
nihil, something, somewhat.

nīl, same as nihil.

nimius, -a, -um [nimi- (?, st. of nimis, too much) + ius], adj., too much, too great, excessive. — Neut. as adv., too, too much. — nimiö, abl. as adv., by far.

Niobē (-a), -ēs (-ae) [Gr.], F., daughter of Tantalus and wife of Amphion. Her children were killed by Apollo and Diana, and she became a rock dripping with water.

nisi [ne-si], conj., (not . . . if), unless, if not, except, except in case: nisi cum, until; nihil nisi, nothing but.

niteo, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., shine, glisten.

Nitiobriges (-broges), -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

nitor, niti, nisus (nixus) [prob. genu, knee], 3. v. dep., (strain with the knee against something), struggle, strive, exert one's self, rely upon. nix, nivis [?], F., snow.

no, nāre, nāvī, no p. p. [akin to navis], 1. v. n., swim.

nobilis, e [as if (g)no (root of nosco, know) + bilis], adj., famous, noble, well-born (cf. "notable").—
Plur. as noun, the nobles.

nobilitas, -ātis [nobili- + tas], F., nobility, excellence, superiority.
— Concretely, the nobility, the nobles. noceo, nocēre, -uī, no p. p. [akin to nex, death], 2. v. n., do harm to, 117

injure, harm, harass. — nocēns, entis, p. as adj., hurtful, harmful, guilty (of some harm).

noctū [abl. of †noctus (noc-+tus)], as adv., by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um [noct- + urnus, cf. diurnus], adj., of the night, nightly, nocturnal, in the night, by night: tempus (night time).

nodus, -ī [?], M., a knot, a joint: nodi et articuli, protuberant joints.

nôlô, nôlle, nôluî, no p. p. [ne-volo], irr. v. a. and n., not wish, be unwilling, wish not, not like to have: noli (nolite), do not (with infin.).

nomen, inis [(G)NO (as root of nosco, know) + men], N., a name (what one is known by), name (fame, prestige). — As a name represents an account, an account: nomine dotis (on account of, as); suo nomine, on his own account.

nominatim [acc. of real or supposed †nominatis (nomina+ tis)], adv., by name (individually).

nomino, -are, -avi, -atus [nomin-], 1. v. a., name, mention, call by name, call.

non [ne-oenum (unum)], adv., not. nonāgintā, indecl. num. adj., nincty.

nondum, not yet. See dum.

nonne [non-ne], adv., is not? does not? etc.

nonnullus, some. See nullus.

nonnumquam, sometimes. See numquam.

nonus, -a, -um [†novi- (?) + nus (mus)], num. adj., ninth. — Esp., nonae, F. plur. as noun, the Nones (the ninth day before the Ides,

falling either on the fifth or seventh of the month).

nos, see ego.

nosco, noscere, novi, notus [(G)NA, know], 3. v. a., learn, become acquainted with. — In perf. tenses, know. — notus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., known, familiar, well-known: notis vadis (being acquainted with, etc.).

noster, -tra, -trum [prob. nos (nom. plur.) + ter], possess. adj. pron., our, ours. — In plur., our men (the Romans), our forces.

nota, -ae [GNO (know) + ta], F., a mark, a brand.

notitia, -ae [noto- + tia], F., acquaintance with, knowledge.

notus, -a, -um, p. p. of nosco.

novem [unc. reduced case-form], indecl. num. adj., nine.

Noviodūnum, -ī [Celtic, New town], N.: 1. A town of the Bituriges, on the Loire.— 2. A town of the Hædui.— 3. A town of the Suessiones.

novitās, -ātis [novŏ- + tas], F., novelty, strangeness, strange character.

novus, -a, -um [?, cf. Eng. "new"], adj., new, novel, fresh: res novae, a change of government, revolution.
— novissimus, -a, -um, superl., latest, last: agmen (the rear, the last to come into the fight).

nox, noctis [NOC (in noceo, harm) + tis], F., night: multa nocte, late at night.

noxia, -ae [NOC (in noceo, harm) + unc. term.], F., harm, crime, guilt. nūbēs, -is [NUB (cf. nubo) + ea], F., a cloud.

nūbilus, -a, -um [nubi- (cf. nubes) + lus], adj., cloudy. — Fig., dark, gloomy.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus [akin to nubes, cloud], 3. v. n., veil one's self (of a bride), be married, marry (of the woman).

nūdātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nudo. nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nudō-], 1. v. a., lay bare, expose, strip.—

 v. a., lay bare, expose, strip. — Less exactly, clear (murum defensoribus).

nūdus, -a, -um [?, root (akin to naked) + dus], adj., naked, bare, unprotected, exposed.

nūllus, -a, -um [ne-ullus], adj., not any, no, none, not one. — As noun, no one. — non nūllus, some. — Plur. as noun, some, some persons.

num [pron. NA, cf. tum], adv., interr. particle, suggesting a neg. answer, does, is, etc., it is not, is it? and the like.— In indir. question, whether.

numen, -inis [NU (in nuo, nod) + men], N., (a nod), will, power. Hence, divinity.

numero, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [numero-],
1. v. a., number, reckon, count,
pay.

numerus, -i [†numő- (cf. nummus, Numa) + rus], M., a number, number: totidem numero, the same number; impedimentorum (quantity, i.e. number of pack-horses); ad numerum, to the required number; aliquo numero, of some account.—Also, musical measure, time, tune, music, strains.

Numidae, -ārum [?], M. plur., the

Numidians, a people of northern Africa, famous as archers.

Numidia, -ae [?], F., a country of northern Africa.

Numidicus, -a, -um [Numida- + cus], adj., of Numidia, Numidian.

nummus, -i [akin to numerus], M., a coin: pro nummo, for coin.

numquam (nun-) [ne-umquam]. adv., never. — Less exactly, not.

nunc [num-ce, cf. hic], adv., now (emph., as an instantaneous now, cf. iam, unemph. and continuous): nunc...nunc, now...now, at one time... at another.

nuntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nuntio. nuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nuntiō-], I. v. a., send news, report, make known, announce: nuntiatum est ei ... ne (he was ordered not to, etc.).

nuntius, -i [†novent- (p. of †noveo, be new) + ius], M., (newcomer), a messenger. Hence, news, a message: nuntium mittere (send word).

nuper [for novi-per, cf. parumper], adv., lately, recently, not long ago.

nuptiae, -ārum [nupta- + ius], F. plur., a wedding, a marriage.

nūptus, -a, -um, p. p. of nubo.

nūsquam [ne-usquam], adv., nowhere, in no case (almost equal never).

nūto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nutŏ-],
1. v. n., nod, totter, waver.

nūtrīx, -icis [akin to nutrio, nurse], F., a nurse.

nūtus, -ūs [NU + tus], M., a nod, a sign: ad nutum, at one's beck, at one's command. O

**ō**, interj., oh! 0!

ob [unc. case-form], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., (near), against. Hence, on account of, for: ob eam rem, for this reason, on this account.—In comp., towards, to, against, over.

ð

obdūco, dūcere, dūxī, ductus [obduco], 3. v. a., lead towards, lead against: fossam (throw out, in a military sense, carry along). — Also, cover, overspread.

obductus, -a, -um, p. p. of obduco.
obicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectus [obiacio], 3. v. a., throw against, throw in the way of, present, throw up (against the enemy, etc.), set up, offer, expose. — obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lying opposite, lying in the way.

obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of obicio. obitus, -ūs [ob-itus, cf. obeo], M., a going to. — Esp., a going to death (cf. obire mortem), destruction, annihilation, death.

obiūrgo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-iurgo, scold], 1. v. a., blame, chide, rebuke.
oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of offero.

oblino, -linere, -lēvī, -litus [oblino, smear], 3. v. a., smear, besmear, defile.

oblique [old case-form of obliques], adv., obliquely, slanting.

obliquus, -a, -um [ob-†liquus, cf. li(c)mus, aslant], adj., slanting, winding.

oblitus, -a, -um, p. p. of oblino. oblītus, -a, -um, p. p. of obliviscor. oblīvīscor, -līvīscī, -lītus [oþtlivi- (cf. liveo) + sco], 3. v. dep., (grow dark against?), forget.

obnoxius, -a, -um [ob-noxius], adj., (guilty towards). Hence, liable to, exposed to.

oboedio, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [obaudio, hear], 4. v. n., give ear to. Hence, obey, be subject.

obruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus [ob-ruo, fall], 3. v. a., bury, overwhelm, cover.

obscūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [obscurō-, dark], 1. v. a., darken, obscure, hide.

obsecto, -are, -avi, -atus [manufactured from ob sacrum (near or by some sacred object)], 1. v. a., entreat, adjure, implore.

obsequentia, -ae [obsequent-(yielding) + ia], F., compliance, deference: nimia obsequentia, too ready compliance.

obsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [obsequor, follow], 3. v. dep., yield, submit, comply.

observatus, -a, -um, p. p. of observo.

observo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [observo], I. v. a., (be on the watch towards?), guard, maintain, keep, observe: dies natalis (keep, celebrate).

obses, -idis [ob-tses, cf. praeses and obsideo], C., (a person under guard), a hostage.

obsessus, -a, -um, p. p. of obsideo. obsideo, -sidere, -sedi, -sessus [obsedeo], 2. v. a., (sit down against), blockade, beset, guard, besiege.

obsidio, -onis [ob-sidio- (reduced)

+ 0], F., a siege (cf. obsessio), a blockade: obsidione liberare (from besetting enemies). — Also, the art of siege.

obsistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p. [ob-sisto], 3. v. n., withstand, resist, oppose.

obstinātē [old case-form of obstinatus, fr. obstino, persist], adv., persistently.

obstructus, -a, -um, p. p. of obstruc.

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus [ob-struo, pile], 3. v. a., block up, barricade, obstruct.

obtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [obtego, cover], 3. v. a., cover over, protect.

obtempero, -are, -avi, -atūrus [obtempero], I. v. n., (conform to), comply with, submit to, yield to, attend.
obtestātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ob-

obtestor, .ārī, .ātus [ob-testor, cf. testis, witness], 1. v. dep., implore (calling something to witness).

testor.

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [obteneo], 2. v. a., hold (against something or somebody), retain, maintain, occupy, possess: provinciam (have control of as prætor).

obtingo, -tingere, -tigi, no p. p. [ob-tango, touch], 3. v. n., fall (to one's lot), befall, happen.

obtrectătio, -onis [obtrectă- (disparage) + tio], F., detraction, disparagement.

obtrectător, -ōris [obtrectă- (disparage) + tor], M., a detractor, a traducer.

obtuli, perf. of offero.

obvenio, -venire, -veni, -ventūrus [ob-venio], 4. v. n., come to, come in one's way, fall to (by lot).

obviam [ob viam], adv., in the way of, before, to meet (any one): obviam venire, come to meet; obviam ire, go to meet; obviam facti, having met.

obvius, -a, -um [ob-via (decl. as adj.)], adj., met in the way, met: obvia ferre, offer, present.

obvolūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of obvolvo.

obvolvō, -volvere, -volvī, -volūtus [ob-volvo, roll], 3. v. a., wrap up, cover.

occāsio, -onis [ob-tcasio, cf. oc-cido], F., opportunity.

occāsus, -ūs [ob-casus, cf. occido], M., a falling, a setting (of the sun): solis (the sunset, the west). — Also, a downfall.

occido, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus [ob-cado], 3. v. n., fall, be slain, set: sol occidens, the west.

occido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [obcaedo, cut], 3. v. a., kill, slay. massacre: occisi, p. p. as noun plur., the slain.

occisus, -a, -um, p. p. of occido.
occultātiō, -ōnis [occulta- + tio],

F., concealment.

occultē [old case-form of occultus], adv., secretly.

occulto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [occulto-], 1. v. a., conceal, hide.

occultus, -a, -um [p. p. of occulo], as adj., concealed: in occulto, in secret; in occulto seese continere, keep themselves hidden.

occumbo, -cumbere, -cubui, no

p. p. [ob-cumbo, lie down], 3. v. n., fall, die, perish.

occupātiō, -ōnis [occupā- + tio], F., occupation (engagement in business), business affairs (of business): occupationes tantularum rerum, engagement in such trifting matters.

occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. of occupo.
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†occupōor occup- (ob and st. akin to capio)],
1. v. a., seize, take possession of, seize
upon, occupy (only in military sense):
regna (usurp); occupati in (engaged,
employed).

occurro, currere, curri (cucurri?), cursurus [ob-curro], 3. v. n., run to meet, meet, come upon, find, fall in with. Hence in pregnant sense, thwart, baffle, frustrate: eo (run to meet an enemy); ad animum (occur).

Oceanus, -i [Gr.], M., the ocean (with or without mare).

ocellus, -ī [dim. of oculus], m., a little eye, a pretty eye.

ocius [N. of ocior, swifter], adv., more quickly, sooner.

Octea, -ae [?], F., a greave, a legging, orig. of metal. — Later, a legging, a gaiter.

ocreatus, -a, -um [ocrea- (as if verb-st.) + tus], adj., furnished with leggings, gaitered.

Octāviānus, -ī [octaviö- + anus], M., Octavianus, Octavian, a surname of Octavius Cæsar after his adoption by Julius Cæsar.

octāvus, -2, -um [octo+vus, poss. toctau + us], num. adj., eighth.

octingenti, -ae, -a [st. akin to octo + centum], num. adj., eight hundred.

octō [?], indecl. num. adj., eight.
Octōber, -bris, -bre [octo- + ber, cf.
saluber], adj., of October, the eighth
month.

octodecim [octo-decem], indecl. num. adj., eighteen.

octoginta [octo +?], indecl. num. adj., eighty.

octoni, -ae, -a [octo + nus], adj., eight at a time, eight each, eight.

oculus, -ī [tocŏ- (cf. AK, see) + lus], M., the eye: sub oculis, in sight, before the eyes; ex oculis, from sight.
ōdī, ōdisse [perf. of lost verb

(with pres. sense), akin to odium], def. v. a., hate, detest.

odiosus, -a, -um [odio- + osus], hateful, odious, offensive.

odium, -ī [VADH (spurn) + ium], N., hatred.

odor, -ōris [OD (smell) + or], M., a perfume, perfumery, spices.

odorātus, -a, -um [p. p. of odoro], adj., sweet-smelling, fragrant.

offendo, fendere, fendi, fensus [ob-fendo], 3. v. a. and n., dash against, hit, hurt. Hence, offend, be displeasing.

offensus, -a, -um, p. p. of offendo.
offero, offerre, obtuli, oblatus [obfero], irr. v. a., (bring to), throw in
one's way, offer: se hostibus (throw
themselves upon); se morti (expose
one's self to); quos sibi oblatos
(placed in his power).

officina, -ae [for opificina (opific+ ina)], F., a workshop, a shop.

officiosus, -a, -um [officio- + osus], adj., dutiful, obliging, polite.

officium, -ī [ob-†facium, cf. beneficium], N., (doing something to one),

I 22

a service, performance of a duty, official duty, business. - Transf., a duty, a favor, allegiance, an obligation.

offirmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-firmo], I. v. a., keep fixed.

oleum, -ī [akin to olea, olive], N., oil.

olim [case-form of ollus (ille)], adv., once upon a time, once, formerly.

olla, -ae [?], F., a pot, a jar, a

omen, -inis [?], N., an omen, a portent.

omitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [ob-mitto], 3. v. a., let go by, disregard, neglect, say nothing of, not mention: consilium (leave untried, neglect).

omnīno [abl. of tomninus (omni-+ nus)], adv., altogether, entirely, only, utterly, in all, at all, any way, only just, whatever (with negatives).

omnis, -e [?], adj., all, the whole of (as divisible or divided, cf. totus as indivisible or not divided). - In sing., every (without emphasis on the individuals, cf. quisque, each, emphatically); celerius omni opinione (of any one); omni tempore, on all occasions, always; omnes preces, every form of prayers; omnibus rebus, everything, everything else; per omnia, etc. (through nothing but, etc.). - In plur. as a short expression for all others; omnia, all things, everything.

onerārius, -a, -um [oner- (as st. of onus) + arius], adj., for burdens: naves (transports).

onero, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [oner- (as st. of onus)], I. v. a., load: celeritas onerandi (of ships), facility of loading.

onus, -eris [unc. root + us], N-, a burden, a load, a freight, a cargo. -Abstractly, weight. - Esp.: tanta onera navium, ships of such weight.

onustus, -a, -um [onus- + tus], adj., laden, loaded.

opera, -ae [oper- (as st. of opus) + a (F. of us)], F., work, pains, attention, aid, help, agency: operam navare, do one's best; operam dare, devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains, give attention, listen; opera uti (services, help, etc.); quorum opera, through whose means, agency; tuā operā, by your means, on your account.

operio, -perire, -perui, -pertus [obpario, procure], 4. v. a., cover over, conceal.

opinio, -onis fopino- (cf. necopinus) + o], F., notion, expectation : celerius omni opinione, quicker than any one would suppose; opinio virtutis (reputation for, etc.); tanta opinio huius belli (impression); also, opinio timoris (display, cause for an impression); speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praebere, make a show and give an impression of being combatants; nomen atque (reputation); ut fert illorum opinio, as their notion is; opinione praecipere, to anticipate.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, no p. p. [nounst. from ob and st. akin to portus, cf. opportunus], 2. v. impers., it behooves, it ought, it is best.

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidō- (reduced) + anus], adj., of a (the) town. — Plur. as noun, the townspeople.

oppidum, -ī [ob-†pedum (a plain?)], N., (the fortified place which, according to ancient usage, commanded the territories of a little state), a stronghold, a town (usually fortified).

oppignerō, -āre, no perf., no p. p.
[ob-pignero, cf. pignus, a pledge],
1. v. a., pledge, pawn.

oppleo, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [obpleo, fill], 2. v. a., fill up, fill.

opplētus, -a, -um, p. p. of oppleo. oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [ob-pono], 3. v. a., set against, oppose (something to something else): novem oppositis legionibus, with nine legions opposed to the enemy.—oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., opposed, opposing, lying in the way, opposite.

opportune [old case-form of opportunus], adv., opportunely, seasonably.

opportunitas, -atis [opportuno- + tas], F., timeliness, fitness (of time or circumstance), good luck (in time or circumstance), favorable chance, convenience (of a means of fortification).

opportunus, -a, -um [ob-portunus, cf. portus, harbor, and Portunus], adj., (coming to harbor?), opportune, advantageous, lucky.

oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. of oppono.

oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of opprimo.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [ob-premo], 3. v. a., (pressagainst), overwhelm, crush, overpower, overtake (surprise), oppress.

oppūgnātio, -ōnis [oppugnā-+tio], F., a siege (of actual operations, cf. obsidio, blockade), besieging, an attack (in a formal manner against a defended position).

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [obpugno, fight], 1. v. a., attack (formally, but without blockade), lay siege to, carry on a siege, assail (a defended position).

tops (cf. Ops, the goddess), opis [?], F., help, aid. — Plur., resources, means, strength, blessings, wealth. — Also, help (from several sources).

optimās, -ātis [optimō- + as], adj., of the best. — Esp., plur. as noun, the better classes, the aristocracy, all who held opinions opposed to the common people.

optime, superl. of bene.

optimus, -a, -um [op (cf. ops?) + timus (cf. finitimus)], superl. of bonus.

opto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [topto- (p. p. of op, cf. ops, optimus)], 1. v. a., choose, desire, wish.

opulentus, -a, -um [op- (as if opu-) + lentus], adj., rich, fine, splendid, sumptuous.

opus, operis [OP + us], N., work, labor (as accomplishing its purpose, cf. labor, as tiresome). — In concrete sense, a work, works, fortifications: natura et opere munitus (by nature and art); operum atque artificiorum (trades, handicrafts). — In abl., magno (quanto) (tanto) opere, very

much, very, greatly, urgently, how much, so much, so, so earnestly; often as one word, magnopere, quantopere, tantopere.

opus [same word as preceding], N. indecl., need, necessity: regi opus est, a king needs; haud mihi opus, I have no desire.

ōra, -ae [?], F., a shore, a coast.

orāculum, -ī [orā- (speak) + culum], N., (an announcement). — Esp. of the gods, a response, a prophecy, an oracle.

ōrātiō, -ōnis [orā- (speak) + tio], F., speech, words, talk, address, discourse, argument, a remark.

örātor, -ōris [orā- (speak) + tor], M., a speaker, an ambassador, an envoy, an orator.

orbis, -is [?], M., a circle (a circular plane): orbis terrarum (orbis), the circle of lands, the whole world.

— Less exactly, a hollow square (in military language), a circle.

orbitās, -ātis [orbŏ- (bereaved) + tas], F., bereavement.

Orcus, -i [perh. akin to arceo, enclose], M., a god of the lower world identified with Pluto, Death.—
Also, the world below, Hades.

Orcynia, -ae [Teutonic or Celtic], F., see Hercynius.

ordino, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ordin-], 1. v. a., set in order, arrange, adjust.

ordo, -inis [akin to ordior, begin (i.e. a web)], M., a series, a row, a tier, a rank (of soldiers), a grade (of centurions, as commanding special ordines of soldiers, also the centurions themselves), an arrangement, an order, a body (senatorius): perturbatis ordinibus, the ranks being broken; ratio ordoque agminis, the plan and arrangement of the march; ordines servare, to keep their places (of soldiers, also of anything laid in rows or tiers, preserve the arrangement, not deviating from it).

orior, orīrī, ortus [?], 3. (and 4.) v. dep., arise, spring up: orta luce, at daybreak. — Fig., begin, start, spring from, arise, be started, have its source. — oriēns, entis, p. as adj., rising: sol (sunrise, the east).

örnämentum, -ī [ornā- + mentum], N., an adornment. — Fig., an honor (an addition to one's dignity), a source of dignity.

ornātus, -a, -um, p. p. of orno.

örnö, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [unc. nounst.], 1. v. a., adorn, equip, furnish.

— Fig., honor. — örnātus, -a. -um, p. p. as adj., furnished, adorned, well-equipped, honored. — Also, eminent, illustrious.

oro, -are, -avī, -atus [or- (as st. of os, mouth)], 1. v. a. and n., speak.

Esp., pray, entreat, beg, sue for.

ortus, -a, -um, p. p. of orior.
ortus, -ūs [OR (in orior) + tus],

M., a rising.

8, oris [?], N., the mouth, the face.

8, ossis [?], N., a bone.

ōsculor, -ārī, -ātus [osculō-, mouth],
1. v. dep., kiss.

Osismi, -orum [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Gaul (in Brittany).

ostendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [obs-tendo], 3. v. a., (stretch towards) present, show, point out, make known, state, declare: 80 (discover, unmask).

ostentő, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ostentő-], 1. v. a. freq., display, exhibit.

ostium, -i [perh. akin to os, mouth], N., a door, an entrance.

ötium, -ī [?], N., repose, inactivity,

quiet (freedom from disturbance): per otium, at ease.

ovis, -is [cf. Eng. "ewe"], F., a sheep. ovum, -i [perh. avi- + um] (belonging to a bird?), N., an egg.

P

P., for Publius.

pābulātiō, -ōnis [pabulā- + tio], F., a foraging, getting fodder.

pābulātor, -ōris [pabulā- + tor], m., a forager.

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus [pabulō-], 1. v. dep., forage, gather fodder.

pābulum, -ī [PA (in pasco, feed) + bulum], N., fodder (for animals, including the stalk as well as the grain), green fodder.

pācātus, -a, -um, p. p. of paco.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pac-, in pax, peace], I. v. a., pacify, subdue. — pā-cātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., peaceable, quiet, subject (as reduced to peace).

pactum, -i [N. p. p. of paciscor, agree], N., (a thing agreed), an agreement, an arrangement. Hence, a method, a way (of doing anything): quo pacto, in what way, how.

Padus, -ī [Celtic], M., the Po, the great river of Northern Italy (Cisalpine Gaul).

paedagogus, -i [Gr.], M., a governor, a preceptor, a pedagogue (a slave to guide and attend children).

Paemānī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., people of the Belgians.

paene [?], adv., almost, nearly.

paenitet, -ēre, -uit [paenitö- (perh.
p. p. of verb akin to punio, punish)],

2. v. a. impers., it repents (one), one repents, one regrets.

pāgus, -ī [PAG (in pango) + us (with unc. connection of ideas)], M., a district, a canton (cf. vicus, a smaller collection of dwellings).

palam [unc. case-form, cf. clam], adv., openly, publicly, without concealment: palam facere, make clear, disclose.

palea, -ae [perh. akin to palor, wander], F., chaff.

palliatus, -a, -um [pallio + atus], adj., dressed in a pallium, with the surplice on.

pallium, -I [?], N., a cloak, a mantle. — Late, pallium sacrum, a priest's robe, a surplice.

palma, -ae [Gr.], F., the palm (of the hand). — Also, a palm-branch (symbol of victory), a prize (of victory).

pālus, -ī [PAG (fix, cf. pango) + lus], M., a stake, a bar, a post.

palūs, -ūdis [?], F., a march, a swamp.

palüster, -tris, -tre [palud- + tris], adj., marshy, swampy.

Pamphylius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., Pamphylian, of Pamphylia, a country of Asia Minor.

pando, pandere, pandi, passus [akin to pandus, bent], 3. v. a.,

spread out (perh. orig. of the hands, bending back the wrist): passis manibus, with outstretched hands.

pār, paris [perh. akin to paro, pario (through the idea of barter or exchange)], adj., equal, alike, like, right, proper: par ac, equal with; intervallum (the same). — Esp., equal in power, a match for. — As noun, M., an equal, N., a pair. See refero.

parātus, -a, -um, p. p. of paro.

parcē [old case-form of parcus], adv., sparingly, frugally, cautiously.

parco, parcere, peperci (parsi), parsūrus (parcitūrus) [akin to parcus], 3. v. n., spare, preserve. — Esp., save alive: parcendo, by economy, by frugality.

parcus, -a, -um [akin to parco], adj., sparing, frugal.

parēns, -entis [PAR (in pario) + ens], C., a parent.

parentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [parent-], 1. v. n., make a funereal offering (to deceased relatives, esp. parents). Hence, avenge (making an offering of the wrong-doer).

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus [parō- (cf. opiparus)], 2. v. n., be pre-pared, affear, obey, submit to, yield to, follow.

pario, parere, peperi, partus (pariturus) [PAR, procure (perh. orig. by barter, cf. par)], 3. v. a., produce, bring forth, bear.

Parīsiī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe around modern Paris, whose town Lutetia takes its modern name from them, cf. Rheims (Remi), Trèves (Treveri). pariter [pari- (as st. of par) + ter], adv., equally.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [parō-, cf. opiparus and pareo], 1. v. a., procure, provide, prepare, begin, be about to, get ready for (bellum used concretely for the means of war), arrange. — parātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., ready, prepared: animo parati (with mind resolved), resolute, determined; paratus in armis, armed for war.

parochus, -ī [Gr.], M., a purveyor.

— Late, a priest, a vicar.

Parrhasius, -ī [Gr.], m., a famous Greek painter.

pars, partis [PAR + tis (reduced), akin to portio, and perh. to par, through idea of barter], F., (a dividing), a portion, a part, a share, a party (also plur.). - Often of position or direction merely, side, direction, region: una ex parte, on one side; ex utraque parte, on both sides; sinistra pars, the left flank; pars fluminis (bank). — Fig.: omnibus partibus, in all respects; in neutris partibus, on neither side, neutral. -Esp.: ad inferiorem partem fluminis, down the river; ab inferiore parte fluminis (further down, etc.). - partim, acc. as adv., in part, partly, some . . . others.

Parthi, -ōrum [Gr.], M. plur., the Parthians, a warlike people of Scythia, famous as archers.

partim, see pars.

partior, -īrī, -ītus [parti-], 4. v. dep., divide: partitis temporibus. alternately.

partītus, -a, -um, p. p. of partior.

parum [akin to parvus, perh. for parvum], adv., not very, not much, not sufficiently, but little.

parvulus, -a, -um [parvö- + lus], adj., small, slight, insignificant: ab parvulis, from infancy.

parvus, -a, -um [perh. for paurus, cf. paucus], adj., small, slight, little.

passer, -eris [?], M., a sparrow.

passim [acc. of passis (PAD (in pando, spread) + tis)], adv., in all directions, all about.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of pando. passus, -a, -um, p. p. of patior.

passus, -ūs [PAD (in pando) + tus], M., (a spreading of the legs), a stride (of both feet), a step, a pace (esp. as a measure, about five Roman feet): mille passuum, a Roman mile, five thousand feet; passum retinere, stop.

pāstor, -ōris [pas- (as if root of pasco) + tor], M., a shepherd, a herdsman.

patefació, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [noun-st. akin to pateo + facio], 3. v. a., lay open, open, open up.

patefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of patefacio.

patefio, pass. of patefacio.

pateo, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., be extended, lie open, spread, extend, be wide, be open. — patēns, -entis, p. as adj., open, exposed.

pater, tris [PA (in pasco?) + ter], M., a father. — Plur., ancestors.

paternus, -a, -um [pater (as st. of pater) + nus], adj., paternal, of one's father.

patienter [patient- + ter], adv., patiently.

patientia, -ae [patient- + ia], F., patience, endurance.

patior, patī, passus [?], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure, allow, permit: vim tempestatis (endure, stand).—patiens, -entis, p. as adj., enduring, patient, contented.

patria, see patrius.

patrimonium, -[ [patri- (as if st. of pater) + monium], N., an ancestral estate, a patrimony.

patrius, -a, -um [patr- + ius], adj., of a father, ancestral, of one's fathers: hoc patriumst, this is a father's (duty). — patria, -ae, fem. as noun (sc. terra), fatherland, native country, country.

patronus, i [fr. pater (for form cf. colonus) + nus], M., a patron, a protector.

patruus, -i [pat(e)r- + vus?], M., an uncle (on the father's side; cf. avunculus, on the mother's).

paucitās, -ātis [paucŏ- + tas], F., small number.

paucus, -a, -um [PAU (cf. paulus and parvus) + cus], adj., almost always in plur., few, some few (but with implied only in a semi-neg. sense).

paulātim [paulō- (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of †paulatis (†paulā + tis)], adv., little by little, a little at a time, gradually, few at a time.

paulisper [paulis (abl. plur. of paulus?) per], adv., a little while.

paululum [acc. of paululus, dim. of paulus], as adv., a very little.

paulus, -a, -um [?, akin to paucus], adj., small, little, a trifle. — Esp., paulum, acc. as adv., a little, a short

Digitized by Google-

distance, somewhat, a little way, a little while. — paulo, abl. as adv., a little, slightly.

Paulus, -ī [paulus], M., a Roman family name. See Aemilius.

pauper, -eris [?], adj., poor, in humble circumstances, lowly.

paveo, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [prob. †pavo- (cf. pavidus)], 2. v. n., be in terror, be afraid, tremble.

pavidus, -a, -um [prob. †pavő-(cf. paveo) + dus], adj., terrified, frightened, in alarm.

pavimentum, -i [pavi- (beat) + mentum], N., (a beaten surface), a pavement.

pāx, pācis [PAC (fix) as st.], F., (a treaty?), peace, favor.

pecco, -are, -avi, -aturus [?], 1. v. n., go wrong, commit a fault, err.

pecten, -inis [pect- (as root of pecto, comb) + en], M., a comb.— Esp., a sley or reed, by which the thread is pushed into place in a loom.

pectus, -oris [perh. pect- (as root of pecto, comb) + us, from the rounded shape of the breast, cf. pectinatus], N., the breast.

pecūnia, -ae [†pecunŏ- (pecu-(cattle) + nus, cf. Vacuna) + ia], F., money (originally cattle), a sum of money, wealth.

pecus, -oris [PEC (tie?) + us], N., cattle (especially sheep and goats): pecore vivere (flesh of cattle). — Plur., cattle, flocks, flocks and herds.

pedālis, -e [ped- + alis], adj., of a foot (in thickness), a foot thick.

pedes, -itis [ped- (as if pedi) + tis (reduced)], c., a footman, a footsoldier. — Collectively, the infantry

pedester, -tris, -tre [pedit- + tris], adj., of infantry, of persons on foot: itinera (journeys on foot, marches, land routes); proclium (on land); copiae (the foot, the infantry).

peditātus, -ūs [pedit- + atus, cf. consulatus], M., foot, infantry.

Pedius, -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Pedius, a nephew of Cæsar and a legatus under him in Gaul. He sided with Augustus, and was afterwards made consul by Augustus's patronage.

pēior, see malus.

pēius, see male.

pellis, -is [?], F., a hide, a shin (either on or off the body of an animal).

pello, pellere, pepuli, pulsus [?], 3. v. a., strike, beat, drive, drive out, expel, defeat, repulse, route. — Also, affect, impress.

Pēlūsium, -ī [Gr.], N., a city of Egypt.

pendeō, -ēre, pependī, no p. p. [†pendō-(pend + us, cf. pendulus)], 2. v. n., hang, be suspended, hang one's self.

pendő, pendere, pependí, pēnsus [?], 3. v. a., hang, weigh, weigh out. Hence (since money was earlier weighed, not counted), pay, pay out.

— Esp. with words of punishment, pay (a penalty), suffer (punishment, cf. dare and capere).

Pēnelopē, -ēs [Gr.], F., the wife of Ulysses.

penes [prob. acc. of st. in -os, akin

129

to penitus], prep. with acc., in the power of.

penetro, -are, -avī, -atus [penetro-(pene + trus, cf. penes, penitus)], I. v. a., (set within). - Without immediate object, penetrate, enter, go in.

penitus [st. akin to penes, penus, etc., + itus, cf. antiquitus], adv., far within, deeply, entirely, utterly: penitus ad extremos finis (clear to, all the way to).

pēnsilis, -e [pensŏ- (cf. pendo) + ilis], adj., hanging.

pepuli, see pello.

1 per [unc. case-form], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., through, along, in, over, among. - Fig., through, by means of (cf. ab, by, directly), by the agency of, on account of. - Often accompanied by the idea of hindrance: per anni tempus potuit, the time of the year would allow; per aetatem non poterant (on account of) .- Of time, through, for: per singulas noctis, every night. - Often in adv. expressions: per concilium, in council; per cruciatum, with torture; per vim, forcibly; per casum, by chance; per ludicrum, in sport.

<sup>2</sup> per [prob. a different case of same st. as 1 per], adv. in comp., very, exceedingly.

peractus, -a, -um, p. p. of perago. perago, -agere, -ēgī, -āctus [1 perago], 3. v. a., conduct through, finish, accomplish: conventus (finish holding); rem divinam (perform).

peragro, -are, -avī, -ātus [†peragro-(cf. peregre, abroad)], 1. v. a., wander through, traverse.

perangustus, -a, -um angustus], adj., very narrow.

percipio, -cipere, -cepī, -ceptus [1 per-capio], 3. v. a., take in (completely), learn, acquire, hear, feel. -Esp. of harvests, gather. Hence, fig., reap: fructum victoriae.

percontātiō, -onis [percontā- (inquire) + tio], F., inquiry, inquiries (though sing. in Latin).

percontor, -āri, -ātus [ † percontŏ-(per-contus, a pole)], I. v. dep., inquire, make inquiries, investigate.

percurro, -currere, -cucurri (-currī), -cursus [1 per-curro], 3. v. n. and a., run along, run over or through.

percussor, -oris [per-tquassor, cf. percutio], M., a murderer, an assas-

percussus, -a, -um, p. p. of percutio.

percutio, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus [1 per-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., hit, strike, run through.

perdisco, -discere, -didicī, p. p. [1 per-disco], 3. v. a., learn thoroughly, get by heart.

perditus, -a, -um, p. p. of perdo. perdo, perdere, perdidī, perditus [1 per-do], 3. v. a., destroy (cf. interficio), ruin, lose, waste. - perditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., ruined, desperate, abandoned.

perdūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [1 per-duco], 3. v. a., lead through, lead along, conduct, bring over, carry along, make (fossam). - Fig., prolong, win over, bring.

peregrīnus, -a, -um [†peragrŏ- (cf. peregre, abroad) + inus], adj., foreign, from abroad.

pereō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus [¹pereo, go], irr. v. n., perish, be killed (in battle), be dead.

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [¹perequito, cf. eques], 1. v. a. and n., ride over (or around).

perexiguus, -a, -um [<sup>2</sup> perexiguus], adj., very small.

perfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of perficio.

perfero, ferre, tuli, latus [1 perfero], irr. v. a., carry through or over: opinionem (spread among); consilium (carry over); famam (bring).

— Also, bear through (to the end), endure, suffer, submit to.

perficio, ficere, fēcī, fectus [1 perfacio, make], 3. v. a., accomplish, complete, finish, make (complete).

perfidia, -ae [perfidő- (false) + ia], F., perfidy, treachery, faith-lessness.

perfio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [¹per-fio], I. v. a., blow over.

perfractus, -a, -um, p. p. of perfringo.

perfringo, fringere, frēgī, frāctus [¹per-frango], 3. v. a., break through, break in pieces, shatter, wreck.

perfuga, -ae [¹per-†fuga (FUG + a, cf. scriba)], M., a refugee, a fugitive, a deserter.

perfugiö, -fugere, -fügi, no p. p. [1 per-fugio], 3. v. n., run away, flee (to a place), escape to.

perfugium, i [1per-fugium, cf. perfugio], N., a place of refuge, refuge.

perfunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of perfungor.

perfungor, -fungī, -fūnctus [¹perfungor], 3. v. dep., fulfill, perform (to the end).

Pergamenus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of Pergamum (a city of Mysia), Pergamenian. — Plur. as noun, the Pergamenians.

pergo, pergere, perrexi, perrectus (?) [1 per-rego, keep straight], 3. v. n., (keep one's direction?), keep on, continue to advance, advance, proceed.

periclitor, -ārī, -ātus [†periclită-(as if p. p. of †periculor, cf. periculum)], 1. v. dep., try, make a trial, be exposed, be put in peril, be in peril.

periculõsus, -a, -um [periculŏ- + osus], adj., dangerous.

periculum (-clum), -ī [†perī- (cf. experior, try) + culum], N., a trial, an attempt. Hence, peril, danger, risk.

peritus, -a, -um [†peri- (cf. experior, try) + tus], p. p. as adj., (tried), experienced, skilled, skilful.

perlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of perfero. perlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of perlego.

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus [¹per-lego], 3. v. a., read through, read (aloud).

perluo, -luere, -lui, -lütus [¹per-luo], 3. v. a., wash all over. — Pass. (as reflex.), bathe.

perlüströ, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [¹perlustro], 1. v. a., (wander all through). Hence, examine carefully, survey.

permaneo, -manere, -mansī, -mansūrus [¹per-maneo], 2. v. n., remain (to the end), continue, hold out, persist: in eadem libertate (continue to live, etc.).

permissus, -ūs [per-missus (cf. permitto)], M., leave, permission.

permissus, -a, -um, p. p. of permitto.

permitto, -mittere, -misi, -missus [¹per-mitto], 3. v. a., (give over), grant, allow, give up, entrust: fortunas (trust); summam imperi (place in the hands of, etc.).

permotus, -a, -um, p. p. of permoveo.

permoveo, -movere, -movi, -motus [1 per-moveo], 2. v. a., move (thoroughly), influence, affect. — permotus, -a, -um, p. p., much affected, much influenced, overcome.

permulceo, -mulcere, -mulsi, -mulsus [1 per-mulceo], 2. v. a., smooth over. Hence, soothe, pacify.

permultus, -a, -um [2 per-multus], adj., very many, very much.

permūniō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [¹permunio], 4. v. a., fortify thoroughly.

munio], 4. v. a., fortify thoroughly.

pernegō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [1per-

nego], I. v. a., deny stoutly.

perniciës, -ēī [?, akin to nex, death], F., destruction, ruin, death.

perniciosus, -a, -um [pernicie-+osus], adj., ruinous, dangerous, pernicious.

perpaucus, -a, -um [2per-paucus], adj. — Plur., very few, but very few, only a very few.

perpendiculum, -ī [perpendi- (st. of perpendo, hang down) + culum], N., a plumb line: ad perpendiculum, perpendicularly.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus [1 perpatior], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure.

perpetuus, -a, -um [1 per-† petuus (PET (aim) + vus)], adj., (keeping on

through), continuing, continued, continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent, perpetual; paludes (continuous); in perpetuum, forever, permanently. — perpetuo, abl. as adv., forever, constantly, continually.

perquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus [¹per-quaero], 3. v. a., search for, inquire about.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [¹per-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., break through, force one's way through, break, force a passage.

perruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of perrumpo.

Persa, ae [Gr.], M., a Persian.

— Also, the name of a puppy.

— Plur., the Persians.

persaepe [2 per-saepe], adv., very often, many times.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus [¹per-scribo], 3. v. a., write out (in full).

persecutus, -a, -um, p. p. of persequor.

persequor, -sequi, -secutus [1persequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue, attack. — Also, avenge, punish.

Persēs (-a), -ae [Gr.], M., a king of Macedonia, conquered by Aemilius Paulus, B.C. 168.

Persicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., Persian.

persona, -ae [1per-tsona (cf. sonus, sound)], F., a mask. Hence, a character, a personage, a person.

personō, -āre, -uī, -itus [¹per-sono],

1. v. n., resound, reëcho.

perspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of perspicio.

perspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus

[1 per-tapecio], 3. v. a., see through, see, inspect, examine. — Also, see thoroughly. — Fig., see clearly, see, understand, learn, observe, find, discover.

perstö, -stäre, -stiti, -stätürus [¹per-sto], 1. v. n., stand firm, per-sist, remain firm, be firm.

persuadeo, -suadere, -suasi, -suasus [1 per-suadeo, advise], 2. v. a. and n., induce, persuade: hoc volunt persuadere (make people believe). — Pass. (impers.), be persuaded (dat. of person), be satisfied, believe.

pertaedet, -taedere, -taesum est [2per-taedet], 2. v. impers., it wearies, it disgusts. — pertaesus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., weary of, disgusted with.

pertaesus, -a, -um, p. p. of pertaedet.

perterreo, -terrere, -terrui, -territus [¹ per-terreo]. 2. v. a., terrify, alarm: perterritus equitatus (put in a panic); timore perterritus, struck with terror.

perterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of perterreo.

pertināciter [pertinaci- (obstinate) + ter], adv., persistently, perseveringly.

pertineo, -tinere, -tinui, no p. p. [1 per-teneo], 2. v. n., (hold a course towards), tend, extend. — Fig., have to do with, tend, pertain, belong: eodem illo ut, etc., (have the same purpose, look in the same direction).

pertuli, see perfero.

perturbātiō, -ōnis [perturbā-+tio], F., disturbance, alarm, panic, demoralization.

perturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of perturbo. perturbo, are, avi, atus [1 perturbo, disturb], 1. v. a., disturb, throw into confusion, confuse, throw into disorder, alarm, terrify.

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus [¹per-vagor].

1. v. dep., roam about, scatter.

pervenio, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [¹per-venio], 4. v. n., (come through to), arrive at, get as far as, reach, come. — Fig., arrive: ad hunc locum (come to this point); pars (of property, come, fall).

pēs, pedis (PAD, tread, as st.], M., the foot. — Also, as a measure, a foot. — Esp.: pedem referre, draw back, give way; pedibus procliari (ire) (on foot); ad pedes desilire (to the ground, from on horseback, etc.); pedibus aditus, approach by land.

pestilens, entis [akin to pestis, plague], adj., unhealthy, infected.

petītiō, -ōnis [peti- (as st. of peto) + tio], F., (a secking), a canvas, (for office), a candidacy.

peto, -ere, -ivi (-ii), -itus [PAT]. 3. v. a. and n., (fall?, fly?), aim at, attack, make for, try to get, seek, seek for, go to get, go to. Hence, ask, request, look for, get: fugam (take to).

Petrocorii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe on the Garonne (Perigord).

petulāns, -antis [p. of †petulo (cf. peto)], adj., wanton, impudent, saucy.

Pharnaces, -is [Gr.], M., a king of Pontus, son of Mithradates, conquered by Cæsar, B.C. 47.

Pharsalicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj, of Pharsalus or Pharsalia.

Philippus, -I [Gr.], M., Philip (V), king of Macedonia, father of Perses. He formed an alliance with Hannibal.

Philomēla, -ae [Gr.], F., a daughter of Pandion, king of Thebes. She was changed into a nightingale.

philosophus, -ī [Gr.], m., a philosopher.

Phrygia, -ae [Gr.], F., a country of Asia Minor.

pīca, -ae [?], F., a magpie.

Pictones (Pect-), -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (Poitou).

pictor, -ōris [PIG (in pingo, paint), + tor], M., a painter.

pictura, -ae [†pictu- (cf. pingo, paint) + ra (F. of rus)], F., a picture.

pietās, ātis [piō-(dutiful) + tas], F., filial affection, affection (for the gods or one's country, etc.), patriotism, piety.

pignus, -oris [prob. pang- (as root of pango, fasten) + us], N., a pledge, a security.

pīlum, -ī [?], N., a pestle.—Also, a javelin (the peculiar weapon of the Roman legion, with a heavy wooden shaft about 4 ft. long, and an iron head on a long iron shank, making a missile more than 6 ft. long): pilum murale, a heavier missile of the same kind for use in siege works.

pilus, -ī [?], M., a hair.

pīlus, -ī [pilum], M., a century (of soldiers, a name applied to indicate the rank of centurions, see centurio). — Also, a centurion (of a particular rank): primus pilus.

pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictus [PIG], 3. v. a., paint.

pinguis, e [?], adj., fat.

pinna, -ae [ = penna, feather (PET (f/y) + na)], F., an artificial parapet (of osier or the like, run along the top of a wall).

pīnus, -ī (-ūs) [akin to pix, pitch], F., a pine tree, a pine. — Fig., a ship, a vessel.

**pīpiō,** -āre, no perf., no p. p. [?], 1. v. n., peep, chirp.

pīrāta, -ae [Gr.], M., a pirate.

Pīrūstae, -ārum [?], M. plur., a tribe of Illyria.

**piscis**, -is [?], a fish. — Collectively, fish.

Pīsō, -ōnis [pisō- (pease) + 0], M., (a man with a wart like a pea?, cf. Cicero), a Roman family name. — Esp., Piso, an Aquitanian (probably enfranchised by a Roman of the name).

pius, -a, -um [?], adj., dutiful, pious, devout, good.

pix, picis [?], F., pitch.

placeo, -ēre, -ui, -itus [†placo-(cf. placo and placidus)], 2. v. n., please. — Esp. in third person, it pleases (one), one likes, one determines, one decides. — placens, -entis, p. as adj., pleasing, agreeable.

placidus, -a, -um [†placŏ- (cf. placŏ- ) + dus], adj., calm, quict, placid, mild.

plāco, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [st. akin to placeo], 1. v. a., pacify, appease.

plaga, -ae [Gr.], F., a blow, a wound.

plānē [old case-form of planus], adv., flatly, clearly, entirely, utterly, absolutely.

plānities, -ēī [plano- + ties, cf. -tia], F., a plain.

plānus, -a, -um [unc. root + nus], adj., flat, level, even: carinae planiores (less deep, less rounding).

plaustrum, -ī [PLAUD (clap) + trum], N., a wagon, a cart.

plēbs (plēbēs), -is (-ēī) [PLE (in plenus) + unc. term. (cf. turba)], F., the populace, the multitude, the common people.

plēnus, -a, -um [PLE (in pleo, fill) + nus], adj., full: luna.

plērumque, see plerusque.

T. 1

plērusque, -aque, -umque [PLE (in pleo, fill) + rus-que (cf. -pletus, plenus)], adj. only in plur., most of, very many. — plērumque, N. acc. sing. as adv., generally, usually, for the most part, very often.

plumbum, -ī [?], N., lead. — plumbum album, tin.

plūrimus, see multus.

plūs [akin to pleo, fill], see multus.

pluteus, -ī [?], M., a mantelet, a cover (movable, for defence). — Also, a bulwark, a defence, a breastwork.

Plūtōn (-ō), -ōnis [Gr.], M., Pluto, the god of the lower world, brother of Jupiter and Neptune.

pōculum, -ī [root (or st.) Po- (in potus, drink) + culum], N., a drink-ing-cup.

poena, -ae [perh. †povi- (PU) + na (cf. punio, punish)], F., a penalty (paid). Hence, a punishment (suffered).

Poenus, -a, -um [borr. fr. Gr.] adj., Carthaginian. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Carthaginians.

poēta, -ae [Gr.], m., a poet.

pollex, -icis [?], M., the thumb (with or without digitus).

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus [†por-(cf. portendo) -liceor, bid], 2. v. dep., offer, promise (voluntarily): liberaliter (made liberal offers).

pollicitătio, -onis [pollicită- + tio], F., an offer, a promise.

pollicitus, -a, -um, p. p. of polliceor.

Pollūx, -ūcis [Gr.], M., twin brother of Castor, son of Jupiter and Leda, worshipped as a divinity, along with his brother, by the Greeks and Romans.

Polybius, -ī [Gr.], M., a celebrated Greek historian.

Polyphēmus, -ī [Gr.], M., the Cyclops whose eye was put out by Ulysses.

Pompēiānus, -a, -um [Pompeiö-+ anus], adj., of Pompey or Pompeius.

Pompēius, ·I [†pompe- (dialectic form of quinque) + eius], M., a Roman gentile or family name. — Esp.: 1. Cnæus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey the Great, the rival of Cæsar, consul with Marcus Crassus in B.C. 58. — 2. Son of 1.

Pomptinus, -a, -um [?], adj., Pomptine. — Esp., Pomptinae paludes, the Pomptine (or Pontine) marshes, near the coast of Latium.

pondus, -eris [PEND (in pendo, weigh) + us], N., weight, quantity.
pono, ponere, posui, positus [prob.

tpor-sino (cf. polliceor)], 3. v. a., lay down, place, put: posita tollere (things laid up, consecrated); tirocinium (spend); castra (pitch); praesidium (station, but see below).—
Fig., place, lay, make, depend on: in fuga praesidium; spem salutis in virtute (find, found, seek).—positus, -a, -um, p. p., situated, lying, depending on: posita est, lies; positum est in, etc., depends on, etc.

pons, pontis [?], M., a bridge.

ponticulus, -ī [ponti- (as st. of pons) + culus, dim. end.], M., a little bridge.

Ponticus, -a, -um [Pontŏ- + cus], adj., of Pontus, Pontic.

pontifex, icis [ponti- (as st. of pons) ffex (FAC as st.)], M., (from early functions of priests), a high priest, a pontiff.

Pontus, -ī [Gr.], M., a country of Asia Minor, south of the Euxine Sea.

Popīlius, ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Caius Popilius, a Roman ambassador to Antiochus the Great.

populāris, e [populō- + aris], adj., of the people. — Masc. as noun, a fellow-countryman, a comrade.

populor, -ārī, -ātus [populo-, unc. connection], I. v. dep., ravage, devastate.

populus, -ī [root in pleo, fill, redupl. + us], M., (the full number, the mass), a people (in its collective capacity), a nation, a tribe (as opposed to individuals): populus Romanus (the official designation of the Roman state).

populus, -ī [?], F., a popular tree, a popular.

por-, port- [akin to pro], obsolete prep., only in comp., forth.

porcus, -ī [?], M., a swine, a hog, a pig.

porrēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of por-

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [†por- (cf. polliceor) -rego], 3. v. a., stretch forth, hold out, stretch out at length: porrecta loca pertinent (stretch out in extent).

porta, -ae [POR (go through) + ta], F., (way of traffic?), a gate, a door, a passage.

portendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [portendo, hold out], 3. v. a., presage, foretell.

portentum, -ī [N. p. p. of portendo], N., an omen, a portent.

porticus, -ūs [porta- + cus], F., a colonnade, a portico.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [porta-?], 1. v. a., carry (perh. orig. by way of traffic), bring, convey.

portorium, -i [?, porta (reduced) + orium (N. of orius), perh. orig. †portor + ius], N., (gate-money? or carrier's money?), a duty (an impost), a toll.

portus, -ūs [POR (cf. porta) + tus], M., (a place of access), a harbor, a haven, a port.

posco, poscere, poposci, no p. p. [perh. akin to prex, prayer], 3. v. a., demand (with some idea of claim, stronger than peto, weaker than flagito), require, claim.

positus, -a, -um, p. p. of pono. possessio, -onis [†por-†sessio (cf.

obsessio)], F., possession, occupation.
— Concretely (as in Eng.), possessions, lands (possessed).

possideo, -sidere, -sedi, -sessus [†por-sedeo], 2. v. a., (settle farther on?), occupy (in a military sense), possess (lands, of a people), hold possession of.

possum, posse, potui [pote- (for potis) -sum], irr. v. n., be able, can, etc.: plurimum posse, be most powerful, have very great influence; tantum potest, has so much weight, power, influence; multitudine posse, be strong in numbers; equitatu nihil posse, have no strength in cavalry; quicquid possunt, whatever power they have; fieri posse, be possible; quam maximum potest, the greatest possible.

41

post [?, prob. abl. of st. akin to postis (cf. ante, antes, rows, and antae, pilasters)], adv. and prep. with acc., behind, after, afterwards: post diem tertium, three days after; post se, in their rear; post hunc, next to him.

posteā [post ea], adv., afterwards.

posteāquam [postea quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after (only with clause), since.

posterus, -a, -um [post- (or st. akin) + terus (orig. compar.)], adj., the next, later: postero die, the next day; in posterum, the next day.

— Plur. as noun, posterity. — postrēmus, -a, -um, superl., last. — postrēmō, abl. as adv., lastly, finally, at last.

posthāc [post hac (prob. abl. or instr.)], adv., hereafter.

postibi [post ibi, there], adv., here upon, afterwards.

postpono, -ponere, -posuf, -positus [post-pono], 3. v. a., place behind, postpone: omnibus rebus postpositis, disregarding everything else.

postpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of postpono.

postquam [post quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after.

postrēmus, see posterus.

postrīdiē [†posteri- (loc. of posterus) -die], adv., the next day: postridie eius diei, the next day after that.

postulātum, -ī [N. p. p. of postulo], N., a demand, a requirement, a request, a claim.

postulo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], I. v. a., claim (with idea of right, less urgent than posco), ask, request, require, demand.

Postumus, I [postumus], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Postumus, to whom one of Horace's odes is addressed.

potens, entis [p. of possum as adj.], adj., powerful, potent: homo (influential); potentiores, compar. plur. as noun, the powerful, men of influence.

potentia, -ae [potent- + ia], F., power (political influence), authority (not official or legal).

potestās, -ātis [potent- + tas], F., power (official, cf. potentia, and civil, not military, cf. imperium), power (generally), control, ability, opportunity, chance: sui potestatem facere, give a chance at them (him), give an opportunity to fight them

(kim); se potestati alicuius permittere (surrender, etc.); consistendi potestas erat nulli (chance, possibility); discedendi potestatem facere (give permission, etc.); imperium aut potestas, military or civil power; deorum vis ac potestas, the power and dominion of the gods.

potior, potiri, potitus [poti-, cf. potis, able], 4. v. dep., become master of, possess one's self of, get possession of, get control of: oppidum (capture).

potior, -us, -oris (compar. of potis], adj., preferable. — potius, N. acc. as adv., rather, preferably. potissimum, N. acc. of superl. as adv., rather than any one (anything) else, chiefly, especially, most of all.

potitus, -a, -um, p. p. of potior.

prae [unc. case-form of same st. as pro], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., before, in comparison with.

— In comp., before others, very, before, at the head of.

praeacūtus, -a, -um [prae-acutus (p. p. of acuo)], p. p. as adj., sharpened to a point, pointed.

praebeo, -ēre, -uī, -itus [praehabeo], 2. v. a., (hold before one), offer, present, yield, furnish, show (diligentiam): munimenta, laetitiam (furnish, and so afford, make); aurēs praebete, give attention.

praecaveo, -cavere, -cavi, -cautus [prae-caveo], 2. v. n., take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one's guard.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [prae-cedo], 3. v. a., go before, precede.

praeceps, -cipitis [prae-caput],

adj., headlong, in haste: locus pracceps, a steep incline.

praeceptor, -ōris [prae-captor, cf. praecipio) + tor], M., a teacher, an instructor.

praeceptum, -ī [p. p. of praecipio], N., an instruction, an order.

praecipio, -cipere, -cepī, -ceptus [prae-capio], 3. v. a., take beforehand, anticipate. — Also, order, give instructions, direct.

praecipito, āre, āvi, ātus [praecipit-], i. v. a., throw headlong: se (plunge headlong).

praecipuē [old case-form of praecipuus], adv., especially, chiefly.

praeclārus, -a, -um [prae-clarus], adj., very bright. — Fig., very fine, very beautiful, splendid.

praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [prae-claudo], 3. v. a., (close in front of some one or something), shut off, barricade.

praecurro, -currere, -cucurri (-curri), -cursūrus [prae-curro], 3. v. n.,
run on before, run ahead, hasten on
before, hasten in advance, hurry on
before: celeritate (get the start of,
etc.).

praeda, -ae [prob. prae-thida (fr. root of -hendo, seize + a)], F., booty, prey, plunder.

praedicātiō, -ōnis [prae-dicatio, cf. praedico], F., an assertion, a boast, praise.

praedico, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†praedico (or st. akin, from prae with DIC)], I. v. a. and n., make known (before one), proclaim, assert, describe, boast, vaunt one's self.

praedīco, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus

[prae-dico], 3. v. a., foretell, predict, warn.

praedō, -ōnis [praeda- + o], M., a robber, a freebooter, a pirate.

praedor, -ārī, -ātus [praeda], 1. v. dep., plunder, take booty.

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [prae-duco], 3. v. a., lead (etc.) before: fossam (make in front).

praefectus, -a, -um, p. p. of praeficio. — As noun, see praeficio.

praefero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [praefero], irr. v. a., place before, carry before (one), prefer: se alicui (show one's self better than).

praeferox, -ocis [prae-ferox], adj., very violent, insolent.

4;

praeficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [prae-facio], 3. v. a., put before, place in command of, set over. — prae-fectus, p. p. as noun, a captain (esp. of cavalry), a commander, an officer, a governor.

praefigō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus [prae-figo], 3. v. a., fix in front, set on the edge (of something).

praefixus, -a, -um, p. p. of praefigo.

praelambō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [prae-lambo], 3. v. a., lick (taste) beforehand.

praemitto, -mittere, -misī, -missus [prae-mitto], 3. v. a., send forward, send on, send ahead.

praemium, -I [prae-temium (EM in emo, take, the orig. meaning, + ium)] (taken before the general distribution or disposal of booty?), N., a reward, a prize, distinction (as a reward or prize).

praeoccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [prae-

occupo], I. v. a., take in opposition or beforehand: vias (close against one), preoccupy.

praeparo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [praeparo], I. v. a., prepare beforehand.

praepōnō, pōnere, -posuī, -positus [prae-pono], 3. v. a., put before, prefer.

praerumpo, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [prae-rumpo], 3. v. a., break off (at the end or in front). — praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., precipitous, rugged.

praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praerumpo.

praesaepe, -is [prae-saepe (akin to saepio, inclose], N., a fold, a stall, a stable.

praesaepiō (-sēp), -saepīre, -saepsī, -saeptus [prae-saepio], 4. v. a., hedge in, wall off.

praesaeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praesaepio.

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus [prae-scribo], 3. v. a., (write down beforehand), prescribe, order, direct, give directions.

praesēns, entis, p. of praesum.

praesentia, -ae [praesent- + ia], F., the present moment: in praesentia, for the moment, at the moment.

praesentio, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus [prae-sentio], 4. v. a., see beforehand, find out in time, find out (beforehand).

praesertim [as if acc. of †praesertis (SER, in sero (join) + tis)], adv., especially, particularly.

praeses, -idis [prae-ses (SED as st.)], M. and F., a protector, a guardian.

praesideo, sidēre, sēdī, no p. p. [prae-sideo, sit], 2. v. n., preside over.

praesidium, -ī [prae-†sidium (SED + ium), or praesid- + ium, cf. obsidium], N., (a sitting down before), a guard, a garrison, a force (detached for occupation or guard): intra praesidia, within the lines or intrenchments. — Fig., protection, assistance, support: praesidio litterarum (with the assistance of, etc.); in fuga praesidium ponere, seek safety in flight.

praesto, -stare, -stitī, -status (-stitus) [prae-sto], I. v. a. and n., stand before, be at the head, excel, be superior: praestat, it is better.—Also, causatively, (bring before), furnish, display: officium (discharge, perform); stabilitatem (afford, possess).

praesum, -esse, -fuī [prae-sum], irr. v. n., be in front, be at the head of, be in command, command.—praesēns, -entis, p. as adj., present, immediate: praesentibus principibus, in the presence of the leaders.

praesūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus [prae-sumo, take], 3. v. a., foresee, take for granted, anticipate.

praetendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [prae-tendo, hold out], 3. v. a., stretch out, hold before.

praeter [compar. of prae (cf. inter)], adv. and prep. with acc., along by, past, beyond. — Fig., except, beside, contrary to, besides.

praetereā [praeter ea (abl.)?], adv., furthermore, besides.

praetereo, -ire, -ir, -itus [praetereo], irr. v. a. and n., go by, pass by, pass over. — praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., past.

praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. of praetereo.

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [praeter-mitto], 3. v. a., let go by, let slip, omit, neglect, pass by.

praeterquam [praeter-quam], conjunctive adv., except, besides.

praetor, -ōris [prae-titor (1, go, + tor)], M., (a leader), a commander. — Esp., a prator, one of a class of magistrates at Rome. In early times two had judicial powers, and the others regular commands abroad. Later all had judicial powers during their year of office, but like the consuls (who were originally called prætors) they had a year abroad as proprætors.

praeuro, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [praeuro], 3. v. a., burn at the end (in front); praeustae stipites (burnt at the point, to harden them).

praeūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of praeuro.

praevalidus, -a, -um [prae-validus], adj., very strong.

praeveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [prae-venio], 4. v. n., come before, precede, anticipate, outstrip, prevent.

prandium, -ī [?], N., breakfast, luncheon.

prāvus, -a, -um [?], adj., crooked.

— Fig., wrong, vicious, bad.

precor, -ārī, -ātus [prec-], 1. v. dep., pray to, supplicate, entreat.

premo, premere. pressi, pressus

[?], 3. v. a., press. — Esp., press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress, load (ratem). — Also, burden, overwhelm, weigh down. — Also, cover (nubibus), obscure. — Also, curb, restrain: se ipsi, crowd, impede, embarrass each other.

pressus, -a, -um, p. p. of premo. pretium, -i [?], N., a price, cost, value.

tprex, precis (dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire) [?], F., a prayer, an entreaty, an imprecation.

pridem [prae-dem, cf. idem], adv., long ago, long since.

prīdiē [loc. of st. of pro (prae?) -die, cf. postridie], adv., the day before.

primipilus [primo-pilus], M., the first centurion. See centurio and pilus.

primō [abl. of primus], adv., at first (opposed to afterwards, cf. primum).

prīmōrēs, -um [primō- + unc. term., perh. compar. on analogy of prior], M. plur., chiefs, nobles, leaders.

primum [acc. of primus], adv., first (in order of incidents, opposed to next, etc.), in the first place: cum primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible.

prīmus, -a, -um, see prior.

princeps, -ipis [primö- (reduced)
-tceps (CAP as st.)], adj., (taking the
lead), first, chief, foremost, leading.
— Often as noun, leading man,
leader, chief man, chief.

principatus, -ūs [princip- + atus, cf. consulatus], M., foremost position,

first place, highest place, the lead (in power and influence among states), leadership.

prior, -us, -ōris [compar. of st. of pro], adj., former, before, first: priores, those in front; non priores inferre (not the first to, etc.). — prius, N. as adv., before (see also priusquam). — prīmus, -a, -um [prae+mus], superl., first: pars domus (front); primos civitatis (the best men); in primis, especially. See primo and primum.

priscus, -a, -um [prius- + cus], adj., ancient, early.

pristinus, -a, -um [prius-tinus, cf. diutinus], adj., (of former times), old, former: pristinus dies, the day before.

prius, see prior.

priusquam [prius-quam], conjunctive adv., earlier than, sooner than, before. Often separated.

privatim [as if acc. of †privatis (priva- + tis)], adv., privately, as private persons (opposed to officially): de suis privatim rebus (their own private affairs).

prīvātus, -a, -um [p. p. of privo, deprive], adj., (destitute of official character), private, personal.

pro [for prod, abl. of st. akin to prae, prior, etc.], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., in front of, before. Hence, in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of, on account of: nihil pro sano, nothing prudent.— Also, in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, according to, considering, in return for, for.— In comp., before, forth, away, for, down (as falling forward).

141

pro [?], interj., O! ah! alas! probatus, -a, -um, p. p. of probo. probitās, -ātis [probo- + tas], F., honesty, integrity.

probo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [probo-], 1. v. a., (make good, find good), approve, test, prove, show, be satisfied with, favor (a plan), adopt (a measure).

probus, -a, -um [pro- + bus, cf. morbus], adj., superior, good, honest.

procedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessus [pro-cedo], 3. v. n., go forward, advance, proceed: longius (go to a distance); contractus (be concluded); nox (pass).

proceritas, -ātis [procero- (tall) + tas], F., height, tallness.

proclamo, -are, -avī, -atus [proclamo], 1. v. a., call, cry out, exclaim.

procul [†proco-, "off" (pro + cus) + lus (reduced, cf. simul)], adv., at a distance (not necessarily great), at some distance, afar, from afar, at one side, remote from.

procumbo, -cumbere, -cubui, no p. p. [pro-cumbo, lie], 3. v. n., fall, (forward), fall (generally), sink down, lie down (for rest). - Less exactly, incline, slope, lean.

procuratio, -onis [procura- + tio], F., charge, management, control.

procuro, -are, -avi, -atus [procuro], I. v. a., care for, have charge of, attend to.

procurro, -currere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursūrus [pro-curro], 3. v. n., run forward, charge, rush out.

prodigium, -ī [poss. pro-†digium (DIC + ium, cf. digitus)], N., an omen, a portent.

proditio, -onis [pro-tditio, cf. prodo], F., a giving away, treason, treachery.

proditor, -oris [pro-dator (cf. prodo)], M., a traitor, a betrayer.

proditus, -a, -um, p. p. of prodo.

prodo, -dere, -didi, -ditus [pro-do], 3. v. a., (give forward), give forth, publish, betray (give away), transmit, hand down: memoria proditum, told in tradition, handed down.

produco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus [pro-duco], 3. v. a., lead forth, lead out, draw out, bring out (iumenta), draw up (troops). - Fig., protract, prolong.

productus, -a, -um, p. p. of produco.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus [proelio-], 1. v. dep., fight (in war).

proelium, -ī [?], N., a battle (a single encounter, great or small), a contest, an engagement, a general engagement, a skirmish: committere (engage, join battle, risk a battle, begin an engagement, begin the fight, fight).

profectio, -onis [pro-factio (cf. proficiscor)], F., a setting out, a departure, retreat (the special idea coming from the context), starting, evacuation.

profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficio.

profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficiscor.

profero, -ferre, -tuli, -latus [profero], irr. v. a., bring forth, bring out, produce.

proficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectūrus [pro-facio], 3. v. n., (make way forward), advance (cf. proficiscor). — Fig., gain advantage ("get on"), gain (much or little), accomplish (something): satis ad laudem profectum est, enough has been done for glory; plus multitudine telorum proficere (have the advantage in).

proficiscor, ficisci, fectus [proffaciscor (cf. proficio)], 3. v. dep., (make way forward).—Esp., start, leave, depart, set out, withdraw, march out, go out, proceed, come out, sail out: quo proficiscimur, whither we are going; unde erant profecti, whence they had come.

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus [profateor, confess], 2. v. dep., declare publicly; offer one's self, volunteer, offer: nomen (volunteer).

profligatus, -a, -um, p. p. of profligo.

profiligo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [profiligo- (pro-filigus, FLIG + us)], I. v. a., (dash to the ground). — Esp., put to rout.

profluo, -fluere, -fluxi, no p. p. [pro-fluo], 3. v. n., flow forth, rise.

profugio, -fugere, -fugi, -fugiturus [pro-fugio], 3. v. n., flee forth, flee, escape, make one's escape.

profugus, -a, -um [pro-fugus (FUG + us)], adj., flying. — As noun, a fugitive.

profundus, -a, -um [pro-fundus, bottom], adj., deep. — Neut. as noun, the deep.

profuturus, -a, -um, f. p. of prosum.

prognatus, -a, -um [pro-(g)natus], p. p. as adj., sprung from: prognati ex, descendants of.

Prognē, -ēs [Gr.], F., a daughter of Pandion, king of Thebes. She was changed into a swallow.

progredior, -gredi, -gressus [progradior, step, go], 3. v. dep., go forward, march forward, march out, come out, advance. — Also, fig., proceed, go: amentia longius (go).

progressus, -a, -um, p. p. of progredior.

prohibeo, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus [pro-habeo], 2. v. a., hold off, keep off, repel, stop, prevent, restrain, hinder from, forbid.— Also (by a change of relation of the two things concerned), protect: aliquem ab omni militum iniuria (keeping one protected from the assailant).

proicio, -icere, -ieci, -iectus [proiaclo], 3. v. a., throw forward, throw away, throw, cast (down, cf. pro), abandon: proicetae, casting themselves; se ex navi (leap, spring).

proinde [pro-inde], adv., (from there forward), therefore, hence.

promineo, -minere, -minui, no p. p. [pro-tmineo (cf. minor, project)], 2. v. n., lean forward, lean over.

promiscue [old case-form of promiscus], adv., in common.

promissus, -a, -um, p. p. of promitto.

promitto, -mittere, -misi, -missus [pro-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go forward), let grow (of the hair): promisso capillo sunt, they wear long hair; pro-missa barba, with flowing beard.— Also, promise.

promo, -ere, prompsi, promptus [pro-emo, take], 3. v. a., take out, bring forth. — promptus, -a, -um,

p. p. as adj., (taken out of the store ready for distribution), ready, quick, active.

promotus, -a, -um, p. p. of promoveo.

promoveo, -movēre, -movī, -motus [pro-moveo], 2. v. a., move forward, advance, push forward.

promptus, -a, -um, p. p. of promo. promunturium (-mon-), -ī [akin to promineo], N., a headland.

prone [old case-form of pronus, leaning], adv., with a slope.

pronuntio, -are, -avī, -atus [pronuntio], 1. v. a., (publish forth), make known, communicate, declare, give orders, make proclamation.

propago, -are, -avi, -atus [†propago-(PAG, in pango, fix)], 1. v. a., propagate (by pegging), extend, enlarge.

propatulus, -a, -um [pro-patulus, open], adj., open in front. Neut. as noun, an open court.

prope [?, akin to pro, cf. procul and proximus], adv. and prep. with acc., near. — Fig., almost, nearly. — Compar., propius, nearer: propius Tiberi. — Superl., proximē, nearest, lately, last.

propello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [pro-pello], 3. v. a., drive away (cf. pro), repulse, rout, dislodge, force back (changing the point of view).

propemodum [prope modum, near the limit], adv., nearly, very nearly.

properē [old case-form of properus, in haste], adv., quickly, hastily.
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [properō-, quick], 1. v. a. and n., hasten, be in haste, make haste.

propinquitās, -ātis [propinquö-+ tas], F., vicinity, a being near, a position near. — Esp., nearness in blood, relationship, a relation (by blood).

propinquus, -a, -um [st. akin to prope (or case-form) + cus], adj., near at hand, near, neighboring. — Esp. by blood, related. — As noun in plur., relatives.

propior, -us, -ōris [compar. of st. of prope], adj., nearer. — proximus, superl. [of st. †procö-, cf. procul], nearest, next, neighboring: bellum, nox (last); e proximo, close at hand. — With force of prep. (cf. prope): proximi Rhenum, nearest the Rhine. — Plur. as noun, the bystanders.

Œ

propono, -ponere, -posui, -positus [pro-pono], 3. v. a., place before, set before, lay before, set up: vexillum (hang out). — Less exactly, offer, propose, put in the way, present (difficulty), make known, state, represent.

propositus, -a, -um, p. p. of propono.

proprius, -a, -um [?, akin to prope?], adj., of one's own: fines (particular); hoc proprium virtutis (a peculiar property, a mark).

propter [prope + ter, cf. aliter, praeter], adv. and prep. with acc., near by. — Also, on account of (cf. "all along of").

proptereā [propter ea (prob. abl. or instr. of is)], adv., on this account.

— With quod, because, inasmuch as. propugnātor, -oris [pro-pugnator (cf. propugno)], M., a defender.



propugno, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [propugno], t. v. n., (rush forward to fight, or fight in front), rush out (fighting), discharge missiles (ex silvis).

propulso, are, avi, atus [propulso (cf. propello)], 1. v. a., repel, keep off, drive off, defend one's self against.

prora, -ae [Gr.], F., the prow (of a ship).

proscribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus [pro-scribo], 3. v. a., advertise, publish (in writing).

prosecutus, -a, -um, p. p. of prosequor.

prosequor, -sequi, -secutus [prosequor], 3. v. dep., pursue, follow (on one's way), escort. — Fig. (from escorting), address, take leave of one (with some kind of attention).

prosilio, -silire, -silui (-ivi), no p. p. [pro-salio], 4. v. n., leap forward, rush out, rush forth.

prospectus, -a, -um, p. p. of prospicio.

prospectus, -ūs [pro-spectus (cf. prospicio)], M., outlook, view: in prospectu, in sight; prospectu tenebris adempto, the view cut off by the darkness.

prospere [old case-form of prosperus], adv., favorably, propitiously.

prospicio, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [pro-tspecio], 3. v. a., look forward, look out. — Fig., provide for, take care, look out: prospectum est convivio, the feast was provided for.

prösternö, -sternere, -strävî, -strātus [pro-sterno], 3. v. a., dash to the ground, overthrow (lit. and fig.).—

prostrātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., prostrate.

prostratus, -a, -um, p. p. of prosterno.

prosum, prodesse, profui, profuturus [pro(d)-sum], irr. v. n., be for the advantage of, benefit, avail.

proterreo, -terrere, -terrui, -territus [pro-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten away, drive away in fright.

protinus (-tenus) [pro-tenus, as far as], adv., forward, straight on. Hence, straightway, forthwith, at once, instantly (keeping right on).

proturbatus, -a, -um, p. p. of proturbo.

proturbo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [proturbo, disturb], 1. v. a., drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge.

provectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proveho.

proveho, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus [pro-veho], 3. v. a., carry forward.

— In pass., be carried forth, sail out, set sail: leni Africo provectus (sail with, be driven by).

proventus, -us [pro-tventus, cf. eventus and provenio], M., a growth, an issue (a coming forth), success, a result: in maximo proventu, at the climax.

proverbium, -ī [pro verbo (word) + ium], N., a common saying, a proverb.

provideo, -videre, -vidi, -visus [pro-video], 2. v. a., foresee, see beforehand, take care, make provision, provide, arrange beforehand, take precautions.

provincia, -ae [†provinco- (vincas root of vinco (conquer) + us)

+ ia], F., (office of one extending the frontier by conquest in the field), office (of a commander or governor), a province (in general), a function. — Transf., a province (governed by a Roman magistrate). — Esp., The Province (of Gaul); so with nostra, ulterior, citerior (the province, as opposed to the unconquered parts of Gaul).

provincialis, -e [provincia- + lis], adj., of a province. — Esp., of the province (of Gaul).

provisus, -a, -um, p. p. of provideo.

provoco, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pro-voco, call], 1. v. a., call forth, challenge, invite.

provolo, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [provolo], 1. v. n., fly forth. — Less exactly, rush forth, rush out, fly out (of cavalry, etc.).

proximē, see prope.

proximus (-umus), see propior. prūdēns, entis [pro-videns], adj., wise, intelligent, sagacious.

prüdentia, -ae [prudent-, + ia], .
F., foresight, discretion, wisdom, strategy.

Prūsiās (-a), -ae [Gr.], m., a king of Bithynia, to whom Hannibal fled for refuge.

psittacus, -ī [Gr.], M., a parrot.
Ptolemaeus, -ī [Gr.], M., Ptolemy,
the name of several kings of Egypt.

publice [old case-form of publicus], adv., publicly, in the name of the state, as a state, on behalf of the state, by the state: publice iurare (for the people, making the oath bind them).

pūblico, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [publico-], I. v. a., (make belong to the people), confiscate. — Also, make public, open to the public.

publicus, a, -um [populo- + cus], adj., of the people (as a state), of the state, public: consilium (a state measure, a public measure, action by the state, action by general consent); res publica, the commonwealth, the state, the interests of state, public business; relatis in publicum cornibus (publicly displayed); mulieres in publicum procurrere (abroad into the streets).

Pūblius, -ī [prob. populŏ- + ius, cf publicus], M., a Roman prænomen.

puella, -ae [puerō- + la], F., a girl, a maiden.

puellāris, -e [puella- + aris], adj.,
of a girl, a girl's.

puer, -ī [?], M., a boy. — Plur., children (of either sex); a pueris, from childhood.

puerilis, -e [puero- (reduced) +
ilis], adj., of a child: aetas (of
childhood).

pueritia, -ae [puerŏ- + tia], F., boyhood, childhood.

puerulus, -î [puerŏ- (reduced) + ulus, dim. end.], M., a little boy.

pugil, -ilis [†pugi- (PUG, in pungo, punch) + lis (reduced)], M., a boxer, a pugilist.

pugillaris, e [pugillo- (a small handful) + aris], adj., (that can be held in the hand). — Masc. plur. as noun (sc. libelli), writing tablets.

pugiō, -ōnis [†pugi- (PUG, in pungo, punch) + o], M., a short dagger, a poniard.

pügna, -ae [PUG (in pugno) + na], F., ("fisticuffs"), a fight, a battle (less formal than proelium): ad pugnam, for fighting; genus pugnae (of fighting).

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pugna-], 1. v. n., fight, engage. — Often impers. in pass., pugnatum est, etc., an engagement took place, they fought, the fighting continued: pūgnantēs, p. as noun., those engaged.

pūgnus, -ī [PUG (in pungo, punch) as st. + nus], M., a fist.

pulcher (-cer), -chra, -chrum [?], adj., beautiful, handsome, fine. — Fig., fine, noble, splendid.

pulső, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pulső-, cf. pello, strike], 1. v. a. and n., strike, knock at (ianuam).

pulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of pello.

pulsus, -us [PEL (in pello) + tus], M., a stroke, a beat: pulsu remorum praestare (the working, etc.).

pulvis, -eris [?], M., dust.

Pūnicus, -a, -um [Poenō- + cus], adj., Carthaginian, Punic: bellum (of the wars with Carthage).

puppis, -is [?], F., the stern.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†purigō-(purō- + †agus, cf. ago)], 1. v. a., clean, clear. — Fig., excuse, exonerate, free from suspicion, exculpate.

purpureus, -a, -um [purpura- (reduced) + eus], adj., purple, red, crimson.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [putō- (st. of putus, clean)], I. v. a., clean up, clear up. — Esp.: rationes (clear up accounts). Hence alone, reckon, think, suppose.

putrefactus, -a, -um [p. p. of putrefacio, rot], adj., decayed.

Pyrenaeus, -a, -um [?], adj., of the Pyrences Mountains, between France and Spain. — Masc. plur. as noun (sc. montes), the Pyrences.

O

Q., for Quintus.

quā [abl. or instr. (?) of qui], rel. adv., by which (way), where.

quācumque [qua-cumque], rel. adv., wherever.

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a [quadraginta (reduced) + nus], distrib. num. adj., forty each, forty (each often omitted in Eng.).

quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um [quadraginta (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., fortieth.

quadrāgintā [akin to quattuor], indecl. num. adj., forty.

quadringenti, -ae, -a [akin to

quattuor], num. adj., four hundred.

quaero, quaerere, quaesivi, quaesitus [?, with r for original s], 3. v. a., search for, look for, inquire about, inquire, ask, ask for, seek.—quaesita, -ōrum, N. p. p. as noun, earnings, gains.

quaesītus, -a, -um, p. p. of quaero. quaesō, -ere [orig. form of quaero], 3. v. def., ask, beg, pray.

quaestio, onis [quaes (as root of quaero) + tio], F., an investigation: habere de aliquo (examine, as witnesses, usually by torture).

quaestor, -ōris [quaes (as root of quaero) + tor], M., (investigator, or acquirer, perh. both). — Esp., a quastor (the Roman officer who had charge of the finances of an army).

quaestus, -ūs [quaes (as root of quaero) + tus], M., acquisition. — Also, business (for profit).

quālis, -e [quō- (st. of quis) + alis], adj.: 1. Interr., of what sort? what? — 2. Rel. (sc. talis), as, such as.

quam [case-form of quis and qui, cf. tam, nam], adv. and conj.: I. Interr., how?—2. Rel., as, than.—Often with superlatives, as much as possible: quam maximus, the greatest possible; quam maxime, very much; quam celerrime, as quickly as possible; quam primum, as soon as possible.—Also, prīdiē quam, conjunctive phrase, the day before.—See also postquam, posteaquam, priusquam (often separated), which are best translated by a single word.

quamdiū (often written separately), adv.: 1. Interr., how long?

— 2. Rel., as long, as long as (with antecedent omitted). See diu.

quamquam (quan-) [quam quam, cf. quisquis], rel. adv., (however), although, though.

quamvis [quam vis], adv., as you please, however, no matter how, although.

quando [quam + unc. case-form akin to de], adv.: 1. Indef., at any time: si quando, if ever, whenever. — 2. Rel., when, since.

quantus, -a, -um [prob. for quo(root of qui) + vant + us], adj.:

1. Interr., how great? how much?
quantae civitates (how important?).

2. Rel., as great as, as much as:
tantum... quantum, so (as) much
... as; so quanta... tanta pecunia.
quapropter [qua-propter], adv.,
on which account, wherefore.

quā rē, adv. phrase, by which thing, wherefore, therefore, on account of which (circumstance, etc.), why, how.— The relative and interrogative senses are not always

distinguishable.

quartānus, -a, -um [quartō- + anus], adj., recurring on the fourth day. — Fem. as noun (sc. febris), the quartan ague.

quartus, -a -um [quattuor- (reduced) + tus], num. adj., fourth.

quasi [quam (or quā) -si], conj., as if, as it were.

quatio, -ere, quassi (in comp.), quassus [?], 3. v. a., shake.

quattuor [?, reduced plur.], indecl. num. adj., four.

quattuordecim [quattuor-decem], indecl. num. adj., fourteen.

-que [unc. case-form of qui] (always appended to the word or to some part of the phrase which it connects), conj., and. — Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, and in general, and other.

quem ad modum, phrase as adv., how, just as, as.

queo, quire, quivi, quitus [?], 4. v. n. def., be able, can.

quercus, -ūs [?], F., an oak. querēla, -ae [as if querē-, sup-

Digitized by Google

posed st. akin to queror (cf. suadela) + la], F., a complaint, a lament.

queror

queror, queri, questus [?, with r for original s], 3. v. dep., complain, complain of, find fault, find fault with, bewail, lament.

questus, -a, -um, p. p. of queror. qui, quae, quod, cūius [prob. quŏ-+ i (demon.)], rel. pron., who, which, what, that. - Often where a demon. is used in Eng., this, that. -Often implying an antecedent, he who, etc.: ea quae, things which, whatever; qua de causa, for this reason; qui videant, men to see, scouts; qui, and they; habere sese quae, with subjv. (something to, etc.); qui potuissent (men who); qui postularent, to demand; haec esse quae, this was what; paucis diebus quibus (after); idem quod, the same as. quo, abl. as adv., whence, wherefore. - quo, abl. of degree of difference as adv., the (more, less, etc.). - See quis, quod, 2 quo, and 8 quo, also quominus.

qui [old abl. or instr. of quis], adv., how.

quia [case-form of qui (prob. N. acc. plur.)], conj., because.

quicquam, see quisquam.

quicumque, quae-, quod- [quicumque (cf. quisque)], indef. rel. pron., whoever, whichever, whatever.

quidam, quae-, quod- (quid-) [qui-+ dam (case of DA, cf. nam, tam)], indef. adj. pron., a (possibly known, but not identified), a certain, certain, a kind of (referred to as belonging to the class, but not exactly the thing spoken of), a certain man: artificio quodam, a kind of trick; quidam ex suis (one).

quidem [unc. case-form of qui + dem (fr. DA, cf. tandem, idem)], adv., giving emphasis, but with no regular Eng. equivalent, certainly, truly, at least. - Concessive, to be sure. - Adversative, but, however, yet: ne . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either.

quies, -etis [quie- (st. of †quieo, keep quiet, cf. quiesco) + tis (reduced)], F., rest, sleep, repose.

quiēsco, -ere, quievī, quietus (adj.)  $[\uparrow quie-(st. of \uparrow quie-) + sco], 3. v. n.,$ come to rest, rest, repose. - quietus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., at rest, quiet, peaceable, settled, at peace, free from disturbance.

quietus, -a, -um, p. p. of quiesco. quin [qui (abl. or instr. of qui) + ne], interr. conj., how not? and rel., by which not: quin etiam, nay even, in fact. - After negative verbs of hindrance and doubt, so but that, but that, that, from (doing a thing), to (do a thing); non dubito quin, I doubt not that, (also, rarely) I do not hesitate to.

quinam (quis-), quae-, quod-(quid-), cūius- [qui-nam], pron., who? etc. (emph.): quibusnam manibus (with what possible? etc.).

quincunx, -uncis [quinque-uncia, ounce], F., (an arrangement of dots in the form marked on the fiveounce piece of copper, :), a quincunx: in quincuncem dispositis (in quincuncial or alternate order).

quindecim [quinque-decem], indecl. num. adj., fifteen.

quingentésimus, -a, -um [quingenti- + esimus], num. adj., five hundredth.

quingenti, -ae, -a [quinque-centum], num. adj., five hundred.

quīnī, -ae, -a [quinque + nus], distrib. num. adj., five at a time, five (at a time).

quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um [quinquaginta (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., fiftieth.

quinquaginta [quinque + unc. st.], indecl. num. adj., fifty.

- quinque [?], indecl. num. adj., five.

quinquiens (-es) [quinque-+iens], num. adv., five times.

Quintius (Quinc-), -i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. See Flamininus.

quintus, -a, -um [quinque + tus], num. adj., fifth. — Esp. as a Roman prænomen (orig. the fifth born?).

Quintus, -ī, see quintus.

quippe [quid-pe, cf. nempe], adv., truly, no doubt, of course. — Also explanatory, for, since.

Quiris, -ītis [Curi (st. of Cures) + tis], M., a Roman citizen. — Plur., Romans, fellow-citizens.

quis (quī), quae (qua), quid (quod), cūius [st. quī- and quō-]: 1. Interradj. pron., who? which? what? quid est, what's the matter? — Neut. acc. as adv., why?—2. Indef., one, any one, any thing: ne quid, that nothing, that something (after timeo); ne quis, that nobody, let no one, that some one (after timeo); ne quid noceat, not to injure at all: ubi quis, when any one; si quis, if any one.

quisnam, see quinam.

quispiam, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius- [quis-piam (pe-iam, cf. quippe, nempe)], indef. adj. pron., any, any one, anything, some.

quisquam, no fem., quid- (quic-), cūius- [quis-quam], indef. pron. used substantively (cf. ullus), only with negatives and words implying a negative, making a universal negative, any one, anything. — As adj., any.

quisque, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius- [quis-que], indef. adj. pron. (distrib. universal), each, each one, every.— Esp. with superlatives, implying that things are taken in the order of their quality: clarissimus quisque, all the most famous.— With ut and ita a proportion is indicated, in proportion as ... so, the more ... the more.

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid (quidquid), cūiuscūius [quis, doubled], indef. rel. pron., whoever, whatever, every one who, all who.

quivis, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius-[qui-vis], indef. adj. pron., who you please, any one, any whatever (affirmative), any (whatever).

1 quo, see qui.

<sup>2</sup>quo [old dat. of qui], adv.: 1. Interr., whither? what for? why?—2. Rel., whither, into which, as far as (i.e. to what end): quo intrare (which); quo venire, come there; habere quo (have any place to go to, or the like).—3. Indef., anywhere.

<sup>8</sup> quo [abl. of qui], as conj., in order that (with comparatives), so that.

that: magis eo quam quo (than that, than because). — Esp., quō minus, that not, so that not.

quoad [quo-ad], conj., (up to which point), as far as, until, as long as.

quōcirca (or separated) [quo (abl. or dat.) -circa], adv., wherefore.

quod [N. of qui], conj., (as to which), because, inasmuch as, as, in that, as for the fact that, the fact that, that, as for (with clause expressing the action): quod si, now if, but if; quod nisi, but if not.

quo minus (quominus), see <sup>3</sup> quo. quondam [quom- (cum) -dam, cf. quidam], adv., (at a certain time), once, formerly.

quoniam [quom (cum) -iam], conj., (when now), inasmuch as, since, as, seeing that.

1

quoque [?], conj., following the word it affects, (by all means?), also,

too, as well. Cf. etiam (usually preceding).

quoque [old dat. of quisque], adv., in every direction.

quoque, quo with enclitic. quoqueversus, see versus.

quorsum (quorsus) [quo-versus, towards], interr. adv., to what place? whither? what for?

quot [akin to quis], indecl. adj. pron.: I. Interr., how many?—
2. Rel., as many, as many as (with implied antecedent), the number which.

quotannis [quot-annis], adv., (as many years as there are), every year, yearly.

quotienscumque [quotiens- (how often) -cumque], adv., however often, just as often as, whenever.

quotquot [quot doubled], indecl. adj., however many, as many as.

R

radius, -ī [?], M., a ray.

rādīx, -īcis [?], F., a root. — Plur., the roots (of a tree), the foot (of a mountain).

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsus [?], 3. v. a., shave, scrape. — Fig., graze, pass closely, coast along.

rāmosus, -a, -um [ramo- + osus], adj., branching.

rāmus, -ī [?], m., a branch, a bough, a prong (of antlers).

rapiditās, -ātis [rapido- + tas], F., swiftness, rapidity.

rapina, -ae [rapi- (as if st. of rapio) + na (F. of nus)], F., plunder. — Plur., plundering, pillage.

rapio, -ere, -uI, -tus [RAP, cf. rapidus], 3. v. a., snatch, seize, carry off.

rārus, -a, -um [?], adj., thin, scattered, singly, in small bodies (of soldiers), a few at a time, few (as being wide apart), uncommon, rare.

— rārō, abl. as adv., rarely, seldom.
rāsus, -a, -um, p. p. of rado.

ratio, -onis [trati- (ra, in reor, + ti) + 0], F., a reckoning, an account, a roll.—Also, calculation, reason, prudence, terms, a plan, a scheme, science (or art, or knowledge, as systematic), a reason (as consisting in a calculation), a manner, a

method, a consideration, a way. —
Also, a way of thinking, a view, an opinion, a conviction: rationem habere, take an account, take account of, have regard to, take into consideration, take measures, take care of, a mercantile term, cf. account; rei militaris (art, also nature); omnibus rationibus, in all ways, in all respects; proeli (character); rationem habere frumentandi (take measures for, etc.).

ratis, -is [?], F., a raft, a bark, a vessel.

ratus, -a, -um, p. p. of reor.

raucus, -a, -um [ravŏ- (or i, cf. ravus and ravis, hoarseness) + cus], adj., hoarse, roaring (Hadria).

Rauraci, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe on the upper Rhine.

re-, red- [abl. of unc. st., perh. akin to -rus], insep. prep., back, again, away, out, un-. — Esp. implying a giving or taking something which is due, or which creates an obligation by the taking. See recipio, refero.

rebellio, -onis [rebelli- + o], F., a renewal of war, an uprising, a rebellion.

rebello, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-bello], I. v. n., revolt, rebel, renew the war.

Rebilus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. See Caninius.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [re-cedo], 3. v. n., make way back, retire, withdraw, retreat, draw back.

recens, entis [prob. p. of lost verb treceo, be back (cf. recipero)], adj., (?, just coming back?), new, fresh, late.

recenseo, -censere, -censui, -cen-

sus [re-censeo, estimate], 2. v. a., review, inspect (of troops).

receptāculum, -ī [receptā- + culum], N., a retreat, a place of refuge.

receptus, -a, -um, p. p. of recipio. receptus, -ūs [re-captus, cf. recipio], m., a retreat, a way of retreat, a refuge.

recessūrus, -a, -um, fut. p. of recedo.

recido, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [re-cado], 3. v. n., fall again, fall back, fall upon (one after some one else).

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [re-capio], 3. v. a., take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit: misericordiam (admit of); ad se (attach).— With reflex., retreat, fly, return, retire, get off, withdraw, resort: e laboribus (recover).

reclīnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of reclino.

reclinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-clino], I. v. a. and n., lean back, lean over, lean: reclinātus, -a, -um, leaning, reclining.

rēctē [old case-form of rectus], adv., straight, right, rightly: recte factum, well done, a good action.

rēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of rego.

recumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus [re-tcumbo, cf. cubo], 3. v. n., lie down, sink down, fall.

recupero (-cip-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†recipero-, from reco- (cf. recens) + parus (cf. pario)], 1. v. a., get back, recover, regain.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-†causo (cf. excuso)], 1. v. a. and n., (give

an excuse for drawing back), refuse, reject, repudiate, object to, spurn.—
Absolutely, make objections: quin (refuse to); periculum (refuse to incur).

redāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of redigo. redditus, -a, -um, p. p. of reddo.

reddo, -dere, -didī, -ditus [re (red) -do], 3. v. a, give back, restore, pay (something due, cf. re), render, make return: supplicatio (offer).

redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus [re-(red-) -eo], irr. v. n., go back, return, come down again (collis ad planitiem): eodem unde redierat (come); summa (be referred).

redigo, -igere, -egi, -actus [re-(red-) ago], 3. v. a., bring back, reduce, render, bring (in potestatem), make (one thing out of another).

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [re- (red-) emo], 3. v. a., buy back, redeem, purchase, buy, ransom.

redintegrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of redintegro.

redintegro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-(red-) integro], I. v. a., renew (again), restore, revive (spem).

reditus, -ūs [re- (red-) †itus], M., a return.

Redones, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Brittany.

reduco, ducere, duxi, ductus [re-duco], 3. v. a., lead back, bring back, draw back, draw in, extend back, restore.

refero, -ferre, -ttuli, -lātus [refero], irr. v. a., bring back, carry back, return, bring (where something belongs), report. — Esp.: par referre, return like for like; gratiam (make

return, show one's gratitude); pedem (retreat, draw back); se (retreat, retire).

refició, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [refacio], irr. v. a., repair, refresh: se ex labore (rest).

refoveō, -fovēre, -fōvī, -fōtus [refoveo, warm], 2. v. a., restore, revive. refrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of refringo.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus [re-frango], 3. v. a., break away, break in (portas).

refugio, fugere, fügi, fugitürus [re-fugio], 3. v. n., run away, escape, flee back, flee for refuge

rēgīna, -ae [reg- + ina, cf. gallina], F., a queen.

Rēgīnus, -ī [reg- + inus, cf. regina], m., a Roman family name. See Antistius.

regiō, -ōnis [REG + io, but cf. ratio], F., a direction, a part (of the country, etc.), a region, a country, a district: recta regione, see rego; e regione, over against, just opposite. rēgius, -a, -um [reg- + ins], adj.

of a king, a king's, regal, royal.
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [regnō-],
1. v. n., rule, be in power, reign.

regnum, -i [REG + num (N. of -nus)], N., a kingdom, royal power, supreme power, a throne. — Plut., the royal power (of several cases).

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus [akin to rex], 3. v. a., direct, manage, rule, have control of, control. — rēctus, a, -um, p. p. as adj., (directed), straight, right: recta regione, in a straight direction, parallel with. — rēctā, abl. as adv. (sc. viā?), straight, directly.

regredior, -gredī, -gressus (re-gradior, step), 3. v. dep., return, withdraw, retreat.

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [reiacio], 3. v. a., throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off.

rēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of reicio.

relanguesco, ·languescere, ·langui, no p. p. [re-languesco], 3. v. n., languish away, be relaxed, be weakened, be deadened.

relatus, -a, -um, p. p. of refero. relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of relinquo.

religiō, -ōnis [?, re-legio (cf. relego)], F., (the orig. meaning unc.), a religious scruple, a religious observance, the service of the gods, a superstition, a superstitious terror, religion. — Plut., religious matters (of all kinds).

relinquo, -linquere, -līquī, -lictus [re-linquo], 3. v. a., leave behind, leave, abandon. — Pass., be left, remain.

reliquiae, -ārum [reliquö- (reduced) + ia], F. plur., remnants.

reliquus, -a, -um [re-tliquus (LIQ (leave) + us)], adj., left, remaining, the rest, the rest of, the other, other (meaning all other), the others, all other.— Also of time, future, remaining: nihil est reliqui, there is nothing left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt, made the greatest possible speed.

remaneo, -manere, -mānsī, -mānsūrus [re-maneo], 2. v. n., remain behind, remain, stay.

remedium, -ī [as if remedē- (cf. medeor, heal) + ium], N., a remedy.

'rēmex,-igis [remŏ- with unc. term. (prob. †agus)], M., an oarsman, a rower.

Rēmī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgæ about Rheims, which was their capital.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [remig-], I. v. n., row.

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [remigro], I. v. n., move back, return.

remissus, -a, -um, p. p. of remitto.

remitto, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [re-mitto], 3. v. a., let go back, send back, throw back. — Fig., relax, cease to use, give up: remissioribus frigoribus (less intense).

remolléscő, -molléscere, no perf., no p. p. [re-mollesco], 3. v. n., soften away, soften, become feeble.

remoror, -ārī, -ātus [re-moror], 1. v. dep., delay, retard.

remotus, -a, -um, p. p. of removeo. removeo, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [re-moveo], 2. v. a., move back, move away, send away, remove, draw away, get out of the way. — remotus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., far away, remote.

Rēmus, -ī [?], M., one of the Remi. rēmus, -ī [?], M., an oar.

rēnō, -ōnis [?], M., a skin, a pelt. renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-novo, fr. novus, new], 1. v. a., renew.

renuntio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-nuntio], 1. v. a., bring back word, report, proclaim.

renuō, -nuere, -nuī, no p. p. [renuo], 3. v. n., (nod back, a gesture of denial), refuse, decline.

reor, reri, ratus [re- (of res) or st. akin], 2. v. dep., reckon, think, deem.

repello, -pellere, -ppuli, -pulsus [re-pello], 3. v. a., drive back, repel, repulse, refuse, confute: ab hac spe repulsi, disappointed in this hope.

repente [?], adv., suddenly.

repentinus, -a, -um [repente + inus], adj., sudden, hasty. — repentino, abl. as adv., suddenly.

reperio, -perire, -peri, -pertus [repario], 4. v. a., find out, discover, find (by inquiry, cf. invenio).

repertor, -ōris [as if re-partor, cf. reperio], M., a discoverer, an inventor.

repertus, -a, -um, p. p. of reperio. repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus [re-peto], 3. v. a., try to get back, demand back, ask for, seek again, seek. — repētundae, -ārum (with or without pecuniae), F., extortion.

repetundae, see repeto.

repleo, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [repleo], 2. v. a., fill up, fill.

replētus, -a, -um, p. p. of repleo. rēpō, rēpere, rēpsī, rēptus [SERP], 3. v. n., creep, crawl.

repono, -ponere, -posui, -positus [re-pono], 3. v. a., lay by, store away, deposit, keep.

reporto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-porto], I. v. a., carry back, bring back: praemium, victoriam (carry off, win).

repositus, -a, -um, p. p. of repono. repraesentātiō, -ōnis [repraesentā-+ tio], F., (a placing before one), a representation, an instance.

repressus, -a, -um, p. p. of reprimo.

re-primō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [re-premo], 3. v. a., check.

repudio, -are, -avi, -atus [repudio-],

1. v. a., (spurn with the feet, cf. tripudium), spurn, refuse, reject, put away.

repūgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-pugno, fight], I. v. n., resist, oppose.

repulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of repello. reputo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-puto].

1. v. a., reckon up, think over, reflect upon.

res, rei [akin to reor, reckon], F., property, business, an affair, a matter, a thing (in the most general sense), a fact, an occurrence, a circumstance, an event, a case, an action, an act, an undertaking, a scheme. -Often to be translated from the context: veritate rei (statement); quid rei est, what's the matter? his rebus, by these means, for these reasons, on this account, in this way; ea res, this, (often equivalent to a pronoun); qua in re, in which ; eius rei, of this ; his rebus cognitis (this); qua ex re futurum, the result of which would be; huic rei, for this purpose, for this; omnibus rebus, in every respect, in all ways; rem deferre, lay the matter before (not for consultation, cf. referre), bring information; rerum omnium casus, all accidents; rem (res) gerere, operate, conduct operations in war, succeed well or ill; res gestae, operations, events, exploits; rerum natura, nature, also, state of the case; omnium rerum summa (of the whole, of all the forces); ei rei student (this branch, cavalry); cuius rei, of which (ships). - Esp., the affairs (of a person), position, interests, condition, fortunes, circumstances: rem esse in angusto (discrimine), (affairs, things); commutatio rerum, change of fortunes. -Esp.: res secundae, or adversae, success, prosperity, or adversity, want of success; rebus in arduis (bonis), in adversity (prosperity); res publica, the commonwealth, the state, the general interests, public business, politics; de re publica, in regard to the welfare of the state, about politics; res divina (or plur.), a religious ceremony, divine service, divine worship and everything pertaining to it, religion; res familiaris, property; res militaris, warfare, the art of war; res frumentaria, grain supply, grain; res alicui est, one has business with, has to do with, and the like; one's affair is; res est, it is a fact, it is so; novae res, a new form of government, revolution.

resarciō, -sarcīre, no perf., -sartus [re-sarcio, patch], 4. v. a., patch up, mend, repair.

rescindo, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus [re-scindo], 3. v. a., cut away, tear down, break down, destroy.

rescisco, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitus [re-scisco, inquire], 3. v. a, find out, learn, discover.

reservātus, -a, -um, p.p. of reservo. reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-servo], I. v. a., keep back, reserve, hold in reserve.

resideo, -sidere, -sedī, no p. p. [re-sedeo], 2. v. n., sit back, sit down, remain behind, remain.

resisto, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p. [re-sisto], 3. v. n., stand back, stop, withstand, make a stand, make opposition, resist, remain.

resono, -āre, -āvī, no p.p. [re-sono],

I. v. a., make to resound, fill (with sound).

respicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus [re-†specio], 3. v. a. and n., look back, look back at, look behind one, see behind one, consider, look at.

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus [re-spondeo, promise], 2. v. n., reply, answer, respond.

responsum, -i [N. p. p. of respondeo], N., a reply.

rēs pūblica, see res.

restinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of restinguo.

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus [re-stinguo, quench], 3. v. a., extinguish.

restituo, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutus [re-statuo], 3. v. a., set up again, re-place, restore, renew, make anew, rebuild.

restitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of restituo.

rēte, -is [?], N., a net.

retentus, a, -um, p. p. of retineo. retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [re-teneo], 2. v. a., hold back, restrain, detain, retain, keep: memoriam, mores: (preserve); passum (check).

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [re-traho], 3. v. a., drag back, bring back (a person).

retro [dat. of tretro- (re + terus, cf. intro)], adv., back, backward.

reus, -ī [rē- (of res) + us (or -ius)], M., a party (to a suit, res). — Esp., a defendant, the accused.

revello, -vellere, -velli, -volsus [re-vello, pull], 3. v. a., tear away, pull away.

reversus, -a, -um, p. p. of reverto.

reverto, -vertere, -verti, -versus [re-verto], 3. v. n., return (in perf. tenses). — Pass. as dep. in tenses fr. pres. stem, return, go back, come back

revinciō, -vincīre, -vinxī, -vinctus [re-vincio], 4. v. a., bind back (to something), make fast, fasten, bind. revinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of re-vincio.

revocātus, -a, -um, p. p. of revoco. revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-voco], 1. v. a., call back, call away, call off, recall. — Also, apply, refer (memoriam ad).

rēx, rēgis [REG, rule, as st.], M., a king.

\*Rhemius, -a, -um [?], adj., of Rheims, Rhemian (lex).

Rhēnus, -i [Celtic?], M., the Rhine. Rhodanus, -i [Celtic?], M., the Rhone.

Rhodius, -a, -um [Rhodo + ius], adj., of Rhodes, Rhodian. — Masc. plur. as noun, the Rhodians.

Rhodus, -ī [Gr.], F., Rhodes, an island on the coast of Asia Minor.

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus [?], 2. v. n., laugh, smile. — Fig., smile, be serene. rīpa, -ae [?], F., a bank.

rīsus, -ūs [RID (in rideo) + tus], m., a laugh, laughter.

rite [prob. abl. of st. akin to ritus, rite], adv., in due form, duly.

rīvus, -ī [akin to Gr.], M., a brook, a stream (not so large as flumen).

rixa, -ae [?], F., a quarrel, a dispute.

robur, -oris [?], N., oak. — Fig., strength (of resistance), courage.

robustus, -a, -um [robos- (orig. st.

of robur) + tus], adj., strong, vigorous, powerful.

rogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of rogo.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a. and n., ask, request, ask for, beg.

Rôma, -ae [?], F., Rome.

Rômānus, -a, -um [Roma- + nus], M., Roman. — As noun, a Roman.

rosa, -ae [?], F., a rose.

röstrum, -i [ROD- (in rodo, gnaw) + trum], N., a beak. — Esp. of a ship, the beak, the ram (used as in modern naval fighting). — Plur., the rostra or rostrum, a platform in the Roman Forum ornamented with beaks of ships.

rota, -ae [?], F., a wheel.

rubeo, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [rubo- (RUB + us, cf. robus, rubigo, ruber)], 2. v. n., be red, redden.

ruber, -bra, -brum [RUB + rus, cf. rubeo], adj., red, ruddy.

Rubicō, -ōnis [†rubicō- (rubō- + cus) + 0], M., (red river), the Rubicon, a small stream between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul, the boundary of Cæsar's province.

rubus,  $-\overline{i}$  [rub- (in ruber) + us], M., (red-bush), a bramble.

rudo, -ere, -īvī, -ītus [?], 3. v. n., roar, bellow.

Rūfus, -ī [prob. dial. form = rubus, red], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Minucius Rufus, master of horse under Fabius, routed by Hannibal. See also Sulpicius.

rūga, -ae [?], F., a wrinkle.

rugiō, -īre, no perf., no p. p. [?], 4. v. n., (late) roar.

ruīna, -ae [truŏ- (reduced) + ina,

cf. ruo], F., a downfall.—Fig., a ruin.

rūmor, -ōris [?], m., a rumor (confused report), report.

ruō, -ruere, ruī, rutus [RU, cf. ruina], 3. v. n., fall, rush headlong, rush, hasten.

rūpēs, -is [RUP (cf. rumpo) + unc. term.], F., a cliff, a rock (in position). rūrsus [for reversus], adv., back

rursus [for reversus], adv., be again, back, again, in turn.

rūs, rūris [?], N., the country (opp. to the city), a field, land, an estate.

rūsticus, -a, -um [rus- (orig. st. of rus) + ticus], adj., of the country, country-, rustic.

Rutēnī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe on the borders of Provence.

Rutilus, -ī [prob. akin to ruber], M., red. — As a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Sempronius Rutilus, a cavalry officer under Cæsar.

S

S., for salutem in letters.

Sabīnus, -ī [unc. st. (cf. sabulus, sand) + inus], M., (Sabine). — As a Roman family name. See Titurius.

Sabis, is [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul flowing into the Meuse, now Sambre.

saccus, -ī [Gr.], M., a bag, a sack. sacer, -cra, -crum [SAC (in sancio) + rus], adj., sacred.— Neut. plur. as noun, sacred rites.

sacerdos, -ōtis [sacro-dos (DA + tis)], C., (arranger of sacred rites?), a priest.

sacrificium, -ī [sacrificŏ- (sacrŏtfacus, cf. beneficus) + ium], N., a sacrifice.

sacrifico, -are, -avī, -atus [†sacrifico (sacro-†facus, cf. beneficus)], I. v. a., sacrifice.

\*sacrificus, -ī [sacrō-†facus, cf. beneficus], M., a priest.

saeculum (sēc-), -ī [SA (in sero, sow) + culum], N., a generation, an age, a century.

saepe [N. of tsaepis (perh. same as saepes)], adv., often.

saepēs, -is [akin to saepio, hedge in], F., a hedge.

saetiger (sēt-), -era, -erum [saeta-(weakened) -ger (in gero) + us], adj., (bristle bearing), bristly.

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītūrus [saevō-, raging (as if saevi-)], 4. v. n., be angry, rage, be violent.

saevus, -a, -um [?], adj., raging, savage, ferocious, furious, fell, cruel.
sagīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sagina-, stuffing], I. v. a., fatten, feed.

sagitta, -ae [?], F., an arrow. sagittārius, -ī [sagitta- + arius], M., an archer, a bowman.

Saguntum, -ī [?], N., a city of Spain in alliance with Rome, besieged and captured by Hannibal.

saltus, -ūs [SAL (in salio, leap) + tus], M., (a gap?), a wooded height, a glade, a forest pasture, a pass (in the mountains).

salto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [salto- (cf. salio, leap)], 1. v. n. freq., dance.

salūs, -ūtis [salvŏ- (?), safe, + tis (cf. virtus)], F., health, well-being, welfare, safety, preservation, deliverance, life (as saved or lost), greeting; salute desperata, despairing of saving one's self; salutis suae causa, to protect one's self.

salūtātor, -ōris [salutā- + tor], M., a saluter, one who makes complimentary visits, a visitor.

salutō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [salut- (in salus)], I. v. a., (wish health to any one), salute, greet.

sancio, sancire, sanxi, sanctus [SAC (in sacer)], 4. v. a., bind (in some religious manner), make sacred, solemnly establish (by law). — sanctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., holy, sacred, solemn, inviolable.

sānctus, -a, -um, p. p. of sancio. sānē [old case-form of sanus], adv., truly, indeed, assuredly.

sanguis, -inis [?], M., blood (as the vital fluid, generally in the body; cf. cruor).

sānō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sanō-], I. v. a., make sound, make good, repair.

Santones, -um (-ī, -ōrum) [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe between the Loire and the Garonne.

sānus, -a, -um [sA- (akin to salvus) + nus], adj., sound (in body or mind), sane, discreet: nihil pro sano facere (nothing discreet).

sapiens, entis [p. of sapio, be wise], adj., wise. — Esp. as noun, a wise man, a philosopher.

sapientia, -ae [sapient- + ia], F., wisdom.

sarcina, -ae [sarci- (as if st. of sarcio, or a kindred noun-st.) + na (F. of nus)], F., a pack (sewed up?), a bundle, a burden. — Plur., baggage

(soldiers' packs, cf. impedimenta, baggage not carried by soldiers).

sarmentum, -i [perh. SARP, prune (but cf. sarcina) + mentum], N., (either prunings or tied fagots), only in plur., fagots, twigs, brushwood.

satio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [st. of satis, cf. satietas], I. v. a., satisfy, appease, satiate.

satis [?], adv., enough, sufficiently, fully, well enough. — Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj., enough, sufficient: neque... satis commode (not very, etc.). — Often a mild expression for very and the like.

satisfació, facere, fēcī, factūrus [satis facio], 3. v. n., do enough for, satisfy, make amends.

satisfactio, -onis [satis-factio (cf. satisfacio)], F., amends, excuses, an apology.

Sāturnus, -ī [st. from sa (in sero, sow) + turnus, cf. taciturnus], M., Saturn, an ancient Italian divinity who presided over agriculture. His supremacy was supposed to mark the golden age of primitive virtue and simplicity.

saucius, -a, -um [?], adj., wounded. saxum, -ī [?], N., a rock, a stone (as movable), cf. rupes.

scālae, ·ārum (sing. rare) [perh. scad- (in scando, climb) + la], F., a ladder, a scaling ladder.

scapha, -ae [Gr., orig. a "dugout"], F., a skiff, a boat.

sceleratus, -a, -um [as if (perh. really) p. p. of scelero (stain with crime?)], adj., villainous, accursed. scelus, -eris [?, perh. orig.

\*crookedness," cf. pravus and "wrong"], N., crime, wickedness.

scienter [scient- (cf. scio) + ter], adv., knowingly, skilfully.

scientia, -ae [scient- (cf. scio) + ia], F., knowledge, acquaintance with (thing in the genitive), skill.

scilicet [sci- (imv. of sciö) -licet], adv., (one may know), evidently, namely, forsooth, no doubt.

scio, scire, scivi, scitus [?], 4. v. a., (separate?), distinguish, know.

Scīpiō, -ōnis [scīpiō, staff], M., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Publius Cornelius Scipio, repeatedly defeated by Hannibal. — 2. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus Maior, who defeated Hannibal at Zama. — 3. Publius Cornelius Scipio Æmilianus Africanus Minor, see Aemilianus.

scissor, -ōris [SCID (in scindo, cut) + tor], M., a carver.

Scopās, -ae [Gr.], M., a very rich Thessalian in the time of Simonides.
scorpiō, -ōnis [?], M., a scorpion;
a machine for throwing darts.
Hence, a shot from an engine (of that kind).

**acrībō**, scribere, scripsī, scriptus [?], 3. v. a. and n., write, give an account (in writing), state.

scrinium, -ī [?], N., a box, a chest, a despatch box, a portfolio.

scrobis, is [prob. akin to scribo], M. and F., a ditch, a pit.

scutum, -I [?], N., a shield, of the Roman legion, made of wood, convex, oblong (2½ by 4 ft.), covered with leather.

sē-, sēd- [old abl. of unc. st.],

prep., mostly as adv. in comp., apart, away, aside, off, un-.

sē, see sui.

sēbum, -ī [?], N., tallow.

sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [secedo], 3. v. n., -go away, withdraw.

seco, secare, secui, sectus [?], 1. v. a., cut, reap.

secretus, -a, -um [p. p. of secerno, separate], adj., separate, secret, concealed.

sectio, -onis [SEC (in seco) + tio], F., a cutting. Hence (prob. from dividing in lots), a lot of booty, booty.

secundus, -a, -um [partic. in -dus of sequor], adj., following. Hence, second. — Also (as not opposing), favorable, favoring, successful: proelium secundum nostris (in favor of); mensae secundae, dessert. — secundum, neut. acc. as prep. with acc., along, in the direction of, in accordance with.

securis, is [SEC + unc. term.], F., an axe.— Esp., the axe of the lictor (as a symbol of the power of life and death).

sēcūrus, -a, -um [so-cura-(weakened and decl. as adj.)], adj., free from care, untroubled, quiet, serene.

secus [SEQU (in sequor) + unc. term.], adv., (inferior), otherwise: non secus, as well as. — Compar., sēcius (sētius), less: nihilo secius, none the less, nevertheless.

secutus, -a, -um, p. p. of sequor. sed [abl. of unc. st., cf. se], conj., apart (cf. seditio and securus), but (stronger than autem or at), but yet. sedeo, sedere, sedi, sessūrus [SED, prob. through adj.-st.], 2. v. n., sit, sit down. — Also, remain, linger.

sēdēs, -is [SED + es (M. and F. term. corresponding to N. -us)], F., a seat. Hence, an abode, a dwelling (both in sing. and plur.), a settlement, a place, a spot.

sēditiō, ·ōnis [sed-†itio (1 + tio)], F., a secession, a mutiny, an uprising, a sedition.

Sedulius, -ī [?], M., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps.

Segonax (-ovax), -actis [Celtic], M., a British king.

Segontiācī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Britain.

segrego, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [segreg-(se-grex, apart from the herd)], 1. v. a., separate, exclude.

Segusiāvī (-ānī), -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a people west of the Rhone, near modern Lyons.

sēiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [se-iungo], 3. v. a., separate.

sella, -ae [SED (sit) + la], F., a seat, a chair.

sēmēsus, -a, -um [semi-esus], adj., half eaten.

sēmet, see -met.

sēmita, -ae [se- (sed-) + †mita (MI, in meo, go, cf. comes)], F., a side path, a by-path, a path (over the mountains).

semper [†semŏ- (?) (in semel) -per (cf. parumper)], adv., through all time, all the time, always.

Sempronius, -ī [?], m., a Roman

gentile name. See Rutilus, Gracchus, and Longus.

senātor, -ōris [†senā- (as if verbst. akin to senex, perh. really so, cf. senatus) + tor], M., (an elder). Hence, a senator.

senātērius, -a, -um [senator- + ius], adj., of senators, senatorial.

senātus, -ūs [†sena- (as if, perh. really, verb-st. akin to senex)], M., a senate (council of old men). — Esp., the senate (of Rome, the great body of nobles acting as an administrative council).

senecta, -ae [senec- (as st. of senex) + ta], F., age, old age.

senēscō, -ere, senuī, no p. p. [st. akin to senex + sco], 3. v. n., grow old, wane.

senex [seni- + cus (reduced)], gen. senis [?, cf. seneschal], adj. (only M.), old. — Esp. as noun, an old man (above forty-five). — Compar. senior, M. and F.

sēnī, -ae, -a [sec(s) + ni], distrib. num. adj., six each, six (where each is implied in Eng. by the context).

senium, -ī [seni- (cf. senex) + ium], N., old age, senility.

Senones, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Seine, near Sens (their chief town, anciently Agedincum).

sententia, -ae [†sentent- (p. of simpler pres. of sentio) + ia], F., (feeling, thinking). Hence, a way of thinking, an opinion, a view, a determination, a sentiment, a feeling, a purpose, a design, a wish, a desire.

— Esp. officially, a judgment, an

opinion, a sentence, a vote: in ea sententia permanere (of that mind).

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus [?], 4. v. a., perceive, feel, find (by the senses), know, see, think (of an opinion made up), learn about, learn, discover: alia sentire, have other feelings.

sentis, -is [?], M., a briar.

sēparātim [as if acc. of tseparatis (separā- + tis)], adv., separately. sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of separo. sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [se- (sed-) paro], I. v. a., (get apart?), separate. — Esp., sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., separate.

**sepeliō**, -īre, -īvī (-iī), sepultus [?], **4.** v. a., *bury*.

sēpositus, -a, -um [p. p. of sepono, set apart], adj., choice, select. septem [?], indecl. num. adj., seven.

September, -bris, -bre [septem + bris], adj., of September.

septentriones (septem triones), -um, M. plur., the seven plough oxen (the stars of the Great Bear). Hence, the north.

Septimius, -I [septimő- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Septimius, one of the murderers of Pompey.

septimus, -a, -um [septem + mus, cf. primus], num. adj., seventh.

septingentësimus, -a, -um [septingenti- (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., seven hundredth.

septingenti, -ae, -a [septem (in some form) -centum (?)], num. adj., seven hundred.

septuāgēsimus, -a, -um [septua-

ginta (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., seventieth.

septuāgintā [from septem, in some unc. manner], indecl. num. adj., seventy.

sepulcrum, -ī [†sepel- (as if root of sepelio) + crum], N., a grave, a tomb, a sepulchre.

Sequanus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj. of the Sequani (a tribe of Gaul, on the Rhone, north of Macon). — Masc. sing., one of the Sequani, a Sequanian. — Masc. plur., the Sequani.

sequor, sequi, secutus [SEQU], 3. v. dep., follow, accompany: eventus (ensue); fidem (hold to, remain under, come under, surrender one's self to, etc.): aestüs commutationem (take advantage of).

sēriō [abl. of serius], adv., in earnest, seriously.

sermō, -ōnis [SER (in sero, twine) + mo (prob.-mō-+o)], M., (series?). Hence, conversation (continuous series of speech), speech, discourse, talk, intercourse: Graecus (language).

serō, serere, sēvī, satus [sa, redupl.], 3. v. a., plant, sow.

serpēns, entis [p. of serpo, creep], M., a serpent, a snake.

sērus, -a, -um [?], adj., late. sērō, abl. as adv., late, too late: serius ocius, sooner or later.

servātus, -a, -um, p. p. of servo. servīlis, -e [servi- (as if st. of servus or akin, cf. servio) + lis], adj., of slaves, of a slave, servile: in servilem modum, as with slaves (i.e. by torture).

Servīlius, -ī [servili- + ius], M., a

Roman gentile name. — Esp., Cnaus Servilius Geminus, an ex-consul killed at Cannæ.

serviō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -ītūrus [servi-(as if st. of servus or akin]], 4. v. n., be a slave (to some one or something); rumoribus (be blindly guided by, follow).

servitūs, -ūtis [†servitu- (servŏ + tus) + tis, cf. iuventus, sementis], F., slavery, servitude.

servo, .āre, .āvī, .ātus [servo-], I. v. a., watch, guard, keep, preserve: praesidia (hold, maintain).

servulus, -ī [servŏ- + lus, dim. end.], M., a little slave, a mean slave.

servus, -ī [unc. root (ser, bind?) + vus], M., a slave, a servant.

sēsē, see sui.

sēsquipedālis, -e [†sesquiped- (a foot and a half) + alis], adj., of a foot and a half, eighteen-inch (beams, etc.).

sēstertius, -ī [semis- (half) -tertius (third)], M. of adj. (with nummus), two and a half asses, a sesterce, a sum of money worth about 5 cents. seu, see sive.

sevērē [old case-form of severus], adv., gravely, severely.

sevēritās, -ātis [severŏ- + tas], F., strictness, harshness, severity.

sevērus, -a, -um [?], adj., stern, strict, severe, harsh.

**8evoco**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [se (sed) -voco], I. v. a., call aside, call out (aside).

sex [?], indecl. num. adj., six.

sexāgēsimus, -a, -um [sexaginta (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., sixtieth.

sexāgintā [sex + unc. term.], indecl. num. adj., sixty.

sexcenti (ses-), -ae, -a [sex-cen-tum], num. adj., six hundred.

Sextilius, ·ī [sextili- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Sextilius, a Roman prætor, who expelled Marius from Africa.

Sextius, -i [sexto- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Titus Sextius, a legatus of Cæsar.

sextus, -a, -um [sex + tus], num. adj., sixth.

sī [loc. prob. akin to se], conj., (in this way, in this case, so, cf. sic), if, in case. — Esp., to see if, whether. sibi, see sui.

sīc [si-ce, cf. hic], adv., so, in this manner, in such a manner, thus: sic . . . ut, so . . . that, so well . . . that. — Equal to hoc, this, such: sic reperiebat (this). — sīcutī, as conj., just as, just as if.

sīca, -ae [prob. akin to seco, cut], F., a dagger.

siccitās, ātis [sicce + tas], F., dryness, drought, dry weather.—
Plur. in same sense, of different occasions.

sicco, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sicco-, dry], I. v. a., dry, drain.

Sicilia, -ae [Gr.], F., Sicily. sīcut (sīcutī), see sic.

sīdus, -eris [SED + us], N., (position?), a heavenly body.

signifer, -eri [signo-fer (FER (bear) + us)], M., a standard-bearer.

significatio, -onis [significa-+
tio], F., a making of signs, a signal,
an intimation, a warning.

sīgnifico, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†sig-

nifico- (aigno-ficus, cf. facio)], I. v. n., make signs, indicate, make known, spread news, give an intimation, give information, show, mean, signify: hac re aignificari, this is an indication; de fuga.

sīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [signō-], 1. v. a., seal, sign.

signum, -i [unc. root + num (N. of nus)], N., (a device?), a sign, a signal. - Esp., a standard (for military purposes, carried by any body of men, consisting of some device in metal on a pole). - signa convertere, wheel, change front, face about; signa inferre, advance to attack, charge; conversa signa inferre, change front and charge; signa ferre, move, move on, march; signa subsequi, keep the line of march; signa relinquere, leave the ranks; a signis discedere, desert, leave the ranks; ad signa consistere, rally around the standard.

silentium, -ī [silent- + ium], N., stillness, silence. — silentiō, abl. as adv., in silence, silently.

Sîlenus, -î [Gr.], M., a Greek historian.

**sileo,** -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., be silent.

Sīlius, ·ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Titus Silius*, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

silva, -ae [?], F., a forest, woods, forests. — Plur. in same sense.

silvester (-tris), -tris, -tre [silva-(as if silves-, cf. palustris) + tris], adj., woody, wooded.

sīmia, -ae [simŏ- (flat-nosed) + ia (F. of -ius)], F., an ape, a monkey.

similis, -e [†simŏ- (cf. simplex, semper) + lis], adj., like, similar.

similiter [simili- + ter], adv., similarly, in a similar way.

similitūdo, -inis [simili- + tudo], F., likeness, resemblance (to, gen.).

Simonides, -is [Gr.], M., a Greek lyric poet.

simul [N. of similis, cf. facul], adv., at the same time, together with (one): simul atque (or without atque), as soon as; simul...simul, both...and; simul cum dicto, no sooner said than done.

simulācrum, -ī [simulā- + crum], N., an image, a likeness, a phantom. simulātiō, -ōnis [simulā- + tio], F., a pretence, a show, deceit.

simulo, -are, -avī, -atus [simili-(as if, perh. orig., †simulo-)], 1. v. a., pretend, make a show of (something), feign.

simultās, -ātis [simili- (cf. simul) + tas], F., (likeness?, equality?), rivalry, jealousy, grudge.

sincērē [old case-form of sincerus], adv., honestly, truly, frankly. sine [?], prep. with abl., without. singillātim (singul-) [as if singulā- (singulus) + tim (acc. of -tis)], adv., singly, one by one, individually.

singulāris, -e [singulō- + aris], adj., solitary, single. Hence, unique, extraordinary, unparalleled, unequalled, marvellous.

singuli, -ae, -a [sim (in similis) + unc. term.], adj., one at a time, single, each, one by one, several (severally). — Often to denote distribution, one to each: singuli singulos, (with verb), one ... each; singulis

singulas virgas (one to each); ab singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere (each from his); inter singulas legiones (between each two, one to each); sevocare singulos (individuals, one by one).

sinister, -tra, -trum [?], adj., left: sub sinistra (manu), on the left.

sinistrorsus [sinistro-vorsus (versus)], adv., to the left.

sino, sinere, sīvī, situs [SI (of unc. meaning)], 3. v. a., (lay down, cf. pono), leave. Hence, permit, allow.— In orig. meaning, situs, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lying, situated.

sinus, -ūs [?], M., a bend, a fold, a curve, a bellying (swelling) sail.—Also, a bay.

sisto, -ere, stitī, status [STA redupl.], 3. v. a., set, place. — status, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., set, fixed, stated.

Sisyphus, -ī [Gr.], M., mythical founder of Corinth, son of Æolus, who was killed by Theseus and condemned forever to roll to the top of a hill a stone which continually rolled back again.

sitiō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), no p. p. [siti-], 4. v. n., be thirsty, be dry. — sitiēns, -entis, p. as adj., thirsty, parched, dry. sitis, -is [?], F., thirst.

situs, -ūs [SI + tus], M., (a laying, a leaving), situation, position, site.

situs, -a, -um, p. p. of sino.

sive, seu [si-ve], conj., if either, or if: sive...sive, either...or, whether...or.

sobrius, -a, -um [?, cf. ebrius], adj., sober, not drunk.

80cer, -erī [?], M., a father-in-law. 80cietās, -ātis [80ciö- + tas], F., an alliance, a league, fellowship, society, company.

socius, -ī [SEQU (follow) + ius], M., a companion, an ally, a comrade.

**801**, solis [?], M., the sun. — Also personified, Sol, the Sun. — See also under orior, occido, occasus.

solācium (solāt-), -ī [†solacō- + ium (cf. solor, console)], N., a consolation, a comfort.

solea, -ae [sŏlŏ- (sole) + ea (F. of eus)], F., a sole.

soleō, solēre, solitus [?], 2. v. n., be wont, he accustomed: ut solent, as is usual.

sõlitārius, -a, -um [sõlö- (as if sõlitō-) + arius], adj., lonely, solitary.

sõlitūdõ, -inis [solŏ- + tudo], F., loneliness. Hence, a wilderness.

sollertia, -ae [sollert- (sollò- + ars, with complete skill, cf. sollicito) + ia], F., skill, ingenuity, skrewdness.

sollicito, -are, -avi, -atus [sollicito-(sollo-citus, entirely roused)], I.v.a., stir up, instigate, make overtures to, tamper with, approach (with money, etc.), offer bribes to, tempt. — Also, disturb, trouble, make anxious.

sollicitus, -a, -um [†sollŏ-citus], adj., (violently agitated), troubled, anxious.

Solon, -onis [Gr.], M., a famous lawgiver of Athens, one of the seven wise men of Greece.

solor, -ārī, -ātus [?], 1. v. dep., console, comfort, cheer.

solum, -i [?], N., the soil, the

ground, the foundation, the bottom: solum agri, the bare ground; ab infimo solo, from the very bottom.

sõlus, -a, -um [?], adj., alone, only.

— sõlum, N. as adv., alone, only.

solūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of solvo.

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus [prob. se-luo, loose], 3. v. a., unbind, untie, loose: poenam (pay); animum (relax, unbend). — Esp. with navis, weigh anchor, set sail. — Also without navis, abs., set sail. — solūtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., exempt, free.

somnio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [somnio-],
I. v. a., dream.

somnium, -ī [somnŏ- (reduced) + ium], N., a dream.

somnus, -ī [SOP (cf. sopio, put to sleep) + nus], M., sleep: somno se dare, go to sleep.

sonitus, -ūs [soni- (as st. of sono) + tus], M., a sound, noise.

sonorus, -a, -um [perh. sonor + us, but cf. decorus], adj., resounding, roaring, noisy.

sonus, -ī [son + us], m., a sound. sopor, -ōris [sop (cf. sopio, put to sleep) + or], m., sleep.

sordidē [old case-form of sordidus], adv., meanly, basely.

sordidus, -a, -um [sordi- (filth) + dus], adj., unclean, foul, mean.

soror, -oris [?], F., a sister.

sors, sortis [perh. SER (in sero) + tis, but the orig. sense is unc.], F., a lot (for divination), chance, fate.

sortior, -īrī, -ītus [sorti-], 4. v. dep., cast lots, draw lots. — Hence, obtain by lot: animas (with the destiny of, be endowed with).

sortītus, -a, -um, p. p. of sortior.

Sõsilus, -ī [Gr.], M., a Spartan teacher and historian.

Sparta, -ae [Gr.], F., also called Lacedamon, the capital of Laconia. spatiosus, -a, -um [spatio- + osus], adj., large, spacious.

spatium, -i [?], N., space, room, extent, a space, a distance, a region.

— Transf., time, space of time, lapse of time, a period.— quantum fuit diei spatium, as much as there was time for; intermisso spatio, after an interval; spatia omnis temporis, the whole course of time.

speciës, -ēī [SPEC + ies (akin to -ia)], F., (a sight, prob. both act. and pass.). — Passively, a sight, a show, an appearance, a pretence, likeness, form (humana): summa species earum stantium, a perfect appearance of standing trees (lit. 'of them standing').

spectāculum, -ī [spectā- + culum], N., a sight, a show, a spectacle.

spectātor, -ōris [spectā- + tor],M., a spectator, a witness.

spectő, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spectő-],
1. v. a. and n., look at, behold, see,
regard, have regard to, lie towards
(of a country), face.

speculātor, -ōris [speculā- + tor],
M., a spy, a scout.

speculatorius, -a, -um [speculator + ius], adj., (of a scout), scouting, reconnoitring (navigia).

spēlunca, -ae [Gr.], F., a cave, a cavern.

spernő, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus [?, sper], 3. v. a., remove (prob. orig. with violence), spurn, scorn, reject. spērő, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spes-

(prob. orig. st. of spes) with r for s], I. v. a. and n., hope, hope for, expect.

spēs, -eī [?], F., hope, expectation: summam (magnam) in spem venire, have the greatest (great) hope.

spīna, -ae [perh. akin to spica, ear of grain], F., a thorn.

spīritus, -ūs [spiri- (as st. of spiro, breathe) + tus], M., breath. -Also, spirit. Hence, in plur., pride, spirit, arrogance, temper.

splendidus, -a, -um [†splendo- (cf. splendeo, shine) + dus], adj., magnificent, grand, splendid.

spoliātus, -a, -um, p. p. of spolio. spolio, -are, -avi, -atus [spolio-, booty], 1. v. a., despoil, strip. - Fig., rob, deprive, despoil.

spondeo, -ēre, spopondī, sponsus [SPOND, pour (libations), through noun-st.], 2. v. a., promise (solemnly).

spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.) [prob. akin to spondeo, promise], F., only with possess. or gen. (poetic), of one's own accord, voluntarily, on one's own account.

Spūrinna, -ae [?], m., a Roman family name. - Esp., Vestitius Spurinna, the soothsayer who warned Cæsar to beware of the Ides of March.

squalor, -oris [SQUAL (cf. squaleo, be rough) + or], M., (roughness), filth, squalor.

stabilio, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [stabili-], 4. v. a., make firm.

stabilis, -e [STA (cf. sto) + bilis], adj., firm, enduring, stable.

stabilitās, -ātis [stabili-+tas], F., steadiness, firmness.

statim [acc. of †statis (sta- + tis)], adv., (as one stands, on the spot), at once, forthwith, immediately.

stipendium

statio, -onis [apparently STA + tio, prob. †stati- + o, whence the common -tio used as ending without regard to its origin], F., (a standing), a position, a post, a picket: in statione, on guard.

statua, -ae [statu- (cf. sto) + a or va)], F., a statue.

statuo, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [statu-], 3. v. a., set up. Hence, establish, resolve upon, settle upon, fix upon, determine, consider (make up one's mind).

statūra, -ae [statu- + ra (F. of rus)], F., (a standing), stature, size, height.

status, -a, -um, p. p. of sisto.

status, -ūs [STA + tus], M., (a standing), a position, a condition, a state, a situation.

stercus, -oris [?], N., dung, ordure, filth.

sterno, -ere, strāvī, strātus [STER], 3. v. a., scatter, spread. - Pass. impers., sterni, a bed to be made.

stīlus, -ī [?], m., a pointed instrument for writing on wax tablets, a style, a pen.

stimulus, -ī [stigmŏ- (STIG + mus) + lus], M., a goad, a spur. - As name of a calthrop or instrument of defence, "spur."

stīpendiārius, -a, -um [stipendio-+ arius], adj., tributary, under tribute, subject to tribute. - Masc. as noun, a tributary.

stipendium, -i [stipi-, gift, and st. akin to pendo (perh. †pendus, cf. pendulus) + ium], N., a tribute. — Also, pay (for military service), service, a campaign.

stīpes, stīpitis [?], M., a trunk (of a tree).

stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus [STA], I. v. n., stand, be placed: decreto (stand by, abide by).

strāgēs, -is [STER, STRA (in sterno) + unc. term.], F., overthrow, defeat, slaughter.

strepitus, -ūs [strepi- (as st. of strepo, roar) + tus], M., a noise, a confused din, a din, a rattling.

strictus, -a, -um, p. p. of stringo. stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus [STRIG, squeeze?], 3. v. a., bind.— Esp. of weapons, bare, draw, unsheathe.

structor, -ōris [STRUG (in struo) + tor], M., (one who spreads the table), a server.

studeo, studere, studui, no p. p. [studo- (or tstuda-), cf. studium], 2. v. n., be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (a thing in the dat. or with infin.), strive.

studiose [old case-form of studiosus], adv., eagerly, sealously.

studium, -ī [prob. †studō- + ium, cf. studeo], N., eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (for a thing), enthusiasm. Hence, a pursuit (to which one is devoted), an occupation.

stulte [old case-form of stultus], adv., foolishly.

stultitia, -ae [stulto- (foolish) + tia], F., folly.

stultus, -a, -um [STOL (in stolidus) + tus], adj., foolish.

stupens, -entis [p. of stupen, be amased], adj., amased, dazed, confused.

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus [suadŏ-(SUAD + us, cf. malesuada)], 2. v. a. and n., advise, counsel.

suāvitās, -ātis [suavi- (sweet) + tas], F., agreeableness, attractiveness.
sub [unc. case, prob. abl., akin to super], adv. (in comp.) and prep.:

- a. With abl. (of rest in a place), under: sub oculis, before the eyes.

   Also, just by: sub colle (at the foot of); sub sinistra, at the left; sub muro, just under the wall; sera sub nocte, late at night.
- b. With acc. (of motion towards a place), under, close to. Of time, just at, just before: sub vesperum.
- c. In comp., under, up (from under), away (from beneath), secretly (underhand), in succession, a little, slightly.

subactus, -a, -um, p. p. of subigo. subdolus, -a, -um [sub-dolus, artifice], adj., cunning, wily.

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [sub-duco], 3. v. a., draw up, lead up, take away, remove secretly: navis (beach, draw up). — With reflex., withdraw.

subductio, -onis [sub-tductio, cf. subduco], F., a drawing up, a beaching (of ships).

subeo, -ire, -ii, -itus [sub-eo], irr. v. a., go under, undergo, submit to (iuga), encounter, come up, approach.

subfodio (suff-), -fodere, -fodi, -fossus [sub-fodio], 3. v. a., dig under, stab (underneath).

subfossus, -a -um, p. p. of subfodio.

subicio, -icere, -iecī, -iectus [subiacio], 3. v. a., throw under, place below, place under, subject, expose to.

— Also, throw up. — subiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lying near.

subiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of subicio. subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [subago], 3. v. a., bring under, subject, subdue.

subitus, -a, -um [p. p. of subeo], adj., (coming up secretly from under), sudden, suddenly (as if adv. taken with the verb), quick, hasty.—subitō, abl. as adv., suddenly, of a sudden.

sublātus, -a, -um [sub-(t)latus], p. p. of tollo.

sublevo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-levo], 1. v. a., lighten up, lighten, raise, raise up, assist, render assistance.— With reflex., rise up.

sublica, -ae [?], F., a pile.

subluo, -luere, no perf., -lūtus [sub-luo], 3. v. a., wash underneath, wash: flumen collis radices.

submergo, -mergere, -mersī, -mersus [sub-mergo], 3. v. a., submerge, sink, swallow up in the waves.

subministrō (sum-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-ministro], I. v. a., supply (as needed), furnish (from time to time), provide.

submitto (sum-), -mittere, -misī,
-missus [sub-mitto], 3. v. a., send up,
send to one's assistance, send as reënforcements, send (as help), reënforce.
submotus. -a. -um. p. p. of sub-

submôtus, -a, -um, p. p. of sub-moveo.

submoveō (sum-), -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [sub-moveo], 2. v. a., drive off, dislodge.

subrēpō, -rēpere, -rēpsī, -rēptus [sub-repo], 3. v. a. and n., creep under, steal into.

subruo, -ruere, -rui, -rutus [subruo], 3. v. a., dig under, undermine.

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [subsequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, follow on, succeed to.

subsidium, -ī [sub-tsedium (SED + ium)], N., (a sitting in reserve), a reserve, a reenforcement, help, relief, support, assistance, resources, provisions: subsidio mittere, send assistance; subsidium ferre, rescue; subsidium comparare, make provision.

subsisto, sistere, stiti, no p. p. [sub-sisto], 3. v. n., stop behind, halt, remain, stay: ancorae (hold).

subsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [subsum], irr. v. n., be under, be near, be close by (a certain distance off), be near at hand, approach.

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [sub-traho], 3. v. a., take away, (underneath), carry away, take away (generally).

subvectio, -onis [sub-vectio, cf. subveho], F., bringing up, transfortation, conveyance.

succēdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [sub-cedo], 3. v. n., come up, advance, come in place of, succeed to, take the place of, come next. — Also, be successful, prosper.

succendo, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnsus [sub-tcando (cf. candeo, glow)], 3. v. a., set on fire (as if beneath).

successus, -a,-um, p. p. of succendo. successus, -ūs [sub-cessus (cf. succedo)], M., a coming up, an advance, a close approach, success. succīdō -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [subcaedo], 3. v. a., cut under, cut down. succīnctus, -a, -um, p. p. of succingo.

succingō, -cingere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus [sub-cingo], 3. v. a., gird about, gird up. — succīnctus, p. p. as noun, a waiter.

succino, -cinere, no perf., no p. p. [sub-cano, sing], 3. v. n., accord, agree, chime in.

succīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of succido. succumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus [sub-cumbo], 3. v. n., lie down (under), give way, succumb.

succurro, -currere, -curri, -cursūrus [sub-curro], 3. v. n., rush to support, rush to one's rescue, succor. sudis, is [?], F., a stake.

sūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [SUD, prob. through adj.-st., †sudō-], 1. v. n., sweat, perspire.

Suessiones, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgians between the Marne and the Isère. Their town Noviodunum was later called from them Soissons.

Suēvus (Suēb-), -a, -um [Teutonic], adj., Swabian. — As noun, a Swabian (man or woman). — M. plur., Swabians, name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany.

suffectus, -a, -um, p. p. of sufficio. sufficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [subfacio], 3. v. a., make (appoint) in place of, substitute, elect as successor, supply the place of. Hence, suffice, be sufficient, be adequate.

suffigo, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [subfigo], 3. v. a., fasten to, nail to: cruce suffigere, crucify.

suffōcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†suffocŏ-(sub-faux, throat)], I. v. a., choke, throttle, strangle.

suffrāgātor, -ōris [suffragā- (vote for) + tor], M., a favorer, a supporter, a partisan.

suffrāgium, -ī [akin to suffringo, break up], N., (a pastern bone, or a potsherd, either used as a ballot), a ballot, vote.

Sugambrī (Sig-), -ōrum [Teutonic], M., a German tribe.

suggestus, -ūs [sub-gestus, cf. suggerō], M., (earth brought up), a raised mound, a tribunal, a platform (whence the Roman commander addressed his troops).

suī (prop. gen. N. of suus), sibi, sē [sva], reflex. pron., himself, etc. — Often to be translated by the personal, he, etc., also each other. — Esp.: inter se, from, with, by, etc., each other; inter sese dant, give each other, exchange; per se, of himself, etc. (without outside influence or excitement). See ipse.

Sulla, -ae [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility, and opponent of Marius, called the Dictator Sulla.

Sulpicius, ·i [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: I. Publius Sulpicius Galba, a Roman consul in Hannibal's time. — 2. Sulpicius Blitho, a Roman historian. — 3. Servius Sulpicius Rufus, tribune of the people in B.C. 88, a partisan of Marius, killed by Sulla. — 4. Caius Sulpicius Gallus, a tribune of the soldiers who predicted an

eclipse of the moon.— 5. Sulpicius Rufus, a legatus of Cæsar.— 6. Servius Sulpicius Galba, a legatus of Cæsar.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [ES, cf. am, is], irr. v. n., be (exist). — Also, with weakened force, be (as a mere copula); eorum est, they have; multum sunt in venationibus (much engaged). — futūrum, -ī, f. p. N. as noun, the future.

summa, -ae [F. of summus, as noun], F., the top, the sum, the total, the main part: summa omnium rerum, the whole amount; belli (the general management, the chief control); imperi (the chief command, the supremacy); imperi bellique administrandi (the chief management, etc.); rerum consiliorumque (chief control); summam victoriae, the whole victory; summa pecuniae (a sum).

summus, see superus.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [sub-emo, take], 3. v. a., take away, take, get, assume: poenas (inflict, cf. capere); laborem (spend).

sümptuārius, -a, -um [sumptu-(expense) + arius], adj., of expense, sumptuary.

sūmptuosus, -a, -um [sumptu-+ osus], adj., expensive, costly.

super [mutilated case-form of superus], prep. with acc., above, upon, on. — Also, during, at.

superātus, -a, -um, p. p. of supero.
superbia, -ae [superbö- (reduced)
+ ia], F., pride, arrogance.

superbus, -a, -um [super (as st.) + bus, cf. morbus], adj., proud,

haughty, disdainful.—Also, splendid, stately.

Superbus, see Tarquinius. superior, see superus.

supero, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [supero-], 1. v. a. and n., overtop. Hence, get the upper hand of, overcome, conquer, defeat, be superior to, prevail, overmatch, survive (vita), surpass.

supersedeo, -sedere, -sedel, -sessurus [super-sedeo], 2. v. n., sit above. Hence, be above, decline, refrain from.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [super-sum], irr. v. n., be over and above, be left, remain, survive.

superus, -a, -um [†supe- (st. akin to sub, perh. same) + rus (cf. inferus)], adj., higher, being above (of space only). - Compar. (in wider meanings), superior, higher, upper, preceding (of time), past, before, superior, victorious. - As noun, a superior. -Superl., suprēmus [supra- (?) + imus (?)], highest. — Also, summus [sup- + mus], highest, the highest part of, the top of .- vestis (outermost, outer). - Fig., greatest, most important, very great, most perfect, perfect, supreme, most violent: ab summo, from the top, at the end; summis copiis, with all the forces, in force, with all one's might.

super-vivo, -vivere, -vixi, no p. p. [super-vivo], 3. v. n., (live beyond another), outlive, survive.

suppeto, -petere, -petivi, -petitūrus [sub-peto, aim at], 3. v. n. (?, but cf. sufficio and subvenio), be on hand, be supplied, be to be found, hold out.

supplementum, -ī [supple- (as st. of suppleo, fill up) + mentum], N., a supply (to fill up), a reënforcement.

supplex, -icis [sub-tplex (PLIC (fold)) as st., cf. duplex)], C., a suppliant.

supplicatio, -onis [supplica + tio], F., a supplication. — Esp., a thanksgiving (prayer to the gods upon any signal success, decreed by the senate).

supplicium, -ī [supplic- (st. of supplex) + ium], N., a supplication, a sacrifice. — Also, esp., a punishment (usually of death).

supporto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [subporto], I. v. a., bring up, convey, supply, furnish.

suprā [instr. (?) of superus], adv. and prep. with acc., above, before, beyond.

sus, suis [prob. su (produce), strengthened as st., cf. Eng. "sow," "swine"], M. and F., a swine, a pig. susceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of suscipio.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [sub(s)-capio], 3. v. 2., take up, assume, undertake, engage in, undergo.

suspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicio.

suspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicor.

suspició, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [sub-specio], 3. v. a. and n., look up, look up at, look askance at. Hence, suspect. — suspectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., suspected, suspicious (vilitas), an object of suspicion.

suspīciō (-spītiō), -ōnis [subtspecio, cf. suspicio], F., suspicion. — Objectively, an indication.

suspicor, -āri, -ātus [†suspic- (cf. suspicio)], 1. v. dep., suspect. — P. p. as adj., under suspicion.

sustentātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sustento.

sustento, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [su(b)stento (cf. sustineo)], 1. v. a. and n., sustain, hold out: bella (hold out against); pecore famem (keep from starvation by means of, etc.).

sustineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus [sub(s)-teneo], 2. v. a. and n., hold up under, withstand, endure, sustain, hold out, bear, stop, rein in (horses), wear (iugum): sustinere se, stand up, keep up.

sustuli, see tollo.

sutor, -oris [su- (sew) + tor], M., a shoemaker.

suus, -a, -um [SVA + ius, cf. se], adj. pron. (reflex., referring back to subject), his, hers, its, theirs, etc. — Sometimes emphatic, his own, etc.: sua clementia (fortuna), his characteristic clemency (good fortune); sua morte defungi, die a natural death. — Often without noun, sui, their (his) men, countrymen, their (his) friends; sua, their (his) possessions, their property: se suaque omnia, themselves and all they had.

S. V. B. E. E. V., for si vales, bene est, ego valeo.

Sybaris, -is [Gr.], f., a town of southern Italy, noted for the effeminacy of its inhabitants.

Sybarita, -ae [Gr.], M., an inhabitant of Sybaris, a Sybarite.

syngrapha, -ae [Gr.], F., a written promise to pay, a note, a receipt.

Syria, -ae [Gr.], F., the country

lying at the eastern end of the Mediterranean.

T

T., for Titus.

tabella, -ae [tabula- + la], F., (a little board), a tablet. — In plur., a document, a letter.

tabellārius, -ī [tabella- + arius], M., a letter carrier, a messenger.

tabula, -ae [†tabŏ- (TA (stretch) + bus?) + la], F., a board. Hence, a tablet, a picture.

tabulātus, -2, -um [tabulā- (as if st. of †tabulo) + tus], adj., made with boards. — tabulātum, N. as noun, a flooring, a story.

taceo, -ere, -ui, -itus [†taco- (TAC + us)?], 2. v. n., be silent. — tacitus, p. p. as adj., silent, in silence.

tacite [old case-form of tacitus], adv., silently.

taedium, -i [†taedŏ- (whence taedet) + ium], N., weariness: taedium me cepit, I grew weary.

tālea, -ae [perh. akin to tālus, ankle-bone], F., a rod, a bar.

talentum, -ī [Gr.], N., a talent, a sum of money equal to about \$1080.

tālis, -e [TA (akin to that) + alis], adj. pron., such, so great, this the following. — Also, the preceding.

tam [unc. case of TA (cf. quam, nam)], adv., so, so much: tam... quam, as...as.

tamen [unc. case-form of TA (locative?)], adv., (introducing a thought opposed to some preceding concession expressed or im-

plied), yet, nevertheless, still, however, for all that, notwithstanding, after all, at least.

Tamesis, is [Celtic], M., the Thames.

Tamphilus, -ī, M., see Baebius.

tamquam (tan-) [tam quam], adv., as if, just as if, as.

tandem [tam-dem, cf. idem], adv., (just so, even so?), at last, at length.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus [TAG], 3. v. a., touch, taste, border on.

Tantalus, -ī [Gr.], M., a king of Phrygia, father of Niobe.

tantillus, -a, -um [tantulo- + lus, dim. end.], adj., so little.

tantisper [unc. form of tantus + per, cf. nuper], adv., for so long, meanwhile.

tantopere, see opus.

tantulus, -a, -um [tanto- + lus], adj., so small, so little, so trifling.

tantundem (tantum-dem, cf. idem], adv., just so far.

tantus, -a, -um [prob. TA + vant (adj. term.) + us], adj., so much, so great, such (of magnitude): tantiest, is of so much weight; tanta exiguitas temporis, so little time. — Esp., so much (and no more), so small, only so much. — tantum, N. as adv., only, alone, merely.

tardātus, -a, -um, p. p. of tardo.

tarde [old case-form of tardus], adv., slowly, tardily, with delay.

tardo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tardo-],
1. v. a., retard, check, hinder: Romanos ad insequendum (hinder from pursuing, retard the pursuit of, etc.).

tardus, .a, .um [?], adj., slow, slack, sluggish, without alacrity.

Tarentīnus, -a, -um [Tarentö- + inus], adj., of Tarentum, a city of southern Italy.

Tarquinius, -ī [Etruscan], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome.

taurus, -ī [perh. STAV + rus, akin to steer], M., a bull, a bullock.

Taximagulus, -ī [Celtic], M., a prince of Britain.

Tectosages, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a branch of the Volcae.

tēctum, -ī [N. p. p. of tego], N., a roof, a house, a dwelling, a palace. tēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of tego.

tegimentum (tegu-), -ī [tegi- (st. of tego) + mentum], N., a coveriug. tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus [TEG], 3. v. a., cover, thatch, hide, conceal. — Also, protect.

tēla, -ae [prob. TEX (in texo, weave) + la], F., a web (in the loom), a loom.

tellus, -uris [?], F., the earth.

tēlum, -ī [?], N., a weapon (of offence), a missile, a javelin, a spear.

temerārius, -a, -um [†temerō- + arius], adj., reckless, rash, hasty.

temerē [old case-form of ttemerus], adv., blindly, without reason, without cause. Hence, recklessly, hastily, rashly. temeritäs, -ātis [†temerō- (hasty) + tas], F., blindness, thoughtlessness, recklessness, hasty temper.

tēmō, -ōnis [?], M., a pole (of a wagon, etc.).

temperantia, -ae [temperant- + ia], F., self-control, prudence.

temperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of tempero.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [temper-(st. of tempus)], 1. v. a., (divide), mix properly. Hence, control, control one's self, refrain, restrain one's self from (abl.). — Esp., temperātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., temperate, mild.

tempestās, -ātis [tempes- (st. of tempus) + tas], F., a point of time, time. — Less exactly, the weather, a season. — Esp., bad weather, a storm, a tempest.

templum, -ī [prob. †temő- (TEM (cut) + us) + lum], N., (a place set apart), a consecrated spot, a temple.

temptō (tentō), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tentō-, p. p. of teneo, hold], I. v. a., handle. Hence, try, attempt, make an attempt upon, test, tempt.

tempus, -oris [TEM (cut, with root determinative or accidental p) + us], N., (a cutting). — Esp., a division of time, a time, time (in general), a season, an occasion, an emergency, a crisis. — Plur., times, circumstances, condition: omni tempore, at all times, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; une tempore, at once.

Tencteri (-theri), -ōrum [Teutonic], M. plur., a branch of the Usipetes.

tendo, tendere, tetendo, tensus

(tentus) [TEN + do (of unc. origin)], 3. v. a. and n., stretch, stretch out. — Also, aim, aim at, direct (insidias). — Also, hold one's course, go.

tenebrae, -ārum [?, perh. akin to temere], F. plur., darkness, the shades.

tenebricōsus, -a, -um [†tenebricō-(cf. tenebrae) + osus], adj., dark, gloomy.

teneo, tenere, tenui, tentus (?) [†teno- (TEN + us)], 2. v. a., hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy, grasp (aram): circuitus milia (occupy, extend).— Also, restrain, keep back, detain: tenete furem, stop thief! memoria tenere, remember.

tener, -era, -erum [TEN + rus], adj., (stretched, thin), delicate, tender, young.

tentō, see tempto.

tenuis, -e [TEN + us, with accidental i, cf. gravis], adj., thin, delicate, feeble, meagre, poor, common.

tenuitās, -ātis [tenui- + tas], F., thinness, weakness, slenderness, poverty.

tenuiter [tenui- + ter], adv., thinly, slightly.

ter [petrified form of tres], num. adv., three times, thrice, threefold.

Terentia, -ae [?], F., the name of Cicero's wife.

Terentius, -I [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Terentius Varro, a Roman consul defeated by Hannibal at Cannæ.

teres, etis [tere- (as st. of tero) + tis], adj., (rubbed), smooth and round, tapering.

tergum, -ī [?], N., the back, the body: terga vertere, turn and fly; a tergo, in the rear, behind.

terminus, -i [TER (in trans) + minus], M., a boundary, a limit.

ternī, -ae, -a [tri- + nus], distrib. num. adj., three each, three at once.

terra, -ae [TERS (?) + a, cf. tor-1eo, dry up], F., (the dry land), the earth, the land, the shore.— Also, a land, a region.— Also, the ground, the soil.— Plur., the world.

Terrasidius, -ī [Celtic], M., a Roman gentile (?) name. — Esp., Titus Terrasidius, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

terreo, terrere, terrui, territus, [terro-(?)], 2. v. a., frighten, alarm, terrify, frighten off, deter.

terrestris, e [terra- (as if terret-, cf. equestris) + tris], adj., of the earth, earthly, terrestrial.

terribilis, -e [as if (or really) † terro-(whence terreo) + bilis], adj., frightful, dreadful, terrible.

territo, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [territo-], 1. v. a., frighten: metu (alarm with fears, keep alarmed).

territus, -a, -um, p. p. of terreo. terror, -oris [TERR+or], M., fright, alarm, terror, dread, panic.

Tertia, -ae [F. of tertius], F., a child's name (i.e. the third daughter).

tertius, -a, -um [prob. tri- + tius]. num. adj., third (in order); pars (one-third). — tertium, N. acc. as adv., a third time. — tertio, abl. as adv., a third time.

testimonium, -ī [testi-+monium], N., proof, evidence.

testis, is [?], M. and F., a witness.

175

testor, -ārī, -ātus [testi-], I. v. dep., call to witness, bear witness, leclare, attest.

testūdo. -inis [†testu- (akin to testa, tile) + do], F., a tortoise. -Esp., a covered column (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another).

Teutobochus, -i [?], M., a chief of the Teutones.

Teutones, -um (-ī, -ōrum) [Teutonic], M. plur., a great German people in Jutland who along with the Cimbri overran Gaul in B.C. 113. They were defeated by Marius in B.C. 102 at Aquæ Sextiæ (Aix).

Thebae, -ārum [Gr.], F. plur., Thebes, a famous city of Greece.

Thebanus, -a, -um [Theba- + nus], adj., of Thebes, Theban. - Masc. plur. as noun, the Thebans.

Themistocles, -is [Gr.], M., a famous Athenian statesman and general in the time of the Persian War.

Thermopylae, -ārum [Gr.], F. plur., a famous pass in northern Greece, where Leonidas fell.

thēsaurus, -ī [Gr.], M., a hoard, a treasure. - Also, a treasure-house.

Thespiensis, e [Gr.], adj., of Thespia, a city of Greece, Thespian. - Masc. plur. as noun, the Thespians.

Thessalia, -ae [Gr.], F., Thessaly, a division of northern Greece.

Tiberis, -is [?], M., the Tiber.

Tiberius, -ī [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

tibi, see tu.

tībia, -ae [?], F., the leg-bone, the shin. — Also, a pipe, a flute.

tībīcen, -inis [tibia-cen (in cano, play)], M., a piper, a flute-player.

tignum, -ī [?], N., a log, a timber, a pile.

tigris, -idis (-is) [Gr.], M. and F., a tiger.

timeo, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [†timo-(cf. timidus)], 2. v. a. and n., be afraid, fear. - With dat., be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil (have nothing to fear); timentes, p. as noun, the timid, the fearful.

timor, -ōris [tim- (cf. timeo) + or], M., alarm, fear, dread.

tinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of tingo.

tingō (-guō), -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus [TING], 3. v. a., wet, moisten. - Also, dye, color, tinge.

tīrōcinium, -ī [tirō- (cf. tirō, a raw recruit ) + cinium], N., a soldier's first service, a beginning.

titulus, -ī [?], M., an inscription, a placard, a notice.

Titūrius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. - Esp., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, a legatus of Cæsar.

Titus, -ī [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

Tityos, -ī [Gr.], M., a giant killed by Apollo and Diana for insulting His punishment in the Latona. underworld was to have a vulture ever feeding on his liver.

toga, -ae [TEG (cover) + a], F., atoga, the outer garment of the Romans in civil life.

togātus, -a, -um [toga-+tus], adj., clad in the toga. Hence, unarmed, in the garb of peace.

tolero, -are, -avī, -atus [toler-(TOL + us)], i. v. a. and n., (raise up), bear, endure, hold out, support.

tollo, -tollere, sustuli, sublatus [TOL], 3. v. a., raise, lift, carry, carry off. Hence, take up, remove, take away, destroy, kill: ancoris sublatis, (weigh).

Tolosates, -ium [Tolosa-+tis], M. plur., the people of Toulouse.

Tomyris, -is [?], F., queen of the Massagetæ.

tormentum, -I [TORQU + mentum], N., (means of twisting), torture. — Also, an engine (for throwing missiles by twisted ropes). Hence, a shot from an engine, a missile.

torvē [old case-form of torvus], adv., sternly.

tot [TA + ti], indecl. adj., so many. totidem [toti- (cf. tot) + dem], indecl. adj., just as many, as many, the same number.

tōtus, -a, -um [TA + tus], adj., whole, the whole, the whole of, all, entire. — Often translated by an adverb, entirely, throughout, wholly, all.

trabs (trabēs), trabis [?], F., a beam, a timber.

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tractō-(cf. traho)], 1. v. a. freq., touch, handle, feel of.

trāditus, -a, -um, p. p. of trado.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [trans-do], 3. v. a., hand over, give up, give over, deliver, deliver up, surrender, commend, recommend. — Also, pass along, hand down, report, leach, communicate.

trādūcō (trans-), -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [trans-duco], 3. v. a., lead

over (with two accs.), lead across, bring over, lead through, transport, draw over, win over, transfer, lead (along).

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus [TRAH (for †TRAGH)], 3. v. a., drag, draw. — Fig., refer, ascribe, set down to.

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [transiacio], 3. v. a. and n., throw across, throw over, pass over, cross. — Also, strike through, transfix, pierce.

traiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of traicio. traiectus, -ūs [trans-iactus, cf. traicio], M., (a throwing across), a passage, a route.

tranquillitās, -ātis [tranquillō- + tas], F., stillness, calm.

trans [?, akin to terebra, auger], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., across, over. Hence, on the other side of. — In comp., over, across, through.

Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um [trans-Alpes + inus], adj., Transalpīne (lying beyond the Alps from Rome).

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus [trans-scando], 3. v. n., climb across, board (ships).

trānsdūcō, see traduco.

transeo, -ire, -ii, -itus [trans-eo], irr. v. a. and n., go across, cross, pass over, go over, pass through, pass, migrate, pass by.

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [trans-fero], irr. v. a., carry over, transfer, change the place of: ad se bellum (direct against, draw upon, from somewhere else).

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [trans-figo], 3. v. a., pierce through, stab.

trānsfodio, -fodere, -fodī, -fossus [trans-fodio], 3. v. a., dig through. — Also, pierce, pierce through, wound (by stabbing).

transgredior, -gredī, -gressus [trans-gradior], 3. v. dep., step across, step over, cross.

transgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of transgredior.

transitus, -ūs [trans-itus, cf. transeo], M., a crossing, a passage.

trānslātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transfero.

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um [trans-mare (sea) + inus], adj., foreign.

trānsmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of transmitto.

transmissus, -ūs [trans-missus, cf. transmitto], M., a crossing, a distance across: pari spatio transmissus, with a passage of the same length.

trānsmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [trans-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., send over, cross over.

trānsportātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transporto.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [transporto], I. v. a., bring over (with two accs.), transport, carry over.

Transrhenanus, -a, -um [trans-Rhenum + anus], adj., living across the Rhine. — Plur. as noun, the people across the Rhine.

transtrum, -î [trans (trant-?) + trum], N., a thwart, a cross-beam.

trānsversus, -a, -um [p. p. of transverto], as adj., across, athwart, oblique, transverse: fossa (a cross-ditch).

Trasumēnus, -I [?], M., a lake in

Etruria, famous for Hannibal's victory over the Romans in B.C. 217.

Trebia, -ae [?], M., a river of northern Italy, where Hannibal defeated the Romans in B.C. 218.

Trebius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, an officer of Cæsar's army.

Trebonius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Trebonius, a legatus in Cæsar's army.

trecēnī, -ae, -a [tri-centum (reduced) + nus], distrib. num. adj., three hundred each, three hundred.

trecenti, -ae, -a [tri-centum], num. adj., three hundred.

tremö, -ere, -uī, no p. p. [TREM], 3. v. n., tremble, quake with fear.

trepidātiō, -ōnis [trepidā- + tio], F., alarm, confusion.

trepido, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [trepido-], 1. v. n., tremble. — Also, bustle about, hurry.

tres, tria, gen. trium [st. tri-], num. adj., three.

Trēverī (-virī), -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a people in Gaul, originally German, on the Moselle.

Triboces, -um (-ī, -ōrum) [Celtic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg.

tribūnus, i [tribu- + nus], M., (a chief of a tribe). With or without plebis, a tribune (one of several magistrates elected in the assembly of the plebs voting by tribes, to watch over the interests of the commons). — With mīlitum or mīlitāris, a tribune of the soldiers, a military tribune.

tribuo, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [tribu-],

3. v. a., (distribute by tribes), distribute. Hence, grant, render, award, assign, attribute: tantum dignitatis (pay such respect).

tribūtum, -ī [N. p. p. of tribuo], N., a tribute.

trīcēsimus, -a, -um [triginta (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., thirtieth.

triclinium, -i [Gr.], N., a couch for three persons reclining at meals.

— Also, an eating-room, a dining-room.

tridons, -entis [tri-dons (decl. as adj.)], adj., three-toothed, three-pronged. — As noun, a three-pronged spear, a trident.

trīduum, -ī [tri- + st. akin to dies, cf. biduum], N., three days' time, three days.

triennium, -ī [trienni- (tri-annus) + ium], N., three years.

trīgintā [tri-, unc. st., cf. viginti], indecl. num. adj., thirty.

1,

Trinobantes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a people of southern Britain, in the region of Colchester.

tripartītus (tripert-), -a, -um [tri-partītus, p. p. of partio], adj., divided in three. — Esp., tripartītō, abl. as adv., in three divisions.

triplex, -icis [tri-plex (PLIC as st.)], adj., threefold: acies (in three divisions or lines), triple.

triquetrus, -a, -um [tri-†quatrus (quattuor), cf. "three-square"], adj., three-cornered, triangular.

trīsticulus, -a, -um [tristi-+ culus, dim. end.], adj., somewhat sad, downcast.

trīstis, -e [unc. root + tis], adj., sad, gloomy, dejected, dismal.

trīstitia, -ae [tristi- + tia], F. sadness, sorrow, a gloomy state (of mind).

triumphālis, -e [triumphō- + alis], adj., belonging to a triumph, triumphal.

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [triumphō-], 1. v. n., have or enjoy a triumph, triumph.

triumphus, -ī [prob. Gr.], M., a triumphal procession, a triumph. — Less exactly, a triumph (generally), a victory.

Troia, -ae [Gr.], F., Troy, a city in Asia Minor, the scene of the Trojan War.

tropaeum, -ī [Gr.], N., a trophy. truncus, -ī [?], M., a trunk.

trux, trucis [?], adj., savage, harsh, fierce, stern.

tū, tuī [TVA], plur. võs [VA], pers. pron., thou, you (sing.), you (plur.).

tuba, -ae [?], F., a trumpet (a straight instrument for infantry).

tubicen, -inis [tuba-cen (in cano, play)], M., a trumpeter.

tueor, tueri, tūtus (tuitus) [?], 2. v. dep., watch, guard, protect, defend. See also tutus.

tuli, perf. of fero.

Tullius, -ī [Tullo- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. See Cicero. Tullus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. See Volcatius.

tum [prob. acc. of TA (cf. is-te)], adv., then (at a time indicated by the context), at this time, at that time, at the same time, in that case: cum...tum, see cum; tum vero (then, with emphasis, of the decisive point of a narrative).

tumultus, -ūs [tumulŏ- (perh. reduced) + tus], M., (a swelling, an uprising?), an uproar, confusion, a commotion.—Esp., an uprising, a rebellion, a commotion (of revolt, or a war not regularly declared).

tumulus, -i [†tumŏ- (whence tumeo, swell) + lus], M., (a swelling?), a hill, a mound.

tunc [tum-ce, cf. hic], adj., just then, then, at that time.

turbō, -inis [turba- + o, cf. homo], M., (a whirling), a whirlwind, a hurricane.

turbulentus, -a, -um [turba- (as if turbō-) + lentus], adj., disturbed; of fluids, thick, muddy, roily.

turgidulus, -a, -um [turgido-+ lus, dim. end.], adj., swollen.

turgidus, -a, -um [turgē- (swell) + idus], adj., swollen, distended.

turma, -ae [TUR (cf. turba, turbo) + ma], F., (a throng?), a squadron, a troop (of horse, consisting of thirty men).

Turones, -um (-ī, -ōrum) [Celtic],

M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Their city became afterwards Tours.

turpis, -e [?], adj., ugly (in appearance). Hence, unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable.

turpiter [turpi- + ter], adv., dishonorably: turpiter factum, an inglorious deed.

turpitudo, -inis [turpi- + tudo], F., baseness. Hence, disgrace.

turris, -is [?], F., a tower, a dove-tower, a dove-cote.

tus, turis [Gr.], N., incense.

Tusculānus, -a, -um [Tusculö- + ānus], adj., of Tusculum, a town of Latium. — Esp., N. as noun, a villa at Tusculum.

tūtus, -a, -um [p. p. of tueor], as adj., protected, safe, secure: victis nihil tutum, no safety for the conquered. — tūtō, abl. as adv., in safety, safety.

tuus, -a, -um [TVA + ius], adj. pron., your, yours.

tyrannus, -ī [Gr.], M., a tyrant.

U

über, -eris [?, cf. Eng. "udder"], N., an udder, a teat.

ubi [supposed to be quō- + bi, cf. tibi], adv., where, in which. — Also, of time, when: ubi primum, as soon as.

Ubii, -ōrum [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they were afterwards settled.

ubique [ubi-que, cf. quisque], adv., everywhere, anywhere.

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus [?], 3. v. dep., punish (an injury, or the doer), avenge (an injury).

Ulixes, -is [Gr.], M., Ulysses, a hero of the Trojan War, afterwards famed for his wanderings and adventures.

ullus, -a, -um, gen. -ius [uno- + lus], adj., a single (with negatives), any. — As noun (less common), anybody, any one.

ulterior, -us, -oris [compar. of

ultero, cf. ultra], adj., farther, more remote: ulteriores, those farther off. — Superl., ultimus, -a, -um [ul+timus], farthest, last. — As noun, the last, the end.

ultio, -onis [ULC (in ulciscor) + tio], F., vengeance, revenge.

ultrā [unc. case, perh. instr., of tulter], adv. and prep. with acc., beyond.

ultro [dat. of tulter], adv., to the farther side, beyond. — Esp. beyond what is expected or required, voluntarily, of one's own accord, without provocation, freely, besides: sibi parcere cogi (in spite of himself); ad se venire (without his asking it).

ululātus, -ūs [ululā- + tus], M., a yell, a loud cry, a wailing.

ululo, -are, -avī, -atus [ulula-, a wail], I. v. n. and a., wail, howl.

umbra, -ae [?], F., a shade, a shadow.

umerus, -i [?], M., the shoulder. umquam (unquam) [supposed to be for cum-quam (cf. quisquam)], adv. (with neg.), ever.

una [instr. (or abl.?) of unus], adv., together, along with them, etc., at the same time, in the same place, also.

unda, -ae [UND (water) + a], F., a wave. — Fig., a stream, water, the waters.

unde [supposed to be for tcunde (cum, cf. umquam, + de, cf. inde)], adv., whence, from which, from whom.

**undecim** [unus-decem], indecl. num. adj., eleven.

undecimus, -a, -um [unus-decimus], num. adj., eleventh.

undēquadrāgēsimus, -a, -um [undequadraginta (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., thirty-ninth.

undique [unde-que, cf. quique], adv., from every side, from all quarters. — Also (cf. ab), on every side.

ungō (-guō), -ere, ūnxī, ūnctus [UNG], 3. v. a., smear, besmear, anoint.

unguentum, -ī [akin to ungo], N., an ointment, a perfume.

universus, -a, -um [uno-versus], adj., all together, all (in a mass), entire.

unus, -a, -um, gen. -ius [?, old oenus], adj., one, a single, the same, alone (as adv.): una celeritate (alone); ad unum, to a man; unus quisque, each one.

unusquisque, see unus.

urbānus, -a, -um [urbi- (reduced) + anus], adj., of a city, city (adj.). — Esp., of the city (Rome), in the city. — Masc. as noun, a citizen, a wit, a wag.

urbs, urbis [?], F., a city. — Esp., the city (Rome).

urgeō (urgueō), urgēre, ursī, no p. p. [VARG, press, cf. volgus], 2. v. a., press, press hard, urge.

urna, -ae [?], F., a jar, an urn, esp. used for drawing lots.

ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus [US], 3. v. a., burn.

ursus, -ī [?], M., a bear.

urus, -i [Teutonic], M., a wild ox.
Usipetes, -um [Teutonic], M.
plur., a German tribe who migrated

from eastern Germany to the lower Rhine.

ūsitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of usitor.

usitor, -ārī, -ātus [†usito- (as if p. p. of †uso, freq. of utor)], 1. v. dep., practise. — usitātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pass. sense, used, practised, customary, much practised.

usque [supposed unc. case of quo (cf. usquam) -que (cf. quisque)], adv., (everywhere), all the way, even to, even, to that degree (with eo ut), all the time, till, even till.

usurpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tusurpō-(usu-trapus, RAP + us, cf. bustirapus)], 1. v. a., (appropriate), seize upon, make use of, employ.

 $\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}\mathbf{u}\mathbf{s}$ , -a, -um, p. p. of  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{t}\mathbf{o}\mathbf{r}$ .

usus, -us [ut (in utor) + tus], M., use, practice, experience. Hence, advantage, service. — Esp.: usus est, it is necessary, there is need, is necessary (with personal subject); also, ex usu, usui, of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage; usu venire, happen, occur, turn out, come to pass (on trial, in practice); usum navium eripi, be deprived of all use of the ships; quae sunt usui, which are serviceable, are needed, are of use.

ut (uti) [supposed to be for quoti (quo-+ ti?)], adv. and conj.: a. Interr., how?—b. Rel., as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering that it was, just as if.—Esp. with subjv., that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that.—Often with object-clause compressed in Eng. into some other form of

speech: id facere ut, do this, namely.

Esp.: timere ut, fear that not; ut quisque est . . . ita (in proportion as . . . so).

uter, -tra, -trum; gen. -trius [quo (cf. ubi) + terus (reduced), cf. alter], adj. a. Interr., which (of two)? — b. Rel., whichever (of two), the one who (of two). — utrum, neut. as adv., (which of the two), whether; sometimes not translated.

ūter, ūtris [?], M., a hide, a skin, a bag (of skin), a leathern bottle.

uterque, utra-, utrum-, gen. utrīus-[uter-que, cf. quisque], adj., both, each. — Plur., of sets: utraque castra, both camps; utrique, both parties.

utī, see ut.

ūtilis, -e [†uti- (st. akin to utor) + lis], adj., useful, of use, helpful.

ūtilitās, -ātis [utili- + tas], F., advantage, benefit, service.

utor, uti, usus [?, old oetor, akin to aveo?], 3. v. dep., avail one's self of, use, exercise, practise, enjoy, adopt, employ, have (in sense of enjoy or employ), possess, show (qualities which one exercises), occupy (a town), navigate (a sea): pace (remain at peace). — Esp. with two nouns, employ as, have as, and the like. — usus, -a,-um, p. p., often merely with.

utpote [ut-potis, able], adv., (as is possible), as being, inasmuch as, since, as.

utrimque [unc. case of uter (cf. interim) + que (cf. quisque)], adv., on both sides.

utrobīque [utrŏ-ubique], adv., on

both sides, in both ways (i.e. by land and sea).

uva, -ae [F. of tuvo- (cf. uvidus,

moist) + a], F., a grape. — Plurgrapes, bunches of grapes.

uxor, -ōris [?], F., a wife.

ν

V, for quinque, five.

Vacalus, -ī [?], M., the west branch of the Rhine, at its mouth.

vacātiō, -ōnis [vacā- + tio], F., freedom (from something), exemption, immunity.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [prob. †vacō- (cf. vacuus)], 1. v. n., be vacant, be free from, be unoccupied, lie waste. — Fig., be at leisure, have time.

vacuus, -a, -um [prob. VAC (empty) + vus], adj., free, unoccupied, vacant, empty, destitute of (ab or abl.).

vadum, -ī [VAD (in vado, go) + um], N., a ford. — Plur., a ford, shoals, shallows.

vagātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vagor. vāgīna, -ae [?], F., a sheath.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus [vagŏ-, roving],

1. v. dep., roam about, roam, wander.

vagus, -a, -um [vag (?) + us],

adj., wandering, roving.

valeo, valere, valui, valitūrus [?, prob. from adj.-st., cf. validus, strong], 2. v. n., be strong, be well, have weight, have influence, be powerful. — Often with N. pron. or adj. as cog. acc.: plurimum valere, be very strong, have great weight, have great influence; minus valet, is not very strong; nihil valere, have no power; quicquid possunt pedestribus copiis valent, whatever strength they have is in infantry. — Esp. in imv.,

farewell, adieu, good-by. — Also, valeas, good-by. — valēns, -entis, p. as adj., strong.

Valerius, -ī [akin to valeo], M., a Roman gentile name. See Catullus.

valētūdō, -inis [prob. valent- + tudo], F., health. — Also, ill health, illness, sickness.

validus, -a, -um [†valŏ- (whence valeo?) + dus], adj., strong, stout, sturdy, vigorous.

vallēs, -is [?], F., a valley.

vāllum, -ī [N. of vallus], N., a palisade, a rampart (the regular fortification of the Romans, made of stakes and built up with earth), a wall.

vāllus, -ī [?], M., a stake.

valva, -ae [?], F., a fold of a door.

— Usually plur., folding doors, doors.

vānus, -a, -um [prob. VAC (in vacuus) + nus], adj., empty. — Fig., groundless, empty, vain, idle.

varietās, -ātis [variö- + tas], F., diversity, variety: pellium (different colors).

varius, -a, -um [prob. akin to vārus, bent], adj., various, diverse, varied.

varix, -icis [akin to varus, bent], M., a dilated vein, a varix.

vās, vāsis (plur. -a, -ōrum) [?], N., a vessel, a jar.

vāstātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vasto.

vāsto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vasto-], 1. v. a., lay waste, devastate, ravage.

vāstus, -a, -um [?], adj., waste. — Also, immense, vast.

vātēs, -is [?], M., a soothsayer, a seer.

-ve [?], enclit. conj., or.

vectigal, -ālis [N. of vectigalis], N., an impost, tribute. — Plur., revenues (of a state).

vectīgālis, e [†vectīgŏ- (vectī-, akin to veho, + unc. term., cf. castīgo) + alis], adj., tributary: vectīgālīs habent, make tributary.

vectōrius, -a, -um [vector- (cf. veho, carry) + ius], adj., carrying: navigia (transports).

vectus, -a, -um, p. p. of veho.

vegetus, -a, -um [†vege- (VEG, wake) + tus], adj., bright, animated.

vehementer [vehement- (violent) + ter], adv., violently, severely, strongly, hotly, exceedingly, very well.

vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectus [VEGH, cf. Eng. "wagon"], 3. v. a., carry, bear. — Pass., be borne, ride, sail.

vel [prob. imv. of volo, wish], conj., or: vel ... vel, either ... or.

Velānius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Velanius, a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army.

Veliocassēs, -ium (-ī, -ōrum) [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe of Normandy, about Rouen.

Vellaunodūnum, -ī [Celtic], N., a town of the Senones.

Vellāviī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul in the Cevennes Mountains.

vēlocitās, -ātis [veloci- (swift) + tas], F., swiftness, fleetness, speed.

vēlum, -ī [?, cf. vexillum], N., a curtain, a veil. — Also, a sail.

velut (veluti) [vel-ut], adv., even as, just as, just as if: velut si, just as if, as if, no less than if.

vēnātio, -onis [venā- (hunt) + tio], F., hunting, the chase. — Plur., hunting, hunting excursions, hunting spectacles.

vēnātor, -ōris [venā- (hunt) + tor], M., a hunter.

vēnditor, -ōris [vendi- (as st. of vendo) + tor], M., a seller, a vender. vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [venumdo], 3. v. a., put to sale, sell.

Venelli (Unelli), -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Normandy.

venēnātus, -a, -um [venenŏ- + atus], adj., (filled with poison), poisonous, venomous.

venēnum, -ī [?], N., poison.— Less exactly, a drug, a magic potion, a magic herb.

veneratio, -onis [venera- (reverence) + tio], F., reverence, respect, veneration.

Venetī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Brittany.

Venetia, -ae [venető- + ia (F. of -ius)], F., the territory of the Veneti.

Veneticus, -a, -um [Venetŏ- + cus], adj., of the Veneti.

venia, ae [?], F., indulgence, favor, pardon: petentibus veniam dare, grant their request.

venio, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus [GAM (for gvenio)], 4. v. n., come, go: in spem (have hopes). See also usus.

vēnor, -āri, -ātus [?], 1. v. dep., hunt: venantum voces (of hunters). venter, -tris [?], M., the belly.

ventito, -are, -avi, -aturus [as if ventito- (from tvento, old freq. of venio)], I. v. n., come often, visit.

ventus, -i [?], M., the wind: vento (ventis) se dare, run before the wind.

Venus, -eris [VEN + us, cf. genus], F., grace, beauty. — Esp., Venus, the goddess of love and beauty.

Venusia, -ae [?], F., a town in southern Italy, the birthplace of Horace.

Venusīnus, -a, -um [Venusia- + inus], adj., belonging to Venusia, Venusian.

venustus, -a, -um [venes- (cf. Venus) + tus], adj., charming, lovely.

verbum, -ī [?, cf. morbus], N., a word, a remark: facit verba, speak for, etc.; magna contumelia verborum, with most insulting words; verba dare, deceive, cheat.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, the uncle of Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorix, -igis [Celtic], M., a noble of the Arverni. Being chosen king, he made a stout resistance to Cæsar, but was finally overpowered by the Romans and surrendered by his followers.

vērē [old case-form of verus], adv., truly, with truth, with justice.

verēcundia, -ae [verecundŏ- + ia], F., modesty, sense of shame.

vereor, -ērī, -itus [prob. †verŏ-(akin to wary)], 2. v. dep., fear, be afraid, dread. — veritus, p. p. in pres. sense, fearing.

vergo, ere, no perf., no p. p. [?]. 3. v. n., incline, slope, look towards (of an exposure), lie towards.

vērīsimilis, -e [veri similis], adj., (like the truth), probable, likely.

vēritās, -ātis [verō- + tas], F., truth.

veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of vereor. vernīliter [vernili- (of a slave) ÷ ter], adv., slavishly, like a slave.

vērō [abl. of vērus], adv., in truth, in fact, certainly. — With weakened force, but, on the other hand, however. — Often untranslatable, expressing an intensive (emphatic) opposition, or pointing to the main time, circumstance, fact, or agent in the narrative.

versiculus, -i [versu- + culus, dim. end.], M., a short line, a verse.

verso, -are, -avi, -atus [verso-], 1. v. a., turn (this way and that):
sors (shake). — Esp. in pass. as dep., turn one's self, engage in, be involved, be, fight (as indicated by the context).

versus, -a, -um, p. p. of verto.

versus (versum) [orig. p. p. of verto], adv. and prep. with acc., towards, in the direction of: quoque versus (or as one word), in every direction, all about.

versus, -ūs [VERT + tus], M., a turning. — Esp., a verse (of poetry, where the rhythm turns and begins anew), a line.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus [VERT], 3. v. a., turn: terga (puppis) vertere, turn and fice.

vērus, -a, -um [?, VER (in vereor) + us], adj., (?, seen, visible), true, real. — Neut. as noun, the truth: repperit esse vera, found the truth to be. — Also, just, right: re vera, in truth. See also vero.

vescor, -ī, no p. p. [?], 3. v. dep., feed upon, eat, enjoy.

vesper, -eri [?], M., the evening.

vester, -tra, -trum [ves- + ter (us)], possess. adj. pron., your, yours.

vestīgium, -ī [†vestigŏ- (cf. vestigo) + ium], N., the footstep, the footprint, a track, a spot, a mark.— Esp.: e vestigio, forthwith (from one's tracks?); eodem vestigio, in the same spot; in illo vestigio temporis, at that instant of time; vestigia ponere, set foot.

vestīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†vestigŏ-(cf. vestigium)], 1. v. a., track, trace. — Less exactly, hunt, search for.

vestio, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [vesti-], 4. v. a., clothe, cover. — Pass., clothe one's self with (with thing in abl.), wear.

vestis, -is [VES (cover) + tis], F., clothing, garments, a robe, a vestment. — Also, drapery, tapestry.

vestītus, -ūs [vestī- + tus], M., clothing, garments.

Vesuvius, -ī [?], m., a volcano near Naples.

veterānus, -a, -um [veterā- (as if st. of vetero) + nus], adj., veteran (long in service).

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus [st. akin to vetus], 1. v. a., forbid.

vetus, -eris [?], adj., old, former, of long standing.

vexātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vexo.

vēxillum, -ī [?, apparently a dim. of velum], N., a banner, a flag.

vexo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†vexŏ- (as if p. p. of veho)], i. v. a., (carry this way and that), harass, annoy, commit depredations on, overrun (a country), ravage (lands).

via, ae [for veha? (veh- + a)]. F., a road, a way, a route, a march, a journey: tridui viam, three days' journey.

viātor, -ōris [†viā- (as st. of †vio) + tor], M., a traveller.

vicārius, -a, -um [vici- + arius], adj., substituted. — Masc. as noun, a substitute, a proxy.

vīcēnī, -ae, -a [akin to viginti], distrib. num. adj., twenty (apiece).

vīcēsimus, -a, -um [akin to viginti], num. adj., twentieth.

vīciēs (-ēns) [akin to viginti], num. adv., twenty times: vicies centena milia passuum, two thousand miles.

vicis, gen. (nom. not found), change, turn: in vicem, in turn.

victima, -ae [akin to vinco, perh. going back to the sacrifice of prisoners], F., a victim, a sacrifice.

victor, -ōris [VIC (in vinco) + tor], M., a victor, a conqueror.—
Often as adj., victorious, triumphant.
victoria, -ae [victor- + ia], F.,

victory, success (in war), a victory.
victus, -a, -um, p. p. of vinco.

victus, -ūs [VIG (?) (cf. vixi) + tus], M., living, life. — Also, means of living, food: domus victusque, intercourse, life in common.

vīcus, -ī [VIC (enter) + us], M.,

(a dwelling), a village (a collection of dwellings).

videlicet [vide- (imv. of video)-licet], adv., (one may see), of course, no doubt, to be sure.

video, videre, vidi, visus [VID, perh. through a noun-st.], 2. v. a., see, observe, examine (reconnoitre), take care (see that). — In pass., be seen, appear, seem, seem best.

Vienna, -ae [Celtic], F., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now Vienne.

vigilia, -ae [vigil- (awake) + ia], F., a watch, watching. The Romans divided the night into four watches, and reckoned the time thereby.

vigilo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vigil-(wakeful)], I. v. n. and a., be awake, watch, watch for: noctes (spend in watching). — Esp., vigilāns, -antis, p. as adj., watchful, vigilant.

viginti [dvi- (st. of duo) + form akin to centum (perh. the same)], indecl. num. adj., twenty.

vigor, -ōris [VIG (in vigeo, be strong) + or], M., activity, force, vigor.

VII, for septem, seven, and septimus, seventh.

VIII, for octo, eight.

vīlitās, -ātis [vili- (low) + tas], F., cheapness, low price.

villa, -ae [?] F., a country-house, a villa.

vimen, -inis [root (or st.) VI (twine) + men], N., a twig (flexible, for weaving), osier, a withe.

vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus [perh. akin to vinco], 4. v. a., bind, fetter.

vinclum, see vinculum.

vinco, vincere, vici, victus [VIC], 3. v. a. and n., conquer, defeat, over-come, prevail.

vinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of vincio.

vinculum (vinclum), -ī [†vincō-(st. akin to vincio, perh. primitive of it) + lum (N. of lus)], N., a chain, a rope. — Plur., fetters, bonds: in vincula, into prison, into confinement; in vincla concludere, put in chains (confinement).

vindico, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vindic-(defender)], I. v. a., claim, claim one's rights against, defend, avenge, punish: in aliquem (punish); Galliam in libertatem (establish the liberty of, a phrase derived from the formal defence of freedom in a Roman court).

vinea, -ae [vinŏ + ea (F. of eus)], a shed (defence, for a besieging party, made like an arbor).

vinum, -i [?], N., wine.

violò, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], I. v. a., abuse, violate (a sacred object), outrage, lay waste: hospitem (injure, a guest being held sacred).

vir, virī [?], M., a man, a husband. vireō, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [†virō- (cf. viridis, green)], 2. v. n., be green, put forth leaves.

vīrēs, see vis.

virga, -ae [akin to vireo], F., a twig, a rod, a stick.

virginālis, e [virgin- + alis], adj., of a maiden, maidenly.

virgo, -inis [akin to vireo], F., a maiden, a maid, a virgin.

virgula, -ae [virga- + ula, dim. end.], F., a small rod, a twig, a little stick.

virgultum, -ī [†virgula- (?) + tum, cf. tumultus], N., only in plur., shrubbery, a thicket, bushes (cut for military purposes).

Viridomārus, -ī [Celtic], M., a noble of the Hædui.

virītim [vir + itim, as if acc. of verbal in tis], adv., man by man (of distribution), to each individual.

Viromanduī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Picardy.

virtus, -ūtis [virŏ- (reduced) + tus], F., manliness, valor, prowess, courage. — Also, merit (generally), noble conduct, virtue: virtute (with gen.), thanks to. — Plur., virtues, merits, good qualities, brave acts.

vīs, see volo.

vis, vis (?) [?], F., force, might, strength, power, violence. — Esp.: vi cogere (forcibly); vim facere, use violence; vim hostium (violent attack); vi fluminis oppressi, overcome by the violent current. — Plur., strength, force, powers, bodily vigor.

vīsō, ere, vīsī, vīsus [old desiderative of video], 3. v. a., (desire to see), go to see, visit.

vīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of video.

vīsus, -ūs [VID (of video) + tus], M., a sight, a vision.

vita, -ae [root of vivo + ta], F., life, the course of life.

vitium, -ī [?], N., a defect, a fault, a vice.

vītō, ·āre, ·āvī, ·ātus [?, vita- (?)],

1. v. a., (escape with life, live
through ?), escape, avoid, dodge, shun.
vitrum, ·ī [?], N., woad, a plant
used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

vituperātiō, ·ōnis [vituperā-+tio], F., blame, censure.

vitupero, -are, -avī, -atus [†vitupero- (vitio- + †parus, cf. opiparus)], I.v.a., censure, find fault with, blame.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus [VIG, cf. victus], 3. v. n., live: lacte (live on).

— Esp. in imv., may you live, farewell, I wish you well.

vivus, -a, -um [VIG (?) + us], adj., alive, living.

vix [poss. VIC (in vinco)], adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [voc- (st. of vox)], 1. v. a., call by name, call, summon, invite: digito (beckon).

Volcae, -ārum [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Gaul in the Roman province. See Tectosages and Arecomici.

Volcānus (Vul-), -ī [?], M., Vulcan, the god of fire and metals.

Volcātius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Caius Volcatius Tullus, a young man in Cæsar's suite.

volgāris (vul-), -e [volgŏ- + aris], adj., common, ordinary.

volgus (vul-), -ī [VOLG (press) + us], N., the crowd, the common people, the mass: in volgus efferti, be spread abroad. — volgo, abl. as adv., commonly, generally, everywhere.

volito, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [as if volito- (supposed p. p. of volo, fly), cf. agito], r. v. n. freq., flit about.—
Less exactly, rush to and fro, hasten.
volnerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vol-

nero.

volnero (vul-), are, -avi, -atus [volmer-], 1. v. a., wound, hurt. volnus (vul-), -eris [prob. akin to vello, pluck], N., a wound.

1 volo, velle, volui [VOL], irr. v. a. and n., wish, be willing, want.

2 volo, -are, -avi, -aturus [?], 1. v. n.,
fly (lit. and fig.).

volpēs (vul-), is [?], F., a fox. Volsō, onis, see Manlius.

voltus (vul-), -ūs [VOL + tus], M., (wish, expression of countenance), look, countenance, face.

voluntas, -ātis [volent- (p. of volo) + tas], F., willingness, good-will, consent, desire, will, approval, an inclination.

voluptās, -ātis [volup- (akin to volo) + tas], F., pleasure, delight.

Volusēnus, ·ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Caius Volusenus Quadratus, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

võs, see tu.

Vosegus, i [Celtic], M., the Vosges Mountains, running northerly from the Jura along the Rhine.

votum, -i [N. p. p. of voveo], N., a vow, a prayer.

voveo, vovere, vovi, votus [?], 2. v. a., vow, make a vow.

yox, vocis [voc as st.], F., a voice, a word, an expression, a shout, a speech, a sentence. — Collectively, cries, words, talk. — Plur., talk, reports: nulla vox audita (not a word).

X

X, for decem, ten, and decimus, tenth.

Xerxēs, -is [Gr.], M., a Persian king who invaded Greece in B.C. 480.

XII, for duodecim, twelve.

XL, for quadraginta, forty.

XV, for quindecim, fifteen.

XVI, for sedecim, sixteen.

XVIII, for duodeviginti, eighteen.

XX, for viginti, twenty.

XXV, for viginti quinque, twenty-five.

XXVIII, for duodētrīgintā, twenty-eight.

XXX, for triginta, thirty.

Z

Zama, -ae [?], F., a town in Africa, near which Hannibal was defeated by Scipio, B.C. 202.

Zephyrus, -ī [Gr.], M., Zephyr, the west wind.

Zeuxis, -is [Gr.] M., a famous Grecian painter, about B.C. 420. zōna, -ae [Gr.], F., a belt.

## THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

| 1 144   |     | 1                                       | 1967                                  |
|---------|-----|---|---------------------------------------|
|         | 4/4 | 1                                       | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 |
|         |     | A 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 |                                       |
|         | 14  | 4.0                                     | 100                                   |
| orm 410 |     |   |                                       |



Google

